



G. V. Gucht Inv. et Sculptit



G. V. Gucht Inv. et Sculpt. sit



PREFACE.



HISTORY is not only a necessary Part of Study, in order to make up the Character of a learned Man; but if we consider it merely as an Entertainment of Leisure-Hours, 'tis universally acknowledged to be one of the most profitable and delightful. 'Tis certain it has this Advantage above the far greatest Part of our Diversions, that whereas they only please the Fancy, without improving the Mind; this, at the same Time that it entertains the Curiosity, and gives an agreeable Amusement, does also enlarge and heighten the Understanding, tends to fill the Mind with generous Sentiments, and is capable of inspiring it with agreeable Dispositions to Virtue.

But this Topic of the Pleasure and Usefulness of History has been already sufficiently exhausted by several Writers, in order to recommend their own particular Performances;

mances; and there is no need to take pains to persuade People of that which they are already by Experience fully convinc'd of: Therefore I shall only add, that if History in general be so agreeable and beneficial, that of one's own Country must have the Preference in both Respects.

It is certainly much more advantageous for a Man to have the History of England before him at one View, than to be obliged to turn over a Library to come at any tolerable Knowledge of what has pass'd in this famous Isle; which heretofore was the Case, till some undertook to reduce the scattered Remains of Antiquity relating to this Subject, and the numerous Writings of more modern Authors, containing only some particular Parts of the Story, into one entire Piece. And if it be ask'd, Seeing we have such Books already, what need there was of this; it is answer'd, That the Histories of England which have been publish'd, are either too large for the Generality of Readers to purchase, or peruse to Advantage, or too small to relate all the chief Facts clearly, and with a sufficient Degree of Perspicuity: Therefore a Medium has been pitch'd upon, at the same time to answer the Convenience of Price, and the true Pleasure and Profit of all Sorts of Readers; the ensuing History equally avoiding the Inconveniencies that arise either from too great a Prolixity, or too much Brevity and Conciseness. It is contain'd

THE PREFACE.

v

tain'd in four Volumes, giving a Relation of all the material Transactions in Britain, from the earliest Accounts of Time, to the Death of her late Majesty Queen Anne.

'Tis to no purpose here to insist on a pompous Enumeration of Authors, made use of in compiling this Work, according to the usual Ostentation: They who shall be at the Pains to examine, will find what is here related to be supported by the best Authorities. The former Parts of this History are collected from the most approved Writers both antient and modern; and for the latter, besides those that bear the Title of Histories, we have made use of Memoirs, Collections, Annals, &c. and have sometimes had the Assistance of private Informations, from Persons of unsuspected Credit.

Care has been taken to avoid Partiality, a Fault into which even those who are most averse to it, are apt insensibly to fall. We have used all Fidelity, and had regard to Sincerity and Truth through the Whole; and have related Facts, as they have appeared to us, after the most careful and impartial Examination, without calling Names, or giving scurrilous Epithets to any Sect or Party of Men; which many Writers of this Kind have been guilty of. As we have omitted those Stories which are trifling and impertinent, so we have taken all possible Care to insert whatever is material, which is related

I with

with all the chief and most necessary Circumstances.

Great Regard has been had to the Chronology, which is an essential Part of History. And it being a Curiosity natural to all, to know at what Time Persons who have made a considerable Figure in the World, departed out of it, we have usually, at the Close of the Year, taken notice of the most remarkable Persons who died that Year.

The Effigies are all new done, and add an agreeable Ornament to the Work. And there are two compleat Indexes, the first to the two former Volumes, which is affixed to the End of the Second, and the other to the two latter, which is placed after the fourth Volume. These Tables serve not only to direct to any important Passage, but give an agreeable View at once of each King's Reign, and of the Substance of the whole History.



THE

THE
HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND,
FROM THE
Earliest Accounts of Time,
To the DEATH of the
Late Queen ANNE.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

*Adorn'd with the Effigies of all the KINGS
and QUEENS, since the Conquest.*

VOL. I.

Beginning with the Origin of the *Britons*, and
ending with the Reign of King RICHARD III.

LONDON,

Printed for E. BELL, J. DARBY, A. BETTES-
WORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. PEMBERTON,
J. HOOKE, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY,
J. BATLEY, E. SYMON. M.DCC. XXII.



PRELIMINARY

OF THE ACCOUNTS OF TIME

TO THE
PART OF STUDY, IN ORDER TO MAKE
UP THE CHARACTER OF A LEARNED
MAN; BUT IT WILL BE CONSIDERED IT NECESSARY
AS AN ENTERTAINMENT OF LEISURE



HOURS, IS UNNECESSARY TO BE
ONE OF THE MOST DELIGHTFUL
THAT CERTAIN IT IS A
THE FIRST PART OF THE
THAT WHEREAS THEY ONLY PLEASE THE FANCY
WITHOUT IMPROVING THE MIND, THIS AT THE
SAME TIME THAT IT ENTERTAINS THE CURIOUS
AND GIVES AN AGREEABLE AMUSEMENT, DOES
SO ENLARGE AND HEIGHTEN THE UNDERSTANDING, AND
LEADS TO ALL THE MIND WITH GENEROUS SENTI-
MENTS, AND IS CAPABLE OF IMPROVING IT WITH
AGREEABLE DISPOSITIONS TO VIRTUE.



BUT THIS TOPIC OF THE PLEASURE AND U-
TILITY OF HISTORY HAS BEEN ALREADY FULLY
EXHAUSTED BY SEVERAL WRITERS, IN ORDER
TO RECOMMEND IT TO A PARTICULAR PERSO-
NAGES.



THE
CONTENTS
OF THE
Several VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

- SECT. I. *FROM the earliest Account of Time, to the first coming of Julius Cæsar, Page 1*
- SECT. II. *From the Invasion of Britain by the Romans under Julius Cæsar, to their quitting their Jurisdiction of the Isle, p. 17*
- SECT. III. *From the Romans quitting their Jurisdiction of the Island, to the Destruction of Britain by the Picts, Scots and Saxons, p. 43*
- SECT. IV. *From the Destruction of Britain by the Saxons and other Nations, to the New Establishment made by King Egbert, p. 52*
- SECT. V. *From the Establishment of King Egbert, to the Beginning of the Danish Monarchy, under King Canute, p. 65*
- SECT. VI. *From the Beginning of the Monarchy of the Danes in England, to the Restoration of the Saxons in Edward the Confessor, p. 96*
- SECT. VII. *From the Restoration of the Saxons, to the Coming in of William the Conqueror, p. 102*
- The Reign of K. William I. commonly called The Conqueror, p. 116*

The

The CONTENTS.

<i>The Reign of William II.</i>	—	Page	149
— of Henry I.	—		158
— of King Stephen	—		153
— of Henry II.	—		167
— of Richard I.	—		183
— of King John	—		193
— of Henry III.	—		207
— of Edward I.	—		226
— of Edward II.	—		237
— of Edward III.	—	(247)	
— of Richard II.	—		241
— of Henry IV.	—		360
— of Henry V.	—		410
— of Henry VI.	—		462
— of Edward IV.	—		512
— of Edward V.	—		549
— of Richard III.	—		568

VOL. II.

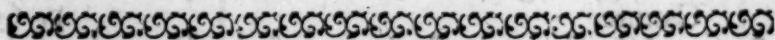
T HE Reign of K. Henry VII.	—	Page	3
— of Henry VIII.	—		71
— of Edward VI.	—		241
— of Q. Mary I.	—		299
— of Q. Elizabeth	—		368

VOL. III.

T HE Reign of K. James I.	—	Page	3
— of Charles I.	—		67
— of Charles II.	—		314

VOL. IV.

T HE Reign of K. James II.	—	Page	3
— of K. William III. and Q. Mary II.	—		147
— of Q. Anne	—		358



ERRATA.

VOL. I. pag. 288. lin. ult. for *imprisoned* read *poisoned*, VOL. II. p. 94.
 l. 24 for *Archers* r. *Artificers*. VOL. III. p. 232. l. 3. for *King's*
March r. *King, marched*. VOL. IV. p. 211. second marginal Note, for *As-*
fairs r. *Army*.

THE



THE
HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND.

=====

SECT. I.

From the earliest Account of Time, to the first coming of Julius Cæsar.



N Order to make the following History as useful as may be, we shall give as full and regular Account of the Transactions that have occur'd in the Kingdom, from the earliest Accounts of Time, as can be collected out of the ancientest and best Authors that have written of those Affairs.

Britain, the largest of all the *European* Islands, is situated between the Degrees of 50 and 59 of North Latitude, and between 12 and 20 of Longitude; its greatest Length from *Dunby* Head to *Dover*, about six hundred Miles, and its greatest Breadth from *Dover* to the *Land's End* in *Cornwall*, about three hundred Miles; enjoying an Air far more mild, sweet and temperate, than

VOL. I.] B any

A general Description of the Country.

any part of the Continent between the same Parallels. The Cold during the Winter, is not so piercing, nor the Heat in the Summer so scorching, as to inforce the Use of Stoves in the one, or Grotto's in the other; and it is freer from Tempests and Hurricanes, pestilential Distempers, Famine and Earthquakes, than many other Countries are. No Country exceeds it in the main Necessaries of human Life, as Flesh and Corn for Food, Wool and other Conveniencies for Raiment, and all sorts of Materials for Building. The Excellency of this Country is apparent from those transcendent Eulogies, given it both by ancient and modern Writers of all Nations, who declare, 'that she is happy above all other Countries, whom 'Nature has enrich'd with all the Blessings of Heaven 'and Earth; in whom nothing is hurtful, nor nothing 'desirable is wanting; a Master-piece of Nature, per- 'formed when she was in the best and gayest Humour, 'which she plac'd as a little World by it self, upon the 'Side of the greater, merely for the Delight of Man- 'kind; the most accurate Model which she proposed to 'her self to beautify the other Parts of the Universe: 'That her Vallies are like *Eden*, her Hills like *Leba- 'non*, her Springs as *Pisgab*, and her Rivers as *Jordan*: 'That she is the Paradise of Pleasure, and the Garden of 'God; whose Walls are the Ocean, and the Lord *Jeho- 'vab* her Defence.

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona norint, Anglicanos!

Britain.

This Country was by the Ancients call'd *Britain*, which some derive from *Brutus*, the third by Descent from the *Trojan Aeneas*, and others from the *British* Word *Pryd Cain*, a white Form; Mr. *Cambden* from *Brith*, which signifies painted, and *Tavia*, signifying a Nation; for the ancient *Britains* us'd to paint themselves. Mr. *Somner* derives it from *Brydio*, which implies Heat and Fury, from the violent Motion of the Seas that surround it. But *Bochart* takes it from the *Phœnician* Word *Barat-Anac*, and more contractedly *Bratanac*, that is, a Land of Tin. It was also call'd *Albion*, from the Giant *Albion*, *Neptune's* Son, or from the Word *Ἀλβὼν*, which signifies White, or from the Hebrew Word *Alben*, which likewise signifies White, or from the Word *Alp* which signifies High. But of these there is but little certainty; let every Reader therefore chuse which of them he pleaseth.

Albion.

This

The History of ENGLAND.

3

This Country so enriched and beautified by Nature, ^{Its ancient Inhabitants,} was soon inhabited after the Dispersion of the Sons of *Noah*; for 'tis related that the Posterity of *Gomer*, the eldest Son of *Japhet*, first settled in *Gaul*, and other neighbouring Countries; and from thence part of them pass'd over into this Isle, and settled here. One of *Gomer's* Descendants was named *Britto*, from whom the Name of *Britains* is derived, as 'tis thought by some; when others, and not a few, according to what has been already hinted, affirm, that the Name *Britain* is taken from *Brutus*, the Son of *Silvius*, the Son of *Ascanius*, the Son of *Æneas*, a *Trojan* Prince. *Silvius* being secretly married to a Niece of *Lavinia*, she proving with Child, the whole Affair could no longer be hid from *Ascanius*, who commanded his Magicians to enquire whether she had conceived Male or Female. They answered, that it was one that would be the Death both of his Father and Mother; and that he should be banished for the Fact, but should at length in a distant Country attain to the highest Honours. This Prediction was fulfilled to a Tittle; for his Mother dy'd in Travel; and at fifteen Years of Age, being a hunting with his Father, he unfortunately kill'd him with an Arrow; for which Fact he was banished by his Kindred. He retired into *Greece*, and meeting with the Offspring of *Helenus*, King *Priam's* Son, who were Slaves to *Pandrasus* then King, he joined with them, and soon became their Darling, because he excelled both in Virtue and Arms. Hence their Hopes began to revive, and they request him to lead them the way to Liberty. Upon this, frequent Consultations were held to deliberate on this weighty Affair: At length, considering their Numbers and Strength, being join'd by *Assaracus* a Noble *Grecian* Youth, they betake themselves to the Woods and Hills, which they fortify. Against whom King *Pandrasus* marches with all his Forces, and being encamped, by Night *Brutus* divides his Men into three Bodies, marches silently towards their Camp, attacks them unprovided, makes a great Slaughter amongst them, and takes *Pandrasus* Prisoner. *Brutus* now, having so favourable an Opportunity, resolves to consider of his own and his People's Affairs, and how to provide for their common Safety and Well-being. Immediately a Grand Council of all the *Majores-Natu* or Elders was convened; and after a long Debate concerning what was to be done with *Pandrasus*, their Royal Prisoner, it was resolv'd, according to the

The History of ENGLAND.

Advice of grave *Mempricius*, to demand the King's eldest Daughter in Marriage for their Leader *Brutus*, with a rich Dowry, then a sufficient Number of Ships, Money, and Provisions for their Voyage, to go and seek a new Place of Habitation. Upon this the King was brought into the Assembly; and being seated above all the rest, was told that on these Conditions he might be free, otherwise he must prepare for Death. To which Conditions the King readily agrees; and as soon as possible the Marriage was solemnized; a Fleet was fitted out with all manner of Provisions, on which the *Trojans* embark'd and put to Sea; and after two Days Sail, they came to the Island *Leogecia*, now unknown, which was without human Inhabitants. Those who were sent out to make Discoveries, found a ruined City, in which there was a Temple and Image of *Diana* that gave Oracles; whom *Brutus* consulting about a Place for their Settlement, the Answer was, *That in the wide Ocean West of Gaul, there was a Land convenient for them; thither bend thy Course, there shalt thou reign, and thy Posterity shall conquer many Nations.*

*Brutus lands
in Britain.*

Brutus guided now, as he thought, by Divine Conduct, pursues his Voyage with the utmost Diligence, and having gone thro' many Dangers, at length, arrives at *Totness* in *Devonshire*. This fill'd them all with Raptures of Joy, as being got safe to the promised Land, where all their Labours should be at an End, and where they should enjoy Peace and Tranquillity. This Land at their Arrival was possess'd only by a Gang of cruel Giants, who had devour'd the rest of the Inhabitants. These *Brutus* destroyed, except some few who lurk'd about in *Cornwal*; and then in reference to his own Name, he call'd the Land *Britain*, which he divided amongst his Followers; and *Cornwal* by Lot fell to *Corineus*, which was suitable to his Temper, that he might have the Opportunity to destroy those Monsters, an Exercise he much delighted in. Things being thus regulated, *Brutus* and the *Trojans* appointed a solemn Festival to be kept at the Place where they first landed: And when they were in the height of their Jollity, a Crew of these Savages broke in upon 'em, and slew many of them. But at length being overcome by Numbers, the Giants were all destroyed, but *Goemagog* the hugest of all, being in Height twelve Cubits, who was kept alive that *Corineus* might try his Strength with him. They engage, and in the Contest the Giant gave *Corineus* such a Hug that he broke three

The History of ENGLAND.

3

of his Ribs; which so enraged *Corineus*, that, by main Force, he took him cross his Shoulders, ran with him to a high Rock, and threw him headlong into the Sea; for which Reason the Clift to this Day is call'd *Langoemagog*, that is, the Giant's Leap.

After this *Brutus* and his People march thro' the Country, and chuse a Place, on which he built *Troja Nova*, *Brutus builds Troja Nova.* call'd afterwards *Trinovantum*, now *London*. And now some Laws were enacted for the better securing the publick Peace, (which was about the Time when *Heli* was High Priest in *Judea*) and *Brutus* having reigned twenty four Years, died, leaving behind him three Sons, viz. *Dies*, *Locrinus*, *Camber*, and *Albanactus*, who by mutual Consent divide the Land between themselves.

Locrinus the eldest took for his Share the middle Part, The Division of the Land. call'd *Loegria*; *Camber*, that call'd *Cambria*, now *Wales*; and *Albanactus*, *Albania* now *Scotland*. *Locrinus* married *Guendolena*, Daughter of *Corineus*, who being enrag'd at *Locrinus's* Intrigues with *Estrildis*, and because she her self was denied the King's Embraces, rais'd an Army against her Husband *Locrinus*, who was kill'd in Battle. Upon this *Guendolena*, her Son *Maden* being under Age, took upon her the Government, and commanded *Estrildis*, and her Daughter *Habren*, to be cast into the River, which from *Habren* was call'd *Sabrina*, now *Severne*. *Guendolena* having been at the Helm for fifteen Years, resigned the Crown to her Son *Maden* who was *Guendolena rules.* now of Age, and retir'd to her Father's Dominions. This reigns. *Maden* was in the Days of *Samuel*.

Maden having govern'd the Land with Peace and Diligence for the Space of forty Years, died, leaving behind him two Sons, viz. *Mempricius* and *Manlius*.

Mempricius the eldest succeeds his Father in the Throne, and to prevent a Competitor, murdered his *Mempricius reigns.* Brother *Manlius*. Having thus got the Rule of the whole Island, he exercis'd great Tyranny upon the People, and destroyed almost all the Nobles, and being given over to unnatural Lusts, as he was a hunting in a Forest, he was devoured by Wolves, in the twentieth Year of his Reign.

His Son *Ebrancus* succeeded him, a Man of mighty *Ebrancus.* Strength. He was the first after *Brute*, that fitted out a Fleet, with which he sail'd to *France*, invaded it, and returned with great Booty. He built *Caerebranc*, now *York*, and *Mount Agnes*, now *Edinburgh*. He had twenty Wives, who bore him twenty Sons and thirty Daughters: The latter he

The History of ENGLAND.

Brutus
reigns.

sent into *Italy*, where they were married to the Nobles of the *Trojan* Line ; and his Sons (except the eldest) into *Germany*, where by their Valour they gained a Kingdom. After forty Years Reign *Ebrancus* died, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Brutus*, who was surnamed *Viride Scutum*, *Greenshield*, who after a silent Reign of about twelve Years, was taken away by Death, and left his Crown to be enjoyed by his Son *Leyl*.

Leyl.

Leyl being got into the Throne, govern'd the Nation for some Years in perfect Peace, and with much Justice, but slacken'd towards the latter end, and by reason of this Slothfulness and Negligence, civil Dissentions arose. He built, in the Days of *Solomon*, the City of *Caerleyl*, now *Carlisle* ; and after he had reigned twenty five Years, he was succeeded by his Son *Hudibras* or *Rudhudibras*, who having appeas'd the Commotions which his Father could not, and settled a Peace in the Nation, founded *Caerkeynt*, or *Canterbury*, and *Caerguent* or *Winchester* ; and having reigned thirty nine Years, Death made way for the Succession of his Son *Baldudus* or *Bladud*, who erected the *Bath*. This *Bladud* was a Man of great Invention, understood the Art of Necromancy, and taught it to others : He made Wings and learned to fly, but designing to divert his Nobles with this strange Exercise, he got on the Top of the Temple of *Apollo* in *Trinovant*, and flying from it, fell down and dash'd himself to pieces, having reigned twenty Years.

Hudibras
reigns.

Bladud
reigns.

Leir.

Leir his Son succeeded, who built *Caer-Leir*, now *Leicester* : He had no Male Issue, but only three Daughters, and growing very old, he determines to marry his Daughters, and divide the Kingdom amongst them ; but first resolves to try which of them respected him most : The eldest declared she loved him better than her own Soul ; the second answered, that she loved him above all Creatures ; and the third said she loved him as a Father, with which Answer being angry, he said she should have no Share in the Kingdom. He married his eldest Daughter *Goneril*, to *Maglaunus* Duke of *Albania*, and *Regan* his second, to *Henninus* Duke of *Cornwall*, giving with them the half of his Kingdom, the other half to follow at his Death. *Cordeilla* was deprived of all for her Sincerity : of such Force is Flattery ! But the old King soon found to his Cost, the difference between the one and the other ; for the two Dukes rebell'd against him, seiz'd on his Kingdom, and deposed him ; and now in the utmost Distress,

strefs, his two elder Daughters that flattered him before, refused him all manner of Relief. But the younger Daughter receives him chearfully, treats him with due Respect, assists him with an Army against her two rebellious Brothers, overcomes them, and re-established her Father on the Throne, who in the sixtieth Year of his Reign died; whom *Cordeilla* with regal Solemnities buried at *Leicester*, and succeeded him in the Kingdom, *Cordeilla* and ruled the Land five Years in Peace, until *Morganus* and *Cunidagius*, her Sisters Sons, not being able to brook, that the Kingdom should be governed by a Woman, levied Forces against her, and in Battel took her Prisoner; which she not being able to bear, put an end to her Misfortunes, by killing her self.

Morganus and *Cunidagius* divide the Land between them. *Morganus* by Agreement had that part from the *Humber* to *Cathness*; and because he was the Elder, he thought all of Right belonged to him: Accordingly, with all his Forces, he marches against the other, and invades *Cunidagius's* Country; who, on the other hand, put all Things in Order to oppose him. Diverse Skirmishes happened, till at length in a pitch'd Battel in *Wales*, *Morganus* was beaten and killed, from whom the Place received its Name. Thus *Cunidagius* became sole Monarch of *Britain*, which he governed gloriously for about thirty three Years, having done many Things for the good of his Subjects, who in return had an entire Affection for him. He died about the Time that *Rome* was built; and upon his Death, *Rivallo*, his Son, ascended the Throne; who was a brave, wise and fortunate young Man, and governed the Nation diligently; in whose Time, 'tis said, it rain'd Blood and stinging Flies for three Days together, which occasioned the Death of many Men.

Rivallo being dead, *Gurgutius* his Son succeeded him; who was succeeded by *Sifillius*; and *Sifillius* was succeeded by *Jago* or *Lago*, the Nephew of *Gurgutius*. This *Lago* was succeeded by *Kinimacius*, the Son of *Sifillius*, whose immediate Successor was *Gorbodug*, who had two Sons, named *Ferrex* and *Porrex*: Their Father growing old, these two Brothers contended for the Succession; both Parties raise what Forces they could; they join Battel; Fortune favoured *Porrex*, who defeated his Brother's Army and slew him. Upon this the Mother, who passionately lov'd *Ferrex*, meditated Revenge on her Son *Porrex*. This she soon found Opportunity, by

The History of ENGLAND.

the Assistance of her Women, to accomplish; they assassinated him in his Bed, and most cruelly mangled him; by whose Death, it is thought, the Royal Line of *Brute* became extinct. Upon this, the whole Kingdom fell into civil Discords, and was rent into five distinct Governments, who were continually at War with each other. This lasted about fifty Years, in which Contests, Multitudes of the People fell as Sacrifices to the Ambition of the Governors: But at length, God was pleased to raise up a brave young Man, *Dunwallo Molmutius*, Son of *Cloten* King of *Cornwall*: This *Dunwallo* excelled all the Kings in *Britain*, both in the goodness of his Person, and Valour, being a perfect Model both in Body and Mind; who after his Father's Death, found means in a little Time to reduce the whole Kingdom to its former State, making it again one sole Monarchy. He began with *Tanner* King of *Loegria*, whom he beat and slew in Battel. Then he bent his Forces against *Rudancus* of *Cambria*, and *Staterius* of *Albania*, who had united their Forces for their mutual Assistance; both Armies met, and fought desperately for a long Time, till at length *Dunwallo* bethought of a Stratagem, which was this; he and six hundred of his choice Soldiers, cloathed themselves in the Habits of their slain Enemies, and advanced to that Squadron, where the two Kings were, who took them for Friends, but were so unexpectedly assail'd by them, that they were put into Disorder. *Dunwallo* perceiving this, persued the Advantage, and gain'd a complete Victory and of Consequence the Dominion of the whole Island, and restored it to its pristine State and Glory. This *Dunwallo* was the first in *Britain* that ever wore a Crown of Gold, and on that account, was reputed by some the first King. He made several good Laws, which continue in Force to this Day; particularly those, concerning the Peace and Privilege of Highways and Ploughs: He made such a Riddance of Thieves and Robbers, that the Roads were very safe. In *Trinovant*, in Honour of the Memory of Peace restored, he built the Temple of *Concord*, nigh to which he was buried, after he had reign'd gloriously about forty Years.

Dunwallo
Monarch.

Belinus and
Brennus.

No sooner was *Molmutius* dead, but his two Sons, *Belinus* and *Brennus*, contended for the Sovereignty; which was happily adjusted, by the Mediation of the principal Men: *Brennus* was to have all the Country North of the *Humber*, and *Belinus* the rest, but to be the Sovereign of

The History of ENGLAND.

91

of all, according to the *Trojan* Custom, that the Younger should submit to the Elder. In this happy Establishment, they lived in Peace five Years, till at length *Brennus*, seduced by evil Counsel, Flatterers, and Forgers of Lies, would no longer pay Obedience to his Brother, nor own him as his Sovereign; but went into *Norway*, entred into an Alliance with *Elising* their King, and married his Daughter. *Belinus*, being informed of his Brother's Designs and Absence, seizes on his Dominions. *Brennus* gets a Fleet ready and sails for *England*; in which Passage he was met by the King of *Denmark*, who was passionately in Love with *Brennus's* Lady; he attack'd *Brennus*, and took the Ship which carried his Lady; but his Ships being dispersed by Storm, he was drove a Shore on *Northumberland*, where he was taken with the Lady by *Belinus*. Nevertheless *Brennus* collecting his Ships and Forces, lands in *Britain*, and fought with *Belinus*, but lost the Day, with twenty thousand Men, and almost all the *Norwegians* slain, himself with one Ship only escaping into *France*; where not being able to procure Assistance, he went to the Duke of *Savoy*, married his only Daughter, and after his Death, succeeded him in that Dutchy; where he raised an Army, got leave to march it thro' *Gaul*, and thence transported it into *Britain*. *Belinus* made ready with his Army to oppose his Brother; and both Armies being drawn out, and ready to begin the Fight, *Connuenna* their Mother, flew into the midst of *Brennus's* Troops, fell on his Neck, shewing him her Breasts that gave him suck, and prevailed on him to go to his Brother, who met him with Transport and Affection. Thus by the powerful Mediation of the Mother, the two Brothers were reconciled to each other; upon which they mutually agreed to unite their Forces and invade *France*, which being subdued they march to *Rome*, where the *Romans* gave them Tribute, and delivered Hostages for Performance. From thence the Brothers go for *Germany*, and in their Absence, the *Romans* revolt: This caused their speedy Return, and meeting with Opposition, they hang up twenty four noble *Romans*, the Hostages, and after a bloody and doubtful Battel, they take the City, giving it to the Soldiers to plunder. *Brennus* was put in Possession of the City, which he governed in a tyrannical Manner. *Belinus* returned to *Britain*, built many Cities, repaired and beautified others, particularly *Trinovant*, where he erected a Gate, a Haven, and a Tower on the *Thames*,
from

Brennus invades Britain.

from whose Name it is now call'd *Belin's-Gate*; renewed the Laws, ruled in greater Peace, Wealth and Honour, than any of his Predecessors, and died universally lamented.

Gurguntius.

Gurguntius Barbirus, Son of *Belinus*, succeeded him; and tho' he was possess'd with his Father's Courage, was a mild, modest, prudent and just King. He subdued his rebellious Subjects, sail'd to *Denmark* to require his Tribute, which being denied, he kill'd their King, and subdued that Kingdom. In his Return, about the *Orcades*, he met thirty Ships full of Men and Women, which were driven out of *Spain* to seek a new Habitation, who requested him that they might be settled in some part of his Dominions; he had Compassion for them, granted their Requests, and sent some of his own Men with them to *Ireland*, then uninhabited, and gave them that Island to hold of him as in Homage. He dy'd and was buried in *Caerlegion*, a City that he had wall'd about.

Ireland first inhabited.

Guintheleus.

Guintheleus his Son succeeded him; he is recorded for a just and good Prince; his Wife's Name was *Martia*, much commended for her Wisdom and Learning in all Arts. She framed the Laws which the *Britains* call'd the *Martian* Laws. From her the Province of *Mercia* was named. Upon the Death of *Guintheleus*, his Wife

Martia.

Martia took upon her the Government, till her Son *Sifillius* was of Age; during which Time she performed many worthy Acts.

Sifillius.

Sifillius her Son coming to Age, undertook the Administration of publick Affairs, and was succeeded in the Throne by *Kimarus* his Son; and *Elaunus* his Brother succeeded him in the Throne. Then *Morindus* his Son, by *Tanguestella* a Concubine, succeeded: He was a Man of excessive Strength, valiant, and fair of Aspect, but inhumanly cruel; who in his Anger, if he had any Weapon in his Hand, spar'd neither Friend nor Foe. In his Time, a huge Monster from the *Irish* Sea infested the Coasts: *Morindus* attempted to destroy it, but was catch'd up in its horrible Mouth and devoured.

Kimarus.

Elaunus.

Morindus.

Gorbonianus.

Morindus at his Death left five Sons behind him, the eldest of whom named *Gorbonianus* succeeded him. He was the most just Man of his Age, and the very Bulwark of Justice, delighting thro' the whole Course of his Life, to perform due Honour to God, and all Right and Justice to the People. In his Reign the Nation abounded in Wealth and Plenty; Men of Desert were rewarded with

with Honour and Preferment ; the People were encouraged and assisted in their Labours and Trades, and constantly protected against the Insults and Oppressions of their Superiors ; Violence and Wrong were seldom heard of ; so that the Nation flourished above any of her Neighbours. His Death was a general Loss : He was buried in *Trinovant*, and was succeeded in the Throne by his second Brother *Archigallo*, who, in all his Actions, was the very reverse of his Brother ; for it was his Sport to depress the Nobles, into whose Places he put worthless Men, and rob'd the wealthy to fill his own Coffers ; which Proceedings at last resolving to bear no longer, they made an Insurrection, and depos'd him. *Elidurnus* his Brother was chosen King in his stead, who not satisfied with the deposing of his Brother, made it his Study to get him restored ; and being out a hunting met him accidentally, embraced him, and brought him home to his Palace where he hid him ; and having sent for all the Nobles, he solicited them one by one to consent to his Brother's Restoration, which partly by Threats, partly by Promises, he obtained. Upon this they went together to *York*, where *Elidurnus* took off the Diadem from his own, and put it on his Brother's Head ; by which he abdicated himself from the regal Authority, to lead a retired Life. *Elidurnus* gained the Name of *Pius* for his Carriage towards all Men, particularly to his Brother *Archigallo*, who being reformed as well as restored, ruled for the future justly. *Elidurnus* after his Brother's Death, was again advanced to the Throne, and acted every thing worthy himself ; yet notwithstanding that, and the Kindness he had shewn his elder Brother, *Vigenius* and *Peridure* his two younger Brothers rebell'd against him, overcame him, took him Prisoner, and confined him in the Tower of *Trinovant*, and then divided his Kingdom ; the North to *Peridure*, the South to *Vigenius*, who did not long survive ; by which means *Peridure* became Master of all, but in a few Years died : And *Elidurnus* after many Years Imprisonment, is a third time seated in the Throne ; which at last he enjoyed long in Peace, and having lived a Life of Goodness, Justice and Mercy, died, leaving a good Example to his Successors.

After his Death, *Regin*, a Son of *Gorbonianus*, obtained the Crown, who followed the Example of his Uncle, in administering Justice and Mercy to the People, and never deviating from the Ways of Righteousness.

Morganus

Archigallo.

Elidurnus.

He resigns to
Archigallo.

Elidurnus again advanced.

Vigenius and *Peridure* rebell.

Elidurnus a third time advanced.

Morganus. *Morganus* the Son of *Archigallo* succeeded this good King, and ruled the People in Peace, doing Justice to all, after the Example of his Parents. *Emerianus* his Brother succeeded him, who took quite different Courses, for setting aside all manner of Justice, he exercised great Tyranny, which soon set the People against him, whom they hated and his evil Administration, which grew to such a height, that when he had reigned six Years, he was deposed; in whose room they placed *Idvallo* his Kinsman. *Idvallo*, &c. He was a just King, and was succeeded by the Son of *Peridurus*; after him *Geruntius*, the Son of *Elidurus*; after him his Son *Catellus*; after him *Coilus*; after him *Cberimus*, who had three Sons, viz. *Fulgenius*, *Eleadus* and *Androgeus*, who succeeded one another in the Throne: Then the Son of *Androgeus*; to him *Eliud*; to him *De-dacus*; to him *Clotenus*; to him *Gurgineus*; to him *Merianus*; to him *Bledicus*; then *Capthen Oenus*; then *Sifillius*; twenty Kings in a continued Race, that either did nothing worthy of Note, or lived in an Age that wrote nothing of the Deeds of these Kings. But to make up this Chasm, *Blegabridus* succeeded, who very much excelled the former Ages in Songs and Musick, so that he seemed to be the God of Sports; and we should have been much obliged to him, had he been so kind to have left us an account of his twenty Predecessors, tho' only in a Song: But as we have nothing of twenty Kings before him but their Names, so have we nothing but the Names of nine Kings immediately after him, viz. *Archemailus* his Brother; then *Eldon*; then *Redion*; then *Rodricius*; then *Sasnel*; then *Peninsel*; then *Pir*; then *Capoirus*; then *Glignelitus*, his Son, a just and a good King.

His Son *Hely* who succeeded him, and reigned forty Years, had three Sons, viz. *Lud*, *Cassibelan*, and *Nennius*. *Lud* the eldest succeeded his Father, and was styl'd the glorious Builder of Cities; he repaired *Trinovant*, and encompassed it with a Wall, on which he erected a very great Number of Towers; he built *Ludgate*, he made this City the Metropolitan, in it kept his Court, and called it *Caer-Lud*, that is *Luds-Town*, now *London*: He was a warlike Man, and very profuse in Feasting; at length he dy'd and was buried near the Gate he had erected. He left two Sons, *Androgeus* and *Tenantius*, who by reason of their tender Age, were incapable of Governing; and *Cassibelannus*, who was much in favour of the People, obtained

tained the Crown, yet was very generous to his Brother's two Sons; for to *Androgens* he gave *London* with *Kent*, and to *Tenantius*, *Cornwall*, reserving to himself a Superiority over them and the rest of the Princes.

Thus have we briefly ran thro' the Story of the antient *Britains*, and leave it to the Choice of all Men, whether they will believe it, or look upon it as only a Legend of idle Dreams; because the Collectors thereof have been obliged to travel hitherto in the dark. But from the Arrival of the *Romans* in this Island, the Story is by so many good Authors made so very plain and so well attested, that every one that reads it with Attention, will be obliged to acknowledge, that the Facts therein mentioned did really happen in this Nation, in the Reigns and Times as they are there related. And in order to make this History of universal Use, we shall give a short Account of the Inhabitants, and describe their Persons, Manners, Customs, their religious and civil Affairs, and their Distribution, when *Cæsar* invaded this Isle.

The *Britains* were very numerous and powerful, a Description of the *Britains*. barbarous and idolatrous People, and yet they had a natural Generosity and Bravery, and constantly opposed Slavery, from their Sense of the Charms of Liberty. They had more Wit and Ingenuity than the *Gauls*, and more Honesty than the *Romans*. As to their Bodies, they were generally tall, and of a very strong Constitution; their Hair was generally of a yellowish Colour; the Women were fair and beautiful, and had excellent Features: Both Sexes used to colour their Bodies with Woad, which rendered them of a Sky Colour. They were extremely regular in their Diet, living only on Venison, Fruits, and Milk, but had not learnt to make Cheese. Their usual Drink was Water, and a Liquor made of Barley, and they defended themselves against the Weather and Seasons with very little Cloathing. Their Buildings and Houses were as mean as their Diet or Clothes; for they gave the Name of Towns to certain Woods, which they had fortified with Ditches and Rampires, in which they built Huts to live in; others dispersed themselves where they pleas'd, at smaller or greater Distances from each other, as they were invited by the Fertility of the Soil, or the Convenience of Water and Wood. The chief Towns were near the Sea Coasts, for the Convenience of Commerce with Strangers, who came to buy, sell, or exchange Wares with those of the Island. The Commodities that

that were exported, were chiefly Hides and Tin, and a few other Things, as Ivory Boxes, Sheers, Bits and Bridles, &c. and as their Traffick was mean and inconsiderable, so was their Coin and Shipping. The former was only Brass and Iron Rings, which made to a certain Weight, served for their current Coin; the latter were small Vessels built of light Wood, covered over with Skins. The ancient *Britains* differed in one particular from all Nations; that is, they had a Community of Wives by Consent, especially Brothers with Brothers, and Fathers with Sons; ten or twelve Men would have Wives together in common; and the Child was accounted his who first married its Mother, tho' brought up in common. This odd Custom was much taken notice of at *Rome*; and the Empress *Julia* upbraided a *British* Lady with it, as a Custom infamous in the Women, as well as in the Men; to whom the Lady, having discovered some Intrigues among the *Romans*, reply'd, We do that openly with the best of our Men, which you do privately with the worst of yours.

Their Religion.

The Religion of the *Britains* was full of Superstition, and in their Sacrifices they offered Men's Flesh. They worship'd *Dis*, *Jupiter*, *Apollo*, *Diana*, and the like, but in a particular Manner, *Andate* for their Goddesses of Victory. In all religious Matters, they had their Priests and Instructors, the chief of which were called *Druids*, who had the Management of all Sacrifices, were Interpreters of all Mysteries, had the Education of the better Sort, and were the Judges throughout the Nation; for they approv'd of all Laws, determined all Controversies, and appointed Rewards and Punishments, at Discretion: If any refused to obey their Decrees, they were immediately excommunicated; upon which all Persons avoided their Conversation; they were excluded the Benefit of the Law, and were rendred incapable of all Honours and Dignities: When on the other hand, these sanctified *Druids* were exempt from all military Duties, Taxes and Imposts; and they cunningly forbid their Doctrines from being committed to writing, that the Vulgar should not be acquainted with their mysterious Learning. They taught the Immortality and Transmigration of the Soul, to excite their Courage; likewise the Motion of the Stars, the Magnitude of the heavenly Bodies, and of the Earth, the Nature of Things, and the Power of the immortal Gods. Another sort of religious *Britains* were called

called *Bards*, whose Office was to sing to the Harp the Songs they had composed on the Exploits of famous Men.

The *Britains* were wont to fight very much in Chariots, which with short Scythes fastened to the ends of the Axle-Trees, gave cruel Wounds, great Terror, and made fierce Charges upon the Ranks of their Enemies. Sometimes they would leave their Chariots and fight on Foot, and if press'd, would with incredible Speed remount. Thus they maintained in Battel the Steadiness of the Foot, and the Speed of the Horse, and in an Engagement were firm and immoveable. Their common Arms were small Shields, and very large Swords, but they had no Helmets; which shewed a more eager Desire of wounding their Enemies, than defending themselves. Their Daggers and Spears were short. They could endure Hunger, Cold, and all sorts of Labour, with admirable Patience; for they would continue in the Bogs many Days without Food, and in the Woods they would live long upon the Bark of Trees and Roots.

The *Britains* were divided into many small Nations, under as many petty Princes; but whether these small Principalities descended by Succession, or were elective by the Advantages of Age, Wisdom, or Valour, in the Families of the Prince, is not recorded: But upon great and imminent Dangers, the chief Commander of all their Forces, was usually chosen by common Consent in general Assemblies, as *Casibelanus* was against *Cesar's* Invasion. The same was done upon the *Britains* revolt against the *Romans*, under *Caractacus* and *Boadicea*; for among them, Women were admitted to their Principalities and general Commands, either by the Right of Succession, Nobility of Birth, or eminent Qualifications. In common Cases, every Province or Principality only paid Allegiance to their own particular Prince; and as their Governments were confined to certain Bounds and Limits, so were the Inhabitants divided and distinguished by several Denominations; of which we find the Names of seventeen in that part of *Britain* called *England* and *Wales*: Which are as follow.

1. The *Cantij*
2. The *Regni*
3. The *Durotriges*

*

Inhabitants of

{ The present County of
Kent.
Suffex and Surry.
Dorsetshire.

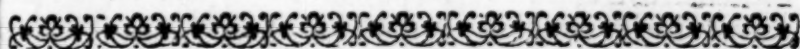
4. The

4. The <i>Damnonii</i>	Devonshire and Cornwall.
5. The <i>Belge</i>	{ Somersetshire, Wiltshire and Hampshire.
6. The <i>Attrebatii</i>	Berkshire.
7. The <i>Donani</i>	{ Gloucestershire and Ox- fordshire.
8. The <i>Caticuchlani</i>	{ Warwickshire, Buck- inghamshire and Bed- fordshire.
9. The <i>Trinobantes</i>	{ Hertfordshire, Essex and Middlesex.
10. The <i>Iceni</i>	{ Suffolk, Norfolk, Cam- bridgeshire, and Hun- tingtonshire.
11. The <i>Coritani</i>	{ Lincolnshire, Leicester- shire, Rutland, Der- byshire, Nottingham- shire, and Northamp- tonshire.
12. The <i>Cornavii</i>	{ Worcestershire, Staf- fordshire, Shropshire, and Cheshire.
13. The <i>Brigantes</i>	{ Yorkshire, Lancashire, Durham, Westmor- land and Cumberland
14. The <i>Ottadini</i>	{ Northumberland, with four other Counties in Scotland.
15. The <i>Silures</i>	{ Herefordshire, with four Counties in Wales, viz. Radnorshire, Brecknockshire, Mon- mouthshire, and Gla- morganshire.
16. The <i>Ordovices</i>	{ Five Counties in Wales, Montgomeryshire, Merionethshire, Car- narvanshire, Flint- shire, and Denbigh- shire.
17. The <i>Dimetæ</i>	{ The rest of Wales, viz. Carmarthenshire, Pembrokeshire, and Cardiganshire.

Inhabitants of

These

The *Britains* thus divided and separately governed, being a fierce and warlike People, had frequent Encounters amongst themselves, the petty Princes perpetually quarrelling with each other, whose Resentments for the most part, could not be laid, but with the Blood of each others Subjects. This Dis-union among them contributed very much to the *Romans* Advantage over them; for had they together concerted the common Interest, *Cæsar* had found it more difficult to have got Footing here. This was the State of *Britain*, and these their Divisions, at the Time when the *Romans* first invaded it.



SECT. II.

From the Invasion of Britain by the Romans under Julius Cæsar, to their quitting their Jurisdiction of the Isle.

JULIUS CÆSAR, having conquered the power-Year before
Christ 53.
ful *Gauls*, resolved to attempt the Reduction of this
Isle; that by Conquest he might join those Countries
which had been separated by Nature. Accordingly, his
Ambition being fired with the Prospect of new Additions
to the *Roman* Empire, and new Glories to himself, in
the 54th Year before Christ he resolv'd on an Expedition
into this Isle. But being unacquainted with the
Places, Ports and Havens of *Britain*, he prepared a Gal-
ly, in which he sent *C. Volusenus*, a Tribune of his Ar-
my, to make what Discoveries on the Coast he could;
who after five Days Search returns to *Gaul*, and ac-
quaints *Cæsar* with what he had observed during his short
Cruise. The *Britains*, having received Advice from the
Merchants, of *Cæsar's* Designs, sent Ambassadors into
Gaul, offered Hostages, and promised Obedience to the
Romans. *Cæsar* exhorts them to continue in that Re-
solution, dismisses them with all Marks of Civility, and
sends with them *Comius Atrebatensis* to ingage them to
con-

*Cæsar's first
Expedition
into Britain*

continue faithful to the *Romans*, and to acquaint them that himself designed them a Visit in Person: But the treacherous *Britains* imprisoned *Comius* as soon as he landed.

In the mean time *Cæsar* having drawn together eighty Transports, on which he embark'd two Legions of Soldiers, amounting to about 25000, and eighteen Vessels more for his Cavalry, which were in Number about 4500, sail'd about three in the Morning, from the Coast of *Morini*, now *Picardy*, with a prosperous Gale; about four the next Day he arrived on the *British* Coast near *Dover*, but judg'd it not proper to land there, because the Port was narrow and surrounded with Hills, and those Hills covered with Soldiers to prevent his Designs. He then proceeded about eight Miles to the Northward, and came to an Anchor near *Deal*, where he waits the Arrival of his whole Fleet. The *Britains* perceiving his Design, immediately dispatch'd their Horse and Chariots to prevent his landing, the Foot following with the utmost Expedition. The *Romans* here laboured under great Difficulties; the Water being shallow, their larger Ships could not get near the Shoar, so that the Soldiers were obliged to jump from their Ships into the Water, under heavy Armour, and contend at once both with the Waves and Enemy. The *Britains* on the other hand knew the Ground, and were not incumber'd; so that the *Romans* were much dishearten'd, and could not exert their usual Courage and Bravery. To retrieve which, *Cæsar* commands all the Gallies and Boats to be man'd, and to row up to the *Britains* and employ their Slings, Darts and Arrows against them; which Vessels, Slings and Engines so frightened the *Britains*, that they soon gave Ground. But the *Romans* not pursuing their Advantage as they ought, the Standard-Bearer of the tenth Legion first invoking the Gods, that this Action might prove successful and glorious, cried out, Leap down, my brave Soldiers, unless you would betray the *Roman* Eagle to the Enemy; for I am resolv'd to perform my Duty to the Publick and to the General: Upon these Words he threw himself into the Sea, boldly advances towards the Enemy, and was as courageously followed by the rest of the Soldiers to the Shore. They fought with Valour and Fury on both Sides. Victory for some time inclin'd to neither. The *Britains* who well knew their own Advantages, and expertly used them, now in the Shallows, now on the Sands

Cæsar lands
at *Deal*.

Sands, as the *Romans* advanced to their Eagle, received them, dispatched them, and with the Assistance of their Horse miserably galled them, and put them every where into great Disorder; which *Cæsar* perceiving, he immediately sent his Boats with Relief wherever it was needful, till at last having landed all his Foot, and marched them on dry Ground, in good Order, they attacked with so much Fury that they soon put the *Britains* to flight; but could not pursue their Advantage for want of their Horse, which were not yet arrived. In this confused Fight, 'tis related that one *Scæva* a *Roman* Soldier, with four others, advanced so far, till being deserted by his Companions, he was surrounded by his Enemies, when he fought with incredible Courage, till at length being wearied and wounded, he swam back, beg'd Pardon for his Rashness, was excused, and advanced to a Centurion. The *Britains* being thus defeated, they sent Ambassadors, and *Comius* their Prisoner, to *Cæsar*, to beg Peace, charging all Misbehaviour on the Multitude and their own Imprudence. *Cæsar* willing to shew Mercy as well as Courage, pardon'd them, received some Hostages, had more promised, and so concluded a Peace with the *Britains* on the fourth Day after his landing in the Isle.

The *Britains* are beaten.

A Peace concluded.

Soon after this Peace was established, the *Roman* Affairs began to decline; for their eighteen Ships which transported the Horse, no sooner came in Sight of *Britain* near *Cæsar's* Camp, but they were by a sudden Storm dispers'd, driven back, and most lost; and what added to this Misfortune, the same Night, it being full Moon, the Gallies that were drawn on Shore were filled with the high Tide, and the Ships of Burthen so shattered, that they were unfit for Service. This Loss was so considerable, that *Suetonius* accounts it the first of the three Misfortunes that befel *Cæsar* in all his Undertakings. The *Romans* being thus in want of Horse, Ships and Provisions, the *Britains* immediately resolved on a Revolt, and in a general Assembly declared all such as impious who refused to join with the Heavens to regain their Liberty. But *Cæsar* suspecting their Designs, by their slow Performance of Covenants, provided against the worst by laying in Corn and all other Provisions, and repairing his Fleet. Whilst Affairs stood in this Posture, the seventh Legion being sent out to forage, expecting no Resistance, were set upon by the *Britains*, and surrounded by their Horse and Chariots.

The *Britains* revolt.

The History of ENGLAND.

ots. The *Romans* were by their Numbers and manner of Fighting soon brought to the greatest Difficulties, and even to Despair; till *Cæsar* came to their Assistance, when they resumed their Courage, the *Britains* were astonished, and desisted from any farther Engagement at that Time. But being resolved to free themselves for ever from foreign Power, they assembled in greater Numbers from all Parts, boldly march'd up to the *Roman* Camp, and attack'd them; but were soon put to flight by the *Romans*, who pursued their Advantage with a dreadful Slaughter, and burnt their Country for many Miles together.

The *Britains* defeated.

A Peace concluded and *Cæsar* returns.

The *Britains* being thus vanquish'd, send an Embassy to *Cæsar*, begging Peace, and promising Subjection: *Cæsar*, severely reproving their Treachery and Behaviour, considering the Necessity of his own Affairs, granted their Request, imposing double Hostages on them. The Season being now far advanced he set Sail from *Britain*, and safely arrived with his whole Fleet on the Continent of *Gaul*. *Cæsar* having given the Senate an Account of this uncommon Expedition, they honoured him with a Procession of twenty Days.

A. ante C.
52.

Cæsar invades *Britain* again.

The *Britains* defeated.

The Winter following, *Cæsar* returned to *Italy*, whence he came back into *Gaul*, and finding that the *Britains* had not sent the Hostages they had promised, he resolved on a second Descent on this Isle. Accordingly with incredible Industry, having from all Parts got together 800 Vessels, most of them new built, low and broad, both for the Conveniency of landing and transporting Men, Horse and Provisions, on which he embark'd five Legions, and two thousand Horse; at Midnight he set Sail from *Portus Itius*, at or near *Boloign* in *France*. The next Day he arrived on the *British* Shore, at the same Place where he landed the Year before. The *Britains* being terrified with these mighty Preparations, and the Approach of so powerful a Navy, left the Coast, and retired into the Country: So that the *Romans* had an Opportunity to land their Forces, without the least Danger or Hazard. *Cæsar*, leaving ten Cohorts and three hundred Horse under the Command of *Q. Atrius* to guard the Ships, march'd in the Night Time twelve Miles up into the Country, discovered the *Britains* on the River *Stoner* in *Kent*, and giving them Battle they were soon repulsed by the *Roman* Cavalry. The *Britains* fled to the Woods, which were strongly fortified as well by Art as by Nature. The *Romans* vigorously pursuing their Advantage, followed the *Britains*

Britains to these very Woods. Some of the Soldiers locked their Shields together like a Roof, whilst others under their Cover raised a Mount; they attack'd, storm'd, and soon took these Fortresses, and drove the *Britains* thence; but *Cæsar* having his Camp to fortify that Night, and being unacquainted with the Country, left off the Pursuit. The next Day he divided his Army into three Bodies, in order to pursue his Advantage, but was prevented by the melancholy News of the Disaster of his whole Fleet, which having lost their Anchors and Cables, were driven a Shore, and for the most part stranded; upon this he and his Army returned to the Sea Coast, where he found forty Vessels entirely lost, the rest in a miserable Condition. He sends into *Gaul* to his Lieutenant for a speedy Supply, and resolves to refit part of his Fleet with the Ruins of the rest; in order to which he undertakes a stupendous piece of Work, drawing all his Ships into his Camp; which was completed in ten Days time, by the indefatigable Toil of his Soldiers, who laboured both Night and Day. Then *Cæsar* returned to the Woods, where he had defeated the *Britains*, but found there to his Surprise, greater Numbers than before, who with one common Consent, had chosen *Casibelanus* their General. *Casibelanus* with his Horse and Chariots, briskly encounter'd the *Romans* in their March, which occasioned much Bloodshed on both Sides; and after some Cessation, as the *Romans* were fortifying their Camp, the *Britains* attack'd the advanced Guards, charged thro' two of *Cæsar*'s best Cohorts, which he had sent to support them, and retreated without the Loss of a Man. *Cæsar* himself confesses their Advantage over the *Romans*, and very much admires their Courage and Conduct. The Success of the next Day differed much from the former; for as they attack'd three Legions that were out a Foraging, they were repulsed, beaten and pursued with great Slaughter; upon this the Auxiliaries drew off and retired to their own Countries, so that the *Britains* never after encounter'd the *Romans* with their full Power.

The Roman Fleet almost destroyed.

The Britains get the Advantage over the Romans.

The Romans prevail.

Casibelanus being thus deserted, withdrew into his own Territories, with only four thousand Chariots, and to prevent the *Romans* farther Progress, he fortifies the River *Thames* that was fordable, with sharp Stakes, near *Coway-Stakes* in *Middlesex*. Notwithstanding this, the *Romans* pursued him, pass'd the River up to the Chin, beat off the *Britains*, and marched farther up into the Country.

Casibelanus beaten.

The History of ENGLAND.

The *Trinobantes* submit.

St. Alban's taken.

A Peace concluded, a Tribute imposed.

Cæsar leaves the Isle.

Country. At the News of which the chief City of the *Trinobantes* sent Ambassadors to *Cæsar*, and dishonourably submitted to him, begging that *Mandubrace* one of *Cæsar's* Followers, whose Father *Casibelanus* had deposed and slain, might be made Governor of their City. This *Cæsar* readily agreed to, demanding forty Hostages, and Provision for his Army, which they performed with all Expedition; preferring the poor Satisfaction of indulging their own Discontents, before the common Cause of their native Country. From their scandalous Example many small States followed, submitted to *Cæsar*, and treacherously discovered to him the Power and Place of *Casibelanus's* Abode, which was at *Verulam*, now St. Alban's, a Place then well fortified with Woods and Morasses. *Cæsar* besieged the City, storm'd it at two Places at once, and soon took it with the Slaughter of many of the poor Inhabitants, and got a great Booty of Cattle. Upon this Loss *Casibelanus* as his last Refuge, procured four petty Kings of *Kent*, viz. *Cingetorix*, *Carvilius*, *Taximagulus*, and *Segonax* to assemble their Forces, and attack the *Roman* Camp that guarded their Ships: A glorious Enterprize! had the Success been answerable to the Design; but the *Britains* were repulsed, and *Cingetorix* taken Prisoner. *Casibelanus* seeing his Country thus wasted, his Designs blasted, and himself abandoned by the traiterous Revolt of many Cities and States, sent *Comius* of *Arras* to mediate a Peace, which on the Account of his Valour and the advanced Season, was readily granted: But that the Conditions might be faithfully kept, *Cæsar* demanded a sufficient Number of Hostages; that they should pay annually to the *Romans* three thousand Pounds, and that *Mandubrace* should be secure with his *Trinobantes*. These unhappy Divisions of the *Britains* made way for future Conquests. These Things being thus adjusted, *Cæsar* embark'd with his whole Army, sails from *Britain*, soon arrives in *Gaul*, having rather shewn *Britain* to the *Romans*, than given them Possession of it, supposing it Glory sufficient to have attempted a Thing so uncommon and difficult: And having shewn at *Rome* the *British* Captives, whose Attire and Behaviour fill'd the Peoples Eyes with Delight and Admiration, at the same Time he offered to *Venus*, the Patroness of his Family, a Breast-Plate, embroidered with *British* Pearls, as a Trophy and Spoil of the Ocean. *Cæsar* in his own Writings gives us an Account of his two

Expe-

Exp
Br
Lav
A
Yea
Brit
kno
fure
Succ
mity
abou
Gau
was
ter t
was
vinc
Peac
but
beriu
Rom
not
Gern
But
havin
excit
King
a sm
being
trava
with
as if
T
four
man
disco
be su
sent
ingly
tius t
decla
Com
But
with
differ
and c

Expeditions into this Isle; and he departed, leaving the *Britains* in Possession of their own Kings and their own Laws.

After *Julius Caesar's* Departure, for above a hundred Years we have very little Account of the Affairs of *Britain*; only that tho' the Inhabitants became more known to the *Romans*, yet they continued in a great Measure free from their Power. For *Augustus, Julius Caesar's Augustus.* Successor, neglected this Island, as a Country whose Amity or Enmity was of no Moment to the *Romans*. Yet about twenty Years after, *Augustus* advanced as far as *Gaul*, in order to reduce *Britain* to his Obedience, but was diverted by a Revolt in *Pannonia*. Seven Years after that, he entred *Gaul* with the same Resolution, but was stopped in his Progress, by the Disorders of that Province, and the Arrival of *British* Ambassadors to beg a Peace. The next Year he reassumed the same Design, but was prevented by Commotions in other Parts. *Ti- Tiberius.* *berius* his Successor, not being ambitious of extending the *Roman* Empire, took no Notice of the *Britains*, and they not willing to provoke him, sent back the Soldiers of *Germanicus*, who were cast away on the *British* Shores. But his Successor *Caligula*, that wild and dissolute Tyrant, *Caligula.* having pass'd the *Alps* to pillage the Empire, and being excited by *Adminius* the Son of *Cynobelinus* a *British* King, who being banished by his Father, fled to him with a small Party; he made a Shew of invading *Britain*, but being come to the Sea-side, shewing the Marks of Extravagancy and Folly, he returned as he came; Yet notwithstanding he sent to the Senate such boasting Letters, as if he had entirely conquered the whole Island.

Thus for about ninety five Years, under the Reigns of *A. D. 43.* four Emperors, the *Britains* continued free from the *Roman* Yoke: But *Claudius* being solicited by *Bericus*, a *Claudius.* discontented *Britain*, (who had rather his Country should be subdued by a foreign Power, than quit his private Resentments) to make a Descent upon this Isle; accordingly in the second Year of his Reign, he ordered *A. Plautius* to attempt the same; but his Soldiers refus'd to march, declaring, that they would not make War out of the Compass of the World; for so they judged *Britain* to lye. But *Narcissus* the Emperor's Favourite, at length prevailed with them, so that they embark'd and sail'd from three different Ports, but by contrary Winds were driven back and disheartned, till in the Night, a strange Meteor shoot-

Plantius invades Britain.

And Defeats the Britains.

His Successes.

The Emperor Claudius enters Britain.

ing Flames from the East, directing their Course, as they thought, they renewed their Courage, put to Sea again, and landed in *Britain* without any Opposition, the Inhabitants being retired to the Woods and Morasses. *Plantius* marches in Quest of them, at length discovers them, engages first with *Caractacus*, then with *Togadumnus*, overthrew them, and reduced part of the *Dobuni* to his Power. Leaving a Garison, he marched towards a River, where the *Britains* thought themselves secure, imagining that the *Romans* could not pass it without a Bridge; but the *Germans* swam over in their Arms, and according as they were commanded, struck directly at the Horse, by which means the Chariots were soon rendred uselefs. To support them he sent the famous *Vespasian*, with his Brother *Sabinus*, who did great Service and Execution: But the *Britains* the next Day engaged them so resolutely, that Victory for a long time inclined to neither Side; till *Sidius Geta*, after he had been near taken Prisoner, gave them such an Overthrow, that, tho' he never had been Consul, he had the Honour of a Triumph granted him at *Rome*.

These Misfortunes obliged the *Britains* to retire to the Mouth of the *Thames*, and being acquainted with those Places, they crossed over; the *Romans* followed; the *Germans* by swimming, the rest by a Bridge soon got over, attacked the *Britains*, and kill'd great Numbers; but falling amongst the Bogs and Meres, they lost many of their Men.

Plantius now began to consult his own Safety, and finding the *Britains* resolved to revenge the Death of *Togadumnus*, he sends to the Emperor for Supplies. *Claudius* ambitious of the Occasion, assembles the Army, and the Flower of his Nobility, marches thro' *Gaul* with armed Elephants, embarks, crosses the Seas, lands in *Britain*, and joins *Plantius*. The courageous *Britains* ventured to meet the whole Power of the *Romans* in the open Field, but were soon vanquished, and lost *Camalodunum*, now *Maldon* in *Essex*, the Royal Seat of *Cynobelinus*.

Upon this, *Claudius*, contrary to the *Roman* Custom, was several times saluted *Imperator*; *Camalodunum* was made a military Colony; and part of this Island was reduced to the Form of a Province. His Stay in *Britain* was not above sixteen Days: He remitted to the *British* Nobility the Confiscation of their Estates; for which Favour they frequented his Temple and adored him as a God. Having

disarm'd the *Britains*, and committed the Government of these, and likewise the War with the others not subdued, to *Plautius*, he hastned to *Rome* in the sixth Month, sending before his Son-in-Law *Pompey* and *Silanus*, with the News of his Victories. At *Rome* it was accounted so great an Action to subdue part of *Britain*, that anniversary Games, and triumphal Arches were ordered at *Rome* and *Gessoriacum* in *Gaul*; and a Triumph was decreed by the Senate in Honour of *Claudius*. On this Account, *Claudius* ordered that his Son *Germanicus* should hereafter be called *Britannicus*, which Name he had obtained himself not long before. *Plautius* in the mean time, carried on the War in *Britain* with such Success, that *Claudius* decreed him an Ovation, and when he entered *Rome*, he himself met him, and honoured him with the Right Hand. *Vespasian* now began to appear in the World, who under *Claudius* and *Plautius*, had fought thirty Battles with the *Britains*, had subdued two mighty Nations, and above twenty Towns, and the Isle of *Vectis* or *Wight*; for which Exploits he obtained triumphal Ornaments, and two sacerdotal Dignities, with the Consulship. Under him serv'd his Son *Titus*, in quality of Tribune, whose extraordinary Valour and Modesty gain'd him great Reputation.

He triumphs.

A few Years after, *Plautius* was succeeded by *P. Ostorius* in *Britain*, who found Affairs in great Disorder, by the Inroads of the *Britains*; because they did not imagine, that a new General would take the Field in the Winter to oppose them. But *Ostorius* by his Actions convinced them of the contrary; for he vigorously attack'd those that were in Arms, beat them, and disarm'd all whom he had reason to suspect. And to prevent farther IncurSIONS, he placed several Garisons on the Rivers *Severn* and *Avon*, by which all the Southern Parts of the Isle were reduced into the Form of a Province. About this time, *London* was founded by the *Romans*, and made a trading Colony: And to ingage *Cogiaunus*, a *British* King, in the *Roman* Interest, several Cities were given him; an ancient Policy, by which they used to make Kings their servile Agents to enslave others.

A. D. 50.
Ostorius sent into *Britain*.

London built.

The *Iceni*, the Inhabitants of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridge*, and *Huntingdon*, a powerful People, not yet weakened by War, highly resented these Proceedings: They refus'd all Submission, gain'd many others to their Party, and then engag'd the *Romans*; and despairing of Pardon, they

The *Iseni*
defeated.

they fought desperately, but at last were overthrown: By this means many others submitted. *Ostorius* march'd against the *Cangi*, a People about the *Irish* Sea, he laid all their Country waste, but was recall'd by the Insurrection of the *Brigantes*, a People in the North of *England*, who refused to submit till they had lost their Commander, and then the Commotion was soon extinguished. But the *Silures*, the Inhabitants of *South-Wales*, continued the Wars against the *Romans*, having for their Commander the brave *Caractacus*, who had gain'd such a Reputation, by his glorious Exploits, that he was justly prefer'd to all the *British* Generals. This glorious Commander by his Policy and Conduct, soon removed the Seat of the War into the Territories of the *Ordovices*, the Inhabitants of *North-Wales*, as more convenient for his Designs, having craggy Rocks and high Mountains. Here, at the near approach of the *Romans*, *Caractacus*, in a Speech to his Soldiers, declared, That that Battle would either establish their glorious Liberty, or confirm their perpetual Slavery; and that they ought to remember the Honour of their Ancestors, who had driven *Julius Cæsar* from the Isle; by whose Valour they were happily delivered from Taxes and Tributes, and to whom they owed the Enjoyment of their unviolated Wives and Children. The Soldiers fired by this Speech, bound themselves by the most religious Vows, crying out, that neither Wounds nor Weapons should make them yield; they engag'd, and after an obstinate Fight, the *Britains* were entirely routed, and the Wife and Daughter of *Caractacus* were taken Prisoners, his Brothers surrendring themselves shortly after. *Caractacus* fled for shelter to *Cartismundua*, Queen of the *Brigantes*, who treacherously bound him, and delivered him to the Conqueror, after nine Years brave Resistance, in which he had gained great Fame, even amongst his Enemies, the *Romans* themselves.

Caractacus is
defeated and
taken.

He is brought
to Rome.

When *Caractacus* was brought to *Rome*, the People were summoned as to some publick Game; and the Emperor being seated on his Tribunal, his Guards were drawn up: The Captive Prince's Vassals and Slaves were ordered to come first; then the Caparisons and other Spoils of War; then his Brothers, his Wife and Daughter; and last of all himself was brought in a peculiar Dress. He neither craving Mercy, nor casting down his Eyes, as others did, with a noble Bravery, spoke after this manner before the Tribunal. 'If my Moderation in Prosperity,
had

had been answerable to my Nobility and Fortune, I had come into this City rather as a Friend than a Captive ; nor would you have disdain'd to have received me with Articles of Alliance, being a Prince descended from illustrious Progenitors, and a Sovereign of many Nations. My present Fortune is to me low and dishonourable, but to you glorious and triumphant. I once had Horses, Men, Arms and Riches at my Command ; what Wonder is it that I should struggle hard before I lost them ? But if Fate has allowed universal Empire to your part, Subjection must be ours. If I had yielded without Opposition, my Fortune would not have been remarkable, nor your glory memorable, and Oblivion would have followed my Punishment : but if you spare my Life now, I shall be a perpetual Example of your Clemency.' *Claudius* mov'd at so sad a Spectacle of Fortune, and his generous Behaviour, pardoned him, his Wife and Relations, and commanded them to be unbound ; whereupon they return'd Thanks to him, and the Empress *Agrippina*. Then the Senate declar'd, that it was not less honourable to have *Caractacus* a Prisoner, than when *Scipio* expos'd *Syphax*, and *Paulus* brought *Perseus* in Triumph.

And pardoned.

Ostorius, tho' in *Britain*, was decreed a Triumph : But now his Fortune began to decline ; for the *Britains* fell on the Legionary Cohorts, left to settle Garisons among the *Silures*, cut off their Commander, eight Captains, and many Soldiers, and had put all to the Sword, had not speedy Relief come from the rest of the Forts. Shortly after they defeated the *Roman* Foragers, and the Troops sent to their Assistance, till the Legionary Soldiers came in and restor'd the Battle, and brought the Advantage on their Side ; but the *Britains* by the Favour of the Night, escap'd with little Loss. After this, Skirmishes only followed, till *Ostorius* threatening to extinguish the Name and Nation of the *Silures*, they drew other Nations to revolt and intercepted the Auxiliaries. In this Posture of Affairs, *Ostorius* wasted with Fatigue and Trouble, dies. *A. Didius* succeeds him, who finds all things in great Disorder, by the Inroads of the *Silures*, and by *Valens's* ill Success. But *Cartismundua*, Queen of the *Brigantes*, after having delivered up *Caractacus*, rejects her Husband *Vennutius*, marries his Servant *Vellocatus*, and made him King ; which occasioned civil Contests amongst themselves, which gave the *Romans* new Advantage over them ; but the *Brigantes* abhorring her Actions, revolted and reduc'd

Ostorius declines.

He dies.
Didius succeeds him.

duc'd her to very great Extremities, and she with much Difficulty escap'd the Punishment she expected: For *Vennutius* thus debar'd of his just Rights, turn'd against the *Romans*, detain'd his Kingdom against their utmost Force, made it appear that he was a Soldier, first in a pitch'd Battel, and then against the Legion of *Casius Nasica*; in so much that *Didius* thought it sufficient to keep what his Predecessors had gain'd, and only built some Castles within the Land.

Nero.

The Christian Religion planted.

This was the State of Affairs when the Emperor *Claudius* died, and was succeeded by *Nero* his adopted Son, who sent *Verannius* to succeed *Didius*. About this time, the Christian Religion was first planted in *Britain*, but 'tis uncertain by whom it was effected, and with what Success. *P. Suetonius* is made Governor, who after two Years, proceeded to new Conquests, particularly of the Isle of *Mona*, now *Anglesey*.

A. D. 61.

While *Suetonius* in the outward Parts was thus successful, the *Britains*, being excited by many Provocations, made a famous Struggle to expel the *Romans*, and to regain their Liberties. They began to consider the Miseries of Slavery, and to confer Injuries one with another; which caused them to declare after this manner, That their Patience had no other Effect, than to cause one Injury to produce another: That every State formerly had their own Kings, but that now they were subject to a Lieutenant and a Procurator; the one preying on their Blood, the other on their Estates: That the *Germans* in the like Circumstances shook off their Yoke, who had only a River not an Ocean for their Defence. And shall not we *Britains*, who have as noble a Cause, our Country, our Relations, our Liberty to contend for, attempt to drive out the *Romans*, and emulate our glorious Ancestors, who drove out *Julius Caesar*? That now Heaven seem'd to compassionate their Distress, in confining their General to another Island; and that there was often less Danger in the Execution, than in the Contrivance of a Plot.

The *Iceni* and *Trinobantes* revolt, under *Boadicea*.

Being animated by these Motives, the *Iceni* and *Trinobantes* revolt, under the Conduct of injur'd *Boadicea*. What farther at this Time animated the *Britains*, and discourag'd the *Romans*, were diverse Prodigies, viz. the Image of Victory at *Camalodunum* falling down revers'd; unusual Noises heard in the Air; strange Apparitions seen on the Sea; the Ocean in Shew bloody; and the

the Print of Mens Bodies on the Sands; and certain Women in Ecstasy foretelling Destruction. *Suetonius* being absent, the Colony required Aid of *Decianus* the Procurator, who sent them only two hundred Men, and those ill arm'd. The *Britains* fell on the Colony, soon defeated them, and entirely destroyed them by Fire and Sword. Upon this Victory they march'd with great Fury against the ninth Legion, under the Command of *Petilius Cerealis*, and cut all the Infantry in pieces; the Horse, with their Commander, escaping with Difficulty. *Catus* the Intendant, whose Rapines had in part occasioned this Insurrection, was forced to fly into *Gaul*. The News of this Revolt rous'd *Suetonius* in the West, who with Resolution marched thro' the Enemies Country directly to *London*; but reflecting on the Weakness of his Forces, and the Rashness of *Petilius*, he resolved to quit the Place, not regarding the Cries of the Inhabitants, who implored his Protection; preferring the Loss of one Town to save a Province: Those who would follow him were received into his Troops; those who remained were miserably destroyed by the *Britains*. *Venerulam* met with the same ill Treatment; they attacked the most opulent and defenceless Places, loading themselves with their Spoils, and hanged, burned and crucified all Orders and Degrees, without the least Compassion to any Age or Sex; cutting in Pieces both *Romans* and their Allies, to the Number of eighty thousand. They hung up naked the *Roman* Wives and Virgins, cutting off their Breasts, and sewing them to their Mouths, that they might seem to eat their own Flesh, tho' dead.

Their Success,

And Cruelties.

Suetonius with ten thousand well disciplin'd Men, resolved to hazard a Battel with all Expedition; and for that end, he chose an advantageous Post, with a narrow Entrance, a thick Wood behind, and before a large Plain. Here the *Britains*, confident of Victory, came in such Swarms, and in such confused Order, as was never before seen, bringing their Wives, and placing them on Carts on the Plain to see the Battel. Things being in this Posture, Queen *Boadicea*, with her two Daughters, mounted her Chariot, riding about to inspire Courage into her numerous undisciplin'd Army, which was about two hundred and thirty thousand. She told them, that heretofore the *Britains* had fought under the Conduct of Women, but she was now in a different Capacity than that of her Ancestors, she being not to fight for a Kingdom,

Suetonius marches against them.

dom, but to revenge her lost Liberty, her own dishonourable Stripes, and the violated Chastity of her Daughters: Therefore she as a Woman was resolved to obtain Victory or Death; but the Men if they pleas'd might chuse Life and Slavery.

On the other hand, *Suetonius* exhorted his Soldiers not to be terrified at the Enemy's Numbers, but to march on boldly and continue a close Fight. The Legions kept the narrow Pass, till the *Britains* had spent their Darts; then they marched out into the Plain, and soon broke and dispersed them; the Multitude fled, but could not well escape, by reason of their Carriages, which were placed round the Plain: The Soldiers gave no Quarter, not so much as to the Women. This Victory was very signal, and was obtained with the Destruction of eighty thousand *Britains*, when the *Romans* Loss was but about four hundred, and not many more wounded. *Boadicea* resolving not to survive this fatal Defeat, poisoned her self; tho' others say she died of Grief.

Suetonius kept the Field in order to finish the War, and was shortly after reinforced with two thousand Legionary Soldiers from *Germany*, eight Cohorts of Auxiliaries, and a thousand Horse; who being put into Winter Quarters, destroyed with Fire and Sword all those Countries, that were either Enemies or Neuters. Nevertheless, upon Notice of the Difference between *Suetonius* and the new Procurator *Classicianus*, the unconquered Nations declined a Treaty, from a Report that a new Lieutenant was expected, who would treat such as yielded with Clemency; who also wrote to *Rome*, that there could be no end of the War, if *Suetonius* continued Governor. To compose this Difference, *Polycletus* the Freed-Man was sent, who represented Things favourable to the Emperor. On this account *Suetonius* kept his Command for some time, but was at length forced to resign all to *Petronius Turpilianus*, who without molesting the Enemy, gave the Name of Peace to his slothful unactive Life. He was succeeded by *Trebellius Maximus*, a Person more lazy than himself, who as he wanted both Courage and Conduct, so was contemned and hated by the Army for his Avarice and Sordidness. At length the Disorder grew so great, that he was forced to fly into *Germany* to *Vitelius* for Safety.

In the mean-time *Nero* put an end to his own Life, and during the short Reigns of *Galba* and *Otho*, *Britain* continued

Petronius
Governor.

Trebellius
Governor.

Galba,
Otho.

continued quiet. But shortly after *Vitellius* coming to the Empire, he sent *Vespius Bolanus* in *Trebellius's* Room, who by his innocent and obliging Temper, gained the Affection of his Soldiers, tho' he wanted the Authority of a General: But when *Vespasian* succeeded *Vitellius*, he sent *Petilius Cerealis* to be Governor, who boldly entered the Country of the *Brigantes*, whom he beat in many Battels, and either ravaged or conquered the greatest Part of their Territories; so that *Cerealis* seem'd to have eclips'd the Fame of any that should come after him. By *Vespasian's* Order, *Julius Frontinus* succeeded in the same Charge, and with little less Glory: For he subdued the potent Nation of the *Silures*, and broke thro' almost insuperable Difficulties from the Nature and Situation of the Country. *Frontinus* was succeeded by *Agricola*, who was also a Commander of the greatest Fame, both for Valour and Conduct.

For not long before his Arrival, the *Ordovices*, the Inhabitants of North *Wales*, had almost destroyed a Wing of the *Roman* Legions, which made the rest of the conquered Nations ready for a Revolt. *Agricola*, tho' the Season was far advanced, assembled his scattered Troops, and with great Expedition marches towards these formidable People, who kept themselves in Places of Advantage, and durst not descend into indifferent Ground. He with uncommon Bravery advances towards them, attacks them, puts them to Flight, and almost all to the Sword; so that the whole Nation was almost extirpated. Upon which he immediately determines to make himself Master of the Isle of *Anglesey*, and tho' Ships were wanting for the Expedition, that Defect was supplied by the Policy and Resolution of the General. He commanded a Body, that were acquainted with the Shallows, and could swim well, to pass over and invade the Island. At this the Islanders were amazed and confounded, supposing that nothing could withstand a People of such Resolution; whereupon they immediately surrender the Isle and beg Peace. By these Means *Agricola* became great and famous, who at his first Entrance had done such noble Exploits. And now considering that Affairs would never be settled by War, while Wrongs continued unredress'd, he resolved to cut off all just Occasions of Discontent and Revolt: For which End he began to regulate many Abuses, and reform many Corruptions, in his Family, in his Camp, and in the whole Province, having a par-

The History of ENGLAND.

a particular Regard to the poorer sort, lessening their Tributes, and Payments of Corn, in such a manner, as to render them easy; by which Means *Agricola* brought them to a general Inclination to Peace, and so turned the *Britains* Hatred into an Esteem of their Government.

Titus.

Agricola's second Campaign.

About this Time, *Titus* succeeded his Father *Vespasian* in the Empire, and continued *Agricola* in his Government; who the next Summer drew his Army together, observed excellent Methods, and exact Discipline: He gave the Enemy no Rest, and when he had sufficiently terrified them, he withheld his Hand from Acts of Hostility, to allure them to the Pleasures of Peace. These Methods of proceeding did so effectually work on many Cities, that they voluntarily submitted, gave Hostages, and permitted Forts and Garisons amongst them. All Persons now began to have an honourable Opinion of their Governor; who the better to induce them to the Pleasures of Rest and Quietness, spent this Winter in wise Projects. In private he exhorted the *Britains*, and in publick he assisted them to build Temples, Places of Resort, and stately Houses; and ordered that the Sons of the Nobility should be carefully instructed in the liberal Arts and Sciences; so that in a little Time, those who before despised the *Roman* Language, began to study the Graces of it. Now the *Roman* Modes and Dresses were in Request; the Gown commonly worn: And from thence they gradually proceeded to all their Softnesses and Incentives to Luxury, as beautiful Portico's, pleasant Baths, and exquisite Banquets, which were but the Trappings of their Yoke and Bondage, tho' by the Ignorant they were esteemed as Civility and Politeness.

His third
Year's Expedition.

The next Summer *Agricola* discovered new Parts of *Britain* yet unsubdued, and being ambitious to extend the Bounds of the *Roman* Empire, he marched Northward to the River *Tweed*, wasting all as he pass'd, fortifying the Passes, and providing them with Garisons and Provisions; so that he had all the Success he could expect.

His fourth
Year's Expedition.

In the fourth Summer he successfully settled what he had overrun, and join'd the Friths of *Glota* and *Bodotria*, *Dunbritten* and *Edinburgh*, by Forts and Garrisons; so that the *Romans* were Masters of all *South Britain* or *England*: On which Account *Titus* was a fifteenth time saluted Emperor; but he dying shortly after, was succeeded

ceeded by his Brother *Domitian*, who continued *Agricola* Domitian.
in this Country, and still with Success; who in the fifth Agricola's
Year, took Shipping, and sail'd to the Northern Isles, fifth Year's
the *Orcades*, Nations unknown to the *Romans*, which he Expedition.
subdued after many prosperous Encounters; and then he
placed Garisons on the Coasts towards *Ireland*, having
some Thoughts of attempting that Island. The next Sum-
mer he marched beyond *Bodotria*, and at the same Time
fitted out a Fleet. Thus *Agricola* was the first that se-
conded his Land Forces by a Navy, which amaz'd and
frighten'd the *Caledonians*, because if once their Seas were
discovered all Hopes of Retreat would vanish: Neverthe-
less, the *Caledonians* armed, resolving to discourage the
Romans by being Aggressors; which had such an effect
on many of the *Romans*, that they persuaded *Agricola* not
to proceed, but retreat with Honour, rather than be re-
pel'd with Shame. But he had too much Courage to be
dissuaded, he marches on, and to prevent being surrounded
by the Enemy, he marches in three Columns, which
when the *Caledonians* perceived, they joined their Force,
and attack'd the ninth Legion in the Night, and broke
into their Camp with great Slaughter. But *Agricola* be-
ing informed of this, followed them, and fell on the Rear
with his light Horse and Foot; the rest at the same time
giving a great Shout. The Day coming on, the *Britains*
Eyes were dazzled with the glittering of the *Roman* En-
signs, and 'tis likely the War had been at an end by a
complete Victory, had not the *Britains* drawn off to the
Woods and Bogs. About this Time a *German* Cohort
mutinied, slew their Centurion and other Officers, and to
avoid Punishment, put to Sea in three light Gallies, with-
out any Pilot, and were carried by the Tide and Weather
round the Coasts; and by this means discovered to the *Ro-*
mans that *Britain* was an Island.

Britain dis-
covered to
be an Island.

Notwithstanding this, the *Britains* were not dejected, A. D. 84
tho' too late they found, that a common Danger could
not be repel'd, but by Confederacy and Union. They made
Galgacus Commander in chief, who assembled all their
Forces, in Number about thirty thousand, besides a great
Number of Youth and vigorous old Men, who had been
excellent Soldiers, and still retained the Scars of their
Bravery: They pitch'd their Camp on the Hill *Grampius*,
now *Grantztain* in *Scotland*. On the other Side, *Agri-*
cola having sent his Fleet before, followed in Person with
his whole Army. Upon the Approach of both Armies,

The *Britains*
last Struggle
under *Galg-*
gacus.

all Persons with Impatience attended the Success of this deciding Battel. 'Tis said, that *Galgacus*, with a Warmth and elevated Courage, spoke after this manner to his Soldiers. "That the future Happiness and Freedom of the whole Island, did depend on the Fate of this important Day: That as hitherto we have been free from foreign Tyranny, and enjoyed all the Blessings of Liberty: so now let us shew our selves Men, and preserve our Nation from Ruin. Beyond us is no Nation, nothing but Waves and Rocks; on that Side, nothing but Bondage and Slavery is to be expected from the *Romans*, a People unsatiable in their Lusts, and unbounded in their Ambition; those Robbers of the World, and Ravagers of the Universe, who give the false Names of Empire and Government to Devastations, Murders, and total Extirpations. There you, my dear Country Men, see nothing but Tribute and Slavery; here Death or Liberty." This brave Speech was seconded by the universal Acclamations of the Army. *Agricola* on the other Hand encouraged his Men, with all the Force and Charms of the *Roman* Eloquence; after which they join'd Battel. The *Britains* shew'd great Art and Courage, who with their broad Swords and short Bucklers, could ward off the Enemies Darts. To prevent which Inconveniency, *Agricola* ordered the *Batavian* and *Tungrian* Cohorts to advance with their sharp-pointed Bucklers, which so mangled their Faces, that they were obliged to retire with the greatest Precipitation. The *Romans* by the admirable Skill of their General, persued their Advantage with Vigour, so that at last the poor *Britains* were entirely dispers'd, and had been all cut to pieces, had not Night and Weariness put an end to the Chase. *Agricola* having thus subdued the *Britains*, sent out his Fleet along the Coast, who also discovered *Britain* to be an Island, and they subdued the *Orcades*, which had not been heard of till then. Thus after forty two Years Struggle of a barbarous and disunited People, against the most powerful Nation in the World, most part of *Britain* was reduced into a Province of the *Roman* Empire. This was completed in the fourth Year of *Domitian's* Reign, about a hundred and thirty eight Years after *Julius Caesar's* Entrance, Anno Domini 84 or 85, when *Agricola* was recalled out of *Britain*.

The *Britains* defeated.

The Island made a *Roman* Province.

From

From this Time for three hundred and twenty Years, Britain was subject to the Romans, who made great Advantages of the Country, and laid heavy Tributes on the People. But from *Agricola's* Departure, we have but broken Accounts of the Transactions of *Britain*, which are gathered from several Parts of the *Roman* Historians. *Domitian* was succeeded by *Nerva*, in whose Reign, and *Nerva* also in that of *Trajan* we have but little Account of *Trajan*. *Britain*; only that there were great Commotions in the Isle. But *Hadrian* being proclaimed Emperor, and receiving Advice, that the Northern *Britains* made Incursions, he sent *Julius Severus*, whom he soon recalled, but with an Army came over in Person, encountered the barbarous People in the North, recovered such Forts as they had taken, and drove them into the Woods and Mountains. And for the better Establishment of future Peace, in the Year 121, he caused a mighty Wall to be made of Wood and Earth, extending from the River *Eden* in *Cumberland*, to the River *Tine* in *Northumberland*, eighty Miles in Length; after which he returned triumphantly to *Rome*, where he gained the Title of *Restorer of Britain*, which Motto was stamped on his Coin. The *Britains* now readily conformed themselves to the *Roman* Laws, as well Civil as Military, under the Direction of *Priscus Licinius* then Pro-prætor.

A. D. 121.
Hadrian
makes a
Wall in *Brit-*
tain.

Hadrian being dead, *Antoninus Pius* succeeded him, whose Lieutenant, *Lollius Urbicus*, defeated the *Britains*, and built another Wall between *Edinburgh* and *Dunbritton Fritbs*: On which Account, tho' he had never seen *Britain*, he obtained the Title of *Britannicus*. After him *Antoninus Philosophus* obtained the Empire, who sent into *Britain* *Calpurnius Agricola* to be his Lieutenant, who partly by his Prudence, and partly by Force, settled Affairs in the North. *Beda* tells us, that, in the latter end of this Emperor's Reign, King *Lucius*, one of those allowed by the *Romans*, sent to *Eleutherius* Bishop of *Rome*, signifying his Intentions of embracing the Christian Religion. *Eleutherius* sent hither two eminent Men, *Fugatius* and *Damianus*. *Lucius* received this Faith, and it soon spread thro' a great part of the Nation: So that *Lucius* is supposed to be the first Christian King in the World, and *Britain* the first Province that embraced the Gospel by publick Authority.

Antoninus
Pius.

Antoninus
Philosophus.

King *Lucius*
with others
receive Chri-
stianity.

In the Reign of *Commodus* the next Emperor, the *North-Britains* became more troublesome than ever, who

The History of ENGLAND.

having passed the Wall, cut off the *Roman* General, and most of his Army, and then made terrible Devastations in the Country. The Emperor sent *Ulpus Marcellus* against them, a wise Governor, who soon put an end to those Troubles, chastis'd the *Britains* for their Revolt, and restored Discipline amongst the *Roman* Soldiers; for which Services the wicked Emperor discharged him of his Office. From this time the Army began to mutiny, and would not own *Commodus* for their Emperor; but *Perennis* his Favourite, by Threats, attempts to redress these Disorders, displacing Officers, and putting Inferiors in their room; but the Soldiers accused him of High Treason, for which he was executed. Upon his Death, *Pertinax*, afterward Emperor, undertook the Charge of *Britain*, but was soon dismiss'd, and succeeded by *Albinus*, who declined the Title of *Cesar*, which was offer'd him; but afterwards on a false Report of the Emperor's Death, in a Speech, he declared for the Senatorian, against the Imperial Power; for which he was discharged, and *Junius Severus* put in his Place. *Commodus* not long after being slain, and the Reigns of *Pertinax* and *Julian* being short, *Albinus* was found at the Head of the Army in *Britain*, when *Severus* began to reign, which he transported into *Gaul* against him; but *Severus* attackt him near *Lyons*, beat his Forces, and slew him. *Severus* being settled in the Empire, divided *Britain* into two Governments or Prefectures; *Heracitus* commanded the South, and *Virius Lupus* the North, who was so infested by the *Caledonians*, that he was obliged to purchase a Truce with Money, *A. D.* 197, and in the fourth Year of *Severus*'s Reign.

Pertinax.
Julian.
Severus.

Britain divided into
two Parts.

A. D. 208.

Eleven Years after, the North *Britains* were up in Arms, and had such Success, that the Legions and Province were in great Danger: Upon this News, the Emperor tho' gouty and above sixty Years old, resolved to come in Person, with his two Sons *Caracalla* and *Geta*. The *Britains* at the Emperor's Approach, offered him an honourable Peace: But he refused their Proposals, being desirous to add the Title of *Britannicus* to his former Titles. *Geta* being left in the Southern Parts, he with his Son *Caracalla*, marched against the *Caledonians*, where with cutting down of Woods, making of Bridges, draining of Bogs and Meres, the Enemy's Ambuscades, and Sicknes, he lost above fifty thousand Men; yet he prosecuted his Attempts so resolutely, that he compelled them to submit, and deliver up a considerable Part of their

Coun-

Coun
Had
tannic
and h
or To
ill Li
revolv
mand
great
and c
no Se
disord
Can
receiv
Broth
twelv
Macr
Gord
Clau
only
rants
trici
vern
vast
tiabl
voure
his Su
peror
Jest
Probu
recom
Empe
his Fr
by cor
tor an
Spani
Wine
dians
as is f
Camb
Plain
Probu
this I
rinus
who f

Country, and all their Arms; to secure which, he repaired *Hadrian's Wall*. He took upon him the Title of *Britannicus Maximus*, and ordered it to be stamp'd on his own and his Son's Coins. The Emperor retires to *Eboracum* or *York*, leaving *Caracalla* to manage his Affairs, whose ill Life caused the *Caledonians* to break their Articles and revolt; which so enraged the old Emperor, that he commanded a general Massacre, which was executed with great Severity. After which he finds himself declining, and cries out; I have been all that Man can be, but it is of no Service to me now; and that he had found the Empire disordered, but now had left it in Peace. *Severus dies at York.*

Caracalla, having made Peace with the *Britains*, and received Hostages from them, returned to *Rome* with his Brother *Geta*. For above sixty Years, and the Reigns of twelve succeeding Emperors after *Caracalla*, namely, *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Pupienus*, *Gordian*, *Philip*, *Decius*, *Gallus*, *Valerian*, *Gallienus*, and *Claudius*, we have no Account of the Affairs of *Britain*; only in the Reign of *Gallienus*, some of the thirty Tyrants, as *Lollianus*, *Victorinus*, and *Posthumus*, the *Tetrici*, and *Marinus*, are supposed to have usurped the Government here, since their Coins are found in such vast Quantities in this Nation. *Bonofus*, an insatiable Vassal to *Bacchus*, and by Birth a *Briton*, endeavoured to make himself Emperor, under *Aurelian*, and his Successor *Tacitus*, but was defeated by *Probus* the Emperor, and hanged himself, and gave the Occasion of the Jest, That there hung a Bottle, not a Man. After that, *Probus* prevented a new Rebellion in *Britain*. *Victorinus* recommended a new Lieutenant there, who set up for Emperor; *Probus* upbraided him with the Disloyalty of his Friend; *Victorinus* undertook to rectify his Mistake, by coming suddenly into *Britain*, where he slew the Traitor and saved the Province. *Probus* also gave leave to the *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and *Britains* to plant Vines, and to make Wine. He also having subdued the *Vandals* and *Burgundians*, sent Numbers of them to inhabit *Britain*, who as is supposed, had their Camp on *Gogmagog Hills* near *Cambridge*, where to this Day is to be seen a large Plain, surrounded with large double Trenches. After *Probus*, *Carus* succeeded in the Empire, who committed this Island, with the Western Provinces, to his Son *Carinus*, but he in two Years time was slain by *Dioclesian*, who succeeded in the Empire, *A.D.* 284. *Aurelian.
Tacitus.
Probus.

Carus.
Carinus.
Dioclesian.*

The History of ENGLAND.

Carausius, a Man of mean Abstract but great Courage, assumed the Title of Emperor, and took Possession of *Britain*; whither he brought his Fleet, built more Ships after the *Roman* manner, and was joined by the Legions; kept out foreign Forces, press'd the *Gallick* Merchants to his Service, garisoned *Bononia* in *Gaul*, and converted the Revenues of *Britain* and *Batavia* to his own Use; and by the Hopes of Booty in the Provinces, he drew the *Barbarians* to his Alliance, particularly the *Franks*, whom he had trained to the Sea Service, and infested all the Sea Coast about him. *Maximian* who was ordered to procure his Death, marched against him with a brave Army, but for want of Seamen, he was obliged to come to a Treaty, in which it was concluded, that *Carausius* should enjoy the Government of *Britain*, as the properest Person to defend the Inhabitants against all Invasions; and this he held for seven Years in perfect Peace. But when *Constantius* was made *Cesar* by *Maximian*, and had taken *Bononia*, *Carausius* was kill'd by the Treachery of *Allectus*, his Bosom Friend, who usurped the Government, and kept it three Years.

Carausius is slain by *Allectus*.

At length *Constantius* man'd several Fleets, so that *Allectus* grew sensible, that the Ocean was more his Prison than his Defence. *Constantius* having landed his Soldiers, burnt all his Ships, that they might confide in nothing, but their own Valour. *Allectus* retreated, was attackt by *Asclepiodotus*, Captain of his Life Guard, and killed in a Skirmish. Upon this, had not a Party of the *Romans* opportunely come in, *London* had been pillaged by the *Franks* and other *Barbarians*. By this the Province of *Britain* was recovered to the *Romans*. Not long after a dreadful Persecution broke out under *Dioclesian*, and several are supposed to have suffered here, as *St. Alban*, *Julius*, *Aaron*, &c.

Allectus slain

A Persecution in *Britain*.

Dioclesian having resigned the Empire, the Western Provinces with *Britain* fell to *Constantius*, who fell sick and died. He was succeeded by his renowned Son *Constantine*, who was the first, that by Law, established Christianity in the *Roman* Empire, and in a few Years became Master of the whole, against the Power of all Usurpers and Opposers.

Constantine.

But afterwards removing his Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, he opened the Way for Invasions and Incursions in the Western Provinces, by which he lost not only *Britain*, but laid the Foundation of the Ruin of the Empire.

Empire
to for
which
Prim
cunda
ma C
This
Cesar
certai
posed
amon
Arles
Adelp
Con
his th
giving
tified
stans,
ing on
by the
those
himse
who f
mitted
and F
of his
Outra
who i
woul
himse
Chain
Injury
failing
which
though
was n
Consta
vice th
ledoni
picinu
picinu
and th
Empe
this l
new,

Empire. Yet he new modelled the whole, dividing it into fourteen Provinces, called Diocesēs. *Britain* was one, which was divided into three Provinces, called *Britannia Prima*, whose Metropolis was *London*; *Britannia Secunda*, the chief Town *Isca*, now *Caerleon*; and *Maxima Caesariensis*, the Metropolis *Eboracum* now *York*: This last was again sub-divided into two, viz. *Maxima Caesariensis*, and *Flavia Caesariensis*, but by whom is not certain. *Britain* had in it twenty eight Cities, all supposed to be Bishopricks, three of whose Bishops were amongst the thirty three that composed the Council of *Arles*, viz. *Eborius* of *York*, *Restitutus* of *London*, and *Adelphius* of *Colchester*, or perhaps *Caerleon*. A. D. 314.

Constantine the Great dying, divided the Empire among his three Sons, *Constantinus*, *Constans*, and *Constantius*, giving *Britain* and the West to the eldest, who not satisfied with his Division, invaded that of his Brother *Constans*, and was slain after three Years Reign. *Constans* seizing on the West, held it eight or nine Years, but was slain by the Treason of *Magnentius* a *Britain*, who possessed those Parts for three Years, then laid violent Hands on himself, and left the whole Government to *Constantius*, who sent into *Britain* a Notary called *Paulus*, who committed horrible Extortions and Cruelties, on the Estates and Fortunes of the Innocent, to the perpetual Disgrace of his Master *Constantius*, who supported him in all his Outrages. *Martinus* was then Governor of the Province, who interceded with *Paulus* to stop his Hand, or else he would depart the Isle. On this *Paulus* accused the Governor himself, and urged that he might be seized and carried in Chains to the Emperor. *Martinus* provoked at such an Injury, drew his Sword, and struck at his Accuser; but failing in his Aim, he turned the Point against himself, which still added to the Miseries of those whom *Paulus* thought guilty. *Julian*, afterwards called the Apostate, was made Governor of *Britain*, about the latter end of *Constantius's* Reign, who being then at *Paris*, upon Advice that the *Scots* from *Ireland*, and the *Picts* from *Caledonia* had invaded the Roman Province, sent over *Lupicinus* to repel them, and settle Peace in the Island. *Lupicinus* landed his Forces in *Kent*, marched to *London*, and then was recalled by *Julian*, who was then made Emperor. About this Time, the *Arian* Heresy disturbed this Island, a Land, saith *Gildas*, greedy of every thing new, but stedfast in nothing. The Emperor *Constantius* Britain disturbed by Arianism.

conven'd a Council of four hundred Bishops at *Ariminum* in favour of this Doctrine, and allowed them all necessary Provisions; but all chose to live at their own Charges, except three *Britains*, who by reason of their Poverty, accepted of the Emperor's Allowance.

Julian.
Jovian.
Valentinian.

A. D. 368.

Theodosius
repels the
Scots and
Picts.

Whilst *Julian* the Apostate and *Jovian* reign'd, we find nothing concerning *Britain*; after whom *Valentinian* succeeded in the Western Empire, who as he was passing thro' *Gaul*, received the melancholy News, that the *Scots* from *Ireland*, the *Picts* and *Attacots* from the North, together with the *Saxons* and *Franks* from the East and South, had harra'ss'd and ruin'd almost all *Britain*; that they had killed *Nectaridius* the Admiral, and by *Stratagem* had surpris'd the General *Buchobandes*. *Valentinian* having sent *Severus*, and then *Jovinus*, to suppress them, but with small Success; he sent *Theodosius*, a Person of celebrated Valour and Conduct, who assembling an Army of select young Men, with the *Herulian*, *Batavian* and other Troops, marched directly to *London*; there dividing his Forces into several Parties, he encounter'd the Enemy laden with Spoils, beat them, retook the Plunder and Prisoners; restoring all to the right Owners, except a small Part, which he gave to the weary Soldiers: He entred *London* triumphantly, and restored it to its former Splendor. Having thus subdued the Enemy, he proclaimed Impunity to such as would immediately return to Obedience: But the Enemy being numerous, of many Nations, and in diverse Parties, to finish all, he found it necessary to call in the Assistance of *Civilis* and *Dulcitius*, the former eminent for his Wisdom and Honesty, and the latter for his military Abilities.

Theodosius having thus subdued these different sorts of People, and being employed in repairing the Cities and Castles, and in laying the Foundations of a lasting Peace, one *Valentinus* a *Pannonian*, a Person of a turbulent and haughty Spirit, who had been banished into *Britain*, with other Exiles, and Soldiers, conspired against him, as the only Obstacle to his Designs of obtaining the Government of this Isle. This Man, and some of his principal Accomplices being discovered, were delivered to *Dulcitius*, and received such Rewards as their Crimes deserved; but *Theodosius* made not too strict an Inquiry after the rest, they being many, lest such Methods of proceeding might increase the Danger. He then, with great Success reformed many Irregularities, recovered many Cities

Cities
Borde
its for
it, an
Lond
confi
the So
East a
North
burgh
happil
the E
stin
Val
Sons,
sius th
tish C
the fir
At the
servat
and th
the Is
the be
Empe
part p
that p
the B
The N
Soldie
and m
reduc
of Co
his O
lich
these
the E
tain fo
secure
ted on
ing the
one G
Then
past in
Years

Cities and Garisons, and set Guards and Watches on the Borders. Having thus restored the Northern Province to its former Condition, he appointed a new Governor over it, and ordered it to be called *Valentia*, and the City of London, *Augusta*. And now the Roman part of Britain consisted of five distinct Provinces, viz. *Britannia Prima* in the South, *Secunda* in the West, *Flavia Caesariensis* in the East and middle Parts, *Maxima Caesariensis* towards the North, and *Valentia* beyond *Severus's* Wall to *Edinburgh*, and *Dunbritton* Friths. These things being thus happily accomplished, *Theodosius* was recalled, whom the Emperor received with the highest Marks of Distinction.

Valentinian was succeeded in the Empire by his two *A. D. 382.* Sons, *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, and the latter chose *Theodosius* the younger to be his Partner. One *Maximus* a *British* Commander, was saluted Emperor, which proved *Maximus* ^{claims the} the first great Step towards the entire Ruin of *Britain*. ^{Empire.}

At the beginning *Maximus* employed his Time for the Preservation of this Isle, driving back the *Scots* into *Ireland*, and the *Picts* beyond the Walls; after which he quitted the Isle, carrying over most of the *Roman* Forces, and the best of the *British* Youth, in opposition to the legal Emperors. These never returned again, but for the most part perished with their Commander; the rest settled in that part of *Gaul* called *Armorica*, which afterwards from the *Britains* had the Name of *Britain*, now *Bretaigne*. The Nation being thus weakened by the Departure of the Soldiers, the *Scots* and *Picts* returned with greater Fury, and made terrible Ravages and Devastations: In order to reduce which, *Chrysanthus*, the Son of *Marcian*, Bishop of *Constantinople*, was made Governor, who discharged his Office with great Reputation; but whether he, or *Stilicho*, Governor to the young Emperor *Honorius*, reduced *Honorius.* these Northern Enemies, is not certain. Not long after the Empire being in great Distress, the Legion sent into *Britain* for that purpose was recalled. The Forces in *Britain* to secure themselves from the *Vandals*, *Sweves*, and *Alans*, elected one *Marcus* to be their Emperor, whom for not answering their Expectation they soon dispatched: then they set up one *Gratian*, whom after four Months they likewise slew. Then they chose one *Constantine*, a common Soldier, who past into *Gaul* with the rest of the Forces, where four Years after he lost his Life and his whole Army. *A. D. 407.*

The Britains
set up several
Emperors.

Now

The History of ENGLAND.

The Romans
quit the Ju-
risdiction of
Britain.

Now in most parts of *Europe* as well as in *Britain*, the Publick Affairs began to decline: The *Vandals* entred *Spain*; the *Alans*, *Portugal*; the *Goths*, *Italy*, and *Rome* it self; and the *Britains* were exposed to the merciless Rage and Fury of the barbarous *Scots* and *Picts*. Now the *Britains* implore the Assistance of the *Romans*, they petition the Emperor *Honorius*, who being distress'd, and not able to defend *Rome* against *Alarick*, excused himself, advised them to use their own Methods for Safety, and acquitted them of all *Roman* Jurisdiction. The *Britains* being thus discharged and abandoned, began to live after their own Laws and Institutions. The *Armoricians* in *Gaul* followed their Example. Thus fell the vast *Roman* Empire, first in *Britain*, soon after in *Italy*, and with all that was *Roman*, as Learning, Valour, Eloquence, History, Civility, and even Language it self. This happened about the Year 410, which was 463 Years after *Julius Caesar's* first landing, 367 after the *Romans* got Possession under the Emperor *Claudius*, and 326 after *Agricola* conquered it under *Domitian*.

Whilst the *Romans* continued in this Island, for the better Conveniency of Passage from Garison to Garison, from Station to Station, from Colony to Colony, and from one Municipium or Corporation to another, they had their publick High-ways, called the Consulary, Prætorian, Regal and Military Ways, &c. and by the Moderns Strates or Streets, of which four were of principal Note, viz. *Via Vetelingiana*, since called *Watling Street*: *Via Icenorum*, or *Ikenild Street*; *Erming Street*, and the *Foss-way*; two whereof ran thro' the Breadth, and two thro' the Length of the Nation. These Ways had several Privileges and Immunities; Strangers were protected from Arrests; there were many Mansions for Travellers to rest themselves, Inns for Entertainment; and Mutations where they changed Post Horses, Waggons and Chariots. These and other stupendous Works of the *Romans*, have in these latter Ages, been thought impossible to have been done by Men; but nevertheless they remain Specimens of the Glory, Grandeur, Riches, Power and Industry of the *Romans*, before the Declension of their vast Empire.

SECT.

S E C T. III.

From the Romans quitting their Jurisdiction of the Island, to the Destruction of Britain by the Picts, Scots, and Saxons.

THE *Britains* being thus at Liberty to live according A. D. 410. to their own Laws, at first proceeded in their Administration with some Vigor and Resolution; but being more fond of the Name of Liberty, than acquainted with the Difficulties of Government, they grew violent in what they understood not; none were more brave and daring in Council, and none so relenting in Action; all understood the Scheme, but none would put it in Practice. Thus in a short Time when the Heat of Liberty was spent, and the Enemies daily encreased, they found their own Temper returning upon them, a Slothfulness of Body, and a Slavishness of Mind; and then they perceived that the Love only of Freedom could not protect them; but such Diligence, Wisdom, and Bravery, which they wanted: So that they were more wretched under the Burden of their own Liberty, than under a foreign Yoke. They were obliged to send a second Time to the Emperor *Honorius* for Assistance against the *Picts* and *Scots*. *Britains infested by the Picts and Scots.*

Honorius more out of Compassion than Ambition, sent The Romans assist them and return. A. D. 418. a Legion, who coming suddenly over, made great Havock among the *Picts*, soon drove them beyond their Borders, and rebuilt the Wall which *Agricola* and *Antoninus Pius* had made between the Frith of *Edinburgh* and *Dunbritton*; but as soon as the *Romans* were returned, the barbarous People broke down this Wall, it being only built with Turf, and poured in on the Province like a Torrent, destroying all with Fire and Sword, wheresoever they came: On the other hand the *Scots* landed in great Swarms, and wasted all before them with no less Cruelty: So that the poor *Britains* were miserably bandied between two insolent and merciless Enemies, striving which should exceed the other in Spoil, Rapine, and Bloodshed.

The *Britains* not being able to bear these Miseries any longer, a third Time sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, after the

The Romans
assist them
again.

And build
the Picts
Wall.

the most submissive manner, with their Garments rent, and Dust on their Heads, begging, that the Emperor would not suffer them to become a Prey and Scorn to Barbarians. *Valentinian* the Third then reigning, pitied their Misfortunes, and sent Forces to their Relief, who made a terrible Slaughter among the Enemies, rescued the *Britains* from these Barbarians, and to prevent the like Incursions, they built a Wall of solid Stone twelve Foot high and eight broad, and fortified it with strong Towers, crossing the Isle from the *Tine* to the River *Eden*, eighty Miles in Length; which Wall is now vulgarly called the *Picts* Wall. That part of *Britain* called *Valentia* was left wholly to the Enemy. The *Romans* who came to assist the *Britains*; having thus secured the Nation, let them understand, that they must not expect from them any more such Expeditions for their Security; exhorting them courageously to defend their Country and Liberties against those Barbarians; to which purpose they instructed them in the Art of War, and left Patterns of their Arms and Weapons; then they took their Leave with Design never to return, about the Year 435, which was 488 after the first Entrance of *Julius Caesar*.

A. D. 435.
Britains har-
rass'd by the
Scots and
Picts.

The Island being thus abandoned by the *Romans*, the *Scots* and *Picts* return with more Fury than ever, and without Resistance, took Possession of the Country as far as the Wall. In the mean Time the cowardly Guards that were placed on the Wall, suffered the *Picts* to pull them down headlong with their Engines and long Hooks; so that in a short Time they became Masters of the Wall, and of the deserted Frontiers. The Inhabitants flying were pursued by the Barbarians, who made a terrible Slaughter of them, and what added to the Misfortune of those that fled, was the Scarcity of all manner of Provision, which made them seize on whatsoever they could find, to allay their Hunger. From hence arose new Mischiefs and Discords amongst themselves, and thence civil Wars; a People in civil Contest the most obstinate and resolute, tho' feeble and irresolute against their foreign Invaders. In the Time of these Troubles and Calamities in the State, the Church was disturbed with *Pelagianism*, by means of *Agricola*, Disciple of *Pelagius* a Monk, sometime of *Bangor* in *Flintshire*. The weak Christians called in to their Assistance *Germanus* Bishop of *Auxerre*, and *Lupus* Bishop of *Tryes* in *Gaul*, who by their assiduous preaching confirmed many in the Faith,

gained many more, and lastly in a publick Disputation at *Verulam*, confuted the chief of the Hereticks.

The miserable Remains of the *Britains* being thus harassed by their Enemies, addrest themselves by doleful Letters to the renowned *Ætius*, the *Roman* Lieutenant in *Gaul*. They began in these Words: 'To *Ætius* thrice Consul, the Groans of the *Britains*. The Barbarians drive us to the Sea, and the Sea drives us back to the Barbarians; so that we must either be slain by the one or drowned by the other; besides Famine and Mortality rage in this Land to a violent Degree.' To these mournful Petitions they received no Answer; for the Empire being infested with *Huns*, *Goths* and *Vandals*, was not in a Condition to send them Relief. Thus being destitute of all human Assistance, some yielded themselves to the Mercy of their Enemies; others made a stout Resistance, so that the *Scots* and *Picts* were quite tired out, which caused them to retire for a while; and this gave the *Britains* Leisure to cultivate the Land, which brought forth such a plentiful Crop, as had not been known in the Memory of Man, which occasioned the breaking out of fresh Mischiefs; as Riot, Luxury, and Wantonness; hating Truth and loving Lies, calling Good Evil, and Evil Good; all, both Laity and Clergy acted directly against the publick Good and Safety. Thus the Priests and People being wretchedly qualified for Government, resolved to chuse several Kings of their own. These Kings were no sooner chosen, but were as suddenly deposed and murdered by their Electors, to make way for others.

They address themselves to the Roman Lieutenant in vain.

The Affairs in the State being managed in this violent Manner, the Church was very much disturbed; for *Pelagianism* spreading again in the Country, the *British* Priests send again to *Germanus* for Assistance, who with *Severus* a Disciple of his former Associate *Paulus*, came into this Island, apprehended the Heads and Teachers of this new Doctrine, and sent them into Exile. *Germanus* being departed, the *Scots* and *Picts* return, and threaten the Destruction of the whole Land, but were prevented by a dreadful Pestilence that broke out, and swept away such Numbers, that the Living were scarce able to bury the Dead; and as soon as the Contagion ceas'd, the Enemy advanced with merciless Fury, as far as *Stamford* in *Lincolnshire*.

At

The Saxons
arrive under
Hengist and
Horfa, to
their Assist-
ance.

A. D. 449.

At this Time *Vortigern*, a haughty and insolent Prince, neither wise in Counsel, nor experienced in War, was King of the *Britains*, who in a grand Council, resolved to send for the Heathen *Saxons*, to expel the Northern Nations. This which was designed for a Defence, proved the Ruin of the Nation. Accordingly Ambassadors were dispatched into *Germany*. The *Saxons* easily complied with their Requests, and fitted out three long Vessels called *Chiules*, under the Conduct of *Hengist* and *Horfa*, two Brothers, descended from that antient *Woden*, from whom the Royal Family of the *Saxons* derive their Pedigree. These Leaders, with fifteen hundred Followers, arriving in *Britain*, were welcomed both by the Prince and People; and the Isle of *Thanet*, where they landed, was appointed for their Habitation, and a League was immediately made with them: It was stipulated that they should defend the *Britains* Country, and that for their Service they should have sufficient Pay and Rewards. By this Means the Affairs of *Britain* received a mighty Change, which happened in the Year 449, and in the twenty fourth Year of *Pharamond* the first King of *France*, which was thirty nine Years after the *Romans* first quitted the *Britains*, and fourteen Years after they had totally abandoned the Isle.

The *Saxons* beginning thus to inhabit *Britain*, under *Hengist* and *Horfa*, were very serviceable against the *Scots* and *Picts*, who had made an Irruption as far as *Stamford*; but finding the Island to be rich and fruitful, and the Inhabitants enervated with Vice and Luxury, they send home to invite others to be Sharers of their future Success and Expectations: Upon which Invitation they fitted out seventeen Vessels, and filled them with *Saxons*, *Jutes*, and *Angles*, three Nations in *Germany*; these came over, who with those that were here before, made up a complete Army.

Vortigern
gives Kent
to *Hengist*.

With these also came over *Rowena*, Daughter of *Hengist*, a Lady of admirable Beauty; with whose Charms *Vortigern* was so captivated, that he immediately offered to make her his Wife: To this *Hengist* complied, gave the King his Daughter, and as a Gratuity received all *Kent*, and was also suffered by *Vortigern* to send for more *Saxons*, under *Octa* and *Ebysa*, Son and Nephew to *Hengist*, under the specious Pretence of securing the Northern Parts, as *Hengist* did the South; who came over in

forty

forty
Picts
part o
making
Degr
encre
and th
He
decla
he we
try; t
Saxon
and t
their
slain i
Bishop
Shelte
suffer
Nation
Home
rable I
At
fight f
Saxon
plies,
tought
specifi
River
Horfa
gern, t
Field
tains b
of five
Vort
him in
tue of
near th
buried
Heng
called
Britain
sternati
the beg
this wa
and he
oni

forty Vessels, arrived at the *Orcades*, suppress'd both the *Picts* and *Scots*, and afterwards seated themselves in that part of the Island called *Northumberland*. *Hengist* still making Advantage of the King's Imprudence, sends by Degrees for more Men and Ships, till he had sufficiently encreased his Number; then he fixed the *Jutes* in *Kent*, and the *Saxons* and *Angles*, in other Parts of the Country.

Hengist being thus settled, and confiding in his Numbers, declares, that if the *Britains* would not supply him better, he would break the League, and waste the whole Country; they civilly refused his Demands, whereupon the *Saxon* Commanders secretly made a Peace with the *Picts*, and turned their Arms against their Allies, and ravaged their Country with Fire and Sword. The People were slain in Heaps, the Priests butchered at the Altar, and the Bishops massacred without any Distinction: Some for Shelter fled to the Woods and Mountains, where they suffered the Extremity of Famine, others into foreign Nations, particularly *Armorica*; those that remained at Home lived in perpetual Fears, and led a hard and miserable Life, in the Woods and Mountains.

At last *Vortimer*, Son of *Vortigern*, undertook to fight for his distressed Country: He thrice shut up the *Saxons* in the Isle of *Thanet*, who receiving fresh Supplies, broke through and escaped the Danger; yet he fought with them four other Battels, three of which are specified by Place and Circumstance. The first on the River *Darwent* in *Kent*, the second at *Episford*, wherein *Horfa* the Brother of *Hengist* fell, together with *Katigern*, the other Son of *Vortigern*. The third was in a Field by *Stonar*, now *Folkstone* in *Kent*, where the *Britains* beat the *Saxons* into their Ships; and for the Space of five Years they never attempted to land again.

Vortimer before his Death desired the People to bury him in the Port of *Stonar*, believing that the secret Virtue of his Bones, would prevent the *Saxons* from landing near that Place; but they neglected his Commands and buried him at *Lincoln*.

Hengist and his Son *Esk* fought the *Britains*, in a Place *A. D. 457.* called *Crecaanford*, and slew four thousand of them; the *Britains* deserted *Kent*, and fled to *London* in a great Consternation; from which Victory, Authors generally date the beginning of the Kingdom of *Kent*, under *Hengist*; *Kent* the first this was about eight Years after he first entered the Isle, and he reigned thirty one Years after. But *Vortigern* still main-

Saxons turn their Arms against the Britains.

Vortimer drives the Saxons back

Saxon Kingdom in Britain.

The History of ENGLAND.

maintaining the War against the *Saxons*, they consult how to entrap him and his Army, to which end they sent Ambassadors to offer Peace, and to renew their former Amity: *Vortigern* agreed to an Interview in the most friendly manner without Arms, but the treacherous *Hengist* ordered their Followers to conceal their Daggers under their Garments, and at the Word of Command to fall on the *Britains*, and destroy all but the King: The Word was given, the *Saxons* fell on the *Britains*, and dispatched three hundred of the *British* Nobility. *Vortigern* was put in Chains, who for his Ransom gave to the *Saxons* those Countries, which afterwards were called *Essex*, *Middlesex* and *Sussex*: This so strengthened *Hengist*, and confirmed him in his new Kingdom of *Kent*, and gave the *Saxons* such Footing in this Isle, that the *Britains* could never after repel them.

*Aurelius
Ambrosius
relieves the
Britains.*

For many succeeding Centuries, there never wanted a *Saxon* Monarch in this Isle. But *Aurelius Ambrosius*, descended of *Roman* Ancestors, and such as had born Regal Dignity in the Island, succeeding *Vortigern*, first as General, and afterwards as King, revived the Hopes of the dispirited *Britains*: Under the Conduct of this eminent Man, they in a short time gained a great Victory over the *Saxons*. After this signal Victory, *Ambrosius* conven'd the Princes and Nobility at *York*; gave Orders for the repairing the Churches, and marched to *London*, *Winchester*, and *Salisbury*, in all Places endeavouring to restore the State of the Church and Kingdom. He filled up the vacant Metropolitan Sees of *York* and *Caerleon*, with two worthy Bishops called *Samtson* and *Dubritius*; and some suppose he erected those famous Piles of Stones in *Salisbury* Plain, called *Stonehenge*, in Honour of those three hundred Noblemen massacred by *Hengist*.

A. D. 465. The *Britains* now having a little Respite from their Enemies, fall into civil Dissensions, and one of *Vortigern's* Sons named *Pascentius*, raised a Rebellion in the North, but was soon overcome and put to flight. Eight Years after, *Hengist* and his Son *Esk* engaged the *Britains*, worsted them, and took a great Booty; upon this, new Bodies of the *Saxons* come over, under the Conduct of *Ella* and his three Sons, *Cymen*, *Wlencing* and *Gissa*; these arrived in three Ships, and landed in a Place called *Cymen-Shoar* in *Sussex*. The Inhabitants in a tumultuous manner gathered to oppose them; the *Danes* received them, put them to flight, killed many, and drove the rest into

into a
the *Sa*
Territo
the *Br*
Place
doubtful
sends f
and w
four Y
having
gainst
Cea
three Y
tion of
of the
led *Su*
and 34
Brit
turers
the ren
rick, a
landed
Shore,
they g
Coasts
Sons,
Place,
beating
rish P
Share
rival o
under
Kings,
cessor.
to *Ell*
Sons f
Army,
the rig
dick; b
rick f
flew A
Follow
Six Y
who o
a River
VOL.

into a Wood, called *Andredes Leage*. They seized all the Sea Ports in *Suffex*, and continued to enlarge their Territories, till the ninth Year after their Arrival, when the *Britains* with united Forces engaged them, near a Place called *Mearcrede*, or *Burnamstede*: The Battle was doubtful, both Parties drawing off with Loss; and *Ella* sends for Supplies. Not long after, *Hengist* K. of *Kent* died, *A. D. 488.* and was succeeded by his Son *Esk*, who reigned twenty four Years, without enlarging his Dominions. But *Ella* having increased his Army, proceeded with Success against the *Britains*, laid Siege to a City called *Andres Ceaster*, took it and put all to the Sword. Thus *Ella*, three Years after the Death of *Hengist*, laid the Foundation of the second Saxon Kingdom, called the Kingdom of the South Saxons, consisting of those Parts now called *Suffex* and *Surrey*; this was begun in the Year 491, and 34 after the beginning of the Kingdom of *Kent*. *South Saxons the second Kingdom.*

Britain being now the Field of Fortune, many Adventurers came daily from *Germany*; particularly *Cerdick*, Saxons arrive under *Cerdick*. the tenth in Lineage from *Woden*, who with his Son *Cenrick*, and as many as he could transport in five Vessels, landed at a Place, which from him is called *Cerdick's Shore*, and after some Skirmishes with the Inhabitants, they got Possession of all those Countries on the Sea Coasts. About six Years after, one *Porta* with his two And *Porta*: Sons, *Bleda* and *Magla*, with two Vessels, arrived at the Place, which from him is still called *Portsmouth*; who beating those that opposed him, and having slain a *British* Prince, took for himself and Followers another Share of the Country. About seven Years after the Arrival of *Porta*, the *Britains* again united their Forces, under the Conduct of *Nazaleod*, one of their greatest *Nazaleod*. Kings, the same with *Uther Pendragon*, *Ambrosius's* Successor. Upon this *Cerdick* sends to *Esk* King of *Kent*, to *Ella* King of the South Saxons, and to *Porta* and his Sons for Aid; he commanded the right Wing of his Army, and his Son *Cenrick* the left. *Nazaleod* attackt the right with such Bravery, that he soon routed *Cerdick*; but pursuing with more Heat than Caution, *Cenrick* fell in on the Rear, recovered the Battel, and slew *Nazaleod* on the Spot, with five thousand of his *His Death*. Followers.

Six Years after, the famous *Arthur* came to the Crown, *A. D. 514.* who overthrew the Saxons in twelve Battels, the first at *Arthur succeeds him.* a River called *Glenn*; the second, third, fourth and fifth,

West-Saxons
the third
Kingdom.

near the River *Dug* or *Due*, the sixth at the River *Bafus*'s-Side, the seventh in the Wood *Chelidon*, the eighth near the Castle of *Suinnion*, the ninth in the City of *Lergis* or *Caerleon*, the tenth near a River call'd *Arderick*, the eleventh upon the Hill *Brenoin*, the twelfth on the Hill of *Badon* near *Bath*; yet notwithstanding this, *Cerdick* at length prevails, gets many Advantages over the *Britains*, being joyn'd by *Stufey* and *Withgar* his two Nephews, who came over in three Ships; and after he had Footing here for four and twenty Years, he took on him the Title of King, and founded the third Kingdom call'd *West Saxons*, containing *Devonshire*, *Somersetshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Hampshire*, and *Berkshire*; to which *Cornwall* was afterwards added. This Kingdom at last conquered all the rest, and so got the sole Command of all *England*.

A. D. 519.

East Saxons
the fourth
Kingdom.

The *Saxons* thus daily encreasing in Number, went on making new Inroachments, and in seven Years Time, founded a fourth Kingdom in *Britain*, call'd *East-Saxons*, containing *Essex*, *Middlesex*, and Part of *Hartfordshire*. It was begun in the Year 527, by *Erchenwin* the Son of *Offa*; it never came to be very considerable, tho' it had *London*, the Metropolis of *England*, under its Dominion.

A. D. 542.

—547.
Northumber-
land the fifth
Kingdom.

About fifteen Years after this, the great King *Arthur* dies, and is succeeded by *Constantine*; and about five Years after, *Ida* the *Saxon*, the tenth in Descent from *Woden*, founded the fifth Kingdom in this *Isle*, call'd the Kingdom of *Northumberland*, consisting of that Part of *Britain*, that lies North of the *Humber*: This proved a powerful Kingdom, containing *Yorkshire*, *Lancashire*, *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Westmorland* and *Northumberland*, and Part of *Scotland*, as far as *Edinburgh-Frith*; in twelve Years Time it was divided into two Parts, one call'd *Bernicia*, and the other *Deira*.

A. D. 561.

Now *Ethelbert*, the fifth King of *Kent*, began to raise Civil Wars amongst the *Saxons*, but he was twice defeated by them; and *Keaulin* King of the *West Saxons*, pursued him into his own Territories, and at *Wibbaudun* slew *Oslac* and *Cnebba*, two of his Commanders.

From hence the *Britains*, for the Space of fifty Years, received no considerable Annoyance from the *Saxons*; but from this State of Quiet and Ease, the *Britains* lost the very Sense of Industry, Courage and Virtue, and there was scarce the least Footstep of Goodness left remaining

The History of ENGLAND.

51

maintaining among all the Ranks and Degrees in the Land. The Commons had no Honour nor Justice in them; the Kings and Magistrates were mere Tyrants; and there was never such an illiterate, and corrupted Clergy as at this Time.

Urfa, the Eighth from *Woden*, began the sixth Kingdom call'd *East-Angles*, containing *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, with the Isle of *Ely*. The Subjects of this Kingdom are the more remarkable, because they afterwards gave Name to the whole Kingdom of *England*. Now the *Saxons* began again to assault the *Britains*, and in a few Years Time drove 'em from *England* into *Wales*: for *Cuthwulf*, Brother of *Keaulin*, King of the *West-Saxons*, beat 'em at *Bedenford* or *Bedford*, and took from them four good Towns, *Liganburgh*, now *Leighton*, in *Bedfordshire*, *Eglesburg*, now *Alesbury* in *Bucks*, with *Bennington* and *Ignesham*, now *Benson* and *Evesham*, in *Oxfordshire*. Six Years after *Keaulin* and his Son *Cuthwin*, again overthrew 'em at *Deorham* in *Glostershire*, slew three of their Kings, *Cormait*, *Condidan*, and *Farmmait*; and took three of their chief Cities, viz. *Glocester*, *Cirencester*, and *Badencester*, or *Bath*. Some Time after the *Britains* engaged *Keaulin*, and his Son *Cutha* at *Fethamleage*: *Cutha* was slain, and the *Saxons* gave Way, till *Keaulin* renew'd the Fight, routed the *Britains*, took many Towns, and returned richly laden with Booty: Thus the poor *Britains* continually declined, losing Ground every where; which still strengthened the *Saxons*.

A. D. 575.
East Angles
the sixth
Kingdom.

About this Time, *Cerda* founded the seventh Kingdom in this Isle, call'd the Kingdom of *Mercia*, which consisted of seventeen Counties, in the middle Part of the Nation, viz. *Glostershire*, *Herefordshire*, *Worcestershire*, *Warwickshire*, *Leicestershire*, *Rutland*, *Northamptonshire*, *Lincolnshire*, *Huntingtonshire*, *Bedfordshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Oxfordshire*, *Staffordshire*, *Shropshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Derbyshire* and *Cheshire*, and Part of *Hartfordshire*. Notwithstanding this, the *Britains* before their Departure, shew'd some Remains of their ancient Valour; for meeting with *Keaulin* at *Woden's Mount* in *Wiltshire*, they destroyed his Army, and chas'd him out of his Kingdom, who died the next Year in great Want. But this Victory prov'd but of little Advantage to the *Britains*, for the *Scots*, *Picts* and *Saxons*, uniting against them, in a few Years drove them quite out of their

A. D. 585.
Mercia the
seventh
Kingdom.

West-Saxons
the third
Kingdom.

near the River *Dug* or *Due*, the sixth at the River *Bafsus's-Side*, the seventh in the Wood *Chelidon*, the eighth near the Castle of *Suinnion*, the ninth in the City of *Lergis* or *Gaerleon*, the tenth near a River call'd *Arderick*, the eleventh upon the Hill *Brenoin*, the twelfth on the Hill of *Badon* near *Bath*; yet notwithstanding this, *Cerdick* at length prevails, gets many Advantages over the *Britains*, being joyn'd by *Stufey* and *Withgar* his two Nephews, who came over in three Ships; and after he had Footing here for four and twenty Years, he took on him the Title of King, and founded the third Kingdom call'd *West Saxons*, containing *Devonshire*, *Somersetshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Hampshire*, and *Berkshire*; to which *Cornwall* was afterwards added. This Kingdom at last conquered all the rest, and so got the sole Command of all *England*.

A. D. 519.

East Saxons
the fourth
Kingdom.

The *Saxons* thus daily encreasing in Number, went on making new Incroachments, and in seven Years Time, founded a fourth Kingdom in *Britain*, call'd *East-Saxons*, containing *Essex*, *Middlesex*, and Part of *Hartfordshire*. It was begun in the Year 527, by *Erchenwin* the Son of *Offa*; it never came to be very considerable, tho' it had *London*, the Metropolis of *England*, under its Dominion.

A. D. 542.

—547.
Northumber-
land the fifth
Kingdom.

About fifteen Years after this, the great King *Arthur* dies, and is succeeded by *Constantine*; and about five Years after, *Ida* the *Saxon*, the tenth in Descent from *Woden*, founded the fifth Kingdom in this *Isle*, call'd the Kingdom of *Northumberland*, consisting of that Part of *Britain*, that lies North of the *Humber*: This proved a powerful Kingdom, containing *Yorkshire*, *Lancashire*, *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Westmorland* and *Northumberland*, and Part of *Scotland*, as far as *Edinburgh-Frith*; in twelve Years Time it was divided into two Parts, one call'd *Bernicia*, and the other *Deira*.

A. D. 561.

Now *Ethelbert*, the fifth King of *Kent*, began to raise Civil Wars amongst the *Saxons*, but he was twice defeated by them; and *Keaulin* King of the *West Saxons*, pursued him into his own Territories, and at *Wibbaudun* slew *Oslac* and *Cnebba*, two of his Commanders.

From hence the *Britains*, for the Space of fifty Years, received no considerable Annoyance from the *Saxons*; but from this State of Quiet and Ease, the *Britains* lost the very Sense of Industry, Courage and Virtue, and there was scarce the least Footstep of Goodness left remaining

main
The
the
was
at thi
Ur
dom
bridge
King
wards
Now
in a
Wales
West-
took
Leigh
Bucks
Evels
his So
Gloce
dida
ties, v
Some
Son
Saxon
ed the
laden
ly dec
streng
Ab
in this
fitted
Nation
shire,
tonshir
ingham
tingham
fordshir
Depart
lour;
Wiltsh
of his
But th
Britain
them,

The History of ENGLAND.

51

maintaining among all the Ranks and Degrees in the Land. The Commons had no Honour nor Justice in them; the Kings and Magistrates were mere Tyrants; and there was never such an illiterate, and corrupted Clergy as at this Time.

Urfa, the Eighth from *Woden*, began the sixth Kingdom call'd *East-Angles*, containing *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridge-shire*, with the Isle of *Ely*. The Subjects of this Kingdom are the more remarkable, because they afterwards gave Name to the whole Kingdom of *England*. Now the *Saxons* began again to assault the *Britains*, and in a few Years Time drove 'em from *England* into *Wales*: for *Cuthwulf*, Brother of *Keaulin*, King of the *West-Saxons*, beat 'em at *Bedenford* or *Bedford*, and took from them four good Towns, *Liganburgh*, now *Leighton*, in *Bedfordshire*, *Eglesburg*, now *Alesbury* in *Bucks*, with *Bennington* and *Ignesham*, now *Benson* and *Evesham*, in *Oxfordshire*. Six Years after *Keaulin* and his Son *Cuthwin*, again overthrew 'em at *Deorham* in *Glocestershire*, slew three of their Kings, *Cormait*, *Condidan*, and *Farmmait*; and took three of their chief Cities, viz. *Glocester*, *Cirencester*, and *Badencester*, or *Bath*. Some Time after the *Britains* engaged *Keaulin*, and his Son *Cutha* at *Fethamleage*: *Cutha* was slain, and the *Saxons* gave Way, till *Keaulin* renew'd the Fight, routed the *Britains*, took many Towns, and returned richly laden with Booty: Thus the poor *Britains* continually declined, losing Ground every where; which still strengthened the *Saxons*.

A. D. 575.
East Angles
the sixth
Kingdom.

About this Time, *Cerda* founded the seventh Kingdom in this Isle, call'd the Kingdom of *Mercia*, which consisted of seventeen Counties, in the middle Part of the Nation, viz. *Glocestershire*, *Herefordshire*, *Worcestershire*, *Warwickshire*, *Leicestershire*, *Rutland*, *Northamptonshire*, *Lincolnshire*, *Huntingtonshire*, *Bedfordshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Oxfordshire*, *Staffordshire*, *Shropshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Derbyshire* and *Cheshire*, and Part of *Hartfordshire*. Notwithstanding this, the *Britains* before their Departure, shew'd some Remains of their ancient Valour; for meeting with *Keaulin* at *Woden's Mount* in *Wiltshire*, they destroyed his Army, and chas'd him out of his Kingdom, who died the next Year in great Want. But this Victory prov'd but of little Advantage to the *Britains*, for the *Scots*, *Picts* and *Saxons*, uniting against them, in a few Years drove them quite out of their

A. D. 585.
Mercia the
seventh
Kingdom.

Country; some beyond the Seas into *Armorica*, some into *Cornwall*, but most into *Wales*; the poor Remains, that staid among the *Saxons*, were made Slaves, and kept to the most servile Offices; from whom began Villainage in *England*, which lasted till the Reign of *Henry* the Seventh.



S E C T. IV.

From the Destruction of Britain by the Saxons, and other Nations, to the new Establishment made by King Egbert, who became the first supreme Monarch of England.

A. D. 596.

THE whole Nation was now in Possession of Foreigners, under the Names of *Saxons*, *Jutes* and *Angles*; tho' the most general Name was that of the *Saxons*, who occasioned the whole Nation to be call'd *New Saxony*; so that now we are to begin with a new Body of People, and with a new State and Government of the Land, which introduc'd a general Change of Names, of Languages, of Customs, of Laws, of Arms, of Discipline, of Possession, of Titles, of Religion, and of every Thing in the Nation. Altho' we have already mentioned the Foundations of these *Saxon* Kingdoms, yet to clear the Story, we will give a general Account of each, till the Time of *Egbert*, the first supreme Monarch of this Nation.

1. *Kent*.

The Kingdom of *Kent* began in the Year 457, ended in 823, continued 366 Years; its Royal Seat *Canterbury*, and sometimes *Reculver* near the Seas. It had seventeen Kings, four *Pagans* and thirteen *Christians*, viz. *Hengist*, *Esk*, *Osta*, *Ermiric*, *Ethelbert*, *Eadbald*, *Ercombert*, *Egbert*, *Lothair*, *Edric*, *Witbred*, *Edbert*, *Edilbert*, *Alric*, *Edilbert*, *Cuthbred*, and *Baldred*; it consisted of the County of *Kent*, and some of *Hampshire*.

2. *South Saxony*.

The *South Saxons* began in the Year 491, and ended in 600, continuing 109 Years; its Royal Seat was *Chichester*; it had five Kings, two *Pagans* and three *Christians*, viz. *Ella*, *Cissa*, *Ethelwolf*, *Berthram*, and *Aethum*.

Th
519, a
eighty
teen
Cerdic
Quinc
Cedw
and B
The
527, a
twenty
Kings,
Sledda
Sigber
and S
The
547, a
forty
Kings,
Ella,
Alfrid,
Ethelw
ethelred
The
575, a
eightee
Kings,
lus, R
berd,
Ethelbe
The
ended i
Years,
four Pa
ba, Ceo
Cealred
nelm,
and Ceo
led by t
As to
archs, d
and con
little Sa
omit rel
authenti

The History of ENGLAND.

53

The Kingdom of the West Saxons began in the Year ^{3. West Saxony.} 519, and ended in 802; it continued two hundred and eighty three Years; its Royal Seat *Winchester*; it had sixteen Kings, five Pagans, and eleven Christians, viz. *Cerdic, Kenric, Caulin, Ceolric, Ceolwulf, Cynegils cum Quincelm, Kenewalch cum Sexburge, Eskwine, Kentwinc, Cedwalla, Ina, Ethelherd, Cuthred, Sigebert, Cynewulf, and Birthric.*

The Kingdom of the East Saxons began in the Year ^{4. East Saxony.} 527, and ended in 747; it continued two hundred and twenty Years, its Royal Seat *London*; it had twelve Kings, two Pagans, and ten Christians, viz. *Erchenwin, Sledda, Sexred cum Fratre Sigebert, Sigebert, Swithelm, Sigher cum Seba, Sigehard cum Swanfred, Offa, Selred and Swithred.*

The Kingdom of Northumberland began in the Year ^{5. Northumberland.} 547, and ended in 792; continuing two hundred and forty five Years, its Royal Seat *York*; it had twenty one Kings, four Pagans, and seventeen Christians, viz. *Ida, Ella, Ederic, Edelferd, Edwin, Oswald, Ofmy, Egfrid, Alfrid, Ofred, Kenred, Ofric, Ceolwulf, Eadbert, Osulf, Ethelwald, Alured, Ethelred, Alfwold, Ofred, and Ethelred.*

The Kingdom of the East Angles began in the Year ^{6. East England.} 575, and ended in 792, continuing two hundred and eighteen Years; its Royal Seat *Dunwich*; it had fourteen Kings, four Pagans, and ten Christians, viz. *Usfa, Titylus, Redwald, Eorpwald, Sigebert, Egric, Anna, Ethelherd, Ethelwald, Aldulf, Elfwald, Beorne, Ethelred, and Ethelbert.*

The Kingdom of Mercia began in the Year ^{7. Mercia.} 585, and ended in 874, continuing two hundred and eighty nine Years, its Royal Seat *Lincoln*; it had twenty one Kings, four Pagans, and seventeen Christians, viz. *Crida, Wibba, Ceorl, Penda, Peada, Wulfer, Ethelred, Kendred, Cealred, Ethelbald, Beornred, Offa, Egfrit, Kenulf, Kenelm, Beornwulf, Ludecom, Wizbluf, Bertulf, Burtred and Ceolwulf.* These seven Kingdoms are generally called by the Name of the Heptarchy.

As to the Lives and Actions of these several Monarchs, during the Heptarchy, they have been so lamely and confusedly transmittted to us, that we can give but little Satisfaction to the curious Reader; therefore we shall omit relating such things as cannot be depended on by any authentick Record.

A. D. 597.
Austin the
Monk sent
into England

Pope Gregory sends *Austin* the Monk, with about forty other Persons into *Britain*; he having received his Instructions, and being provided with Necessaries, they proceeded in their Voyage, and landed in the Isle of *Thanet* near *Kent*. At their first Arrival, *Austin* sent to King *Ethelbert* to acquaint him, That he came from *Rome*, and had brought the Promise of eternal Felicity to all that would receive it. The King received them very civilly, ordered that they should be provided with all Necessaries, and appoints an Interview, in which *Austin* preached both to him and his Nobles; the King civilly dismiss'd them, gave them leave to preach, where and to whom they pleased, and to gain as many as they could to the Belief of their Religion, ordered them to reside at *Canterbury*, and made Provision for their Maintenance.

Now their great Business was, to live according to the Rules they taught others, which in a little Time convinced the King and great Numbers of the People, so that they believed and were baptized, admiring the Simplicity of their Lives, as well as the Purity of their Doctrine. In the following Year when *Austin* had converted the greatest part of the *Kentish* Nation, he passed over into *France*, and was ordained Archbishop of the whole *English* Nation, by *Eutherius* Archbishop of *Arles*. He returned with Archi-episcopal Authority, he recovered a Christian Church in *Canterbury*, and dedicated it by the Name of Christ's Church. Other Preachers coming over, particularly *Mellitus*, *Iustus*, *Paulinus* and *Rufinian*; *Austin* ordained *Mellitus* and *Iustus*, and the former by his powerful preaching converted the East Saxons. To congratulate their Conversion, *Ethelbert* built *St. Paul's* in *London*, to be their Bishop's Cathedral; and *Iustus* also had another built at *Rochester*, both which the King endowed with large Possessions.

A. D. 604.

Austin by virtue of his Legatine Authority, undertook a general Visitation, and when he came near the Borders of *Wales*, he summoned all the *British* Bishops to a Synod, at a Place called *Austin's Oak*, in *Worcestershire*. He began with brotherly Admonitions to persuade them to conform to the *Roman* Church, but not prevailing, he proceeded by Threats. On this the Meeting broke up, and a second was appointed, to which repaired seven *British* Bishops, and *Dinooth* Abbot of *Bangor*. There was one who staid behind, gave them this Advice, That if they found *Austin* meek and humble, they should hearken

to him, as having the Marks of Christ's Disciple; but if he behaved himself with Pride and Haughtiness, they should not regard him, for then he could not be a Man from God. With this Advice they hast to the Place of Meeting, where *Austin* carried himself as the Pope's Legate, and their Metropolitan; and as they drew near, he sat still and pontifically in his Chair: This gave Offence to the *Britains*, and they rejected his Proposals; and *Dinnoth* of *Bangor* in the Name of all the rest, declared, That they would pay no more Subjection to the Pope, than to any other Christian. Upon this, *Austin* in a haughty Stile, declared, That since they would not submit to his Authority, they should be destroyed by Fire and Sword. *Austin* liv'd not to see the effect of his Denunciation, but died the next Year, and was succeeded by *Laurentius*, in his Archbishoprick. Christianity whilst *Ethelbert* reigned, made a mighty Progress in this Isle. In the Year 611, *Sigebert* the King's Nephew, King of the East Saxons, founded the Church and Abby of *Westminster*, and in 616 *Ethelbert* died, after he had been near twenty Years a Christian, twenty three chief Monarch of *England*, and fifty six King of *Kent*.

Eadbald succeeded his Father in his Throne, who instead of propagating, used his Endeavours to extinguish Christianity; neither was this Apostacy confined to his Kingdom, but it soon spread it self amongst the East Saxons.

Thro' the Mismanagement of *Eadbald* and other Accidents, *Kent* lost the chief Monarchy of *England*, which fell next upon *Redwald* the third K. of the East *Angles*, who for above twenty Years had been Vice-Roy to King *Ethelbert*, who joined *Edwin*, with his whole Power against the *Northumbrians*; near the *Idle* they engaged; after a hot Dispute the *Northumbrians* were defeated, and King *Ethelfrid* slain in the Field; by which Means *Edwin* was established in the Kingdom of *Northumberland*. *Redwald* reigned successfully about six Years after, and died in the Year 624, after he had been King of the East *Angles* forty four Years, and eight chief Monarch of *England*. A. D. 624.

Edwin, grown potent in the Life of *Redwald*, became his Successor in the *English* Monarchy, and was the greatest King of all the *Saxons*, subduing all the Coasts of *Britain*, with the Isles of *Anglesey* and *Man*. His first Wife being dead, he made his Application for the Lady *Edelburga*, Daughter of *Ethelbert*, but was at first denied, because that a Christian Virgin ought not to marry a Pagan; but *Edwin* agreed, that both she and her Attendants

tendants, should enjoy the free Exercise of their Religion; and that if he found their Religion more excellent than his own, himself would embrace it. These Conditions were easily agreed to; and with *Edelburga*, Bishop *Paulinus*, and a noble Attendance all Christians, set out for *Edwin's* Court, where the Marriage was solemnized. *Paulinus* omitted no Opportunity to plant the Gospel in those Parts, with little Success, till the next Year this surprising Accident made way for it. *Quincelm* one of the West Saxon Kings, jealous of *Edwin's* Greatness, sent *Enumerus* a Ruffian, to stab him, who under pretence of delivering a Message, with a poisoned Weapon struck at *Edwin*, whilst he was discoursing with him at his House by the River *Derwent* in *Yorkshire*; but *Lilla* one of the King's Attendance, interposed, and received the Blow, which went thro' his Body and gave the King a dangerous Wound. *Paulinus* improved this Opportunity, and obtained this Promise from him, that if Christ would grant him his Recovery and Victory over his Enemies, he would embrace Christianity. Being in a fair way of doing well, he marched against the West Saxons, subdued them, punishing some, and pardoning others, and returned Home victorious. From this Time King *Edwin* forsook his Idols; for at his Return, *Paulinus* came to him, and laid his right Hand on his Head, and asked him if he remembred that Sign, at which the King fell at the Bishop's Feet; the Bishop lifting him up, put him in mind of his Promise, and persuaded him to become a Christian. In a full Council, whereof *Corfi* his chief Pagan Priest, was President, it was agreed, that the true God should be worshiped, and Idolatry rooted out, *Corfi* himself destroying their Altars and Gods with his own Hands. Then King *Edwin*, in the eleventh Year of his Reign, with his Nobility, and most of the Commons, were baptised at *York*, where he built a Church, and made *Paulinus* Archbishop of that See, Anno Dom. 627. *Paulinus* passed the *Humber*, making a glorious Progress in converting the Pagans to the Belief of the Christian Religion. *Edwin* in the mean Time, took proper Measures to propagate the Faith, and to promote Virtue, which had so good an effect on the Minds of the People, that a Woman with a Child in her Hand, might travel from Sea to Sea without Molestation; but *Cadwallon* King of the *Britains*, and *Penda* the *Mercian*, who rebelled against him, joined against him, and after a bloody Fight

at H
slain
Th
burga
who
Roch
Ed
stian
Reig
Of
semb
and c
Picks
from
Af
struck
on, l
ticular
and p
vided
he ha
Han
The
stian
Berin
lowin
and
foun
Fate
Batto
U
came
nicia
Ofsp
Year
who
Ofsw
bers,
with
Hun
havin
slain
being
ed a

at *Hatfield* in *Yorkshire*, he and his Son *Osfrid* were slain.

These Misfortunes made *Paulinus*, with Queen *Ethelburga* and her Children, fly to *Eadbald* King of *Kent*, who received them kindly, and made *Paulinus* Bishop of *Rocheſter*, where he ended his Days.

Edwin was slain in the Year 633, in the ſixth of his Chriſtianity, the ninth of his Monarchy, and ſeventeenth of his Reign.

Oſwald, the Son of *Ethelfrid* by *Edwin's* Siſter, aſſembled a ſmall Force, and ſuddenly ſet upon *Cadwallon*, and deſtroyed him and his Army, near a little River by the *Picts* Wall, which was afterwards called *Heaven's Field*, from a Croſs, which *Oſwald* ſet up before the Battel.

Oſwald chief Monarch.

After this, his chief Care was to have the People inſtructed in Chriſtianity. *Beda* ſays much of the Devotion, Meekneſs, and Charity of this Prince: He took particular Care of the Poor, had them ſerved at his Gate, and gave the Plate in which they were ſerved, to be divided amongſt them; which cauſed Biſhop *Aiden*, whom he had ſent for out of *Scotland*, to take him by the right Hand, and to pray that that Hand might never corrupt. The next Year the *Weſt Saxons* were converted to Chriſtianity, and *Cynegills* their King, by the preaching of *Berinus*, whom Pope *Honorius* had ſent. The Year following, the *East Angles* were recovered to Chriſtianity, and in the Year 640 the Univerſity of *Cambridge* was founded. In the mean Time *Oſwald* met with the ſame Fate with *Edwin*, and by the ſame Hand, being ſlain in Battel by *Penda* the *Mercian*, at *Oſweſtroe* in *Shropſhire*.

Upon this the Kingdom of *Northumberland* again became divided for ſix or ſeven Years; *Oſwy* gaining *Bernicia*, and *Oſwin Deira*. The former was an illegitimate Offspring, and half Brother to *Oſwald*, and in a few Years became the next chief Monarch of the *Engliſh*, who in the ſeventh Year of his Reign, began a War on *Oſwin*; who finding himſelf much exceeded in Numbers, diſmiſſed his Army, and committed his Perſon, with one faithful Attendant, to the Loyalty of Earl *Hunwald*, who treacherouſly delivered him up. *Oſwy* having him thus in his Power, commanded him to be ſlain: Thus fell the excellent Prince *Oſwin*. But *Oſwy*, being prick'd in Conſcience for his deteſtable Facts, founded a Monastery on the Place to expiate the Offence.

A. D. 643.

Oſwy chief Monarch.

Oſwy ſlays *Oſwin*.

Now

A. D. 650. Now *Oswy* unites both Kingdoms again, and betakes himself to the Practice of Virtue. About this Time, *Peada*, the Son of *Penda*, desired *Oswy's* Daughter *Alfreda* in Marriage, which was refused, unless he embraced the Christian Faith; he hearkening to what was preached, readily turned Christian, and was baptized with many of his Followers. Upon his return, he took with him four Presbyters to instruct the People of his Province, who by their Care and Diligence, won great Numbers to the Belief of Christianity. About this Time, by *Oswy's* Means, the East Saxons, who had relapsed to Paganism, were re-converted to the Belief of the Christian Faith.

A. D. 655. *Oswy*, in the twelfth Year of his Reign, with his Son *Alfred*, assembles a small Army at *Leeds*, in *Yorkshire*, marches against the whole Body of the *Mercians*, engaged, and defeated them, tho' they were thirty times more in Number. This Victory was attended with the Death of *Penda*. The Fall of cruel *Penda*, who had been the Death of four or five Christian Kings, caused a general Rejoicing, and also brought *Oswy* to the Height of his Power, who in three Years, subdued the whole Kingdom of *Mercia*, and the greatest part of the *Picts*. In

A Synod about keeping of Easter.

Learning begins to flourish.

Oswy's Death

Wulfer chief Monarch.

the Year 664, a Synod of *Scotch* and *English* Bishops was held in a Monastery in the North, in the Presence of the King and his Son *Alfred*, about the Time of keeping *Easter*; but they not being able to agree, the Assembly broke up without coming to any Agreement about it. About this Time also, by means of *Theodore* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, with all the liberal Arts and Sciences, began to flourish in this Isle, and it increased under potent and Christian Kings till the Days of *Beda*. *Oswy* having granted part of *Mercia* to *Peada* his Son-in Law, and he being slain by Treachery, he was opposed by *Wulfer*, who freed his Country from his Subjection. *Oswy* now falling sick, and being full of Remorse and Trouble for *Oswin's* Blood, and the Blood of many others, he vows a Pilgrimage to *Rome*, but Death soon put an end to his Designs. Thus after a Reign of twenty eight Years, begun in Wars and Blood, and ending in Troubles, in the Year 670, the Seat of the chief Monarchy of *England* was removed to the *Mercians*.

Wulfer was now chief Monarch of the *English*, but more in Name than Reality; for his Reign was but short, and in the beginning he lost the Isle of *Lindsey* to *Eg-*

fred King of *Northumberland*; but three Years after that, he had Success against the *West Saxons*, and took the Isle of *Wight* from King *Renwald*, which he gave to *Edilwach* King of the *South Saxons*. *Wulfer* now becoming a Christian, he destroyed the Worship of Idols throughout his Dominions, and caused the Gospel to be preached in all the Parts of his Kingdom. Yet he is taxed with the Sin of Simony, in selling the Bishoprick of *London* to *Wina*, the deprived Bishop of *Winchester*. Simony first in England. Christianity being now generally established, many Monasteries were founded, and Kings and Queens began to take upon them the Habits of the Religious, and frequently to withdraw from their Thrones to the Monkish Cells. *Wulfer* about four Years after the Decease of *A. D. 675.* *Oswy*, died, and left his Body to be buried in the Monastery, which he and his Brother had founded in *Peterborough*.

Ethelred, the third Son of *Penda*, by the Consent of *Ethelred* chief Monarch. *Kenred* the next Heir, succeeds *Wulfer*; he regains *Lindsey* and all that *Wulfer* had lost, and then extended his Arms against *Lothar* King of *Kent*, wasting his Country without Respect to Churches and religious Houses, particularly *Rochester*, which he plunder'd and drove its Bishop *Putta* to such Extremities, that he was forced to teach Musick and the liberal Arts in *Mercia*, to get a Subsistence. Not long after, the *South Saxons* were generally converted to the Christian Faith; and now King *Ethelred* by the Advice and Consent of *Theodore*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, divided the Kingdom of *Mercia* into five Dioceses, viz. *Hereford*, *Worcester*, *Litchfield*, *Leicester*, and *Cidnacester*, all which were compleated in the Year 679. In the Year following, by the Command of *Ethelred*, and three other Kings, viz. *Egfrid* of *Northumberland*, *Aldwulf* of the *East Angles*, and *Lothar* of *Kent*, Archbishop *Theodore* summoned a Synod at *Hatfield* in *Hartfordshire*, in which were received the Canons of five general Councils, as *Nice*, *Constantinople*, *Ephesus*, *Chalcedon*, and another in *Constantinople*, with those Constitutions made at *Rome* in the Year 648. Also the yearly Order and Course of Readings and Singings, as practised in *Rome*, were brought hither. At length King *Ethelred* founded the famous Monastery of *Bardney* in *Lincolnshire*, turned Monk, and died Abbot thereof, after he had reigned about thirty Years. Some Time before, *Ina* King of the *West Saxons*, published his Laws both Civil and Ecclesiastical, by which The Canons of the general Councils received in England. *Ethelred* resigns. *Ina's* Laws.

The History of ENGLAND.

which it appears, that Theft, Murder, &c. were redeemable by pecuniary Mulcts; these are the first Laws that remain to us entire.

A. D. 704. King *Ethelred*, putting by his own Son *Ceolred*,
Keured chief appointed *Keured* his Brother *Wulfer's* Son, for his Suc-
 Monarch. cessor; who after four Years peaceable Reign, appointed
 He resigns. his Cousin *Ceolred* to rule in his Place, and relinquished
 both his Kingdom and Country; for he, with *Offa* King
 of the East Saxons, and *Edwin* Bishop of *Worcester* tra-
 velled to *Rome*, turned Monks in the Time of Pope *Con-*
stantine the First, and spent the rest of their Lives in a

A. D. 709. Monastery in that City. *Ceolred* succeeds with the Ap-
Ceolred chief plause of the People, and reigned for a few Years in
 Monarch. great Peace and Prosperity, till *Ina* King of the West
Saxons turned his Forces against *Mercia*; accordingly a
 Battel was fought between these Rival Kings at *Wodens-*
burgh in *Wiltshire*, in the Year 715. The Success of
 this Battel is uncertain. The next Year, and the seventh
 of his Reign, *Ceolred* feasting with his Nobles was sud-
 denly possessed with an evil Spirit, and expired in Despair.

He dies.

A. D. 716. *Ethelbald* his Cousin once removed, succeeds him in his
 chief Mon- Kingdom. This Prince had a very long, and for the most
 arch. part a peaceable Reign; at his Entrance he founded the
 Monastery of *Croyland*, now *Crowland* in *Lincolnshire*.
 The former part of his Reign was in a great Measure
 rivalled, by *Ina* King of the West Saxons, who beat the
 South Saxons in several Encounters, and in the Year
 725, he slew *Aldwin* their King, and added all his Do-
 minions to the West Saxon Kingdom; so that the Saxon
 Heptarchy was now reduced to six Kingdoms. This

The King-
 dom of the
 South Sax-
 ons at an End.

Prince is the first that laid a Tax of a Penny a House to
 be paid to the Pope, which was afterwards called *Peter*
Pence; and soon after he resigned his Kingdom, and
 ended his Days in a Monastery at *Rome*. By this means
Ethelbald commanded all on the South of the *Humber*;
 he was in Alliance with the *Picts*, the *Scots* gave him no
 Disturbance, the *Britains* were partly under their own
 Government, and partly under the *English*. In this
 peaceful State of the Land, many of the Nobility and
 Commons put on religious Habits, and many of all sorts
 flocked to *Rome*, and thought themselves no way secure
 of eternal Life, till they were cloistered there. With
 this State of the Land the celebrated *Beda* finished his
 History, about the Year 731. From this Time forward,
 for many Years, we have a more imperfect Account
 of

of the
 Time
 his L
 from
 Spoil
 Mast
 King
 King
 at Ch
 in 74
 Acts
 at the
 moni
 sake
 nons
 many
 Habi
 the C
 Tim
 ness
 short
 But
 he c
 Enjo
 with
 and
 ple,
 face
 repe
 and
 after
 Wel
 jects
 deav
 Offa
 the V
 lemn
 ty of
 Exan
 Histo
 O
 dom
 Eng
 the A
 his I

of the Affairs of this Nation than ever. In the mean Time *Ethelbald* reigned chief Monarch of *England*, and his Power was much increased, by his taking *Somerton* from the *West Saxons*, and from the *Northumbrians* much Spoil and Plunder; and about the Year 747 he became Master of *London*, and put an end to the *East Saxon* Kingdom; so that the Heptarchy was reduced to five Kingdoms. Under this Prince were held two Councils at *Cloveshoe* in *Kent*; the first in the Year 742, the other in 747. The former was to confirm King *Withred's* Acts concerning the Monasteries in *Kent*; the latter was at the Instance of Pope *Zachary*, who by his Epistles, admonished the *Saxons* from the highest to the lowest, to forsake their wicked and scandalous Actions. Several Canons were made concerning the Pastoral Charge, and many Provisions against the Inordinacy, extravagant Habits, Incontinency, Luxury, and irregular Lives of the Clergy, Monks, and Nuns. The Vices of these Times, as Fornication, Adultery, Murther, Drunkenness, Perjury, &c. were only punished with longer or shorter Penances, of Days, Weeks, Months, or Years. But no Body was so irregular as *Ethelbald* himself; for he contemned Marriage, gave himself up to unlawful Enjoyments, without any Difference of Place or Persons, with the Nuns as well as other Women. The Nobility and Commons were soon poisoned with his fatal Example, and the whole Nation became very vicious. *Boniface* the Pope's Legate reproves *Ethelbald*; at which, he repents of his former Life, and granted to the Church and Monasteries several large Immunities. At length after a Reign of above forty Years, fighting against the *West Saxons*, he was treacherously slain by his own Subjects, at the Instigation of *Beornred*, who likewise endeavoured to step into the Throne, but was also slain by *Offa* the *Mercian*. Upon his Death *Sigebert* King of the *West Saxons*, was for his Cruelty and Injustice solemnly deposed from his Kingdom, by the Authority of the grand Council of the same; which is the first Example of that Nature that we have in our *English* History.

The Kingdom of the East Saxons at an End. The two Councils of Cloveshoe.

Ethelbald, very vicious.

He is slain.

Sigebert deposed.

Offa, Cousin to King *Ethelbald*, succeeded in the Kingdom, he was the most valiant and powerful of all the *English Saxons*, which made the neighbouring Kings seek the Alliance of *Charles* the Great, King of *France*; but his Interest could no way prevail on *Offa* to desist from his

A. D. 756. *Offa* chief Monarch.

his Designs. He first attackt the *Kentish* Men at *Ottan-ford*, slew King *Alric* with his own Hand, dispersed their Forces, and laid wast all their Country; then he turned his Forces against *Kenwulf* King of the *West Saxons*, and at *Bersington* in *Oxfordshire* he overthrew him and took the Town. But not long after, in the Year 776, the *Britains* both of North and South *Wales*, united their Forces, invaded *Mercia*, and wasted all the Country, as far as they went, with Fire and Sword. Upon this, King *Offa* made a Peace with the rest of the *Saxon* Kings, and turning all his Forces against the *Welsh* Men, drove them from the plain Country between the Rivers *Wye* and *Severn*; which Country *Offa* seized, and planted it with *Saxons*, and annexed it to his own Kingdom, and caused

Offa makes a Ditch between *England* and *Wales*.

A. D. 777.

Tythes first paid here.

A. D. 787.

The *Danes* land in *England*.

The Kingdom of the *East Angles* at an end.

a Ditch to be made from Sea to Sea, between his Kingdom and *Wales*, which is to be seen at this Day in diverse Places, and is called *Offa's Ditch*. After this, *Offa* reigned many Years in Splendor, and for the most part in Peace. He procured *Litchfield* to be made an Archbishoprick; he called a Synod at *Calcaith*, where among several Canons, Tythes were first ordered to be paid in *England*, and also declared to be of divine Right. Not long after, *Charles* the great sent a Book of Synodical Decrees into *England*, in which among other things, contrary to the true Faith, 'twas asserted that Images ought to be adored.

In the thirtieth Year of King *Offa's* Reign, new Calamities were brought on this Island; for three Ships of *Danes* or *Norwegians* landed some Men in the West, who, being commanded to give an Account of their Loading at the King's Custom House at *Dorchester*, slew the Officer, and all that were sent with him. Three or four Years these Pagans landed in the North, and plundered the great Monastery of *Lindisfarne*, killed many of the Fryars, took other Prisoners, sparing neither Clergy nor Laity. In the mean Time, King *Offa* maintained his Power, and kept up his Ambition, shewing as little Faith as Mercy; for *Ethelbert* King of the *East Angles*, coming to his Court, to obtain his Daughter in Marriage, was by the Instigation of his Queen, *Quendriht*, murdered, and his Dominions seized, and added to the Kingdom of *Mercia*, in the Year 792, so that now there were only four Kingdoms of the Heptarchy left, viz. *Mercia*, *West Saxony*, *Northumberland*, and *Kent*. And now *Offa* having reigned with great Splendor and mighty Authority, about thirty seven Years, repaired to *Rome*, where

where
made
ter Per
sents r
British
Mona
Reven
the ten
he also
dral C
wick,
bear th
died in
Egfe
Church
he died
to Ken
excelle
he dese
tally o
Prison
Years a
at Win
of Cut
men, a
Captiv
Intreat
Kenwul
last Mer
Egbe
Inegild
Royal
made K
to fly to
ric havi
was be
his Esc
great h
tion. A
for Ead
for one
Death o
Saxon
knowle
all Orde

where with the like Zeal as *Ina* the West Saxon, he made his Kingdom subject to a Tribute, then called *Peter Pence* and *Romescot*; besides which he made rich Presents to Pope *Hadrian*, for canonizing *St. Alban*, the first British Martyr, in Honour of whom he founded a Monastery near *Verulam*, and indowed it with large Revenues; and at his Return to his Kingdom, he gave the tenth Part of his Goods to the Church and Poor; he also built another Monastery at *Bath*, and the Cathedral Church of *Hereford*, and another Church at *Warwick*, where that and the adjoining Town from him bear the Name of *Off-Church*. But in the Year 794, he died in Peace at *Off-ley*, having reigned about 39 Years.

Offa dies.
A. D. 794.

Egferth his Son succeeded him, and restored to the Church whatever had been violently taken from it; but he died after a few Months Reign, and left the Crown to *Kenwulf*, the next of the Royal Line, who by his excellent Behaviour both in Peace and War, shewed that he deserved it. In the second Year of his Reign, he totally overthrew *Eadbert* King of *Kent*, and took him Prisoner, and gave his Kingdom to *Cuthred*. Two Years after, at the Dedication of a Church built by him, at *Winchcombe* in *Glocestershire*, *Kenwulf*, in the Presence of *Cuthred*, thirteen Bishops, ten Dukes, many Noblemen, and a great Concourse of People, led *Eadbert* the Captive King to the high Altar, and there without either Intreaty or Ransom gave him his Liberty. After this, *Kenwulf* reigned several Years in Peace, and was the last Mercian that was chief Monarch of *England*.

Egferth chief Monarch.

Kenwulf chief Monarch.

Egbert the famous West Saxon, being descended from *Inegild* King *Ina*'s Brother, was the only Survivor of the Royal Line of that Kingdom, whose growing Greatness made King *Birhtric* seek his Life; which caused *Egbert* to fly to *Offa*, King of *Mercia*, for Security; but *Birhtric* having married *Eadburga* King *Offa*'s Daughter, he was betrayed and delivered to *Birhtric*. *Egbert* makes his Escape, and flies into *France*, where under *Charles* the great he improved his Abilities, and refined his Education. At length, *Birhtric* was accidentally poisoned; for *Eadburga* having prepared a Cup of poisoned Wine for one of the King's Favovrites, was by Mistake the Death of the King. Upon this, the Nobility of the West Saxon Kingdom, unanimously recall *Egbert*, and acknowledge him King, to the universal Satisfaction of all Orders and Degrees. Being thus happily re-established,

A. D. 802.
Egbert chief Monarch.

He flies into France.

Is recalled.

he

He Conquers
Cornwall
Wales,

And Mercia,

And Kent,

The South
and East Sax-
ons.

A. D. 825.

Lastly, Nor-
thumberland,
which put an
end to the
Heptarchy.

A. D. 828.

Which he
calls England

he wisely began his Reign, by confirming his own Interest at Home, and in settling his Power and Sovereignty only in the Love and Affection of his Subjects. Being thus secured of the Hearts of his People, he resolves to attempt the Reduction of his troublesome and incroaching Neighbours; he first attackt the *Britains* that inhabited *Cornwall*, subdued them, and in two Years more, he rendred those in *Wales* his Tributaries. This roused up *Beornwulf* King of *Mercia* to attempt to put a stop to this Conqueror's Progress; accordingly they met at a Place called *Ellandune* in *Wiltshire*, engaged, and *Beornwulf* was totally defeated in the Year 832. After this, *Egbert* sent his Son *Ethelwulf*, *Ealstan* Bishop of *Sherburn*, and *Wulfheard* his General, with a powerful Army, into *Kent*, which they easily conquered, the Inhabitants being enervated with Sloth, and at Variance with their own King *Baldred*, who fled beyond the *Thames* for his own Security. *Kent* being thus easily subdued, they proceeded, and with little or no Difficulty, conquered *Surry*, with the Southern and Eastern *Saxony*. This very Year the People of East *England*, being tired with the Government of the *Mercians*, submitted themselves to his Protection; and to convince King *Egbert* of their Sincerity, they would not desist, until they had slain *Beornwulf* and *Ludecun*, the *Mercian* Kings, who had been continual Disturbers of their Neighbours. Now there remained nothing to conquer, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland*, which could not be difficult to perform, they being so divided amongst themselves; some for setting up one King and some another, then murdering the very Kings they had made; that for thirty three Years none had Courage enough to accept of the Crown. In this distracted Condition, in the Year 827, King *Egbert* found them; upon whose Appearance, these People came voluntarily and yielded to him, and gave him Security for their quiet and obedient Deportment. By the Submission of the *Northumbrians* to King *Egbert*, there was an entire End put to the Heptarchy. Soon after which, King *Egbert* was in a very solemn manner crowned King of all *Britain* at *Winchester*; and by an Edict, commanded, that these seven Kingdoms thus united under one Head, should for the future, be called *Englelond* or *England*, tho' the Name *England* had been used long before this Time, tho' not established by Virtue of a Proclamation. Here we beg the Reader's Pardon, if he doth not meet with some

Facts

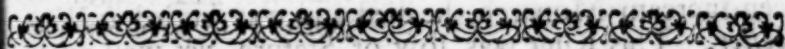
Facts m
of the J
of a H
fused A
Times,

6622

From
the
der

K Ing
th
bly exp
the Fru
tions v
Swarm
called
began t
of Eng
Pagan
came b
pey in
ravaged
thirty f
to whi
and at
former
Night
keeping
saved t
ment t
slain;
This w
bert m
the Da
Vor

Facts mentioned in other Writers, in this general View of the *Saxon* Heptarchy, collected for the most part out of a Heap of Rubbish, and from trifling, lame, and confused Accounts, that we have transmitted to us of those Times, by the Monkish Writers thereof.



SECT. V.

From the Establishment of King Egbert, to the beginning of the Danish Monarchy, under King Canute.

EGBERT.

King *Egbert* having thus happily united the Parts of the Nation into one Kingdom; we might reasonably expect, that he and his People should have enjoyed the Fruits of Peace for many Years; but these Expectations were soon frustrated, by the Arrival of a new Swarm of People from the Northern Parts of *Europe*, called *Danes*, and *Normans*, or *Norwegians*, who now began their furious Inroads and Invasions, on the Coasts of *England*, committing all manner of Cruelties, and Pagan Barbarities, so that they out-did the *Saxons* that came before them. They first landed in the Isle of *Sheppey* in *Kent*, where meeting with little Resistance, they ravaged the Country. The next Year they arrived in thirty five Ships, and landed at *Charmouth* in *Dorsetshire*, to which place King *Egbert* with his Army marched, and at the River *Carr*, gave the *Danes* Battel, and in the former part of the Fight had the Advantage, till towards Night the Scale turned, and he lost the Victory, the *Danes* keeping the Field of Battel. King *Egbert* retreated and saved the Dishonour of an entire Defeat. In this Engagement two *Saxon* Generals, viz. *Dudda* and *Osmund* were slain; and also two Bishops, viz. *Herefrid* and *Wigferth*. This was the only Check of Fortune, that ever King *Egbert* met with in all his Reign. About two Years after, the *Danes* returned with a more powerful Navy, and

The *Danes* invade *England*.
A. D. 832.

833.

835.

A. D. 836.

joined the *Cornish* Forces, who were in Alliance with them: *Egbert* marched against them, encountred all their united Forces, gained a complete Victory over them, and freed his Kingdom at that Time from these barbarous Invaders. Having thus subdued his Enemies, at length, after a mild and glorious Reign of thirty six Years, and seven Months, and near nine Years after he had been supream Monarch, he died and was buried at *Winchester*. This King was low of Stature, yet well made and strong of Limb; he was a most valiant, wise and politick Prince, very fortunate in War, and endued with Accomplishments of Mind.

ETHELWULF.

E*Gbert* was succeeded in the Throne by his eldest Son *Ethelwulf*, who is described as a Man of a mild Nature, with an Aversion to War, and had but little Pleasure in large Dominions; he had betaken himself to the Monastery of *Winchester*, enter'd into Monks Orders, and was afterwards Bishop of that Place; but by the earnest Request of the Nobility and People, he was prevailed on to leave that, and accept of the Crown, the Pope having given him a Dispensation for that very End. But his unwarlike Disposition gave the *Danes* great Encouragement to renew their Invasions on this Country. Accordingly they came the next Year with thirty three Ships, and landed in diverse Places at the same Time, so that the Inhabitants were at a Loss to know how to make Head against these barbarous Invaders, who wasted all the Country wheresoever they came. The *Danes* were defeated at *Southampton*, and got a Victory at *Portsmouth*; and not long after, at a Place called *Merefwar*, the *English* under the Command of Earl *Herebert* were routed, and the greatest part of the Army destroyed. The following Year they ravaged *Lindsey*, East *England* and *Kent*, continuing their March to *Canterbury*, *Rochester*, and *London* it self, committing the most barbarous Cruelties imaginable. The next Year they returned with thirty five Ships, and at the River *Carr*, where they engaged King *Egbert*, they fought with King *Ethelwulf*, and maintained their Ground; but in the ninth Year of his Reign, Earl *Ernulf* with the Men of *Somersetshire*, *Alstan* the Bishop, and Count *Ofrick* with those of *Dorsetshire*,

The *Danes* waste *England* in several Places.

setshire
killed
Victor
quelled
fifteen
of *Tho*
Canter
they d
Army;
ed the
the *Eng*
but at
were n
had aff
Armies
the *Da*
of thei
ry and
to *Eng*
came t
and too
Ceorle
so that
Thanet
the *Eng*
in all
Kingdo
Danger
Quarre
About
against
with th
Battel
equal o
in *Shepe*
Saxons,
cil it wa
should b
this is
Having
he took
Peace,
in his R
of *Char*
he place

Wessex, engaged them at the Mouth of the River *Pedridan*, killed a great Number of them, and obtained a great Victory, which put a Stop to their outrageous Insults, and quelled their Power for about six Years after. But in the fifteenth Year of his Reign, the *Danes* entered the River of *Thames*, landed in *Kent*, and took and pillaged both *Canterbury* and *London*, and in their farther Progress, they defeated *Berthulf* King of *Mercia*, with his whole Army; after which they marched into *Surry*, and behaved themselves so insolently, as if the whole Power of the *English* Nation had not been able to withstand them; but at a Place called *Aclea*, now *Oakely* in *Surry*, they were met by King *Ethelwulf*, and his Son *Ethelbald*, who had assembled all the Forces of the *West Saxons*; both Armies engaged, and after a long and doubtful Battel, the *Danes* were beaten, with the Loss of a vast Number of their Soldiers; this not only gave the King great Glory and Reputation, but was accounted a fortunate Year to *England*. His Brother *Athelstand* King of *Kent*, overcame the *Danes* at *Sandwich*, pursued them to the Sea, and took several of their Ships; and in *Devonshire*, Earl *Ceorle* at *Windlebore*, had many Advantages over them, so that they were obliged to retire into the Island of *Thanet*, where they continued all the Winter; and had the *English* made the best of their Successes, the *Danes* in all human Probability, had been totally expelled the Kingdom. The *Saxons* thinking themselves free from all Danger from their Enemies, fell again to their wonted Quarrels.

A. D. 851

The *Danes* beat in several Places by the *English*.

About this Time, the *Danes* landed again in *Thanet*, against whom, *Ealke* with the Forces of *Kent*, and *Hudda* with those of *Surry*, marched, and attacked them; the Battel was desperate, the Success doubtful, and the Loss equal on both Sides; the next Year the *Danes* winter'd in *Shepey*. A grand Council or Parliament was held by the *Saxons*, to consult Measures for their Security, in this Council it was enacted, that the Lands and Profits of the Church should be for ever free from all Taxes and Tributes; this is since often called the Grant of King *Ethelwulf*. Having settled his Affairs at Home, in great Devotion he took a Journey to *Rome*, where he confirmed *Peter* *Peace*, and presented his Holiness with many large Gifts; in his Return thro' *France*, he married *Judith*, Daughter of *Charles* the Bald then Emperor, in Honour of whom he placed her in a Chair of State, and gave her such Marks

853.

The *Danes* are again formidable.

K. takes a Journey to *Rome*. Marries the Emperor's Daughter.

The History of ENGLAND.

A Conspiracy
against
him.

The Land di-
vided be-
tween him
and his Son.

His Death.

of Dignity, as were directly contrary to the Law of the West Saxons, that had been made on Account of *Ethelburga's* Crimes; which Law was, that none of their Queens for the future should have either Title, Majesty, or Place of Royalty. These Things made the Nation very uneasy, and were the Cause of a dangerous Conspiracy against him. For his eldest Son *Ethelbald*, Bishop *Alstan*, and *Enwulf* Earl of *Somerset*, used all possible Endeavours to deprive him of his Kingdom. But *Ethelwulf*, to avoid the Miseries of civil Discord, by the Assent of his Nobles, agreed to divide his Kingdom between himself and his Son. Accordingly a Division was made; he conceded the Western and best Part to his Son, keeping the Eastern and worst Part to himself. Not long after this, *Ethelwulf* finding himself decline, disposed of his Kingdom by Will, giving *Kent* and *Essex* to his second Son *Ethelbert*, and the rest of the Kingdom to *Ethelbald*. He died on the thirteenth Day of January, A. D. 857, and was buried at the Cathedral in *Winchester*, having reigned twenty Years and five Months.

ETHEL BALD.

857.

Ethelbald succeeds his Father *Ethelwulf* in the Throne; but we have little left either of his Person or Actions, only that he was a luxurious and perfidious Prince, and being charmed with the Beauty of his Step-Mother, he married her contrary to the Laws of God and Man. Having without any other memorable Action reigned almost three Years, he died on the 20th of December, A. D. 860, being buried at *Sherburn* in *Dorsetshire*, and thence removed to *Salisbury*.

ETHEL BERT.

860.

The Danes
Invade Eng-
land.

UPon *Ethelbald's* Decease, *Ethelbert*, second Son of *Ethelwulf*, became Monarch of *England*, who no sooner ascended the Throne, but he was molested by the Invasions of the bloody *Danes*, who, with a powerful Navy, landed at *Southampton*, and took and sack'd the City of *Winchester*: but in their Return, the *Berkshire* Men, under the Conduct of Earl *Osrick*, attack'd them, overthrew them, retook their Booty, and slew a great Number of them. But the *Kentish* Men being wearied out

out v
large
Leag
Reser
dels,
pelled
Time
and w

ETH
E
with t
guar a
with a
with t
with l
the civ
ber, r
Kings
then l
a Kin
River
cia, to
roads
Merci
join'd
Place,
a Year
Cruel
Danes
and H
and S
Bradn
murde
stin
ther p
baritie
land, n
two h
hundre
with h
ed, an
pick'd

out with frequent Alarms, purchased their Peace with a large Sum of Money; the *Danes* perfidiously broke the League, whereupon the *Kentish* Men, with the utmost Resentment, assembled their Forces, fell on these Infidels, overcame them, and with a dreadful Slaughter, expelled them at last out of their Country. About this Time, King *Ethelbert* died, having reigned five Years, and was buried by his Brother at *Sherburn*.

ETHELRED.

E*thelred*, the third Son of *Ethelwulf*, succeeded his 866.
 Brother, whose Reign was one continued Conflict with the Pagan *Danes*; in the beginning of which, *Hinguar* and *Hubba*, two valiant Brothers, invaded the Nation with a vast Army, landed in East *England*, and made a Truce with the Inhabitants, that they might provide themselves with Horses and Provisions. They took Advantage of the civil Discords of the *Northumbrians*, passed the *Humber*, ravaged the North, took the City of *York*, slew two Kings there, with incredible Numbers of the People, and then laid the City in Ashes: After which, they substituted a King under them, over all the North Parts beyond the River *Tine*. The next Year the *Danes* passed into *Mercia*, took *Nottingham*, and winter'd there. These Inroads of the *Danes*, roused up King *Ethelred* to assist the *Mercians*, who with *Edmund* King of the East *Angles*, join'd the *Mercians*, and forced the *Danes* to abandon that Place, and fly back to *York*, where they continued about a Year, practising all manner of Severities and barbarous Cruelties. No sooner was the Winter past, but the 869.
Danes break their Truce; they repass the *Humber* in Boats, and *Hinguar* and *Hubba* destroy all before them with Fire and Sword; in particular, the famous Monastery of *Bradney*, and also that of *Croyland*, with many others, murdering the Monks and Nuns without any Mercy, or Distinction of Age or Sex; then they entred *Kesteran*, another part of *Lincolnshire*, and committed the like Bar-
barities. This caused the valiant Count *Algar*, Earl of *Hoyland*, now *Holland*, to assemble what Forces he could, viz. two hundred Men belonging to *Croyland* Abby, and three hundred from about *Boston*; *Morchard* Lord of *Bourne* with his numerous Family, well disciplin'd and armed, and *Osgot* Governor of *Lincoln* with five hundred pick'd Men, joined them, and march against the *Danes*, whom

The *Danes* arrive under *Hinguar* and *Hubba*.

Lincolnshire laid waste.

Northampton,
Huntingdon,
Cambridge,
and Suffolk.

871.

871.

whom they engaged, and slew a great many of them, together with three of their Kings, from whose Death and Burial, the Village before called *Loundon*, was named *Trekingham*, and now by Corruption *Frekingham*. But the *Danes* being joined by the rest of their Forces the next Day, overcame the *English*, and slew the greatest Part of them, amongst which Number was the valiant *Algar*. After this they committed all the Cruelties that either the Devil or malicious Men could invent; they past into *Huntington*, then to *Cambridge*, and then into the Isle of *Ely*. After this they marched into East *England*, where meeting with Earl *Wulketute*, who made a vigorous Resistance, they cut him off with all his Army, and winter'd at *Thetford*. Here King *Edmund* made Head against them, but was overcome, and taken Prisoner, whom they bound to a Post, and shot him to Death with Arrows, and then subdued his whole Country: The Place of his Burial being afterwards called *St. Edmund's-Bury*. The next Year they bent their Course towards the West *Saxons*, the only People left, who had Force and Courage to oppose them, and encamp'd near *Reading*, between the Rivers *Thames* and *Kennet*. Three Days after, having sent out some Parties to forage, at *Englefield* in *Berkshire*, *Ethelwulf* Earl of *Berkshire* attack'd them, routed them with a great Slaughter, and killed one of their Earls. Four Days after, King *Ethelred*, with his Brother *Alfred*, gave Battel to the chief Body of the *Danes*, in which Earl *Ethelwulf* was slain, with a great Number of others; the *Danes* keeping the Field. Four Days after this, at *Escesdune* or *Ashdounne*, both Parties engaged with their full Strength; the Battel was for some Time doubtful, but at last Victory inclined to the *English*; the *Danes* gave way, were cut to pieces, and the Flower of their Army lost, so that such a Victory had not been known for many Ages; but the scattered Parts of their vanquished Army got together near *Basing*, where they skirmished with the King's Army, and had the Advantage. Two Months after this, the *Danes* having received fresh Supplies from beyond Sea, at a place called *Merton*, fought another bloody Battel with the *English*; Multitudes were slain, sometimes one had the Advantage, sometimes the other, now the *Danes* were beaten, then the *English*, the former at last kept the Field. In this Battel King *Ethelred* was wounded; he had encountered the *Danes* nine Times in this one Year. Some report

report
whit
five

A
of P
the L
perfo
his C
noint
whol
incon
Cour
but fi
they
Malte
incess
with
King
gain,
up the
to ma
these
sey in
their
upon
Merc
retire
dom
upon
The
one n
bridge
selves
there
as lon
ly he
Dane
lowin
West
or Po

report he died of his Wounds, others, that the Plague The Death of Ethelred. which followed took him off, after he had reigned above five Years in very great Reputation.

ALFRED.

Alfred succeeded him, who was the fourth Son of ^{872.} *Ethelwulf*, and was justly esteemed the Mirror of Princes, but was perpetually harrassed, either with the *Danes* or the Vices of the Times. Scarce had he performed his Brother's Obsequies, and the Solemnity of his Coronation, he being the first King that ever was appointed in this Nation, but he was obliged to engage the whole Power of the *Danes* at *Wilton*, and that with an inconsiderable Number of Troops, where at first by his Courage and Conduct the *Danes* were constrained to fly, but finding the Number of the Persuers to be but small, they rallied, encountred the weary *English*, and became Masters of the Field. Both Sides being now tired with incessant Hostilities, this Year a Peace was concluded with the *Danes*, upon Condition they should leave the Kingdom, which was done, but the next they landed again, marched from *Reading* to *London*, and there took up their Winter Quarters, and the *Mercians* were obliged to make a Peace with them. The following Summer, ^{874.} these Rovers marched Northward, and winter'd at *Torksey* in *Lincolnshire*, where the *Mercians* gladly renewed their Articles of Peace; thence they marched to *Repton* upon *Trent* in *Darbyshire*, forced *Burhed* King of the *Mercians* to quit both his Kingdom and the Nation, and retire to *Rome*. Having thus got Possession of the Kingdom of *Mercia*, they let it out to farm to one *Ceolwulf*, upon Condition, that he should restore it on Demand. The Mercians make Peace with the Danes. The *Danes* now divide their Army into two Parts; the one marched into *Northumberland*, and the other to *Cambridge*, and by this means, like Locusts, they spread themselves all over the Country. King *Alfred* finding that there was no likelihood of any end of those Calamities, as long as the Enemies were Masters at Sea; accordingly he man'd out a small Fleet, met with seven of the *Danes* Ships, took one, and dispersed the rest. Alfred man's out a Fleet. The following Summer the *Danes* remove to a Castle of the ^{876.} *West Saxons*, called *Werburn*, where *Alfred*, by Money or Policy, brought them to swear, that they would leave

The History of ENGLAND

The Danes
suffer at Sea.

West Saxony
submits to
them.
Alfred driven to great
Extremities.

He recovers

Becomes a
Spy.

the Land. But they, according to Custom, falsified their Oaths, and in the Night got with their Horse to *Exeter*, and winter'd in those Parts. At the same Time, *Hafden* their King divided *Northumberland* among his People, who began to cultivate it with Tillage. The following Year, the *Danes* sailing to the Westward, met with so violent a Storm, that above a hundred and twenty of their Ships were cast away, near *Swans-Nich* in *Hampshire*, and the rest so disabled, that they became an easy Prey to King *Alfred's* Gallies. At the same Time the King's Troops besieged the *Danes* at *Exeter*, who hearing of the Disaster of their Fleet, offered sufficient Hostages, took new Oaths, and concluded a Peace; upon this they left West *Saxony*, and departed into *Mercia*. But as Oaths were of no Force with them, so the beginning of the next Year, they with a great Force entred West *Saxony*, wasted all the Country, drove the Inhabitants out, and took Possession of their Estates. Upon this, King *Alfred* with a small Company, was forced to retire to the Woods and Bogs in *Somersetshire*; at length he was forced alone to take up his Lodging with a Swine-Herd, so that neither his Friends nor his Enemies could tell where he was. This poor Man's Name was *Dunwulf*, whom afterwards the King made Bishop of *Winchester*, for his Devotion, and Aptness to Learning. About this Time, *Hafden* and the Brother of *Hinguar* coming with twenty three Ships from North *Wales*, where they had made great Devastations, landed in *Devonshire*, near a strong Castle called *Kenwith*, on whom the Garison made a Sally, and slew them, with twelve hundred of their Men. The King also not despairing of his Affairs, built a Castle at *Athelney* in *Somersetshire*, in which he valiantly defended himself and his Followers. Seven Weeks after, he marched from thence with his Subjects to *Ecbrytstone*, now *Braxstone*, where he was joined by the Inhabitants of *Wiltshire*, *Somersetshire*, and part of *Hampshire*, with the utmost Marks of Joy and Satisfaction. But the Enemy being superior in Number, and having other Advantages, he durst not attack them till he had found out their Foible; to accomplish which, he put on the Habit of a Musician, and with one Companion only, enters their Camp, and being very skilful, both in Singing and Playing, was soon admitted into the King's Presence. He improved his Opportunity, learnt all that was necessary for his Design, and returned to his Castle

Castle
ers, h
Camp
destro
and a
cordin
in *W*
er, an
and c
as him
they
ed spa
becom
three
God-
his a
Swan
winte
pose t
wisely
Years
which
their
after,
not v
more
sieged
they f
and m
Fleet
wich,
Men a
and th
Danes.
and th
next
which
restore
of the
eight Y
quillity
settled
thy R
tendei
the En

Castle at *Athelney*, where calling together all his Followers, he acquainted them with the Condition of the *Danes* Camp, and shewed them with what Ease they might be destroyed. This gave them all new Life and Courage, and a Resolution to attempt their own Redemption; accordingly with all their Forces, they march to *Edendon* in *Wiltshire*, where they attack'd the whole *Danish* Power, and gained a complete Victory; *Alfred* pursues them, and obliges them to beg for a Peace, on such Terms, as himself should think fit to impose; which were, that they should swear to leave his Kingdom within a limited space of Time, and that their King *Gutbram* should become a Christian, all which was performed in about three Weeks after. At his Baptism, *Alfred* became his God-father, called his Name *Athelstan*, and took him for his adopted Son. During this Negotiation, another Swarm of *Danes* sailed up the River of *Thames*, and winter'd at *Fullingham* now *Fulham*. The better to oppose these Pagan Invaders for the future, King *Alfred* wisely resolves to encrease his Naval Forces, and in three Years Time, he had got ready a considerable Fleet, with which he engaged several of the *Danes*, took two of their Ships, and threw the Men over Board; not long after, he took two more, with two of their Princes, but not without some Loss. Two or three Years after, more *Danes* entred the *Thames* and *Medway*, and besieged *Rocheſter*, but at the Approach of King *Alfred* they fled to their Ships, leaving behind all their Horses, and many Prisoners, and retired to *France*. The *English* Fleet coming to the Mouth of the River *Stoure* by *Harwich*, met thirteen *Danish* Ships, well provided with Men and Ammunition, fought them, and took them all, and then killed all their Men; but in their Return, the *Danes*, with their whole Naval Forces engaged them; and the *English* lost much of their former Honour. The next Year King *Alfred* takes *London* from the *Danes*, which had been long in their Possession, repaired it, and restored it to its antient Lustre, and made *Ethelred*, Earl of the *Mercians*, Governor. From this Time, for about eight Years, the Nation enjoyed perfect Peace and Tranquillity. The Affairs of the Nation being thus happily settled, the Learned King *Alfred* proceeded to many worthy Regulations, and to promote all things, that might tend either to the Honour or Advantage of his Subjects. For the Encouragement of Learning he sent for *Grimbald*, *Scotus*,

Routs the
Danes.

A Navy pro-
vided.

More *Danes*
arrive.

London re-
covered.

Peace in the
Land.

886.

The University of Oxford founded.

Alfred divides the Nation into Counties &c.

893.

New Invasions of the Danes,

Who are worsted in several Engagements.

Scotus, and *Affer*, and other learned Men, placed them at *Oxford*, and founded that famous University, in which he erected three Colleges, one for Grammarians, another for Philosophers, and a third for Divines. He also repaired all the Cities and Castles, and built others in the most necessary Places, and walled several Towns and Castles, and made them defensible against all the Pagan Power. And for the better Distribution of Justice, he divided the Provinces of *England* into distinct Counties, and those again into Hundreds and Tithings, and also Parishes; so that every Person was to be condemned or acquitted of his Crimes, in the Division where he lived. The Government of these Provinces was committed to Judges or Justices of the Peace, and Sheriffs. Thus by the King's Care and Industry, there succeeded so great a Tranquillity throughout the Realm, that if a Traveller had drop'd a Bag of Money on the Road, he might have found it untouched the next Day. This glorious and quiet Time was interrupted soon; for about eight Years after the Conclusion of the last Peace, the *Danes* in a hundred and fifty Vessels, entred the River *Limene* in *Kent*, drew their Shipping four Miles up the River, in the Wood *Andred*, and landed there, and built a Fortress. After them came one *Haesten* into the *Thames*, with eighty Vessels, and erected a Fort at *Middleton*. But King *Alfred* to prevent this Storm, obliged the *Danes* of *Northumberland* and *East Sax*, by an Oath of Fidelity, and received Hostages from them. Then *Alfred* assembles his Forces, encamps between the two Parties to prevent their joining; at length at *Farnham* in *Surry*, he met them, fought them, and put them to flight. At *Beamsfleet*, *Haesten* and his Forces were defeated, the Castle taken and plundered; many were made Prisoners, and all their Ships destroyed, or brought to *London* and *Rocheſter*. Amongst the Prisoners were *Haesten's* Wife and Sons, which made him beg a Peace, which King *Alfred* granted, and gave them their full Liberty. A great Number of the *Danes* having landed in the West, and invested *Exeter*, *Alfred*, and his Army hastened towards that City, and besieged the *Danes* there, who being distressed with Famine, resolve on a Sally, are defeated, and obliged to fly into *Essex* to their Ships and Forts. About the same Time, the *Danes* that had possessed themselves of *Mercia*, drew up their Ships on the Banks, in the River *Lee*, where they built a Fort, at

or

or ne
these
veral
Lee,
not ea
their
ed to
Citize
and b
joicin
was v
Years
in wh
bility.
and th
Gallie
broug
for P
Year,
lost on
these
by Sea
happen
ces, th
ditions
settled
ercises
him ho
we co
Offices
univers
That h
his Cou
eight H
eight H
and th
which
was in
ficer ap
Subject
Man, v
breaks
" of al
" it wo
" stery;

or near *Ware* twenty Miles from *London*. To prevent these from attempting *London*, King *Alfred* cut several large Ditches, with which he so drained the River *Lee*, that the Ships were left on dry Ground, and could not easily be gotten off. Upon this, the *Danes* sent their Wives and Children into East *England*, and marched to *Quarbug* on the *Severn*, where they winter'd. The Citizens of *London* brought off what Ships they could, and burnt and destroyed the rest, and made great Rejoicings for their Removal. About this Time, *England*^{897.} was visited with a dreadful Plague, which continued three Years, and raged violently both amongst Men and Beasts, in which the King lost many of the Flower of his Nobility. The *Danes* Ships that infested the Isle of *Wight*, and the Coasts of *Devonshire*, were beaten by the King's Gallies, and one of them taken; the Prisoners were brought to *Winchester*, and by the King's Command, hang'd for Pirates, and common Enemies. And in the same Year, not fewer than twenty of their Ships were lost on the South Coast, with all their Men. During these tempestuous Times, King *Alfred* fought the *Danes* by Sea and Land, in fifty six set Battels, of which eight happened in one Day, by which he so wasted their Forces, that they were constrained to submit to such Conditions as he thought fit to impose. A Peace being thus^{A Peace made.} settled, the King employed his Time in the noblest Exercises, and in the most laudable manner, which made him honoured abroad, and beloved at Home. And if we consider his whole Life, none ever discharged the Offices of a Man, a King, and a Christian, so well, for the universal Good of his People, and his own Reputation. That he might be no way wanting to God, himself, nor his Country, he divided the natural Day into three Parts; eight Hours he spent in Prayer, Study, and Writing; eight Hours in the Service and Recreation of his Body, and the other eight Hours in the Affairs of the State; which Spaces he divided by a great Wax Light, and was informed as the several Hours past, by an Officer appointed for that End. We shall dismiss this Subject, with that Character given him by a very great Man, who upon a due Consideration of all Things, thus breaks out. "O *Alfred*, the Wonder and Astonishment^{Character of King Alfred.} of all Ages! If we reflect upon his Piety and Religion, "it would seem that he had never gone out of a Monastery; if on his warlike Exploits, that he had lived no "where

His Death.

" where but in a Camp ; if on his Writings and Studies, that he had spent his whole Life in a University ; and lastly, if we regard his Administration of the Affairs of his Kingdom and Subjects, one would think that his whole Time had been employed in nothing else but enacting Laws, and promoting Justice in his Tribunals and Courts. " He took precise Notice of his Revenues, and made a Survey of his Kingdom, which he kept in a Register Book at *Winchester* ; he severely punished corrupt and ignorant Judges. At length in the fifty first Year of his Age, when he had reigned twenty nine Years, and above six Months, in the Year 900, and on the twenty fifth of *October*, he died, and was buried at *Winchester*.

EDWARD the Elder.

900.
Edward succeeds.

Ethelwald rebels.

Who flies and joins the Danes.

A Peace concluded.
910.

THE real Sorrow of the Nation, occasioned by the Death of King *Alfred*, was much alleviated by the Succession of Prince *Edward* his eldest Son, who, tho' he was much inferior to his Father in Learning, and Abilities, exceeded him afterwards both in Power and Grandeur. Notwithstanding the general Affection of the People for Prince *Edward*, his Cousin *Ethelwald* pretended to the Crown ; accordingly he seized on two Towns called *Winburn* and *Tweonam*, in the former of which he fortified himself, declaring, he would live or die in that Place ; but upon the Approach of King *Edward's* Army at *Baddenbryg* near *Winburn*, he fled out of the Town by Night, and posted to *Northumberland*, where he joined the *Danes*, who acknowledged him King of *England*. Thus King *Edward* without fighting, repelled *Ethelwald*, and the *Kentish* Men the following Year beat a considerable Party of the *Danish* Pirates. In the mean Time, *Ethelwald* went into *France*, and being reinforced by the *Normans*, returned the next Year into *England*, joined the *Danes*, and invaded *Mercia* with Fire and Sword, as far as *Crekelade* in *Wiltshire* ; then passing the *Thames*, he made great Devastations, and so returned. King *Edward* pursues them, laying all waste, between *Decil's Ditch* in *Cambridgeshire*, and the River *Ouse* ; a bloody Battel ensues, wherein the *Danes*, tho' they kept the Field, lost their King, *Eolrick*, and *Ethelwald* the Author of this War. Hence a Peace ensued, which lasted for the Space of three Years ; at the end of which

which
King
in five
The Y
Mercia
and o
and a
them,
ing Pe
ty of
that ha
for eve
Oxford
Party
fisted
The Y
Severn
comin
shop, f
After t
now a
imagin
Nation
tifying
Wigmo
nity to
diately
and su
lost m
Friend
took b
the Pl
Anothe
tack it
except
on the
soon
ny thou
of the
mit, an
Comm
subdue
ces, he
Picts, t
King o

which Time, the *Danes* broke the Peace ; upon which, ^{And is broken.} King *Edward* sent an Army into *Northumberland*, and in five Weeks Time, obliged them to renew the Treaty. The Year following they broke this also, and invaded *Mercia*, where they were met at *Tetnal* in *Staffordshire*, and overthrown. The *Danes* roved beyond the *Severn*, and at *Canbridge* in *Glocestershire*, King *Edward* met them, and obtained a great Victory. And now enjoying Peace, about the Year 915, he restores the University of *Cambridge*, and decreed, that all the Privileges that had been granted by his Predecessors should continue for ever. About two Years after, the *Danes* invaded ^{The *Danes* beaten.} *Oxfordshire*, and made great Havock, while another Party marched into *Hartfordshire*, but were bravely resisted by the Inhabitants, who took their Horses. The Year after, a new Fleet of the *Danes* entred the ^{917.} *Severn*, landed, and ravaged the Coasts of *Wales*, and coming to *Irchenfield*, they took *Kunelac* a *British* Bishop, for whose Ransom King *Edward* gave forty Pounds. ^{A Bishop ransomed.} After this the *Danes* retired to *Ireland*, and *England* had now a breathing Time, in which King *Edward* took all imaginable Ways to strengthen himself, and secure the Nation, by building many Towns and Castles, and fortifying others ; in particular, while he was fortifying *Wigmore* in *Herefordshire*, the *Danes* took an Opportunity to lay Siege to *Torcester*, but Supplies being immediately sent, the *Danes* fled in the Night, were pursued, and surprised between *Burnwood* and *Aylesbury* ; they lost many Men and much Baggage. King *Edward's* ^{The *Danes* lose Ground.} Friends besieged the new Fort of *Temesford*, which they took by Storm, and slew their King, with all the rest in the Place, who chose Death, rather than Submission. Another of the King's Parties marched to *Colchester*, attack it, and carry the Place, putting all to the Sword, except a few, that escaped over the Walls. The *Danes*, on the other Hand, laid Siege to *Maldon*, but Relief being soon sent thither, they retired with the Loss of many thousands of their Men. These continual Progresses of the King's Forces, obliged the *Danish* Armies to submit, and swear Obedience to him, and to observe his Commands for the future. King *Edward* having thus subdued his Enemies in *England*, and fortified many Places, he marched his Army into the Territories of the *Picts*, to a Place called *Bedecanwillon* ; upon which, the King of the *Scots*, and the *Scottish* Nation chose him for their

King of the their Lord; whose Example the *Northumbrians*, and the
Scots and o- *British* King, and his Subjects follow. These are the
 thers submit famous Acts of the great King *Edward*, who had ex-
 tended his Dominions beyond any of his Predecessors.
 But now after a fortunate and triumphant Reign of a-
 bout twenty four Years, in the Year 924, he dies, and is
 buried at *Winchester* by his Father, leaving behind him,
 five Sons, and nine Daughters.

ATHELSTAN.

924.
Athelstan
 crowned
 King.

A *Thelstan*, his Son, being thirty Years of Age, full of
 Spirit, was by the Consent of the Nobility, prefer-
 red before his legitimate Son *Edmund*, under Age, and
 was crowned at *Kingston* upon *Thames*; but one *Alfred*
 opposed him, on the Account of his Illegitimacy, and
 conspired to seize him at *Winchester*, and put out his
 Eyes. This Plot was opportunely discovered, *Alfred*
 taken, and utterly denied the Fact; for which Reason, he
 was sent to *Rome*, to purge himself before the Pope;
 where coming to take his Oath before the Altar of *St.*
Peter, he fell down, was carried off, and died three Days
 after. *Athelstan's* Affairs were a little disturbed, on the
 North Side of the *Humber*, where *Inguald*, one of the
Danish Kings, seized on *York*, and *Sithric*, the *Danish*
 King of *Northumberland*, by Force made himself Mas-
 ter of *Davenport* in *Cheshire*, and he became so consider-
 able, that *Athelstan* gave him his Sister *Edgitha* in Marri-
 age. But *Sithric* dying soon after, the Kingdom of *North-*
umberland was added to the King's Dominions, by
 which Means, he became the first, that ever ruled all
England, without any other King under him; and by his
 Conquests, this Prince justly deserved the Title of first
 Monarch, tho' it was not assumed, till *Edred* his young-
 er Brother came to the Throne. *Northumberland* being
 reduced, *Godefrid* fled into *Scotland*, and his Brother *An-*
laf into *Ireland*. Upon which, *Athelstan* invaded *Scot-*
land both by Sea and Land, and drove his Enemies be-
 fore him by Sea, as far as *Cathness*, and by Land, as far
Dunfeodor, and *Merlmore*. This caused *Constantine*,
 and *Eugenius* King of *Cumberland*, to deliver themselves
 up to the King's Mercy, who treated them in a manner
 every way suitable to their Dignity; but *Godefrid*, with
 one *Turfrid*, made their Escape, and collecting some
 Forces, besieged *York*, but without Success, and were
 shortly

934.
 He invades
Scotland.

Northumber-
land added to
Athelstan's
 Dominions.

shortly
 whence
Turfrid
 mitted.
 Not
Anlaf
land, a
Englan
nanburg
 ture of
 cian, a
 King's
 Remark
 served
 King, v
 answer
Anlaf,
 suspect
 delity,
 was don
 same Pl
 shop's
 the Arm
 Battel e
 length
 gave wa
 persued
 ded vast
 Fame o
 were an
 with hin
 bassadors
 Son *Oth*
 his Son,
 Favour
 King *At*
Turketul
 his Sitter
 for Beau
 ried to th
 his Court
 and *Aqui*
 invade *W*
 their chic
 all the po

shortly after taken, and imprisoned in a Castle, from whence also they made their Escape. Not long after, *Turfrid* was cast away, and drowned, and *Godefrid* submitted.

Not long after, *Constantine* King of Scotland, with ^{938.} *Anlaf* from Ireland, fell on *Eugenius* King of Cumberland, and after four Years Preparations, they invaded England, by the River *Humber*, and advanced as far as *Brunanburg* in Northumberland. *Anlaf* to find out the Pos-
England invaded by the Scots and others.

ture of the King's Forces, put on the Habit of a Musician, and by his Harp and Voice, got Admittance into the King's Tent, by which he had Opportunity to make his Remarks, and being dismiss'd, one who had formerly served under him, knew him, of which he acquaints the King, who blamed him for letting his Enemy go; but he answered, that he had first given his Military Oath to *Anlaf*, and if he had betrayed him, the King might justly suspect him for the like Treason. But to prove his Fidelity, he advised the King to remove his Tent, which was done, and a Bishop coming, pitched his Tent in the same Place. *Anlaf* returns in the Night, fell on the Bishop's Tent, and slew him, and his Retinue. At this the Army was alarmed, and the next Morning a bloody Battel ensued, both Parties fought desperately, till at
A bloody Battel.

length *Constantine* was killed on the Spot; the Scots gave way, and *Anlaf* and his Followers fled, and were pursued with a terrible Destruction. This Victory added vastly to the Reputation of King *Athelstan*, and the Fame of it flying thro' all Christendom, many Kings were ambitious of his Friendship, and sought an Alliance with him on any Terms. *Henry* the Emperor sent Ambassadors, to desire one of his Sisters in Marriage for his Son *Otho*. *Hugh* King of France requested another for his Son, and *Lewis* Prince of Aquitain begged the like Favour for himself. These were all kindly received by King *Athelstan*, who under the Conduct of his General *Turketul*, and some of his chief Courtiers, sent four of his Sitters, who for Chastity were superior to *Diana*, and for Beauty exceeded *Helena*. The two eldest were married to the Emperor's Son, and another great Prince of his Court, and the two youngest, to the Kings of France and Aquitain. Now *Athelstan*, with his Brother *Edmund*, invade *Wales*, and with great Ease, reduced *Ludwal* their chief King to Subjection. Then he commanded all the petty Kings of *Wales* to meet him at *Hereford*,
Princes seek Alliance with Athelstan.

and

Kings of
Wales made
Tributary.

and obliged them to pay him yearly twenty Pound weight of Gold, three hundred of Silver, twenty five thousand Beeves, and as many Hounds and Hawks as he should demand.

The Punish-
ment of
Murder pe-
cuniary, not
capital.

King *Athelstan*, being thus dreaded abroad, and feared at Home, enjoyed Peace for near three Years; during which Time, he made many Laws for the preserving of the Quiet and Government of his Country, one of which for its Peculiarity, we shall here recite; the Price of Murther or Man-killing was established, from the King to the Peasant, to be paid in *Thrimsa's*, a piece of Silver of the Value of three Shillings. Of these for the Life of the King they were to pay thirty thousand, of which one half the King's Relations received, and the Nation the other half. For an Archbishop fifteen thousand; for a Bishop or Alderman eight thousand; for the Life of a Field-Marshal, Knight-Marshal, or General four thousand; for a Priest two thousand, and for a Peasant, two hundred and sixty seven; the half to be given to the Relations, and half to the Nation. At length, this great Prince, having performed all noble Parts of Religion, Justice, and Magnanimity, died in the Year 940 at *Glocester*, and was buried at *Malmsbury*, having reigned fifteen Years and odd Months.

EDMUND.

940.
Edmund suc-
ceeds.

Edmund, Brother of the great *Athelstan*, succeeded in the Throne, and tho' he was but eighteen Years old, he was not inferior to his Predecessors in Courage and Bravery; as an Instance of which, in the second Year of his Reign he freed *Mercia* from the Power of the *Danes*, and took from them *Leicester*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Stamford*, and *Darby*, where they had been placed by his Father King *Edward*. Hence a Peace ensued, during which, *Odo* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, set forth diverse Canons, of which one was, That the King and Nobility should pay the most humble Obedience to the Archbishop and Bishops. But there was soon put an End to King *Edmund's* great Actions, and his Friends Expectations, by a very strange Accident: For the King being at a Festival amidst his People and Servants, that loved and honoured him, was stabbed by one *Leof* an Outlaw. He had reigned six Years and six Months, and was buried at *Glassenbury*.

EDRED.

EDRED.
and E
People
of En
Great
ed all
Obedi
brians
while
ruld, a
ted to
Presen
ing Di
Sickne
ed nine

EDRED.
ston, v
med t
Age.
dissolu
he wit
and re
The B
shop D
Return
ed the
ing hin
brough
highly
these V
fed all
concei
Clergy
to get
did, an
him an
People
Vor

EDRED.

E *Dr*ed his youngest Brother, succeeded him in the *A. D. 946.*
 Throne, notwithstanding he left two Sons, *Edwi* *Edred suc-*
 and *Edgar*, and was by the Consent of the Nobility and *ceeds, the*
 People crowned at *Kingston*, and was the very first King *first who was*
 of *England*, who in writing, stiled himself King *stiled King*
 of *Great Britain*. In the first Year of his Reign he subdu- *of Great Bri-*
 ed all *Northumberland*; upon which, the *Scots* swore *tain.*
 Obedience to him. Some Time after, the *Northum-*
brians recalled *Anlaf*, and set him up for a considerable
 while; after that, they made one *Eric*, the Son of *Har-*
old, a *Dane*, King: But *Edred* advancing, they submit-
 ted to his Government, and appeas'd him with great
 Presents. But the King, being seized with a languish-
 ing Distemper, and at length consumed with a tedious
 Sickness, died in the Flower of his Age, having reign- *His Death*
 ed nine Years, and six Months.

EDWI.

E *Dwi*, the eldest Son of King *Edmund*, succeeds in the *955.*
 Throne, and was unanimously crowned at *King-* *Edwi suc-*
ston, who for the Loveliness of his Person, was surna- *ceeds.*
 med *the Fair*. He was now about fourteen Years of
 Age. And Writers give him the Character of a very
 dissolute Prince; for on the very Day of his Coronation,
 he withdrew himself from the Company of his Nobles,
 and retired to the Chamber of his Concubine *Algiua*.
 The Barons being much offended at this, they sent Bi-
 shop *Dunstan*, a Man of great Courage, to request his
 Return, who boldly entred the Chamber, sharply rebuk-
 ed the Women, gently reprehended the King, and tak-
 ing him by the Hand, between Force and Persuasion,
 brought him back to the Assembly. The King was
 highly displeased, and being set on by the Malice of
 these Women, banished *Dunstan* to *Flanders*, and cau-
 sed all the Wealth of his Monastery to be seized. He
 conceived an Aversion against all Men in Orders. The
 Clergy provoked at this, use their utmost Endeavours
 to get him excommunicated; which Archbishop *Odo*
 did, and pronounced a Separation or Divorce between
 him and his beloved *Algiua*. They also stirred up the
 People to Rebellion, for the Indignities he offered to

the Church; accordingly, the *Mercians* and *Northumbrians* revolted, and set up his younger Brother *Edgar*, leaving to him only the Kingdom of the *West Saxons*. *Edwi*, now finding that he wanted both Power and Interest to revenge himself, having reigned near four Years, died, *A. D. 959*, and was buried at *Winchester*.

EDGAR.

959.
Edgar succeeds, and is Monarch of all *England*.

He prepares vast Fleets.

All Nations come under his Protection.

Edgar, Brother of King *Edwi*, peaceably ascends the Throne, at sixteen Years of Age, and became Monarch of all *England*. His whole Reign was one continual Calm, on which Account, he obtained the Surname of *Peaceable*; his Actions were generally noble and politick, and his Government was attended with great Glory and Prosperity. He revoked the unjust Decrees of his Brother *Edwi*, put his Adulterers to Death, and recalled Bishop *Dunstan* from his Banishment, whom he made Bishop of *London* and *Worcester*, and soon after, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. This Prince understood and practised the true Interest of his Country, which was to make good Laws, and to be Master at Sea. In order to which, he fitted out a prodigious Navy, consisting of sixteen hundred Sail, which he divided into four Parts or Squadrons, making an yearly Progress with part of his Fleet about the Island. He was the first King of *England*, that was truly Lord of the Seas, by which Means he prevented the IncurSIONS of the Pirates, and defended his Kingdom against all foreign Invasions. And he was also very careful in training up his Subjects in the Art of War, and for Military Employments. These Things added much to the Fame and Grandeur of this Prince, and having cleared the Northern Parts from Rovers and Pirates, all *Traders* were ambitious of putting themselves under the Protection of so wise and powerful a Prince.

The next Step this glorious Prince took, was his Resolution to suppress Vice, and in particular, that of Drunkenness, which had introduced such publick, notorious, and mischievous Effects in the Land; and because the Lives of the Secular Clergy, became more and more luxurious and scandalous, he ordered the Bishops to regulate this Affair, by ejecting the impious Seculars, and restoring the Regulars to their Monasteries.

And

And the
dom,
Deme
great
est wa
well as
be des
to pro
three
Kings
to atte
were
berlan
Wales
hills.
ness o
rowed
attende
turned
Noble
of En
many
vive th
publick
Year o
In this
and fo
fifteen
stery o
Bells o
Englan
able A
out for
fair Se
favour
to this
his Ag
two M
of Gla

AS
d
for he

And that Justice might be done in all Parts of his Kingdom, he took a special Account of the Actions and Demeanor of his Ministers and Judges, so that the greatest Person could not evade the Law, nor the Poorest want the Benefit of it. And that the wild Beasts, as well as the Corruptions and Vices of these Times, might be destroyed; he commanded *Ludwal* King of *Wales* to procure him yearly three hundred Wolves, which in three Years Time entirely destroyed them. Eight petty Kings were at once his Vassals, whom he commanded to attend him, at his Court at *Chester*. Their Names were *Kened* King of *Scotland*, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Maccure* King of the *Isles*, with five Kings of *Wales*, viz. *Duswal*, *Griffith*, *Hirwald*, *Jacob* and *Judebills*. The King, to set forth the Splendor and Greatness of his Dominions, went into a Gally, and was rowed by these eight Kings upon the River *Dee*, and was attended by his Nobility in another Barge; and being returned to his Palace, he is said to have declared to his Nobles, that his Successors might boast of being Kings of *England*, if they, like him, should be attended by so many Kings their Vassals. King *Edgar* did not long survive this Act of Ambition. The same Year he was publickly crowned at the *Bath*, it being the fifteenth Year of his Reign, and the thirtieth Year of his Age. In this very Year died one *Swavebing* aged a hundred and forty two Years, and another aged a hundred and fifteen Years; and also *Turkerul*, Abbot of the Monastery of *Croyland*, who added six Bells to the two great Bells of that Abby, which was the first Ring of Bells in *England*. Notwithstanding the many just and honourable Actions of King *Edgar*, this Prince was not without some remarkable Stains; especially in relation to the fair Sex, which are acknowledged by Writers the most favourable to his Memory. But Death soon put an end to this great Prince; for in the thirty second Year of his Age, he died, having reigned sixteen Years, and two Months, *A. D.* 975, and was interred in the Abby of *Glassenbury*.

He is attended by eight Kings.

973. His Coronation.

The first Ring of Bells in *England*.

EDWARD the Younger.

AS soon as the great *Edgar* was dead, the Nation was divided into Factions, concerning the Succession; for he leaving two Sons, by two several Wives, Arch-
975.

Edward chosen King.

Many Calamities.

bishop *Dunstan*, and the rest of the Bishops, were for Prince *Edward* his eldest Son, while Queen *Elfrida* and her Party, were for setting up her Son *Ethelred*. But the Archbishops *Dunstan* and *Oswald*, with the Bishops, Abbots, and many of the Nobility, met together in a great Council, and chose Prince *Edward* King, whom they immediately anointed and crowned at *Kingston*, he being then a Youth of fifteen Years of Age. Soon after there appeared dreadful Comets, the Fore-runners or Portenders of the Miseries of the Nation; for there immediately succeeded Barrenness of Ground, Famine amongst Men, Death of Cattel, with many other Calamities. In the mean Time, King *Edward* lived a quiet and undisturbed Life, permitting his Step-Mother to order all Affairs as she pleased, and cherishing his younger Brother, with the utmost Love and Tenderness. She with all the Artifice imaginable, concealed her Design of wresting the Title from him, till she had an Opportunity to put it in Execution, which at length she accomplished; for the poor Prince being wearied with Hunting, and tormented with Thirst, leaves his Companions to follow the Game, and rode alone to her Palace, at *Corf-Castle* in *Dorsetshire*, in order to refresh himself; the Queen shewed him all the Respect imaginable, desiring him to alight from his Horse, but he refusing that, she ordered Wine to be brought him, and while he was drinking, one of her Servants stabbed him in the Back. Thus fell *Edward* the younger, in the eighteenth Year of his Age, after he had born the Name of a King for three Years and a half, who for his Innocence and the manner of his Death, obtained the Sirname of *Martyr*.

ETHELRED 2.

979.

His Brother *Ethelred* succeeds.

His Coronation.

Edward being thus unfortunately removed, his half Brother *Ethelred*, easily stepped into the Throne, he being not above ten or twelve Years of Age. Shortly after his Brother's Death, he was crowned at *Kingston*, by Archbishop *Dunstan*, who, as he put the Crown upon his Head, in a prophetic manner, declared, that the Sin of his Brother's Murderers, should not be expiated, without great Bloodshed; for such Calamities should fall upon *England*, as it had never felt before. Some Time after, the *Danes*, who for the Space of fifty Years had not infested this Nation, returned on the

the Co
at Son
Booty
which
about
The f
Cornw
Coasts
broad,
Year 9
The D
sed by
People
and pr
furiou
Goda
but los
these L
mond
wich,
of Eal
Life, t
all Ha
with
know
red bei
by Arc
Dukes
ney to
lated t
that th
no mo
Men,
nerous
which
ness;
sweet
they la
and the
Humb
Sides
and ga
Head
ers, v
by the

the Coasts, and in the third Year of his Reign, landed at *Southampton*, took the Town, and carried away great Booty; from whence they passed to the Isle of *Thanet*, The Danes land again. which they also wasted; as was likewise the Country about *Chester*, by another Party of those Barbarians. The following Year, they harraß'd *Devonshire*, and *Cornwall*, and the next *Portland*, and the adjacent Coasts; and what added to these Misfortunes from abroad, was the burning of the City of *London*, in the Year 981, but how it came to pass, is not discovered. The Disorders hereby raised in the Nation were increased by domestick Troubles and Disturbances; and the People and the Cattel were swept off by strange Fevers, and prodigious Fluxes. The *Danes* now return, and furiously invade the Coast of *Devonshire*; against whom, *Goda* and *Stremewold* made Head, and put them to flight, but lost their Lives in the Contest. Three Years after, these *Danes* under the Command of *Justin* and *Guthmond* land in the East, and plunder the Town of *Ipswich*, and marched to *Maldon*, where *Brictnoth*, a Duke of East *Saxony*, bravely opposed them, but losing his Life, the *English* were at length worsted. And now all Havens, Harbors, and landing Places, were filled with Swarms of these Locusts, that it could not be known where to meet them with Advantage. *Ethelred* being of a slothful unactive Temper, was advised by Archbishop *Siricius*, Successor to *Dunstan*, and two Dukes, *Ethelward* and *Alfric*, to give the *Danes* Money to quit the Coasts. Accordingly, it was stipulated to give them ten thousand Pounds, on Condition that they should quit the Country, and infest the Coast no more; an infamous Example, and unworthy of Men, to redeem their Liberty with Money, which generous Minds would never have submitted to, and which served only for a Time to satisfy their Covetousness; for in about a Year, the *Danes* having tasted the sweet of Money, resolved to raise more. Accordingly 993, they landed in the North, and plundered *Banborough*, and then directing their Course to the Mouth of the *Humber*, they wasted *Yorkshire* and *Lincolnshire* on both Sides of the River, killed Men, Women, and Children, and gathered a vast Booty. The Country Men made Head against them, but in the Battel three of their Leaders, viz. *Frana*, *Fritbegist*, and *Godwin*, being *Danes* by the Father's Side, betrayed them, and procured their Defeat,

First Tribute paid to the Danes 10000 l.

988. Danish Invasions increase.

Danes renew their Devastation.

Second Tri-
bute paid the
Danes,
16000 l.

Defeat, and likewise *Alfric* a Sea Commander did the same; for having an Opportunity to surprize the *Danes*, he over Night gave them Intelligence, by which Means they escaped. About this Time, *Swane* King of *Denmark*, being joined with *Anlaf* King of *Norway*, arrived with a numerous Fleet, entred the *Thames*, and furiously attacked *London*, with design to burn it; but the Citizens valiantly opposed him, and obliged him to raise the Siege. Exasperated by this Repulse they invaded *Essex* and *Kent*, and wasted the Coast with Fire and Sword, and then passed into *Sussex* and *Hampshire*, destroying Houses, Buildings, Fields, Men, Women, and Children. To put a Stop to these violent Proceedings, the slothful King, and his unactive Counsellors, again purchase a Truce with Money, and now the Price was sixteen thousand Pounds; upon this the *Danes* retired to their Ships at *Southampton*, and winter'd there. *Ethelred* invited *Anlaf* King of *Norway* to come and visit him at his Court now at *Andover*, where he was royally entertained, was baptized, and adopted the King's Son, and being dismiss'd with great Presents, he promised upon Oath, not to molest *England* any more, which he faithfully performed. But the Calamity ended not so; for the *Danes* after three Years Intermission, entred the River *Severn*, and wasted South *Wales*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwall*, and winter'd at *Taustock*. The next Year they entred the River *Frome*, and wasted the greatest part of *Dorsetshire*, with many other Parts; and though the *English* often made Head against them, yet through the Treachery of their Leaders, or some other Misfortune, they were hindred from Battel. It would be endless to enumerate all the Devastations they made, and the Desolations they left behind them, in all the Places and Countries through which they passed. The following Year they entred the River *Medway*, and besieged *Rocheſter*; the *Kentish* Men assembled, and gave them a sharp Encounter; but this did not hinder the *Danes* from proceeding; at which King *Ethelred* and his Counsellors were so roused, that they levied an Army, and fitted out a Fleet. But neither were the Generals able to command, nor the Admirals to give Orders, by reason of their unskilfulness in military and maritime Affairs; so that they were the Nation's Burden, not its Defence, which more embolden'd the Enemy to proceed, who in the following Year passed over into *Nor-*
mandy,

mand
their
In th
both
abſen
pediti
on, i
plant
Angle
vaſtat
Norm
Siege
ſtorm
ſo br
all v
Coun
titude
ter in
Iſle o
of *H*
Ethel
himſe
Tribu
voure
tween
they
Ki
ed to
acco
and n
ſwell
ed up
to tak
of th
their
the u
mand
ninth
foun
This
were
as w
their
wher
they

mandy, but on what Account is not recorded, and at their Return, committed greater Hostilities than before. In the midst of these dismal Times, the Danes burnt both Oxford and Cambridge. While the Danes were absent, King Ethelred was pleased to undertake an Expedition both by Sea and Land, to make some Diversi-
 on, into Cumberland, where the Danes had been most planted, and lived in Peace; and there, and in the Isle of Anglesey, he imitated his Enemies in Ravages and Devastations. In the mean Time, the Danes returning from Normandy, entred the Mouth of the River Ex, laid Siege to Exeter, batter'd the Walls, and resolved to storm it; but the Inhabitants like those of London, made so brave a Defence, that they were obliged to retire; all which was immediately revenged on the poor Country People, whom they murdered in great Multitudes. The Enemy having glutted himself with Slaughter in Devonshire, returned to his Fleet, and sailed to the Isle of Wight, which he ravaged, as likewise the Coast of Hampshire and Dorsetshire, till at length easy King Ethelred, by the Advice of Counsellors as unactive as himself, sends one Leof a Courtier, to propose a third Tribute to the Danes for a Peace; to which these Devourers readily hearken'd, but enhanc'd the Sum to twenty four thousand Pounds, which being paid down, they were pleased to desist from all Acts of Hostility.

Oxford and
 Cambridge
 burnt.
 1000.

Third Tri-
 bute paid
 the Danes
 24000 l.
 1002.

King Ethelred having thus purchased a Peace, resolv-
 ed to strengthen his Family by some potent Alliances; accordingly he treated with Richard Duke of Normandy, and married his Daughter Emma. The King being now swell'd with the Thoughts of his new Alliance, resolv-
 ed upon a violent and dangerous Expedient, which was to take a full Revenge, for all the Insults and Barbarities of the Danish Nation, by putting an end at once to all their Power. In order to effect this, he sent Letters with the utmost Secrecy, into all Parts of the Kingdom, com-
 manding all his Subjects on a certain Hour, on the ninth Day of July, to set upon the Danes wherever they found them, and to destroy them all without any Mercy.

A general
 Massacre of
 the Danes.

This Command was strictly executed, and the Danes were murdered; no Age, no Sex escaped, the Women as well as the Men were butchered, and the Brains of their Children were dashed out against the Walls. And when the Multitude found themselves thus Masters, they proceeded to new Barbarities, digged Holes in the

The History of ENGLAND.

Ground, put *Danish* Women into them up to the Waste, and then set fierce Mastiffs upon them, which cruelly tore off their Breasts. Several *Danes* of the highest Quality, received upon publick Faith to ratify the late Peace, were not exempted from the Cruelties of the Populace; among whom was King *Swane's* Sister, *Gumildes*, Wife to Count *Paleng*, who several Years before had come into *England* with her Family, where she had received the Christian Faith, and had now given up her self, her Husband, and Son, as Hostages to King *Ethelred*. This Princess had first her Husband and Son slain in a most barbarous manner, before her Face, and then she her self was ordered to be beheaded, which Sentence she took with an unconcerned Bravery and Courage; and at her Death, she foretold, that her Death and Blood would cost *England* dear, and that it would not be long, before it would be amply revenged. The Consequences of this horrid Massacre, were very terrible to the *English* Nation. For as soon as King *Swane* heard of it, he was highly exasperated, and resolved, being fired with the utmost Rage and Resentment, to make a full Push, and conquer the whole Nation: Therefore he invited all Strangers to his Assistance, and having got a great many to join him, he fitted out a powerful Fleet, and being arrived at the South Western Parts of the Nation, he entred the River *Ex*, stormed the City of *Exeter*, demolished the Walls, from the East to the West Gate, and marched off with a large Booty. After this, he wasted *Wiltshire*, and a strong Party were drawn out to oppose him; but when the Armies were ready to join in Battel, *Alfric* the *English* General feigned a sudden Sickness, by which the Army was so discouraged, that they fled with Precipitation; upon which, *Swane* without any Opposition, marched up to *Wilton*, which he plundered, and burnt, and having dealt in the same manner with *Salisbury*, he returned to his Ships. The next Year, he infested the Coasts of *Norfolk*, plundered and burnt the City of *Norwich*; upon which, *Ulfhetul*, Duke of the *East Angles*, made a Peace with him; but *Swane* in a few Days perfidiously broke it, and marched to *Thetford*, which he likewise plundered and burnt.

King *Swane* resolves to revenge it.

He invades the Nation.

1005.
The Miseries of *England*.

The next Year, there happen'd so great a Famine in *England*, that drove *Swane* back to *Denmark*, but supplied the Place of his devouring Sword; for more perished

perished
fered b
plorabl
a luxu
gent N
mostie
union,
obstina
publich
permit
Force
enter
Kent a
The K
ble Re
Danes
denly,
so that
and go
where
then in
Subje
as far
with c
bility,
and so
The L
taind
of thi
The
lost a
three
out a
Head-
as a P
peditio
diers,
Sandw
Foreig
Condi
good
Brith
the Ki
twent
Brith

perished by Hunger in one Year, than before had suffered by his Cruelties. *England* was now in the most deplorable Condition, involved in all Sorts of Calamities, a luxurious and slothful King, an unactive and negligent Nobility, yet possess'd with private Heat and Animosities, which occasioned not only a dangerous Disunion, but a betraying of all Secrets to the Enemy; an obstinate Priesthood, that would not contribute to the publick Necessities; to all which God was pleased to permit great Storms, which much impaired the Naval Force of the Nation. The *Danes* in the Year 1006, *England* invaded. enter *Sandwich* Road, with a great Fleet, and overrun *Kent* and *Suffex*, destroying all with Fire and Sword. The King, to oppose them, raised an Army, with a noble Resolution to engage them in Person. But the *Danes*, good at flying, removed from Place to Place so suddenly, plundering and destroying wheresoever they went, so that they frustrated the slow Motions of a heavy Camp, and got safe into the Isle of *Wight*, with great Booty, where they winter'd till *Christmas*. The King being then in *Shropshire*, seeking the Blood of some worthy Subjects, the *Danes* overran *Hampshire*, and *Berkshire*, as far as *Reading* and *Wallingsford*, which they burnt, with other Places. Upon this, the King and his Nobility, have Recourse to their last Remedy, the Coffers, and sent a fourth Time to buy a dishonourable Peace. The *Danes* now again raise the Price, and now obtained from the Nation half sunk in Poverty, the Sum of thirty six thousand Pounds.

Fourth Tribute paid to the *Danes*
36000 l.
1008.

The next Year, King *Ethelred* shewed, that he had not lost all Care of his Nation; for he enacted, that every three hundred and ten Hides of Land should furnish out a Gally, and every nine Hides find a Corslet and Head-Piece; now every Hide contained so much Land, as a Plow could till in a Year. These Ships were expeditiously built, victualled, and man'd with choice Soldiers, and their Rendezvous appointed at the Port of *Sandwich*, to secure the Coasts from the Descents of Foreigners. *England* was now believed to be in a safe Condition, when suddenly a Dissention, the Bane of all good Designs, sprung up among the Nobility; and *Brithric*, Brother of *Elric*, falsely accused *Wulwoth* to the King, who fearing the Potency of his Enemies, with twenty Ships, fled, and practised Piracy on the Coasts. *Brithric* followed him with eighty Vessels, but meeting with

More Mis-
chiefs from
the Danes.

with a Storm, was cast on the Shore, where *Wulwoth* soon after burnt them. This Misfortune caused the King and his Nobility to return Home, ordering the Fleet up to *London*. Upon this, *Turkill*, a *Dane*, arrived on the Coasts with some Ships, and in *August* was followed by a numerous Fleet, commanded by *Hemming* and *Eilaf*, who joined *Turkill*, landed in the Isle of *Thanet*, and passed to *Sandwich*, and then to *Canterbury*, where they forced the Inhabitants to purchase their Peace, with three thousand Pounds. After this, they return to their Ships, sail to the Isle of *Wight*, and then enter *Sussex* and *Hampshire*, plundering and burning all as they went. King *Ethelred* now awakened with his People's Misfortunes, raiseth an Army to oppose them; but all was acted so unskilfully, and so negligently, that the Enemy was not at all hindred from their Rapines. After this, they returned to the *Thames*, where they winter'd, and ravaged both Sides of the River, and often attacked *London*, but were as often repulsed with Loss. In the Spring they left their Ships, pass'd thro' *Clutteren* Wood into *Oxfordshire*, and burnt that City; then dividing their Forces, they ravaged the Country on both Sides of the *Thames*; they joined again at *Staines*, and returned to their Ships, which being repaired, they enter *Suffolk*, and spent three Months in the most barbarous Ravages, burnt *Thetford*, *Cambridge*, and many other Towns, killing all they met in their way. They passed again into *Oxfordshire*, which they wasted, together with the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hertford*. The same Year they went into *Northampton*, burnt that Town, and all the adjacent Country; then they returned, and laid *Wiltshire* waste; and the next Year, they destroyed with Fire and Sword, all East-England, *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Hertfordshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, and the Counties of *Oxford*, *Bedford*, and *Cambridge*, with half of *Huntington*, and the greatest part of *Northampton*, and on the South Side of the *Thames*, *Kent*, *Surry*, *Sussex*, with the Counties of *Southampton*, *Wilts*, and *Berks*. The *December* following, they besieged *Canterbury*, took it in twenty Days, and for Diversion, used all manner of Barbarities. To redress which Mischiefs, in the Spring, the traiterous *E-dric*, and the rest of the wicked Nobility of both Orders, assembled in Council at *London*, and proposed a fifth Tribute to the *Danes*, which was now raised from

1012.
A fifth Tri-
bute paid to
the Danes
48000 l.

thirty

thirty
bute
on bo
Ships
again
with
merly
forty
geld.
Land
for th
maine
tellig
when
Land
Ac
with
he sa
Gains
camp
therea
brians
and a
him,
ing g
he m
foon
imme
towa
was w
which
the B
Hosta
was f
findin
and fe
their
a barb
of the
Up
Queen
into M
Provin
the me
rough,

thirty six, to forty eight thousand Pounds. This Tribute being paid, and a Peace confirmed by solemn Oaths on both Sides, the *Danish* Fleet retired; only forty five Ships remained with King *Ethelred*, to defend *England* against Foreigners, upon Condition to be maintained with Cloaths and Provisions. And this Year as formerly, there was a Tax raised, to pay this Tribute of forty eight thousand Pounds, which was called *Danegeld*. And also it was resolved, that every Hide of Land in the Kingdom should pay twelve Pence yearly, for the Subsistence of this Fleet, of which *Turkill* remained Admiral, who constantly gave King *Swane* Intelligence, how Affairs stood here; and so let him know when it would be most seasonable to re-invade the Land.

The Payment of *Danegeld*.

Accordingly, the next Year he landed at *Sandwich* with a powerful Force, whence after a few Days Stay, he sailed for the *Humber*, and passed up the *Trent* to *Gainsborough* in *Lincolnshire*, where he landed, and encamped his great Army. This struck Terror upon all thereabouts, and to prevent their Ruin, the *Northumbrians*, the Inhabitants of *Lindsea*, and those of *Fisburgh*, and all that lay North of *Watling Street*, submit to him, give Hostages, and acknowledge him King. Having given the necessary Orders to secure those People, he marched into *Mercia*, destroying all before him; he soon took *Oxford*, then marched to *Winchester*, which immediately yielded; from thence he turned his Course towards *London*, where *Ethelred* resided, and *Turketul* was with his Forces. He was bravely repel'd: Upon which he directed his March to *Wallingford*, thence to the *Bath*, whither all the Western Parts repaired, gave Hostages, and made Peace with him; whose Example was soon followed by the Citizens of *London*, who finding it in vain to strive against the universal Current, and fearing his Cruelties, sent also Hostages, and made their Peace. Thus *Swane*, who acted all Things like a barbarous Tyrant, was both stiled and accounted King of the *English* Nation.

1013, *Swane* again invades the Land.

All Places submit to him.

Upon this, *Ethelred*, King only in Name, sends his Queen *Emma*, with his two Sons, *Edward* and *Alfred* into *Normandy*, to her Brother *Richard*, Duke of that Province, and some Time after he follows himself. In the mean Time the Tyrant *Swane*, residing at *Gainsborough*, laid insupportable Taxes upon the Country, and

Turkill

Turkill did the like at *Greenwich*. Now *Swane*, being
Swane kill'd. in the Height of his Pride and Cruelty, and upon the
 Point of being crowned, received a mortal Wound by
 an unknown Hand, who had the good Fortune to es-
 cape: He died, and was buried in the City of *York*.

1014.
Canute suc-
ceeds him.

Upon this, the *Danes* elected his Son *Canute*, or
Canute, for his Successor. But the *English*, having felt
 so much of the Father's Cruelty, and fearing the like
 from the Son, sent Messengers to *Ethelred* in *Norman-*
dy, declaring, that if he would promise to govern them
 with greater Care and Clemency than formerly, they
 would assist him, and join with him against all Preten-
 ders. Upon which, *Ethelred* immediately dispatches
 his Son *Edward* to assure them, that for the future he
 would govern, with more Clemency, and better than
 he had done; that he would follow their Counsel, and
 pardon whatever had been done or spoken against him;
 and being assured of the Affections of his Subjects, an
 Embassy of Lords were sent back with Prince *Edward*,
 to hasten the King's Return, which was accomplished in
 the *Lent* following, and he was received by the People,
 with universal Satisfaction. And now to answer their
 Expectations, he immediately levied an Army against
Canute, which was dispatched immediately, to prevent
 him from making Head; so that *Canute* was obliged to
 quit the Parts of *Lindsey*, and leave its Inhabitants to the
 Anger of their Country-Men, who prosecuted them
 with Fire and Sword, without Distinction or Mercy.

Ethelred re-
turns to Eng-
land.

Canute re-
tires to Den-
mark.

Upon this, *Canute* imarks, and sails into *Sandwich*
 Road, where to revenge himself upon the *English* Na-
 tion, he barbarously cut off the Ears, Hands, and slit the
 Noses of the Hostages he had in his Power, and setting
 them a Shore, departed for *Denmark* for new Recruits.
 The *Danes* were no sooner departed, but another Cal-
 amity succeeded; for on the 27th of *September*, the Tide
 overflowed the Banks, and overwhelmed many Villages,
 and drowned a great Number of People. And at this
 very Time, the Nation was forced to raise the Sum of
 thirty thousand Pounds, to pay off the *Danish* Fleet,
 that lay at *Greenwich*.

1015.
Returns to
England.

The next Year, *Canute* returning from *Denmark* with
 great Power, joined with *Turkill*, entred the River
Frome, and laid waste the Counties of *Dorset*, *Somer-*
set, and *Wilt*. In all Probability, he had been effectually
 stop'd in his Career, by Prince *Edmund*, had not false

Edric

Edric
 a Facti
 which
 my, an
 Saxons
 Army,
 vaded
 Fire an
 land, a
 try wit
 dered b
 Comm
 at Lona
 gloriou
 was bur

UP
 for his
 side, fro
 longer
 Amend
 the Cro
 ple rece
 their Se
 swore
 with his
 Side, an
 surround
 ral Atta
 the Sieg
 meet wi
 bled, w
 Enemy.
 Gillingb
 Army to
 him a fe
 gaged hi
 fatal to
 of the Ne
 and Han
 volted to
 shewed h

Edric been joined with him in the Command; he made a Faction in the Army, and plotted the Prince's Death, which being happily discovered, he revolts to the Enemy, and carried off forty Ships. Upon this, the West Saxons submitted, and provided Horses for *Canute's* Army, who the next Year, with *Edric* the Traytor, invaded *Mercia*, and proceeded in the usual Manner with Fire and Sword; and thence he passed into *Northumberland*, and constrained *Uthred* to give up the North Country with Hostages; who was, notwithstanding that, murdered by one *Turebrand*, a Danish Man, by *Canute's* express Command. About the same Time, King *Ethelred* died at London, on the 22^d Day of April, 1016, after an inglorious and miserable Reign of thirty seven Years, and was buried in St. Paul's in London.

EDMUND IRONSIDE.

UPON the Death of *Ethelred*, the Nobility at London, chose *Edmund* his eldest Son then alive, for his Successor, who obtained the Surname of *Ironside*, from his Strength of Body, and had he enjoyed a longer Life, would without Doubt, have made ample Amends for his Father's Cowardice. Having obtained the Crown, he set out for West Saxony, where the People received him joyfully, and acknowledged him for their Sovereign, while the greater Part of the Nation swore Allegiance to *Canute*, who hastned to London with his Fleet. He cast up a large Ditch on the *Surry* Side, and drew up his Ships Westward of the Bridge, surrounded the City with an Intrenchment, made several Attacks, but was repulsed, and obliged to abandon the Siege. After which, he marched into the West, to meet with King *Edmund*, before his Forces were assembled, where he found him ill provided to receive an Enemy. Nevertheless, *Edmund* gave him Battel at *Gillingham* in *Dorsetshire*, and forced *Canute* and his Army to retreat. Encouraged with this Success, he met him a second Time; near a Place called *Swarstan*, engaged him, and in all likelihood, this Battel had proved fatal to the Danes, had not *Almar* and *Algar*, the chief of the Nobility, who had the Command of the *Wiltshire*, and *Hampshire* Men, following *Edric's* Example, revolted to the Danes; notwithstanding which, *Edmund* shewed himself a stout Soldier, and an expert General,

London be-
sieged.

Canute is se-
veral Times
worsted.

A bloody
Battel at
Ashdown.

and so made a drawn Battel, which was renewed again the next Morning, and would again have won the Victory, had not perfidious *Edric* used this Stratagem to discourage the *English*, viz. He cut off the Head of one *Osmeor*, who resembled the King, and setting it up on high, cried to them; to behold the Head of their King, and if they had any regard to their own Lives, to fly immediately. This much startled them, till *Edmund* sensible of the Cheat, made himself known to his Soldiers from a Hill, and threw a Spear at *Edric*, which miss'd him, but killed two of his Attendants; which renewed their Courage, and galled the *Danes*, but they were parted by the Night, of which Opportunity *Canute* made the best Use; for he decamped, and hasten'd back to *London*, and again invested the City; upon which, *Edmund* recruited his Forces with all Speed. And now perfidious *Edric*, the better to betray him, humbly applies to *Edmund*, begged Pardon for what was past, and obtained it. *Edmund* marched to *London*, raised the Siege, and drove the *Danes* with Dishonour to their Ships. After some Time, he returned into *West-Sex* for Recruits, upon which the *Danes* again besieged *London*, but without Success; which caused them to draw off, and with his Ships, *Canute* entred a River, then called *Arenne*, and landed in *Mercia*, from whence they returned to the *Medway*, the Horse by Land, and the Foot by Shipping. In the mean Time, King *Edmund*, having levied a great Army, marched, passed the *Thames* at *Brentford*, persued *Canute* into *Kent*, where at a Place called *Osford*, he engaged him, and put his Army to flight, who retired with Precipitation, into the Isle of *Shepey*. This Victory had been complete, had not treacherous *Edric*, by Wiles prevented the Pursuit. *Edmund* returns for a Time to *Westsex* to recruit; *Canute* takes the Advantage of his Absence, invades *Mercia* again, using all in the most barbarous and cruel manner. *Edmund* marches after him, and overtook him, in his Retreat at *Ashdown*, in *Essex*, where a bloody Battel ensued, and *Edmund* had got the Victory, had not impious *Edric* revolted, with all the Troops under his Command, to the *Danes*; by which Means the *English* were out-numbered, which procured their Defeat and Ruin; for they never before received so great a Blow, losing almost all their Nobility, and the very Flower of the Nation. *Edmund* enraged at this Disaster, levied all the Forces

he

he could, and resolved once more to try his Fortune in the Field, and accordingly he met *Canute* with his Army in *Glocestershire*; upon which, the Noblemen dreading the Courage of *Edmund*, and the Power of *Canute*, began to murmur and to declare, how foolish it was for them so often to venture their Lives for the Ambition of others, who alone ought to fight for the Crowns they wore. Upon this, to prevent the Effusion of more Blood, the two Kings generously agreed to decide the Matter by single Combat between themselves. Accordingly, an Isle in the River *Severn*, was pitched upon for the place of Battel; and for Spectators of this Royal Duel, their Armies were to be on either Shore; and the Conqueror to take all. They engage, and after a long and equal Fight, finding each others Worth, they cast away their Weapons, embraced each other, and concluded a Peace, and agreed, that the Kingdom should be parted between them; *Edmund* had the Western parts of the Land, and *Canute* the Eastern for his Share. Soon after this Division was made, King *Edmund* died, after a very short, but vigorous and honourable Reign of seven Months, three Weeks, and five Days, and was buried by his Grandfather, King *Edgar*, at *Glassenbury*. Thus with *Edmund*, fell the Glory of the *English Saxons*, and in a great Measure ended the *Saxon Monarchy*, which had lasted a hundred and eighty nine Years from the Establishment made by King *Egbert*, four hundred and twenty one after the *Saxons* had wholly dispossessed the *Britains*, and five hundred sixty seven, after the first Entrance of the *Saxons* under *Hengist*.

Edmund and Canute fight a Combat.

And divide the Nation between them.



S E C T. VI.

From the Beginning of the Monarchy of the Danes in England under Canute, to the Death of Hardecanute, their last King, and the Restoration of the Saxons in Edward the Confessor.

CANUTE.

1017.

Canute chose
King.

THIS Prince, by the Death of King *Edmund*, being sole Monarch of *England*, and being willing to establish himself, summoned all the Bishops and Nobility to meet at *London*, where he demanded, whether in his Agreement with King *Edmund*, there was any Provision made for his Sons and Brothers; they through Fear, and the Hopes of Favour, answered, that there was none made. Upon this, all the Nobility took the Oaths of Fidelity to him, and readily chose him for their King, and abjured the two Sons of *Edmund*, from ever being Kings of this Nation. But the better to establish himself, he consults with the Traytor *Edric*, who advised him to dispatch *Edwin*, King *Edmund*'s Brother, for which end they pitched on one *Ethelward*, who abhorred the Fact; then *Edwin* was snared into Favour, and so dispatched; likewise *Edward* and *Edmund*, Sons of King *Edmund*, were sent to the King of *Sweden* to be murdered; but he sent them to *Solomon*, King of *Hungary*, to be carefully educated, with whom *Edmund* died, but *Edward* married *Agath*, Daughter to *Henry*, Emperor of *Germany*, by whom he had *Edgar Etheling*.

Divides
England into
four Parts.

Canute, having by these Means settled himself, divided the Kingdom into four Parts, or Governments, and made *Edric* Governor of *Mercia*, Earl *Turkill* of East *England*, and *Eric* of *Northumberland*, reserving West *Saxony* to his own proper Management. After which, he proceeded to punish King *Edmund*'s Murderers, which gained him much Respect; and then he declared, that he would govern the People according to Law, and

that al
be fo
Norm
King
by the
the fan
Edric
the hig
fulfill
ces he
and w
for his
for wh
sand P
thoufa
Law v
few Y
curity
King
fit to h
the thi
contin
Forces
into E
Parliar
ing Gr
Comm
follow
also E
soon a
the No
ing Int
fed O
encour
make Y
fectual
failed w
him, an
lowng
and wa
now K
ed into
every M
one Ha
his Siste
VOL.

that all that had passed between the two Nations, should be forgot and forgiven; and to secure *Richard* Duke of Normandy in his Interest, he married Queen *Emma*, Marries Emma, King *Ethelred's* Widow. And now, that those, who by their Treachery had advanced him, might not use the same for the Exaltation of any other, he commanded *Edric* to be executed, and his Head fixed to a Pole, on the highest Tower in *London*; and by this Means, he fulfilled his Promise to *Edric*, that for his great Services he should be exalted above all the *English* Nobility; and with him many of his Accomplices suffered. And for his farther Security, *Canute* keeps a standing Army, for whose Subsistence, he exacts a Tax of eighty thousand Pounds from the Nation, and from *London* fifteen thousand Pounds, and to preserve the same, a very strict Law was made against killing any *Danes*. Yet after a few Years, at the Importunity of the Nobility, and Security given, he sent his Army back to *Denmark*. Edric justly executed.

King *Canute* being thus established, resolved on a Visit to his Native Kingdom of *Denmark*; accordingly in the third Year of his Reign, he sailed for *Denmark*, and continued there the whole Winter, and with his *English* Forces he beat the *Swedes*. In the Spring, he returned into *England*, and at *Easter*, he held a grand Council of Parliament at *Cirester*, and being jealous of the growing Greatness of those he had intrusted with the greatest Commands, he first banished Duke *Ethelwald*, in the following Year Earl *Turkil*, and his Wife *Aetha*, and also *Eric*, the *Danish* Earl of *Northumberland*; and as soon as *Turkil* set Foot in *Denmark*, he was killed by the Noblemen of that Country. And King *Canute* having Intelligence from *Norway*, that the People despised *Olaus* their King, he sent great Sums of Money to encourage them in their Hatred and Rebellion, and to make Way for his own Power. This worked so effectually on them, that in the Year 1028, King *Canute* sailed with 50 Ships into *Norway*, where the People joined him, and drove *Olaus* out of his Country, who the following Year returned, to try the Minds of his Subjects, and was slain with all his Followers. *Canute* being now King of *England*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, returned into *England* with Applause, but was still jealous of every Man of Power; amongst whom in particular, was one *Hacune*, a *Dane*, who had married a Daughter of his Sister *Gunnilda*, whom under the Colour of an Em- 1019. Canute sails into Denmark. Returning to England. Conquers Norway.

1031.
Makes a
Journey to
Rome.

Returns to
England.

bassy he banished, who either perished at Sea, or was killed in the Isle of *Orkney*. Such were the Fears of this Prince, and such the Means he used to prevent them, declining no Actions or Methods to fix and secure the Crown on his Head. And having removed all Persons he suspected, he resolved to be very religious, thinking to appease Heaven, for all his impious Practices, by dedicating some Part of his ill gotten Riches to pious Uses. Accordingly in the fifteenth Year of his Reign, he took a Journey to *Rome*, visited the Tombs of the Apostles, and conferred extraordinary Presents on *St. Peter*, and was very liberal to the Poor, both in his Passage and Return. From *Rome* he writes to the Bishops and Nobility of *England*, exhorts them to Justice and Impartiality, and not to advance his Revenue by any cruel or unjust Means, and charged them to take Care, that Church Scot and *Rome* Scot be punctually paid; and for his own Part, he vowed great Amendment of Life for the future. From *Rome* this King went to *Denmark*, and at his Return into *England*, he spent a great Part of his Time, in building and repairing Monasteries and Churches, and was very liberal to the Clergy. Upon this, his Courtiers and Flatterers extolled him to the Skies, equalled him with *Alexander*, *Cyrus*, and *Cæsar*, and applauded him, as possessed of more than human Power. But he, to convince them of their base Practices, caused his Throne to be placed by the Sea Shore, at *Southampton*, while the Tide was flowing in, and being seated in his Robes with these Miscreants about him, he commanded the Sea to come no farther upon his Land, nor presume to wet the Feet of its Sovereign Lord. But the Sea took no Notice of him, no more than of any other Man, but flowed as usual; upon which he cried out, That none but the King of Heaven deserved the Title which they impiously bestowed on himself; from which Time he would never wear his own Crown, but commanded it to be put on the Head of a Crucifix at *Winchester*. Hence arose the Custom of hanging up the Armour of great Men in Churches, as Offerings made to God, and as an Acknowledgment of their Dependence on him. And now having by these and the like Acts of Piety, got the Affections of his People, he was become the most powerful Monarch that ever yet sat on the *English* Throne; but this lasted not long, for on the twelfth Day

Day
ing a
in the
Mean
ness,
obtain
manag
nity:
thor d
for th
else h
both in

C
former
some f
first fi
Wife
Credul
had H
was in
Danes
the Eng
red, an
Queen
Accom
tions a
where
should
the form
North
But Ha
Harold
on all.
long tin
was pro
form th
of Eng
Harol
first Bu
Ethelre
mandy.

Day of *November*, having reigned nineteen Years, wanting a few Days, he died at *Shaftsbury*, and was buried ^{Dies.} in the old Monastery at *Winchester*. And though the Means and Methods, by which he arrived at his Greatness, are no ways to be justified; yet few there are that obtained their Crowns so unjustly, who have afterwards managed their Power with so much Justice and Humanity: So that we may say of him, what a *Roman* Author does of one of the Emperors, That it had been well for the Kingdom, if he had never reigned at all, or else had continued longer; his Sons being unlike him both in Wisdom and Valour.

HAROLD.

CANUTE at his Death, left behind him three Sons, ^{1036.} viz. *Swane*, *Harold*, and *Harde-Canute*; the two former by *Elgiva* his Wife, or rather Concubine, tho' some say to conceal her Barrenness, she procured the first from a Priest's Wife, and the other from the Wife of a Shoe-maker, and so imposed on the King's Credulity. By *Emma*, the Relict of King *Ethelred*, he had *Harde-Canute*. Upon this Account, the Nation was in the utmost Confusion about the Succession; the *Danes* and the *Londoners* declare for *Harold*; most of the *English* contended for *Edward*, the Son of *Ethelred*, and some for *Harde-Canute*, the Son of *Canute*, by Queen *Emma*. At length, the more sober Part advise an Accommodation, to which End, the Heads of all Factions are summoned to a general Assembly at *Oxford*, where the major Part concluded, that the Kingdom should be divided between *Harold* and *Harde-Canute*; ^{Kingdom divided between Harold and Harde-canute.} the former to have *London*, and all the Country on the North of the *Thames*, and the latter all the South Part. But *Harde-Canute* being in *Denmark* at this Juncture, *Harold* who had got Possession of most, now seized on all. But *Ailnoth*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, for a long time refused to crown *Harold* King, yet at length was prevailed upon, by Threats or Promises, to perform the Ceremony, and *Harold* is acknowledged King ^{Harold gets the Crown.} of *England*.

Harold being thus stepped into the Throne, made it his first Business to dispatch his Rivals, particularly King *Ethelred's* two Sons, *Edward* and *Alfred*, then in *Nor-mandy*. Accordingly, he forged a Letter to these two

H 2

young

The History of ENGLAND.

young Princes, in the Name of Queen *Emma*, their Mother, earnestly inviting them into *England*. This Letter was sent to them by Express, with large Presents, which they received joyfully, and returned Answer by the same Hand, that one of them would be with her shortly, and accordingly appointed both Time and Place. *Alfred* the younger was judged most proper for this Affair, who at the appointed Time, came with a few Ships, and about six hundred *Normans*, and landed, but fell into the Ambuscade that Earl *Godwin* had laid for them. The *Normans* were all slain but every tenth Man; *Alfred* was taken Prisoner, his Eyes put out, and he cast into a loathsome Goal, where he miserably perished. Then *Harold* seized on the Treasure of his Step-Mother Queen *Emma*, and banished her out of the Kingdom. Queen *Emma* was received, and entertained by *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, who pitying a distressed Lady and Queen, assigned her *Bruges* for her Residence, and provided for her during her Continuance; where when she had resided about two Years, she had the Satisfaction of a Visit from her Son *Harde-Canute*, and they comforted themselves with the Hopes of better Fortune, either from the Temper of the *English* Nation, or that the Usurper would by some other Means finish his Days or Reign. But *Harold* on the other Hand, omitted nothing that might serve to excludethem, and all other Pretenders to his Crown, and accordingly provided a Fleet, the only Bulwark of *England*; to support which, every Port in the Kingdom was obliged to pay eight Marks of Silver for every sixteen Ships, which very much exasperated the *English*, and might soon have ended in a Revolt, had not his Death prevented it; for on the sixteenth Day of *April*, King *Harold* died, after he had reigned wickedly four Years, and as many Months, and was buried at *Winchester*. *Selden* mentions this one Law of his; that every *Welshman* was to lose his right Hand, that came over *Offa's* Ditch without Leave.

Emma banished.

Is visited by *Harde-Canute*.

Harold dies.

HARDE-CANUTE.

A. D. 1040.
Harde-Canute succeeds, and is crowned.

UPON the Death of *Harold*, the States of the Land, as well *English* as *Danes*, send Messengers to *Bruges*, to intreat *Harde-Canute* to come and receive the Crown as his Right; upon which he hastned to *Denmark* to settle his Affairs, and with sixty Ships and many

many S
the M
monstr
accordi
formed
but mac
orbitant
by *Alfr*
his Hea
afterwa
gainst a
of *Wor*
stored;
Present
ly rig'd
having
teen O
nish Sc
his left
Boss an
fides th
that Pri
Counse
Oath v
Land.
tan ve
his Peo
that it
were to
and tw
with all
ing to
incense
burn th
terrified
remote
Severn,
liantly
Liberty
dred an
to shew
kind E
King E
after a
Sister

many Soldiers, he arrived at *Sandwich*, and landed in the Month of *August*, being received with all Demonstrations of Joy, admitted King, and crowned accordingly. Having thus obtained the Crown, he performed but little worthy of his Condition and Station, but made use of that Advantage, only to gratify his exorbitant Passions. He first caused *Harold* to be dug up, by *Alfric*, Archbishop of *York*, Earl *Godwin*, and others, his Head to be cut off, and his Body cast into the *Thames*; afterwards he proceeded in carrying on his Revenge, against all *Harold's* Friends. He deprived *Living*, Bishop of *Worcester*, whom afterwards for a good Sum he restored; likewise *Godwin* appeased him by a prodigious Present, viz. a Gally with a gilded Stern, wonderfully rig'd, and man'd with eighty choice Men, every one having upon each Arm a golden Bracelet weighing sixteen Ounces, an Helmet and Croslet finely gilt, a *Danish* Scymetar adorned with Silver and Gold hung on his left Shoulder, in his left Hand a Shield, with gilt Boss and Nails, and in his right Hand a Lance; and besides this uncommon Present, he was obliged to swear, that Prince *Alfred* lost not his Eyes by his Advice or Counsel, but by the command of King *Harold*; which Oath was also taken by most of the Nobility in the Land. And now, he, like others before him, began to take very improper Methods to gain the Affection of his People; for he laid so extravagant a Tax on them, that it was almost impossible for them to pay it; they were to pay eight Marks for every Rower in his Navy, and twelve to every Officer; and this Tax he levied with all Rigor, insomuch, that two of his Officers going to *Worcester*, were slain by the People. The King incensed at this, sent his Forces to destroy the People, burn the City, and lay waste all the Country. This so terrified the poor People, that they all fled to the most remote Parts, and the Citizens to a small Island in the *Severn*, called *Beveregge*, which they fortified, and valiantly defended, till Peace was granted them, and free Liberty to return Home, but they found their City plundered and burnt. From this Time, *Harde-Canute* began to shew a better Temper; and shortly after, he gave a kind Entertainment to his Brother *Edward*, the Son of King *Ethelred* and *Emma*, who now returned Home, after a tedious Exile in *Normandy*; and he married his Sister *Gunilda*, to *Henry* the German Emperor. He

An exorbitant Tax.

Worcestershire laid waste.

His Death.

was much given to Rioting and Drunkenness, and as he lived so he died; for at *Lambeth*, at a Nuptial Entertainment, in the Height of his Jollity, carousing with the Bride, and some of the Company, he suddenly fell down speechless, and died on the eighth Day of *June*, in the Flower of his Age, after a short Reign of two Years, and almost two Months. Upon this, the insulted and oppressed *English* found means to throw off the *Danish* Yoke, by slaying and banishing the most insolent and powerful of that Nation; *Harde-Canute* dying without Issue, and *Denmark* being then embarrassed with Troubles. With him expired not only the Dominion, but in Effect, all Attempts or Invasions of the *Danes* in *England*, which tho' they had been continued, and often renewed with mighty Numbers, for two hundred and fifty Years from their first Invasion, left no considerable Change of Laws, Customs, Language, or Religion, nor other Traces of their Establishment, besides the many Castles they built, and the many Families they left behind them, who in a few Years came to incorporate, and make a Part of the *English* Nation, without Distinction.



SECT. VII.

The Monarchy of the English Saxons restored; from the Death of Harde-Canute to the Death of Harold, the last King of the English Race, and an End put to the Saxon Empire, by William Duke of Normandy.

EDWARD the Confessor.

A. D. 1042.

THE Nation being thus happily delivered from the *Danish* Yoke, began now to consult for a Successor; they immediately cast their Eyes on *Edward*, the Son of *Ethelred*, by Queen *Emma*, who entirely cast himself upon the Council and Fidelity of Earl *Godwin*, and begged his Assistance, towards his safe Return into

†

Normandy;

Norm
swer
land,
belon
of Ea
marry
This
not e
every
a Cou
persua
ses, a
ward
cordin
Winch
bury,
of wh
compl
of En
the Pe
Tyrant
with J
Edu
soft an
Creatu
and A
to seiz
Winch
unkind
Necess
Egitba
cations
esteem
was no
thing
mild,
kind o
as a T
The ne
to bani
was G
Hemm
of the
vourin
with a

Normandy; but Godwin gave him this unexpected Answer: That he had better live gloriously a King in *England*, than to die an Exile; that the Crown did of Right belong to him, as the Son of *Ethelred*, and Grandson of *Edgar*; and that if he would advance his Sons, and marry his Daughter, he should soon see himself a King. This Prince's Circumstances were such, that he could not easily reject such fair Proposals, but agreed with every Thing, and confirmed all upon Oath. Upon this, a Council was summoned at *Gillingham*, where *Godwin* persuading some by his Authority, and some by Promises, and others being already inclined to favour *Edward's* Cause, they had a great Majority for him. Accordingly on the third Day of *April*, he was crowned at *Winchester*, by the two Archbishops, *Edsi* of *Canterbury*, and *Alfric* of *York*, assisted by many other Prelates, of whom, *Living* of *Worcester* contributed much to the completing of this Design. Thus was the Monarchy of *England* restored to the *English* Royal Blood, and the People so unexpectedly delivered from the *Danish* Tyranny, that they were without Measure transported with Joy.

Godwin a Friend to Edward.

By whose Interest he is crowned K. of England.

Edward was now near forty Years of Age, of a soft and complying Temper, and being Earl *Godwin's* Creature, he conformed himself wholly to his Dictates and Advice. The first Thing he prompted him to, was to seize on the Treasure of his Mother *Emma*, then at *Winchester*; the Cause alledged was, that she had been unkind to him in the Time of his Exile, and greatest Necessities. Then he got him to marry his Daughter *Egitha*, who for her admirable Perfections and Qualifications, was not unworthy of a Crown. She was esteemed most beautiful, most chaste, and virtuous; she was noted for her Humility and Learning, having nothing of the Insolence of her Father and Brother, but mild, modest, faithful, and obliging, never doing any kind of ill Offices, so that it became a Proverb, *That as a Thorn produces a Rose, so Godwin begot Egitha.*

Seizes on his Mother's Treasury.

And marries Godwin's Daughter.

The next Step King *Edward* took for his Security, was to banish all eminent Persons of the *Danish* Blood; this was *Gunilda's*, Sister of King *Canute*, and her two Sons *Hemming* and *Turkill's* Fate, together with many others of the *Danish* Nobility. But while he was thus endeavouring to prevent Storms at Home, he was threatened with a Tempest from the Northern World, where

A. D. 1045. He banishes the Danish Nobility.

The History of ENGLAND:

Magnus, the Son of *Olaus*, King of *Norway*, prepared to invade *England*. King *Edward* to secure himself, fitted out a strong Fleet, which lay in *Sandwich Road*, to observe *Magnus's* Motions, who was diverted by *Swane* King of *Denmark*, making an Invasion on *Norway*. This so enraged *Magnus*, that the following Year, he entred *Denmark*, expelled King *Swane*, and made himself Lord of the whole Country. Upon which, *Swane* intreats King *Edward's* Assistance, but obtained it not, King *Edward* remaining Neuter; which so engaged *Magnus*, that he made no farther Attempts on *England*; and *Harold Harvager*, his Uncle, as soon as he came to the Crown, entred into an Alliance with King *Edward*.

A. D. 1049. The Emperor engaged King *Edward* in a War, against *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*; his Part was to secure the Coasts, that *Baldwin* might not escape by Sea, which he did, until an Accommodation was agreed on between them. In the mean Time, *Swane* the Son of Earl *Godwin*, who had left the Land for deflowring *Edgitha* Abbess of *Chester*, came back from *Denmark* with eight Ships, pretending a Desire to be reconciled to the King. *Beorn* undertook to make his Peace, but *Swane* forced him on Board his Ships, carried him to *Dartmouth*, murdered him, and threw him into a Ditch. At his Return, the Inhabitants of *Hastings* took six of *Swane's* Ships, killed all their Crews, and brought the Ships to *Sandwich* to the King. *Swane* with the other two fled into *Flanders*, where he continued, till *Aldred*, Bishop of *Worcester*, brought him back, and procured his Reconciliation. About this Time, *Osgod Clap*, a banished Man, infested the Coasts of *Essex*, with twenty nine Ships, two of which were taken, and the Men put to the Sword. Thus the *English* were again put in Mind of the *Danish* Cruelties, and the Remembrance of the *Irish* Devastations was revived, on the other Side of the Isle; for they entred the Mouth of the *Severn*, with thirty six Ships, and did much Damage.

1051.
He takes of
the Tax cal-
led *Danegeld*.

The King now to relieve his People oppress'd with *Famine* and *Poverty*, took off the Tax called *Danegeld*, which had lain heavy upon them for thirty eight Years. But as this Effect of his Indulgence to them tended much to their Ease and Conveniency, so other Acts of his Kindness to Strangers, this very Year, proved of dangerous Consequence to the whole Nation; for as *Eustace*,
Earl

Earl
Shipp
was f
that i
Upo
and f
tants
twen
Eusta
back
Norm
Earl
Citize
that r
fused
fed at
bility
and f
Arms
ment
sent t
thum
In the
shire,
when
of *E*
fusil
but *L*
of a
Upo
the *M*
Lond
don, a
Way
his *S*
with
Forc
Com
Godw
Days.
donec
and th
tired
and sa
Rever

Earl of Boloign, was returning from Court, to take A great Disturbance.
Shipping at *Dover*; at *Canterbury*, one of his Harbingers, was so rude with a Townsman in seeking for Lodgings, that in the Heat of Anger, he provoked him to kill him. Upon this, *Eustace*, with his Retinue, entred the House, and slew the Murderer with eighteen more; the Inhabitants took Arms, fell on him and his Followers, killed twenty one of them, and wounded almost all the rest, *Eustace* escaping with much Difficulty. *Eustace* posts back to the King, and being seconded by some other Norman Lords, prevailed on him so, that he ordered Earl *Godwin* to march to *Canterbury*, and punish the Citizens with military Execution. *Godwin* alledged, that no Man was to be condemned unheard, and so refused to obey the King's Commands. *Edward* displeased at his Behaviour, called an Assembly of all the Nobility at *Glocester*; most repaired thither, but *Godwin* and his Sons appeared not, but immediately took to Arms, and raised Forces out of their particular Government, and took up their Quarters at *Beverstan*. *Edward* sent to *Leofric*, Earl of *Mercia*, and *Syward* of *Northumberland*, to come and assist him in this Extremity. In the mean Time, *Godwin* proceeded into *Glocestershire*, and encamped at a Place called *Langtree*, from whence he sent to the King, and demanded the Delivery of *Eustace*, and the other Norman Lords; upon the Refusal denouncing War. The King bravely refused; but *Leofric*, and the wiser Sort, sensible of the Miseries of a Civil War, perswaded the King to come to a Treaty. Upon this, Hostages were exchanged on both Sides, and the Matter was referred to a farther Debate, to be held at *London*. The King marched with his Forces to *London*, and *Godwin* to *Southwark*. The grand Council, by Way of Satisfaction to the King, ordered *Godwin* with his Son *Harold*, to appear before them unarmed, and with but twelve Attendants, and to deliver up all their Forces into the Hands of the King. *Godwin* refused Compliance; upon which an Edict was published, that *Godwin* and his Sons should quit the Land within five Days. His Soldiers dreading the Consequence, abandoned him, which obliged him to depart, with his Wife, and three Sons, viz. *Swane*, *Gytha*, and *Tofti*; these retired to *Flanders*. *Harold* and *Leofwin* went to *Bristol*, and sailed for *Ireland*; and the King to complete his Revenge, deprived *Egitha* his Queen of all her Jewels and

and Treasure, and committed her to the Nunnery of *Warewell*, there to be kept in Custody by the Abbess his Sister.

Duke of
Normandy
visits K. Ed-
ward.

About this Time, *William Duke of Normandy*, with a great Number of Followers, came into *England*, to visit King *Edward*, who received him and his Retinue, with all the Respect and Magnificence imaginable, made him rich Presents, and imprudently shewed the whole Strength of the Nation, the chief Castles and Forts that were afterwards to be their own.

1052.
Farther Di-
sturbance.

Griffin the Welsh King, entred *Herefordshire*, and laid a great Part of it waste, and returned Home with much Spoil. And not long after, *Godwin's* two Sons, *Harold* and *Leofwin*, entred the *Severn*, landed in *Somerset*, and plundred many Villages in that County, and in *Dorset*, and returned to their Ships with much Booty. *Godwin* with his other Sons landing in *Kent*, first ingaged the Inhabitants of *Canterbury*, who owned him as a Sufferer for their Sakes; then those of *Sussex*, *Essex*, *Surry*, and all the Seamen of *Hastings*, and others, who swore they would live and die with him. *Godwin* passed to the Isle of *Wight* and coasted about, till he was joined by his Sons, *Harold* and *Leofwin*. Upon this, they sailed for the *Thames*, entred it, and passed up to *Southwark*. The *Londoners* favoured his Designs. This put the King and Nobility into very great Confusion, and they made all the Preparations they could; the Fleets and Armies prepared on both Sides for Battel: But the Soldiers on both Sides declared, that they were unwilling to fight, *English* against *English*, which gave the wiser Sort an Opportunity to mediate a Peace; which concluded, both Armies disband. Earl *Godwin*, and his Wife, and Sons, were restored to their former Honours and Estates, and Queen *Egitha* to her former Dignity. Right and Justice was now promised to all Men; and such *Normans* as had abused the King's Authority, and given him ill Council, were banished the Land. In this very Year, on *St. Thomas's* Night, happened so violent a Tempest, that it overturned many Churches and Houses, and broke and tore up by the Roots, vast Numbers of Trees.

1053.

The next Year, *Rees* the Brother of *Griffin*, King of *South Wales*, was taken Prisoner, and put to Death, by the King's Command, at a Place called *Balendum*, and his Head sent to *Glocester* to the King. At *Easter* in the same Year, the King celebrating that Feast at *Winchester*,

cheft
there
ther
Look
' tha
' a fi
' let
' am
' aw
Wor
his M
three
His f
Trad
killed
confe
which
Leof
Th
thumb
strong
Coun
colm
had g
did no
ing Y
the Ki
the En
the So
sent in
his ow
ed of
at Lon
land, g
he fail
him to
raised a
Herefo
pnew r
duct w
dred M
with th
Canon
City, a
The K

chester, Earl *Godwin* sitting at a Table with the King, there was mention made of *Alfred* the King's late Brother; upon which, the King gave *Godwin* an angry Look; at which *Godwin* replied, 'That he perceived, that upon every Mention made of that Prince, he cast a frowning Countenance upon him: But, added he, let not God suffer me to swallow this Morsel, if I am guilty of any Thing done, either towards the taking away his Life, or against your Interest.' After which Words, he was choaked, with the Bit he had just put in his Mouth, sunk down, and died immediately. His Earl Godwin dies. three Sons, *Harold*, *Tosti*, and *Gyrth*, were present. His first Wife was Sister of King *Canute*, who made a Trade of selling handsome Boys and Girls; she was killed by Thunder. His Earldom of *West-Sex*, was confer'd on his Son *Harold*, and the Earldom of *Essex*, which *Harold* had before, was given to *Algar* the Son of *Leofric*, Earl of *Mercia*.

The next Year, King *Edward* sent the Earl of *Nor-*^{1054.} *thumberland*, with a powerful Body of Horse, and a The K. sends Forces against the K. of Scotland. strong Fleet into *Scotland* against *Macbeth*, King of that Country, whom he defeated and expelled, making *Mal-*^{colm} King in his stead, according to the Orders the King had given him. But *Syward* Earl of *Northumberland*, did not long survive this Victory, for dying the following Year, he was buried at *York*. At the same Time, the King sent *Aldred* Bishop of *Worcester*, to treat with the Emperor of *Germany*, about his Cousin *Edward*, the Son of *Edmund Ironside*; who he desired might be sent into *England*, to succeed him, he having no Issue of his own. About this Time, Earl *Algar* being convicted of Treason, was by the Advice of an Assembly held at *London*, banished the Kingdom. He went into *Ireland*, got together eighteen Piratical Vessels, with them he sails to *Griffin*, King of the *Welsh*, and easily got him to assist him against his Lord King *Edward*. *Griffin* raised all the Forces he could, joined *Algar* and invaded *Herefordshire*; against whom, *Rodulf* the King's Nephew made Head; but having neither Courage nor Conduct was soon put to flight, leaving behind him five hundred Men slain on the Spot. *Griffin* and *Algar* swelled with this Success, entred *Hereford*, killed many of the Canons, and many Inhabitants, plundered and burnt the City, and carried off many Prisoners, and a vast Booty. The King sent *Harold* against them, knowing him to be

be a Man of Courage, and well skilled in the Art of War, who fortified *Hereford*; during which Time, the two Commanders thought it best to procure a Peace. They sent to desire a Meeting at a Place called *Bylgesleage*, where a firm Peace and Amity was concluded. In pursuance of which, *Algar* sent away his Ships, and went himself to the King, who restored him to his former Command. But *Griffin* the next Year broke the Peace, by setting upon *Leofgar* Bishop of *Hereford*, whom he slew, together with his Clerks, and many others.

1057.

In the following Year, according to the King's Request, *Edward*, Son of King *Edmund Ironside*, came into *England*, but died at *London* not long after, and was buried at *St. Paul's Church*, leaving behind him one Son, named *Edgar Etheling*, and two Daughters, *Margaret* and *Christiana*.

1060.
K. of Scots
comes into
England.

Malcolm King of the *Scots* came into *England*, to give King *Edward* a Visit, and contracted so great a Friendship with *Tosti*, who brought him on his way, that they became sworn Brethren, tho' to what Effect, the Event shewed within two Years. For *Tosti* going to *Rome*, *Malcolm* took the Opportunity, entred his Territories, and wasted and plundred many Places in the North; and at the same Time, *Griffin* harrassed the West, against whom *Harold* was sent with a Party of Horse. *Griffin* got Intelligence of his March, and very narrowly escaped, but was obliged to forsake most of his Ships, which *Harold* burnt. About *Rogation-Week*, *Harold* sailed from *Britain*, encompassed *Wales*, joined his Brother *Tosti*, who commanded the Horse, and did such Damage to the Country, that the *Britains* yielded themselves up to him, gave Hostages, and renounced their King *Griffin*, who at present escaped, but was taken the following Year, and beheaded by *Griffin*, King of North *Wales*, who sent his Head and the Head of his Ship to King *Edward*, bestowed *Griffin's* Dominions upon his two Brothers, *Blethgent* and *Rithwalan*, who swore Allegiance to him, to obey him both by Sea and Land, and engaged to pay whatever the Country had heretofore paid to the former Kings of *England*; at which *Caradoc*, the Son of *Griffin*, was enraged, to see his Inheritance thus made over to his Uncles. Therefore to revenge himself, he with a Party came suddenly upon the Artificers, who were erecting a House for *Harold* on the

the Se
having
disapp
Consp
occasi
having
be slai
upon
treach
These
Count
of the
tred 2
dants,
of wh
Harol
fair; a
End,
try, a
signs;
' free
' lenc
' tors,
they c
red T
their
Earl o
out by
by the
Seat a
tinue,
selves
they w
where
the Ea
laid th
to Wi
he wa
ance,
thieu;
and co
tained
Britai
War.
mende

the *Severn*, flew them, and carried off the Materials, having demolished the House. *Harold* was no sooner disappointed in these Parts, but there was a dreadful Conspiracy formed against his Brother *Tosti* in the North, occasioned by an Officer named *Gospatrick*, with whom having a Contest, his Sister Queen *Egitha*, caused him to be slain at Court. *Gospatrick*'s Friends espoused his Cause, upon which two of them, named *Ganiel* and *Alf*, were treacherously drawn in and murdered in *Tosti*'s Chamber.

These Actions, with the intolerable Exactions on the Country, so incensed the Inhabitants, that three or four Farther Disturbances, of the Principal, with four hundred armed Men, entered *York*, and slew some hundreds of *Tosti*'s Attendants, and then they plundered his Treasury and departed; of which *Tosti* complains to the King, and his Brother *Harold* is appointed to accommodate this difficult Affair; and as they were going into the North for that End, they were met at *Northampton* by the whole Country, and afterwards at *Oxford*, who opposed *Tosti*'s Designs; declaring, 'That they were free Men born, and as freely educated, that they would not endure the Infelence of that Earl, for they had learned from their Ancestors, to chuse either Death or Liberty.' In this Resolution they continued so stedfast, that in a short Time, they procured *Tosti* and his Ministers to be all banished; and at their Request, *Morchar*, the Son of *Algar*, was created Earl of *Northumberland*. As soon as *Tosti* was driven out by the King's Authority, *Harold* was driven away by the very Winds and Seas. Being at his Country Seat at *Bosenham* in *Sussex*, he with some of his Retinue, went on Board a Fisher's Boat to recreate themselves on the Sea, but sailing farther than they designed, they were by a Storm drove to the Coast of *Normandy*, where they were obliged to land in the Territories of the Earl of *Ponthieu*, and the Inhabitants seized and laid them in Irons. *Harold* upon this, sent a Messenger to *William* Duke of *Normandy*, to acquaint him, that he was come over on Business of the greatest Importance, but was detained Prisoner by *Guido* Earl of *Ponthieu*; upon which, he was immediately set at Liberty, and conducted to his Court, where the Duke entertained him very honourably, and invited him into *Little Britain*, where at that Time the *Norman* Duke made War. *Harold* by his Wit and Valour, so well recommended himself to the Duke, that he was highly esteemed by

Harold's
Oath to the
Duke of
Normandy.

King Edward
dies.

by him; and that he might also the more endear himself, he swore to deliver up the Castle of *Dover* to him, at King *Edward's* Death, and procure him to succeed in the Kingdom of *England*; upon this the Duke's Daughter was contracted to him, and he sent Home with rich Presents. This is the Substance of that Accident, whatever was the Occasion of his Promise and Ingagement with the Duke. The Time of Trial now drew near, which was dreadful to him, and the *English Saxon* Nation. This was ushered in by a Comet, which according to *Ingulph*, portended, that great Change of Government, that Slaughter of the People, and that great Calamity, which shortly fell upon the Land. King *Edward* declining in Years and Strength, daily grew weaker, yet assisted at the Dedication of *St. Peter's* Church in *Westminster*, which he had founded, and by a Charter granted it many Immunities and Privileges; to which was annexed the first Great Seal used in *England*. But on the fifth Day of *January* he departed this Life, to the exceeding Grief of the miserable People, and was buried in the said Church with great Solemnity; having reigned from the Death of *Harde-Canute*, twenty three Years, six Months, and twenty seven Days. In this Prince, the Royal regnant Line of the *West Saxon* Kings, which from *Cerdic* the first of them, had Dominion in *Britain* five hundred and forty seven Years, received its Period.

HAROLD.

A. D. 1066.

Harold is e-
lected King.

KING *Edward* being dead, there laid Claim to the Crown, first *Edgar Etheling*, the last King's elder Brother, next *William Duke of Normandy*, and then *Harold*, Earl *Godwin's* Son; he was very popular, and the late King's chief Minister, a Man of Valour and Conduct, civil and obliging, and of such Qualifications as fitted him for a Crown; who by Reason of the Absence of the other two, having all the Grandees at Court at his Beck, whom he had either obliged by his Kindness, or won by his Authority, was chosen by all the Princes of *England*, assumed the Title, and was crowned King on the same Day that King *Edward* was buried, and immediately proceeded to the Performance of many laudable Actions. He repealed many hard and antiquated Laws, and made others that were better;

he be-
respec-
ing to
mandi-
Robbe-
it his
Land.
was to
Metho-
Come-
seen, a
Misch-
from
his Bro-
his Ru-
with s-
ed Mo-
the Co-
with a
Person-
men h-
Lincoln-
led ma-
char Ea-
forced
failed i-
tinued
Harold-
to prev-
than his
of *Nor*-
mind h-
Perform-
This *H*-
was in
since it
Harold-
Conten-
lame an-
to rever-
Invasion
at length
next Sp-
marched
by a ne-

he became a Patron to Churches and Monasteries, and respected all Orders of the Clergy; he was very obliging to the Good, and discouraged the Vicious, commanding his Officers to detect and punish all Thieves, Robbers, and Disturbers of the publick Peace, and made it his Business to defend his Country, both by Sea and Land. But both his own Fate, and that of the Nation, was too urgent to permit him long to continue these Methods. On the twenty fourth of *April* a dreadful Comet appeared with great Lustre, for seven Days, and seen, as was reported, throughout the World. The first Mischief believed to have been portended by it, was, from *Harold's* own Brother *Tosti*, who could not bear his Brother's Exaltation, and was resolved to endeavour his Ruin; for which purpose, he sailed from *Flanders* with some Ships to the Isle of *Wight*, where he extorted Money from the Inhabitants, and practised Piracy on the Coast, 'till he came to *Sandwich* Haven. *Harold* with a good Fleet, and a Party of Horse, marched in Person against him. Upon this, *Tosti* taking all the Seamen he could find with him, sailed to the Coasts of *Lincolnshire*, where he burned many Villages, and killed many Men. But *Edwin* Earl of *Mercia*, and *Morcar* Earl of *Northumberland*, marched against him, and forced him to abandon the Country; from whence he sailed into *Scotland* to King *Malcolm*, where he continued the whole Summer. In the mean Time, King *Harold* made great Preparations both by Sea and Land, to prevent an Invasion, from a more powerful Enemy than his Brother *Tosti*; namely, the great *William* Duke of *Normandy*, who had sent Messengers to him, to remind him of his Promise and Oath, and to require a Performance of what had been agreed between them. This *Harold* refused, urging, That what he promised was in Captivity, and could not be called his own Act, since it was extorted by Necessity. To these Reasons, *Harold* thinking himself sufficiently powerful, added Contempt, and sent away *William's* Ambassadors on lame and maimed Horses. Upon this Duke *William*, to revenge the Affront, made great Preparations for an Invasion. *Harold*, having expected him all the Summer, at length concluded, that he had put off his Design until the next Spring; he removed his Forces from the South, and marched them towards the North, where he was called by a new Storm, that threatned him from those Parts.

His Brother
First's At-
tempt against
him.

For

For his Brother *Tosti* having joined with *Harold Haverger* King of *Norway*, sailed into the *Humber*, and then into the *Ouse*; they landed at *Rickale*, marched to *York*, and took it by Storm. Before *Harold* could arrive in these Parts, *Edwin* and *Morchar* marched against *Tosti*, and on the twentieth Day of *September*, engaged him, but lost the Day; upon which, the *Norwegians* received from the Inhabitants of *York* five hundred Hostages, and leaving a hundred and fifty of their own, returned to their Ships. Five Days after this unfortunate Battel, King *Harold* arrived at *York*, from whence marching to a Place, upon this Occasion since called *Battel-Bridge*, he engaged their whole Forces, in which Action, both *Tosti* and *Harold Haverger* were slain, and the *English* obtained a complete Victory; and in the Enemy's Camp there was found a prodigious Quantity of Gold, which King *Harold* impolitickly took to his own Use; which so disoblighed the Soldiers, that they began to renounce his Interest, and repented of their former Services. This discontent of the Army, proved afterwards of dangerous Consequence to him.

Duke *William*
lands at
Hastings.

King *Harold* in the midst of his publick Rejoicings at *York*, upon the Account of his late Success, received the melancholy News, that *William* Duke of *Normandy* was landed with a very numerous and well disciplin'd Army; the Place where they landed, was at, or near *Hastings*, on the Coasts of *Sussex*. The Duke, as he was going a-shore, accidentally slip'd and tumbled to the Ground, which a Soldier observing, he immediately turned it to a good Omen, and cried out aloud, That he had already taken Possession of *England*. *William* commanded his Army not to plunder or commit any Outrages, but that they ought to spare those Things, which would shortly be their own. For fifteen Days he continued with his Army in a quiet and peaceable manner, expecting the Event of his Claim, and building a Fort to have Recourse to in case of Extremity; for he had ordered his whole Fleet, consisting of near a thousand Ships, to be burnt, that his Men might think of nothing but Death or Conquest; a Resolution desperately brave! Having taken these Precautions, he published his Pretences against King *Harold*, and the Reasons of his Invasion. *First*, That he came to revenge the Death of Prince *Alfred* his Cousin, who had been formerly murdered by the Means of Earl *Godwin*. *Secondly*, That he might restore Archbishop *Robert*, Earl

Odo

Odo, at
the late
rary to
as well
ble Pro
attende
than D
absent,
two bl
comma
and the
them o
ripened
cent re
ed and
critical
mature
he haste
Forces,
to join
to enga
Army o
Spies to
mans, v
commo
the Can
Return
fidence
the Arm
shaven.
them, T
valiant
him not
his Oath
der no C
of their
prevailed
meet D
Mark of
all his I
he hastil
brought
sign his
Justice o
Combat.
VOL.

Odo, and the rest of the *Normans*, unjustly banished in the late Reign. And *Thirdly*, That *Harold* had contrary to his Oath, possessed himself of *England*, which as well by right of Consanguinity, as by that of a double Promise, ought to be his. Never was any Invasion attended with more fortunate Hits and Circumstances, than Duke *William's*; for *Harold* and his Forces were absent, and in the North, and were much weakened in two bloody Encounters; having lost most of their commanding Officers, and the Flower of the Soldiery, and the rest highly disgusted with him, for depriving them of their part of the Spoils; so that he was just ripened for Ruin, when the News of the Duke's Descent reached him at *York*; at which he was so confounded and surprised, that he knew not how to act in so critical a Juncture; and instead of Deliberation, and mature Consultation, necessary to prevent the Storm, he hasted to *London*, where he would not stay to levy Forces, nor tarry for such Supplies as were on the Road to join him, but hurried into *Sussex*, with a Resolution to engage the Enemy, before one third Part of his own Army could well be put in Order. Yet he sent some Spies to survey the Numbers and Strength of the *Normans*, who being discovered, Duke *William* with uncommon Courtesie caused them to be shewn through all the Camp, and sent them back with Rewards. At their Return they much applauded the Magnificence and Confidence of the Duke; and declared to *Harold*, That all the Army seemed to be Priests, because they were clove shaven. The King smiled at their Simplicity, and told them, That those, whom they took for Priests, were valiant Soldiers. *Gyrth* the King's Brother, advised him not to fight in Person, since he had given *William* his Oath; but that himself and the rest, who were under no Obligation by Oath, might justly fight in Defence of their Country and Liberty. *Harold* could not be prevailed on, but thought that a King's declining to meet Death at the Head of his Army, would be such a Mark of Cowardice, as would blemish the Actions of all his Life; and being pushed on by his unlucky Fate, he hastily sent back the Monk, who, from the Duke, brought him these Proposals, That either he should resign his Kingdom, or hold it of him, or else try the Justice of their Cause, in fight of both Armies, by single Combat, or submit to the Determination of the Apostolick

Battel of
Hastings.

lick See. *Harold* replied, That God, and the Sword of the Nation should decide the Controversy; upon which, both Parties prepare to engage the next Morning. The *English* spent the Night in Mirth, the *Normans* in Devotion.

The Day being come, which was to decide the Fate of the Nation, the *English* were drawn up in a close Body, armed with Battel-Axes and Shields. The King and his Brother stood on Foot by the Royal Standard, that the Danger being common, none might think of flying. The *Normans* put their Foot in the Front, most of them Archers, their Horse flanking them on each Hand; and then the Duke declared, That his Cause was just, and that God would respect it accordingly; and when his Armour was brought him, he put on his Crozier the wrong way; upon which he pleasantly cried out, *I find my Dukedom is changed into a Kingdom.* And at the Head of his Army, he put the Soldiers in mind, of the Valour and Renown of their Ancestors, and of the Success and good Fortune of his own Arms, and concluded with Confidence of Victory, from the Guilt and Perjury of the present Usurper of the Crown. Upon this, the *Normans* began with the famous Song of *Rowland*, and imploring divine Assistance, they advanced against the *English*, who were as ready to meet them, though the Ground they stood on was strait and inconvenient. The Fight began with great Fury, Order, and equal Bravery on both Sides; at first the *English* were severely gauled by the *Norman* long Bows, but when they came to close Fight, the *English* with their Bills made a dreadful Slaughter of the *Normans*, and they kept themselves united and in such Order, that all the Attempts of the Duke with his Horse to break them, were ineffectual, until he feigned a sudden Flight: Upon which, the *English* eager to pursue, dissolved their Ranks, which otherwise had been impenetrable. Upon this, the *Normans* rallied, and fell on the broken *English* with fresh Fury, and drove them to an Ascent; yet in their flight they often rallied, and sold their Lives at a dear Rate. The Battel continued very bloody on both Sides, from nine in the Morning till it grew dark, when *Harold*, after he had discharged all the Parts of a skilful Commander and valiant Soldier, was shot into the Head with an Arrow, and died. His Death turned the Scale, and caused the *English* to betake themselves to flight. With *Harold* fell his two Brothers,

Harold killed

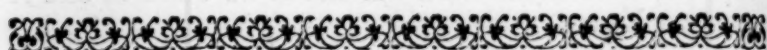
Broth
the E
plete
Moth
Cano
Reign
Thus
Natio
and A
ruptio
vente
An
Engli
mand
tion
last V
and a
lish M
Anim
their
nothe
had a
Unio
put
Thus
Ruini
ages
whic
as in
Souls
Such
befor
Liter
Order
vine
Mir
lecti
and
Nob
and

Brothers, *Gyrth* and *Leofwin*, with the greatest part of the *English* Nobility; so that *William* remained a complete Victor, who generously gave *Harold's* Body to his Mother, which was buried at *Waltham* in a Church of Canons, founded by himself, after a short but vigorous Reign of nine Months, one Week, and two Days. Thus ended the Empire of the *English Saxons* in this Nation, who from their first Entrance under *Hengist* and *Horsa*, had kept Possession, and with some Interruption, held Dominion for about six hundred and seventeen Years.

And now notwithstanding *Harold* was slain, and the *English* were vanquished, yet *William* Duke of *Normandy* was not in a Condition to have subdued the Nation (for his Army was very much weakened by this last Victory, having lost a great many brave Officers, and a Multitude of his best Soldiers,) had not the *English* Nobility been divided into diverse Factions, and such Animosities, that instead of making Preparation against their common Enemy, they became Enemies to one another, and strove for that Crown, which the Duke had already got by the Point of his Sword; when a firm Union and a wise Management, must certainly have put a stop to any farther Progress of *William's* Arms. Thus the *English* were the chief Forgers of their own Ruin; they were guilty of such prodigious Miscarriages, as if they were void of all manner of Reason, and which were the absolute Effects of such vicious Tempers, as insatuate Mens Minds, enervate the Power of their Souls, and render them abject, and ripe for Servitude. Such were the *English* at this Time; and for some Years before the Arrival of the *Normans*; Piety and good Literature were so unfashionable amongst all Sorts and Orders of Men, that the Clergy could scarce read divine Service; and to understand Grammar was next to a Miracle. The Nobles and People were grown neglective of Arms, and generally debauched with Luxury and Idleness; the Clergy ignorant and licentious; the Nobility given to Gluttony, Venery, and Oppression, and the Commons to Drunkenness and Disorder.



The NORMAN LINE.



The Reign of King William the First, commonly called the Conqueror.

HAVING thus run through the Reigns of our *Saxon* Monarchs, we are now arrived at a clearer prospect of Affairs, being come to that memorable Period, when the State of *England* received the greatest Alteration in Laws, Language, Customs, Fashions, and in most things, except Religion, that ever did happen. So that from these extraordinary Mutations, we are to begin with a new Account of *England*, now larger in Extent and Dominion abroad, more in State and Ability at Home, and in a short Time, more in Fame and Reputation in the World: And now we come to a new set of Kings, *viz.* the *Normans*, whose Race continues to this Day. The first of which was *William* Duke of *Normandy*, commonly called the Conqueror, whose Pedigree is thus traced. *Roul*, a Commander of the *Norwegians* and *Danes*, with a great Army, seeking where to plant themselves, entred the *Seine*, and sacked the Country as far as *Roban*; then attempted *Paris*, and defeated the *French* several Times; so that in the end, *Charles* the Simple, then King of *France*, bought his Peace with an Alliance, and the Country of *Neustria*, which *Roul* called *Normandy*. From him descended six Dukes of *Normandy*, in the Space of one hundred and twenty Years. *Robert* the last, after eight Years Reign, resolves to visit the Sepulchre. His Nobility endeavour to dissuade him, he being without Issue. The Duke declared, That he had a Natural Son by one *Arlotta* a Glover's Daughter, of whom he had great Hopes; and
I doubt

...

E.

...

om.

...xon
prof-
iod,
era-
l in
So
be-
in
Abi-
and
ew
ues
of
ose
the
ng
ed
nd
d,
his
ia,
fix
nd
n,
ur
e-
a
d
ot





I doubt
will I
him for
did Ho
procee
the you
tunes,
exposed
ness of
Guardi
which
Consta
the anc

This
forty t
Battel
who de
he resc
having
at *Hast*
fled for
ted to
London
that h
Stigana
with the
ing, the
near *L*
Duke
land; f
Engliss
they ma
and pro
Earls a
the gen
had hea
that he
then lai
and ma
as *Wall*
bishop
gar *Eth*
the Du
Fealty
London

I doubt not, said he, but he is of my begetting: Him will I trust in the Dutchy as my Heir, and I pray take him for your Lord; accordingly the Bishops and Barons did Homage to him as Duke of *Normandy*. His Father proceeded in his Pilgrimage, and died Abroad, leaving the young Prince to be the Founder of his own Fortunes, rather than Heir to his Father's, which he found exposed to all the Difficulties arising from the Tender-ness of his Age, the Reproach of his Birth, a suspected Guardian, a disputed Title, and a distracted State; all which he surmounted with a Courage, Bravery, and Constancy, as is not to be met with in many Histories of the ancient Heroes.

This was our King *William* the First, who was about forty two Years of Age, when he gained that decisive Battel near *Hastings*; after which, like a wise General, who designed to make the best Advantage of his Success, he resolved to leave no strong Place behind him; so having left a sufficient Garison in his new erected Fort at *Hastings*, he marched to *Dover*, where Multitudes had fled for Refuge, who at the Duke's Approach, submitted to his Mercy; from whence he marched towards *London*, the *Kentish* Men having sworn Fealty to him, He marches to London. that he might prevent the Attempts of Archbishop *Stigand*, and the Earls *Edwin* and *Morchar*, together with the Citizens of *London*, of setting up *Edgar Etheling*, the true Heir for their King. He pitched his Camp near *London*; a few Companies sallied out, which the Duke repulsed. And here began the Miseries of *England*; for before this, the Duke designed to reduce the *English* to his Obedience by gentle Methods, but finding they made Head against him, he changed his Purpose, and proceeded with greater Severity. And tho' these Earls and many of the Nobility were against him, yet the generality of the Clergy were for him, because they had heard that he was a great Friend to their Order, and that he would enlarge their Power and Revenues. He then laid all the Buildings South of the *Thames* in Ashes, and march'd up the River, destroying the Country as far as *Wallingford* in *Berkshire*. Upon this, *Aldred*, Arch-The Nobility submit.bishop of *York*, *Wulstan* Bishop of *Worcester*, with *Edgar Etheling* himself, and other Noblemen, repair to the Duke at *Berkhamstead* in *Hertfordshire*, and swear Fealty to him. About *Christmas*, he marches towards *London*, and was met by all the chief Men of the City; who,

And offer
William the
Crown.

His Corona-
tion Oath.

All submit.

who, with the Bishops and Nobility, requested him to accept of the Crown, for they were ready to acknowledge him for their Sovereign. Thus all Parties strove to intrude themselves into Servitude. On *Christmas-Day* he was crowned, by the Archbishop of *York*, in the Abby Church at *Westminster*, having demanded of all the *English* present, whether they did Consent to have the Duke crowned King; the *Normans* were asked the same Question, by the Bishop of *Constance*, to which both *English* and *Normans* unanimously gave their Consents. At the high Altar the King swore, That he would protect the Church and its Governors; that he would govern all the People subject to him, prudently and justly; that he would ordain and keep just Laws; that he would treat all his Subjects, as well *English* as *Normans*, mercifully.

William being thus established upon the Throne, he began to perform all things worthy a King; particularly, whilst he staid at *London*, every Act of his Administration was just, wise, and merciful; some of which tended to the particular Honour and Advantage of that City, while others proved highly advantageous to the whole Nation; and in all other Matters, he chiefly aimed at the good of the Church and the Kingdom. He enjoined his great Men to observe Equity in all their Actions, not to oppress those who had submitted themselves; and next he restrained the common Soldiers by severe Edicts, from violating the Chastity of Women, from frequenting infamous Houses, and strictly prohibited all Murthers, Robberies and Tumults. And now having begun to build a Fortrefs at *London*, he retired to a Place called *Barking*, 'till it could be finished. During his Stay at *Barking*, the Earls *Edwin* and *Morchar*, came and submitted themselves to him, whose Example was followed by a great many Nobles. He took their voluntary Oaths of Fidelity, received them into Favour, and restored to them their forfeited Estates. After this, he made a Progress into diverse Parts of the Kingdom, in all Places ordering such Things as were very advantageous to his People; and now wherever he travelled, he found none to oppose him, all willingly submitting themselves to him; and for his better Security, he placed *Norman* Garisons in *Winchester*, and *Dover*, and many other Places; and that the Memory of that great Victory he obtained over King *Harold*, might

never

never be forgotten, he gave Orders for the building of that noble Monastery near *Hastings*, called *Battel-Abby*, which he endowed with great Privileges and Immunities.

King *William* having thus happily settled the Nation, resolved to make a Journey into his own Country of *Normandy*; and accordingly committed the Government of the Nation to his Brother *Odo*, Bishop of *Bayeux*, and his Cousin *William Fitz-Osbern*; and to prevent as much as possible, any Revolt during his Absence, he took with him such of the Nobility, as were most popular, most powerful, or most likely to make Head against him; particularly Archbishop *Stigand*, the two great Earls *Edwin* and *Morchar*, Earl *Walsbeof*, with several others of the chief of the Nobility, and also *Edgar Etheling* himself, and all his *French* Adventurers, whom he had well rewarded. With this noble Train he sailed for *Normandy*, where when he arrived, he was as nobly received: Here *K. William* passed all that Summer, and the beginning of the following Winter. While *Normandy* was thus happy with the King's Presence, *England* was severely oppressed by *Odo* and *Fitz-Osbern* in their Governments, especially those in *Kent*, who took to Arms, and attempted to surprise *Dover Castle*, but failed. About the same Time, *Edric*, with the Assistance of two *Welsh* Kings, ravaged several Parts of *Heresfordshire*. These Transactions were sufficient to hasten the King's return, who leaving the Government of *Normandy* to his Wife *Matilda*, and his Son *Robert*, came over in *December*, and being arrived in *England*, his first Care was to satisfy those who had assisted him, and yet not to disgust the *English*, by whom he himself was now to subsist. Being arrived at *London*, he treated the *English* Bishops and Nobility with much Subtlety and Officiousness, granting them what they asked, and freely hearing them what they offered; but at the same Time watched them more narrowly than before, and imposed on the Nation a severe Tax, called *Danegeld*, which had been remitted by *Edward the Confessor*. In this same Year, *Matilda* the King's Wife, was crowned and delivered of a Son, named *Henry*, afterwards King of *England*. Upon the King's levying this unreasonable Tax, the Archbishop of *York*, who before loved *William* as a Son, and honoured him as a King, took the Liberty to denounce a Curse against him, and all his Progeny. This so startled the King, that he sent Messengers to appease the

A. D. 1068.
Reg. 3.
Matilda
crowned.
Henry I. born

Exeter rebels

It is reduc'd.

Edwin and Morchar rebels.

Edgar Etheling flies into Scotland.

Archbishop, but before they got to him, he died of Grief.

The City of *Exeter* by reason of these Impositions, refused to swear Fealty to the King; upon which, tho in the midst of *Winter*, he marched against it; upon whose Approach, the chief Citizens went out to meet him, begged Peace, and gave such Hostages as the King demanded; but the Commonalty refused to deliver up the City. The King marched up to the Gates, and there put out the Eyes of one of the Hostages, and began the Attack; the Inhabitants, to prevent a Storm, implored

his Mercy, which was readily granted, and the City delivered, in which the King built a Castle, and in it left a strong Garison; and some Time after, the forfeited Estates were given to the *Norman* Commanders. The King having thus quelled the Rebellion in the West, was alarmed by a Disturbance in the North, by means of Earl *Edwin*, who after Promise of one of the King's Daughters in Marriage, was disappointed. This and some other Affronts, provoked him and his Brother *Morchar* to take up Arms; but the King by his Vigilance and wise Conduct, so discouraged the two Earls, that they begged his Mercy, and were received again into Favour. Upon which, the Inhabitants of *York* delivered up the Keys of the City to the King, in which he raised a Fortrefs, and man'd it with a strong Garison; in his Return, he built Castles at *Lincoln*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*. Upon this, *Archil* of *Northumberland*, and *Egelwin* Bishop of *Durham*, submitted to the King, and *Malcolm* King of *Scotland* made Peace with him. But this continued not

long, for this very Year, *Edgar Etheling*, with divers of the Nobility, being discontented with the King's Favours to Strangers, and Neglect of them, fled into *Scotland*, and were honourably received by *Malcolm*, who married his Sister *Margaret*. These made some Com-motions in the North to recover their lost Country; but it was too late, and all unsuccessful Conspiracies do greatly advance the Sovereignty. In the mean Time, King *William* used all Methods for his own Security; he disarmed the *English* throughout the Kingdom, and commanded them to put out both Fire and Candle at eight of the Clock at Night, at which Hour, in every Town, City, and Village, he caused a Bell to be rung, called *Conoresew*, now *Corsew*. But notwithstanding these Precautions, the Quiet of the Nation was disturbed in diverse Places: But by these petty Revolts, the

Normans

Norman
Revo
and

Th
surpri
mans

bout
by Ki
dred

shortl
sociat
the G

Fire t
to the
with t

and a
came
and th

loadec
King,
pate th

the Q
these

by his
Norman
he beg

Saxon
and w
Banish

living
putting
the wh

derates
entirel

itself
mises,
which

between
and th
occasio

ple we
Man's
this, *E*

King

tions in

Normans took deeper Root, and the Estates of the Revolters pleased them, and their Places of Honour and Profit were given to the *Norman* Clergy and Lords.

This Year, the discontented *English* in the North, A. D. 1069. The Danes land. surprised *Durham* in the Night, and slew all the *Normans* but one, to the Number of seven hundred. About the same Time, the fugitive *English*, being assisted by King *Swane*, arrived in the *Humber*, with two hundred and forty Sail of Ships well man'd, who were shortly after joined by *Edgar Etheling*, and all his Associates from *Scotland*. They marched against *York*, but the Garison of *Normans*, to prevent their Approach, set Fire to the Suburbs, which communicated the Flames to the City, which was entirely consumed, together York burnt. with the Cathedral Church, the Monastery of *St. Peter*, and a famous Library; after which, the *English* soon became Masters of the Castle, and slew the Governor, and three thousand *Normans*: Then they retired well loaded with Plunder to their former Quarters. The King, upon receiving this ill News, threatned to extirpate the *Northumbrians*; but before he marched, he sent the Queen into *Normandy*, and wisely considering, that these Discontents of the *English*, were occasioned by his own Mismanagement, and Partiality to the *Normans*; to regain the Affections of the People, he began to shew a greater regard to the antient *Saxon* Laws, and to curb the Insolence of the *Normans*; and withal, recalled many of the *English* Nobility from Banishment, and made a firm League with them. Arriving in *Yorkshire*, he proceeded with great Severity, putting most of the People to the Sword, and laying the whole Couuntry waste, 'till he came to the Confederates encamped near *York*; he gave them Battel, and entirely routed them; upon which, the City surrendred The Danes routed. it self to the Conqueror. The King by Money and Promises, recovers the whole Country from the *Danes*, which had suffered much in this War. All the Towns between *York* and *Durham* were entirely depopulated, and the Land laid uncultivated for nine Years, which The North laid waste. occasioned a great Famine in those Parts, that the People were forced to feed on Dogs and Horses, and even Man's Flesh, to save themselves from perishing: Upon this, *Edgar Etheling* retired into *Scotland* for Shelter. King *William* having thus put an end to these Commo- A. D. 1070. tions in the North, compelled the *English* to submit to him

him by hard Usage, Imprisonments of some and Banishments of others, giving most of the Earldoms, Baronies, and Bishopricks to the *Norman* Nobility and Clergy, and scarce permitted the *English* to enjoy any Place of Honour, Dominion, or Power; and he filled his own Coffers with the Plunder of the whole Nation; for he robbed all the Monasteries of the Gold and Silver, which the *English* had hid there for Security, not sparing their Shrines and Chalice. These Proceedings so far enraged the *English*, that they resolved to throw off the *Norman* Yoak; accordingly they got together all the Forces they could, and once more set up *Edgar Etheling* for their King; upon which King *William* became very uneasy, fearing at last to lose that Kingdom, which he had got with so much Blood. To prevent which, by the Advice of Archbishop *Lanfranc*, he began to deal more gently with the *English* Nobility; and proposing to them Terms of Peace, they met the King at *Berkhamstead*, where he swears upon the holy Evangelists, and the Relicks of the Church of *St. Albans*, that he would observe the good, approved, and antient Laws of the Kingdom, which his Predecessors had ordained, particularly those of King *Edward*; by which the *English* being satisfied, all return to their Habitations: But the King, contrary to his solemn Oath, now determined to ruin those separately, whom he could not united overcome. This he performed by killing some, dispossessing others, and out-lawing many more. This obliged Prince *Edgar* to fly into *Scotland*, and several of the *English* Nobility into *Denmark* and *Norway*, preferring any Place to the *Norman* Yoak. *Edwin* and *Morchar* retire; the former in his Passage towards *Scotland*, was betrayed by his own Men, and slain. The latter fled to the Isle of *Ely*, where he joined many others, who fortified themselves there; against whom the King, who never gave Time to Insurrections, marched, and stopped up all the Passages on the East Side of the Island, and on the West he built a Bridge from the Continent to the Isle, two Miles in length; this so terrified the Persons in the Isle, that they surrendered at Discretion. The King caused the Hands of many of the Soldiers to be cut off, and their Eyes to be put out, and *Morchar* and the Nobility were sent into nauseous Prisons. King *William* having finished this Affair, resolves to invade *Scotland*, which Country had always been a Sanctuary

The King
swears to the
Laws of K.
Edward.

And breaks
his Oath.

A. D. 1071.
Morchar and
others rebel
in the Isle of
Ely.

And are re-
duced.

tuary
it w
ing N
confi
made
liam
take a
Sides
Homa
ty, a
was e
shire,
son of
so Sco
the Fr
Scotla
Engli
Ethel
did re
Earl,
sons i
the Pe
cient
and N
vour
King,
No
Home
France
Upon
power
City o
revolt
Scotla
lower
every
Conq
Crow
fect o
peacea
was
not b
Jurisd
Grego
Crow

ruary for his Enemies; accordingly, he in Person enters it with a great Army, which was tired with fatiguing Marches and Necessities; and *Malcolm* wisely considering the Danger to which he was exposed, made fair Overtures of Peace, to which King *William* readily agreed, on Condition, that he should take an Oath of Fealty to him, and all Offenders on both Sides be pardoned. Hereupon, King *Malcolm* did his Homage to King *William*, in Memory of which Treaty, a Cross, with both the Kings Arms engraven on it, was erected on the Mountain *Stanemore* in *Richmondshire*, called the Royal Cross. 'As in *England* by reason of the Conquest there had been a very great Change, so *Scotland* had its Share; for as at the Court of *England*, the *French* Fashions and Language prevailed, so also in *Scotland*, all Persons at Court laboured to speak the *English*, and followed their Fashions, caused by *Edgar Etheling's* Presence, to whom so many of the *English* did resort. And about this Time, the Titles of Duke, Earl, Baron, and Knight, began to be conferred on Persons in this Country. In this very Year in *England*, by the Pope's Order, a Synod was held concerning the ancient Dispute, between the Archbishops of *Canterbury* and *York*, about Jurisdiction: The Synod decreed in favour of the former, which Decree was subscribed by the King, Queen, and chief of the Nation.

A. D. 1072.
Scotland invaded.

A Peace concluded.

No sooner had King *William* settled his Affairs at Home, but he was disturbed Abroad; for the King of *France* had invaded his Dominions about *Normandy*. Upon which, the King without Delay, transported a powerful Army into *Normandy*, and soon retook the City of *Mans*, and the Province of *Maine*, which had revolted. Here *Edgar Etheling* came to him out of *Scotland*, and was received into Favour with all his Followers, and was allowed a Pound Weight of Silver for every Day's Expence; a rare Example of a prevailing Conqueror, shewed to the only Competitor of his Crown. This piece of Generosity had so good an effect on *Edgar*, that he gratefully acknowledged it, by a peaceable Behaviour for ever after. Tho' the King was so kind to great Men at Home, yet he would not be bullied by any Abroad, who pretended to any Jurisdiction over him; for about this Time, Pope *Gregory* demanded an Oath of Fealty from him for the Crown of *England* to be held of the *Roman* See; al-

Wars with *France*.

A. D. 1073.

The King
denies the
Pope's Au-
thority.

ledging, That the Royal Power, next under God, was to be subject to the Care and Government of the Apostolick Jurisdiction. Upon which, King *William* utterly denied the Pope's Authority, and would pay him no such mean Submission, forbidding all his Subjects to acknowledge any Man for Pope, but whom he had first allowed of, or receive any of his Letters, unless they had been first shewn to himself.

A. D. 1074.
A Conspira-
cy.

The King being thus engaged Abroad, his Subjects conspire against him at Home, which was occasioned by *Ralph de Waker* Earl of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, having married *Emma* the Daughter of *Roger*, Earl of *Hereford*: They on the Wedding-day, being joined by many of the *English* Nobility and Clergy, and Earl *Waltheof*, resolved to call in the *Danes*, and prevent the King's Return; which in all Probability had succeeded, had not *Odo's* watchful Eye, which observed every Motion of the *English*, spy'd the Design, and by the Help of the Bishop of *Worcester* and others, kept so strict a Guard upon them, that they could never unite to perfect it. The Conspirators being thus discovered and disappointed, they dispers'd, *Fits Auber* was taken and executed, and so was *Waltheof*, notwithstanding he had made a full Discovery of the whole.

Which is
suppressed.

A. D. 1075.

The Suppression of the Plot at Home, did not free the King from great Apprehensions from Abroad; for many foreign Princes were great Encouragers of the Conspirators. The King of *Denmark* sent a Navy of two hundred Sail, under the Command of his Son *Cannute*, and others. *Drone*, King of *Ireland*, furnished *Harold's* Sons with sixty Ships; and *Malcolm*, and the Kings of *Wales*, were ready to lend their Assistance, had there been Occasion; but these were all disappointed. Notwithstanding which, the King was obliged to quit *Normandy*, and hasten into *England*, to quell the Remains of the Rebellion in the West. He soon put an end to all Tumults, using the Conspirators with great Severity, cutting off the Hands of some, putting out the Eyes of others, hanging Multitudes, and it was a particular Favour to be banished only. The more powerful of the *English*, tho' they had not been in Arms, were first deprived of their Money, then of their Lands, and then many of their Lives. Hence *England* became the Habitation of Strangers; no native Original *English* Man was permitted to enjoy even the very Title of Earl, Bishop, or Abbot. Thus the Riches of

The *English*
oppressed.

England

Engla
Bow
suppre
into A
longed
a galla
Siege,
Engla
And n
at Hor
made
with t
to the
his Fa
promis
had co
the Fr
Town
ing thi
ing to
gence
thoufa
in the
tacked
suit, he
ther, u
the Ar
this, th
knew l
at whic
wound
Offenc
brough
Engage
wound
Parties
the Kin
him, an
ring the
the City
Bishop
and Du
remarks
lage ca
Fortres

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

125

England Foreigners devoured, and fed upon its very Bowels. The King, by these severe Methods, having suppressed all Disturbances at Home, goes a third Time into *Normandy*, and laid Siege to the City of *Dole*, that be-
The King goes into France.
 longed to the rebellious Earl *Ralph*; the Garifon made a gallant Defence, and obliged him at last to raise the Siege, so that the King was forced to return again to *England*, and to pass this and the next Year in Peace.
And returns. A. D. 1077.
 And now imagining, that all Contests, both Abroad and at Home were at an End, having subdued *Wales*; and made its Kings pay Homage to him, he was surpris'd with the News that his eldest Son *Robert* had laid Claim to the whole Dukedom of *Normandy*; alledging, that his Father, in the Presence of the King of *France*, had promised to make him Duke of *Normandy*, when he had conquered *England*. Accordingly, being assisted by the *French* King, he invades the Country, burnt several Towns, and made great Devastations. The King hearing this, hastes with his Forces into *Normandy*, designing to surpris'e his Son; but *Robert* having got Intelli-
A. D. 1079.
 gence of his coming, and being furnished with two thousand Men by the King of *France*, lay in Ambush, in the Way through which the King was to pass, attacked him, and put his Army to flight, and in the Pursuit, he happened to encounter with the King his Father, unknown to him, and not only wounded him in the Arm with his Launce, but unhorsed him. Upon this, the King calling out for another Horse, *Robert* knew his Voice, and discovered him to be his Father; at which he hastily alighted from his Horse, took the wounded King in his Arms, begged his Pardon for his Offence, and mounted him on his own Horse, and brought him off with Safety from the Throng. In this Engagement, *William Rufus* the King's Son was also wounded. This uncommon Accident brought both Parties to an Accommodation, and a Peace being made, the King returned to *England*, and brought *Robert* with him, and employed him in the War against *Scotland*. During the Time of these Wars, the King, the better to secure the City of *London*, built the Tower of *London*.
Gundolph 1078. The Tower of London built.
Bishop of Rochester was made Surveyor of this Work, and Duke *Robert* about a Year after, founded another remarkable Castle upon the River *Tine*, at a small Village called *Monkcester*; but from the building of this
New-Castle built.
 Fortrefs it was named *New-Castle* upon *Tine*, which
 Name

1081.

Robert rebels

And sub-
mits.

Name it retains to this Day. *Robert*, after some Stay here in *England*, was sent again into *Normandy*; *Henry* his youngest Brother being joined with him in the Charge and Power, the King reposing the greatest Trust and Confidence in the latter. These two Princes being a little settled in the Government, went to visit the King of *France* at *Constance*, where one Day after Dinner, *Lewis* the *French* King's Son, and *Henry* played a Game at *Chess*; and *Henry* won so much of him, that *Lewis* in Anger called him the Son of a Bastard, and threw the *Chess* Board in his Face: *Henry* hereby provoked, snatched up the *Chess* Board, and with it broke *Lewis*'s Head, and would have killed him, had not *Robert* timely interposed between them. This petty Brangle between two hot Youths, kindled a Quarrel between the two Kings, the Fathers, which was the Cause of the first War between *England* and *France*; for presently the King of *France* joining with *Robert*, who could no more bear a Partner, than an Head, entered *Normandy*, and takes the City of *Vernon*. Upon this King *William* invaded *France*, and subdued the Counties of *Zaintongue* and *Poictou*, and so returned to *Roban*. *Robert* finding himself unable to resist his Father's Forces, goes and submits to his Father, and is reconciled to him. This was a very great Disappointment to the King of *France*, who had prompted *Robert* to rebel; nevertheless, he summons King *William* to do him Homage for the Kingdom of *England*: To which the King replied, he would not, because he had it of none but God and his Sword. The King of *France* not satisfied with this Answer, invades *Normandy* again, but with such Loss, as made him willing to conclude a Peace, which lasted not long; for the King of *England* being fallen into a Sickneſs through Labour, Age, and Corpulency, of which he lay ill sometime at *Roban*, the *French* King reflecting upon his Belly, said, That the King of *England* lay in at *Roban*; at which Sarcasm, the King was so enraged, that as soon as he was recovered, he entered *France* in the chief Time of their Fruits, laying all the Country waste as far as *Paris*, where the *French* King then was, and sent him this Message, That he was come to shew him of his Up-riſing. From thence he marched to *Nantz*, which he destroyed, but in his Retreat, got his fatal Wound by a Strain of his Horse among the Breaches, of which

he fell Sick, and being conveyed to *Roan*, ended his Days, and Wars together.

Thus having given a brief Account of the Wars of this *A.D. 1087.* K. together with his Conduct, and Success in them; we shall proceed to shew, what Course he took in settling the Kingdom, and establishing a Government, after he had suppressed the several Invasions, and many Conspiracies made against him in the Realm. He began his Reign with the Introduction of the *Norman Laws*, and would certainly have abolished all the *English Laws*, had not the Nobility and Commons looked upon it as a great Grievance, and by Petition besought him, 'That by the Oath he had taken at his Coronation, and by the Soul of St. *Edward*, from whom he had the Crown and Kingdom, he would not make them so miserable, as to judge them by a Law they understood not.' This had so great an effect upon the King, that he was pleased to confirm his former Promises by Charter, commanding his Judges to observe St. *Edward's* Laws throughout the Kingdom. Yet notwithstanding this, there was so great an Innovation in the Laws and Government of *England*, that the People had nothing of them but fair Promises. For now the Laws were translated into *Latin* and *French*, which before were in *English*, and plain and easy to be understood, but now practised wholly in the *Norman* Form and Language, on purpose to oblige the People to learn that Speech; and all other Methods were made use of to make the Nation speak the *French* Language; as enjoining Children to be taught only *French*, both in Common and Grammar Schools; all Petitions and Business at Court must be in *French*, and no Man was to be regarded, but who spoke *French*. Yet soon after his Death, the whole Nation returned to their old *English*, and nothing remained in *French* but the Law, which is at this Day the only remaining Badge of the *Norman* Conquest; by which new Terms, new Constitutions, new Forms of Pleading, new Offices and Courts were introduced; by which the old *English* Laws, which before were plain, brief and simple, without Intricacies and Perplexities, were jumbled out. Before this, the *English* were a clear meaning People, and of honest and good Intentions: As for their Trials in criminal Cases, where manifest Proof failed, they were decided by *Ordeal*, i. e. a Right Doom (for *Or* signifies Right, and *Deal* a Part or Portion.) Of this sort of Judgment they

they had two Kinds; '*Ordeal* by Fire for the better sort of People, and '*Ordeal* by Water for the meaner sort: That of Fire, was to go blindfold over certain Plow-Shares, made red hot, and laid at uneven Distances from one another: That of Water, was either hot or cold, in the one to put their naked Arms to the Elbow, and in the other to be cast Headlong; according to their Escape or Hurt, they were judged; such as were cast into Rivers, if they sunk, they were judged innocent, if not, guilty, as ejected by the Element. These Trials they called the Judgment of God, and they were performed with solemn Prayers.' In some Cases the Person accused was admitted to clear himself by receiving the Eucharist, by his own Oath, or the Oaths of two or three credible Men: Besides these, they had a Trial of Duel, permitted by the Law in Cases of Safety, Fame, or Possessions. All these Trials shew the *English* to be ignorant of any Forms of Law, and to have no imperial or pontifical Constitutions to determine Affairs by. But these sorts of Judgments and Trials, had their Period soon after the Conquest; the Advantage that the Nation has ever since had by these Alterations, the Persons, who have had Law-Suits, can best relate. All Actions, both criminal and real, began now to be determined by the Verdict of twelve Men, called an Inquest, according to the Custom of *Normandy*, where the same Custom is used with the same Caution to the Jurors, as amongst us, at this Day.

c87.
A Jury first
instituted.

The *Saxon*
Laws for the
Peace continued.

Whatever Alterations he made in other Matters, yet he made none in those *Saxon* Laws, that were for the Preservation of the Peace, and for the good Order and Security of the Kingdom; for he found those Constitutions so well contrived, that better could hardly be invented by Man, especially, the Borough Law, by which every Freeman of the Commons of *England*, stood as Surety for each other's good Behaviour, every Borough or Tithing being obliged to produce their Criminals to Justice; by which means Innocence became every Man's Interest as well as Duty, since they were otherwise to share in the Penalty. In the beginning of this Reign, the Kingdom was much infested with Outlaws and Robbers, and many *Normans* were secretly murdered by the *English*. To prevent which Mischief, a heavy Fine was imposed upon the Hundred, where the

the Bo
Auth
Ties,
well
lived
tion,
sed, b
Means
were f
and a
might
Dange
He
ment
shop
lute Ju
rity, bu
the Fir
their ju
Souls
and or
termin
such Ju
the Bo
tice.
'tis pla
the Ter
of Ter
a Poss
of tho
Conter
ting, t
troduc
In tho
one He
vided a
Skiften
Parts
which
themse
sing th
compar
Hands,
hostile
Stigana
VOL

the Body of any *Norman* should be slain, whether the Authors of the Fact were discovered or not. By these Ties, the Order and Peace of the Kingdom was so well secured, that no Society of Men in the World lived in greater Order and Peace; for after this Regulation, not only all Thefts and Robberies were suppressed, but all popular Insurrections ceased. By these Means the Realm enjoyed such a Security, that People were safe in their Beds, tho' their Doors were left open, and a fair Virgin with a Purse of Gold in her Hand might have travelled through the Kingdom, without any Danger to her Honour or Money.

He new modelled the judicial Part of the Govern-
ment throughout the whole Nation; for before, the Bishop and Alderman, or Earl of the Shire, were absolute Judges, which had not only increased their Authority, but also their Revenue, by a great Share they had in the Fines. The King stripped the Bishops wholly of this their judicial Power, and confined them to the Cure of Souls only; the Aldermens Power he took quite away, and ordered that for the future, all Causes should be determined four Times a Year, in such Places, and by such Judges as he should appoint; from whom, as from the Bosom of their Prince, all Persons should have Justice. From the Knowledge of the old *English* Customs 'tis plain, that many Alterations were made relating to the Tenures of Estates. The *Saxons* had only two kinds of Tenures, viz. Book-Land and Folk-Land; the one a Possession in Writing, the other without; yet the Honesty of those Times left them little subject to Disputes and Contentions. But this Prince reduced all Grants to Writing, to Signature, and to Witnesses, which in Time, introduced more Cavils and Actions, than former Methods. In those Times also, Inheritances descended not to one Heir, but after the *German* Fashion were equally divided among all the Children, which they called Land-Skiften, i. e. Part Land, a Custom still retained in some Parts of *Kent*, by the Name of *Gavelkin*, or *Gifealkin*; which it is said, the People of the County secured to themselves by this Stratagem. As the King was passing through their Country to *Dover*, the People encompassed him on all Sides with Boughs in their Hands, to his great Surprise, who expected no such hostile Attempts. Out of the midst of them came *Stigand* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Abbot *Egelsin*,

Many Alterations made

The Customs of *Kent* preserved.

they had two Kinds; '*Ordeal* by Fire for the better sort of People, and '*Ordeal* by Water for the meaner sort: That of Fire, was to go blindfold over certain Plow-Shares, made red hot, and laid at uneven Distances from one another: That of Water, was either hot or cold, in the one to put their naked Arms to the Elbow, and in the other to be cast Headlong; according to their Escape or Hurt, they were judged; such as were cast into Rivers, if they sunk, they were judged innocent, if not, guilty, as ejected by the Element. These Trials they called the Judgment of God, and they were performed with solemn Prayers.' In some Cases the Person accused was admitted to clear himself by receiving the Eucharist, by his own Oath, or the Oaths of two or three credible Men: Besides these, they had a Trial of Duel, permitted by the Law in Cases of Safety, Fame, or Possessions. All these Trials shew the *English* to be ignorant of any Forms of Law, and to have no imperial or pontifical Constitutions to determine Affairs by. But these sorts of Judgments and Trials, had their Period soon after the Conquest; the Advantage that the Nation has ever since had by these Alterations, the Persons, who have had Law-Suits can best relate. All Actions, both criminal and real, began now to be determined by the Verdict of twelve Men, called an Inquest, according to the Custom of *Normandy*, where the same Custom is used with the same Caution to the Jurors, as amongst us, at this Day.

c87.
A Jury first
instituted.

The *Saxon*
Laws for the
Peace con-
tinued.

Whatever Alterations he made in other Matters, yet he made none in those *Saxon* Laws, that were for the Preservation of the Peace, and for the good Order and Security of the Kingdom; for he found those Constitutions so well contrived, that better could hardly be invented by Man, especially, the Borough Law, by which every Freeman of the Commons of *England*, stood as Surety for each other's good Behaviour, every Borough or Tithing being obliged to produce their Criminals to Justice; by which means Innocence became every Man's Interest as well as Duty, since they were otherwise to share in the Penalty. In the beginning of this Reign, the Kingdom was much infested with Outlaws and Robbers, and many *Normans* were secretly murdered by the *English*. To prevent which Mischiefs, a heavy Fine was imposed upon the Hundred, where the

the Bo
Auth
Ties,
well f
lived i
tion, r
fed, b
Means
were f
and a
might
Dange
He
ment t
shop an
lute Ju
rity, bu
the Fir
their ju
Souls
and or
termin
such Ju
the Bo
tice.
'tis pla
the Ter
of Ter
a Posse
of tho
Conter
ting, t
troduce
In tho
one He
vided a
Skiften
Parts o
which
themse
sing th
compa
Hands,
hostile
Siigana
VOL

the Body of any *Norman* should be slain, whether the Authors of the Fact were discovered or not. By these Ties, the Order and Peace of the Kingdom was so well secured, that no Society of Men in the World lived in greater Order and Peace; for after this Regulation, not only all Thefts and Robberies were suppressed, but all popular Insurrections ceased. By these Means the Realm enjoyed such a Security, that People were safe in their Beds, tho' their Doors were left open, and a fair Virgin with a Purse of Gold in her Hand might have travelled through the Kingdom, without any Danger to her Honour or Money.

He new modelled the judicial Part of the Govern-^{Many Alterations made}ment throughout the whole Nation; for before, the Bishop and Alderman, or Earl of the Shire, were absolute Judges, which had not only increased their Authority, but also their Revenue, by a great Share they had in the Fines. The King stripped the Bishops wholly of this their judicial Power, and confined them to the Cure of Souls only; the Aldermens Power he took quite away, and ordered that for the future, all Causes should be determined four Times a Year, in such Places, and by such Judges as he should appoint; from whom, as from the Bosom of their Prince, all Persons should have Justice. From the Knowledge of the old *English* Customs 'tis plain, that many Alterations were made relating to the Tenures of Estates. The *Saxons* had only two kinds of Tenures, *viz.* Book-Land and Folk-Land; the one a Possession in Writing, the other without; yet the Honesty of those Times left them little subject to Disputes and Contentions. But this Prince reduced all Grants to Writing, to Signature, and to Witneses, which in Time, introduced more Cavils and Actions, than former Methods. In those Times also, Inheritances descended not to one Heir, but after the *German* Fashion were equally divided among all the Children, which they called Land-Skiften, *i. e.* Part Land, a Custom still retained in some Parts of *Kent*, by the Name of *Gavelkin*, or *Gifealkin*; ^{The Customs of *Kent* preserved.} which it is said, the People of the County secured to themselves by this Stratagem. As the King was passing through their Country to *Dover*, the People encompassed him on all Sides with Boughs in their Hands, to his great Surprise, who expected no such hostile Attempts. Out of the midst of them came *Stigand* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Abbot *Egelfin*,
VOL. I. K and

and told the King, that the Multitude surrounding him were the People of the whole Country, gathered together with Boughs in their Hands, as Olive-Branches, to procure Peace and Liberty, else to entangle him in his Passage, resolving to lose their Lives rather than Freedom. The King seeing his Danger, granted their Requests, and continued them their Customs and Liberties.

1080.
The Nation
surveyed.

Doomsday
Book.

The King's
Revenues.

The King having thus settled Laws for the well Government of the People, his next Care was for himself, and the Support of the Honour and Dignity of the Crown. Wherefore he resolved to make in the first Place, a general Survey of the whole Kingdom. The Management and carrying on of this great Work, was by Commissioners, who were some of the greatest and skilfullest Earls and Bishops of the Nation, who were obliged to take a particular Account of the King's Possessions, and every Man's Estate else in the Kingdom, the Nature, Quality and Extent of their Lands, their Estates and Abilities, with the Descriptions, Bounds, and Divisions of all the Shires, Hundreds, Wapentakes, and Tithings; and also the Hides, half Hides, Virgates and Acres of arable Land, Meadow, Pasture and Wood; and this Survey or Description was written in a Book, called *Doomsday Book*. The Reason given for the Name of *Doomsday* is, that it was no more lawful to depart, or appeal from what was in it, than from the Day of Doom, or last Judgment; and being the highest Record in the Kingdom, it continues to be a decisive Evidence in any Trial, where there is Occasion to refer to it. This Survey did not only increase, but also much more ascertain the Revenues of the Crown, which then consisted of several Branches; as first the Crown Lands, which consisted of one thousand four hundred and twenty two Manors, or Lordships, besides many Farms, or Lands in *Middlesex*, *Shropshire*, and *Rutlandshire*. These, with the Escheats forfeited to the King for Felony or Treason, or reverted to the Crown for want of Heirs, together with the Rents reserved of the Baronies and Lands he gave to his Followers, raised a vast Revenue in Money. Another Branch was a Land Tax called Hidage, first levied by *Edward the Confessor*. A third Branch was Tolls, and Customs, for many Cases, Wardships, Knight's-Fees, Forfeitures, Fines, and pecuniary Punishments for Murther, Manslaughter, Batteries, Fightings, Trespasses, Misdemeanors,

meanor
to a th
near f
ment
Compu
our T
King a
with w
his En
his Exc
great P
land H

Hav
vernme
nue, an
son an
the Na
Will a
ments
and for
bitrary
Hamp
thirty
above
wild B
either t
Englan
in Hun
ever fo
his Gar
Act of
and the
not lo
his Pol
a Dear
ally fla
was a
and hu
partial
any P
might
against
nasteri
bels ha

meanors, &c. In short, this King's Revenue amounted to a thousand and sixty Pounds *per Day*, which was near four hundred thousand Pounds *per Annum*, an immense Sum in those Days, which by a moderate Computation, may be valued at near five Millions in our Time. Besides this prodigious Revenue, the King always kept up a standing Army, especially Horse, ^{His Forces;} with which he made good his Acquisitions against all his Enemies, without any Expence or Charge out of his Exchequer; for his Followers to whom he had given great Part of the Land, were always ready with sixty thousand Horsemen or Knights, to assist him on every occasion.

Having thus provided good Laws for the Government of the People, and enjoying a vast Revenue, and a mighty Army for the Security of his Person and Dominions; he seized on all the Forests in the Nation, and exempted them from all Laws, but his Will and Pleasure, inflicting the most severe Punishments on any that should dare to destroy the Game; and for the Conveniency of his Diversion, he, in an arbitrary Manner, dispeopled the South-West Part of ^{He makes a} *Hampshire*, destroying all the Towns and Villages, with ^{new Forest} *in Hampshire* thirty six Churches, turning out the poor Inhabitants for above thirty Miles together, and made a Forest for wild Beasts, now called *The new Forest*. This he did either to make a more easy Access for his *Normans* into *England* in Case of Insurrections, or to indulge himself in Hunting, or to raise Money by any Methods, though ever so unjust; for on all who presumed to trespass on his Game, he inflicted severe Fines and Penalties. This Act of his gained him much hatred amongst his People; and the divine Judgment seemed to have pursued him not long after, by the untimely Deaths of several of his Posterity; for his second Son *Richard* was goar'd by a Dear in this very Forest, and his third Son was casually slain by an Arrow; and his Grandson *Henry*, as he was a Hunting, was caught up by a Bough like *Abshalom*, and hung till he died. And besides this, he was so very partial to the *Normans*, that they only were preferred to any Places of Profit, Trust or Honour; and that it might not be in the Power of the Clergy to do much against him, he stripped the Churches, Abbies and Monasteries, of all their Riches, under pretence that the Rebels had hid them there in order to defraud him. These

arbitrary Proceedings rendred him very odious to all Orders and Degrees of the *English*; who having lost all their Power, Riches, and Courage, were not in a Condition to help themselves; upon this Account, and this only, he may be said to have conquered this Nation. The Churchmen who wrote the History of those Times, do plentifully bestow on him the Names of Tyrant, Oppressor, cruel Exacter, with many other Marks of Infamy. Yet in the midst of his Partiality to the *Normans*, this Prince shewed so much Justice, that he would spare none who were guilty of great and known Crimes; even his Brother *Odo*, the next Person to the King, he seized with his own hands, and confiscated his Estate. King *William* having now settled his Affairs, and having lain sick a little while at *Rohan*, and disposed of his Estate, died in the seventy fourth Year of his Age, and one and twentieth Year of his Reign. 'Tis said that his Corps lay neglected for three Days, his Servants minding more to provide for themselves, than to attend upon him; but his Son *Henry* brought his Body to *Caen* to be interred, where a Gentleman, Owner of the Lands, forbade it, and they were obliged to compound with him for it. Thus this great Prince, who in his Life had so many Dominions, was destitute of a Place for his Burial, which his Relations and Attendants, could not get but by Purchase.

His Death
and Burial.

His Character.

As to his bodily Perfections, he was well proportioned, of a vigorous and healthful Constitution, of a noble Presence, either riding, sitting or standing; of a masculine Beauty, in which there was a Mixture of Majesty and Severity; and had so great a Strength, that few of his Court could draw his Bow. He was both wise and active, penetrating in his Designs, daring in his Enterprizes, and steady in the Prosecution of them. All agree that he was chaste, and temperate; valiant, and great in all his Actions, especially in such as expressed his Royal State and Dignity. And that foreign Ambassadors might witness of his Grandeur and Magnificence, he annually kept the Feast of *Christmas* at *Glocester*, that of *Easter* at *Winchester*, and that of *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*; to which were summoned all the great Men of the Kingdom, both Clergy and Laity. The Clergy, who never loved him, acknowledged, that his Devotion was very exemplary. His great

to all
lost all
t in a
nt, and
s Nati-
f those
mes of
other
artiality
Justice,
eat and
Person
ificated
his Af-
n, and
h Year
Reign.
Days,
selves,
ght his
Own-
o com-
, who
re of a
attend-

ioned,
noble
a maf-
f Ma-
, that
s both
ing in
them.
vali-
uch as
oreign
Mag-
nas at
at of
noned
y and
now-
His
great





grea
into
only
Earl
com
Edg
his
call
taine
chin
in C
H
four
he le
Son
Son
paid
and h
fore i
Nun
of B
amon
fourth
Earl
Virgi



The

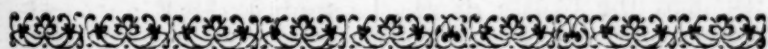
W
gone
the Ho
by his
Winch
Peven
And t
who j
large
stru
Justice
and de

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

149

great Mercy appeared, in often pardoning and receiving into Favour those, who had rebelled against him, and only one of his rebellious Subjects was executed, viz. Earl *Waltheof*. He was free from Suspicion, which is common to Princes, which appears by his allowing *Edgar*, the Competitor for his Crown, the Freedom of his Court. He founded a great Abby near *Hastings*, called *Battle-Abby*, in Memory of the Victory he obtained over *Harold*; and two Nunneries, one at *Hinchinbroke* in *Huntingdonshire*, and the other at *Armbwayt* in *Cumberland*, besides many other publick Works.

He had a numerous Issue by *Maud* his Wife, viz. His Children
four Sons and six Daughters. To *Robert* his eldest Son he left the Dutchy of *Normandy*, to *William* his third Son the Kingdom of *England*, and to *Henry* his youngest Son all his Treasure, with an annual Pension to be paid him by his Brothers; *Richard* his second Son, and his Darling, being slain in the new Forest, as before is related. His eldest Daughter *Cæcilia* was made a Nun; *Constance* the second was married to *Allagn*, Earl of *Britain*, *Adela* to *Stephen*, Earl of *Blois*, by whom among other Issue, she had King *Stephen*. *Gundred* the fourth Daughter was married to *William de Warren*, Earl of *Surry*; the other two, *Ela*, and *Margaret*, died Virgins.



The Reign of King WILLIAM the Second.

William the second surviving Son to the Conqueror, A. D. 1087.
posted for *England*, as soon as the Breath was William R.
gone out of his Father's Body, taking with him *Bloet*^{fus.}
the Household Chaplain; when he arrived he was assisted
by his Father's Steward *Eudo*, who before had secured
Winchester, where his Father's Treasure was, *Dover*,
Pevensey, *Hastings*, and other Castles on the Coasts.
And then he applied himself to Archbishop *Lanfranc*,
who joining his Interest and Mediation to *William's*
large Bounty and Promises, who to remove all Ob-
structions took this solemn Oath, that he would preserve
Justice, Equity, and Mercy throughout the Kingdom,
and defend the Peace and Liberty of the Church, and
observe

His Corona-
tion.

1088.
Great Di-
sturbances.

observe the Archbishop's Directions in all Things; this gained him so great an Interest, that upon *Sunday* the 27th Day of *September*, he was crowned King at *Westminster*, by the two Archbishops of the Nation, in the Presence of many other Bishops, and many of the Nobility. This Prince, who from his ruddy Complexion, and red Hair, was named *Rufus*, was about thirty one Years of Age, when he obtained the Crown: Being brought up to Arms he was rough and haughty, more courageous than pious, and more gallant than good; yet in the former Part of his Reign, being acted by the wise Advice of *Laufrenc*, he did many Things for the good of the Kingdom; and the better to secure himself in the Throne, he rewarded the *Normans* for their Service with Money, and promised the *English* their antient Liberties. Notwithstanding which, his Uncle *Odo*, Bishop of *Bayeux*, with many of the *English* Nobility, occasioned great Troubles and Disturbances, who having sent to *Robert* the King's elder Brother, to put in for the Crown of *England*, he returned an Answer, promising, that he would on a Day prefixed land in the West: Upon this, the discontented Faction rise in many Parts of the Nation. The Bishop was the first in the Action, and fortifying the City of *Rocheſter*, began to disturb the County of *Kent*: others at the same Time seized upon *Bath*, and *Berkley*, and fortified the Castle of *Bristol* against the King, while others laid waste the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Leicester*, and *Worcester*. These Insurrections caused King *William* to summon many Bishops, Earls, and natural *English* together, to consult proper Methods for suppressing them. The Fleet was immediately fitted out, and ordered to guard the Coasts against *Robert's* intended Descent, whose Delay gave the King more Advantage than he could either wish for or expect; for had *Robert* hastened his Arrival, and pursued the Opportunity, he might with no great Difficulty have dispossessed his Brother of the Kingdom.

Rocheſter be-
lieged.

The King marched in Person with his Army against his Uncle *Odo*, and in *May* laid close Siege to *Rocheſter*; he soon forced them out of the Town into the Castle, where many perished by a raging Sickness, and being pressed with many other Necessities, at length they capitulate, and by the Mediation of the Nobility who were with the King, to save their Relations that were

in the
all the
Loſs
them
Arms
Kingd
Eſtate
Rocheſter
ly his
blame
and el
that he
cy to
of hun
cious
theſe

But
Thron
tick D
miſes,
oppres
ons.
mild
which
all that
afford
the go
twenty
Grief
ſtance
Charit
the A
on the
kept th
by *Lin*
as the
as he
would
the firſt
danger
Living
he the
yet new
ver fill

in the Castle, they obtained these Conditions, viz. That And reduced.
all their Estates should be forfeited, that their Lives and
Loss of Limbs should be pardoned, and Leave given
them to pass out of the Castle with their Horses and
Arms; whereupon they were all forced to quit the
Kingdom, even *Odo* himself, by which he lost his vast
Estate in *England*. The Rebels being thus reduced at
Rocheſter, the King resolves to make the *English* entire-
ly his, by giving them the Estates of the banished No-
blemen; promising, that he would ease all his Subjects,
and especially the native *English*, of their great Taxes;
that he would enact better Laws, use Justice and Mer-
cy towards all, and that they should have free Liberty
of hunting in his Forests: By these Promises and spe-
cious Pretences, and not by Force, he put an End to The Rebelli-
on at an End, these dangerous Insurrections.

But no sooner was the King well established in the
Throne, and freed from all Apprehensions of any domest-
tick Disturbances, than he quite forgot his Oaths and Pro-
mises, and proceeded in a quite contrary Method, and
oppressed his Subjects with heavy Taxes and Extorti-
ons. Against these hard Proceedings of the King, the
mild Archbishop *Lanfranc* made his Remonstrances; to
which the King in a Passion replied, Who can perform 1089.
all that he has promised? and from that Day would not
afford him a Smile. This had so great an Influence on
the good old Man, that he pined away, and on the
twenty fourth Day of *May* he died, to the inexpressible *Lanfranc*
Grief of all good Men, as being the most eminent In- dies.
stance of Learning and Wisdom, as well as Piety and
Charity, that this Age had produced. No sooner was
the Archbishop dead, but the King immediately seizes
on the whole Revenues of his Archbishoprick, and
kept the See vacant almost four Years; he did the same
by *Lincoln*, and all other Churches and Abbies, as soon
as they became void, and never fill'd them up as long
as he could squeeze any Thing out of them, and then
would sell them to the best Bidder. In short, he was
the first King in *England*, who shewed his Successors the
dangerous Precedent of keeping the Bishopricks and their
Livings vacant, and receiving the Profits himself. Thus
he shewed his rapacious Inclinations, always covetous,
yet never frugal, and still grasping and gathering, yet ne-
ver filling his Coffers.

1090.
The King
goes into
Normandy a-
gainst his
Brother.

As the Insurrections which were now quelled, were occasioned on his Brother *Robert's* Account, King *William* resolves to revenge himself of all former Injuries. Accordingly he invades *Normandy*, with an Army; at his first landing he surpris'd the Castles of *St. Valery* and *Albemarle*, with others on the Sea Coast, and then laid a great Part of the Country waste. *Robert* being unprovided to oppose him, applied to *Philip* the French King, who joined him, but was by a large Sum of Money from King *William* prevail'd with to stand Neuter. Upon this the *Norman* Nobility began to favour King *William*, and the Citizens of *Rouen* the Metropolis, being brib'd by Money and fair Promises, resolv'd to betray the City with its slothful Duke into his Hands. The chief Conspirator was one *Canon* a rich Citizen, but the whole Plot being discovered, *Robert* joined with his Brother *Henry*, and just came in Time to secure the City, though with great Slaughter of the resisting Citizens; *Canon* was taken, carried up into an high Tower, and cast headlong out at a Window by *Henry's* own Hands. The Progress of King *William's* Arms was stop'd for the present, by this Conjunction of the two Brothers; but in the next Year he resolves on another Attempt, which being undertaken, was soon ended by a Reconciliation and a Peace between the two Brothers, upon these Conditions. That King *William* should hold the County of *Eu*, *Fescamp*, and other Places which he had bought: That he should assist *Robert* in recovering all that had been taken from his Dutchy: That the *Normans*, who had joined *Robert*, and thereby forfeited their Estates in *England*, should be restored: That the Survivor of either should succeed to the Dominions both of *England* and *Normandy*. Prince *Henry* by this Treaty being deserted, betook himself to *St. Michael's* Mount, as his last Retreat; which Place *William* and *Robert*, with their united Forces, besiege; during which Siege, the King as he was riding alone some Distance from the Camp, perceived several of the Enemy's Soldiers advancing towards him, whom he boldly engaged, but in the first Encounter his Horse was slain under him, and himself thrown upon the Ground. Seeing his Danger he discovered himself to be the King of *England*; the Soldiers were surpris'd, and treated him with Respect, and got him another Horse. The King in return rewarded the Person that had unhorsed him, and made

1091.
A Peace con-
cluded.

Fort St. Mi-
chael's be-
sieged.

Robert

made
the
Duke
in M
a Da
betw
gar L
him
there
ther-
T
prev
into
the
gain
Pers
cam
thes
the
that
whic
so p
King
Robe
war
betw
ing
Year
ther
Port
Han
was
to E
the
abov
Year
Dea
Sign
mad
wou
their
his S
his
and
befo

made him his Knight. At length, on Condition that the Fort of *St. Michael* should be surrendred to the Duke, *Henry* was to hold the Country of *Constantine* in Mortgage, until *Robert* had paid his Money, for which a Day was appointed; and thus a Peace was concluded between them; upon which Duke *Robert* banished *Edgar Etheling* out of his Country, and the King deprived him of all the Lands that had been given him; who thereupon went into *Scotland* to King *Malcolm* his Brother-in-Law.

The three
Brothers
make Peace.

Things being thus settled in *Normandy*, King *William* prevailed with his Brother *Robert* to accompany him into *England*, where *Malcolm* taking the Advantage of the King's Absence, had invaded *Northumberland*, against whom the King and Duke *Robert* marched in Person; but by means of *Edgar Etheling*, both Kings came to an Interview, and a Peace was concluded upon these Conditions. That *Malcolm* should yield the King the same Obedience as he had done to his Father; and that the King should restore to *Malcolm* twelve Manors, which he formerly held under his Father, and should also pay him annually, twelve Marks of Gold. The King was again reconciled to Prince *Edgar*; but Duke *Robert* perceiving his Brother's Subtlety, and his Backwardness in performing the Conditions of the Treaty between them, retired in Discontent to *Normandy*, taking *Edgar Etheling* along with him. In the following Year, Prince *Henry* began to recover himself, and gather Strength in *Normandy*, having had the strong Sea-Port Town of *Damfront*, privately delivered into his Hands; and this he made a Place of Refuge, till he was reconciled to his Brother *William*, and sent for into *England*. About the same Time, the King rebuilt the City and Castle of *Carlisle*, which had lain in Ruins above two hundred Years. In the beginning of the next Year, the King fell sick in *Glocestershire*, so that his 1092.
Death was expected by most Persons. Upon this as Signs of his Repentance for former Crimes, the King made a Vow to God, that if he would restore him, he would abrogate all unjust Laws, and ordain better in their Stead. But as soon as the King was recovered of his Sickness, he forgot his Vow to God, and Promise to his Subjects, and relapsed to his former Miscarriages, and reduced all Things to the same or a worse State than before. About this Time, *Malcolm* King of the *Scots* invaded

invaded *England*, and made great Devastations as far as *Alnewick*; but *Robert Mowbray* Earl of *Northumberland* fell upon him near that Town, defeated his Army, and slew him and his Son. Upon this the Nobility of *Scotland* assembled, and elected *Donald*, *Malcolm's* Brother to be their King, though *Edgar*, *Malcolm's* Son was then living; and expelled *Edgar Etheling* with all the *English* out of *Scotland*, who were kindly received in *England*. But *Duncan*, natural Son of the late King, being then in King *William's* Court as an Hostage, obtained Assistance from him, marched against his Uncle *Donald*, who had newly invaded *England*, attacked him, beat his Army, and forced him to fly into the Western Isles; upon which he was crowned King of *Scotland*. In the same Year, *Rees*, Prince of the *Welshmen*, was slain in a Battel near *Brecknock Castle*, which put an End to the Princes of South *Wales*.

1094.

King *William* having settled his Affairs in the North and West, was again disturbed by his Brother *Robert*; upon which he passed into *Normandy*, and by the Mediation of their common Friends, they had an Interview in the Field, of *Martins*, but could by no Means come to an Agreement; upon which the King sent into *England*, and commanded them to raise twenty thousand Men, and transport them to him with all Expedition; these were mustred near *Hastings*. The King's Treasurer by his Order, told them, That each Man might be dismissed upon the Payment of ten Shillings; all complied, and by this Stratagem, the King got a considerable Sum of Money, with which he prevailed with the *French* King, to withdraw his Troops from Duke *Robert*, which obliged him to retire, and he had been forced to submit, had not the *Welsh* in the mean Time entred *Cheshire*, *Shropshire*, and other Counties; inso-much, that King *William* was constrained to leave *Normandy*, and the War unfinished; and reconciling himself to his Brother *Henry*, he returned into *England*, and marched into *Wales*; but the Inhabitants retiring to the Mountains, the King returned with Dishonour.

1095.

A Conspira-
cy.

In the same Year he made a second Expedition into *Wales*, but with no better Success. Much about the same Time, *Robert de Mowbray* Earl of *Northumberland*, and many other *Norman* Noblemen, conspired against the King; this obliged him to turn his Forces against them, and he besieged *Bambrugh Castle*, and took

Robert

Robert
Some
pound
but *W*
Genit

Mu
had ac
gave t
the Inv
Churc
Metho
at last
venues
Pope v
munic
pronoc
Design
called
of the
tians,
he affe
zealous
to exci
of Go
rous In
Zeal,
which
Time,
credibl
Sexes
the Ma
Motto
long V
hundre
and Ti
tions,
the Pe
Power
For m
gaged i
mortga
Expedi
reasons
a Prosp
his Bro
Norma

Robert Prisoner, who was confined almost thirty Years. Some had their Estates confiscated, and others compounded for their Crimes by large Sums of Money; but *William* Earl of *Eu* had his Eyes put out, and his Genitals cut off, and many were spared out of Policy.

Much about the same Time, *Anselm*, whom the King had advanced to the Archiepiscopal See of *Canterbury*, gave the King much Trouble, by opposing him about the Investitures of Bishops, and other Privileges of the Church. This caused the King to proceed to violent Methods, which made the Archbishop very uneasy, and at last fly to *Rome*; upon which the King seized the Revenues of the Archbishoprick to his own Use. The Pope was so enraged at this, that he threatned to excom-^{1096.} municate the King, but was prevented from solemnly <sup>The begin-
ning of the
Holy War.</sup> pronouncing the Sentence against him, having greater Designs to manage at this Time; for a famous Hermit called *Peter*, who in the holy Land had been Witness of the Cruelties exercised by the Turks upon the Christians, made such Remonstrances to Pope *Urban*, that he assembled a Council at *Clermont* in *France*, and by a zealous Harangue, animated the Prelates then present, to excite the Faithful to take up Arms for the Recovery of God's Country, out of the Hands of those barbarous Infidels. The Prelates were fired with the same Zeal, each resolving to push this glorious Cause, in which they had the desired Success: For in a short Time, this holy Fervor spread all over *Europe*, and incredible Numbers of all Qualities, and of all Ages and Sexes listed themselves in this sacred Militia, bearing the Marks of red Crosses on their Garments, with this Motto, *It is the Will of God*. These Crusado's and long Voyages, the Heat of which lasted for above two hundred Years, occasioned an infinite Expence of Blood and Treasure, and proved the weakening of many Nations, the Ruin of the great Lords and Multitudes of the People, and the Establishment and Increase of the Power of the Popes, and the enriching of the Clergy. For most of the Princes and noble Persons, who engaged in this brave Attempt, were obliged to sell or mortgage their Estates, to furnish themselves for this Expedition; most of these the Priests bought, and at reasonable Rates. *Robert*, like others, being fired with a Prospect of this Expedition, concludes a Peace with his Brother King *William*, and mortgages the Dutchy of *Normandy* to him, for ten thousand Marks of Silver:
Thus

Thus was the King rid of his elder Brother, and a troublesome Competitor at the same Time. But to raise this great Sum, the King acted in an unjust and very arbitrary Manner; for he seized on all Vacancies in the Church, and kept them for his own Use; and he sent to all the great Men of the Nation to furnish him with this Sum; insomuch, that the Bishops, Abbots, and Abbesses, were obliged to break the golden Shrines of their Churches, and the Nobles to oppress their Tenants to raise Money. He sold spiritual Livings to the best Bidder; took Fines of Priests for Fornication, and of the Jews to renounce Christianity; and over the Laity he set Spies, on whom he inflicted severe Penalties for small Offences.

1097.

These arbitrary Proceedings gained him much Hatred of the People, especially the Clergy. By this Means the King took Possession of *Normandy*, and soon after claimed of *Philip* King of *France* the *French Veuxin*, with the chief Towns belonging to it; but after a Year's Contest, which occasioned many Losses on both Sides, the two Kings made Peace. And now the King marched a third Time against the *Welsh*, and passed quite through the Country; but the People fled to their Recesses, and the King was obliged to return without doing of any Thing, besides the building of some Castles in the Marches between *England* and *Wales*. About *Michaelmas* in the same Year, he sent *Edgar Etheling* with a great Army into *Scotland*, who expelled *Donald*, who again had gotten Possession of the Crown, and in his room placed *Edgar* his Nephew, who was the right Heir to the Crown, who accordingly did Homage to the King of *England*. All this Year the Nation suffered much, by reason of the Scarcity of Provisions, the Badness of the Season, and the grievous Taxes for the rebuilding of *London Bridge*, for building the new Walls about the *Tower*, and for building *Westminster-Hall*, which, though two hundred and seventy Foot long, and seventy five Foot broad, the King at a Feast he held in it declared, was not fit for a Bed-Chamber, in respect to what he intended to build. From which Feast he went to hunt in the New Forest, where in the midst of his Sport, a Messenger from *Normandy* informed him, that the City of *Mans* was surprised by Count *Elias*, and that the Castle without speedy Succour would be obliged to surrender. The King with his usual Bravery, ordered the Messenger to hasten back and acquaint them, that he would be with them in eight Days,

*Edgar made
King of Scot-
land:
1098.*

1099.

Days, and turning his Horse's Head towards *Mans*, he rode with all Speed towards the Sea, and when some of his Attendants desired him to stay 'till his Army was got ready, he replied, Those that love me will follow me. Thus riding with a small Retinue 'till he came to *Dartmouth*, and going to take Shipping, the Weather was so tempestuous, that the Master of the Vessel declared, that they could not pass without the utmost Hazard of their Lives; but *William* replied, Did you ever hear of a King that was drowned? They put to Sea, and the next Morning arrived at *Barfleur*; and the King ordered his Officers and Soldiers to attend him immediately at *Mans*, where he not only raised the Siege, but took *Elias* Prisoner, who being brought before him, the King jokingly told him, That he had him secure now: To which the other replied, That is more by Chance than Valour; if I were at Liberty, I would convince you of what I could do. The King answered, What could you perform? Take your Liberty, and shew your Abilities. Thus the King generously dismiss'd him, and gave him a very good Horse; which Act of Generosity had such an Influence on *Elias*, that he became the King's faithful Friend. *Mans* being thus rescued, and the Country once more reduced to his Obedience, the King returned to *England* about *Michaelmas*. This very Year the City of *Jerusalem* was taken by Storm by the Christians, and forty thousand Saracens put to the Sword; after which they agreed to elect *Robert* Duke of *Normandy* to be King of that City and all *Palestine*, who from a Prospect of the Crown of *England*, refused it; upon which they chose the renowned *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* to be King. The next Year, King *William* went in the beginning of *August* to hunt in the new Forest, accompanied with his Brother *Henry*, and a few Followers, among whom was *Walter Tyrrel*, an expert Huntsman, who shot at a Stag, but missed it, and in shot the King in the Breast, of which he immediately died, and was buried in the Church at *Winchester*. Thus this Prince was the third of this Race, who in a few Years met with their Deaths in this Forest; as if Heaven designed to revenge on the Children the Sins of the Father, for destroying so many Churches and Villages, to make them a Receptacle for wild Beasts.

Jerusalem
taken by the
Christians.

1100.

The King is
slain.

Though this was a very warlike Age, yet there began to be a great Corruption of Manners among

among the young Nobility, Gentry, and Clergy, who practised all the Luxury of Eating and Drinking, and shewed so much Effeminacy in their Habits and Carriage, that they appeared Men in nothing so much, as their Attempts upon the Chastity of Women. In this Reign many Disasters fell out, as in the second Year a dreadful Earthquake happened; in the fourth a violent Lightning, which did much Damage to the Abby of *Winscombe*. Not long after, a Tempest blew down six hundred Houses in *London*, and the Roof of *Bow Church*. In the ninth Year a Blazing Star appeared with two Bushes; and other Stars seemed to shoot Darts to each other. In the eleventh Year at *Finchamstead*, near *Abington* in *Berkshire*, a Well of Blood rose out of the Ground, overflowing for fifteen Days together. In the last Year of this Reign, the Sea rose to a prodigious Height, overflowed its Banks, drowned an incredible Number of People and Cattle in many Counties; and in *Kent*, it destroyed all the Lands belonging to the famous Earl *Godwin*, which are still called *Godwin's Sands*, and are as fatal to the Sailors now, as he was to the Nation when alive.



The Reign of King HENRY the First.

A. D. 1100.
Henry chosen
King of Eng-
land.

THE sudden Death of King *William* made way for his younger Brother *Henry*, being present and born in *England*, to wear the Crown; it being also reported, that *Robert* who should have succeeded *William*, was chosen King of *Jerusalem*. Upon which, the Nobility and People, elected and crowned *Henry* King, within four Days after his Brother's Decease; who, that he might secure himself the firm Allegiance of the People, began his Reign with Acts of Kindness and Benefit to them. In the first Place he resolved to secure the Clergy, who always are the best Friends, or worst Enemies, according as their Power and Profit is increased or diminished, by filling up all the Vacancies in the Church, and restoring to them all their Privileges, and granting them more. Then he recalled *Anselm* from his Banishment, and restored him to the

Archbishoprick of *Canterbury*. He freed the Laiety from their Oppressions and Exactions, and restored to them the use of their Lights, after the *Corfeu-Bell* had gone; and because *Ralph*, Bishop of *Durham*, had been the chief Instrument of putting King *William* upon all his Courses of Exaction and Irregularity, *Henry* committed him to a loathsome Prison. Besides these Things he made many other good Laws, and Orders for the good Government of his Kingdom; and he granted a Charter of Liberties under his Broad Seal, which *Matth. Paris* hath preserved in his History; and to make himself still more popular and beloved of the *English*, he married into the Royal Blood of *England*; for he chose for his Royal Consort *Maud*, the Daughter of *Margaret* the late Queen of *Scots*, Niece to *Edward Atheling*, and so descended from *Edmund Ironside*, who was hardly persuaded to leave a Cloister to become a Queen. Thus, by all these prudent Methods, King *Henry* having secured his Interest in *England*; and being thus settled in the Possession of the Crown, no Competitor could, with Hopes of Success, pretend to disturb him: But his Brother *Robert* being returned into *Normandy*, from the Holy Wars, resolved to attempt the Crown, which he thought of Right belonged to him. Accordingly he prepared a great Army, which he landed at *Portsmouth*; to which Multitudes flock'd, especially the *Normans*, which made him more formidable. On the other Side King *Henry* used all Methods to defeat his Designs, and got together a very powerful Army, and march'd against his Brother: But as the two Armies were just about to engage, *Henry* cunningly proposes to *Robert* Terms of Peace, to prevent the Effusion of Christian Blood. This was complied with, and a Treaty concluded, in which it was agreed:

Married to
Maud of
Scotland.

Duke *Robert*
lands an Ar-
my at *Portf-*
mouth.

- " First, That *Henry* being the Son of a King, born in *England*, should enjoy the Kingdom during his Life, paying 3000 Marks yearly to *Robert*.
- " 2^{ly}, That *Robert* should succeed him.
- " 3^{ly}, That all offending Persons should be pardoned, and have their Honours and Estates restored.

A Peace con-
cluded.

For the Performance of which, twelve chief Noblemen of either Side took a solemn Oath, and the Armies were immediately disbanded; and Duke *Robert* came to his Brother's Court, where he was nobly entertained for the Space of six Months.

A. D. 1102,

All

Henry con-
tests with
Anselm.

All Obstacles to King *Henry's* Quiet being remov'd, and his Throne better secured than before, he began to assert his prerogative against the Opposition of Archbishop *Anselm*, who refused to consecrate that Bishop which the King had prefer'd, alledging it to be a Violation of the sacred Rites and Ceremonies of the Church; he farther proceeded to censure and condemn those Prelates and Ecclesiasticks, who had accepted their Investitures from the King. He likewise did excommunicate all married Priests, making Fornication a less Sin than Matrimony: And next he inhibited all Laymen from hearing their Masses: But the King not willing to lose his Prerogative, sends an Ambassage to Pope *Paschal* to represent his Right to the Investiture of Bishops, and Collation of Ecclesiastical Dignities, which Right he received from his Predecessors, Kings of *England*, who never were, till of late, molested in this Prerogative; and that he would sooner part with his Kingdom, than lose the Right of his Investiture of Churches. *Anselm* posts to *Rome*, to make good his Cause against the King, and had Success, and had nigh persuaded the Pope to excommunicate the King, who now became so enraged with *Anselm*, that he forbad his Return, and seiz'd on the Revenues of the Archbishoprick. The Pope bethought himself, and resolv'd to try to bring the King to his Will by mild Methods: Accordingly he wrote to him in the most obliging Manner and softest Terms, and requested him to quit his Claim, promising his Readiness to assist him in his temporal Affairs, to the utmost of his Power; provided he would not presume to meddle with the Church. By this Bait the King was caught, granted the Pope's Requests; and so became a silly Precedent to succeeding Princes, of submitting to the See of *Rome* in the same Case: And now, forsooth, *Anselm* that constant Enemy of the King's Prerogative, and Friend of *Rome*, must be restored to his Revenues and the King's Favour.

While these things were in hand at *Rome*, the King was disturbed at Home by a Rebellion; for *Robert Belesme*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, fortifying his Castles, *Shrewsbury*, *Bridg-north*, *Tick-hill* and *Arundell*, and joining with the *Welch-Men*, denied Obedience and Subjection to the King. Upon this, *Henry*, with a stout Army, marched against them, and in about a Month's Time, took all

A. D. 1103.
A Rebellion.

all the
his Bro
Count
made S
great I
ther.
Means
suffici
Shrewsb
Assistan
at whic
bellious
King, a
rel, till
who ha
it, and
be to hi
lious E
into No
Loss of
near the
Enemie
Comput
on whic
Duke c
lish Kin
King
returnec
over wi
diffe Cal
his Esc
be put o
tinued a
King
ed all F
more ea
evil Pra
Multitud
great Di
the Wiv
the Rem
which it
of these
Hands,
ed on fo
VOL.

The Reign of King HENRY I.

145

all their Castles; upon which *Belesme* and the two Earls his Brothers, *Roger* and *Arnulph*, were forc'd to fly their Country, and leave their Estates; on which the King made Seizure for his own Use. These Earls rais'd great Disturbances in *Normandy*, for three Years together. Many Towns and Churches were burnt by their Means, and the whole Power of *Normandy* was not sufficient to stop the Ravages of the furious Earls of *Shrewsbury*. The *Normans* send to King *Henry* for Assistance; he reproverth *Robert* for his Sluggishness, at which *Robert* is disgusted, and joins with these rebellious Earls, threatening Revenge on his Brother. The King, at first, was unwilling to engage in a new Quarrel, till at length being persuaded by Pope *Paschal*, who had written to him, to shew him the Necessity of it, and what a noble and memorable Benefit it would be to his Country to suppress the Duke and these rebellious Earls; he upon this with a great Army, passes into *Normandy*; and after many Difficulties and the Loss of many worthy Men, came to a pitched Battle near the Castle of *Tenechbray*, where he defeated his Enemies; by which *England* won *Normandy*; and by Computation, on the same Day, forty Years before, on which *Normandy* won *England*: Thus a *Norman* Duke conquered the Kingdom of *England*, and an *English* King subdued *Normandy*.

A. D. 1107.
Robert
makes War
against Hen-
ry.

King *Henry* having gained the Dutchy of *Normandy*, returned to *England*, and brought his Brother *Robert* over with him, and committed him Prisoner to *Cardiffe* Castle, who, as some report, attempted to make his Escape; for which the King ordered his Eyes to be put out. In this miserable Condition the Duke continued a Prisoner for twenty six Years.

A. D. 1106.

King *Henry* having established his Power, and finished all Foreign Contests, resolved to make his Subjects more easy; to accomplish which, he redress'd many evil Practices, beginning with his own Court. The Multitude which followed the Court used to commit great Disorders; behaving themselves rudely towards the Wives and Daughters of the Country People; for the Remedy of which the King published an Edict, in which it was ordained, that whoever was found guilty of these, or the like Practices, should lose his Eyes, his Hands, Feet, or other Members; which being executed on some, deterred others from such Offences; and

that every false Coyner should suffer Castration, or the Loss of his Eyes. But while the King was making these Regulations, *Philip*, King of *France*, died, and was succeeded by *Lewis* his Son; who soon shewed that he was no Friend to King *Henry*; for which Reason the King sailed into *Normandy*, to put that Dutchy in a Posture of Defence against a suspected Man. The King commanded his Nephew *William*, Son to his Brother *Robert*, to be taken into Custody; but the young Prince, by the Means of *Elias* his Tutor, made his Escape, and was carried to the Court of *France*.

A. D. 1108.
The King
sails to *Normandy*.

And returns.

A. D. 1109.

Henry the
Emperor
and *Matilda*
espoused.

The next Summer, a little before *Whitsuntide*, the King returned to *England*, and held his Court with extraordinary Splendor, at *Westminster*, where the Emperor's Ambassadors waited on him, to desire his Daughter *Matilda* in Marriage. The King agreed to the Proposal, and the Articles were soon sign'd. And to raise a Portion for her in ready Money, the King laid a Tax of three Shillings upon every Hide of Land in *England*, which according to *Dr. Brady's* Computation, amounts to 824850 Pounds of our present Money; enough, well managed, to purchase the Empire.

A. D. 1110
Learning
restored in
the University
of *Cambridge*.

About this Time Learning began to be restor'd in the University of *Cambridge*, by the Means of *Joffred* Abbot of *Croyland*, who sent *Gilbert*, his Fellow Monk, and Professor of Divinity, and three other Monks, who understood Philosophy and other Sciences, to make open Profession of their Sciences; for which End they hired a publick Barn; in which they read to their Scholars, who flock'd to them both from the Town and Country, till at length they became so very numerous, that there was never a House, Church, or Barn, large enough to contain them: This obliged them to read apart, making use of the best Authors in Grammar, Rhetorick and Logick.

A. D. 1111.
Normandy
disturbed.

Notwithstanding the King had much secured his Territories by his Alliance with the Emperor, yet *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, by corrupting the Inhabitants, won the City of *Constance* from the King's Obedience. Upon which King *Henry* hastened into *Normandy*, where he used great Severities, and put to Death *Elias* Earl of *Maine*, who held that Country against him; which so disoblged *Godfrey* Earl of *Gant*, that he entred into that Earldom, and marrying the Daughter of *Elias*, kept that Country against all King *Henry's* Power. In

the mean Time the King acted with all Policy at Home; for Multitudes of *Flemings* coming into *England*, being forc'd hither by vast Inundations of the Sea in *Flanders*, these were planted in *Wales*, that they might prevent the *Welch-Men* from being so troublesome. The King gave them the Country of *Ros*, lying about *Pembroke* and *Haverford West*, which he had taken from the *Welch* Princes. These *Flemings* being an Industrious and stout People, did really prove a sure Defence against the Insurrections of the *Welsh*, manifesting the Excellency of the *Roman* Policy, in preserving all new Conquests by Colonies. The Descendents of these *Flemings* continue to this Day, being very different from the native *Britains*, or *Welsh-Men*, both in Language and Manners.

The *Flemings* planted in *Wales*.

After this the King returned to *Normandy*, made Peace with *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, and permitted his Son *William* to marry the Earl's Daughter; but he sent *Robert Belesme* to *England*, and committed him Prisoner in *Warham* Castle, where he continued all his Life, without being pitied by any Body. King *Henry* having thus subdued *Normandy*, and made Peace with his Neighbours beyond the Seas, returned in a triumphant Manner into *England*; and governed this Kingdom, and that Dukedom, in perfect Peace for five Years ensuing.

A. D. 1113

The King's Affairs being thus settled abroad, to quiet the turbulent Spirits of the Clergy, he resolved to fill up all Church Vacancies: Accordingly, on the twenty fifth Day of *April*, *Ralph*, Bishop of *Rocheſter*, was made Archbishop of *Canterbury*. In the same Year, *Thurstan*, the King's Chaplain, was made Archbishop of *York*; and several other Vacancies in the Church were filled up; but with too great Partiality to the *Normans*, and Neglect to the *English* Nation. About this Time the *Welsh* began to be troublesome again, committing some Ravages in several Parts of the Borders. This so provoked the King, that he swore that he would utterly destroy all the Men of *North Wales* and *Powisland*; and immediately marched into their Country with a great Army, which he divided into three Parts; and ordered one to enter *North Wales*, another *South Wales*, and the King with the third would enter the Heart of the Country. The *Welsh*, being in the

A. D. 1114.
Church Vacancies fill'd up.

The *Welsh* troublesome.

utmost Consternation, and not being able to make Head against the King's Power, fled to the Woods and Mountains, where many of them were killed, and at last the rest submitted to the King, who now, as a Conqueror, returned to *London* in Triumph.

A. D. 1115. Some Time after the King went into *Normandy*, where he caus'd all the chief Men of that Dukedom to swear Fealty to his Son *William*, as his lawful Successor, being then about twelve Years of Age. And the Year following, on the twentieth Day of *March*, at *Salisbury*, the King summoned a grand Council of all the Bishops, Abbots, and Nobility of the Kingdom, in which they readily complied with the King's Intentions; and all swore Fealty to his Son *William*, That if he should survive his Father, he only should possess the Crown; and that they would faithfully serve him as King of *England*. From this Assembly several Writers have dated the Original of the High Court of Parliament, in *England*.

A. D. 1117. About the same Time *Theobald*, Earl of *Blaffis*, took up Arms against the King of *France*; and King *Henry* gave him Assistance: This so provoked the King of *France*, that he swore he would dispossess King *Henry* of all *Normandy*, and set up *William*, the Son of Duke *Robert* in his Room, many of the *Norman* Nobility favouring the Design; to prevent which, *Henry* drew together a brave Army, and march'd against his Enemies: But they hearing of his Approach, and dreading his Power, retired with Precipitation, and left the Country free to the Victor. So that there seem'd now to be laid a Foundation for a lasting Peace and Tranquillity; but the King's Joys were soon interrupted by the Death of his excellent Queen, *Matilda*, which happened in the eighteenth Year of his Reign, to the great Grief of the Nation, who had her in mighty Esteem, as well for her Family, as her Piety, Charity and Munificence. The *French* King now thinking himself capable of engaging *Henry*, enter'd *Normandy*, and laid the Country waste; which King *Henry* for a while suffer'd, declaring, that he had learn'd from his valiant Father, to conquer the Rashness of the *French*, by Patience and Policy; and that a good King should not be prodigal of the Blood of such Subjects as his: But in a short Time after, he found an Opportunity to signalize his Valour in a general

Queen *Matilda* dies.

A. D. 1119. The *French* King again in Arms.

ral Battle with the *French*, which was fought with great Obstinacy, for several Hours, till at length the *French* were obliged to give Way. Many of the *French* Nobility were taken Prisoners, and also King *Lewis's* Standard, which the King bought for twenty Marks, and kept it as a Token of Victory, and returned in Triumph to *Roven*. During the Time of this War the Pope called a Council at *Rheims*, where the *English* Bishops were permitted by the King to be present; but all Complaints were prohibited, and this Charge given to them, to salute the Pope in his Name; and only to hear the Pope's apostolical Precepts, but to bring none of his Inventions into his Kingdom. Not long after, the Pope came into *Normandy*, and met the King at *Gefors*, where he attempted to persuade him to set his Brother *Robert* at Liberty, and restore him and his Son *William* to the Dukedom of *Normandy*: But the King so managed his Affairs by Arguments and Presents, that the Pope approv'd of all he had done; and he was esteemed by the Pope and the Cardinals, as a most eloquent Orator; and all his Actions very justifiable. And now the Pope made use of his Abilities and Authority, to establish a Peace between the two Kings, which was concluded in the following Year, without any Exception or Difficulty; all the Forts and Castles taken in the War being delivered up, and Prisoners on both Sides set at Liberty.

And is defeated.

A. D. 1120.
A Peace concluded.

Upon this the King returned into *England*, having been absent above four Years: Accordingly, on the twenty sixth Day of *November* he sail'd from *Barfleur*, and landed in *England* the Day following: But the King's and the Nation's Joy, for this happy Arrival, was soon turned to Lamentation; for Prince *William*, the Joy of his Father, and the Hope of the Nation, being attended by his Brothers and Sisters, and many of the young Nobility, was cast away, and none escaped but the meanest of the Company, who were saved by swimming on the main Mast, as it were, only to give a Relation of this tragical Story. This was the most unfortunate Shipwreck that ever happened in our Seas; for in it perished, besides Prince *William*, *Richard*, his natural Brother, his Sister *Matilda*, *Richard* Earl of *Chester*, with his Lady *Lucy*, the King's Niece by his Sister *Adela*, *Orwel* the Earl's Brother, the young Duke's Governor, divers of the King's

The King returns to *England*.

His Son *William* and many of the Nobility lost at Sea.

great Officers of State, and many of the chief Nobility, to the Number of one hundred and sixty Persons. The King was so sensibly touched with this Misfortune, that it occasioned some to report, that he was never seen to laugh after it. However, the Grand Council at *London* prevailed on the King to attempt to repair this great Loss by a new Issue; accordingly he married *Adeliza*, Daughter of *Geoffrey*, Duke of *Lorraine*; but she never bore him a Child.

A. D. 1121.
The King
marries.

In this Year the *Welsh* began again to be troublesome to the *English*; for *Griffin*, Prince of *North Wales*, sent his two Sons into *Cheshire*, where they burnt two Castles, slew many of the Inhabitants, and made great Devastations. Upon which the King marched into *Wales*, and after some Losses on both Sides, a Peace was concluded; Prince *Griffin* being obliged to give a thousand Head of Cattle and Hostages. Then the King having appointed the Lord *Fitz-warren*, Lieutenant of the Marches, returned to *England*. Not long after, *William Corbett* a *Benedictine* Abbot of a new founded Abbey, was made Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the Room of *Ralph* deceased.

A. D. 1122.

The *Normans* still repining at *Robert's* Captivity, resolved to set up his Son *William* in his Room. *Robert* Earl of *Mellent* was the chief in this Action. This caused the King to hasten into *Normandy*, where he immediately besieged the Castle of *Pont-Andomar*, and took it; and then fortified many of his own Castles to prevent their being surprised by the Enemy. *Hugh*, Earl of *Montfort*, and others of Power, joined Earl *Mellent*, and enter'd *Normandy* with Fire and Sword; but *William Tankerville*, the King's Chamberlain, march'd against them, drew them into an Ambuscade, beat their Forces, and took both the Earls Prisoners; thus a Stop was put to these Wars for some Time.

A. D. 1124.

John de Crema, a Cardinal, and a Legate from Pope *Honorius*, came into *England*, in the King's Absence, but with his Licence, to redress the great Abuse, as it was term'd, of the Clergy's retaining the Society of their Wives; and for this End he held a general Synod at *London*, where he severely inveighed against the Marriage of Priests, declaring, "That it was a horrid Sin for a Priest to rise from the Bed of Lust, with a lawful Wife, and touch the Sacrament of the Body of Christ." Yet the Night following, after he

A. D. 1125.

he h
was
says
too
woul
and t
with
nour
for f
tion,
on p
obtai
Law
Abus
woul
their
Ki
Quee
ter A
dow.
broug
ed a
Natio
semb
Earls
he sh
ceive
King
might
marri
Anjou
to the
King
gainst
who
put in
being
midab
by thi
far as
This
drew
King
to fet
revolt

he himself had celebrated Mass, this chaste Cardinal was taken in Bed with a common Strumpet; which says *Huntington*, was too notorious to be denied, and too wicked to be conceal'd. Upon this the Clergy would pay no Regard to his Canons and Regulations; and this hypocritical Cardinal was obliged to return with much more Shame than he came hither with Honour. By this Wickedness of the Cardinal the Clergy for some Time enjoy'd their Wives without Molestation, till in the Year 1129, the King call'd a Synod on purpose to settle the Celibacy of the Clergy; and obtained Power to have the sole Execution of this Law himself; but instead of restraining the pretended Abuse, the King made an Advantage of it; for all that would pay him for it, had Licence granted to enjoy their Wives as formerly.

The Celibacy of the Clergy established.

King *Henry* having no Prospect of Issue by his new Queen, was desirous to leave the Crown to his Daughter *Matilda*, Empress of *Germany*, now lately a Widow. In order to effect this great Work, the King brought *Matilda* into *England*; and at *Windsor* summoned a Parliament, consisting of all the chief Men of the Nation, besides *David* King of *Scotland*, in this Assembly he prevailed on all the Bishops, Abbots, Earls and Barons, to take a solemn Oath, That if he should die without Male Issue, they would receive his Daughter *Matilda* for their Queen: *David* King of *Scotland* took the same Oath. Then that he might strengthen her Interest by Foreign Alliance, he married her to *Jeoffry*, surnamed *Plantagenet*, Earl of *Anjou*. And tho' this Marriage was not very pleasing to the Empress, or Nation in general; yet thereby the King secured his Interest with the Earl of *Anjou*, against the growing Power of his Nephew *William*; who by the *French* King's Assistance, had lately been put in Possession of the Earldom of *Flanders*; and being so nearly allied to the Crown, began to be formidable to King *Henry*; who being thus strengthened by this new Alliance, entred *France* by *Normandy*, as far as *Esparne*, where he continued for eight Days. This so terrified the King of *France*, that he withdrew his Assistance from young *William*. Then King *Henry* caused *Theodorick* Landgrave of *Alsatia*, to set up against *William*. Upon this many Towns revolted to the Landgrave, of which *Alost* was one:

A. D. 1127.

The Nation swear Fealty to *Matilda*.

Who is married to the Earl of *Anjou*.

A. D. 1128.

William, Son
of Duke Ro-
bert slain.
A.D. 1130.

This young *William* besieged, and had taken it, had he not been prevented by being wounded with a Lance in the Wrist, which immediately turning to a Gangrene, kill'd him within five Days Time. From this very Time we find no considerable Action of King *Henry*.

A.D. 1130.

In the thirtieth Year of his Reign he took another Journey into *Normandy*, and met Pope *Innocent* at *Chartres*, and acknowledged him for lawful Pope, though *Anacletus* was at that Time possessed of the See of *Rome*. And when he had stay'd about a Year in *Normandy*, he returned to *England*, and with him the Empress's Daughter. Not long after their Arrival, the King called a Parliament at *Northampton*, where they again took an Oath of Fealty to her; after which she was sent back to her Husband, and in less than two Years she bore him a Son, whom she named *Henry*. This so pleased the King, that he summoned the chief Men of the Kingdom, and again appointed her and her Heirs to be his Successors, causing them all to take an

A.D. 1133.

Oath to observe this Ordinance. In this Year, on the third of *August*, the King took Shipping to pass over into *Normandy*, on which Day there happened a very great Eclipse of the Sun, so that many Stars were seen; which Eclipse was followed with a terrible Earthquake two Days after. These were judg'd by some to be the fatal Presages of the Deaths of those two Princes, that not long after ensued. The first was

A.D. 1134.
Duke Robert
dies.

that of *Robert*, Duke of *Normandy*, the King's eldest Brother, who, at a very advanced Age, died in *Cardiffe* Castle, in *Wales*, after twenty six Years Imprisonment. He was buried in the Cathedral Church at *Glocester*, where his Tomb remains to this Day. In

A.D. 1135.
King Henry
dies.

the next Year he was followed by his Brother, King *Henry*, who took a Surfeit by eating of Lampreys, which occasioned his Death, after seven Days Illness; during which Time he declared, that he left all his Dominions to his Daughter *Matilda*, by a lawful and perpetual Succession. Then he commanded his Debts, and all Servants Wages to be paid: All Forfeitures and Fines to be remitted; all Exiles and seiz'd Estates to be restored. Thus having made his Will, and done all Things necessary, he departed this Life on the second Day of *December*, and in the seventy eighth Year of his Age, having reigned thirty five Years, three Months, and one Day. His Body was embalm'd, and brought

had he
Lance
ngrene,
s very
Henry.
nother
Char-
though
See of
a *Nor-*
e Em-
al, the
e they
ch she
a two
Henry.
chief
nd her
ake an
on the
s over
a very
were
errible
'd by
those
t was
eldest
Car-
mpri-
ch at
. In
King
preys,
nells;
l his
l and
Debts,
s and
es to
e all
cond
ar of
three
and
ught





KING STEPHEN

brought
buried
in Ben
the fir
felt an
except
by wh
and S
reign



BY
ter re
on wh
phew
solved
and se
to En
terbur
he wa
Death
liam C
the N
Oath,
their C
he wa
they f
none
Archb
that S
man.
were
had m
their C
seje

The Reign of King HENRY I.

153

brought over to *England*, where it was honourably buried on *Christmas* Day, in the Abby of *Reading* in *Berkshire*. This was the End of the Great *Henry* the first, under whose long Reign, the Nation scarcely felt any Foreign Invasion or Domestick Insurrection, except some inconsiderable Incurfions of the *Welsh*, by which Means *England* became a Place of Refuge and Sanctuary to the Afflicted and Distressed of foreign Nations.



The Reign of King STEPHEN.

BY the Death of King *Henry* the Male Issue of the *A. D. 1135:*
Norman Line became extinct, and only a Daughter remained, who was married to a *French* Man. Upon which *Stephen* Earl of *Bologne* and *Mortagne*, Nephew to the late King, by *Adela* his fourth Sister, resolved to take the Advantage of *Matilda's* Absence, and set up his own Title. Accordingly he hastned into *England*, where the Inhabitants of *Dover* and *Canterbury* fortified themselves against him; but at *London* he was received, and within thirty Days after *Henry's* Death, he was crowned King at *Westminster*, by *William Corbett*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. The chief of the Nobility and Bishops had engaged themselves by Oath, several Times repeated, to accept *Matilda* for their Queen, after King *Henry's* Decease: But when he was dead, and the Awe of his Power removed, they found out many Shifts to evade their Oaths, tho' none strong enough to save them from Perjury. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* alledged, that it was not fit that so many great Peers should be Subject to a Woman. *Roger* Bishop of *Salisbury* declared, that they were discharged from their Oaths, because the King had married his Daughter out of the Realm, without their Consent: But the most prevailing Argument to reject the Empress, and make *Stephen* King, was this,
That

That he had great Possessions both in *England* and *France*: That his eldest Brother was a Prince of great Power, being Earl of *Blois*, and his youngest Brother was Bishop of *Winchester*, and the Pope's Legate in *England*, and of very great Interest with the Nobility, who then were guided by the Clergy, who were almost to a Man for *Stephen*. Besides, *Stephen* himself was a very comely, and graceful Personage, of an affable and courteous Deportment, and of admirable Courage and Activity, which greatly recommended him to the Nobility, who thought it far better to prefer one to the Crown, whose Title was weak, because thereby they might better secure their ancient Liberty, than by one that should come to it by Hereditary Right. *Stephen* readily made them large Promises to restore to them all their antient Privileges, both in Church and State; and this he confirmed by solemn Oath, before the Archbishop, for his Performance. As soon as *Stephen* was in Possession of the Crown, and had secured his Uncle's Treasure, which amounted to an hundred thousand Pounds in ready Money, besides a great Quantity of Plate and Jewels, he called a Parliament at *Oxford*, where he sign'd and seal'd the Charter of Privileges he before promised; in the Preface of which he declares, that he obtained the Crown by Election of the Clergy and People of *England*; the Tenor of the rest was, that the Clergy should have all their former Liberties, and that the Laity should be freed from all their Tributes and other Grievances of which they complained; to confirm which, he took an Oath in the Presence of the whole Assembly: Whereupon the Bishops and Peers swore Fealty to him, on this Condition, that he faithfully observed the Tenor of this Charter.

Stephen now thinking himself secured of the Fidelity of his People, and that they were intirely in his Interest, gave Liberty to all Men, to build Castles upon their own Lands, to secure themselves and the Nation from any Invasion; for two Ways he expected Disturbance to his Government, viz. from *Scotland* and *France*. *Scotland* began the Quarrel, and first invaded *England*; for *David*, King of *Scotland*, thought himself obliged by the strongest Ties of Consanguinity and Oaths to endeavour to restore his Niece *Matilda* to her Right; he took *Carlisle* and *Newcastle*, and put Garrisons in them, against whom King *Stephen* marched with

a pow-

A Parliament call'd
at *Oxford*.

A. D. 1136.

Many Castles
erected.

a powerful Army. Concerning this War there are diverse Reports; yet all agree, that in a very little Time a Peace was concluded, by which *David* still enjoyed *Carlisle*, and his Son *Henry* the Earldom of *Huntington*, for which he did Homage to King *Stephen*. At his Return from the *North*, he found, that some of his Nobility had revolted from him, of whom *Baldwin de Redvers* was the chief, who fortified the City and Castle of *Exeter*: And the *Welsh* made great Devastations on the Borders of *England*. To quell these Many Troubles in *England*. Mischiefs, King *Stephen* marched with his Forces against *Exeter*, besieged the City, and reduced it; and banished *Baldwin* and his Family; and then, with the utmost Trouble and a great Loss, the *Welsh* were brought to Reason. But King *Stephen* falling dangerously sick, so that it was reported that he was dead, this occasioned new and great Troubles both Abroad and at Home; for by this his Friends were put into Confusion, and disheartned with Fears; and his Enemies were embolden'd and seiz'd on his Dominions, both in *England* and *Normandy*. *Hugh Biggott* fortified himself in the Castle of *Norwich*: The *Welsh* plundered the neighbouring *English*, and the Earl of *Anjou* took this Opportunity, and seiz'd on several Places and Parts of *Normandy*.

The King after some Time recovered, and soon convinced his Enemies, that he was alive; for he passed with his Forces into *Normandy*, and in a pitched Battle overcame the Earl of *Anjou*; upon which all the Towns and Castles were surrendred to him. An Alliance was established between *Stephen* and *Lewis* King of *France*: Upon which he created *Eustace* his eldest Son, Duke of *Normandy*, and ordered him to do Homage to the *French* King. Earl *Theobald* compounded the Matter, and renounced all Claim for a Pension of 2000 Marks per Annum, and Earl *Geoffrey*, for a Pension of 5000 Marks per Annum, suffered *Stephen* quietly to enjoy the Crown. The Joy that is usual on such Occasions was much allay'd by the News that was brought him, that *England* was in a Tumult; and that many Peers, taking the Advantage of his Absence, were up in Arms against him. As soon as he received this melancholy Advice, tho' in the midst of the Winter, he passed over into *England*, and besieged and took the Castle of *Bedford*. Then march-
A.D. 1137.
Stephen goes
into Nor-
mandy.

Is successful;

ed with all Expedition into *Scotland*, against *David*, who had enter'd *Northumberland*, and committed much Barbarity; which King *Stephen* had fully reveng'd, had he not been hastily recall'd back into *England*, by a very great Defection of the Nobility. The chief of their Party was *Robert* Earl of *Glocester*, now chief Counsellor to the Empress *Matilda*, who sent threatening Messages to King *Stephen*, charging him with the Breach of his Oath to his Sovereign Lady *Matilda*, and with drawing him and others into the like Perjury and Treason. Upon which he declar'd *Stephen* an open Enemy to the State; and himself an open Enemy to *Stephen*. Many Noblemen join'd *Robert*, of whom *Milo* the King's High Constable was one. *Robert* surpris'd the Castle of *Bristol*, and secur'd that of *Slede*, and his Associates did the like in many other Places; for *William Talbot* garison'd the Castle of *Hereford*, *William Lovel* that of *Carie*, *Paganel* the Castle of *Ludlow*, *William de Mount* that of *Dunster*, *Robert de Nichol* the Castle of *Warham* and many others. Thus these Forts that were at first erected by the King's Permission for the Defence of the Crown were now Harbours for his rebellious Subjects. And to make their Designs the more feasible, they sent for the Empress *Matilda* to come into *England*; declaring that within five Months she should be put in Possession of the Crown according to their Oaths. But *Stephen* made Head against these Rebels, and as soon as he took any Castle from them he order'd it to be immediately demolished, and thus he proceeded with all Vigor, until he had taken from the discontented Barons, the Castles of *Hereford*, *Glocester*, *Webley*, *Bristol*, *Dudley*, and *Shrewsbury*, by which the Power of Earl *Robert* was so much weaken'd that he was oblig'd to fly into *France* to the Empress his Sister.

Matilda sent for.

The Scots are worsted.

In the mean Time *Thurstan*, the Archbishop of *York*, whom the King had made Lieutenant in the North, to manage the War with *David* the King of the *Scots*, was no less successful against the *Scots*; for in a pitch'd Battle *David's* Army was routed by the *English*, and he oblig'd to quit the Field. King *Stephen* having happily put an End to his Domestick Troubles, march'd to the North, to prosecute the War which *Thurstan* had so successfully begun. And first taking the Castle of *Leids*, he marched into *Scotland* with all his Force, where in

a short Time a Peace was concluded between the two Kings: And King *Stephen* brought with him into *England* the valiant Prince *Henry*, who at the Siege of *Ludlow-Castle*, was pluck'd from his Horse with an Iron Grapple; but *Stephen* recover'd him and won the Castle. And now tho' King *Stephen* seem'd well establish'd in his Kingdom, yet by the Report of the Emperors his Competitor being ready to come into, *England* in Person, his Jealousie occasion'd him to commit an Error; and this was an impolitick and unseasonable Breach between him and those Bishops, who had set the Crown upon his Head. Many of them having built strong Castles, were envied by the Earls and Barons, who thereby infus'd such jealous Thoughts into the King, that he judg'd himself unsafe till he had strip'd them of their Power and Grandeur. For which he soon found a plausible Pretence; for at a grand Council held at *Oxford*, the Servants of the Bishop of *Salisbury* had a Contest with those of *Alan*, Earl of *Bretagne*, in which Squabble many were wounded, and one Knight kill'd. Upon which the King commanded the Bishops to be conven'd, that they might satisfy the Court for their Servants Breach of the Peace; and the Satisfaction requir'd was no less than the delivering up their Castles into his Hands, as a Security for their future Fidelity. This they refus'd, upon which the King commanded them to be kept close Prisoners; only *Nigel* Bishop of *Ely* escap'd and fled to the Castle of the *Devises*, which the King's Forces besiege, and in three Days Time take it. Upon which the Castles of *Sherburn*, *Salisbury* and *Malmesbury* surrendred upon the first Summons. In the Castles of the *Devises* and *Sherburn*, the King found vast Sums of ready Money; and the Bishop of *Lincoln* surrendred *Sleaford-Castle* into the King's Hands. This Act of the King against the Church occasion'd great Debates. *Hugh*, Archbishop of *Roven*, was of Opinion that Bishops might justly be depriv'd of their Castles; because they ought to be Ministers of Peace, and not Creators of such Places as were Sanctuaries for their disloyal Practices. The King's Brother, the Bishop of *Winchester*, and now the Pope's Legate, on the contrary affirm'd, that if Bishops offend, they were not to be tried in the King's Court, but in a publick Synod; and immediately summon'd the King his Brother to appear

A Peace concluded.

A. D. 1132.

The King falls out with the Bishops.

He seizes their Castles and Treasure.

Upon which
a Synod is
call'd.

But conclude
on nothing.

Matilda
comes into
England

A. D. 1140.

appear in the Council he intended to hold at *Winchester*, on the 29th Day of *August*, at which appear'd most of the Bishops of *England*, with *Theobald* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; where the Legate produc'd the Pope's Commission, and then aggravated the King's Crime in seizing the Bishops: But *Alderic de Ver*, a great Lawyer, urged many Things against the Bishops, as being Movers of Sedition, and Corresponders with the King's Enemies; and that they were seiz'd not as Bishops, but as the King's Servants. The Bishop of *Salisbury* denied that he was the King's Servant. After many Allegations on both Sides, at the King's Request the Cause was adjourn'd to the next Day, and to the next after that; and the Bishops finding that the King would not abide by the Censure of the Canon, they thought it best to forbear pronouncing it: First, because it would be a rash Thing to excommunicate their Prince without the Knowledge of the Pope; Secondly and principally, because they found that the Soldiers were ready to revenge it; upon which, the Synod was dissolv'd without coming to any Determination in this Affair. However, these Divisions between the King and the Bishops occasioned many to rebel, and encouraged the Empress to come over in Person; who with her Brother *Robert* landed at *Arundel* in *September*, having only one hundred and forty Men with them. *Adeliza*, the Queen Dowager, received 'em kindly, to whose Husband the Castle belong'd. After a short Refreshment, the Earl, with only twelve Men pass'd thro' the Country to *Bristol*; at which Time King *Stephen* was besieging of *Marlburgh* Castle; but hearing of *Matilda's* Arrival, he marched towards *Arundel*, upon whose Approach Queen *Adeliza* fearing her Castle should be taken, and she made a Prisoner, by a Message to the King, declar'd, that she was not the Occasion of the Empress's Landing; but she entertain'd them only as her near Relations and antient Acquaintance; upon which Declaration the King caus'd the Empress, his Rival, to be honourably conducted to *Bristol*; where she remained for the Space of two Months, and then removed to *Glocester*; so that all those Parts, even to the Borders of *Wales* submitted to the Empress before the End of this Year.

And now began all the Miseries of a Civil War, and we find nothing but the taking and retaking of Towns, and Castles, plundering and burning of Houses and

chester,
most of
shop of
Pope's
crime in
lawyer,
g Mo-
King's
ps, but
denied
gations
was ad-
and the
by the
ear pro-
ing to
edge of
found
which,
y De-
visions
any to
ver in
Arun-
l forty
er, re-
le be-
h on-
tol; at
lburgh
arched
Adeli-
made a
at she
; but
and an-
King
con-
face of
o that
mitted

War,
ng of
ouses
and



KING HENRY THE I.ST



and C
Defo
In
of a
tilda,
held
Tow
Provi
bury.
indus
Nobl
them
rende
mean
Pani
the T
ster,
King
of he
with
marc
and
had f
King
tion,
Rann
ther,
coun
quain
prefs
this
Castl
and
ance
nulp
their
Order
Battle
cess,
then
King
then t
ed bo
Succ
of his

and Churches, and all the Marks of Confusion and Desolation.

In the mean Time *Stephen* performed all the Parts of a vigilant Commander, and closely besieged *Mattilda*, and her Brother in *Wallingford* Castle, which held out to Admiration. *Stephen* erected a remarkable Tower of Wood, which he furnished with Men and Provisions, and then removed to the Siege of *Malmesbury*. His Brother, Bishop of *Winchester*, was equally industrious in the King's Behalf; for inviting several Noblemen to his Palace at *Winchester*, he detained them Prisoners, until he had compelled them to surrender their Forts and Castles to the King. In the mean Time, *Robert* took and plundred *Worcester*; *Ralph Paniel*, in Favour of the Empress, took, and burnt, the Town of *Nottingham*; and *Ranulph*, Earl of *Chester*, joined with *Robert*, which much perplexed the King's Affairs. The Empress, for the better Security of her Person, retired to *Lincoln*, and stored that City with all Necessaries for a long Continuance. *Stephen* marched immediately against that City, and besieged it; and soon made himself Master of it; but the Empress had found Means to escape privately. As soon as the King had reduced the Country to a peaceable Condition, he left that Place. Shortly after his Departure, *Ranulph*, Earl of *Chester*, with his Countess and Brother, came to *Lincoln* to keep their *Christmas*, an Account of which the Citizens sent to the King, to acquaint him, that now he had a fair Opportunity to suppress both these Brothers. The King having received this Advice, marched directly thither, and besieged the Castle. The Earl made his Escape, leaving his Wife and Brother behind; and begged the Empress's Assistance to rescue them. Upon this Earl *Robert* and *Ranulph* joined all their Forces, and marched to relieve their Friends; and on *Candlemas* Day they appeared in Order of Battle near the King's Camp. A dreadful Battle ensued, and for some Time with doubtful Success, till, in a short Time, the King's Cavalry fled; then the Earl of *Chester* fell in with his Horse on the King's Foot, and soon put them into Disorder, and then to Flight; who left the King almost alone, inragged both at his Friends Cowardice, and his Enemies Success. The Earl of *Glocester* preserved the Person of his Royal Prisoner from all Violence, and sent him

A. D. 1141.

A great Battle fought at *Lincoln*.

The King taken Prisoner.

to

to the Empress at *Glocester*: Thence he was removed to *Bristol*, where, for a while, he was kept in honourable Custody; but afterwards he was ingloriously fettered with Irons.

The Empress governs.

The Empress, having secured the King's Person, triumphed in her Fortune, and as sole Monarch of the Nation, commanded in all Affairs, and disposed of all Dignities and Offices, according to her own Will and Pleasure. The States-Men resolved to run with the Stream, their Faith turning with their Fortunes, abandoned *Stephen*, and paid their Allegiance to the Empress: The *Kentish* Men, to their eternal Honour, only excepted, where *Stephen's* Queen, *Matilda*, and *William de Ypres*, maintained his Cause to the utmost of their Power. Nor was King *Stephen* deserted only in *England*, but also *Normandy* cast off his Subjection; for *Geoffry of Anjou*, Husband to the Empress, induced the *Normans* to his Party; and *David* King of *Scotland*, seized upon the County of *Northumberland*. During these Transactions, the Empress to establish her Power, repaired to *Winchester*, where she swore to the Bishop, the King's Brother, that if he, and the Clergy would receive her as their lawful Queen, he, the Bishop, should order and direct all the great Affairs of the Nation, and dispose of all Bishopricks and Abbies. This was also promised by the Earl of *Glocester*, and several of the Nobility. This was an Argument sufficient to prevail on the Bishop to renounce his Brother, and accept and acknowledge the Empress Queen of *England*. And the next Day, in the Presence of the Empress, many Bishops, Abbots, Barons and Knights, the Legate cursed those that were against her, and blessed all that were on her Side; absolving the obedient, and excommunicating the rest. From *Winchester* she went to *Wilton*, and was recognised by *Theobald*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. Shortly after this holy Legate was pleased to summon a general Council of the Clergy, at *Winchester*, where in a publick Speech he declared, "That his Brother was only
" admitted to the Throne for the Peace of the Na-
" tion, until the Empress could conveniently come in-
" to *England*; That under his Administration, the
" Church was in great Danger; That the Right of
" electing and ordaining Kings was intirely in the
" Power of the Priests; That he therefore, by his Lega-

" time

" time A
" that th
" the D
" Henry
" to settl
Citizens
to the Leg
came on
be deliver
Chaplain
the Legat
municate
the Queen
" the Bif
" store h
" jects ha
the Legat
excommu
three Day
From
Robert D
ford, whi
ty, and t
to St. All
the City,
staid som
about the
now all
by the E
Legate's,
joy his F
Londoner
her Fath
Force. A
in an un
nicious;
that their
him to f
loyal Ke
too haug
raged at
Empress
she hearin
and retir
disconten
VOL.

" fine Authority, had called together that Assembly; and
 " that they had elected *Matilda* Queen of *England*,
 " the Daughter of the peaceable and glorious King
 " *Henry*, to whom they had sworn, during his Life,
 " to settle her in the Succession." The next Day the
 Citizens of *London* came to the Council, in Obedience
 to the Legate's Summons, where they declared, that they
 came only to petition, that their Lord the King might
 be delivered out of Prison. To second this Petition, a
 Chaplain of King *Stephen's* Queen offered a Letter to
 the Legate from her, which, because he refused to com-
 municate to the Assembly, he read it himself, in which
 the Queen earnestly begged of the Clergy, " particularly
 " the Bishop of *Winchester*, her Lord's Brother, to re-
 " store him to the Kingdom, whom his wicked Sub-
 " jects had cast into Prison." To both which Petitions
 the Legate made no direct Answer, but proceeded to
 excommunicate many of the King's Party; and so after
 three Days Session only, the Council was dissolved.

From *Wilton* the Empress went to *Reading*, where
Robert D' Oyly came and offered to her the Castle of *Ox-*
ford, which she received with the Homage of that Ci-
 ty, and the Country round about. Thence she went
 to *St. Albans*, where many *Londoners* came to offer her
 the City, where she repaired, and at *Westminster* she
 staid some Days, to give some Directions and Orders
 about the State and Affairs of the Nation. And
 now all Petitions in Favour of *Stephen* were rejected
 by the Empress with great Haughtiness, and even the
 Legate's, in Favour of Prince *Eustace*, that he might en-
 joy his Father's Honours and Lands in *Normandy*. The
Londoners desired her to mitigate the over-hard Laws of
 her Father, and put those of King *Edward* in full
 Force. All these she absolutely denied, which, she being
 in an unsettled State, prov'd very impolitick and per-
 nicious; for first the Queen sent to her Son *Eustace*,
 that their Suits must be obtained only by War, desiring
 him to strengthen his Party by the Assistance of the
 loyal *Kentish* Men: The Bishop of *Winchester* was
 too haughty to bear a Refusal; the *Londoners*, en-
 raged at their late Repulses, endeavoured to make the
 Empress their Prisoner, and so redeem *Stephen*; but
 she hearing of their Design, fled secretly in the Night,
 and retired to *Oxford*. Several of the Nobility were
 discontented at their being so little taken notice of by

The Em-
 press comes
 to *London*.

She flies
 from thence.

the Empress. Thus the Affections of all, who just before esteemed her as Fortune's Darling, and their own only Rising-Sun, began to cool towards her. The Bishop absolved all whom before he had excommunicated, and turned his former Curses into Blessings; and accused the Empress of Perjury. Then he stored the Castles of *Waltham*, *Fernham*, and *Winchester* with Men and Ammunition, for King *Stephen's* Use, and earnestly solicited the discontented *Londoners* in his Favour. These Things obliged the Empress to hasten to *Glocester*, to confer with her great Friend *Milo*, whom she created Earl of *Hereford*. She returned to *Oxford*, and having got together what Forces she could, she marched directly to *Winchester*, accompanied with her Uncle *David*, King of *Scotland*, her Brother *Robert*, and many of the Nobility: when she came to the City, she sent for the Bishop to come to her with all Speed; but he thinking it not safe, returned an equivocal Answer, that he would prepare himself, as if he designed to follow them; but he got out of the City and prepared her Ruin; for with the Assistance of the Queen *Matilda*, and her Son *Eustace*, the *Kentish* Men, the *Londoners*, and *William de Ypres*, he made good his Party; himself and Friends remained in the City, while the Empress and her Nobility defended themselves in the Castle. Shortly after, to prevent the Empress's Friends in the City from doing her any Service, he commanded the City to be set on fire, by which the great Nunnery, the Convent of *St. Grimbald*, above twenty Churches, and the greatest Part of the City was consumed to Ashes. The Empress, after she had been besieged seven Weeks, desired to remove her Quarters for Fear of falling into her Enemies Hands; and with a great deal of Difficulty she marched out with her Brother *Reginald*, and many other Friends, besides Earl *Robert*, who brought up the Rear with two hundred stout Fellows. The King's Forces pursued them, slew many of them, and took others Prisoners; but she by good Fortune escaped to the Castle of *Lutgershat*, and from thence to the *Devises*, where finding she was still in Danger, she was obliged to be carried from thence to *Glocester*, in a Coffin like a dead Corpse: But Earl *Robert*, while he was more careful of her Security than his own, was taken Prisoner, and carried back to *Winchester*; and the Bishop presented him to Queen *Matilda*,

The Empress is besieged at *Winchester*.

Earl *Robert* taken Prisoner.

Matilda, who
Ypres, and
in the
King.
that he
ed a Syn
Time w
hearing
Usage,
Proceed
press by
ready to
the Emp
and the P
Power to
a Lay M
longer be
boldly fo
Empress,
and Inter
into Eng
by his A
more, he
gate, that
pose.

Robert,
solicit her
his Son *H
land*. Th
fied her
for two M
gem coul
Practice;
Surrender
tremity, o
for clothi
nen Garm
stern Gate
over, she r
Vallies fo
took Hor
*Wallingfor
Henry*, wi
bam Castle
Siege of *O*

Milda, who committed him to the Custody of *William de Ypres*, and for Security he was sent to *Rochester*, who in the Space of six Months was exchanged for the King. And not long after the Bishop of *Winchester*, that he might compleat the Empress's Ruin, summoned a Synod to meet at *Westminster*; where after some Time was spent in reading the Pope's Letters, and hearing King *Stephen's* Complaints concerning his hard Usage, the good Legate endeavoured to justify his own Proceedings; alledging, that he had received the Empress by Compulsion, not Choice; and that now he was ready to excommunicate all who favour'd the Cause of the Empress: and that he now, in the Behalf of God and the Pope, commanded all to assist with their whole Power to re-establish King *Stephen*. At the same Time a Lay Messenger from the Empress, who could no longer bear the Discourse of this prevaricating Prelate, boldly forbid him by the Fealty he had sworn to the Empress, to act any Thing contrary to her Honour and Interest; adding, That by his Invitation she came into *England*, and that her imprisoning the King was by his Advice and Approbation. All this, and much more, he urged with great Sharpness against the Legate, that formal Hypocrite, but to no manner of purpose.

And exchanged for the King.

The Legate's Hypocrisy.

Robert, the following Year, went into *Normandy* to solicit her Husband *Geoffrey* for her Assistance: He sent his Son *Henry* and a small Force with *Robert* into *England*. The Empress in his Absence had strongly fortified her self in *Oxford*: *Stephen* closely besieged her for two Months, so that whatever Strength or Stratagem could perform on either Side, was there put in Practice; till at Length Want made them think of a Surrender. The Empress being reduced to this Extremity, once more undertook a dangerous Attempt; for clothing her self and a select Company in white Linen Garments, she issued secretly by Night out of a Postern Gate, and having passed the River, then frozen over, she ran on Foot through Ice, Snow, Ditches and Vallies for five Miles, as far as *Abington*, and there took Horse, and the same Night got to the Castle of *Wallingford*. In the mean Time Earl *Robert* and Prince *Henry*, with their Forces, had lain Siege and taken *Warham* Castle, with Design to divert the King from the Siege of *Oxford*; but hearing of the Empress's strange

The Empress's strange escape.

Ordinance in
Favour of the
Clergy.

The Em-
press leaves
England.
1147.

Prince Hen-
ry invades
England.

1151.

Escape, he hastened to her, with her Son *Henry*, whose Sight for a Time made her forget the many Troubles and Difficulties she had endur'd. The next Year the Legate, Bishop of *Winchester*, held a Synod in *London* to secure the Church, at which the King was present; in which it was ordain'd, "That whosoever laid violent Hands upon any one in holy Orders, should not be absolved but by the Pope himself, and that, only in his Presence." This was a most seasonable Ordinance for the Clergy; for by this they were secure, while the rest of the Nation were murdering of each other in a most dreadful Manner; for a dismal civil War was furiously carried on in most Parts of the Nation, which continued for several Years. During which Time several Towns and Castles were surrendered, taken and retaken on both Sides; but to the most Advantage on *Stephen's*; for the Empress having lost her Generals, the two famous Earls, *Robert of Gloucester*, and *Milo of Hereford*, left *England*, and retir'd to *Normandy* to her Husband, with whom she continued till his Death.

Upon the Departure of the Empress, some of the Barons swore Allegiance to King *Stephen's* Son *Eustace*. The King went to *Lincoln*, and for a while kept his Court there, and to shew his Grandeur, as well as Courage, he wore his Crown in that City, which no King before him durst do, being deterred by a certain superstitious Prophecy foretelling Death, or some extraordinary Misfortune to any Prince who attempted it. King *Stephen* now enjoying all the Quiet and Pleasure of a well-secured Crown, was interrupted in his Satisfaction, by Prince *Henry*, who with a select Army came over into *England*, to make one Attempt more for a Crown; and was immediately joined by the discontented Earl of *Chester*, *Roger* Son of the deceased *Milo*, and by many others. *Henry* marched into the North to meet his Cousin, *David* King of *Scotland*; who received him honourably, and knighted him. He passed into *Normandy* to regulate some Affairs, where he staid not long before his Father *Geoffry* died; and left him in Possession both of the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and the Earldom of *Anjou*: And to add to his growing Greatness, in the eighteenth Year of his Age, he married the famed *Eleanor*, Dutchess of *Guienne* and *Aquitain*, who had been lately divorced from *Lewis* King of *France*, after she had born him two Daughters.

Lewis,

Lewis, f
highly in
fearing
to dimi
broad, a
Successio
he endea
lish Diad
cil at Lo
of Cante
remptori
the Bisho
ter made
King sei
Stephen
Crown b
who had
and took
and inve
all Com
against it
broad, re
Many of
above th
lieve *Wa*
King's F
those wh
their Rel
by the In
the King
which th
River of
gether fro
soon agr
of Princ
shew his
of his Ag
Matilda.
King *Ste*
Warwick
fore Aff
and this
and *Hen*
was sum
was con

Lewis, for Fear of Male Issue by this Marriage, was highly incensed with Duke *Henry*; and *Stephen* also fearing his Power, both of them sought all Methods to diminish it. *Lewis* and *Eustace* opposed him abroad, and *Stephen* in *England*; where to secure the Succession, and to cut off all Hopes from Prince *Henry*, he endeavour'd to invest Prince *Eustace* with the English Diadem. To effect which, he call'd a grand Council at *London*, and commanded *Theobald* the Archbishop of *Canterbury* to crown his Son *Eustace*, which he peremptorily refus'd. The King enrag'd at this, shut up all the Bishops, with the Primate, in one House, but the latter made his Escape, and fled into *Normandy*. The King seiz'd upon all his Lands and Possessions. King *Stephen* now resolved to make good his Title to the Crown by Force; which was questioned by the Church, who had before establish'd it. Accordingly he besieg'd and took the Castle of *Newberry*, fortified *Malmsbury*, and invested the Castle of *Wallingford*; and to prevent all Communication, he erected the Castle of *Cranmerse* against it. But Duke *Henry* having quieted Matters abroad, return'd to *England* with a considerable Force. Many of the Nobility joined him, and deliver'd to him above thirty strong Castles. Then they hastened to relieve *Wallingford*, where they laid close Siege to the King's Forces; and reduc'd them to as great Straits as those who were within the Town. King *Stephen* came to their Relief: But as both Armies were ready to engage, by the Importunities of some great Men, they persuaded the King to come to a Parly with the Duke. Upon which they had an Interview near *Wallingford*, where the River of *Thames* being narrow, they could discourse together from the opposite Banks. A Cessation of Arms was soon agreed on, which was very much to the Prejudice of Prince *Eustace* the King's Son; but before he could shew his just Resentments, he died in the eighteenth Year of his Age, and was buried at *Feversham* by his Mother *Matilda*. Upon the Expiration of the aforesaid Truce, King *Stephen* lost many Castles; as *Bertwell*, *Reading*, *Warwick*, *Stamford*, and others. The King, under these sore Afflictions, began to be more inclined to Peace; and this Work was promoted by Archbishop *Theobald*, and *Henry* of *Winchester*: Upon which a grand Council was summoned to meet at *Winchester*, where a Peace was concluded on these Conditions. 1. That *Stephen*, King concludes a Peace with *Henry*.

during his Life, should be King of *England*. 2. Upon his Decease, *Henry* should succeed him as lawful Heir, 3. That all Persons on both Sides should enjoy their Estates, Rights and Titles. 4. That Crown Lands should be resumed, and Possessions restored. 5. That all the Castles built by *Stephen's* Permission, being 1117, should be demolished. *William*, *Stephen's* second Son, was only to enjoy his Father's Possessions, which he had before he was King. At which he was so enraged, that he entred into a Conspiracy against the Life of Duke *Henry*, which was going to be put in Execution, when *William's* Horse threw him, and broke his Leg, and thus for Want of a Leader the Design fail'd. However it occasion'd the Duke to take his Leave of the King, and pass into *Normandy*, where after a Year's Absence, he was joyfully receiv'd by his Mother, Wife, and all his Subjects.

King *Stephen* now had a fair Prospect of reaping all the Sweets of a lasting Peace; accordingly he call'd a Parliament to consult for the publick Good; and resolves to make a Progress into many Parts of the Kingdom, to reform the Mischiefs that the Sword had brought; but was prevented from compleating those laudable Designs; for going to meet the Earl of *Flanders* at *Dover*, he fell sick there, and on the 25th Day of *October* died, after a calamitous Reign of eighteen Years, nine Months, and seventeen Days, in the fiftieth Year of his Age, and was buried by his Wife and Son in the Abbey-Church, which himself had founded, at *Fever-sham*.



on
ir,
ir
ds
all
7,
n,
he
ed,
of
n,
eg,
w-
he
b-
fe,

all
a
re-
g-
nt;
De-
Do-
to-
rs,
ear
the
er-



he



KING HENRY THE II^D

HENRY
 En
 mitted to
 sition on
Matilda,
 the Sister
 Line of
 his Arriv
 six Wee
 bishop of
 in the 2
Henry
 make his
 of: He t
 Actions,
 of his S
 This wa
 who was
 Wife, a
 sing him
 which ha
 several
 and Esta
 ving pro
 rity, tha
 move ev
 an arbit
 est and g
 inform h
 his Moth
 Age, wa
 now by
 liament a
 Fealty o
 the Succ
 confirm'



The Reign of King HENRY II.

HENRY, surnamed *Plantagenet*, tho' he was out of *A. D. 1154.*
England, and a *Frenchman* by Birth, yet was admitted to the Crown of *England* without any Opposition or Capitulation. He was Son of the Empress *Matilda*, who was Grand-Daughter to Queen *Margaret*, the Sister of *Edgar Etheling*; so that in him the Royal Line of the Old *English Saxons* was restored. Soon after his Arrival, having been detain'd by contrary Winds for six Weeks together, he was crown'd by *Theobald Arch-* Hen. II.
bishop of Canterbury at Westminster, Decemb. 20. 1154, crown'd.
 in the 23^d Year of his Age.

Henry being thus settled on the Throne, resolves to make himself as easy as possible in the Enjoyment thereof: He therefore began his Reign with all such publick Actions, as he knew would get and increase the Love of his Subjects, the best Foundation of Government. This was a prudent Provision against the King of *France*, who was much displeased with *Henry*, for marrying his Wife, and who would take all Opportunities of opposing him. He began with demolishing several Castles, which had been the Nests of Rebellion, and resumed several others to his own Use; and also such Lands and Estates as had been alienated from the Crown. Having proceeded thus far by Virtue of his Regal Authority, that he might preserve good Government, and remove even the very Suspicion of his Design to act in an arbitrary Manner, he chose a Council out of the wis- He chooseth a
 est and gravest Men of his Kingdom, who could best Council.
 inform him of the State of the Nation. The Empress, 1155.
 his Mother, one of the most experienc'd Ladies of the Age, was the chief of his Cabinet-Council. The King now by the Advice of this Council assembled a Par- And calls
 liament at *Wallingford*; where, after having receiv'd the Parliament
 Fealty of the whole Nation, who likewise swore to the Succession of his two Sons *William* and *Henry*, he confirm'd the Laws of *St. Edward*, and the antient

Customs of the Kingdom, and granted a Charter of Liberties. But what pleas'd the People most, was an Act to banish and expel Strangers, especially *Flemings* and *Picards*, whom King *Stephen* had brought in, and who were very insolent and burdensom to the Nation.

1156. King *Henry* having thus happily settled the Affairs of *England*, went into *France* to King *Lewis*, and did Homage to him for *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, *Anjou*, *Main*, and *Tourain*; which were partly his own Patrimony, and partly the Inheritance of *Eleanor* his Queen. But he unjustly dispossest his Brother *Geoffry* of all his Territories, and oblig'd him to accept of an Annuity of a thousand Pounds *English* Money, and two thousand Pounds *Anjouvin* Money; which in the third Year was ended by the Death of *Geoffry*. Then King *Henry* return'd to *England*, and at *Chester* he contracts a Friendship with *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*; upon which *Malcolm* surrendred the City of *Carlisle*, *Newcastle* upon *Tine*, and that of *Bamborough*, and King *Henry* restored to him the Earldom of *Huntington* in *England*.

His Friend-
ship with the
King of Scots.

Yet notwithstanding the King's Growth in Strength and Power, the *Welsh* made frequent Incursions into *England*. The King march'd against them with a powerful Army, and after much Difficulty reduc'd them. And then to prevent as much as possible all farther Attempts, the King cut down their Woods, and made open Ways into their Country; and having receiv'd the Fealty of their Great Men, he return'd in Triumph to *England*.

1158.
The King
crown'd a-
gain at *Lin-*
coln.

And at *Wor-*
cester.

1159.

Soon after this Success, the King's Satisfaction was increas'd by the Birth of his third Son, *Richard*, in his Palace at *Oxford*. The King spent the Beginning of this Year in a Progress thro' *England*, and was again crown'd at *Wickford*, without the Walls of *Lincoln*. In the following Year he and his Queen were again crown'd at *Worcester* upon *Easter Sunday*, and there devoutly offer'd up their Crowns at the high Altar, vowing never to wear them after, which they punctually observed.

King *Henry* now pass'd a second Time into *Normandy*, where for three or four Years, several Matters of Importance occur'd; as his seizing the City of *Nantes*, and a great Part of *Bretagne*; his Journey with *Eleanor* his Queen to visit King *Lewis*; his unsuccessful Siege of *Tholouse*; his Marriage of his Son *Henry* with

with *Ma-*
dren, and
Account
ander, w
walk'd b
After wh
to the *Sa*
King
and *Har*
nour'd a
on of the
been per
Becket,
advanc'd
and *Pont*
the man
then gro
had com
Reign;
King, by
to find th
Remedy
straint, b
and the c
for the
mous *Co*
expected
bery, *M*
his *Tem*
declar'd,
were on
of their
do with
at once
King wa
Assembl
ments a
sion to e
pal and
Grandfa
ces whic
the Pope
cipally th
Rome, fo
the King

with *Margaret* the French King's Daughter, both Children, and *Lewis's* making War with him upon that Account, and their being reconciled by Pope *Alexander*, who was so honour'd by them, that they both walk'd by his Horse's Side as Yeomen of the Stirrup. After which he return'd to *England* with Honour, and to the Satisfaction of all his People.

King *Henry* now might have enjoy'd all the Calm and Happiness of a well-established Peace, being honour'd and fear'd abroad, and having the entire Affection of the best Part of his Subjects at home, had he not been perplexed by a Contest between him and *Thomas Becket*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, whom the King had advanc'd from a low Condition, concerning the Regal and Pontifical Authority. It first began on Account of the many Corruptions of the Churchmen, which were then grown to a dangerous Height: For the Clergy had committed above a hundred Murders in this very Reign; of which great Complaint was made to the King, by the suffering Laity. The King was provok'd to find that his good Subjects were thus injur'd, without Remedy, by the Clergy, who assaulted them without Restraint, because they were screen'd by the Archbishop and the other Prelates, from all Manner of Punishments, for the most enormous Crimes. The Sum of this famous Contest is thus deliver'd by *Hoveden*: The King expected that such of the Clergy as were taken in Robbery, Murder, Felony, or the like, should be try'd in his Temporal Courts, as Laymen were: But *Becket* declar'd, that all Clergymen guilty of such Crimes, were only to be try'd in the Spiritual Courts, by Men of their own Order; and that the King had nothing to do with Spiritual Men. Thus *Becket* depriv'd the King at once of one half of his Sovereignty; at which the King was very much displeas'd; and therefore at an Assembly at *Westminster* the King shew'd his Resentments against *Becket's* Behaviour; and took an Occasion to establish several Articles, to curtail both the Papal and Ecclesiastical Authority, which he call'd his Grandfather's Customs. The Points in those Ordinances which *Becket* condemn'd, and communicated to the Pope, and his own Suffragan Bishops, were principally these; 1. That none should appeal to the See of *Rome*, for any Cause whatsoever, without License from the King. 2. That no Bishop should go to the Pope, tho'

1163.
His Contest
with *Becket*,
Archbishop
of *Canterbury*

tho' summon'd by him, without the King's License. 3. That none of the King's Officers should be excommunicated without License from the King. 4. That the Clergy should be try'd for their Crimes before secular Judges. 5. That the Laity should hold Pleas of Churches and Tithes, &c. To which *Becket* and all the Bishops answer'd, that they were willing to consent, saving their Order and the Rights of the Church. The King being displeas'd with this Answer, remov'd suddenly to *Woodstock*. The Bishops followed, and with much Difficulty prevailed with *Becket* to assent to these Ordinances without that saving Clause.

A. D. 1164.
A Parliament held at
Clarendon.

The King having gain'd this main Point; resolv'd to have all their Consents ratified in Parliament; accordingly one was called at *Clarendon* in *Wiltshire*, where he propos'd these and other Laws, now call'd, *The Constitution of Clarendon*, and expected the Bishops and Barons to recognize them as the antient Rights of the Crown. This *Becket* at first absolutely refus'd, but at length was persuad'd to it; and so *Becket* and all the Bishops consented to these Laws, and recognis'd them under their Seals; and the King sent them afterwards to the Pope to be confirm'd; who not only reject'd them, but utterly condemn'd them. *Becket*, as soon as he heard this, began to cool, repented of this Act, and suspended himself from all Office, until by Confession and Penance he had obtained the Pope's Absolution for this almost unpardonable Crime. The Pope sent over *Botred*, Archbishop of *Roven*, to compose this Difference between the King and the Church. The King was very willing, provided his Holiness would first confirm his Laws by his Bull, and request'd, that *Roger*, Archbishop of *York*, might be constituted his Legate throughout *England*. The Pope knowing that *Becket's* Cause was his Cause, would not desert so faithful a Servant; nevertheless, to gratify the King, he granted a Bull with slight Authority, which the King sent back with Contempt.

The Pope
espouses
Becket's
Cause.

The King
proceeds a-
gainst *Becket*.

The King perceiving that no moderate Methods would have any Influence on this obstinate Prelate, caus'd him to be call'd to an Account for every Thing the Law would take hold of. First, He was condemn'd in Damages for a Manor claimed by *John de Marshal*. Next he was prosecuted at the King's Suit for five hundred Marks, which had been lent him; and

and for
Security
rick of
during
ment all
Pounds
his Acq
Layman
fore the
shops co
Use, an
claimed
standing
caused t
against
with his
the King
dented
told him
pon of t
only wo
it to Hel
to sit in
which v
incompe
after wh
King
not to c
notwiths
Pope in
complie
sy to pro
for the P
supported
for other
no Bisho
vereign's
Power, a
The K
Pope inf
resented
terdiction
be execut
go out o
body shou

and for the like Sum he had of a Jew upon the King's Security: Then for all the Profits of the Archbishoprick of *York*, and other Bishopricks and Abbies vacant, during the Time of his Chancellorship. This Parliament also called him to an Account for thirty thousand Pounds he had formerly in his Hands. *Becket* pleads his Acquittance, and absolutely refused to answer as a Layman. For this Refusal, and denying to come before the King, when commanded, the Peers and Bishops condemned all his moveable Goods to the King's Use, and also adjudged him guilty of Perjury, and disclaimed all future Obedience to him. Yet notwithstanding this, the next Day *Becket* in his Pontificalibus caused to be sung before him, *The Princes sit and speak against me, and the Ungodly persecute me*; and then with his Cross in his Hand he impudently entered into the King's Presence; for which audacious and unprecedented Action, the Archbishop of *York* reproved him, and told him, that the King carried much the sharper Weapon of the two. *Becket* replied, the King's Sword can only wound the Body, but mine the Soul, and send it to Hell. The King upon this commanded his Peers to sit in Judgment upon him, as a perjured Traitor, which was accordingly done. *Becket* declared them incompetent Judges, and appealed to the See of *Rome*; after which he fled to *France*.

Becket's Insolence.

King *Henry* sends immediately to the King of *France* not to countenance *Becket*, a Rebel against his King; notwithstanding which, the King of *France* sends to the Pope in Favour of *Becket*. To this the Pope readily complied; upon which King *Henry* sent him an Embassy to procure *Becket's* Disgrace, but could not prevail, for the Pope and Cardinals foresaw, that if *Becket* was supported in his Cause, it would be a noble Precedent for other Bishops to oppose their Kings; but if it sunk, no Bishop for the future would dare oppose their Sovereign's Pleasure; which would lessen the Church's Power, and the Pope's Authority.

The King thought the Indignity offered him by the Pope insufferable; and to let him understand how he resented it, he ordains, that if any bring Letters of Interdiction from the Pope, they should immediately be executed as Traytors; that none of the Clergy should go out of the Land without Licence, and, that no body should appeal to the Pope. He also forbade the Pay-

King *Henry* opposes the Pope's Authority.

Payment of *Peter-Pence*, then banished all *Becket's* Adherents, and forbad his being prayed for in the Churches as Archbishop of *Canterbury*. On the other Hand, *Becket* was resolved to be even with the King, and therefore solemnly excommunicated all such as obeyed, promoted, or defended the Constitution of *Clarendon*. At length the Pope was prevailed on to send two Legates *a Latere*, to make up this Breach: But sturdy *Thomas* would not submit his Cause to them, unless full Restitution was first made to him and his Friends; and not then, but with saving the Honour of God, the Liberty of the Church, and its Possessions, and his own and Friends Rights. King *Henry* enraged at this, was resolved to create *Thomas* as many Troubles as he had *Salvo's*. Accordingly the King threatened the Abbot of *Pontigny*, that if he entertained *Becket* any longer, he would banish all the Monks of his Order out of *England*. Upon which the Abbot dismissed him, but he was received by the *French King* at *Sens*.

A. D. 1167.
King *John*
born.

The Em-
press dies.

This Year King *Henry's* youngest Son *John* was born, who afterwards obtained the Crown of *England*. The following Year the Empress *Matilda*, the King's Mother, died at *Roven*, in the sixty sixth Year of her Age.

The Pope now, in Defiance of the King's utmost Indignation, confirmed to *Becket* all the Privileges and Powers that any of his Predecessors ever enjoyed. The King, to shew his Resentment, renounced Pope *Alexander*, and joined with the Emperor and Anti-pope, which widened the Breach. The Pope commanded the Bishop of *London* to admonish the King to lay aside all Customs and Ordinances that were prejudicial to the Church, and to restore *Becket*; who in Answer

The Pope for
restoring
Becket.

replied, " That the King was ready to obey, saving his own and the Kingdom's Dignity: That as to Appeals, the King claimed that Honour, by the antient Institution of his Kingdom, namely, that no Clerk should for a civil Action leave the same, till justice could not be found in his Courts at Home: That he never banished *Becket*, and that he might return, provided he would observe the antient Customs he had sworn to: That the King thinks himself fully justified, in being willing to abide by the Judgment of the Church in his own Kingdom.

A. D. 1168.

A Peace being concluded between the Kings of *England* and *France*, *Becket* appears before them, where he

was

was urg
he comp
which t
were B
was ag
many o
Senses,
of both
wilful C
quillity:
Becket I
juries by
excomm
thers.
and *Fran*
but no F
him the
not do a
cause th
perceivin
neral In
he there
dy to E
" Lette
" imme
" Coun
" man
" all his
" forfei
" not b
eldest to
to Pope
King
England
Abuses
Abbots,
dermen
teenth I
Assembl
crowned
ver kno
fal Con
curity to
same Ye
he was a

was urged to submit himself to King *Henry*; to which he complied, saving the Honour due to God. With which the King, being displeased, declared, that such were *Becket's* Evasions, that whatever displeased him, was against the Honour of God. At the same Time many other Things were offered to bring him to his Senses, but he was inflexible. Upon which the Peers of both Nations did declare, that he himself was the wilful Obstacle of his own and the Church's Tranquillity: And the Pope, to help on the Matter, gave *Becket* Leave to revenge his own and the Church's Injuries by the Sword of Censure: Upon which *Thomas* excommunicated the Bishop of *London*, and many others. Then the Pope procured the Kings of *England* and *France* to meet at *Paris*, whither *Becket* repaired, but no Reconciliation ensued; because the King refused him the Ceremony of the Kiss of Peace, and would not do any Thing under the Name of Restitution; because that implied an Injury committed. And now perceiving, that *England* was like to be put under a general Interdict, the King resolved to provide against it; he therefore immediately sent his Edicts from *Normandy* to *England*, declaring, "That whoever brought any Letters of Interdict from the Pope, or *Becket*, should immediately suffer as a Traitor to his King and Country; and that if any Prelate, Clerk, or Layman should obey a Sentence of Interdict, he, and all his Relations, should be banished, and their Goods forfeited to the Crown; and that *Peter-Pence* should not be paid to *Rome*." By these Edicts all, from the eldest to the youngest, were obliged to abjure Obedience to Pope *Alexander* and *Becket*.

Becket inflexible.

A.D. 1169.

The King declares against the Pope's Interdicts.

King *Henry*, after four Years Absence, returned to *England*; and after having thorowly enquired into the Abuses of the Nation, he commanded all the Bishops, Abbots, Earls, Barons, Sheriffs, Bailiffs, and Aldermen of *England*, to appear at *London* on the fourteenth Day of *June*. And in the Presence of this great Assembly the King got his Son *Henry* to be anointed and crowned King by the Archbishop of *York*: An Act never known in *England* before. As he had the universal Consent of all present, so this proved a great Security to the Succession in the King's House. This same Year the King passed again into *Normandy*, where he was again willing to be reconciled to *Becket*; and at *Amboise*

A.D. 1170.

King Henry's Son anointed King.

The King
receives
Becket into
Favour.

Amboise near *Tours*, in the Presence of *Lewis*, King of *France*, his Bishops and Noblemen, the King received the Archbishop into his Grace and Favour, as well as all those who were with him in Exile, which had been above six Years.

Becket stirs
up fresh
Troubles.

And now one would think that the Controversy between the King and *Becket* had been at an End: But the latter was still the same; and to make that appear, he procured Letters from the Pope for the Suspension of the Archbishop of *York*, and Bishop of *Durham*, and for the Excommunication of the Bishops of *London*, *Exeter* and *Salisbury*, for being Assistants in the Coronation of the young King: And at his first Arrival he published these Letters, to the great Disturbance of the Nation. Upon which these Bishops hastened over to the King, complaining that he had made an unhappy Peace for them, since they, and his most faithful Friends, were thus unreasonably treated. To which the Archbishop of *York* added, that as long as *Becket* liv'd, the King could enjoy no Peace. The King in a great Passion cried out, *I am an unhappy Man! Is there none that can vindicate me from the Injuries I suffer from one Priest?* Upon which four of the King's Domesticks, viz. *Raynold Fitz-Urse*, *William Tracy*, *Richard Brito*, and *Hugh Morville*, privately bound themselves by Oath to revenge the King's Quarrel, and destroy *Becket*. To accomplish which they left the Court, passed into *England*, and arrived at *Canterbury*; where, when they came into the Presence of the Archbishop, they first insulted him, and afterwards at the Altar gave him many Wounds, and beat out his Brains, even in the Time of divine Service. The Assassins having effected this impious Act, and justly fearing the King's Resentment, were obliged to fly, and in a few Years died miserable Fugitives in Foreign Countries.

Is murdered.
A. D. 1171.

His Character
disputed.

This was the fatal End of the famous *Thomas Becket*, who from his Pride and Haughtiness, had caused great Mischiefs to the Nation; and as some have exalted him amongst the Saints, so others have doubted whether he was a good Man. Nay, about fifty Years after his Death, it was hotly disputed among the learned Doctors of the University of *Paris*, whether *Thomas Becket* was saved or damned: The one Party declaring, that he deserved Death and Damnation for his Contumacy against the Minister of God, his Sovereign; and the other, that his

his man
had best
Shrines
Jubilee
Canterb

By th
the grea
of this
for the
Archbisp
cerning
serve hi
made U
submit
nals as
Fact.

About
his Desir
had been
Pretensi
that by
dom; n
had com
English
the grea
terprise,
him, an
gainst th
against h
being gla
his Subj
him. U
prevailed
bow, Ear
which pr
these hac
Seas wit
Waterfor
gave Occ

The nex
Place wi

The Reign of King HENRY II.

174

his many Miracles were a Sign of his Salvation. He had bestowed on him one of the richest and noblest Shrines in the World, was canoniz'd, and a famous Jubilee was kept every fiftieth Year to his Memory at *Canterbury*.

By the Death of *Becket* King *Henry* was freed from the greatest Disturber of his Repose. Yet the News of this barbarous Murder gave him new Troubles; for the King of *France*, the Earl of *Blois*, and the Archbishop of *Sens*, sent such Letters to the Pope concerning it, that *Henry* found it very difficult to preserve his Kingdom from a general Interdict, tho' he made Use of his Power, Money and Protestations to submit to the Judgment of such Legates and Cardinals as his Holiness should send to inquire into the Fact.

About this Time the King vigorously prosecuted The King's Design upon Ireland. his Design of subduing the Kingdom of *Ireland*, which had been begun a Year or two before. To make his Pretensions appear reasonable and just, he declared, that by an antient Title he had a Right to this Kingdom; not to mention the continued Injuries the *Irish* had committed by their Piracies, buying and selling the *English* Captives, and treating them like Slaves: But the greatest Reason that induced the King to this Enterprize, was *Dermot*, Prince of *Leister's* coming to him, and desiring his Assistance to revenge himself against the other Princes of *Ireland*, who had combined against him, and driven him to this Distress. The King being glad of this Opportunity, gave Liberty to such of his Subjects as pleased to venture their Fortunes with him. Upon which *Dermot* repaired to *Wales*, and soon prevailed with *Robert Fitz-Stephen* and *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, Men of great Valour and Interest, which produced them many Followers; and as soon as these had prepared all Things necessary, they passed the Seas with some Soldiers, and landed at a Place near *Waterford*, called by the *Irish* *Bagg and Bunn*, which gave Occasion for this Verse,

*At the Head of Bagg and Bunn,
Ireland was lost and won.*

The next Day *Maurice de Pendergast* arrived at the same Place with more Forces, and joined *Fitz-Stephen*. Then they

they marched against the City of *Wexford*, which soon surrendered. This City, and the adjacent Country, *Dermot* gave to *Fitz-Stephen* as an Earnest of greater Rewards. And here was planted the first Colony of the *English*, which continues to this Day, much resembling the antient *English* in Dress and Language, which is called *Wexford Speech*. The next Year the Earl of *Pembroke* with more Forces, sailed to the Bay of *Waterford*, and landing with one thousand and two hundred Men, soon took the Town, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. This struck such a Terror in the People, that they made very little Resistance in other Places, for fear of the like Treatment. Here *Dermot* gave the Earl his Daughter *Eva* in Marriage, with the Dowry of his Country, and soon after died. The Earl, after he had secured the new acquired Places, marched with his little Army up into the Country without Opposition, and took what Pledges of Security he pleased from the Inhabitants; and then went and possessed himself of the City of *Dublin*, the Metropolis of *Ireland*. Thus *Wales* with a small Force, and without one general Battle, gained for us the Kingdom of *Ireland*.

Ireland is
conquer'd by
the *Welsh*.

The King
goes over
thither.

Settles Af-
fairs there.

King *Henry*, that he might secure a Kingdom so easily won, shortly after *Michaelmas* passed over the Sea with a great Fleet and Army, and landed in *Ireland*, near *Waterford*, to which Place he marched the next Day, where he remained fifteen Days; during which Time the Kings of *Cork*, *Limerick*, *Ossery*, *Meath*, and all of any Power, except *Roderick*, came and voluntarily submitted themselves, with all the Clergy, and took the Oaths of Fealty to him, the young King, and their Successors for ever. From *Waterford* the King marched to *Dublin*, where *Roderick* came, and also submitted. And now the King's principal Care was to settle the Affairs of the Nation, both in Church and State. Accordingly he caused all the Bishops and Clergy to assemble at *Cassel*, where it was decreed, That all Church Lands should be free from the Exaction of secular Men; and that from that Time the Church of *Ireland* should be modelled by the Church of *England*. Then the King put Garisons into all convenient Places, and made *Hugh Lacy* Justice of *Ireland*, and Governor of *Dublin*. Likewise *Robert Fitz-Bernard* was made Governor of the Towns of *Waterford* and *Wexford*.

Thus in
of *Ireland*
The
King, or
from the
sent by
Four M
at length
command
absolved
never op
peals sho
stical Ca
do, and
an hund
4. That
stored.
to the P
6. That
jurious C
by which
Degree;
will be v
Glarendon
in *Norman*
No for
ties, but
natural R
Queen E
Clifford,
stock, whe
There we
together
Geoffry, t
great Lor
ipiracy!
much Vig
Enemies
lars of th
one Time
vaded by
the *Scots*
sieged *Ver*
nor reliev
Lewis, th
VOL. I

Thus in one Winter King Henry gained the Kingdom of Ireland with very little Bloodshed.

The Irish Affairs being thus quietly established, the King, on *Easter Monday*, set Sail for *England*, and from thence into *Normandy*, to meet the two Legates sent by the Pope, to enquire into *Becket's* Murder. Four Months were spent in debating the Matter; and at length the King by Oath, purged himself, of either commanding, or consenting to it. At last the Legates absolved him upon these Conditions: 1. That he should never oppose the Pope's Authority. 2. That all Appeals should be freely made to the Pope in Ecclesiastical Causes. 3. That he should undertake the Crusado, and go to *Jerusalem* for three Years; or maintain an hundred Soldiers in the *Holy Land* for one Year. 4. That all Exiles on *Becket's* Account should be restored. 5. That all Customs introduced in his Time to the Prejudice of the Church, should be abolished. 6. That the Clergy only should be Judges of these injurious Customs. Thus ended this great Controversy, by which the Pope established his Power to a high Degree; and the King lost his Sovereignty. But it will be very hard to reconcile what King Henry did at *Clarendon*, with what he did before the Pope's Legates in *Normandy*.

No sooner had the King surmounted these Difficulties, but he was involved in new Mischiefs, by an unnatural Rebellion; the chief of the Conspirators was Queen *Eleanor* his Wife, on the Account of *Rosamond Clifford*, whom the King kept for his Pleasure at *Woodstock*, where the Queen found Means to End her Life. There were also engaged the young King Henry his Son, together with his two younger Brothers, *Richard* and *Geoffry*, the two Kings of *France* and *Scotland*, and many great Lords, both *English* and others; a formidable Conspiracy! yet the King proceeded against them with as much Vigour, Courage and Policy, as if they had been Enemies only at a Distance: and to relate the Particulars of this War, would take up too much Room. At one Time *Normandy*, *Guienne* and *Bretagne* were invaded by the Confederates abroad, and *Cumberland* by the *Scots* at Home. The *French* King in Person besieged *Vernvit*; which Place was to be surrendered, if not relieved by a certain Day. The King sent to *Lewis*, that if he did not leave *Normandy* immediately,

The King goes for *Normandy*.

Is absolved by the Legates.

A.D. 1173:
The Queen occasions a great Rebellion.

The King's
great Success.

The sad State
of England.

The King
returns from
Normandy.

He goes thi-
ther again.

he would come and visit him at the appointed Day. Upon which *Lewis* raised the Siege with such Precipitation, that he left all his Tents and Ammunition behind him. King *Henry* had many successful Encounters with his Enemies in all Parts; yet notwithstanding these Advantages, he shewed a Forwardness to make Peace, and was willing to be reconciled to his rebellious Sons. King *Lewis* fearing the King's growing Power, sued for a Truce of six Months; which was granted. In the mean Time the King took *Xaintes* from his Son *Richard*, and mov'd with such Expedition, in all his Undertakings, that the *French* King said he seem'd not to go, but to fly. Yet before he could finish all in these Parts, he was obliged to repair to *Normandy*, where *Robert* Elect of *Winchester*, was sent from *England* to represent to him the present and dangerous State of the Nation; for *Norwich* was plunder'd; the young King and the Earl of *Flanders* were about to invade the Kingdom; *Nottingham* was burnt, and *Northampton* in the Hands of the Enemy.

King *Henry* surpriz'd at the ill State of the Nation, leaves *Normandy*, and comes over into *England*, bringing with him his Queen *Eleanor*, his Son's Queen *Margaret*, his Son *John*, the Earl of *Leicester*, with his Countess, and many other noble Prisoners. He set sail from *Barfleur*, and the same Day arrived at *Southampton*; from whence he took his Journey towards *Canterbury*, where he was to perform the Remainder of the Penance enjoined him at his Absolution. Coming towards the Church where *Becket* was buried, he walk'd three Miles barefooted, the Blood running from his Feet, cut by the sharp Stones; and prostrating himself at the Sepulchre, he received many Lashes on his bare Flesh from the Priests and Monks. The monkish Writers of that Age attribute all future Success to the Reconciliation King *Henry* made with God for the Blood of *Becket*; for soon after *William*, King of *Scotland*, was taken Prisoner; and the young King, his Son, was driven back into *France*, having lost a great Part of his Fleet in a Storm. His other Actions, till his Return to *Normandy*, are by *Walsingham* comprehended in these few Words; "He tamed his Rebels, put his Enemies to Flight, and seiz'd on their Forts."

Having settled Peace in the Nation, he passed over into *Normandy* with his Army, taking with him the King of *Scotland* and the Earls of *Leicester* and *Chester*, with

with oth
derates u
advanci
ven, and
all their
and all th
out one
Prisoner
England
tained; /
Possession
cony, as
ry's Don

The E
duced w
against hi
and beg f
the thre
King of
was left t
mitted to
ter which
concluded

"Henry,
"from a
"a full C
"Prison
"out Ra
"of Leic
"take Se
"from su
"the Kin
"and Re
"young
hundred t
Moiety in
Time, an
all his Do
ticles, Ki
were the C
worth, and
to the Kin
that if thei
him and h
ing thus se
rived at P

with other Prisoners of Note. As soon as the Confederates understood that King *Henry* was arrived, and advancing towards them, they raised the Siege of *Ro-*^{King Hen-}
ven, and fled with Precipitation, leaving behind them ^{ry's Great-}
all their Baggage and Ammunition. After this the King ^{ness and}
and all the Power of *France* fled at his Presence, with-^{Power,}
out one Blow given. The King of *Scotland* was his
Prisoner; the chief of the Rebels were under his Feet;
England was secured; *Scotland* dismayed; *Ireland* re-
tained; *Wales* subservient to his Arms; *Normandy* in
Possession, and the Coasts of *Bretagne*, *Guienne*, *Gas-*
cony, as far as the Borders of *Spain*, under King *Hen-*
ry's Dominion.

The Effects which this Greatness and Power pro-
duced were these. Those that before had combined
against him, now become his most humble Supplicants,
and beg for Peace. A Truce was first made between
the three Kings, viz. the two *Henrys* and *Lewis*
King of *France*; in which *Richard* who stood out,
was left to his Father's Prosecution; but he soon sub-
mitted to his Father, and received a full Pardon. Af-
ter which all Parties were reconciled, and a firm Peace
concluded upon these Conditions; "That young King ^{A Peace con-}
Henry, with *Richard*, and *Geoffry* his Brother, freed ^{cluded.}
"from all Oaths of Confederation, should return to
"a full Obedience to the King their Father: That the
"Prisoners on all Sides should have their Liberty with-
"out Ransom, except the King of *Scotland*, the Earls
"of *Leicester* and *Chester*: That King *Henry* should
"take Security of Loyalty, either by Hostage or Oath,
"from such as were enlarged. That the Grant which
"the King had made to his Son *John*, of some Castles
"and Revenues in *England*, should be ratified by the
"young King *Henry*." The King of *Scotland* paid one
hundred thousand Pounds Sterling for his Ransom, one
Moiety in ready Money, and the other at an appointed
Time, and promised to do Homage to King *Henry* for
all his Dominions. For the Performance of which Ar-
ticles, King *Henry* had a double Security; for not only
were the Castles of *Edinburgh*, *Roxburgh*, *Berwick*, *Jed-*
worth, and *Sterling* delivered by the King of *Scotland*, in-
to the King's Hands; but the Bishops of *Scotland* swore;
that if their King broke these Conditions, they would put
him and his Land under an Interdict. These Things be-
ing thus settled, they took Shipping for *England*, and ar-
rived at *Portsmouth* on the twenty sixth of May, 1175.

Happy State
of England.

The State of *England* had never a better Aspect than at this Time. That this might be lasting, King *Henry* omitted no Opportunity of acting as a just and prudent Governor, visiting a great Part of his Kingdom in Person; consulting, ordering, and enacting such Laws as might best establish a lasting Peace. And in a Synod held at *Westminster*, this Canon, amongst others, was established both by the Authority of the King and Synod, "That every Patron of a Benefice, taking a Reward for Presentation, should for ever lose the Right of Patronage." This very Year *Roderick* King of *Connaught* in *Ireland* was receiv'd into Favour, and became a faithful Tributary. And many Things of Moment were settled between the Kings of *England* and *Scotland*.

1176.
The Nation
divided into
six Circuits.

This Year, by the Advice of Parliament held at *Northampton*, the King divided the Kingdom into six Circuits; and for every Circuit constituted three Justices or Judges, and caus'd them to swear to oblige all the People to observe the Ordinances of *Clarendon*, which were made against Murder, Theft, Robbery, Burning of Houses, and Cheats. These Circuits continue almost the same to this Day. Not long after which, he made the famous *Glanville* Lord chief Justice of *England*, by whose Wisdom and Advice the Laws of King *Edward* were again renew'd. And as the King was mindful of his Subjects Security, so he was not forgetful of his own, causing almost all the Castles in *England* and *Normandy*, that had been fortify'd against him in the late War, to be demolished.

1177.
John is made
King of *Ireland*.

This Year *John* the King's youngest Son was made King of *Ireland*, by Virtue of a Bull granted by Pope *Adrian* for that Purpose. The King also purchas'd the Earldom of *March* in *France* for the Sum of fifteen thousand Pounds *Anjouin* Money, twenty Mules, and as many Palfreys. For four or five Years after we find nothing of Moment, only some Regulations of the Coin. Only in the Year 1179. the *French* King came into *England* on Pilgrimage to the Tomb of *Thomas Becket*, to implore his Assistance for the Recovery of his Son then sick: And he and many others did believe that he was restored to Health by *Thomas's* Mediation.

French King
visits *Becket's*
Tomb.

1182.
New Con-
tentions.

The Calm which the Nation had enjoy'd for a considerable Time, began to be disturb'd by the young King *Henry*, who shew'd fresh Inclinations of opposing his Father. Upon which the King increas'd his Garri-
sons

sons be
Conten
Appreh
of youn
hearty S
Father,
Neck,
of Ashe
his Fat
Son *Ab*
ving hac
was ne
Kings.

By th
gined th
Days in
Jerusalem
King *H*
and to
fully be
of *Anjo*
This wa
who ag
with *M*
ing he h
the Cru
jects to
Canterbu
and *Kn*

The
tain'd a
Sons he
Pence a
to the
Knights
Viceroy
having c
my in *S*

The
Arms ag
But he v
Earldom
heritance
Geoffry
nament

The Reign of King HENRY II.

181

sons both in *England* and *Normandy*, and promoted Contentions among his Sons. But some Time after, all Apprehensions of Danger were remov'd by the Death of young King *Henry*, who on his Death-bed shew'd a hearty Sorrow for his unnatural Rebellions against his Father, and after Absolution put a Rope about his Neck, and was remov'd from his Bed to a Couch made of Ashes, where he expired, to the exceeding Grief of his Father, who mourn'd for him like *David* for his Son *Absalom*. He dy'd in the 28th Year of his Age, having had the Title of a King for thirteen; yet his Name was never inserted in the Catalogue of our *English* Kings.

Young King
Henry dies.

By the Death of young *Henry* it might have been imagined that his Father had an Opportunity to end his Days in Peace and Glory. But *Heracitus* Patriarch of *Jerusalem* came from thence into *England* to acquaint King *Henry* with the deplorable State of the Holy Land, and to offer him the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, as rightfully belonging to him, being the Son of *Geoffry* Earl of *Anjou*, whose Brother *Fulk* enjoy'd the Crown. This was propos'd to the grand Assembly of the States, who agreed that the King should promote this Affair with Money, but not employ his Person, notwithstanding he had before now solemnly engaged to undertake the Crusado. However, he gave Leave to all his Subjects to take the Cross; upon which the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, several Bishops, with many Earls, Barons and Knights undertook it.

1185.
Heracitus
desires the
King's As-
sistance in
the Holy
War.

The King willing to settle his Affairs at home, obtain'd a Bull from Pope *Lucius* to crown which of his Sons he pleas'd King of *Ireland*; provided that *Peter-Pence* and all other Rights and Privileges were reserv'd to the *Roman* See. Accordingly at *Windsor* the King knighted his Son *John*, and sent him to *Ireland*, as his Viceroy only, who return'd the same Year, without having done any Thing but lost a great Part of his Army in Skirmishes with the *Irish*.

The King's
Son *John*
sent to *Ire-*
land.

The following Year the King's Son *Richard* took Arms against his Father, fortifying *Poitou* against him: But he was soon reduc'd, and oblig'd to surrender the Earldom of *Poitou* to his Mother *Eleanor*, whose Inheritance it was. Not long after this, the King's Son *Geoffry* was trod to Death by Horses in a publick Tournament at *Paris*. Thus half the King's rebellious Male

1186.

Geoffry kill'd
in a Turna-
ment.

Issue were extinct before him, and by Deaths as violent as their Dispositions; and the two Sons that surviv'd him were no less miserable in their Ends. The Affairs between *England* and *France* were at this Time in a very unsettled Posture: But at Length a two Year's Truce was concluded; after which, Earl *Richard*, contrary to his Father's Will, continued with the King of *France*, and they became so very intimate that one Table and one Bed serv'd for both. King *Henry* grew jealous of this extraordinary Amity, and sent several Times for his Son *Richard* to come home; which he refus'd to comply with for the present; yet after some Time he again submitted, and was reconciled to his Father.

1188.
Kings of
England and
France design
a Crusado:

Much about this Time Sultan *Saladine* took *Jerusalem*, and in it *Guido* the King of it with a very great Number of Christians, to the great Grief and Dishonour of *Christendom*. This News did so sensibly touch the Kings of *England* and *France*, that they laid aside their former Resentments, and came to an Interview, and took upon them the Badge of the Cross as Soldiers of Christ, in the Presence of the Archbishop of *Tyre*: And the better to distinguish themselves, the *English* were to wear white Crosses, the *French* red, and the *Flemish* green. Accordingly all Parties made great Levies and Preparations to carry on this War, resolving to revenge the Cause of Christ upon Sultan *Soladin*. But this Confederacy was soon broken by *Richard's* Means, who revenging himself upon some Rebels of *Poitou*, that could not bear his severe Government, this rais'd such Disturbances, that both Kings were drawn into the Contest. To accommodate which, several Treaties were set on Foot, wherein the Demands of the King of *France* in Favour of *Richard* were so unreasonable, that King *Henry* could by no Means be brought to comply. So both Parties took Arms. In this Contest King *Henry* declin'd apace, and was at length oblig'd to yield to such Conditions as King *Philip* thought fit to propose. The Consideration of which, join'd with that of his beloved Son *John's* being in the Conspiracy, overwhelm'd the good old King with Grief, and falling sick at *Chinon*, after an humble Confession and Sorrow for his Sins, he expired on the 6th Day of *July*, in the fifty sixth Year of his Age, having reigned thirty four Years, eight Months, and twelve Days, and was bury'd

But fall out.

1189.

King *Henry*
dies.

ent
y'd
irs
a
ur's
on-
of
Fa-
ew
eral
he
me
Fa-
efa-
reat
ho-
uch
side
ew,
oldi-
o of
Eng-
and
reat
ving
But
ans,
ton,
ais'd
into
aties
King
able,
com-
King
d to
it to
with
racy,
d fal-
and
July,
thirty
was
ury'd





KING RICHARD THE I.ST

bury'd
est Po
Thron
John,
Richa
violen
Lion's



RIC
to
Dom
Moth
Years
was j
at We
where
" and
" all
" tice
" wo
" mal
bishop
Head
Glory
disturb
pressin
remor
rousl
gainst
Kin
of Fr
War,
Vigou
vast T
Steph
thoug
Man
bots
Men

The Reign of King RICHARD I.

183

bury'd at *Founteverard*. This was the End of the greatest Potentate that had hitherto sat upon the *English* Throne. He left behind him two Sons, *Richard* and *John*, who both succeeded him in the Government. *Richard* was now about thirty one Years of Age, a violent and a valiant Prince, surnamed *Cour-de-Lion*, or *Lion's-Heart*.



The Reign of King RICHARD I.

RICHARD, upon his Father's Death, first took Care to establish his Affairs in *Normandy* and his other Dominions in *France*, and then sent Letters to release his Mother *Eleanor*, who had been a Prisoner above twelve Years. After which he came into *England*, where he was joyfully receiv'd, and by universal Consent crown'd at *Westminster* by *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; where he solemnly swore "to observe Peace, Honour, and Reverence to God, his Church and Ministers all the Days of his Life: That he would exercise Justice and Equity towards his Subjects; and that he would abrogate all evil Laws and Customs, and make and keep such as were good." Then the Archbishop proceeded to anoint him in three Places, the Head, Breast and Arms, signifying by those Unctions, Glory, Fortitude and Wisdom. This Solemnity was disturbed by an unhappy Accident; for many *Jews* pressing into the Abby-Church in Order to see the Ceremony, were set upon by the Multitude, and barbarously murder'd in the King's Presence, tho' utterly against his Will or Knowledge.

1189.
Richard I.
crown'd.

His Oath.

Many *Jews*
murder'd.

King *Richard* having before agreed with *Philip* King of *France* and other Potentates to carry on the holy War, made great Preparations to prosecute it with Vigour; and tho' he was possess'd with his Father's vast Treasure, and great Sums besides extorted from *Stephen Turnham* his Treasurer; yet these were not thought sufficient; and therefore he sold many of his Manors, Castles and Lands to such Bishops and Abbots as would purchase them, they being then the only Men that had ready Money: And when he was ask'd

His Donations to his Brother Earl John.

by some about him why he sold so many Manors and Places; he reply'd, that if he could find a Chapman he would sell *London* it self; so intent he was upon this plausible Enterprize; and the Pulpits resounded nothing but the Cross and Passion of Jesus Christ, which excited Multitudes to enter voluntarily as Soldiers for this holy Expedition. And now, to prevent his Brother Earl *John* from any Attempts during his Absence, he invested him with six Earldoms, *Cornwall*, *Dorset*, *Somerset*, *Nottingham*, *Derby*, and *Lancaster*, besides Castles, Manors, Honours and Bounties; and at last with the Earldom of *Glocester*, and the Heiress of that County for his Wife. Thus did the King share his Kingdom with his Brother: But lest Earl *John* should make a wrong Use of these Donations, he intrusted him with no Part of the Regal Power; but laid the Burden of the Government on his Chancellor *Longchamp*, Bishop of *Ely*, Chief Justiciary, and Legate to the See of *Rome*. But for the Defence and Execution of Justice, the King associated with him several Men of Honour, Wisdom, and Authority: And a firm Alliance was concluded between *Richard* and *William* King of *Scotland*.

1190.
He goes into France.

King *Richard* having established the Affairs of *England*, cross'd the Seas to meet King *Philip* in *France*, at the Time and Place appointed, that from thence they might proceed under the Banner of the Cross. They agreed that each should bear Faith to the other, and that they should give mutual Assistance to each other in all Cases of Need: The Barons of both Parties swore to maintain Peace in both the Kingdoms during this extraordinary Pilgrimage; and the Bishops promised to excommunicate all such as should transgress this Agreement. And then these two Monarchs set forward by Land with such prodigious Numbers, that at *Lions* they for Conveniency were obliged to part. *Philip* pass'd over the *Alps* into *Italy*, and *Richard* to the Sea Coast at *Marseilles*, there to meet his Royal Navy, which he had order'd to attend him; but that not being arriv'd, he hired twenty Gallies and ten Busses, and set Sail for *Messina* in *Sicily*, the Rendezvous of both the Kings and their Armies. In which Passage King *Richard* coming to an Anchor at the Mouth of the *Tiber*, was invited by the Bishop of *Ostia* to make the Pope a Visit, which he refus'd; because the Pope had been guilty of Avarice and Simony in Relation to some new advanced Bishops in his Dominions. After this, when

The two Kings set forward by Land.

when his Anchor was cast, with Nations.

This Inhabitant immediately flew to her Brethren, and King *Richard* tress belov'd of a great And being Banners, pointed to Offence, which T between the sent, this Men on to King Designs and Jean they were they partition, and ready, and set Sail for arrived with to *Sanctuary*'d in *C* Some

Navy consisted of fifty three This Roman the Isles Occasion *Limeux* fells were cess was the form let the last this unco with his City of

The Reign of King RICHARD I.

185

when his whole Fleet was safely arriv'd, he came to an Anchor on the 23^d of September before the City of *Messina*, where *Philip* with his *French*, and many other Nations, were assembled.

This great Appearance struck such a Terror in the Inhabitants, that *Tancred*, then King of *Sicily*, immediately sent his Queen, whom before he had imprison'd to her Brother *Richard*, and comply'd with several Articles, and to the Payment of large Sums of Money. King *Richard*, for his better Security, seiz'd upon a Fortrefs belonging to the *Griffons*, and after that, by Means of a great Tumult, took the City of *Messina* it self. And being flush'd with this Success, he display'd his Banners, even in those Parts of the City that were appointed for King *Philip's* Quarters, which gave great Offence, and caus'd many warm Expressions. From which Time the Spirit of Discord began to appear between the two Royal Adventurers; yet, for the present, this Contest was by the Mediation of some great Men on both Sides adjusted. But *Tancred* discovering to King *Richard*, that *Philip* had some dishonourable Designs against his Person, this rais'd such a Distrust and Jealousy between 'em that from thenceforward they were never reconcil'd. Notwithstanding which they parted with Resolution to persue the holy Expedition, and with the greatest Diligence got all Things ready, and on the same Day that *Philip* and his Forces set Sail from *Messina*, *Eleanor*, King *Richard's* Mother, arrived with *Berengaria* his intended Spouse, Daughter to *Sanctius* King of *Navarre*, whom he afterwards marry'd in *Cyprus*.

Some Time after the King embark'd on his Royal Navy consisting of an hundred and fifty large Ships, fifty three Gallies, thirteen Buffes, and many Tenders: This Royal Navy was dispersed by a Storm between the Isles of *Rhodes* and *Cyprus*, which gave the King Occasion of new Conquests: For near the Port of *Limezum*, upon the Coasts of *Cyprus*, two of the Vessels were cast away, and the Ship that carried the Princess was in great Danger: *Isaac* their King plunder'd the former, made the People Prisoners, and would not let the latter enter the Port. King *Richard*, to revenge this uncommon Piece of Inhumanity, invaded the Island with his Forces, drove *Isaac* from the Court, took the City of *Limezum*, attack'd his Camp, and took *Isaac* Prisoner.

King Richard gets Ground in Sicily.

1191.

The King conquers Cyprus.

Prisoner. After an Escape made by him, his only Daughter was oblig'd to yield her self Prisoner, and lastly himself return'd of his own Accord, and was put in Fetters of Silver; upon which the whole Island became subject to the King of *England*, and both Father and Daughter were led into Captivity, and the Island was intrusted to *Richard Camville* and *Robert Turnham* the King's Viceroys.

While the King's Affairs thus prospered abroad, the State of *England* suffer'd extreamly at home, under the Government of Bishop *Longchamp* the Chancellor, who by his illegal, arbitrary and violent Proceedings, had put the Nation in a Ferment, and incurred the Hatred of the whole Kingdom. Earl *John* taking Advantage of their Discontents, join'd with the State against the Bishop: This render'd him very popular, and made his design'd Usurpation more feasible. Accordingly an Assembly of Bishops and Nobility met at *St. Paul's* in *London*, whither *Longchamp* was cited, where they urged against him many Crimes committed contrary to his Commission, and the Good of the King and Kingdom. These Things being clearly made out, the Assembly did in a very formal Manner depose him from his Office, and put the Archbishop of *Roven* in his Place. Upon which *Longchamp* fled to the Pope, who was much displeased to find the Legantine Power so vilify'd. In the mean Time, Earl *John* with the Commissioners confirm'd to the City of *London* their common Liberties, and caus'd the Citizens to swear Fealty to the King and his Heirs; and if he dy'd without Issue, they were then to maintain Earl *John* as their Lord and King.

King *Richard* having transported his Forces from *Cyprus* to the Holy Land, and join'd *Philip* King of *France*, laid Siege to *Acon* or *Ptolemais*, defended by the Power of *Saladin*; which Place, after it had held out four Months, surrendred upon these Articles. 1. That *Saladin* should by a certain Day restore the holy Cross. 2. That he should set free fifteen hundred Christian Captives. 3. That the City and all Things contained in it, should remain to the Christians. 4. That if these Conditions were perform'd, the Garrison should only have their Lives sav'd. 5. That they should pay twenty thousand Pieces of Gold towards the Charges of the two Kings. At their Entrance into the City,

ty, the
King *R*
the two
immedia
Means
Pretend
Lusignan
England
France t
ings bet
prosecut
he sent
which
protect

Philip
his Arm
which,
Enterpri
tack'd hi
so much
liged to
his best
markably
Saracens
that he
Guard, t
had not
tellis, cr
King: U
the King
wards the
and to sh
Exchange

King *R*
Designs,
marched
better of
the Conv
Babylon,
were mol
Camels,
Richard's
Exploits,
the City o
prise by t

ty, the Banners of *Leopold*, Duke of *Austria*, were by King *Richard*'s Command taken down, and those of the two Kings erected. This incensed the Duke, who immediately quitted the Service, and afterwards found Means to revenge himself. There appeared now two Pretenders to the Crown of *Jerusalem*, viz. *Guido* of *Lusignan*, and *Conrade* of *Montferrat*: The King of *England* espous'd the former's Cause, and the King of *France* the latter's. This caused continual Heart-Burnings between them: and the *French* King resolved to prosecute the holy War no longer in Person; therefore he sent to King *Richard* for his Consent to return home, which was granted upon *Philip*'s taking an Oath to protect *Richard*'s Dominions, till his Return.

Philip immediately retir'd, leaving the Command of his Army to the Duke of *Burgundy*; notwithstanding which, King *Richard* set out the same Day upon a new Enterprize, and marched towards *Joppa*. *Saladin* attack'd him very furiously; which *Richard* returned with so much Courage and Conduct, that *Saladin* was obliged to fly, with the Loss of above three thousand of his best Soldiers. Some Time after the King was remarkably deliver'd from falling into the Hands of the *Saracens*: For one Day the Enemy having Intelligence that he was asleep under a Tree, with a very small Guard, they set upon him, and had taken him Prisoner, had not one of his Gentlemen, named *William de Prastellis*, cry'd out in the *Saracen* Tongue, *I am the King*: Upon which they all seized upon him, and gave the King and others an Opportunity to escape. Afterwards the King, in Consideration of this noble Act, and to shew his Esteem for this brave Man, gave in Exchange for him ten of his greatest Prisoners.

King *Richard* continued resolute in the Pursuit of his Designs, and after several brave and important Actions, marched up in Sight of *Jerusalem*, where he got the better of the Enemy in diverse Encounters; and took the Convoy, or Caravan, coming richly laden from *Babylon*, under a Guard of ten thousand Men, which were mostly put to the Sword, leaving three thousand Camels, and four thousand Horses and Mules to King *Richard*'s Mercy. After this, and many other brave Exploits, the King resolved to regain *Jerusalem*, and the City of *Baruck*, but was abandoned in that Enterprize by the Duke of *Burgundy*, justly suspected of be-

The King of France returns home.

Saladin defeated.

A three
Years Truce
concluded.

ing bribed by *Saladin*. Upon which the chief Men of the Christian Army advised the King not to refuse *Saladin's* Offers, for a Cessation of Arms. At length the King complied, and concluded a Truce with *Saladin* for three Years. Thus this great Crusado ended with little more Advantage than the taking of one City.

Richard
leaves the
Holy Land.

Goes into
Austria.

And now King *Richard* having first sent away his Queen and Sister, with the King of *Cyprus's* Daughter, under the Conduct of *Stephen Fernham*, went aboard a Buss at *Acon*, and set sail in the Beginning of *October* for *Corfu*; where arriving in less than a Month, he continued his Voyage to *Ragusa*, in the Gulf of *Venice*; and landing near that City, he resolved to go by Land through *Sclavonia* into *Austria*. *Richard* had Reason to fear the Duke of *Austria* upon many Accounts; and therefore to secure himself from falling into his Hands, he with one single Servant, being disguised like Pilgrims, withdrew from his Retinue, took Horse, and travelled Day and Night until he came near the City of *Vienna*, where, in a small Village, the King being laid down to repose himself, the Servant going out to buy Provisions, was discovered by one belonging to the Duke of *Austria*. The Man was seiz'd, and constrained to reveal where the King was. The Duke immediately sent and took him Prisoner as he lay asleep. The Emperor, *Henry the Sixth*, being informed of this, sent to demand the Prisoner; and the Duke being promised a large Share of his Ransom, delivered him to the Emperor's Hands, who kept him Prisoner about a Year. Thus ended this great Prince's unfortunate Expedition into the *Holy Land*, having consumed all that mighty Treasure left him by his Father, and all the Riches of *England*, *Normandy*, and *Cyprus*.

Is taken Pri-
soner.

And sent to
the Empe-
ror.

A.D. 1194

Earl *John* re-
bels.

As the News of King *Richard's* Imprisonment flew through *Europe* with incredible Swiftmess, so it shew'd who were faithful or perfidious to him. To secure his Dominions, his Mother and best Friends caused the Nation to swear to be true to him, watched the Coasts, and fortified all the Cities and chief Towns of the Kingdom. Earl *John*, on the contrary, made use of this Opportunity to dethrone his Brother, and set up himself. Accordingly he prevailed with the *Normans* to countenance his disloyal Practices, swore Fealty to *Philip* King of *France*, and promised to marry his Si-

ster

ster *Alien*
that *Ca*
dy he po
stance.
to join i
could b
Practice

During
was bro
he was
sassinatio
all whic
covetous
but wou
Richard
lity, Clo
procure
wrote to
which L
determin
bute one
King's R
out of e
bies of t
plengham
and that
be broug
Means
peror's A
King's R
came to
1. That
dred thou
Duke of
Nephew
liver up t
That the
into the
and Holt
Philip,
and *Rich*
his Relea
John, urg
a general
knowing

ster *Alice*, tho' dishonoured by his own Father; and for that Cause rejected by King *Richard*. Out of *Normandy* he posted into *England*; but met with a loyal Resistance. Then he laboured to excite the *Welsh* and *Scots* to join in the Invasion; but *William*, King of the *Scots*, could by no means be drawn in to Countenance such Practices.

During these Commotions at Home, King *Richard* was brought into the Presence of the Emperor; where he was charged with many Crimes, especially the Assassination of the Marquis *Conrade*, his Cousin. To all which the King gave such full Satisfaction, that the covetous Emperor did compassionate his Misfortunes, but would not discharge him without a Ransom. King *Richard* writes in a very moving Manner to his Nobility, Clergy, and Laity, to raise such a Sum as would procure him his Liberty; the Emperor and Pope wrote to the same Purpose. Upon the Receipt of which Letters the Queen-Mother, and Lords Justices determined, that both Clergy and Laity should contribute one fourth Part of that Year's Revenue for the King's Ransom. To this they added twenty Shillings out of every Knight's Fee; and ordered that the Abbies of the *Cisterians* and Houses of the Order of *Semplingham* should contribute all the Wool of that Year, and that all the Gold and Silver of the Churches should be brought out and delivered to that Purpose. By these Means *England* advanced a vast Sum, which the Emperor's Ambassadors received at *London*, in Part of the King's Ransom; and soon after the Emperor and King came to a final Agreement upon these Conditions; 1. That the King should pay to the Emperor one hundred thousand Marks, and fifty thousand more to the Duke of *Austria*: 2. That the King should marry his Nephew *Arthur's* Sister to the Duke's Son, and deliver up the captive King of *Cyprus* and his Daughter. 3. That the hundred thousand Marks should be brought into the Empire, at the Peril of the King of *England*, and Hostages to be given for the rest.

Philip, King of *France*, finding that the Emperor *A.D. 1194.* and *Richard* were agreed, used all Methods to prevent his Release: and first he sent Messengers to Earl *John*, urging him to usurp the Crown. And when a general Diet was met at *Spires*, *Philip* and Earl *John* knowing the Emperor's avaritious Temper, sent Messengers

Great Sums
raised in
England.

The King
restored.

The King
arrives in
England.

sengers to him, and offered him great Sums of Money to keep *Richard* still Prisoner, at least for one Year more, or to deliver him into their Hands. Their great Proffers had such an Effect on the old Miser, that he immediately deferred the Day of setting *Richard* at Liberty : Upon which the Heads of the Empire freely reproved the Emperor for his Avarice, and dishonourable Treatment of a crowned Head, and so far prevailed, that upon the fourth of *February* he was restored into the Hands of his Mother, Queen *Eleanor*, after fifteen Months Imprisonment. They made haste into *England*, where they arrived at *Sandwich* on the thirteenth of *March*. He was received in a triumphant Manner, and coming near to the City of *Rocheſter*, *Hubert*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, met him with a pompous Solemnity, and with the utmost Marks of Pleasure and Satisfaction ; and the greatest part of the People were overjoyed at the King's Deliverance, and safe Arrival.

The King, as soon as the Nobility's Congratulations were over, went to the great Abby of *St. Edmund's-bury*, where, in Performance of his Vow, he offer'd up the Imperial Standard, taken from *Isaac* King of *Cyprus* : And then made a Progress into several Parts of the Kingdom, taking in by Surrender the several Castles which his Brother's Adherents had held out against him. And when the forty Days were expired, which were allow'd *John* and his Accomplices to make their Appearance, and answer to such Crimes as were alledg'd against them, they not appearing, the Court proceeded to divest Earl *John* of all his Lands, and Honours ; and others met with such Censures as were suitable to their Crimes.

Earl *John*
deprived.

The King's
second
Coronation at
Winchester.

Affairs being thus settled, the King's whole Bent was to fill his Coffers. Accordingly he resum'd those Crown Lands he had sold to furnish him out for the Holy War, pretending they were only mortgag'd, and not sold outright. The King then caus'd himself to be crown'd again at *Winchester*, and caus'd a new Broad Seal to be made, requiring that all Charters granted under his former, should be confirmed by this ; which rais'd great Sums to the Exchequer. King *Richard* was the first *English* King who bore Arms on his Seals, and who carry'd in his Shield *three Lions passant*, born ever since for the Royal Arms of *England*.

About
land, Ne
besieg'd
hundred
French K
with Sh
of his M
the King
Possession
At Leng
Vendosme
Battle, r
great Nu
ioners by
with a g
the King
Vassals o
with Kin
This V
before th
to decide
lect Con
Party to
to which
approved
the fifth
ther ; but
sages shev
this Princ
monished
dom, and
the King
ry charita
During
fested by
famous o
companie
dred stron
Passenger
clamation
hide him
ling sick,
trayed, a
London v
by one ca

About two Months after the King's Arrival in *England*, News was brought that *Vernvill* in *Normandy* was besieg'd by the *French King*. *Richard* got together one hundred great Ships, and pass'd into *Normandy*. The *French King* immediately rais'd the Siege, and retir'd with Shame and Loss. And here, by the Mediation of his Mother *Eleanor*, Earl *John* was receiv'd into the King's Favour, and restored to all his Honours and Possessions: Which Clemency he never after abus'd. At Length the two Armies drew near each other at *Vendosme*; but the *French King*, unwilling to hazard a Battle, retir'd with such Precipitation and Fear, that great Numbers of his Men were kill'd and taken Prisoners by the *English*, and all the Waggon, and Baggage with a great Treasure fell into their Hands, and also the King's portable Chapel, and the Charters of all those Vassals of the King of *England*, who had confederated with King *Philip* and Earl *John*.

The King goes into France.

The French King flies.

This Victory was succeeded with a Year's Truce; before the Expiration of which King *Philip* propos'd to decide the Controversy between them, by five select Combatants on each Side, and the vanquished Party to submit to the Terms agreed on beforehand; to which Proposal King *Richard* replied, that he well approved of it, provided the King of *France* would be the fifth Man on one Side, and he himself on the other; but this King *Philip* refused. And as these Passages shew the Courage, so another shews the Piety of this Prince: For about this Time a poor Hermit admonished the King to remember the Subversion of *Sodom*, and to abstain from unlawful Lusts: Upon which the King betook himself to his Queen, and became very charitable to the Poor.

During the King's Absence, *England* was much infested by Robbers, Thieves, and Outlaws; the most famous of whom was a Man called *Robin Hood*, accompanied by another called *Little John*, and an hundred strong Bow-Men, who in *Yorkshire* molested all Passengers upon the Highway; against whom a Proclamation was issued, which obliged *Robin Hood* to hide himself in a Nunnery called *Birkley*, where falling sick, and desiring to be let Blood, he was betrayed, and bled to Death. About the same Time *London* was afflicted with a great Tumult, occasioned by one called *William Longbeard*, about a Tax, which

England infested with Robbers.

A Sedition in London.

he

he pretended was unequally laid. Many of his Party were slain, and he and many others taken, of which Number himself and eight more were executed, which put an End to the Sedition.

But to return to the King's Affairs beyond the Seas; there passed several Interchanges between the *English* and *French*; sometimes of Wars with Plunderings and Devastations, and sometimes of Truces with Interviews and Parley, both Kings seeking to augment the Number of their Friends; in which King *Richard* succeeded, for he drew from the *French* King's Party *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, and *Raymund*, Earl of *Tholouse*. In one of these Military Actions, the Bishop of *Beauvais*, who was also an Earl, and of Royal Blood, was taken Prisoner by King *Richard's* Party. He by Letter to the Pope complained of his Confinement, and of his being loaded with Irons, contrary to his Order and Dignity. The Pope wrote to King *Richard*, to know why he detained his dear Brother and Son, the Bishop. The King immediately returned an Answer, and with it the Bishop's Armour, in which he was taken, with this Passage on it, *Holy Father, will you be pleased to see, whether this is your Son's Coat, or not?* Upon which the Pope desisted, and left the Bishop to purchase his own Liberty, which he did for ten thousand Marks. Still King *Richard* increased his Party by new Confederates, as *Arthur*, Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke of *Lovain*, the Earls of *Guienne*, *Bulloign*, and others. About this Time King *Richard* attack'd the *French* between *Curcet* and *Gisors*, and put them to Flight; and the King of *France* hardly escaped with his Life; for passing a Bridge the Crowd was so great, that it broke down, and *Philip* fell into the River *Ept*. King *Richard* in his Letter ascribed this Victory to God and his Right, which first gave Occasion to this antient Motto, *Dieu et mon Droit*. And now many great Men joined with Pope *Innocent*, who sent a Cardinal to put an End to this War, and reconcile the two Kings. This had so good an Effect, that not long after a firm Peace was concluded between them.

1199.
A Peace concluded.

1198.
Many joyn
the King.

The *French*
beaten.

But not long after this Treaty, King *Richard's* Avarice was the Occasion of his Death; for *Vidamor*, Viscount of *Limosin*, having found a great Treasure of Gold in his Land, sent a large Part of it to the King,
who





KING IOHN.

who no
as Tre
count n
and bef
take the
viewing
man sho
Upon v
Marcha
hang up
was on
fore the
done hin
ther rou
two Bro
ing to ki
venge n
him, wh
The Kin
Shillings
Death, o
King, h
of *April*
reigned r

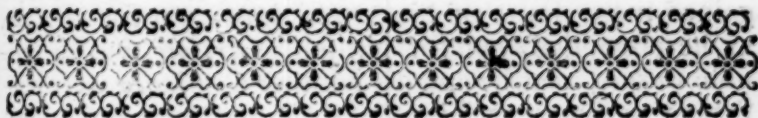


EARL
imm
with his
He made
Rewards
other M
People to
rival they
saries, by
Rights, a
tion, to f
thur, Ea
VOL.

The Reign of King JOHN.

193

who not being content with it, demanded the whole as Treasure Trove, and his Prerogative. The Viscount not yielding, the King marched with his Army and besieged the Castle of *Chaluz*, and swore he would take the Castle and hang every Man: But as he was viewing it, in order to begin the Storm, a Crosbow-man shot at him, and wounded him in the Shoulder. The King wounded. Upon which he returned to his Quarter, and ordered *Marchade* to begin the Storm; and when taken, to hang up every Man, except him who shot at him, who was one *Bertram*, whom they sav'd and brought before the King, who asked him, what Injury he had done him, that he should kill him? To whom the other roughly replied, That he had killed his Father and two Brothers with his own Hand, and was endeavouring to kill him also; therefore he might take what Revenge he pleased; and that he was glad he had slain him, who had done so much Mischief in the World. The King forgave him, and ordered him an hundred Shillings besides: But *Marchade*, after the King's Death, His Death, ordered him to be flead alive, and hanged. The King, his Wound gangrening, died upon the sixth of *April*, in the forty first Year of his Age, having reigned nine Years and nine Months.



The Reign of King JOHN.

EARL *John*, the sole surviving Brother of *Richard*, A.D. 1199. immediately upon his Death, being in the Field John secures the Crown. with his Army, took all Methods to secure the Crown. He made the Army his by great Promises of Gifts and Rewards; and then dispatched Archbishop *Hubert*, and other Men of Influence, into *England*, to prepare the People to receive him for their King. Upon their Arrival they prevailed with most of King *John's* Adversaries, by promising them, that he should restore their Rights, and govern the Kingdom with all Moderation, to swear Fealty to him. On the other Hand, *Arthur*, Earl of *Anjou*, Son of *John's* elder Brother, Arthur puts in for his Right. *Jeffrey*,

The History of ENGLAND.

Jeffrey, was very active with the Nobility of *Anjou*, *Maine*, and *Tureine*, to recover his Right, and they all declared for him. *John* was sensible that this Cloud would soon break into a violent Storm; and therefore resolved to secure the Possession of *England* first, after having received the Investiture of *Normandy*. Accordingly he hasted into *England*, with his Mother *Eleanor*, where, by way of Election, he received the Crown at the Hands of *Hubert*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who in his Speech declared, "That by all Reason divine" and human, none ought to succeed in the Kingdom, "but he who should be for the Worthiness of his Virtues" "universally chosen by the State, as was this Man." Queen *Eleanor* was very active for her Son *John*, and against her Grandson *Arthur*, who was the right Heir in Succession.

John crowned.
ed.

England being secured, *John* hastens into *Normandy*, where the *French* King having knighted *Arthur*, and received his Homage for the same, had drawn the People into a general Revolt. *John* considering his precarious Title to the Crown was unwilling to engage in a War; and therefore mediated a Parley with the *French* King; but to no Purpose; for that King understanding *John's* Circumstances, stood upon such Conditions as *John* could not comply with; and so they appealed to the Sword. The *French* King had the better of *John*, and gained many Parts of his Dominions, not for *Arthur*, as he pretended, but for himself. *Arthur* was so sensible of this, that he and his Mother *Constance* were persuaded to submit to King *John's* Protection; but understanding he meant to imprison them, they fled the next Day to *Angiers*, and so made both Kings their Enemies; who both by the Mediation of the Pope's Legate conclude a Peace upon these Conditions, That

A. D. 1200.
A Peace
concluded.

Lewis, the eldest Son to King *Philip* should marry *Blanche*, Niece to King *John*, who gave with her the City and County of *Eureux*, with several Castles in *Normandy*, and thirty thousand Marks in Silver, and to leave him all his Territories in *France*, if he died without Issue; and that he should give no Assistance to his Nephew *Otho*, the Emperor. The Emperor being thus deserted by his Uncle King *John*, demands of him the City of *Eureux*, and County of *Poitou*, and two Parts of the Treasure which his Uncle King *Richard* had given him by Will; but too late; the Obliga-

tions

gations of Blood, and rendring of Dues always giving Place to the Necessities of State.

Soon after King *John* repudiates his Wife, on Pre-
tence of Consanguinity, and marries *Isabel* the Daughter
and Heiress of the Earl of *Angouleme*. He then returned
to *England*, and imposes three Shillings upon every
Plough-Land, to discharge the Dowry of thirty thou-
sand Marks, which he had promised to the King of
France's Son, with his Niece *Blanche*. *Jeffrey* the
Archbishop of *York*, King *John's* Brother, opposeth this
Tax; for which, and his not Appearance upon Sum-
mons, the King seizeth on all his Temporalities: Up-
on which the Archbishop interdicts the whole Province.
The King, with his new Queen, makes a Progress in-
to the North, and exacts great Fines of Offenders in
his Forests. In his Passage thro' *Yorkshire*, his Brother,
the Archbishop, refused him Wine, and the Honour
of the Bells: But by the Mediation of four Bishops,
four Barons, and a great Sum of Money, they were re-
conciled. Upon the *Easter* after this Progress, the
King was again crowned, with his Wife *Isabel*, at *Can-*
terbury, by Archbishop *Hubert*; and the Earls and Ba-
rons, who had been summoned to be ready with Horse
and Armour to pass the Seas with him, send him
Word, that unless he would restore them to their
Rights and Liberties, they would not attend him. Up-
on which the King took their Castles from them; and
goes into *Normandy*, notwithstanding this Refusal of
the Nobility, and there farther ratified his Agreements
with the *French* King, who in a very splendid Manner
treated King *John* and his Queen at *Paris*. And here
both Kings being solicited by the Pope's Legate, grant-
ed a Subsidy of one fortieth Part of all their Subjects
Revenues, for one Year, for the Relief of the Chri-
stians in the *Holy Land*. To levy which, the Chief Ju-
stice of *England* sends forth his Writs by Way of Re-
quest, not Coaction. Soon after this *Hugh Celburn*,
whose Wife King *John* had taken, combines with *Ar-*
thur and his Party; and the *French* King, notwithstand-
ing his Engagements, takes Part with them, marries
his youngest Daughter to *Arthur*, and requires King
John to deliver up all his Territories in *France*, and by
a peremptory Day summons him to appear personally
at *Paris*, to answer what should be laid to his Charge,
and to abide the Determination of his Court: Which

A. D. 1201

King John's
second Co-
ronation,

A. D. 1262

A Conspirar-
cy against
King John.

King *John* gains a great Victory over the Conspirators.

King *John* refusing, was by Sentence adjudged a Traitor, and to lose all he held of that Crown. Then were all his Dominions attacked at once by the King of *France* in *Normandy*, by *Arthur* and the Barons in *Anjou*, who laid Siege to *Mirabe* defended by *Eleanor* the King's Mother, to whose Relief King *John* marched with greater Expedition and Power than was expected, attack'd and defeated the Besiegers, taking *Arthur*, *Hugh le Brun*, the Barons of *Poitou*, and above two hundred great Men, Prisoners, all whom he carried away bound in Carts, and dispersed them into his Castles, both in *Normandy* and *England*.

King *John* loses all in *France*.

This Victory, which might have established him in the Throne, was his utter undoing; for by the ill Use of it, he lost himself and his Reputation for ever. *Arthur* is shortly after murdered in Prison, and the Fact laid to King *John's* Charge; which, with the barbarous Execution of many of his Prisoners and Hostages, so exasperated the Nobility of *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and *Poitou*, that they took up Arms against him, and appealed to the King of *France* for Justice, who summoned him to appear in his Court; which King *John* refusing, is condemned to lose *Normandy*, which his Ancestors had held three hundred Years, and all his Territories in *France*; which, either thro' his own Negligence, or Treachery of his Ministers, who were much disgusted with him, was brought about, and he wholly dispossessed of them.

A. D. 1203.
He returns to *England*.

In this sad Condition King *John* returns to *England*, and charges the Earls and Barons with his Losses in *France*, and fines them to pay the seventh part of their Goods for refusing him Aid; neither did he spare the Church it self. Some Time after he called a Parliament at *Oxford*, who granted him another Tax of two Marks and a Half upon every Knight's Fee for a military Aid, and upon the Clergy proportionably. No sooner was this Money brought into the Exchequer, but there was an Occasion to take it out again, to spend it in *France*; for the *Bretons* not receiving that Satisfaction they expected from their new Master, called in their old one again. Upon this King *John* hastened into *Normandy* with all the Forces he could get together, and joining those that were there, he took the Castle of

A. D. 1205. *Mont-Alban*, and a little after the City of *Angeirs*. But the King of *France*, by the Fortune of one Day, forced him

him to
return
which
of ever
the Cl
thus co
tient L
that op
and ret
Banish
And n
and his
all the
fully c
(*John*)
sevent
Years
' The
Impley
home,
Cause
which
the T
the Cl
much
ty to b
of Can
Night,
Sub-pr
king h
Joy fo
rival i
the M
send to
See. J
ed by
These
The P
Stead,
ton, a
bishop
his Co
and co
King J
ed Me

him to accept of a two Years Truce; and then he returned into *England* for more Supplies. To obtain which a new Imposition was laid on the thirteenth Part of every Man's moveable and other Goods, both of the Clergy and Laity; who now seeing their Substance thus consumed, began to think of recovering their antient Liberties. The Archbishop of *York* was the first that opposed this Tax, who cursed the Receivers of it, and retired beyond the Seas, chusing rather to live in Banishment Abroad than under Oppression at Home.

And now began that fatal Breach between the King and his Subjects, which cost more noble Blood than all the Foreign Wars since the Conquest; and did not fully cease till the great Charter (first granted by King *John*) was ratified by *Edward* the First, in the twenty seventh Year of his Reign, which was above eighty Years after.

A. D. 1206.
Civil Wars
between K.
John and his
Subjects.

The Nobility in *England* having lost their Estates and Employments abroad, and being perpetually harass'd at home, took up Arms to secure their Liberties. Their Cause was much better than their Prosecution of it; which occasion'd great Disorder. The Corruption of the Times contributed much to the Mischief, but the Clergy by their Ambition and Avarice contributed much more; for they brought in a feigned Piece of Piety to be a Party in the Contest. *Hubert* Archbishop of *Canterbury* being dead, the Monks secretly in the Night, and to prevent the King, elected *Reginald* their Sub-prior to be Archbishop, and sent him to *Rome*, taking his Oath of Secrecy beforehand. But his great Joy for his Preferment soon broke out; for at his Arrival in *Flanders*, he made his Election known; which the Monks hearing, and fearing the King's Displeasure, send to him for Leave to elect a fit Person for their See. *John Gray*, Bishop of *Norwich*, was recommended by the King, whom they elect their Archbishop. These Elections are warmly controverted at *Rome*: The Pope and Cardinals make both void, and in their Stead, on their own Authority, make one *Stephen Langton*, a Cardinal and an *Englishman*, then at *Rome*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. The Pope wrote to K. *John* in his Commendation, and exhorts him to receive him; and commands the Monks of *Canterbury* to obey him. King *John* enraged at the Pope's Treatment, sent armed Men to expel the Monks of *Canterbury* as Traitors.

A controversy
about the
Election of
an Archbi-
shop.

A. D. 1207.

tors. They fly to *Flanders*, and their Goods are confiscated. Then the King writes to the Pope, and postulates with him about this Affair, affirming, "that *England* alone yielded more Profit to *Rome* than all the other Nations on this Side the *Alps*; That he would vindicate the Liberties of his Crown to Death, and not be compel'd to recede from the Election of the Bishop of *Norwich*; and threatens, that if the Pope refuses to do him Justice herein, he would hinder all Resort to the Court of *Rome*.

King John writes to the Pope about it.

Pope's Answer to him.

King enraged against the Pope.

The Kingdom interdicted.

A. D. 1208.

The Pope having receiv'd the King's Letters, return'd him a grave and reproving Answer; and also wrote to the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, and *Worcester*, commanding them to treat first mildly with the King, and exhort him to submit to the See of *Rome*; but if he persisted, to interdict the whole Kingdom, and if that would not prevail, he would deal more severely with him himself. He farther charged the Suffragan Bishops of the Province of *Canterbury*, by Virtue of their Canonical Obedience, to receive their Archbishop *Stephen*, and to obey him with all Respect. The Bishops shew'd the King this Mandate, and intreated him for God's Sake to recall the Archbishop and the Monks of *Canterbury*. The King broke out into a violent Passion against the Pope and Cardinals, swearing by God's Teeth, "That if they, or any other should dare to put the Kingdom under Interdiction, he would immediately send all the Clergy of *England* to the Pope, and confiscate their Goods; and that if any Persons, sent from *Rome* for that End, were found in the Land, their Eyes should be put out, and their Noses slit, and so sent Home." The Bishops were ordered immediately to depart his Presence, as they tendred their own Safety. They forthwith acquaint the Pope; he interdicts the whole Kingdom: Upon which the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, *Worcester*, *Bath*, and *Hereford*, fled secretly out of the Kingdom. Immediately all the Prelates and their Servants were commanded to leave the Nation; their Bishopricks and Abbies were put into the Hands of Laymen, and their Revenues confiscated to the King's Use. The Monkish Writers of these Times give us a tragical Account of the barbarous Usage the Clergy met withal from the King's Servants; but their rebellious Obstinacy deserved such Severities; and tho' the King could not prevent this

this C
sequen
diers t
require
their S
dred.
ed to c
by his
" King
" he k
Report
Baron
Ireland
Queen
not pro
to take
France
starved
vertent
the Lon
and ma
by Me
he laid
stages o
Years o
Whe
without
to exce
and the
Clergy
they d
length
King's
the Ser
" any
" bedie
without
this Ad
William
He was
mand w
ed. A
Empero
from th

this Curse, yet he endeavoured to hinder the ill Consequences of it; accordingly he sent a Body of Soldiers to most of the great Men of the Kingdom, to require of them Hostages for their Fidelity; some sent their Sons, others their Nephews, and nearest Kindred. *William de Brause*, a Nobleman, being required to deliver his Hostage was prevented in his Answer by his Wife, who told the Commissioners, "That the King should have none of her Sons to keep, because he kept *Arthur* his own Brother's Son so ill." Upon Report of this Answer, the King sent to apprehend the Baron; but he fled with his Wife and two Sons into *Ireland*, from whence this afflicted Lady sent to the Queen four hundred Kine and a Bull, but this would not procure a Pardon. The King at length found Means to take her and her Sons, (the Baron escaping into *France*) imprisoned them in *Windsor Castle*, and there starved them to Death; a hard Punishment for an inadvertent, tho' witty Speech. The King displeased with the *Londoners*, removed his Exchequer to *Northampton*, and marches with his Forces towards *Scotland*: But by Mediation a Peace was concluded. In his Return he laid open all Inclosures in his Forests, and took Hostages of all Free Tenants, even of Children of twelve Years old throughout his Kingdom.

When the Interdiction had continued two Years, without any Effect on the King, the Pope proceeded to excommunicate him; but this Method failed also, and the King only grew the more enraged against the Clergy; so that notwithstanding the Pope's Mandate, they durst not execute it for many Days after. At length the Archdeacon of *Norwich*, an Officer in the King's Exchequer, conferring with his Fellows about the Sentence, affirmed, "That it was not lawful for any beneficed Men to remain in the Service and Obedience of an excommunicated King;" and so without Leave he retired Home. The King hearing of this Action, was very angry, and immediately sent *William Talbot* with armed Men to apprehend him: He was taken, and imprisoned, and at the King's Command was put into a Sheet of Lead, in which he perished. At this Time also, the Pope excommunicated the Emperor *Otho*, and absolved all the States of *Germany* from their Obedience to him. Thus the two greatest

King John
excommunicated.

Otho the Em-
peror ex-
communicated.

Princes A. D. 1209.

The History of ENGLAND.

Princes in the World were left to the Mercy of their Subjects, so far as lay in the Pope's Power.

A. D. 1210.
King goes
into Ireland.

King *John* having extorted great Sums from the *Jews*, resolves upon an Expedition into *Ireland*, upon Advice of some Disorders there. The great Men submitted upon his Arrival, and did Homage to him. The King, to prevent future Disorders, ordains that Country to be governed by the Laws and Customs of *England*, caused *English* Money to be coined there, of equal Value, and alike current as in *England*: And after three Months Stay, having constituted the Bishop of *Norwich* Chief Justice of *Ireland*, the King returned to *England*; and presuming upon his new Strength, summons all the Prelates to appear at *London*; where he extorted from them, for the Redemption of their Sees, the Sum of one hundred thousand Pounds Sterling.

Lewelin with
the Welsh in
Arms.

The *Welsh*, under *Lewelin* King of *North Wales*, were up in Arms; against whom King *John* march'd, and soon reduc'd them to his Obedience, taking twenty eight Children of their best Families, for Pledges of their future Subjection; and returning thence, he exacts two Marks of every Knight who had not attended in that Expedition.

A. D. 1212.

At *Northampton* he received the Pope's Legates *Pandulphus* and *Durandus*, sent to establish Peace between the Kingdom and Clergy. The King consented that the Archbishop and Monks should return home; but refus'd to make Satisfaction for their Goods confiscated; at which the Agents for the Pope departed with Dissatisfaction. But the Pope finding the King a little yielding, grew more exorbitant in his Demands, and would force him to what he pleased; and absolves all the King's Subjects from their Obedience; and forbids them, under Pain of Excommunication, the King's Table, Council, or Conference. But this Proceeding of the Pope's had not the intended Effect; for many of King *John*'s Subjects still stuck by him: Tho' it caused the *Welsh* to revolt, and some of his People to conspire against him. The King hastened to subdue the *Welsh*; causing the twenty eight Children, their innocent Pledges, to be hanged up in his Presence. But having discover'd a Conspiracy against his Person, he was obliged to return to *London*, to suppress the suspected Nobles; of some of whom he got Pledges, and others fled.

The Pope en-
rag'd.

The Welsh a-
gain revolt.

The Pope, enraged that none of his wholesome Severities had taken Effect, proceeded to his last Efforts, and pronounced the greatest and most imperious Sentence that ever was given against any sovereign Prince, viz. an absolute Deposition from the royal Government of *England*: And wrote to the King of *France*, "That if ever he expected to have his Sins forgiven, either in this World or the next, he should attempt by all means to expel King *John* out of his Kingdom, and possess the same for himself and his Heirs for ever." Pope's Sentence against the King.

And to the same Effect, his Holiness sent Letters to other Princes, and great Men of other Nations, to persuade them to assist the King of *France* in this Enterprize, granting them the same Remission of Sins, as if they undertook the holy War. The *French* King hereupon commands all his great Men to prepare to assist him in this Work: And for their Transportation into *England*, he gets ready a noble Fleet. King *John* likewise prepares for Defence, and summons all Orders and Degrees to be ready, upon Pain of Culvertag, (that is, being branded for Cowards) and perpetual Servitude. Upon this, such Multitudes came in, that Arms and Provisions could not be got sufficient for them; accordingly, all the unable and unnecessary Persons were sent home again, and only sixty thousand choice Men kept, with a Navy superior to that of *France*. With these Forces King *John* expected the Enemy. *Pandulphus* the Legate, seeing these Preparations, persuades the *French* King to entertain a Treaty of Peace; then comes over to King *John*, and terrifies him with the *French* Preparations; and by these subtil Means he prevailed on him to yield to any Conditions whatsoever, not only to grant a full Satisfaction to the Archbishop and Monks of *Canterbury*, and the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, *Bath* and *Lincoln*, who were fled to the Archbishop; but also to lay down his Crown, Scepter, Mantle, Sword and Ring, the Badges of his royal Dignity, at the Feet of *Pandulphus*; delivering up therewith the Kingdom of *England* to the Pope, and submitting to the Judgment and Mercy of the Church. Two Days the Legate kept the Crown; and the King and his Nobles did consent, That he and his Successors should hold the Kingdom of *England*, and Lordship of *Ireland*, from the See of *Rome*, at the annual Tribute of one thousand Marks. And this, with his Homage and Fealty, he confirm- He stirs up the French King and others against him.

French King's Designs against him.

King John resigns his Kingdom to the Pope.

The History of ENGLAND.

confirmed by Charter, at a House of the Templars, near *Dover*. The weighty Reasons which mov'd King *John* to such a mean Condescension, are said to be, "1. The deep Sense of his own Sins against God, having lived five Years excommunicated; and the Troubles the Kingdom was in by the Interdiction. 2. The Power of his Enemies, the King of *France* and his Adherents. 3. The doubtful Allegiance of his Nobility, whom he had offended. 4. The Approach of Ascension-day, after which, one *Peter*, an Hermit, had prophesied that he should be no longer King." Which in some Sense proved true, by this Resignation. Yet still the Interdiction continu'd, and the King's Absolution was deferr'd, till full Restitution was made to the Clergy; for whom eight thousand Marks of Silver were presently deliver'd to *Pandulphus*, who trampled it under his Feet, as if that base Matter was Dirt, in Comparison of the Grace conferred on the King, the Transgressor: Yet he took it up again, and carried it with him into *France*. And forbids the *French* King to proceed any farther in this Enterprize, upon Pain of Excommunication, since King *John* had thus submitted himself to the Church.

The *French* King, enraged at this unexpected Message, having made such great Preparations, and being elevated with the Hopes of Success, could scarce contain himself: But seeing his Confederates quash'd by the Menaces of the Church, he desists, extremely discontented; and falls upon the Earl of *Flanders*, with all his Forces, because he had refus'd to follow him against King *John*. The Earl sends immediately to King *John* for Aid, who willing to employ his Navy, and People ready for War, sends five hundred Ships, with seven hundred Knights, into *Flanders*, under the Conduct of his base Brother *William Longsword*, Earl of *Salisbury*. They sail'd to the Port of *Dam*, where the *French* Navy lay at Anchor, in great Disorder, and without Defence, their Forces being gone up into the Country, which they attack'd, and destroy'd; after which they join'd the *Flemings*, and drove the *French* Army home, with great Dishonour and Loss.

King *John*, being puffed up with this Victory, and his Peace with the Church, resolves upon great Things, one of which was to invade the *French* Dominions: And to this End, he engag'd the Emperor *Otho* to assist him:

Victory over
the *French*.

King for in-
vading
France, the
Nobility a-
gainst it.

him: A
Captain
mouth.
of his
tend him
their L
sends f
shops th
stitution
and Se
diately
to the
Knees
Compa
with g
defend,
renew t
ly those
accordi
leaving
Fitz-Pe
take the
goes to
diers de
a Rage
lowing
these L
rectly a
King in
aside th
seeing t
and so
Archbis
that un
all who
Lords
A Pa
Paul's
of *Henr*
his Peo
with th
Counse
read, th
bishop,
Blood;

him: And then he sent great Sums of Money to his Captains in *Flanders*, and assembled his Army at *Portsmouth*. But these Designs were spoil'd, by the Revolt of his Nobility, who absolutely refus'd to assist or attend him in it, till he was absolv'd, and had confirmed their Liberties to them. This so enraged him, that he sends forthwith for the Archbishop, and the other Bishops that were exil'd, and promised them speedy Restitution and Satisfaction by Charter under the Hands and Seals of twenty four Earls and Barons. Immediately *Pandulphus*, and the exil'd Clergy, came over to the King at *Winchester*, who met them, and on his Knees with Tears receives them, and implores their Compassion on him and the Kingdom; he is absolv'd with great Penitence, and solemnly swears to love, defend, and maintain the Church and its Ministers; to renew the good Laws of his Predecessors, and especially those of King *Edward*, and to judge all his Subjects according to the just Judgment of his Court. Then leaving the Government of the Kingdom to *Jeffrey Fitz-Peter*, and the Bishop of *Winchester*, and they to take the Counsel of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, he goes to *Portsmouth* to pass into *France*: But his Soldiers demand Supplies of Money, which he refusing, in a Rage, sails to *Jersey*; but none of his Nobles following him, he returns and levies Forces to chastise these Lords. The Archbishop tells him, that it was directly against his Oath at his Absolution; to whom the King in a great Passion replied, that he would not lay aside the Business of the Kingdom for his Pleasure, seeing the Judgment of the Laity did not belong to him; and so in a Fury he marched to *Nottingham*. The Archbishop follows him, and told him in plain Terms, that unless he would desist, he would excommunicate all who took up Arms; and so obtained a Day for the Lords to come to Court.

King John
absolved.

A Parliament was soon after called, and met in St. Paul's Church, where the Archbishop produc'd a Charter of *Henry I.* whereby he granted the antient Liberties to his People, according to the Laws of King *Edward*, with those Emendations, which his Father, by the Counsel of his Barons, did ratify. This Charter being read, the Barons rejoiced, and swore before the Archbishop, that for these Liberties they would spend their Blood; and entering into an Agreement with him for

A Parliament held in
St. Paul's
Church.

King *John*
resolves to be
absolute.

that End, the Parliament broke up. Upon which the King was resolved to try all Methods to make himself absolute Lord of his Subjects; accordingly he sent an Embassy to *Miramumalim*, the *Moor*, King of *Africa*, for Assistance against his own Subjects, offering to resign his Kingdom to him, and hold it ever after by Tribute from him, and to renounce the Christian Faith, and receive that of *Mahomet*. *Miramumalim* received the Message with Disdain, and ordered the Ambassadors to depart his Court immediately. King *John* being disappointed in this Attempt, takes another way to bring about his Designs, and tries Pope *Innocent* with great Sums of Money, and Reassurance of his tributary Subjection, which he confirmed by a new Oath and Charter; whereupon the Interdiction was taken off, which had continued six Years, three Months and fourteen Days; and the King was recommended to *Rome* for a most tractable and obedient Son of the Church.

The following Year the King and Queen went into *France*, received the Fealty of many of the Barons of *Poitou*, and recovered several Places there; then he goes into *Bretagne*, recovers *Nantes*, and prepares to fight *Lewis* the *French* King's Son. But the *Poitevians* refusing to fight, the King was forc'd to leave the Field, and make a dishonourable Truce. About the same Time the *French* King overthrew *Otho's* Forces, being in Number one hundred and fifty thousand Foot, besides Horse: In which Battle one thousand five hundred Knights were slain, and many great Men taken Prisoners; The Emperor escaped with Difficulty, and died soon after.

The Barons
meet at St.
Edmonds-
Bury;

And march
towards *Ox-*
ford.

Upon these Misfortunes of the King and his Confederates, the Barons met at *St. Edmonds-Bury* to confer about the Charter of *Henry I.* and swore upon the High Altar, That if the King refused to confirm those Liberties, they would by Force of Arms compel him. Accordingly they provide themselves with Horse and Armour, and resolve to petition him at *Christmas* upon that Account. The Petition being presented, the King only answered, That since the Matter they requested was of Importance, he would take till *Easter* to consider of it: By which the Barons perceiving that nothing was to be obtained but by Force, they assemble their Army, and marched towards *Oxford*, where the King was. He sends Commissioners to them to know what

what th
quired.
read, th
did not
would
him to

Upon
Castles,
the City
Earl M
the Baro
a Mead
Meeting
firm the
restor'd,
MAGN
Security
Conserv
the Kin
Castles,
recover
sellers t
himself
Domini
he prete
fore of
with it.
thence
this for
at once
Time k
London
son, or
cure for
at the T
sure ne
turers, I
Mischie
his own
Progres
of his
Women
The
took in
Opposit

what those Laws and Liberties were, which they required. They gave a Schedule of them, which being read, the King ask'd in a great Rage, why the Barons did not demand the Kingdom also? and swore he would never grant those Liberties which would reduce him to the Condition of a Servant.

Upon this Answer, the Barons seize some of his Castles, and the *Londoners* joyn with them, delivering the City into their Custody. But by the Mediation of Earl Marshal and others, a Parley was obtain'd with the Barons, to be held between *Windsor* and *Stains*, in a Meadow call'd *Running-Mead*, where after many Meetings and much Debate, the King consented to confirm those Laws and Liberties formerly granted and restor'd, and in Part ordain'd by *Henry I.* and call'd *MAGNA CHARTA*; and also granted a Charter of Security, whereby twenty five Barons are constituted Conservators of the Liberties, with Power to compel the King to observe this great Charter, by seizing his Castles, &c. Thus were the Rights of the Kingdom recover'd out of the very Fire. But some evil Counsellors telling the King, that by this Grant he had made himself a King without a Kingdom, a Lord without Dominions, and a Subject to his Subjects; upon this he pretended, that what he did was by Force, and therefore of no Obligation; and resolv'd never to comply with it. Immediately he retir'd to the *Isle of Wight*, thence he sends his Agents to *Rome* to complain of this forced Act to the Pope; who condemns it, and at once excommunicates the Barons; who all this Time kept themselves and their Forces together about *London*; but sought not to surprise the King's Person, or intercept his Agents. The King sent to procure foreign Forces, and turned Pirate, till they arriv'd; at the Time appointed, he meets them at *Dover*; but sure never was there such a Sight of desperate Adventurers, leading an execrable Sort of People ready for any Mischiefs. With these King *John* designs to set upon his own People, and in all Probability had made a great Progress in his Designs, had not *Hugh de Bovis*, one of his Assistants, been lost with forty thousand Men, Women, and Children, in a Storm.

The King with this Crew, in less than half a Year, took in all the Castles of the Barons, who made no Opposition; and he was absolute Master of all *England*, except

Londoners
join the Barons.

King confirms *Magna Charta*.

Revokes it again.

Barons apply
to the French
King.

except *London*, which he durst not attack, because the Barons were there, and had sworn to die together. At *St. Albans* the King divides his Army, giving the Command of one Part to the Earl of *Salisbury*, to cut off, if possible, all Provisions from *London*, and marching with the other himself Northwards, both Armies laid waste the Country: And the Excommunication of the Barons is first published at *St. Albans*. And now the Barons seeing themselves depriv'd of their Estates, which were given to Strangers, and their Wives and Daughters violated, fell upon another Extreme; making their Application to *Lewis* the French King's Son for Assistance, promising him the Crown, and giving Pledges to perform it. *Lewis* and the French King resolve to assist them; and make great Preparations to accomplish it; at which the Pope is angry, and sends to them not to invade *England*, because King *John* was a Vassal of the Roman Church. The King of *France* answers like an English King, That the Kingdom of *England* never was, nor is, nor ever shall be the Patrimony of *St. Peter*; and that King *John* could not give away the Kingdom without the Consent of the Barons. *Lewis* having got all Things in a Readiness, sails from *Calais* with above six hundred Ships, and landed his Army at *Sandwich*. King *John* was at *Dover* with his Forces; upon Notice of the French Power, and distrusting the Faith of his Mercenaries, he quits the Field. *Lewis* gets Submission of all *Kent*, except *Dover*; then is joyfully receiv'd by the Barons at *London*, who swear Fealty to him. The Pope excommunicates *Lewis*; *Dover*, *Windsor*, and some other Castles held out for King *John*. The Places of Action in this War were about *Wales*, *Norfolk* and *London*; and many Mischiefs were done during the Summer. But an End was put to these Troubles about the End of *October*, when this fiery King was taken off by a burning Fever, and was buried in the Cathedral Church of *Worcester*, according to his own Appointment, after he had reigned eighteen Years, five Months, and four Days. He died in the fifty first Year of his Age, having by Will appointed his Son *Henry* to succeed him.

King *John*
dies.

The

the
At
Com-
off,
ching
laid
f the
y the
which
nters
Ap-
nce,
per-
affist
h it;
ot to
l of
like
ever
Pe-
ing-
ha-
alais
y at
ces;
the
ewis
n is
wear
wis;
for
were
chiefs
put
this
was
ding
teen
the
nted



The



IMn
 ry
 crown
 comm
 Marsh
 for C
 his Pri
 shops,
 a Stran
 further
 acting
 the C
 that L
 as soon
 which
 ry; bu
 it a Ye
 Glocest
 to him
 the Kin
 Mount
 Legate
 curs'd
 King's
 defeat
 the gre
 or Me
 Fight v
 News
 Forces
 London
 low; a
 to relin
 ing tha
 at Sea,
 for his



The Reign of King HENRY III.

IMmediately upon the Death of King *John*, Hen-^{A. D. 1216.}
 ry his eldest Son, about ten Years of Age, was ^{Hen. III.} crown'd at
 crown'd King at *Glocester* on the 28th of *October*, and ^{Glocester.}
 committed to the Care and Guardianship of the great
 Marshal, *William* Earl of *Pembroke*, a Man eminent both
 for Courage and Counsel, and a faithful Servant to
 his Prince; who with the Pope's Legate and some Bi-
 shops, labour'd to draw the Barons and others from
 a Stranger to their new King. Their good Design was
 furthered by the Insolence of the *French*, and *Lewis*
 acting contrary to his Oath, and that strengthned by
 the Confession of Viscount *Melun* upon his Death;
 that *Lewis* intended to extinguish the *English* Nation
 as soon as he could get them into his Power: Upon
 which many Lords return'd to the Obedience of *Hen-*
ry; but *Lewis* kept *London* and the Countries about
 it a Year after; and the young King remain'd about
Glocester; during which Time many Places submitted
 to him. At Length *Lewis* is drawn from the Head of
 the Kingdom into *Leicester*shire to relieve the Castle of
Mountsorrel, and afterward to *Lincoln*, where, after the ^{A. D. 1217.}
 Legate had given Absolution to the King's Party, and ^{Lewis's Par-}
 curs'd *Lewis* and his Party, the Earl Marshal, with the ^{ty beaten.}
 King's Forces, attack'd the *French* on all Sides, and
 defeated them, killing Multitudes, and taking many of
 the great Men Prisoners, besides four hundred Knights
 or Men at Arms. Most of those who escaped in the
 Fight were kill'd by the Country People. Upon the
 News of this Disaster, *Lewis* sends into *France* for more
 Forces, and draws all the Remains of his Power to
London. The Earl Marshal, with the young King fol-
 low; and in the first Place propose Terms for *Lewis*
 to relinquish the Kingdom; which he refuseth, till hear-
 ing that his Forces coming from *France* were beaten
 at Sea, then he agrees to take fifteen thousand Marks
 for his Voyage, abjures all Claim to the Kingdom,
 and

and by Oath promiseth to endeavour Restitution of all the Provinces in *France* belonging to this Crown. On the other Hand, King *Henry* takes his Oath, to restore to the Barons all their Rights and Privileges; grants a general Pardon: Prisoners on both Sides were freed; and *Lewis*, honourably attended to *Dover*, departs out of *England*.

Thus were the Distractions wrought among the *English* by the Violence and Oppression of an unruly King, again compos'd, and the Son, notwithstanding the Father's Faults, received by the People, who are naturally given to love and obey their Princes, unless forced by Oppression to vindicate their Liberties. And now to consummate this Peace thus happily begun, the Earl of *Pembroke*, the Protector, set on Foot an Expedition into the Holy Land; on Purpose to employ the discontented Lords and Soldiers. And an Order is issued out to prevent all Strangers from coming into *England*, Merchants only excepted; and by this Method the Nation was at once deliver'd from all the troublesome and burd'ensome Members of it. No sooner had the Lord Protector made these wise Regulations, but he died, to the inexpressible Grief and Loss both of the King and Kingdom. The Bishop of *Winchester* is made Protector, and the young King is again crown'd. A Parliament is call'd, who grants the King two Marks of Silver for every Knight's Fee, for the Affairs of the Kingdom, and Recovery of the King's Dominions beyond Sea. Divers Persons are dispatch'd into *France* to try the Affection of the People there, and to demand the King's Rights; but the King of *France* answer'd, that he would keep all that he had gotten by Forfeiture, and Law of Arms. And to secure Peace at home, the King's Sister *Joanna* is marry'd to the King of the *Scots*, and his Sister to *Hugh de Burgh*. Much about this Time the *Welsh* revolted again; but were soon subdued. And a Commotion in *Ireland* is appeas'd by the late Earl Marshal's Son, and the Kingdom remained in Quiet for some Years.

A Parliament was call'd at *London*, where the Archbishop put the King, now at Years of Discretion, in mind of his Oath, taken by others for him, to confirm the Subjects Liberties, that thereby the Troubles which had happen'd in his Father's Time, might be prevented. Some evil Counsellors did all they could to

The King is crown'd again.

A. D. 1220. His first Parliament.

A. D. 1221.

A. D. 1222. The second Parliament.

to prevent
straint:
tify it,
ry Shiro
Libertie
father,
Delay sh
counsell
met at
and oth
the Arc
prevent
this Par
been ali

The
the King
both of
sessions
out a C
they ob
John ha
enjoy'd
King su
clar'd h
Charter
then no
mation
vileges,
which A
the Blan
of all t
the Nob
ties of t
solved t
which h
sembly,
their mu
tion ma
engaged
ter and

The f
ed with
ther Reg
to their
Request
VOL.

to prevent it, alledging, that it was obtain'd by Constraint: Yet after some Time the King promised to ratify it, and twelve Knights or other legal Men of every Shire, are ordered by Writ to examine what those Liberties were, which they enjoy'd under his Grandfather, and return the same by a certain Day. This Delay shew'd too great a Compliance with those who counsell'd him against it. Upon which diverse Lords met at *Leicester*, with Intent to get *Hugh de Burgh* and others remov'd from the King's Person; but this the Archbishop and other Lords, careful of the Peace, prevented; and the others came in and submitted. At this Parliament the King resum'd such Lands as had been alienated from the Crown by his Ancestors.

The next Year at a Parliament held at *Westminster*, A. D. 1223, The Third Parliament.

the King requir'd the 50th Part of all moveable Goods, both of the Clergy and Laity, for Recovery of his Possessions in *France*; but they would not grant this without a Confirmation of their Liberties, which at last they obtain'd in the same Words and Form as King *John* had done it in his two Charters. The Nation

enjoy'd these Liberties for two Years; And then the King summoned a Parliament at *Oxford*, where he declar'd himself to be of lawful Age, and cancell'd the Charter of the Forests, as granted in his Nonage, having then no Power of himself or his Seal; And by Proclamation declar'd, That whoever would enjoy their Privileges, should renew them under his new Seal; for which *Hugh de Burgh* impos'd great Fines, and took the Blame upon himself, and thereby got the Hatred of all the People. This caus'd a new Insurrection of the Nobility, who demand a Restitution of the Liberties of the Forest, which, if not granted, they were resolved to compel the King to it by the Sword. Upon which he appoints a Day for them to come to an Assembly, where the Matters in Dispute were settled to their mutual Satisfaction. After this, there was a Motion made for the Holy War, in which sixty thousand engaged under the Conduct of the Bishops of *Winchester* and *Exeter*.

This caus'd a new Insurrection of the Nobility, who demand a Restitution of the Liberties of the Forest, which, if not granted, they were resolved to compel the King to it by the Sword. Upon which he appoints a Day for them to come to an Assembly, where the Matters in Dispute were settled to their mutual Satisfaction. After this, there was a Motion made for the Holy War, in which sixty thousand engaged under the Conduct of the Bishops of *Winchester* and *Exeter*.

A. D. 1225, The Fourth Parliament.

The following Year, the *French* Nobles discontented with the Government of *Blanche* the Queen Mother Regent, invited the King of *England* to come over to their Assistance. *Henry* readily complied with their Request; and having supplied himself with Money for

A. D. 1226, The Nobility revolt.

A. D. 1227.

The following Year, the *French* Nobles discontented with the Government of *Blanche* the Queen Mother Regent, invited the King of *England* to come over to their Assistance. *Henry* readily complied with their Request; and having supplied himself with Money for

this Occasion, by Exactions from the Clergy, the City of *London* and the *Jews*, he passed over with a great Army, and landed at *St. Maloes*, being met by the *Poictovins*, who did him Homage. The Queen Regent marched against him with a numerous Army, and much Mischief was done by both Parties, till at Length they conclude a Peace. Upon which the King return'd, bringing with him many of the *Poictovins* to receive Rewards, for which farther Sums must be wrung from the poor People of *England*. And for this End he calls to Account diverse of his Officers, fines and imprisons them, particularly his great Favourite *Hubert*, who is accused of Treason; and *Stephen de Seagrave*, a worse Minister, is put in his Place. Many other great Officers are remov'd, and Strangers put in their Rooms. These Proceedings so exasperated the Nobility, of whom *Richard* Earl Marshal was the Chief, that they entred into a Combination for the Defence of the Publick; they plainly shew'd the King his Danger in preferring Strangers, and that if he would not amend, they would withdraw from his Council. The Bishop of *Winchester* return'd them Answer, that the King might employ what Strangers he pleas'd to compel his rebellious Subjects to Obedience. Upon which Answer, the Lords withdrew, and being sent for to the Parliament, refused to come.

A. D. 1230.

Many great Officers call'd to Account.

To revenge which the King sends for Legions of *Poictovins*, upon which *Roger Bacon* jestingly told him, that Seamen did most fear *Petræ & Rupes*, alluding to *Petrus de Rupibus*, Bishop of *Winchester*, by whom the King was misled at this Juncture. The Lords refuse to come to another Parliament, unless the King would remove the Bishop of *Winchester* and the *Poictovins* from his Court, which if he refus'd, they would expel him and his evil Counsellors out of the Realm, and create a new King. Upon this the King requir'd of all his Nobility Pledges of Allegiance, and sent out Writs for all that held Lands of him by Knights Service to repair to him at *Glocester*. This also the Lords refus'd: And then the King, without the Judgment of his Court, or their Peers, proclaim'd them Outlaws, seized their Lands, which he gave to the *Poictovins*, and issued out Writs to attach their Bodies. The Earls of *Chester*, *Lincoln*, and the King's Brother the Earl of *Cornwall*, were won to the King's Party: Upon which

A. D. 1232.

which
Lewe
of P
to co
Th
them
Gloce
the li
rious
lengt
Mar
the C
it, bu
the C
sellor
the N
minst
his Pe
from
bles,
and I
alfical
The P
signs,
to the
gers f
of W
making
ment.
The
gave
derick
an Im
luc; to
every
marrie
vence,
Kindro
with g
call'd
were n
a Plac
ordere
bery sh
put in

which the rest retire into *Wales*, and confederate with *Lewelin*. Thither *Hugh de Burgh*, having escaped out of Prison, came to them, and they all take an Oath to come to no Agreement with the King.

The King marches his Army against them, engages them, but with so much Loss, that he returned to *Glocester* with Dishonour; and the *Poictouins* met with the like ill Success. And now the War went on furiously on both Sides, with great Effusion of Blood. At length the King by Commission seiz'd upon the Earl Marshal's Estate in *Ireland*. This oblig'd him to leave the Confederate Lords, and hasten into *Ireland* to defend it, but he lost his Life by Treachery. The King denied the Commission, and laid the Blame upon his Counsellors. Two Years these Disturbances continued in the Nation, when the King call'd a Parliament at *Westminster*, wherein the Bishops advise him to agree with his People, and to remove those Strangers and others from his Person, who were the Cause of these Troubles, and to govern the Nation by his own Subjects and Laws; otherwise they would proceed by Ecclesiastical Censure against him and his evil Counsellors. The King, finding he was unable to compass his Designs, yields, and recalls the Lords from *Wales*, restores to them their Places and Estates, removes all the Strangers from him, and call'd his new Officers, the Bishop of *Winchester* and *Stephen Seagrave* to an Account, making them pay dearly for their two Year's Preference.

King's Forces beaten by the Lords,

A. D. 1234.

King and Lords reconcil'd.

The Nation being thus settled in Peace, the King gave his Sister *Isabel* in Marriage to the Emperor *Frederick II.* and with her thirty thousand Marks, besides an Imperial Crown and other Ornaments of great Value; to furnish out which, he rais'd two Marks upon every Hide of Land. The next Year *Henry* himself married *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Raymond* Earl of *Provence*, having nothing with her but poor depending Kindred. Nevertheless this Marriage was solemniz'd with great Magnificence, and then a Parliament was call'd to meet in the Tower; but because the Lords were not willing to assemble there, it was removed to a Place of greater Freedom. In this Parliament it was ordered that all Sheriffs that were found guilty of Bribery should be remov'd, and Men of more Integrity put in their Places, who swore to receive no Gifts but

A. D. 1235.
Isabel the King's Sister married to the Emperor,

A. D. 1236.
King married to Eleanor.

Sheriffs are turn'd out for Bribery,

The History of ENGLAND:

in Provisions, and that but moderately. The King removes diverse of his Counsellors, and would have taken his Great Seal from the Lord Chancellor; but he would not deliver it, alledging, that he had it by the common Council of the Kingdom; and therefore without the Consent of the same he would not resign it. *Peter de Rivallis* and *Stephen Seagrave* were again received into Favour, which occasioned great Murmurings: And these Discontents were heightened by the King's Attempt to revoke some Grants, as being done without the Consent of the Church, and therefore beyond his Power.

A. D. 1237. The next Year in Parliament the King required the thirtieth Part of all Moveables of the Clergy and Laity; this was refused by the whole Assembly, who plainly told him, that he never did any Good to the Kingdom, and recounted the several Taxes he had already received of twentieth, thirtieth, and fortieth Parts, only to enrich Strangers. Upon this the King promises Amendment, and swears, that if they would relieve his Wants this Time, he would for the future use the Counsel of his own Subjects only, and inviolably observe their Liberties, upon Pain of Excommunication. Upon these Assurances the Parliament grant him a thirtieth Part of their Moveables, reserving to every Man his Cash, Horse and Armour. Four Knights of every Shire, and one of the King's Clerks were appointed to collect this Tax, and to lay it up, that if the King fail in the Performance of his Grant, it might be returned. Some Earls were immediately sworn into the Council; but the King soon broke through these Conditions, making *William Valence*, the Queen's Uncle, his chief Favourite; and *Simon Montfort*, banished out of *France*, is entertained here, marries the King's Sister, and is created Earl of *Leicester*.

The King
makes fair
Promises;

Which he
breaks.

A. D. 1238.
A Commotion
of the
Nobles.

These Actions much incensed the Nobility and People, and put them into a new Commotion, and they appointed *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, the King's Brother, their Commander in Chief; who tells the King of his Exactions upon the Church and State, of his Profuseness upon Strangers, his despising the Counsel of his Subjects, and adhering to that of the Pope's Legate, to the great Grief of his People, and particularly the *Londoners*, who by these Means were become his Enemies. To redress which, the King calls a Parliament at *London*, where the Lords came armed, both for

for the
refuse
Debat
to div
sealed
Public
Montf
and o
Matter
the K
the S
all; a
cil, be
Earl o
every
of the
Favou
three
his Ex
against
by the
exclaim
on sei
hundre
be pref
ed all
of Can
into th
the Cl
to the
the Pe
The K
vocation
present
Legate
On the
born, v
the Ear
Crusad
Pete
ing this
knighte
ny Pres
forced t
Son is

for their own Defence, and to compel the King (if he refused) to observe his former Promises. After many Debates, the King upon Oath refers the whole Matter to diverse grave Men: Articles were drawn up, and sealed by the Legate and many others, and set up to Publick View. But a Stop was soon put to this, by *Montfort's* making his Peace with the Earl of *Cornwal*, and others. And the Earl growing indifferent in the Matter, the Lords are discouraged, and the Miseries of the Kingdom continued. Shortly after the King took the Seal from *Simon Norman*, who before governed all; and turned his Brother *Jeffrey* out of his Council, because they would not yield to grant to *Thomas* Earl of *Flanders*, the Queen's Uncle, a Groat upon every Sack of Wool; by which they regained the Love of the Nobility and People, tho' they lost the King's Favour: Notwithstanding which, the King granted him three hundred Marks to be paid annually out of his Exchequer. The Pope also, to carry on his Wars against the Emperor, extorts great Sums from *England*, by the King's Permission, which caused the Clergy to exclaim against the Pope's Avarice. The Pope still went on seizing upon their Possessions, and sent over three hundred *Romans* with his Mandate, That they all should be prefer'd to Benefices here as they fell. This amazed all the *English* Clergy, but frightened the Archbishop of *Canterbury* out of his See, and caused him to retire into the Abbey of *Pontiniac* in *France*: But others of the Clergy opposed his Rapine; and frankly declare to the King, how prejudicial it was to his Royalty, and the People's Liberty, to suffer the Pope thus to proceed. The King refers them to the Legate, who calls a Convocation, and strongly urges them to supply the Pope's present Wants; they as strongly oppose him; but the Legate by Bribery and Treachery gained his Point. On the sixteenth of *June* this Year the King had a Son born, whom he named *Edward*. About this Time the Earl of *Cornwal*, and diverse others, undertake the *Crusado*.

A. D. 1239
Some great
Officers re-
moved.

The Pope's
Extortions.

Prince *Edward*
born.

Peter of *Savoy*, another of the Queen's Uncles, coming this Year into *England*, was feasted sumptuously, knighted, and created Earl of *Richmond*, and had many Presents given him, towards which the *Jews* were forced to pay twenty thousand Marks: And *Peter* his Son is made Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

A. A. 1242

Henry gains
Wales.

Upon the Death of *Lewelin*, Prince of *Wales*, his two Sons disagree: The King taking the Advantage, and marching into *Wales*, they readily submit, swear Fealty to him, and pay the Charges of his Journey.

Goes into
France.

The Earl of *March*, and many others, solicit the King to go over into *France*, in order to recover his Dominions there. This the Parliament oppose; but the Peers, who had Estates there, were for it, and prevail with the King to undertake it, and an Aid is demanded for it. The Parliament would grant no Supply; whereupon the King was forced to get what he could of private Men, either by Loan or Gift; and then goes with his Queen over into *France*, leaving the Government to the Archbishop of *York*.

A. D. 1242.

In this unsuccessful Expedition he spent all his Treasure upon Strangers. The *Poictovins* deceive him, and the discontented *English* Lords leaving him, he was obliged to patch up a dishonourable Truce with the King of *France*; and then could not return to *England* till he had got a Supply to defray the Charges of his Passage. Some Time after his Return, he imposed another Tax upon the *Jews* for their Redemption, and requires a Contribution of the *Londoners*. His Queen's Mother, the Countess of *Provence*, came to visit the King whom he treats sumptuously, marries her Daughter to his Brother the Earl of *Cornwal*, returned from the Holy Wars; and at the old Lady's Return, the King gave her many rich Presents; and she lived to see all her four Daughters Queens; *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal* being elected King of the *Romans*.

A. D. 1243.
The *Jews* and
Londoners
taxed.

A. D. 1244.
The *Welsh*
and *Scots* re-
volt.

This Year the *Welsh* and *Scots* caused new Troubles by their Revolt: Upon which a Parliament was assembled at *Westminster*, and the King demanded Supplies; but they would grant nothing without an Assurance of Reformation, and the due Execution of the Laws: And farther, they insist that four Persons should be ordained Conservators of the Kingdom, to be sworn of the King's Council, to see Justice duly administered, and the Treasure issued; and also that diverse great Officers of the Crown should be chosen by Parliament. But while these Things were debating, their Accomplishment was hindered by the coming of one *Martin*, a new Legate from the Pope, with a larger Power to exact Money than ever: But he is absolutely denied any; because the Emperor had requested them to give the

The Pope
sends for
more Money.

Pope

Pope
his C
and
Fee to
King
a Peac
King
he der
and to
was o
his C
woul
supply
Mark
Forest
State
Inquir
nually
above
nues o
Exact
at *Lio*
press
" the
" (vi
" if t
" will
fence,
upon
should
The K
Exact
he had
and ha
he sen
same
now t
Churc
less V
the Ki
provid
Queen
and lo
Upon
of his

Pope no farther Assistance ; and promised to submit his Cause to the Arbitration of the Kings of *England* and *France* ; yet they granted 20*s.* of every Knight's Fee to the King for the Marriage of his Daughter. The King having obtained this, marches against the *Scots* ; and a Peace was concluded without striking a Blow. The King returns to *London*, and calls another Parliament ; he demands a Supply to enable him to reduce the *Welsh*, and to pay off his Debts, which were so great, that he was obliged to keep his Palace, to avoid the Clamour of his Creditors : But the Parliament telling him, they would give him no Supply, he took violent Courses to supply his Wants. He made the *Londoners* pay 15000 Marks, and severely fined all that had trespassed on his Forests. But that the King might be acquainted with the State of the Nation, and the Oppression of the Pope, Inquiry was made, what Revenues the *Romans* had annually out of *England* ; and it was found to amount to above 60000 Marks, which was more than the Revenues of the Crown. This, with the rest of the Pope's Exactions, the King notified to the Council, then sitting at *Lions*. This Complaint caused his Holiness to express these Words ; " It is high Time for us to crush the Emperor, that we may trample these petty Kings, (viz. of *England* and *France*) under our Feet ; for if the Dragon be once destroyed, these lesser Snakes will be at our Mercy." This Speech gave great Offence, and in some Measure awakened the King ; whereupon it was ordained, that no Contribution of Money should be given to the Pope by any Subject of *England*. The King at first made a great Bustle about these foreign Exactions ; but he soon gave over the Pursuit of what he had begun ; and so the Pope continued his Rapine ; and having promised to send no Legates into *England*, he sent others, under the Name of Clerks, with the same Power, and who did as much Mischief. And now the State had as much Reason to complain as the Church ; for *Peter de Savoy* brought over several moneyless Virgins to be married to the King's Wards ; and the King's three half Brothers were sent for over to be provided with Estates and Preferments in *England*. The Queen's Mother also came over again to be feasted, and loaded with Gifts at the Expence of the People. Upon which the Parliament reprove the King for Breach of his Charter, by demanding new Supplies ; for his

A Peace made with the Scots.

Inquiry into the Pope's Revenues in *England*.

A. D. 1245.

A. D. 1246. Tribute to the Pope denied.

A. D. 1247.

The Parliament reprove the King.

Judges fleeing the People in their Circuits; and for extorting so much on the Account of his Forests; and then advise him to resume the Crown-Lands, and so supply his Wants out of his Favourites. The King patiently endured all this Reproof, and promised Redress, in Hopes to obtain his Desires: But nothing was granted, and so the Parliament was prorogued till Midsummer, when they met again. The King made a Speech to them, in which he told them, that they should not curb him; for *the Servant is not above his Lord, nor the Disciple above his Master*; and that therefore he would not, at their Request, remove the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer. He then demanded a Tax, which the Parliament refused, and broke up in Discontent. Upon which the King sold all the Jewels and Plate of the Crown: These the City of *London* afterwards bought, which, when the King heard, he enveigh'd against it, and determined to destroy the Trade of the City; and to vex them, a new Fair was set up in *Westminster*; and there was a Prohibition of Commerce in *London* for 15 Days.

The King
sells the Plate
and Jewels
of the
Crown.

A. D. 1249. The *Christmas* following, the King demands a New-Year's Gift of the *Londoners*, and writes imperious Letters, which at length got, tho' unwillingly, from them 20000 Pound; for which the next Year he sent for them to *Westminster-Hall*, and there beg'd their Pardon. He afterwards writes to the Lords apart for Money, telling them of his Poverty, and Debt of 30000*l.* to *Bordeaux*. The Lords would not answer his Requests. Then he wrote to the Clergy to supply him, and told the Abbot of *Borough*, that it was more Alms to give to him, than to a Begger that went from Door to Door. These Methods failing, the poor *Jews* must answer for all, and feel the Weight of his Wants. These he fin'd at his Pleasure; and one *Aaron* protested, that the King at Times, since his Expedition into *France*, had drawn from him 30000 Marks, besides 2000 of Gold, which he had presented to the Queen. The Lords meet again, and press that the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer may be confirmed by Parliament: But not succeeding in this Matter, they went away discontented. About this Time the King endeavours to persuade the Monks of *Durham* to make his Brother *Athelmar* their Bishop: But he could not prevail, because his Brother was very young. Upon which the King declared, that he would

Tries all
Ways to raise
Money.

A. D. 1250.

The
would
to a gre
chester
to prepa
that See
King ge
Sermon
each oth
the Mon
Monks
their B
Judge,
incens'd
That e
Sir Hen
pardon
ing this
Marks
The Ki
Marria
der Kin
Splend
The
by the
Crofs,
Sultan
of the
Years;
ly thre
calls hi
But th
Grant,
drives
Cham
proach
Oaths;
those C
their o
Ab
Jerusa
King o
Privile
The M
may be
to be on

would keep that Bishoprick vacant till he was grown to a greater Age. Shortly after the Bishoprick of *Winchester* becoming void, the King went in Person thither to prepare the Monks to elect his Brother Bishop of that See. They being met in the Chapter-House, the King gets up into the President's Chair, and preaches a Sermon from this Text, *Justice and Peace have kissed each other*: In which he took Occasion to commend the Monks first, and then his Brother. Hereupon the Monks being afraid to oppose him, chose *Athelmar* for their Bishop. Some Time after, Sir *Henry Bath*, a Judge, was accused of Injustice and Treason; which so incens'd the King, that he issued forth a Proclamation, That every Person who had any Complaint against Sir *Henry*, should be heard, and that he would freely pardon any one who should kill him. Notwithstanding this, the King was pacified, and for two thousand Marks Sir *Henry* was restor'd to his former Favour. The King keeping his *Christmas* this Year at *York*, the Marriage between his Daughter *Margaret* and *Alexander* King of the *Scots* was solemnized there with great Splendor.

Sir Henry Bath's Cause.
A. D. 1251.

Margaret the King's Daughter married.

The next Year the King of *England*, being solicited by the Pope and King of *Castile*, takes upon him the Cross, in Order to rescue the King of *France*, then the Sultan's Prisoner; for which End he obtains a Grant of the Tenth both of the Clergy and Laity for three Years; but every one refus'd to attend him, except only three Knights whom the King embraces, kisses, and calls his Brethren, and swears to perform his Journey. But the Parliament, which was call'd to confirm this Grant, absolutely refus'd it: And the King in a Rage drives the Bishop of *Ely* and other Lords out of his Chamber. Upon which the Countess of *Arundel* reproach'd him with his Breach of the Charters and his Oaths; and then told him, *I appeal to Christ against those Counsellors of yours, who have infatuated you, for their own Gain.*

A. D. 1252.

Countess of Arundel reproves the King.

About the same Time the Master of the Hospital of *Jerusalem* at *Clerkenwell*, came to complain to the King of diverse Abuses; who answer'd him, *That their Privileges made them proud, and ought to be revoked.* The Master replied, *So long as you observe Justice, you may be a King; but as soon as you violate it, you will cease to be one.* These Things discover, that the King had lost the

The Master of Clerkenwell Hospital does the same.

A new Confirmation of
Magna Charta.

A. D. 1253.

the Love of his People ; which is not to be wonder'd at, if we consider the Insolencies, which Strangers, in Favour with the King, daily committed, entring into Abbies, Bishops Houses, and other Places; destroying their Deer, spoiling their Goods, and violating the Rights of Hospitality. The general Complaint was, " Our Inheritance is given to Aliens, and our Houses " to Strangers." The Parliament at length, in Hopes of redressing these Grievances, confirm the Tenth granted by the Pope on the Clergy, and three Marks upon every Knight's Fee. Hereupon *Magna Charta* was again confirmed after the most solemn Manner, and with as much Ceremony as Religion and State could devise: For the King with his Nobles and Prelates in their Robes and Ornaments, with burning Candles in their Hands, assemble to hear the Sentence of Excommunication against all Infringers thereof; in whose Presence the Charter of King *John* was publickly read; which done they threw down their Candles, and with one Voice cried out, " So let them, who incur this Sentence, be extinct." And the King farther added with a loud Voice, " As God shall help me, I will, as I am " a Man, a Christian, a Knight, a King crown'd and " anointed, inviolably observe all these Things." At this the Bells rung out, and all the People shouted for Joy.

The Business
of Gascoigne.

After this the Business of *Gascoigne* was taken into Consideration. The King seven and twenty Years before had given *Gascoigne* to his Brother *Richard*, who was receiv'd and continued as their Lord, until he had Issue of his own; and then he revokes it, and confers it upon his eldest Son *Edward*. The *Gascoigners* being doubtful whom to obey, the King commands his Brother to resign his Charter, which he refuses. The King by Money prevails with those of *Bordeaux* to imprison him; but the Earl made his Escape, and comes into *England*. The People of *Bordeaux* swear Fealty to the King, and got a Charter and thirty thousand Marks from the King, and thereby lose his Favour; and to be reveng'd on them, he sends *Simon Montfort*, Earl of *Leicester*, to be their Governor. He using them ill, they complain to the King: The Matter is debated before the King and Council. The Earl of *Cornwall* and the Lords take *Montfort's* Part. The Earl upbraids the King with expensive Service, and with Breach

Montfort
made Governor
nor of Gas-
coigne.

Breach
farther
This
Rage,
coigner
him ov
gets a
their E
King h
the G
Edward
quit h
his Ch
five h
Summ
the M
King
quits h
An
in the
Value
ris, h
King.
and t
and J
him f
nothi
Chart
the C
this t
got n
For
Mon
came
Wife
prese
of In
the K
great
Clerg
and
or K
to d
hund
him,

Breach of his Word, and gives the King the Lie; and farther told him that he was no Christian, and the like. This rough Treatment put the King into a violent Rage, who to revenge himself, encourages the *Gascoigners* against *Montfort*, clips his Wings, and sends him over again. *Montfort* by his Alliance in *France*, gets a Force superior to the *Gascoigners*, and spoils their Estates. They send over new Complaints: The King hastens to their Relief; deposeth *Montfort*, settles the *Gascoigners*, and concludes a Match for his Son *Edward*, with *Eleanor* the King of *Spain's* Sister, to quit his Claim to *Aquitain*. After this the King kept his *Christmas* at *Bordeaux*, and the Queen sent him five hundred Marks for a New Year's Gift. The next Summer she went over to him, with the Prince; and the Marriage was solemniz'd at *Bourges*, where the King of *Spain* knighted the Prince, and by his Charter quits his Claim to *Aquitain* for him and his Heirs for ever.

A. D. 1254.
And is de-
posed.

And now the King prepares for his Return, having in these Journies consumed a Sum far exceeding the Value of all his Lands in *France*. In his Return at *Paris*, he was magnificently entertain'd by the *French* King. About *Christmas* the King arriv'd in *England*, and to supply his immediate Occasions the *Londoners* and *Jews* are squeez'd. He calls a Parliament to raise him some Money, but instead of that he meets with nothing but Complaints of Grievances, and Breach of Charter, and they insisted upon their Rights of chusing the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer. Upon this the Parliament is prorogued: And tho' the King got no Supplies, he had many fresh Occasions for Charge. For the Earl of *Savoy*, the Queen's Brother, desires Money for his Wars, and the Archbishop of *Toledo* came hither with many *Spaniards*, and the Prince's Wife with many more, who were well feasted and presented. The Bishop of *Bononia* is sent with a Ring of Investiture to *Edmund* the King's Second Son for the Kingdom of *Sicily*, and he also was sent back with great Rewards. The Pope demands a Tenth, but the Clergy declar'd that they had rather lose their Livings and Lives, than yield in this Thing either to the Pope or King, who were combined as Shepherd and Wolf to devour the Flock. The Pope sent to borrow five hundred Marks of the Earl of *Cornwal*, but he refus'd him, because he was one on whom he could not di-

The King
returns.
A. D. 1255.

A. D. 1257.

Pope de-
mands a
Tenth.

strain.

Merchants of
Gascoigne
complain.

The *Welsh*
rebel.

Earl of Corn-
wal chose
King of the
Romans.

A. D. 1258.

The Nobili-
ty enter in-
to a Combi-
nation.

And are in
Arms at Ox-
ford.

strain. The Merchants of *Gascoigne* complain to the Prince, now their Lord, of the Hardships they lay under from the King's Officers, who took their Wines from them, and never paid for them, so that they had better trade with *Saracens* and Infidels, than with the *English*. The Prince addresses himself to his Father, and begs a Redress: The King was angry with him for it; but at length was appeased, and ordred them Satisfaction. About this Time the *Welsh* rebel against the Prince, who desires a Supply of Money and Forces against them; but this was denied, and only this Message sent him, that as it was his Principality, he must find Ways to defend it. This Year *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal* was elected King of the *Romans*, which he accepted, and was crown'd at *Aquisgrave*. The King presents to the Parliament his Son *Edmund* in an *Apu- lian* Habit, and begs a Supply to discharge his Inge- ments of an hundred and forty thousand Marks. They, after many Excuses, upon the Assurance of a fresh Con- firmation of *Magna Charta*, grant fifty two thousand Marks; but this did not give Satisfaction. Wherefore the next Year he summons another Parliament at *Lon- don*, wherein he presses them hard for Supplies, to pay his Debts to the Pope. This they absolutely refuse, telling him that if he had unadvisedly bought the King- dom of *Sicily*, and been deceiv'd, it was his own Fault. They added, that he had broke his Promises and Char- ter, and that his Brethren and other Strangers were so insolent as not to be born with. The King's pressing Necessities constrain him to a feigned Submission, and an Acknowledgment of his Faults, together with an Oath to reform all those Errors for the future. But the Lords, not knowing how to trust him any more, adjourned to a Day, and then to assemble at *Oxford*. In the mean Time many of the Nobility enter into a Confederacy, and resolve to effect their Desires by Force. Accordingly when the Parliament met, the Barons came thither with a great Train, under Pretence of some Exploit against the *Welsh*, and to secure the Nation against Foreigners; but their Orders to the *Londoners* to keep their Gates shut, shew'd some other Design. They require their former Liberties, that the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer, should be cho- sen by them. The King seeing their Strength, swears again, and obligeth his Son to swear for the Confirma- tion

tion of
proceed
Brethren
forthw
obliged

The
liament,
inquire
Corrupt
King ca
and by
gainst hi
Conditio
gence t
was co
not let
would
ment o
comply
chafe t
this po
forced
King t
er if p
solved
and re
of *Fra*
three
other
ation,
could
and G
coln,
Sins,
the Pe
by the
Arbite
lows
fed m
Lords
others
And
rel, e
he ha
seiz'd

The Reign of King HENRY III.

227

tion of them. The Lords having gain'd this Point, proceed in their Demands, and require that the King's Brethren, with all the *Poictovins* and Strangers, should forthwith be banish'd the Kingdom : This the King was obliged to comply with. All Strangers banish'd.

The new Chief Justice, *Hugh Bigod*, chosen by Parliament, procures that four Knights in every Shire should inquire into the Oppressions of the Poor, and against Corruption, that Redress might be had. And now the King calls a Parliament, and confirms all their Demands, and by another Charter gave them full Liberty to rise against him, whenever he infringed *Magna Charta*. In this Condition was the Kingdom, when there came Intelligence to the Lords, that *Richard* King of the *Romans* was coming over into *England*. The Lords would not let him land until he had taken an Oath, that he would do nothing prejudicial to the present Establishment of the Kingdom. This the Earl was oblig'd to comply with, for he had spent all his Treasure to purchase the very Title of King of the *Romans*: And in this poor Condition, and on any Terms, he at last was forced to trust to *England*. Notwithstanding which the King takes Heart, and was resolv'd to recover his Power if possible, and therefore sends to *Rome* to be absolved from his Oath, and to *Scotland* for Assistance, and resigns *Normandy* and other Countries to the King of *France* to make him his Friend, and to get of him three hundred thousand Pounds. The Lords, on the other Hand, seek all Ways to strengthen their Association, by keeping each other to their Oaths, but they could not agree long, particularly the Earls of *Leicester* and *Glocester*; and the Bishops of *Worcester* and *Lincoln*, enjoyn'd the King, upon the Remission of his Sins, to prosecute the Cause unto Death, alledging that the Peace of the Church could never be establish'd but by the material Sword. The King of *France* also as Arbitrer, condemned the Provisions of *Oxford*; but allows the Confirmation of K. *John's* Charter. This caused many to dispense with their Oaths, to leave the Lords, and join with the King's Party : And many others were won with Gifts to side with the King. And now *Mortimer* of the King's Party begins the Quarrel, entring upon the Earl of *Leicester's* Lands, because he had join'd with *Lewellin*, Prince of *Wales*, and had seiz'd upon *Mortimer's* Lands in those Parts. *Leicester*

King attempts to recover his Authority from the Lords.
A. D. 1261.

A. D. 1263.

The War between the King and Barons.

A. D. 1264.

A Peace
concluded.

A. D. 1265.

The King's
Party in-
crease.

The Barons
seek for
Peace.

Obtain a
Victory at
Lewis.

obtains many Advantages, takes in many Places of Importance, and grows very powerful. The King not being in a Condition at present to withstand him, mediates a Peace, which is concluded upon these Conditions : That all the King's Castles should be put into the keeping of the Barons ; that the Provisions of *Oxford* should be observed, and all Strangers to leave the Kingdom. But this the King granted only to gain Time and strengthen his Party. In the mean Time the Prince fortified *Windsor-Castle*, committing it to the Custody of Foreigners ; and went himself to *Bristol*, where in an Encounter between his Men and the Citizens, he was worsted. He returns to *Windsor*, which *Leicester* comes to besiege ; *Windsor* is soon surrendered to him, and the Strangers are sent to *France*. Upon this the King to get a little more Time, calls a Parliament at *London*, and so gained many Lords to his Party, and then he marched to *Oxford*, where many *Scots* Lords came to his Assistance. Thence he marched to *Northampton*, where he took *Leicester's* Son, and fourteen other Lords, Prisoners ; and from thence he passed to *Nottingham*, laying waste the Barons Lands that lay in his Road. *Leicester* draws towards *London*, to secure that City and *Kent*. The King hastens to relieve the Castle of *Rocheſter*. Upon this *Leicester* and *Gloceſter* write to the King, declaring, that they opposed not him, but such only as were his and the Kingdom's Enemies : But the King defies them ; upon which the Barons, unwilling to put all to the Hazard of a Battle, send the Bishops of *London* and *Worceſter* to mediate a Peace ; and the King refused to hearken to any Proposals. *Leicester* seeing he could not prevent a Battle, draws up his Forces in the most advantageous Manner he could, near *Lewis* in *Suſſex*, and offered the King Battle ; which he, confident of Success, as readily embrac'd. They engage, and fight desperately on both Sides ; but at length the Barons obtain a most remarkable Victory ; for after having slain 5000 of the King's Party upon the Spot, they took the King, the Prince, the Earl of *Cornwal*, and his Son *Henry*, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Hereford*, and all the *Scots* Lords, Prisoners. *Leicester* having got these in his Power, committed them to diverse Prisons ; only the King he carried about with him in Triumph, to countenance his Actions, until he had gotten all the strongest Castles of the Kingdom into his own Hands, But the Earls of

of *Leicester* and *Glocester* fell out about sharing the Plunder of the Nation: Upon which *Glocester* went over with a strong Party to the Prince, who had made his Escape out of Prison, and got some Forces together. The Prince immediately enters on Action, and regains many Places of Strength. *Leicester*, to put a Stop to the Prince's Progress, encamps in a Plain near *Evesham*. The Prince advances towards him in Order of Battle, which struck such a Terror on *Leicester*, that he advised his Friends to shift for themselves; which when he saw them refuse to do, he said, *Let us commit our Souls to God, for our Bodies are theirs*. The Earl of *Leicester*, his Son *Henry*, and eleven other Barons perished in this Battle; and many thousands of common Soldiers were slain. *Montfort's* Death was attended with such Thunder and Lightnings, that some would have worshiped him as a Saint: But the King absolutely forbid it. This Battle delivered the King from Bondage, who with the victorious Prince went to *Winchester*, and called a Parliament; in which all that were of *Leicester's* Party, were deprived of their Estates, which were conferred upon others at the King's Pleasure; and the *Londoners* had their Liberties taken from them. Those who had escaped this Battle, took and defended the Isle of *Ely*: The Servants of the late Earl defended the Castle of *Killingworth* for six Months against the King and his Army, and then surrender upon honourable Conditions.

Glocester joins with the Prince. A. D. 1266.

The Battle of *Evesham*. The Barons overcome.

The Barons Estates confiscated. *Londoners* lose their Liberties.

After this Parliament the King marcheth with his Army against the remaining Barons; upon which *Guy* and *Simon Montfort* submit, and are received into Favour; others fly into *France*, and some still defend the Isle of *Ely*. At length Conditions of Surrender are proposed, but the King's Council was divided concerning them; and *Mortimer* and others, to whom their Lands were given, oppose all Restitution. *Glocester* and his Party were for it, but could not prevail; upon which *Glocester* retires from Court, and refuseth to come when sent for; but dispatch'd Messengers to warn the King to remove Strangers from his Council, and to observe the Provisions of *Oxford*. Upon this a Parliament is called at *Bury*, whither all Persons who held Lands by Knights Service are summoned to appear with Horse and Arms, to subdue those Lords who held out the Isle of *Ely*. *Glocester* levies an Army; Messengers are sent to him to persuade him to come in, which he refused, yet he declares under his Hand

Guy and *Simon Montfort* submit. A. D. 1267.

Glocester leaves the Court.

New Troubles.

Many Demands on the Clergy.

Hand and Seal, that he will never bear Arms against the King or his Son *Edward*: But that his Forces should pursue *Mortimer*, and his other Enemies. After this, the Business of the Parliament went on; and the first Demand was made by the King and the Legate, for a Tenth of the Clergy for three Years. 2. It was required that the Clergy should be taxed by Laymen. 3. That they should give the Tenths of their Baronies and Lay-Fees, according to their utmost Value. 4. That the Clergy should pay 30000 Marks to discharge the King's Debts contracted for *Sicily*, *Calabria*, and *Apulia*. 5. That all the Clergy, who held Baronies or Temporalities, should in Person serve the King in his Wars. 6. That the whole Clergy should discharge the 90000*l.* which the Bishops of *Rocheſter* and *Bath*, and the Abbot of *Westminster* were bound for to the Pope's Merchants, for the King's Service when they were at *Rome*. 7. The Legate required, that they should thro' the whole Kingdom exhort Men to take the Croſs for the Holy War; and laſtly, it was urg'd, That the Clergy had ſworn to yield to all the King's Demands. But the Clergy would comply with none of theſe Demands.

Barons ſolicited to ſubmit.

A. D. 1268.
Prince forces them to yield.

Earl of Glouceſter ſubmits.

The Legate alſo ſent ſeveral Perſons of the diſinherited Lords, who held the Iſle of *Ely*, to ſolicit them to return of the Faith and Unity to the Church, and to their Allegiance to the King. The Lords juſtify themſelves, and exhort the Legate to reform ſuch Things as were amiſs, and that they might be reſtored to their Lands; that the Proviſions of *Oxford* might be obſerved; and that they might have Hoſtages ſent into the Iſle, to hold it peaceably for five Years, until they could ſee how the King would perform his Promiſes. This Obſtinacy of the Lords did ſo exaſperate the King, that the next Year he gathered a very great Army, and beſet the Iſle; and Prince *Edward*, with Bridges made of Boats, entred it in ſeveral Places, and compelled them to yield. In the mean Time *Gloceſter* with his Army came up to *London*, and was received by the Citizens: But the Legate, who then reſided in the Tower, prevailed with him to ſubmit to the King's Mercy. The King was reconciled to him, upon Condition, that if he ever raiſed any more Commotions, he ſhould pay 12000 Marks. Having ſettled things thus at Home, the King marches into *Wales*, againſt Prince *Lewelin*, who, to prevent farther Miſchiefs, purchaſed his Peace for 32000*l.* and

is reconciled to the King and had restored to him four Cantreds of his County, which had been taken away by the War. And thus an End was put to the first Barons War in *England*.

The next Year the Legate engages both the King's ^{A. D. 1269.} Sons, *Edward* and *Edmund*, the Earl of *Glocester*, ^{Prince Edward and others go to the Holy} War, with the King of *France*, who was resolved to make another Push, notwithstanding his former Disgrace. K. *Henry* now made it his principal Business to re-establish the Peace of the Kingdom, and to reform those Extravagancies the War had occasioned. By Proclamation he made the stealing of Cattle a capital Crime; and the first that suffered for it was one of *Dunstable*, who was hang'd for it. The next Year ^{A. D. 1270.} the King calls a Parliament at *Marlborough*, where the Statutes, bearing that Title, were enacted.

The Prince almost two Years after he had undertaken the Cross sets out for the *Holy Land*, accompanied by his Wife *Eleanor*, then with Child: And when many of his own People shew'd their Desires of leaving him, 'tis said, that he smote on his Breast, and swore, that if all his Followers should forsake him, he would yet enter *Ptolemais*, or *Acon*, though only with his Housekeeper, *Fowin*. This incited the People to proceed with him; only his Cousin *Henry*, the King of the *Romans* Son, had leave to depart, and was set on Shore in *Italy*, where his Kinsman *Guy de Montfort*, Son of the late Earl of *Leicester*, murdered him in a Church, in the Time of Divine Service, in Revenge of his Father *Simon's* Death. *Richard*, King of the *Romans* died, soon after he had received the News of this unnatural Murder. ^{A. D. 1271.}

The very next Year *Henry* the Third, King of *England* ^{A. D. 1272.} died in the 65th Year of his Age, having reigned 56 ^{King Henry} Years and 20 Days; and was buried in the Abby Church ^{dies,} of *Westminster*.





The Reign of King EDWARD I.

A. D. 1272.
Edward, tho'
absent, pro-
claimed
King.

Returns
Home.

Is crowned:
A. D. 1275.

Curbs the
Power of
the Clergy.

Immediately upon the Death of *Henry III.* *Edward* his eldest Son, was by the States of the Nation proclaimed King, and Fealty sworn to him, tho' he was absent, and they knew not whether he was living or dead. They caused a new Seal to be made, and appointed Ministers for the Preservation of the Peace, and the Management of the Treasure. While *K. Edward* remained in *Palestine*, he was dangerously wounded in three Parts of his Body with a poisoned Knife, by a treacherous Assassin; of which he had hardly been cured, had not his Wife *Eleanor* sucked the Poison out of his Wounds. Having relieved and fortified *Acon*, tho' disappointed of the Aids he expected, upon the News of his Father's Death, three Years after his setting forth, he resolved to return Home. He took Ship for *Sicily*, where he was nobly entertained; thence he sailed for *Italy*, where the Pope, and other Princes of that Country shew'd him and his Retinue all due Honour and Respect. As soon as he was come over the *Alps* into *France*, he was met by many of the *English* Nobility, both Clergy and Laity; from thence he came down into *France*, where he was magnificently received and treated by *K. Philip III.* to whom he did Homage for all his Lands held of that Crown. Leaving *France*, he went into *Aquitain*, where he spent some Time in ordering his Affairs. And then, after six Years Absence, he came into *England*, and is crowned *September 1275*, by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, with *Eleanor* his Queen, three Years after he was proclaimed King. Soon after his Coronation he called a Parliament at *Westminster*, where he had a Fifteenth of the Clergy and Laity granted to him; but the Liberality of the Clergy could not divert him from his Design of abating the Ecclesiastical Power, which by long and woful Experience of former Times, he saw very prejudicial to the Regal Authority, especially when combin'd with the Nobility; and therefore being high in the Opinion and Esteem of the World, he

now

Q

Edward
on pro-
he was
ing or
nd ap-
e, and
Edward
ded in
by a
n cur-
out of
, tho'
News
forth,
Sicily,
ed for
Coun-
r and
r into
bility,
yn in-
and
e for
e, he
n or-
ence,
275,
een,
er his
here
ed to
ivert
wer,
mes,
cial-
e be-
, he
now



KING EDWARD THE 1ST



now b
nasteri
the Re
Henry
main to
poral
ster, he
to nar
quired
tempor
standing
contran
Father?
As t
Liberty
is pick'
Summe
to his
his Fat
of the
upon H
mission
try with
makes h
did not
the Com
is joine
knighte
soon as
the *Dez*
repress
John Pe
Welsh h
volt, w
Lewelin
with hin
phocy, 2
dem of E
no Term
municat
his Cou
the King
dier, wh
who cau
the Tow

now begins it : First, he deprives many of the Monasteries of their Privileges ; took from *Westminster* the Return of Writs, granted them by Charter of King *Henry III.* his Father ; and got the Statute of *Mortmain* to be enacted, to hinder the Increase of their Temporal Possessions. In the second Statute of *Westminster*, he confin'd the Jurisdiction of Ecclesiastical Judges to narrower Limits. Nor did he end here ; but required one Half of their Goods, both spiritual and temporal for one Year. This he obtained, notwithstanding their Grumbling, and the Pope's Bull to the contrary. So much were the Times altered since his Father's Reign.

The Statute of Mortmain enacted.

A. D. 1278.

As to *Wales*, which had always been struggling for Liberty, and a Retreat for *English* Rebels, a Quarrel is pick'd against *Leweline*, their Prince, for refusing on Summons to come to the King's Coronation, and after to his first Parliament. *Leweline* excus'd it, because his Father broke his Neck in attempting an Escape out of the Tower ; but offers to come to any other Place, upon Hostages, or to do Fealty to the King's Commissioners. Upon this Refusal the King enters his Country with Fire and Sword. *Leweline* not able to resist, makes his Peace, but upon hard Conditions. This Peace did not continue long ; for *Leweline* not able to brook the Conditions granted him, took up Arms again, and is joined by his Brother *David*, whom the King had knighted. At first they gain some Advantages ; but as soon as the King heard of their Revolt, being then at the *Devizes* in *Wiltshire*, he prepared a great Army to repress them. But before he set out upon this Expedition, *John Peckham*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, to whom the *Welsh* had sent an Account of the Causes of their Revolt, went of his own Accord into *Wales*, to persuade *Leweline* to submit, but could by no Means prevail with him ; for *Leweline* was assured from *Merlin's* Prophecy, That he should shortly be crowned with the Diadem of *Brutus* ; for which Reason he would hearken to no Terms of Peace. Upon this the Archbishop excommunicated him and his Adherents, and the King entred his Country with a mighty Army. *Leweline* opposed the King, till he was slain in Battle by a common Soldier, who cut off his Head, and sent it to King *Edward*, who caused it to be crown'd with Ivy, and set upon the Tower of *London*. Thus died the last Prince of

Wales subdued.

A. D. 1279.

Leweline in Arms again.

A. D. 1281.

Leweline slain.

The History of ENGLAND.

Wales. Shortly after *David* was taken Prisoner in *Wales*, adjudged in *England*, and drawn at a Horse Tail in *Shrewsbury*, then beheaded, his Body quarter'd, his Head set upon the Tower of *London*, and his four Quarters sent to four other Cities. This was the first Execution of that Kind in *England*; but by this Example it afterwards came into Use; and this King under whom it began, had the Fate of such a miserable Death entail'd upon his Family; diverse of his own Brother's Posterity dying upon Scaffolds. Just upon this Conquest his eldest Son *Alphonfus* died, a Youth of twelve Years of Age: The Queen being then with Child, is sent for by the King to *Carnarvan*, and there delivered of her second Son *Edward*, from thence called *Edward of Carnarvan*. The King, to please the *Welsh*, told them, he would prefer one to be their Prince, who had no Blemish upon his Honour, who spake as good *Welsh* as *English*, and was born among them. The *Welsh* pleaded with this, desired this new Prince: The King presented to them his young Son *Edward*, whom they accepted. And thus was *Wales* united to *England* in the eleventh Year of this King's Reign, *A. D.* 1283. By this Union all the bloody Mischiefs, which often happened to both Nations, were at an End, and they became one People, governed by the same Laws, and under the same Prince, as may be seen by the Statute of

Edward born at *Carnarvan*, and styled Prince of *Wales*.

A. D. 1283.
The Nations united.

A. D. 1284.
King goes into *France*.

A. D. 1285.
Returns into *England*.
A. D. 1286.

The Judges fin'd for Corruptions.
A. D. 1289.

Rutland, Anno Reg. 12^{mo}. The next Year the King goes into *France* to do Homage to their new King *Philip the Fair* for *Aquitain*, having before quitted his Claim to *Normandy* for ever. *K. Edward* arbitrates the Difference between the Kings of *Sicily* and *Arragon*, his Kinsmen, and redeems the Prince of *Achaia* out of Prison by a Ransom of 30000*l.* The Year following the King returns into *England*, with his Coffers emptied by his Voyage, which he must fill again. And a very good Opportunity offer'd; for the Judges during his Absence had been guilty of many Corruptions. These he calls to an Account, and punish'd them according to their Crimes; *Heugham* was fin'd seven thousand Marks; *Brompton* six thousand Marks; *Stratton* Chief Baron, thirty four thousand Marks; *Weyland's* whole Estate is confiscated: In all, the Fines came to an hundred thousand Marks in that Time, which according to the Value of Money now, is above 300000 Marks. A great Sum from a few Lawyers.

Next

Next the *Jews* are banish'd; for which the Parlia-^{A. D. 1290.} ment readily granted the King a Fifteenth: And the ^{The *Jews* ba-} *Jews* Tallies and Bonds are all seiz'd, to an immense Value. In short, the King's Impositions were very great and many; particularly he rais'd vast Sums by *Quo Warranto*, to examine into the Title of all Lands. This was oppos'd by Earl *Warren*, who drew out his Sword upon the Writ, and said, *By this I hold my Land, and by this only will I make good my Tenure.*

Alexander King of *Scotland* dying without Heirs, six Competitors pretend a Title to it. *K. Edward* takes upon him to decide the Title, upon Pretence of a Superiority from his Ancestors over that Kingdom. The *Scots* make him Arbitrator, and the six Competitors are bound to stand to his Award. The Matter was long debated by the most learned in the Laws of both Nations, and the Civilians of *France*; and after due Examination, it was found that *Baliol* and *Bruce* had more Right than the rest. The King goes Northward about this Business, and *Eleanor* his Queen dies by the Way in *Lincolnshire*.^{A. D. 1291.} This obliged the King to return with her Corps to *Westminster*, causing Crosses to be erected on the Road where it rested, viz. at *Stamford*, *Waltham*, *Westcheap*, *Charing*, &c. As soon as he had performed her Funeral Rites, he returned to his *Scotch* Affairs. He first treats privately with *Bruce*, that if he would pay Homage and Fealty to the Crown of *England*, he would make him King of *Scotland*: This *Bruce* refus'd, saying, he would not give up the Liberties of his Country to get its Crown. Then he makes the like Offer to *Baliol*, who yields to it, and is crown'd at *Scone*, and receives Fealty of the Nobility, except *Bruce*; then comes to *Newcastle* upon *Tine*, where *K. Edward* was, and there with many of his Nobles swears Fealty, and did Homage to him as his Sovereign Lord. Which Act of *Baliol*, tho' he did it for his Security, was his Undoing; for being very little belov'd before, he now became less; and also by an unjust Judgment given by him in the Case of the Murder of the Earl of *Fife*; from which Judgment the Earl's Brother appeals to the Court of *England*. *K. Baliol* upon this is summon'd to answer: He appears, and sits with *K. Edward* in Parliament till his Cause was to be tried, and then is cited by an Officer to arise and stand at the Place appointed for Pleading. He pleads his own Cause:

Wars be-
tween Scot-
land and
England.
A. D. 1296.

Scotland is
almost sub-
dued.

Cause: Which when he had done, he returns home intraged with this Indignity; and resolving to revenge it, he renews the antient League with *France*, defies *K. Edward*, and renounces his Allegiance as unlawful, because it was done without the Consent of the State. And now began the Contest between the two Nations, which continued almost three hundred Years, until the Union of them by *K. James I.* *K. Edward* on the other Hand enters into an Alliance with all the foreign Princes he could draw in, to strengthen his Party abroad; and with his Confederates sets upon the King of *France*, who had summon'd *K. Edward* to appear and answer in his Court, for certain Spoils committed by some *English* on the Coasts of *Normandy*. *K. Edward*, refusing to appear, is condemned to forfeit all his Territories in *France*, and an Army is sent to seize them; who took *Bordeaux* and other Places of Importance, which they fortified. Immediately *K. Edward* sends over his Brother *Edmund*, Earl of *Lancaster*, with diverse Lords, seven hundred Men at Arms, and a Navy of three hundred and sixty Sail. The King himself falls upon *Baliol*, and enters *Scotland* with four thousand Men at Arms on Horseback, and thirty thousand Foot. He first took *Berwick* with the Slaughter of 15000 *Scots* or more; and after seiz'd on the Castles of *Dunbar*, *Roxborough*, *Edinburgh*, *Sterling*, and *St. Johnston*. Upon this Success of *K. Edward*, *Baliol* sues for Peace, submits, and again swears Fealty to him, and so did the *Scotch* Nobility, confirming it by their Charter under their Hands and Seals, except *William Douglass*, who chose rather a Prison than to submit to the *English* Conquest; and *Baliol*, notwithstanding his Submission, is sent Prisoner into *England*. *K. Edward* return'd, leaving Earl *Warren* Warden of all *Scotland*; and a Treasurer, Chief Justice, and Commissioners to take the Homage and Fealties of all that held Lands of the Crown, in his Name.

A. D. 1298. The King now at Liberty to execute his Designs against *France*, call'd a Parliament at *St. Edmund's-Bury*, which granted him an eighth and a twelfth Part of their Goods, to enable him to carry on his Wars. But the Clergy, upon a Prohibition from the Pope that no Lay Prince should tax them, would not advance one Farthing. Upon which the King seiz'd upon all the Temporalities of the Church; and put all the Clergy out of

of his l
in an
many l
Goods
bishop.
Goods
cese ta
so mu
Abbott
mons,
Part o
During
Parliam
admitte
over v
Edmund
the Kin
confisc
on this
shal of
son, th
the Kin
said, th
march
The K
the Kin
would
that he
by the
so dep
Their
others,
Men a
beyond
King o
his Wi
him at
Prisone
Interce
but cou
takes A
mediate
Edward
tion of
some g

of his Protection, whereby they were to have no Justice in any of his Courts. This so amaz'd the Clergy that many Bishops immediately grant him a fifth Part of their Goods, and so were receiv'd into Favour. The Archbishop, who spirited the rest to hold out, had all his Goods seiz'd, and all the religious Houses in his Diocese taken into the King's Hands, allowing them only so much as was necessary for their Sustenance: The Abbots, Monks and Priests, unused to short Commons, at length consented to give the King a fourth Part of their Goods, and recover'd the King's Favour. During this Contest with the Clergy, the King call'd a Parliament at *Salisbury*, to which no Churchmen were admitted, and in it he requires some of his Lords to go over with him to his Wars in *Gascoigne*, his Brother *Edmund* being dead there. They excusing themselves, the King threatned, that if they did not go, he would confiscate their Estates, and give them to others. Upon this *Bobun* High Constable, and *Bigod* Earl Marshal of *England*, declar'd that if he would go in Person, they would attend him; otherwise not. At which the King was very much offended. The Earl Marshal said, that he would go any where with the King, and march in the Vanguard, as by Right he ought to do. The King replied, he should go with any other, tho' the King went not in Person. The Marshal said, he would not. Then the King in a Rage swore by G-d, that he should go or hang; and I swear, said the Earl, by the same Oath, that I will neither go nor hang; and so departed without Leave.

Clergy put out of the King's Protection.

The Lords refuse to go to the Wars.

These two Earls assembled many Noblemen and others, to the Number of thirty Banners and 1500 Men at Arms. The King considering his Ingagements beyond Sea, lets the Matter drop for the present. The King of *France* had sent for *Guy* Earl of *Flanders*, with his Wife and Children, to come and make merry with him at *Paris*; but instead of feasting, he made him his Prisoner, and seizes his Daughter. Earl *Guy*, by the Intercession of the Pope and others, gets his Liberty, but could not obtain his Daughter's. Thereupon he takes Arms, and defies the King of *France*, who immediately enters his Country with 60000 Men. *K. Edward* hastens to relieve him, leaving the Administration of the Kingdom in his Absence to the Prince and some great Counsellors; and to please the Clergy, takes

Grievances
of the Nati-
on brought
to the King.

A. D. 1299.
King goes
into *Flan-*
ders.

French
worsted by
the *Flem-*
ings.

the Archbishop of *Canterbury* into Favour: And being ready to embark, the Archbishop, Bishops, Earls, Barons, and Commons, send him a Roll of the Grievances of his Subjects. The King sends them this Answer, that he could do nothing without his Council, who were now absent from him, and requireth them to do nothing in his Absence prejudicial to the Peace of the Kingdom; and upon his Return he would set all Things in Order. And so he set forward in his Journey with 500 Sail of Ships, and 18000 Men at Arms. At his Arrival in *Flanders*, he finds the People rich and proud, distracted with popular Factions, and under no Command. In his Absence the Prince called a Parliament at *York*; where he readily consents to all the Articles demanded concerning the Rights and Liberties of the People, and never to tax them more but by Consent of Parliament. Upon this Compliance, the Commons grant a ninth Part of their Goods, and the Clergy a tenth and a fifth: Which Supplies satisfied the King's present Necessities. He continued that Winter at *Ghent*, where the Outrages of his Soldiers, caused the Inhabitants to take Arms, who kill'd many of his Men, the King with Difficulty escaping out of their Country. Upon which, the King patch'd up a two Years Truce with the King of *France*, and left Earl *Guy* to shift for himself; who shortly fell into the *French* King's Hands, and died with his Daughter in Prison for Grief. Tho' *Flanders* hereby became subject to the King of *France*, yet the intolerable Exactions and Oppressions of the *French* contrary to their Liberties, caus'd the *Flemings* to unite and arm in Defence of their common Liberty: And they gave the *French* the greatest Blow they had ever receiv'd before at once, in a pitch'd Battle at *Courtray*, in which were slain the General of the Army, the Constable of *France*, and all their Leaders with 12000 Gentlemen. And their own Historians assure us, that in eleven Years Space this Quarrel with *Flanders* cost the *French* the Lives of 100,000 Men.

In K. *Edward's* Absence, one *Wallis*, a private Gentleman of *Scotland*, gets together a small Company of Men of desperate Fortunes, who watch'd all Opportunities to gain some Advantage over the *English*: In which he had such Success, that his Company increased as well as his Courage, and he is made their chief Com-

Commander, and in all Probability had redeemed his Country, had not private Emulation amongst themselves, ^{Wallis of Scotland, his Success.} and the speedy coming of K. *Edward* prevented it; for these had beaten the *English* in many Encounters, recover'd many Castles, and regained *Berwick*. This made K. *Edward*, immediately upon his Return from *Flanders*, to prepare against *Scotland*, to revenge the Death of his Officers and Soldiers, and to recover his Castles. For the better effecting of this, he removes ^{Parliament, &c. at York,} his Exchequer and Courts of Justice to *York*, where they continued above six Years; and here he call'd a Parliament, and requir'd all his Subjects who held of him by Knights Service, to be ready at *Roxborough* upon a certain Day; who thereupon assembled to the Number of 4000 barbed Horse and 4000 other Horse, and Foot in Proportion.

The Earls of *Hereford* and *Norfolk*, notwithstanding their former Contempt, attended him; but before they would act, they urge the Ratification of *Magna Charta*, and their Pardons, which they thought were not secure, the King being absent when he granted them. Some Lords and Bishops undertook for the King, that he should satisfy them when he had subdued these his Enemies. And then these two Earls and the Earl of *Lin-* ^{Scots routed at Fawkirke,} *coln* led the Vanguard at the famous Battle of *Fawkirke*, where were slain of the *Scots* 200 Knights and 40000 Foot; but *Wallis* and some few others had the good Fortune to escape.

The King gave the Estates of the *Scots* who stood out, to the *English*; and call'd a Parliament at *St. Andrews*, where the great Men of *Scotland* came and swore Fealty to him. The *Scots* Writers do mightily inveigh against K. *Edward*, for carrying away their Monuments of Antiquity, Records and Instruments of State, and their Marble Chair on which depended the Fate of the Kingdom. This Expedition being thus happily over, the King returns to *London*, and calls a Parliament at *Westminster*, in which after much Debate he grants a Confirmation of *Magna Charta*, and a farther Allowance of Disforesting, with the Omission of the Clause, *Salvo Jure Coronæ nostræ*. The next Year the King ^{A. D. 1301.} being 62 Years of Age, marries *Margaret* the King of *France*'s Sister, and concludes a firm Peace with him; and his Son is affianced to the King of *France*'s Daugh- ^{Peace with France,} ter.

ter. And now the King calls in the base Coin called *Crocard* and *Pollard*, which yielded some small Matter into his Coffers. But a third Expedition into *Scotland* emptied them again; wherein nothing was done but the recovering of *Sterling-Castle*. Upon the Conclusion of the Peace with *France*, the *Scots* being left out, send their Complaints to Pope *Boniface*, representing the afflicted State of their Country, the Usurpation of the King of *England* upon them, and his tyrannical Proceedings with them. The Pope having received this Remonstrance, writes powerful Letters to the King of *England*, commanding him to forbear all farther Proceedings against them, claiming withal the Sovereign Authority over that Kingdom, as belonging to the Church. The King answers the Pope's Letters at large, proving from Antiquity, that the Dominion of *Scotland* had ever appertain'd to the *English* Crown, even from *Brutus* to his own Time. And at the same Time all the Nobility wrote to the Pope, claiming the same Rights, which they were bound by Oath to maintain, even with their Lives. The Pope upon this Answer, stir'd no more in the *Scots* Cause. And the King having been supplied with a fifteenth, upon Confirmation of the Charters, makes his fourth Expedition and Conquest in *Scotland*, and had Homage and Fealty sworn to him the fourth Time as Conqueror of it. After which he remov'd his *Exchequer* from *York*, to *London*, and render'd solemn Thanks to God and St. *Edward* for his Victory.

Scots complain to Pope Boniface.

Who opposes the King's Proceedings against the *Scots*.

A.D. 1305.
King's fourth Expedition into *Scotland*.

Wallis executed for Treason.

Sir Nicholas Segrave's Case.

Soon after, *Wallis* betray'd by his Companion, is sent Prisoner to *London*, where he was tried and condemned according to the Laws of *England*, to be drawn, hang'd and quarter'd; and accordingly suffer'd the Sentence. Thus died *William Wallis* for the Defence of the Liberties of his own Country, in a strange one, and remains among the best Examples of Piety and Courage in that Kind. *Sir Nicholas Segrave*, one of the greatest Knights of the Kingdom, being accused of Treason by *Sir John Cromwell*, offer'd to justify himself by Duel; but the King would not grant it: Upon which, *Segrave*, without License, leaves the Camp, and crosses the Sea to fight his Enemy. The King enraged at his Contempt, order'd Justice to proceed against him. The Judges consulted three Days on his Case, and at last adjudged him

him guilty of Death, and his Goods to be forfeited to the King; but added, "That as he went out of the Nation, not in Contempt of the King, but to be reveng'd of his Enemy, it was in the King's Power to shew him Mercy." The King in Anger replied, "Have you been all this while consulting for this? I know it is in my Power to shew Mercy on whom I please; and who ever submitted to me, that has not tasted of it? But I shall not do it for your Sakes, no more than a Dog's: Yet let this your Judgment be recorded, and for ever held as a Law." And so Sir *Nicholas*, for Example, was put into Prison; yet afterwards by the Intercession of many of the Noblemen, the King restor'd him to his Estate.

Some Time after, the King sends out a new Writ call'd *Trailbaston*, concerning all Sorts of Offenders; which was so strictly executed, that from the Fines thence arising, the King's Treasure was vastly encreas'd: As it was also by another Commission sent out at the same Time to examine into the Behaviour of Officers and Ministers of Justice; whereby many were found Delinquents, and paid dearly for it: Informers being in great Request at this Time. And now the King being become a Terror to his Subjects, began to shew his Resentments to the Lords for their former Behaviour, during the late civil Contests. This so terrified *Bigod*, the Earl Marshal, that to regain the King's Favour, he made him Heir of all his Lands (tho' he had a Brother living,) except only 1000*l. per Annum* for Life. And for the same Offence he extorted great Sums of Money from others. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* he sent over to Pope *Clement V.* a Native of *Bourdeaux*, who was regardful of the King, as having been once his Sovereign, and therefore ready to answer his Desires. And to secure this, the King sent the Pope a compleat Set of Gold Plate for his Chamber: Which had such an Influence on his Holiness, that he could deny nothing the King thought fit to ask, even to absolve him from his Oath to observe *Magna Charta*; an Act of as little Piety in the Pope, as Conscience in the King. But it was not long before he found the Error of this Action, and saw just Cause to reform it, having as much Need of his People's Love, as they of his Justice; for *Bruce*, Son of that *Bruce* who had been Competitor with *Baliol*, escaping out of *England*, became Head of

A Writ of Inquisition call'd *Trailbaston*.

Barons called to an Account. A. D. 1306.

Pope absolves the King from his Oath.

*John Comyn
murder'd in
Scotland.*

the confused *Scots*, who crown'd him King, and resolv'd to support him in his Dignity. *John Comyn* his Cousin *German*, wrote to the King of *England* to betray him; *Bruce* finding him at *Dunfreis*, fell upon him, and murder'd him in the Church there. This bloody Action blemish'd his Beginning, and rais'd a great Party against him. *K. Edward* sends the Earl of *Pembroke* and other Lords with a Party to relieve his Warden of *Scotland* who was retir'd to *Berwick*; and follows himself with a great Army; and for his nobler Attendance makes Proclamation, That all who by Succession or otherwise had Means for Service, should repair to *Westminster* at *Whitsuntide*, to receive the Order of Knighthood, and a Military Ornament out of the King's Wardrobe. Three hundred young Gentlemen assemble, and receive their Ornaments. The Prince was then knighted by the King, and created Duke of *Aquitain*; and the next Day he girds these 300 Knights with the military Belt, in the same Manner as himself receiv'd it. And now the King vows, that alive or dead he would revenge *Comyn's* Death upon *Bruce* and the perjured *Scots*; and to carry on this War, the Clergy and Laity grant a thirtieth, and the Merchants a twentieth of their Goods. Thus furnished with Men and Money, he sets forth for *Scotland*: In his March he receiv'd the News that the Earl of *Pembroke* had defeated the whole Army of the new King, and narrowly miss'd his Person; and his Brother and two Priests were taken and executed at *Berwick*. *K. Edward* march'd thro' the Country, and executed all he could find concern'd in *Comyn's* Murder; of whom the Earl of *Athole* is allowed the Honour of a higher Gallows than the rest. The Countess of *Bowghan*, assisting at *Bruce's* Coronation, is put into a wooden Cage, and hung upon the Walls of *Berwick* for People to gaze at. These Proceedings exasperate the Enemy, and *Bruce* skulks about, only attended by the Earl of *Lenox* and *Gilbert Hay*. The King leaves *Scotland*, and winters at *Carlisle*, where he calls his last Parliament, who mindful of the Pope's late Action, sought for a Reformation of the Pope's Ministers, who now required the Fruits of one Year's Revenue of every Benefice and religious House in *England*, *Wales*, and *Ireland*. Tho' this was denied, yet something was got, which the King and the Pope's Legate divided between them.

*A. D. 1307.
K. Edward
revenge his
Death.*

*Parliament
at Carlisle.*

efol-
his
be-
upon
This
ed a
rl of
e his
and
obler
Suc-
d re-
Or-
nt of
ntle-
The
Duke
ights
mself
ve or
e and
Cler-
nts a
Men
ch he
d de-
row-
riests
ward
could
Earl
llows
ng at
, and
gaze
, and
arl of
tland,
arlia-
ought
now
y Be-
d Ire-
s got,
ween
them.





them
in the
the E
into t
King
Falt
vice t
indisp
my ;
Dyser
reigne
Years
Fathe



UP
e
three
plause
ver an
of the
fore hi
trary
from
Man,
poser
ter La
had li
prov'd
compl
the Ki
him, 1
them
Counc
Court
Soc
lemn
Daugh

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

237

them While the King was thus buſied at *Carlisle*, *Bruce* in the Spring appears again with ſome Forces, defeats the Earl of *Pembroke*, and drives the Earl of *Gloceſter* into the Caſtle of *Ayr*; where he beſieg'd him till the King's Forces came up, and drove *Bruce* again to his Faſtneſs. K. *Edward* ſends for all that ow'd him Service to attend him at *Carlisle*; and tho' he was much indispos'd, in *July* he enters *Scotland* with an Army; but could not lead 'em far: For falling into a Dyſentery at *Borough upon the Sands*, he died, having ^{K. Edward dies.} reigned 34 Years, 7 Months, and 21 Days, aged 68 Years. He was interred at *Westminster*, cloſe by his Father, on the North Side of *St. Edward's Shrine*. |



The Reign of King EDWARD II.

UPON the Death of the great King *Edward I.* his ^{A. D. 1307.} eldest Son, *Edward of Carnarvan*, now twenty ^{Edward II. begins his} three Years of Age, ſucceeded him with general Applauſe, tho' much inferior to him in all Reſpects. Never any Prince came to the Crown with greater Love of the Nation, or, loſt it in ſo ſhort a Time: For before his Father's Funeral Solemnities were finiſhed; contrary to his dying Precepts, he recalled *Pierce Gaveston* ^{Gaveston recalled.} from Exile, and created him Earl of *Cornwal*, Lord of *Man*, Guardian and Lieutenant of *England*, and Diſpoſer of innumerable Preferments. And becauſe *Walter Langton*, Biſhop of *Cheſter*, his Father's Treasuſer, had like a faithful Servant, in his Father's Reign, reprovd the Prince, for ſome leud Extravagancies, and complain'd of *Gaveston*, as the ſole Promoter of them; the King, to puniſh ſuch troubleſome Virtue, imprifon'd him, ſeized all his Goods and Temporalities, and gave them to *Gaveston*; and then, without the Advice of Council, removes moſt of his Father's Officers from Court.

Soon after he paſſed over to *Bologne*, where he ſo- ^{King mar-ries Iſabel the French King's Daughter.} lemnized his Nuptials with *Iſabel* the French King's Daughter, with great Magnificence and Splendor; there

King Edward is crowned.

The Lords prosecute Gaveston.

A.D. 1309.

Forty one Ordinances made by the Nobility.

there being present the Kings of *France*, *Navarre*, *Aix-maine*, and *Sicily*, and three Queens, besides the Bride, and a glorious Concourse of other Princes and Ladies. *Gaveston* exceeded them all in rich Attire, Splendor, and Magnificence, which raised the Envy and Indignation of the whole Assembly, particularly of the *English* Nobility; and so exasperated them, that at the King's Coronation they require him to be remov'd, otherwise they would put a Stop to that Solemnity. The King, to avoid so great a Disgrace, promised to grant their Request at the next Parliament. Notwithstanding this Promise, he appointed *Gaveston* to carry St. *Edward's* Crown before him at his Coronation, which increased the Hatred of the Prelates and Nobility against him. The Knights Templars thro' *England*, as in other Countries, are imprisoned, and their Estates given to the Hospitallers; their leud and vicious Lives being assigned as the Cause.

The Lords now prosecute their Design against *Gaveston* in good earnest, who presuming upon the King's Favour, insolently scorn'd them as much as they hated him. The chiefest of his Enemies he gave reproachful Names to; the Earl of *Lancaster* he called *Stage-Player*; the Earl of *Pembroke*, *Joseph the Jew*; and *Guy*, Earl of *Warwick*, *the Black Dog of Ardein*. Upon this the Parliament unanimously besought the King, to advise and treat with the Nobles concerning the State of the Kingdom, that by their Counsel he might avoid the Mischiefs which would fall upon him thro' Neglect of Government; and urged it so far, that the King not only consented, but took an Oath to ratify all such Articles as should be concluded by them for the Welfare of the Kingdom. Upon this severall, both of the Clergy, Nobility, and Commons, were selected to frame these Articles; and when they were finished, the Archbishop of *Canterbury* pronounced Sentence of Excommunication against all that shall dare to oppose them. Some of the Articles were: "That the King should observe, and put in Execution *Magna Charta*: That all Strangers should be banished: That ill Counsellors be removed; and, that the King shall not begin any War, or go any where out of the Kingdom, without the Consent of Parliament." These Articles were in Number forty one, to which the King consented, and in particular to the Banishment of his Favourite *Gaveston*, whom

whom he immediately sent into *Ireland*, who resided there, not in Quality of an Exile, but of Lieutenant. *Gaveston sent into Ireland.* Within a few Months the King recalls him, and marries him to his Niece, the Earl of *Glocester's* Daughter. But all this would not do; for the Nobility were resolved to remove him from the King; besides, his Actions were intolerable; for he sold the Jewels of the Crown, and convey'd much Treasure out of the Kingdom. Upon which the Barons send to the King, that unless he part with *Gaveston*, and observe the Articles lately agreed on, they would arm against him as a perjured Prince. The King at length unwillingly yields to banish his Minion *Gaveston*; and they also obtained this Clause, that if he be ever found again in the Kingdom, he shall suffer Death as an Enemy to the State. *Ireland* was not to protect him again, and *France* was unsafe for him; therefore he retires to *Flanders*, where he lurk'd for a While; but finding no Security, he without Leave returns to *England*, and committed himself to the King's Protection, who received him with great Satisfaction; and to have him out of the Eye of the Nobility, goes with him into the North. *Is re-called and married to Glocester's Daughter.*

Upon this the Lords arm, and ordain *Thomas*, Earl of *Lancaster*, for their Leader, who was the Son of *Edmund*, the second Son of *Hen. III.* a powerful and popular Subject. The Earl of *Glocester* becomes Mediator between the King and Barons. The Lords send to the King in the Name of the whole Commonalty of *England*, beseeching him to deliver *Gaveston* into their Hands, or send him out of *England*. The King neglecting their Petitions, they advance with some Forces towards the North. The King, to secure *Gaveston*, puts him with some Forces into *Scarborough Castle*, and retires into *Warwickshire*. The Lords besiege *Gaveston*, and soon oblige him to surrender; and afterwards contrary to the Engagements of some of the Barons, he was beheaded at *Warwick*. And this was the Fate of the first Favourite we read of in our History. *A. D. 1310. Gaveston banished again. And returns.*

The Lords having obtained their Ends upon *Gaveston*, and thereby finding the King's Weakness, assume to themselves greater Authority, and require a punctual Performance of all the Articles formerly granted, threatening the King, upon his Refusal, to force him to it. Upon this some Prelates, and two Cardinals sent from the Pope, go to the Lords, who receive them very peaceably; *The Barons take Arms. Gaveston taken and beheaded. Bishops go to the Lords.*

peaceably; but refused to receive the Pope's Letter; saying, they were Swordsmen, and had not Leisure to read Letters, and that there were worthy and learned Men enough in the Kingdom, whose Counsel they would use, and not Strangers." With this Answer they return to *London*; but the Bishops so far prevailed with the Lords, that they agree to deliver up to the King such Horses, Treasure and Jewels, as they had taken from *Gaveston*; and the Treasurer and Keeper of the Wardrobe are sent to *St. Albans* to receive them.

The Bishops prevail with the Lords.

Edward III. born.

About this Time Queen *Isabel* was delivered of a Son at *Windsor*, whom they named *Edward*. Shortly after a Parliament is called at *London*, wherein the King complains, "That his Barons had contemned him, raised War in his Realm against him, and murdered *Gaveston*." But they answered, "That they had not offended, but rather merited his Favour; having taken Arms, not in Contempt of him, but to destroy the Nation's publick Enemy; a Man by whom the King's Honour was lessened, and the Kingdom's Substance wasted, and a dangerous Contest raised between the King and his Subjects, whereof otherwise they could never have had an End." Adding farther, "That they will no longer be deluded with vain Promises or Deceits concerning their required Articles as they had been." The Queen and Earl of *Glocester* at length make up the Breach; the Lords submit to the King and are pardoned all Offences. And then the State, in Consideration of his great Wants, gave the King a Fifteenth. About this Time the Earl of *Warwick* died, but not without Suspicion of Poison.

The Lords submit, and are pardoned.

A. D. 1314.

While *England* laboured under these Distractions, *Scotland* united, and became very powerful under their King *Bruce*, who had quite destroyed all Factions, and almost recovered his whole Country. To curb this Growth of King *Bruce*, King *Edward* march'd into *Scotland* with 100000 Men, the most numerous Army that ever went thither. *Bruce*, with only thirty thousand Men, encounters this mighty Army, and gave *England* the greatest Overthrow it ever received; for in this Battle, (called the Battle of *Bannock's Burn*) there perished the Earl of *Glocester*, and many other Lords, 700 Knights Esquires and Gentlemen, and 50000 Soldiers, as the *Scots* write; our Historians acknowledge 10000; and the King escaped by Flight. Multitudes of all Sorts

Battle of Bannock's Burn.

were taken Prisoners. This Victory put the *Scots* in a very flourishing Condition both as to Arms and Wealth. The King would fain have repaired his Honour; but the disgusted People grew cold, and were willing to sit down with the Loss. The poor Borderers had the worst of it, and were so dispirited, that 100 of them would fly from three *Scots*. This great Misfortune was not single; but in the next Year many Calamities followed it, as Inundations, Dearth, Famine, and Pestilence, which exceeded any that had been before in this Nation. To remedy which, as much as Man could do, a Parliament was called at *London*, to abate and settle the Price of Victuals, after which it grew more scarce than before; for there happened such a Murrain to Cattle, and the Fruits were so destroyed by excessive Rains, that no Provisions could be got, and most People turned off their Servants, because they could not maintain them: Yet all these Miseries could not allay the Discontents and Hatred between the King and his Nobles. The *Scots* take Advantage of these Discontents, and miserably infest the Northern Parts. Some discontented *English*, under Colour of Resistance, took to themselves all that they hindred the *Scots* from spoiling. *Bruce*, now absolute King of *Scotland*, sends his Brother into *Ireland* with an Army, who took many Places there, and got the Title of King for three Years. Thus all Things, both at Home and Abroad, went ill with *England*. Yet in the midst of these Confusions, the two Cardinals made up the Breach between King *Edward* and the Earl of *Lancaster*; but the King privately sent a Knight with a Letter to the King of *Scots*, to procure the Earl's Death. The Knight was taken, and executed, and his Head set upon *Pontefract* Castle. This foul Action of the King brought many over to the Earl's Party.

Many great Calamities in *England*.

Price of Victuals settled.

A. D. 1317.

King and Nobles dissatisfied to each other.

The *Scots* having carried their Ravages as far as *York*, An Army is raised, and soon disbanded. A Parliament is called. The King promises to observe all the former required Articles. Upon which an Army is raised to oppose the *Scots*, which marched as far as *York*, and there falls into Mutiny, and is disbanded. The next Year one *Peter Spalding* treacherously betrays *Berwick* to the *Scots*. The King raises an Army, and besieges it. The *Scots*, to divert his Forces, entered *England* in other Places. And upon the Defection of the Earl of *Lancaster*, and the People of *York* being

An Army is raised, and soon disbanded.

A. D. 1318.

Truce with
the Scots.

A. D. 1319.

ing beaten, the King was obliged to raise the Siege of *Berwick*, and conclude a Truce with the *Scots* for two Years, and so leaves those Parts dishonourably.

Barons take
Arms.

A. D. 1321.

The two
Spencers ba-
nished.

Fresh Quar-
rels between
the King and
Barons.

King takes
Leeds Castle.

A. D. 1322.

In the Time of this Peace, a great Flame arose from a little Spark, which was kindled by this Occasion. *Spencer* the Younger, buying *Powes-Land* of Sir *William Brewes*, over the Heads of the Earl of *Hereford*, and the two *Mortimers*, who had before contracted for it, and desired to buy it, gets it from them all by the King's special Licence. The Lords complain to the Earl of *Lancaster*, of this Injustice; they, and many other Lords enter into a Confederacy, by Oath, to live and die together in maintaining the Rights of the Kingdom, and in procuring the Banishment of the two *Spencers*, Father and Son. Under this Pretence they take Arms, and seize upon the Lands and Goods of those Persons, and then march to *St. Albans*; from whence they send to the King, requiring him to banish the *Spencers*, and to grant a Pardon and Indemnity to themselves. The King answered, "That *Spencer*, the Father, was in his "Service beyond the Seas, and the Son was guarding "the Cinque-Ports; and that it was against Law to "banish any Person unheard." And then the King swore, that he would never break his Coronation Oath, by pardoning such Offenders as the Barons were. This Answer so exasperated them, that they marched with their Forces towards *London*, and insist stiffly upon their Demands; which, by the Mediation of the Queen and Prelates, he at last granted, and thereupon published an Edict, by which both the *Spencers* were banished. The Father being abroad, kept there; and the Son lurks about *England*. The Lords depart satisfied, and with Indemnity.

The Queen in her Progress, sent to take up her Lodgings in *Leeds* Castle. The Governor told her Servants, that neither the Queen, nor any Body else, should be admitted, without Letters from his Lord, the Lord *Bedlesmere*. She complains of this Indignity to the King, who taking it to Heart, immediately marches his Army to *Leeds*, and takes the Castle, hangs the Keeper, sends my Lord *Bedlesmere's* Wife and Children to the Tower, and seizeth all his Goods and Treasure. The King elevated with this Success, and instigated by the Queen, raiseth an Army against the Barons; many of whom came in and submitted, as the two *Morti-*

mers,

mers, and others, who, contrary to their Expectations, were sent to Prison. Upon this Change the Earls of *Lancaster* and *Hereford* retire Northward. The King pursues them, and at *Burton upon Trent*, beats their Army, and puts them to flight; and at *Borough-Brigge*, the Sheriff of *York* attacks them, slays the Earl of *Hereford*, and takes *Lancaster* Prisoner, with diverse other Lords. *Lancaster* is condemned and beheaded the same Day before his Castle of *Pontefract*: many other Lords were executed, hang'd, drawn and quarter'd, at *York*, *London*, and other Places; and their Estates given to Men newly advanced. This, since the Conquest, was the first noble Blood that was spilt, after this Manner, in *England*. The King puffed up with this Success, marches his Army into *Scotland*, tho' unprovided with Necessaries. The *Scots* having Notice of it, retire into the Country, taking with them all the Provisions they could; by which Policy they vanquished the King's Army without Blows, and forc'd him to return to *England* with Dishonour; whither the *Scots* follow him, and set upon him unexpectedly, take his Treasure, and ransack the Country to the very Walls of *York*. Sir *Andrew Harkley*, who took the Earl of *Lancaster* Prisoner, and for that Service was made Earl of *Carlisle*, but envied by the *Spencers*, is accused, degraded, hang'd, drawn and quartered, as a Traitor.

K. *Edward* the following Year was summoned by the *French* King to do Homage for *Gascoigne*. The Parliament decreed he should not go in Person; upon which the King of *France* seiz'd upon his Dominions. The King's Brother *Edmund* is sent over, but to little Effect. The *Spencers* held it not safe for them, to let the King go over in Person; but the Queen and a small Attendance is sent over to accommodate the Business. During which Negotiation the King demanded of his Parliament Money, to redeem the Earl of *Bretagne*, taken Prisoner by the *Scots*; but it was denied him. The Bishop of *Hereford* was arrested, and accused of Treason in assisting the Barons. He refused to answer, being a consecrated Bishop. The other Bishops take him from the Bar, and deliver him to the Archbishop, till the King should appoint a Day for his Answer. Shortly after he was taken and convented; whereupon the Archbishops of *Canterbury*, *York* and *Dublin*, with ten other Bishops, went to the

The Bishop
of Hereford
is rescued by
the other
Bishops.

Loseth his
Estate.

Queen and
Prince pro-
claim'd Trai-
tors, and ba-
nished.

She invades
England.

Persues the
King.

Place of Judgment, and took him away with them. This displeas'd the King, who commanded Enquiry to be made *ex officio Judicis*, against the Bishop, (tho' absent) wherein he was found guilty, and all his Goods seiz'd for the King. But this lost the King the Affection of the Clergy.

The *Spencers* grown to the Height of Insolence, thro' Pride and the Spoils of the Barons, presumed to abridge the Queen's Maintenance and Household. But this was the Rock on which they split; for the Queen had managed her Negotiation so well, that all Quarrels should be ended, if *Edward* would make his Son *Edward* Duke of *Aquitaine* and *Ponthieu*, and send him over to do Homage to the King of *France*. K. *Edward* complies, and the Queen is glad to have her Son with her: And she being resolv'd on Revenge against the *Spencers*, besides her great Party in *England*, had those in *France*, who encouraged her in that Humour; among whom was *Roger Mortimer*, lately escaped out of the Tower.

But the Bishop of *Exeter*, who was with her, suspecting her Designs, returns to *England*, and informs the King thereof, who sends immediately to the Queen and Prince to return; and upon their Delay, proclaim'd them Enemies to the Kingdom, and banished them as such, and sends out three Admirals to guard the Coasts, and prevent their landing. The Queen informed of a Plot to murder her and her Son, retires to the Earl of *Heynault*, a rich Prince, and to the Earl of *Holland*, to whose Daughter *Philippa* she contracts her Son, and gets Men and Money of him, and arrives at *Harwich*, where she was received with great Joy by the discontented Nobility. As soon as this News reached the King, he demanded Aid of *London*; but was denied it. Then he promiseth, by Proclamation, 1000*l.* to any Person that should bring *Mortimer's* Head. The King with his small Council retires into the West, expecting Assistance there; but none regarded him. The Queen persued him, and at *Oxford* the Bishop of *Hereford* took occasion to preach from these Words, *My Head aketh*; from which he drew this Conclusion, That an aking and sick Head of a Kingdom was of Necessity to be taken off, and without that the Cure would be impossible. To put the better Face on the Queen's Proceedings, it was artfully noised abroad, that two

Car-

Card
Cam
her;
from
cello
shoul
Proc
" an
" for
" ge
" an
" He
" Su
her
ther.

Th
Hug
stol
board
to th
Win
wher
fakin
In th
attac
Spem
Law
and
Arm
tered
Th
clam
" ve
" the
But
not h
ceale
pose
dian
a nev
nage
N
Henr
Earl
Cast

Cardinals, sent from the Pope, were in the Queen's Camp to excommunicate such as took up Arms against her; and that she came only to deliver the Kingdom from the Misleaders of the King, the *Spencers*, the Chancellor, and all their Adherents; and that all others should be safe. To confirm which the Queen makes ^{The Queen puts out a Proclamation.} Proclamation, "That nothing should be taken from any Subject without paying for it, under the Penalty for taking to the Value of three Pence to lose a Finger, six Pence the Hand, and twelve Pence the Head; and that whosoever should bring to the Queen the Head of young *Spencer*, should have as a Reward the Sum of 2000*l.*" Thus the Queen made Head against her Husband, and led an innocent Son against his Father.

The miserable King finding none to assist him, put ^{The King is abandoned.} *Hugh Spencer* the Father, with some Forces into *Bristol* Castle; and then for his own Security went on board a Vessel, poorly attended, with Design to get to the Isle of *Lundy*, or to *Ireland*; but by contrary Winds, was forced to land in *Glamorganshire* in *Wales*, where *Blunt* his Steward, and others, shamefully forsaking him, he was concealed in the Abby of *Neath*. ^{Is concealed in the Abby of Neath.} In the mean Time the Queen marches against *Bristol*, attacks the Castle, takes it, and puts to Death ^{*Hugh Spencer* put to Death.} *Hugh Spencer*, the Governor, without Form or Tryal of Law, causing him, tho' Earl of *Winchester*, to be drawn, and hang'd on the common Gallows in his Coat of Armour, and cut up before he was dead, and quartered.

This done, she passeth to *Hereford*, and issued a Proclamation, "That if the King would return, and govern the Nation as he ought to do, he should receive the Government again; by Consent of the People." But the King not daring to trust himself to them, or not having sufficient Information, kept himself still concealed: and thereupon they took the Advantage to dispose of the Government, and the Prince is made ^{Prince made Guardian of the Kingdom.} Guardian of the Kingdom, hath Fealty sworn to him; and a new Chancellor and Treasurer are appointed, to manage the Affairs of State.

Not long after the King was discovered; and by *Henry*, Earl of *Lancaster*, Brother to *Thomas* the late Earl, and by others, taken and conveyed to *Kenelworth* Castle. The younger *Spencer*, *Baldock* the Chancellor, ^{King imprisoned.} and

Several of
the King's
Friends Executed.

and *Simon Reading*, who were taken with the King, are sent to the Queen at *Hereford*. *Spencer*, who was at this Time Earl of *Glocester*, is drawn and hang'd on a Gallows fifty Foot high. *Simon Reading* was hang'd ten Foot lower than he : But *Baldock*, because he was a Priest, had the Favour to be starv'd to Death in *Newgate*.

A. D. 1327.
The King
deposed, and
the Prince
chosen.

The Confusion at this Time was general. The Commons of *London* rise and force their Mayor, who was hearty for the King, to take their Part, let out all Prisoners, possess themselves of the Tower, put to Death Sir *John Weston*, the Constable of it, and murder the Bishop of *Exeter*, whom they hated ; because, when he was the King's Treasurer, he caused the Judges *Itinerant* to sit in *London*, by which means they were grievously fined. After some Stay at *Hereford*, the Queen and the Prince return to *London* ; where the Parliament being assembled, came to a Resolution to depose the King as unfit to govern, objecting many Articles against him ; and to elect his eldest Son *Edward* to be King in his Stead. Accordingly this was done in the most solemn Manner, in *Westminster-Hall*, with the universal Consent of the People present ; and the Archbishop of *Canterbury* made a Sermon upon this Text, *Vox Populi, Vox Dei*, exhorting the People to pray to the King of Kings for a Blessing upon him whom they had chosen.

The Queen seeing what was done, began now, tho' too late, to reflect on her self, and to be very much concern'd at this Election ; insomuch, that the Prince, to comfort her, was forc'd to swear, that he would never accept of the Crown without his Father's Consent.

Upon this Resolution, the Parliament decreed, " That three Bishops, two Earls, two Abbots, four Barons, three Knights of every Shire, and some Burgesses of every City and Borough, should be sent to the King at *Kenelworth*, to declare unto him the Election of his Son, and to require of him the Renunciation of his Crown and Royal Dignity ; to which if he did not consent, the States were resolved to proceed as they thought fit." This most ungrateful Message was delivered to him by two Persons, most obnoxious to him, the Bishops of *Hereford* and *Lincoln*. The King all in Tears confessed, " That he had been misguided, and done many Things of which he now repented," and

King persuaded to
reign.

King,
was
'd on
ang'd
e was
New-

Com-
o was
l Pri-
Death
er the
when
es *Iti-*
e grie-
Queen
Parlia-
lepose
rticles
to be
in the
th the
Arch-
Text,
ray to
n they

, tho'
h con-
ce, to
never
ent.

"That
arons,
ffes of
e King
tion of
tion of
he did
eed as
ge was
ous to
e King
guided,
ented,
" and





KING EDWARD THE III.^D

" an
 " an
 " ed
 " ye
 " as
 said,
 tion
 Prec
 Stile
 prom
 " T
 " E
 " fi
 " fo
 " fi
 " sh
 " T
 ard
 Offi
 disc
 in t
 Yea

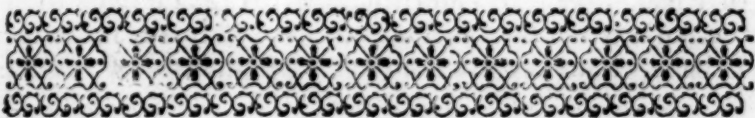


E
 on l
 by C
 and
 ving
 " F
 " th
 " fr
 " h
 And
 at V
 twe
 to h

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(247)

“ and which, if he were to govern again, he would
 “ amend, and was very sorry to have so much offend-
 “ ed the State, as that they should utterly reject him;
 “ yet thanked them that they were so favourable to him,
 “ as to chuse his eldest Son for their King.” Which
 said, they proceeded to the Ceremony of his Resigna-
 tion. The Form was perfectly new, because without
 Precedent; *William Trussell*, a Judge, put it into the
 Stile of the Law, to render it more authentick, and
 pronounced the same in this Manner: “ *I William* Manner of
 “ *Trussell, in the Name of all the Men of the Land of* his Resigna-
 “ *England, and of all the Parliament Procurator, re-*
 “ *sign to thee Edward, the Homage that was made to thee*
 “ *some Time since; and from this Time forwards, I de-*
 “ *fe thee, and prive thee of all thy Royal Power; and I*
 “ *shall never be attendant on thee as King, from this*
 “ *Time.*” Which being done, *Sir Thomas Blunt*, Stew-
 ard of the Household, by breaking his Staff, resign’d his
 Office, and declared, that the late King’s Family was
 discharged. This was done the 22^d of *January* 1327,
 in the 43^d Year of the King’s Age, having reigned 19
 Years, 6 Months, and 15 Days.



The Reign of King EDWARD III.

EDWARD the Third, Son of *Edward II*, being A. D. 1327.
 between 14 and 15 Years old, began his Reign up- Edward III.
 on his Father’s Resignation, and was proclaimed King proclaimed.
 by Consent of Parliament, on the 25th of *January* 1327,
 and immediately issued out his Proclamation for preserv-
 ing the publick Peace, in which he declared, “ That his
 “ Father, the late King, by the Advice and Consent of
 “ the Nobility and Commonalty of the Realm, made a
 “ free and voluntary Resignation of his Regal Dignity to
 “ him, as being his eldest Son, and Heir to the Kingdom.”
 And upon Sunday the first of *February*, he was crown’d And crown-
 at *Westminster* with great Solemnity. After which, ed.
 twelve of the chief Nobility were appointed Guardians 12 Guar-
 to him and the Kingdom, till he should be of fit Age to dians ap-
 govern. pointed.

(R 4)

govern.

govern. The Queen and *Mortimer* being of this Number, usurp the Management of the Whole ; and the Queen's Dowry was so unreasonably enlarged, that the King had scarce a third Part of the Revenues to himself.

Scots invade England.

Robert, King of *Scotland*, taking Advantage of these unsettled Times, invades *England*. *Edward* receiving Advice of the *Scotish* Designs, put out a Proclamation commanding all Noblemen, and others, to attend him at *York* on *Ascension* Day. They assemble at the appointed Time ; but shortly after there happened a great Contest between some *English* and Foreigners in the Army, which not only caus'd the Shedding of Blood, but prov'd a great Obstruction to the designed Expedition. After six Weeks Continuance in and about *York*, the King gave Orders for his whole Army to march against the *Scots*, whom they found encamped in *Stanhope* Park, in the Bishoprick of *Durham*. Here they surrounded them on every Side, except one Spot of deep moorish Ground, and so confined them for the Space of fifteen Days, that their Provisions fail'd them. This constrained them to invent a Way for their Escape ; and therefore they prepared a great Number of Fleaks, Hurdles and Faggots, by the Help of which, the following Night, they and their Horses made their Escape, and fled to the next Mountains. K. *Edward* enraged at their Escape, immediately persues them, but could not find them ; till after a Proclamation of an 100 *l. per Annum*, and the Honour of Knighthood to be given to any who could inform him where they were encamped ; he was assured by one, that they were on a Hill, about six Miles from his Camp, and attended his Coming, with a Design to give him Battle. Upon this the King and his Army followed this new Knight, their Guide, and about Noon came in Sight of their Enemies. King *Edward* by his Heralds offers them Battle ; the *Scots* refuse, because their Number was not above one third of the *English* ; and the King could not force them, because there was a deep rocky River between them. In this Posture they continued many Days ; and nothing was done worth Notice on either Side, until the brave *James Douglass*, with only 200 Horse, passed the River in the Night Time, and entred the *English* Camp, killing and slaying as he went, even to the King's Tent, from whence he retired with considerable

Edward marches against them.

But they escape.

Douglass his brave Attempt.

derable Loss to his own Army. After which the *Scots* wanting Provisions, and having wasted all that might be useful to the *English*, retired in the Night, and got safe into their own Country. A Council of War was immediately called, who agreed, that it would be to no Purpose to pursue the *Scots* any farther. The King returns to *Durham* with his Army, and in three Days after to *York*. Here the Army was disbanded, and the Strangers sent home, well rewarded for their Services in this Campaign.

During these Transactions in the *North*, the old deposed King remained close Prisoner in *Kenelworth Castle* in *Warwickshire*, with an Allowance of an 100 Marks per Month for his Expences; but deprived of all other human Comforts. The Queen and *Mortimer*, upon Suspicion that the King's Friends, who commiserated his Misfortunes, might attempt his Enlargement, removed his Keeper, the Earl of *Lancaster*, and appointed him two new Keepers, *Gourney* and *Matrevers*, who remove him from thence first to *Corfe Castle* in *Dorsetshire*, then to *Bristol Castle*, and at length to *Berkley Castle* in *Glostershire*, and all this to disappoint his Friends, and prevent their Assistance. Some Writers say, that in *Berkley Castle* these two Keepers completed their Barbarity on the Body of the King; for on the 22^d of *September*, finding him in his Bed, they press'd heavy Bolsters on his Head; and that no Marks of Violence might be found upon him, thrust up a red hot Iron thro' a hollow Pipe, into his Bowels, and in this cruel Manner murder'd him. Those that viewed his Body, no Wounds appearing, gave out that he died of Grief. Thus tell the unfortunate King *Edward* the Second: His Body was carried to *Glocester*, and buried in *St. Peter's Minster*.

All Obstacles to young *Edward's* Title being now removed, his Marriage with *Philippa* of *Heynault* is solemnis'd. The Ceremony was performed at *York* on the 24th of *January*, and on the first *Sunday* in *Lent*, the young Queen was crown'd at *Westminster*, with great Pomp and Glory. In *Whitsun-Week* a Parliament was held at *Northampton*; In which *K. Edward* first moved about his Title to the Crown of *France*. Next, by the Management of the old Queen and *Mortimer* a dishonourable Peace is concluded between *England* and *Scotland*, by a Match between the King's Sister *Joan*, and the

Scots retire home.

Old King is ill treated.

And murdered.

A. D. 1328.
K. Edward married.

He claims France.

A scandalous
Treaty with
the Scots.

the Prince of *Scotland*, being but seven Years of Age. In this Parliament the King, under the Direction of the Queen, *Mortimer*, and Sir *James Douglas*, by his Charter, surrenders his Title of Sovereignty to the Kingdom of *Scotland*, and restores to them diverse Deeds, Instruments, and Records of their former Homages and Fealties, done to the King of *England*, together with that famous Evidence called *Ragman Roll*; and many antient Jewels, and Monuments, particularly the *Black Cross of Scotland*; and the *English* are prohibited to hold Lands in *Scotland*, unless they dwell there; for these Trifles *K. Bruce* was to pay the Sum of 30000 Marks to the Crown of *England*. For this and some other such Pieces of publick Service, the King made *Mortimer*, Earl of *March*. Shortly after a Parliament was held at *Winchester*, where *Edmund*, Earl of *Kent*, Brother to the late deposed King, is accused and condemned by his own Confession, for endeavouring to restore his Brother. This miserable Earl stood on the Scaffold, from one, till five a Clock in the Afternoon, and no Man would execute him; but at length a sorry Wretch belonging to the *Marshalsea*, cut off his Head.

A. D. 1329.
Robert King
of Scotland
dies.

K. Edward
does Ho-
mage to the
French King.

A. D. 1330.

Mortimer
seiz'd.

The following Year *Robert*, King of *Scotland*, being worn out with his great Infirmary, died of a Leprosie in the 24th Year of his Reign, leaving his young Son *David* to succeed him. This very Year the new King of *France* summoned *K. Edward* to do him Homage for *Gascony*, and other Territories in that Kingdom; accordingly he went over, and met the *French King* at *Amiens*, and did him Homage for his Lands held of that Crown. The publick Complaints and secret Whispers of the Nobility, who could no longer bear the exorbitant Power and haughty Carriage of *Mortimer*, whose Familiarity with the Queen Mother occasioned a Report that she was with Child by him, at length rous'd up a sleeping Lion in the young King's Breast; who in a Parliament held at *Nottingham*, resolved to destroy this powerful Favourite, whose Interest was sufficient to crush both the King and Kingdom. To prevent which, the King, with the brave *Montague*, and a few valiant Followers, entred into *Nottingham Castle* by Night, thro' a secret Mine in a Rock, since called *Mortimer's Hole*; and seiz'd upon *Mortimer*, with the Queen, and sent him Prisoner to the Tower of *London* under a strong Guard.

Guard. The Queen has her great Jointure taken from her by Parliament, and is allowed but 1000 *l. per An.* Fourteen Articles are exhibited against *Mortimer*, in which he was justly accus'd "to have procured the late King's Death, and his Brother the Earl of *Kent's*; to have been "the Author of the *Scots* escaping at *Stanhope-Park*, corrupted with a Gift of 20000 *l.* to have procured the late Marriage and dishonourable Peace with *Scotland*; and "to have been too familiar with the Queen, &c." For these Offences he was condemned of high Treason, and drawn and hang'd at *Tyburn*, and his Body was kept hanging two Days for a Spectacle of Horror and Dishonour: Thus did K. *Edward* begin to wipe off the Stains, which during his Minority had blemish'd the State of his Kingdom. And executed.

This Year was born *Edward*, afterwards for his glorious Deeds call'd the *Black Prince*, whom Heaven seem'd to have sent for the Glory and Renown of the *English* Nation, and to be at once the Delight and Terror of Mankind. The *Black Prince* born.

Edward Baliol, Son to *John Baliol*, formerly King of *Scotland*, thirty two Years after his Father's Deposition, taking Advantage of the Youth of King *David* and the Factions in *Scotland*, set his Thoughts upon the Recovery of that Crown; accordingly he left *France*, and came into *England*, and privately got together all the *English* and *Scots* that were Enemies to *Bruce*. All Things being ready, *Baliol* with his Friends and Men well accoutred, set Sail and landed at *Kingcorna* near *Perth*; and to prevent all Hopes of Flight, the Vessels were sent back. With these *Baliol* soon made incredible Progress, beating the *Scots* in four pitch'd Battles, in which some Writers report, 60000 were slain. The News of these Victories soon spread it self thro' the Country; upon which great Numbers of the Lords and Ladies, and others, came to *Baliol*, and did him Homage, and swore Fealty to him: After which he went to *Scone*, where he was solemnly crown'd King, on the 24th of *September*. *Baliol enters Scotland. A. D. 1332. Is very successful. Is crown'd.*

This gave K. *Edward* a fair Opportunity to recover what the Nation had lost by *Mortimer's* late scandalous Peace. Accordingly he joins with *Baliol*, against *David* his Brother-in-law. But first to avoid the Imputation of Breach of Articles, he publickly proclaim'd, that he was not obliged to observe any League with *Scotland*. New Design on *Scotland. A. D. 1333.*

K. Edward
besieges Ber-
wick.

Scots defeat-
ed.

Berwick sur-
render'd.

A.D. 1334.

Baliol does
Homage to
K. Edward.

Scots Nobili-
ty revolt.

K. Edward's
Expedition
into Scotland.

land, that was made in his Minority, without his own and the Nation's Consent. K. Edward goes in Person, and besieges *Berwick* both by Sea and Land. K. David's Party being sensible of the Importance of this Place, assembled all their Power to relieve it. The Scots put themselves in Order of Battle on *Hallidown-Hill*, near *Berwick*: K. Edward, tho' much inferior in Number, on *Monday* the 19th of *July*, encounter'd the whole Scots Army and totally defeated them. In this Battle were slain of the Scots, 7 Earls, 900 Knights and Bannerets, 400 Esquires, and thirty two thousand common Soldiers. Two Days after this great Victory, the Town and Castle of *Berwick* surrender'd to the King's Mercy. *Baliol* marches into the Heart of *Scotland*, taking Towns and Castles at his Pleasure: And about *Michaelmas* he calls a Parliament at *Perth*, where the *English* Lords were restored to their Honours and Estates they claim'd in *Scotland*. And in this Parliament all Acts, Statutes, Ordinances and Grants, made by *Robert*, or *David Bruce*, late Kings of *Scotland*, were declared null and void. And *Baliol*, to strengthen his Alliance, first at *Edinburgh*, and afterwards at *New-Castle*, in the Presence of many great Lords and Commons of both Nations, did Homage to the King of *England*, as to his superior Lord; and swore Fealty to him, binding himself and his Heirs to hold the Kingdom of *Scotland* of him and his Successors for ever, and granting him the Possession of five Counties next adjoining to the Borders.

Many of the Scots Nobility enraged at *Baliol's* mean Submission, began to revolt from him, and to promote the Interest of K. *David*. This soon broke out into a War. *Baliol* met and engag'd K. *David*; but after an obstinate Fight, his Army dispers'd, and himself was oblig'd to fly out of the Nation to the City of *Carlisle* for Refuge; from whence he writes to K. *Edward* for Assistance. A Parliament is call'd at *London*, who granted K. *Edward* a Tenth from the Clergy, a Fifteenth from the Temporality, and a Twelfth from the Cities and Boroughs. Upon which the King entred *Scotland* with his Army, and then joining with *Baliol*, he persued the Enemy as far as beyond *Cathness*. Then he returned towards *Berwick*: But shortly after, the Earl of *Dunbar* revolted in the *Highlands*, and renounced his Homage to both Parties; which obliged K. *Ed-*

ward

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(253)

ward to remain the rest of the Year on the Borders A. D. 1335.
of Scotland. In the Spring K. *Edward* entred Scotland His Success
with a well disciplin'd Army both by Sea and Land; there.
he ravaged the Country as far as *Perth* without Oppo-
sition, and appointed *David* Earl of *Atbol*, Governor
of Scotland, to subdue the Places that held out. The
Scots in some Skirmishes had several Times the Advan-
tage. In the mean Time the Earl of *Cornwal* entred
Scotland, and destroyed *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle*, and
all the Western Parts that held out against *Baliol*; and
after that marched to *Perth* to his Brother, lately re-
turned from an Expedition in the *Highlands*.

While K. *Edward* remained at *Perth*, the *French*
King sent Ambassadors to him, to mediate a Peace be-
tween him and K. *David*, and to desire him to accom-
pany K. *Philip* to the Holy War; to whom K. *Edward*
returned this short and resolute Answer, "That by
"the Blessing of Heaven he was able at any Time to
"make War upon the Infidels without their Master's
"Assistance; and that he would undertake no foreign
"Expedition till he had subdued his Enemies the *Scots*."

Soon after this, many of the *Scotch* Nobility came and Scotch Nobi-
submitted to K. *Edward*, and a Peace was concluded. lity submit.
Then, having settled his Affairs in these Parts, the King
in Autumn, returned into *England*. The Earl of *Atbol*
laid Siege to the Castle of *Kildrumney*; but the *Scots*
coming to relieve it, he was not only defeated, but lost
his Life and Reputation. Upon which many Places in
the North revolted, and declar'd for K. *David*. Upon A. D. 1336.
Advice of this Revolt, K. *Edward* with 40000 Men,
marched into the very Bowels of Scotland, ravaging the
Country with dreadful Destruction wherever he came,
till he had driven the Enemy beyond *Elgin* and *Inverness*.
He left K. *Baliol* to subdue the rest, and in September
returned triumphantly into *England*, having now made
four successful and glorious Expeditions into Scotland.

K. *Edward*, now experienc'd and renown'd in Arms, A. D. 1337.
had his Eye upon the Kingdom of *France*; and this Beginning
Design was violently promoted by *Robert de Artois*, of the Wars
who, being highly disoblig'd by the *French* King's a- with France.
warding the County of *Artois* from him to his Aunt
Matilda, openly declar'd, that he would unmake the
King by the same Power he had made him. *Philip* the
French King, enrag'd at this, declar'd him a Traitor,
confiscated his Estate, and forced him to fly out of his
King-

K. Edward's
Pretensions.

His Allian-
ces.

Woolen Ma-
nufactury re-
viv'd.

First Duke
in England.
A. D. 1338.
Southampton
burnt.

Kingdom. In *England* he was generously entertain'd, and made Earl of *Richmond*: And here he became the grand Incendiary between the two Nations. K. *Edward*, that the World might know the Justice of his Pretensions, in a pious Epistle directed to the College of Cardinals, declar'd, 1. His Title to the Crown of *France*. 2. That his Ambassadors, offering to put the Cause to a civil Trial, were not only refused to be heard, but repuls'd with Danger of their Lives. 3. That the Court of twelve Peers, in giving the Crown from him, under Age, left the Office of Judges, and became Invaders. 4. That *Philip* had invaded his Territories in *France*. 5. That he had assisted the *Scots* in their Insurrections against him: And lastly, had declar'd by his Actions, that his Honour, Power and Person were equally hated by him. K. *Edward* having made these Declarations, entred into an Alliance with *Lewis* the Emperor, the Earl of *Flanders*, and several other Princes in *Germany* and *Holland*. Having thus secur'd his Interest abroad, he was no less careful of his Country at home. To which End in a Parliament held at *Westminster*, it was ordain'd, that no *English* Wool should be transported. And for the Encouragement of foreign Clothworkers to come and settle here, many great Privileges were granted them, and an Allowance from the King, till they were fixed in a competent Way of living: Also 'twas enacted that none should wear any foreign Cloth for the future, except the King, Queen, and their Children. In this Parliament the King created his eldest Son *Edward* Duke of *Cornwal*, who was the first that ever had the Title of Duke in *England*. The *French* having got a Fleet ready, in Order to intercept any Forces that K. *Edward* should transport, came before *Southampton*, and by the Help of their Gallies, almost reduc'd it to Ashes; but with the Loss of their Commander, and 300 Soldiers were repuls'd the next Day. Pope *Benedict* sent over two Cardinals to extinguish this increasing Flame: But one of them in a Speech to the Clergy, seem'd to favour the *French* Clergy; upon which the Archbishop of *Canterbury* stood up, and protested that the Cardinal's Arguments were vain and frivolous. Whereupon they soon departed, and it was publish'd in all Parts of *England*, that K. *Edward* had a Right to the Crown of *France*, which he design'd to prosecute by all honourable Methods.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(255)

And now all Things being ready, K. Edward with many of his Nobility, went on Board his royal Navy near *Harwich*, in Number about 500 Sail, and had a prosperous Gale, till he arriv'd at *Antwerp*, where vast Throngs of People came from all Parts to see him, and his magnificent Court. After some Stay here, he went to *Cologn*, whither the Emperor came to meet him. The Interview was surprisingly pompous: In the Midst of the Market-Place, were two royal Thrones erected, one for the Emperor, and one for K. Edward. Here the Emperor defied the King of *France*, pronounced him an Enemy to the Empire; and then by Instrument under his Hand, he constituted K. Edward his Vicar General of the *Roman* Empire; and after that he enter'd into a League offensive and defensive for the Term of seven Years. After K. Edward's Return to *Antwerp*, he form'd several Alliances with the Lords and Governors of the Low Countries, among whom he and his royal Family continued with great Love and Esteem above a whole Year. These Things thus happily settled, K. Edward enters *France* with an Army of 40000 Men, where in five Weeks Time he ravag'd the Territories of *Cambresis*, *Vermandois*, *Tierasche*, and *Laonais*, and wasted the greatest Part of *Picardy* and *Artois*. In the mean Time K. Philip with greater Numbers, was incamp'd in *Cambresis*, and resolv'd not to move from thence till he had fought his Enemies: To which End he sends a Message to K. Edward, that if he would chuse any open Place, he would give him Battle. K. Edward by a particular Herald, sent to the King of *France* a Challenge, to fight his whole Army on what Day he would appoint, which was accepted by K. Philip, who fix'd on *Friday* the 22^d of *October*; but, when both Armies were drawn up in Order of Battle, K. Philip refus'd to fight, being discouraged by his Officers in a Council of War, and by Letters from the King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, who by the Rules of *Astrology* declar'd that he would be overcome if he fought with K. Edward at that Time. Upon which the *French* retir'd into *Flanders*; and K. Edward seeing no Likelihood of an Action, remov'd towards *Hainault*. And thus this Campaign ended.

The *Flemings* declar'd they would no longer engage in an offensive War against *France*, unless K. Edward would first assume the Title and Arms of that Kingdom.

K. Edward goes into *Flanders*.

His Interview with the Emperor.

A. D. 1339.
K. Edward enters *France*.

A Day of Battle appointed.

K. Edward
takes upon
him the
Arms of
France.

Comes into
England.

Puts to Sea
again.

Destroys the
French Fleet.

K. Edward
enters France.

dom. To this the King consented, and placed this Motto under his Shield, *Dieu Et Mon Droit, God and my Right*; declaring that his Confidence was only in God, and the Justice of his Cause. The February following the King leaving the Queen and his Children at *Antwerp*, sail'd for *England*; where in a Parliament at *Westminster*, he obtain'd Supplies to enable him to proceed in his intended Conquest: In Return he granted a general Pardon, forgave all Arrears of Farmers and Accountants, and all old Debts due to any of his Predecessors: And likewise he confirm'd *Magna Charta*, and the Charter of Forests, with some others. And now nothing was talk'd of, but the Conquest of *France*. K. Edward being ready to repass the Sea, receiv'd Intelligence that the *French* lay near *Sluice* in *Flanders*, with a Fleet of 400 Ships to intercept him. Notwithstanding which the King put to Sea with between two and three hundred Sail, resolving to force his Way thro' the Enemy's Fleet. The two Fleets coming in Sight of each other, the *French* Admirals resolv'd, if possible, to take K. Edward; and falling down upon the *English*, an obstinate Fight began, which continued from ten in the Morning to seven at Night; when the *French*, tho' much superior in Number, were oblig'd to submit to the Strength and Courage of the *English*, and to avoid their Fury, Multitudes of 'em leap'd into the Sea, and not above thirty of the *French* Vessels escap'd. In this Fight the *French* lost about 30000 Men. This was the greatest Sea-Fight that had ever happen'd in the narrow Seas, and the first in which a King of *England* commanded in Person. At first none dared to acquaint K. Philip of this Disaster, but by Means of his Jester, who often cried out, *Cowardly Englishmen! Faint-hearted Englishmen!* The *Frenchmen* leap'd bravely into the Sea, and the *Englishmen* had not Courage to follow them: By which artificial Turn Philip was made sensible of this Overthrow. After this memorable Victory, K. Edward landed in *Flanders*, and shortly after enters *France* with the finest Army that ever any *English* King commanded, being near a hundred thousand well disciplin'd Men; where after ravaging the Country, he sat down before *Tournay*, designing to make it a Place both of Arms and Refuge. K. Philip on the other Side had provided an Army, not inferior to the other in Numbers; with which he advanced toward K. Ed-

ward's

ward's
the Eff
bat, or
or other
gagemen
no direc
as King
rope sto
of this V
near To
Valois, S
Queen,
and Son
produce
both Ar
returned
Years in
Lionel a

The I
buses tha
manager
State: S
their Pl
active an
bury bol
na Char
shop by
ty, was
signs; a
good Fo
tells bet

About
Interdict
hip King
they con
King of
Lewis a
ship of t
conclud
Alliance
peror w
ly, with
there ha
the Duk
and Joh
Vol.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(257)

ward's Camp. K. Edward sent him a Message, to avoid the Effusion of Blood, to invite him to single Combat, or to bring only a hundred Men into the Field; or otherwise within ten Days to come to a general Engagement. To which Challenge Philip would give no direct Answer, because the Message was not to him as King of France, but as Philip of Valois. All Europe stood amaz'd, and impatiently expected the Event of this War; when after three Months Continuance near Tournay, and no great Action perform'd, Jane de Valois, Sister to K. Philip, and Mother to K. Edward's Queen, by her admirable Management of her Brother and Son-in-law, brought both Kings to a Parley, which produced a Truce for one Year: And shortly after both Armies were disbanded. Whereupon K. Edward returned home with his Queen, who had remained three Years in those Parts, and had brought forth two Sons Lionel and John.

Challenges
K. Philip

Truce con-
cluded for a
Year.

The King upon his Return began to redress the Abuses that had crept in during his Absence, by the Mismanagement of his chief Officers and Ministers of State: Some he imprisoned, and turned others out of their Places. In the Prosecution of whom he was so active and vigorous, that John Archbishop of Canterbury boldly charged the King with the Breach of Magna Charta. The King made it appear that the Archbishop by his ill Management, in not performing his Duty, was the Cause of making him desist from his Designs; and that he privately practis'd against the King's good Fortunes in France. This occasion'd warm Contentments between them.

A. D. 1341,
Edward re-
gulates A-
buses at
home,

About this Time the Pope put Flanders under an Interdict, for having sided with K. Edward against Philip King of France. But notwithstanding the Interdict, they continued stedfast, and declar'd Edward lawful King of France, and Philip a Usurper. The Emperor Lewis abandoned K. Edward, and revoked the Vicarship of the Empire, on Pretence that the Truce was concluded without him: This done, he entred into an Alliance with France. But this Defection of the Emperor was soon made up by the bringing in a new Ally, within the Body of the Kingdom of France: For there hapned a great Contest about the Succession to the Dukedom of Bretagne, between Charles de Blois and John de Montfort. The Parliament of Paris de-

Pope inter-
dicts Flam-
dars

Emperor a-
bandons K.
Edward,

A. D. 1342,
New Corps
tests in
France,

cided this in Favour of *Charles*. Upon which *Montfort* repaired to *K. Edward*, to whom he did Homage for his Dukedom, was receiv'd with great Applause, and his Title acknowledged good. Each King having thus acknowledg'd a Duke of *Bretagne*, both in Honour thought themselves obliged to support the Title of their favourite Duke to the Dukedom. *Montfort* returned to *Bretagne* with Satisfaction and Assistance; and after some Encounters with the Enemy, was taken and sent Prisoner to *Paris*. His Lady pursued his Quarrel, and at the Head of his Forces, with *K. Edward's* Assistance surpris'd and defended many strong Places in *Bretagne*. Not long after *K. Edward* went over in Person to *Bretagne* with fresh Assistance, and lying before *Vannes*, an Army of 40000 Men came to give him Battle: But being just ready to engage, two Cardinals sent from Pope *Clement VI.* concluded a Truce for three Years. *Montfort* died soon after, and so the greatest Part of *Bretagne* fell to *Charles de Blois*.

A three
Years Truce
between
France and
England.

Revolution
in Scotland.

During these Wars with *France* the Face of Affairs in *Scotland* was mightily changed: For upon *K. Edward's* Departure from that Kingdom, *K. David's* Party by the Assistance of *France* gained many Advantages over *Baliol* and his Adherents, who at length was obliged to abandon the Kingdom, and retired into *England*. Upon which *K. David* with his Queen, and many of the *Scots* Nobility, returned from *France* into *Scotland* after nine Years Absence, and peaceably entred upon the Government.

K. David re-
stor'd.

A. D. 1343.
Statute of
Provisors.

King *Edward*, upon his Return, after the Truce with *France*, enacted the Statute of Provisors, upon this Occasion. Pope *Clement VI.* by Way of Provision had bestowed several of the best Benefices in *England*, upon Foreigners, his Creatures. For the Prevention of a Practice so odious to the King and Parliament, it was by this Statute made High Treason or Death for any Person to bring such Papal Provisions into the Kingdom. The King then in the most handsome Manner, represented to the Pope, "how derogatory to the State of the Kingdom such Provisions were; and "how by these Usurpations of his Predecessors, not "only Strangers, but Enemies to the Realm, were "prefer'd before Natives: By which Means the Na-

"tion's

tion's Treasure was transported, the Churches un-
served, and many other Enormities occasioned, con-
trary to the Honour of God, and the Peace of the
Nation." In the Beginning of this Parliament, young
Edward was created Prince of *Wales*, and invested with
a Coroner and a Ring of Gold.

Young Ed-
ward made
Prince of
Wales.

In the Beginning of this Year the King erected a spa-
cious Room in *Windsor* Castle, 200 Foot Diameter,
which he called *The Round Table*, at which he design'd
to treat all the Knights he had invited from foreign
Parts, to come to a solemn Tournament, to be kept
for 14 Days together; and issued out Letters of safe
Conduct for that Purpose. *Philip*, the *French* King,
looked upon these Things as Preparations against him-
self; and therefore to prevent the Knights and great
Men of *Germany* and *Italy*, from repairing to K. Ed-
ward, he erected the same at his Court. He ended not
here: but his Jealousies against the King of *England* put
him upon open Acts of Cruelty, and caused him to put
to Death several great Men of *Normandy*, *Picardy*, and
Gascony, only because they were *English* in Affection.

A. D. 1344.
Feast of the
Round Table
instituted.

Upon which K. Edward declared, that the Truce was
broken, and he sent Word to his Holiness, to prevent
his farther Mediation; that the Sword, not the Tongue,
should determine his Right and Title. And to shew he
was in earnest, he immediately dispatched into *Gascony*,
the valiant *Henry*, Earl of *Derby*, with a noble Army,
where he performed many great Actions, and took se-
veral Cities, Towns and Castles. After a glorious
Campaign, in which he defeated a superior Body of
French, of whom 7000 were kill'd, he returns to *Bour-*
deaux with a great Booty and many Prisoners. And
here we must not forget this noble Lord's Generosity
at the taking of *Bergerac* by Storm, where he gave the
whole Plunder to every Soldier, as he should seize it.
One named *Reth* seiz'd upon a House belonging to the
Bankers, where he found an immense Sum of Money;
he acquainted the General of his Prize, to whom the ge-
nerous Earl answered, I have given my Word and Ho-
nour, and therefore the House and Money in it is thy
own, be it ever so much.

Truce with
France
broken.

A. D. 1345.

Earl of *Der-*
by's Genera-
lity.

By this Time K. Edward, having settled his Affairs
in *England*, and prepar'd a great Fleet and a brave Army,
resolved to go into *France* in Person, accompanied by
the Prince of *Wales*, then in the 16th Year of his Age,

A. D. 1346.
K. Edward's
Expedition
against
France.

King Edward
lands in
Normandy.

Marches to
Paris.

His Passage
over the
Somme.

He waits
for the
French at
Cressy.

together with all the chief Nobility of the Nation; to whom, at *Southampton*, he made a short Speech, in which he charged them, "to behave themselves like Men, since he resolved to send back his Fleet upon his first landing in *France*; but if any Man's Heart fail'd him, he had his Liberty to stay in *England*." To which they all answered, "That they were ready to follow so brave a Commander, were it to Death it self." After a few Days Sail he arrived at *La Hogue* in *Normandy*, where he landed; and having knighted the Prince, and some other young Men of Quality, he entred into the Country, which did not expect him, resolving to take a full Revenge upon the Towns and People of *Normandy*, for the Blood of his Friends, who had been executed there during the Truce. His Army, consisting of 30000 Foot and 2500 Horse, marched thro' the Country, making a dreadful Ravage wherever they came, almost to the Walls of *Paris*; and then encamped at *Poissy*, K. *Philip* not daring to come out and fight him. After five Days Stay, the King passed into *Beauvais*, with Design to retire into his own Country of *Ponthieu*. K. *Philip* enraged at the Desolation of his Country, and looking on K. *Edward's* Retreat as a Flight, marched after him with above a hundred thousand Men, besides twelve thousand posted on the River *Somme*, at a Place called *Blanchetaque*, below *Abbeville*, to oppose K. *Edward's* Passage of the River there; where when K. *Edward* arrived, he found the Enemy so advantageously posted, that the Passage was concluded to be impracticable. But this Hero, resolved to pass, or perish in the Attempt, plung'd into the River, crying out, *They who love me will follow me*. Upon which he pressed forwards, and maugre all Opposition, gain'd the opposite Shore, and soon put the Enemy to Flight, with the Loss of 2000 of their Men. K. *Philip*, who thought himself secure of K. *Edward*, he being inclosed between the *Somme* and his numerous Army, lost all Patience, when he heard of their Passage, and the Defeat of his Troops, and marched immediately after the *English*; who retire farther into *Ponthieu*, till they came near a Town called *Cressy*, where K. *Edward* encamped his Army in the open Country, and then declared, that he would stay there till he had recovered this Province, the Inheritance of Queen *Eleanor*, his Grandmother; concluding,

ing, wi
French
Edward
the Sac
ty. In
of abou
dies. I
of Arm
third.
rode fro
inspired
my. T
sture the
his Cau
When t
King of
dier, I
About
of his v
Cross-b
bows re
them to
lip's Arm
which t
ry, and
himself
sage wa
Reserve
The Kin
ger repl
ed with
Courage
they sen
glorious
behaved
ded new
porters;
with an
and the
finding
unequal
they fou
and the
putting a
lost the

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(261)

ing, with his own Motto, *God defend my Right.* The French advanced with four Times the Number. K. Edward spent the Night in Devotions, and received the Sacrament with his Son and the chief Nobility. In the Morning he divided his Army, consisting of about thirty thousand effective Men, into three Bodies. The Prince of *Wales* commanded one; the Earls of *Arundel* and *Northampton* another, and the King the third. Then the King mounted on a Milk-white Nag, K. Edward rode from Rank to Rank, and by his noble Speeches, prepared for Battle, inspired Courage into the most faint-hearted in the Army. Then putting the whole Army into the best Posture the Time and Place would permit, he committed his Cause to God, and calmly waited for the Enemy. When the good Order of the *English* was told to the King of *Bohemia*, he answered like an experienced Soldier, I see the *English* are resolved to conquer or die.

About three in the Afternoon, K. *Philip*, at the Head of his vast Army, advanced, and ordered the *Genoese* Cross-bows to begin the Attack. The *English* Long-bows received them, broke them to Pieces, and put them to Flight, which caused a great Confusion in K. *Philip's* Army. Another Body of *French* fell on that Part which the Prince of *Wales* commanded, with such Fury, and superior Numbers, that any Commander but himself would have been obliged to submit; and a Message was sent to the King, who was with the Body of Reserve, to desire he would send him some Succour. The King asked, whether he was alive? The Messenger replied, *Yes, but in great Danger of being overpowered with Numbers.* Then replied the King with his usual Courage, *Let them know, that while my Son is alive, they send to me for no Assistance; for the Honour of this glorious Day shall be his.* Tho the Prince had hitherto behaved with incredible Courage, yet this Answer added new Life and Vigour to him, and his undaunted Supporters; so that this young General pressing forwards with an uncommon Intrepidity, far outdid his Father's and the World's Expectations. At length the *French*, finding by woful Experience, that their Numbers were unequal to such consummate Valour and Conduct as they found in the *English*, betook themselves to Flight, and the *English* obtain'd a compleat Victory; the Night putting an End to the Conflict. In this Battle the *French* lost the two Kings of *Bohemia* and *Majorca*; five Princes,

Black Prince
obtains a glorious Victory

and many of the chief Nobility of *France*, *Bohemia*, and *Germany*: Besides these, there fell 24 Bannerets; 1200 Knights, 1500 Gentlemen, 4000 Men of Arms, or Esquires, and above 30000 of the Commons of *France*: And all this without the Loss of any of the *English* Nobility, or of many of the common Soldiers. After this, K. *Edward* embraced his Son, with the greatest Joy, commends his Valour; and both offer up their most hearty Thanks to the Almighty for his infinite Goodness in giving them this Victory. The next Day a Party was sent out to discover the vanquished Enemy, who met many that knew not what had happen'd, but were coming to join the *French* King. These they attack'd, and slew 7000 of them; the rest fled: Besides, of Straglers, and those who lost their Way, more were slain than in the Battle. K. *Philip*, with a small Company fled to the Castle of *Braye*, where the Guard demanding who he was; he answered, *The Fortune of France*; and being known, was let in. At *Amiens* he exclaimed against *Godemar*, for suffering K. *Edward* to pass the *Somme*, and threatened him with Death: But the Lord of *Haynault* replied, That it was not in *Godemar's* Power to resist the King of *England*, when the whole Power of *France* could not. K. *Edward*, on the other Hand, resolving to make the best use of his Victory, went directly, and laid Siege to *Calais*, the Key of *France*; and having invested it both by Sea and Land, resolved to reduce it by Famine. *John de Vienne*, the Governor, for the better Subsistence of his Forces within, forced out of the Town 1700 poor usefess People, and shut the Gates against them; which when K. *Edward* saw, instead of driving them back, and starving them, he out of an unprecedented, and most Christian Compassion, permitted them to pass through his Camp unmolested, giving them all a good Dinner, and two Pence a piece, and Liberty to go where they pleased. *Philip* resolved if possible, to relieve this important Place. Accordingly he prevailed with his antient Allies, the *Scots*, to make a Diversion in *England*, while he gathered a Force sufficient to attack K. *Edward* in his Trenches. *David*, King of *Scotland*, entered *England* with an Army of above 60000 Men, not doubting of Success, because the main Strength of the Nation was with the King in *France*. But he was soon convinced of his Error; for K. *Edward's* heroick Queen, at the Head

K. *Edward*
besieges *Calais*.

His Generosity.

Scots invade
England.

Head of
them su
Men up
of Per
happen
of *Cress*
rious Y
Arms;
Bretagn
dible O
Blois ly
Knights
great N
ly 300
beat all
himself
Durin
continu
duced to
being sp
to K. P
Hands.
K. *Phil*
lais, wh
on this
Men; a
ward Ba
soon as
Men, he
at his o
move all
rified K.
tired wi
Govern
hoisted t
ley; wh
That six
to him,
with Hal
Town a
to the K
to the r
King w
compassi
their Liv

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(263)

Head of her Nobility and Forces, met them, and gave them such an Overthrow, that they lost at least 15000 Men upon the Spot; K. *David*, with a great Number of Persons of Distinction, were taken Prisoners. This happen'd on a *Saturday*, just six Weeks after the Battle of *Cressy*. To compleat the Triumphs of this glorious Year, Sir *Thomas Dagworth* with 800 Men of Arms, and 100 Archers, overthrew *Charles de Blois* in *Bretagne*, with great Slaughter, tho' he had the incredible Odds of thirty to one. Not long after *Charles de Blois* lying at the Siege of *Roch-Darien*, with 1200 Knights, 600 armed Men, 2000 Cross-Bow-Men, and great Numbers of other Infantry, Sir *Thomas*, with only 300 Men of Arms, and 400 Archers, attack'd him, beat all his Forces out of the Field, and took *Charles* himself Prisoner.

The Scots
beaten and
King *David*
taken.

Sir *Thomas*
Dagworth's
Valour.

During these Successes in diverse Parts, K. *Edward* continued in Person before *Calais*; the Garrison was reduced to a languishing Condition; all their Provisions being spent, as appeared by a Letter from the Governor to K. *Philip*, which accidentally fell into K. *Edward's* Hands. This Letter K. *Edward* sent immediately to K. *Philip*, requiring him to hasten to the Relief of *Calais*, which for his Sake suffered such Miseries. Upon this K. *Philip* advanced with an Army of 150000 Men; and about the latter End of *July* offered K. *Edward* Battle; which for the present he refused: But as soon as he had received a Reinforcement of 17000 Men, he not only offered the *French* King Battle, but at his own Cost would fill up the Trenches, and remove all Impediments. This generous Offer so terrified K. *Philip*, that he set Fire to his Tents, and retired with Precipitation to *Amiens*. Upon which the Governor of *Calais* took down the *French* Standard, and hoisted that of *England* in its Place, and begged a Parley; which K. *Edward* granted upon these Terms: That six of the chief Burgers of the Place should come to him, bare-headed and bare-footed, in their Shirts, with Halters about their Necks, and the Keys of the Town and Castle in their Hands, and submit themselves to the King's Pleasure; and he would shew Mercy to the rest. The six that came in this Manner to the King were ordered to immediate Execution; but the compassionate Queen, by her Intercession, obtain'd their Lives, took them into her Apartment, new cloath-

A. D. 1347.
Calais in
great Dis-
tress.

Surrendered
to K. *Ed-ward*.

Queen's Ge-
nerosity.

ed them, ordered them a Dinner, and six Nobles a piece; and then set them at full Liberry. An Action worthy of so great a Princess! And thus the strong City of *Calais* was put into the Hands of *K. Edward*, Aug. 3, 1347, which he peopled with *English*, and which continued in the Possession of the *English* Crown above two hundred Years after. Upon the Surrender of the Town, by the Mediation of two Cardinals, and others, a Truce for one Year was concluded, and sworn to by both Kings. *K. Edward* having appointed *Sir Amery de Pavy*, an *Italian*, Governor of the Place, and settled his other Affairs in *France*, returned into *England* with great Glory and Renown.

Calais made an English Colony.

K. Edward returns.

A. D. 1348.
Elected Emperor of Germany.

A. D. 1349.
A great Plague.

Design to betray *Calais*.

Design to betray *Calais*.

King in Person prevents it.

And to add to his Glory, this Year the States of Germany elected him their Emperor, and sent a noble Ambassage to him, to desire him to accept of that Dignity; but the King modestly declined it, telling the Ambassadors, that he would not undertake so great a Burthen, till he had gain'd the Crown of *France*, which by Right belonged to him.

The Year following, God was pleased to humble the *English* Nation, by sending a dreadful Plague amongst them, which raged with such Fury, that in the Church-Yard called the *Charter-House*, in the Space of one Year, were buried above 50000 Persons of those that died in *London*.

During these Calamities, *Sir Amery de Pavy* agreed to surrender *Calais* for 20000 Crowns to Lord *Charny*, Governor of *St. Omers*; of which *K. Edward* having Notice, went thither, with the Prince of *Wales*, and several of the Nobility, the very Night it was to be delivered, and lodg'd himself in the Castle to secure it. The Money was actually brought and paid, and 12 Knights, and 100 Men of Arms were let into the Castle, and immediately made Prisoners to their great Surprise, by the King's Guards, who lay undiscovered. The Lord *Charny* lay under the Town with a considerable Force, to take Possession of it as soon as the Gates were open; but the King issued out at one Gate, and the Prince at another, and fell so furiously upon him, that he routed his Forces, and took him and several great Men Prisoners. The next Night the King ordered a splendid Supper, as well for the Prisoners as for his Nobility, and to their great Surprise, (he being till then *intognito*) coming in amongst them, he told the

Lord

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(265)

Lord Charny, that it was cowardly to steal that from him by Night, which he fairly won by Day. And having made Sir John Beauchamp Governor of Calais, the King returned into England in Triumph, bringing with him the chief of the Prisoners.

And now the renowned Edward, resolving to give the highest Incouragement to all martial Virtues, instituted the most noble Order of Knighthood, called the Garter. As to the Original, Form and Nature, End and Design of this Order, the Reader may consult Mr. Ashmole's elaborate Treatise upon that Subject: About this Time some Spanish Men of War, who before had done the English Merchants much Damage, appear'd in the British Chanel. The King upon Notice of this, immediately got what Ships ready he could, and went on board in Person, with the Prince of Wales, came up with the Spaniards near Winchelsea, attacked them, tho' much superior to him in Number and Force; and after an obstinate Fight, obtained a complete Victory over them. He took 26 of their Capital Ships, sunk many others, only a few made their Escape. This Year died Philip King of France, and was succeeded by his Son John, Duke of Normandy, who renewed the Truce with the English till Pentecost in 1356. But this Truce was not well observed on either Side, each Nation taking what Advantage they could upon the other. Sir John Beauchamp, Governor of Calais, being out with 300 Men at Arms, and 200 Archers, on Horseback, to see what they could get, was attacked by the Lord Beaulieu, worsted, and taken Prisoner. Sir Robert Herle, who succeeded him as Governor for the present, marched out, and with inconsiderable Loss, returned with so large a Booty of Cattle, that a fat Ox at Calais would hardly yield sixteen Pence Sterling. The Earl of Lancaster also, lately made Duke (and the second in England) was sent by the King to Calais, who burnt and plunder'd all the Coasts, set Fire to above a hundred Vessels, and returned to Calais with great Booty and many Prisoners. In Bretagne Sir Walter Bently and Sir Robert Knolls, with 300 Men at Arms, and 600 Archers, attacked the Marshal of France, with four Times their Number, and defeated them. In this Encounter, 13 Lords, 140 Knights, 100 Esquires, 500 Men at Arms, and great Numbers of common Soldiers were slain; and 9 Lords, 140 Knights and Esquires,

*A.D. 1350.
Order of the
Garter instituted.*

*Spanish Fleet
defeated.*

A.D. 1352.

*Various Successes in
France.*

A.D. 1352.

(166)

The History of ENGLAND.

Guisnes be-
tray'd to the
English.
quires, taken Prisoners. All this was done without Breach of the Truce. In the same Year *Guisnes*, for a Sum of Money, was betrayed to the *English*. Of this the *French* King complain'd to the King of *England*; who answered, that *Philip* his Father, by attempting to purchase *Calais* in the same Manner, had taught the *English* Commanders, that buying and selling of Towns was no Breach of the Truce.

A. D. 1353. K. *Edward* resolving to make *England* a flourishing as well as glorious Nation, settled the Mart or Staple of Wool at *Westminster*, *Chichester*, *Canterbury*, *Lincoln*, *Warwick*, *York*, *New-Castle*, *Exeter*, *Caermarthen*, *Bristol* and *Hull*; judging it better to advance his own Towns than let Foreigners run away with the Advantage, as they long had done: And the Parliament enacted many wise Ordinances for the governing and ordering this Staple. It was in this Parliament that common Harlots, in Order to be rendred more scandalous, were requir'd to wear Hoods striped with diverse Colours; and to wear their Garments the wrong Side outwards. In the next Parliament the Lord *Roger Mortimer*, Grandson to the famous *Mortimer*, who was attainted and executed 23 Years before, was now restor'd to Blood, and the Judgment against the Grandfather revers'd.

A. D. 1354. About this Time great Mediation was made by the Pope to reconcile the two Kings of *France* and *England*, and to establish a Peace; but to no Purpose: For K. *John* of *France* giving the Dukedom of *Gascony* to his Son the *Dauphin*, K. *Edward* bestow'd the same on his Son the Prince of *Wales*, commanding him to defend his Right with the Sword. The Prince, with many great Lords, 1000 Men at Arms, and 1400 Archers, sail'd immediately for *Gascony*, where he performed many Actions worthy his Name and Courage. And K. *Edward*, to facilitate the Prince's Designs, went in Person into *France*, where he ravag'd the Country as far as *Hesdin*, and then return'd back to *England* to recover the Town of *Berwick*, which the *Scots* had taken by Surprize; which they burnt, dismantled, and then abandon'd it. The King call'd a Parliament, which granted a Supply of 50s. upon every Sack of Wool. K. *Edward* entred *Scotland* in a hostile Manner. At *Roxborough*, *Baliol*, one of

A. D. 1355. the same on his Son the Prince of *Wales*, commanding him to defend his Right with the Sword. The Prince, with many great Lords, 1000 Men at Arms, and 1400 Archers, sail'd immediately for *Gascony*, where he performed many Actions worthy his Name and Courage. And K. *Edward*, to facilitate the Prince's Designs, went in Person into *France*, where he ravag'd the Country as far as *Hesdin*, and then return'd back to *England* to recover the Town of *Berwick*, which the *Scots* had taken by Surprize; which they burnt, dismantled, and then abandon'd it. The King call'd a Parliament, which granted a Supply of 50s. upon every Sack of Wool. K. *Edward* entred *Scotland* in a hostile Manner. At *Roxborough*, *Baliol*, one of

New Con-
tests about
Gascony.
Black Prince
enters it.

The
of the King
his Right
only a P
King being
liant Prin
France, co
Towns a
with wh
Bourdeau
60000 M
who had
him near
pare for
Rank, to
" of God
" if they
" Rewar
" Labour
" ther to
which co
cess: Bu
Courage,
his Son
taken Pri
Monday t
Prince an
bers of t
the small
dible in
from the
Prisoners
go on the
rate Rat
consider
by his r
wards hi
Admirat
Winter
ved at P
where h
City, til
bout No
sented t
his Pris
with as

of the Kings of Scotland, surrendered to K. Edward all his Right and Title he had to that Kingdom, reserving only a Pension of 2050*l.* per An. David the other King being still a Prisoner. In the mean Time the valiant Prince of Wales did nothing but Wonders in France, continually infesting the Country, taking Cities, Towns and Castles, and gaining prodigious Booty, with which he returned in a triumphant Manner to Bourdeaux. K. John at length having got an Army of 60000 Men, advanced towards this invincible Prince, who had but about 8000 Men with him; and overtook him near the City of Poitiers, where both Parties prepared for Battle. The Prince, riding from Rank to Rank, told his Men, "That Victory was in the Hands of God, and not always gain'd by Multitudes; which if they obtain'd, immortal Honours would be their Reward, or else Death would put an End to their Labours: But for his own Part he was resolved either to die or conquer." A bloody Battle ensued, which continued above four Hours, with various Success: But at length the English, by their Conduct and Courage, gain'd a compleat Victory. K. John and his Son Philip, then about thirteen Years of Age, were taken Prisoners. This great Victory was obtain'd on Monday the 19th of September, to the Renown of the Prince and the English Nation. Such were the Numbers of the slain of both high and low, as considering the small Number of the English, would appear incredible in Story: Besides, when the English returned from the Chace, they found they had twice as many Prisoners as themselves: And therefore let most of them go on their Paroles, and fixed their Ransom at a moderate Rate. The Loss on the English Side was very inconsiderable; not one Lord was kill'd. The Prince by his modest, civil, and most obliging Behaviour towards his royal Prisoner, gain'd himself the Respect and Admiration of all Men. The Prince having spent the Winter at Bourdeaux, in April set Sail for England, arrived at Plimouth, and by easy Journeys came to London, where he made a magnificent publick Entry thro' the City, till he came to Westminster-Hall, which was about Noon; where in the most solemn Manner he presented to the King his Father, the Person of K. John his Prisoner, whom K. Edward met, and caress'd with as much Respect as if he was only come to give him

Battle of Poitiers.

John King of France taken Prisoner.

A.D. 1357. Prince with French King arrive in England.

David K. of
Scotland re-
leas'd.

him a Visit. K. *John* and his Son were honourably lodg'd and entertained in the *Savoy*, and the rest were fixed in other convenient Places. And now *David* King of *Scotland* (who had been a Prisoner here about eleven Years) was releas'd, upon paying a Ransom of 100,000 Marks Sterling, and upon Condition of demolishing certain Forts and Castles.

A. D. 1358.
A Tourna-
ment at
Windsor.

This Year on the 23^d Day of *April*, the Feast of St. *George* was to be held at *Windsor*, attended with publick Justings and Tournaments: And the King by Proclamation declared, that all that would come to it, should have his Letters of safe Conduct for three

Q. *Isabel* dies.

Weeks. This Year died Q. *Isabel*, K. *Edward*'s Mother, in the sixty third Year of her Age, after about 28 Years Confinement. *France* suffered all the Desolations and Miseries, that can be imagined; it being without a Head, the Members at Variance with each other, and the whole Kingdom over-run with dissolute Soldiers of diverse Nations, who having no General to restrain them, wasted all at Pleasure, and by unheard of Insolences discover'd all the Miseries of Anarchy and Confusion.

Miseries of
France.

A. D. 1359.
K. *Edward*
invades it.

Notwithstanding two Cardinals at the *English* Court had laboured to put an End to these Troubles, yet the *French* could not be prevailed on to do any thing for the Liberty of their King. K. *Edward* therefore looking upon himself as deluded by the *French*, sail'd from *Sandwich* with a Fleet of 1100 Sail for *Calais*; from thence with an Army of 100000 Men he set forward. The Army was divided into three different Bodies, commanded by the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Prince of *Wales* and himself. The Terror of these Armies, which they could not oppose, soon put the Duke of *Burgundy* upon a Composition; and for a Sum of two hundred thousand Florins of Gold he saved *Burgundy* from being plunder'd. At length the King advanced to the Walls of *Paris*, which the Regent of *France* kept with a powerful Army. K. *Edward*, after having ravaged the Country as far as *Chartres* and *Orleans*, at length granted a Peace to the miserable *French*, upon these honourable Conditions: "That he should keep

A. D. 1360.

A Peace
given to
France.

"all his Territories in *France*, without any Dependence upon the King of *France*: And that the *French* should pay for their King's Ransom, 500000*l*. That Hostages should be given as Sureties; and that the King

" of

"of *England* should renounce all Right and Title to the Crown of *France*. That the *French* should not assist the *Scots*, nor the *English* the *Flemings*." And the King of *Navarre* and his Brother were included in the Articles: This Peace was concluded the 8th of *May*, 1360. Soon after which, K. *Edward* honourably conducts K. *John* to *Calais*; and at their Parting, each express'd a hearty and affectionate Regard for the other.

French King releas'd.

A. D. 1361.

Lands restored to the

Priors-Aliens.

As K. *Edward* in this Peace had shewn an unprecedented Generosity to his Enemies, so he was willing to be equally bountiful to his own Subjects; and therefore restored by his Letters-Patent, all the Houses, Lands, and Estates to the Priors-Aliens, which were taken from them 23 Years before.

The Prince of *Wales* being in the 31st Year of his Age, married *Joan* Countess Dowager of *Kent*. The next Year he was made Prince of *Aquitain* or *Gascony*, and was solemnly invested with that Principality by his Father. This Year the Parliament pass'd that memorable Statute which ordains, That all Pleading in the Courts of *Westminster* should be for the future in *English*; which had been before in *French*. The King

A. D. 1361.

All Pleading to be in English.

being 50 Years old, proclaim'd a Jubilee, granted a general and free Pardon to all Debtors to the Crown and Criminals; and also confirmed *Magna Charta* again.

And now he declar'd his second Son *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*; his third Son, *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and his fourth Son *Edmund*, Earl of *Cambridge*. After which he spent the rest of the Year in publick Diversions, and taking a Progress thro' many Parts of the Kingdom. In the Beginning of the following Year, Prince *Edward*, with the Princess and a noble Retinue, sail'd for *Gascony*, where he kept a very splendid Court for the Space of three Years, and governed the Country with a great deal of Clemency.

A. D. 1363.

Black Prince goes into Gascony.

And in the mean while K. *Edward*'s Court had been honour'd with the Presence of three Kings at the same Time, viz. *David* of *Scotland*, *John* of *France*, and *Peter* of *Cyprus*; who all three, together with K. *Edward*, were at once entertained by Sir *Henry Picard*, Merchant, and formerly Lord Mayor of *London*, at a noble Entertainment he made at his own House.

Four Kings entertained

by one Man in London.

In the Beginning of the following Spring, *John* King of *France* was taken dangerously ill of a languishing Distemper, which put an End to his Life, on the 8th

of

A. D. 1365.
John King
of France
dies.

of April; to the great Grief of K. Edward, his Queen, and the French Nobility. K. Edward made him a noble Funeral at his own Expence, and caused his Body to be transported into France, where it was interred on the 7th of May at St. Dennis. This Year the English Forces which K. Edward had formerly sent to assist Montfort, against de Blois, acquired great Honour by their Valour, in a pitch'd Battle against Charles de Blois, whom they entirely routed. This Battle was fought at Auroy, near Vannes. The Loss on the Enemy's Side was very great: For there were slain the Earl of Blois himself, his Brother John, and many other Lords, a thousand Men of Arms, with a great Number of common Soldiers; and many were taken Prisoners; after which Montfort, with the Consent of the King of England his Protector, did Homage to Charles the new King of France as Duke of Bretagne, and was accepted.

At this Time indeed, there was scarce a Part of the World in which there was any Action, where the Fame of English Valour had not spread: Even one John Hawkwood a Taylor, when he left England, revived the military Discipline so much in Italy, that he received Entertainment from the Italian Princes, and got such Honour and Riches by his Valour, that his Fame and Stame remain among their most renowned Princes for Action to this very Day.

A. D. 1366.
Pope's Pre-
tensions
quash'd.

This Year the Pope demands of K. Edward that infamous Tribute from England and Ireland, which was first granted by K. John. The King enraged at the Pope's exorbitant Pretences, resolved to curb his Pride, and lessen his Authority in the Nation; and therefore calls a Parliament to discuss this important Affair, and after a full Deliberation they declar'd, "That neither K. John, nor any other King could bring himself or his Kingdom to any such Subjection, without their Assent: And farther resolv'd that they would resist the Pope to the utmost of their Power, if he made any farther Claims in that Respect." Thus this haughty Demand of his Holiness was quash'd for ever: For we do not find it was ever demanded since.

A. D. 1367. This Year the renowned Prince of Wales, upon very earnest Requests and great Promises, with the Consent of K. Edward, undertakes to assist Peter, King of Castile, to recover his Right against his natural Brother Henry

Henry wh
ingly he
with a w
Henry, to
together
racens. T
ders of C
sued, wh
compleat
of his A
with ma
soon as th
to the Pr
replied, J
Victory.
replac'd h

The P
ed, dema
or unwill
turn to E
After this
his Broth
coin'd his
ed insuffic
Gascony,
to a dang
France for
appear at
plaints.
tended w
land com
Breach of
to reconc
Ambassad
fringers o
Parts of
Hand, T
nunciatio
obliged h
France as
Breach w
their Pret
ment.

Upon
he laid b

Henry who was made King, and Peter deposed. Accordingly he pass'd over the *Pyrenean Mountains* into *Spain* with a well disciplin'd Army of thirty thousand Men. Henry, to secure his new acquired Kingdom, had got together a hundred thousand *Castilians*, *French* and *Saracens*. These two unequal Armies met upon the Borders of *Castile* near *Najara*, and a general Battle ensued, where the heroical Prince of *Wales* obtain'd a compleat Victory, with the Death of many thousands of his Adversaries; and *Bertram* the *French* General, with many others, were taken Prisoners. Peter, as soon as the Battle was over, returned his humble Thanks to the Prince for having regained him his Crown; who replied, Sir, give your Thanks to God alone for this great Victory. The Prince continued with Peter till he had replac'd him on the Throne at *Burgos*.

Black Prince
assists Peter
of Castile.

His Victory
at Najara.

The Prince having done more than could be expected, demands of Peter a Reward; but he being unable or unwilling to gratify the Prince, he was forced to return to *Bordeaux*, without Money to pay his Soldiers. After this Peter was again deposed and murdered by his Brother Henry. The Prince, to pay his Army, coin'd his own Plate into Money; and when that proved insufficient, he laid a new Tax upon his Subjects of *Gascony*, called *Chimney-Money*; which provoked them to a dangerous Revolt. They appeal to the Court of *France* for Redress, and Prince *Edward* is summoned to appear at the Court at *Paris*, to answer these Complaints. The Prince answered, that he would come attended with sixty thousand Men. The King of *England* complained to the Pope and the Emperor, of the Breach of Peace: This last made a Journey into *France*, to reconcile the two Kings, before whom the *English* Ambassadors alledged, that the *French* were the first Infringers of the Treaty, by seizing *Ponthieu*, and several Parts of *Gascony*. The *French* alledged on the other Hand, That K. *Edward* had not made that publick Renunciation of the Crown of *France*, which the Treaty obliged him to, nor did he withdraw his Troops out of *France* as soon as he ought; and that therefore the Breach was on the *English* Side. Thus both Sides had their Pretences, but neither would come to an Agreement.

Returns un-
satisfied.

Is summon-
ed to appear
at Paris.

Upon this the King call'd a Parliament, in which he laid before them the Breach of the Peace. He then

A Breach
with France.

then desired Supplies, and obtain'd them; and by Advice of Parliament, he re-assumed his Claim to the Crown of *France*; and altered his Seal accordingly. The Duke of *Lancaster* invades *France* on the Side of *Calais*, while the Prince of *Wales* was attempting to regain the revolted Towns on the other Side; but nothing was done, and the Duke returned Home. Then the Earl of *Warwick* goes over with Forces, but dies in the Expedition.

Queen *Philippa's* Death.

A. D. 1370.

Sir *Thomas Knolls*, his Ads in *France*.

Black Prince takes *Limoges* by Storm.

He returns to *England*.
A. D. 1371.

Duke of *Lancaster* returns.

Flemings defeated at *Sea*.
A. D. 1372.

This Year the Nation was sensibly grieved for the Death of the most excellent Queen *Philippa*, who had been Wife to *K. Edward* 44 Years, and had born him 12 Children. Sir *Thomas Knolls*, with his Forces in *France*, over-ran the Country as far as the *Loyre*, harassed *Vermandois*, *Champaign*, *La Brie*, and the Isle of *France*; and burnt all round *Paris*; yet the King of *France* would not march out of the City to oppose him. The Duke of *Lancaster* was sent with Forces to assist the Black Prince, who was besieging *Limoges*, which he took by Storm, after a Month's Siege, putting above 3000 of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt the City to the Ground.

The Black Prince being now in a declining Condition, with respect to his Health, was advised by his Physicians to return into *England*, which he did, with his Princess, and Son *Richard*, born at *Bordeaux*. He left his Brother, the Duke of *Lancaster*, to manage his Affairs in *Gascony*, and returned to *England*, where he surrendered the Dukedom of *Gascony* to his Father, to be disposed of according to his Pleasure. The *French*, taking the Advantage of his Absence, won many Forts and Towns in *Gascony*; and the Loss of Sir *John Chandois*, a brave Commander, revived their Hopes. Not long after, the Duke of *Lancaster*, and his Brother, the Earl of *Cambridge*, returned out of *Gascony*, with their Ladies, *Constance* and *Isabella*, both Daughters to *Peter*, late King of *Spain*, whom they married; the Duke thereupon styling himself King, and his Wife Queen of *Castile* and *Leon*. About this Time the Earl of *Hereford* beat the *Flemings* at *Sea*, and took about five and twenty of their Ships.

The following Year, the *French* having besieged *Rochel* by Land, and *Henry* King of *Castile* assisting them by Sea, the Earl of *Pembroke* was sent to their Relief with forty great Ships; but being suddenly attack'd by

T
and
by the
himself
chel, no
solving
with a m
violent S
the Coar
the usele
did not c
Care for
defended
Enemy.
K. Edw
in the S
came ov
Money
the *Fren*
Duke of
from *Ca*
dom of
incredibl
very littl
stemper
Marches
Horse
the Fate
of *Lanca*
was pre
Edward
Indisposi
and boar
tho' wh
Effects o
Damage
against v
extraordi
fit *Matc*
bert.
The f
into *Eng*
to the *Fr*
Age, the
they mor
again.
but all o
VOL.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(273)

by the *Spaniards*, after a bloody Fight, he was defeated, *Spaniards destroy the English Fleet.* himself taken Prisoner, and all the Fleet destroyed. *Robert*, notwithstanding this, held out. K. Edward resolving to relieve it, went in Person on board his Fleet with a mighty Force; and while they were under Sail, a violent Storm arose, and drove the whole Fleet back to the Coast of *England*, to his great Disappointment, and the useless Consumption of 90000*l.* Sterling. But this did not discourage him, nor oblige him to give over his Care for this important Place, which the *English* still defended with so much Courage and Bravery against the Enemy. *John*, Duke of *Bretagne*, married to *Mary*, K. Edward's Daughter, resolved to venture his Fortune in the Service of the *English*, whom he intirely loved, came over to *England*, and had a Supply of Men and Money granted him, with which he made Head against the *French*, with various Success. In the mean Time the Duke of *Lancaster* marched with a powerful Army from *Calais*, and ravaged thro' the Body of the Kingdom of *France*, till he came to *Bourdeaux*; and did incredible Damage to that Nation, meeting with very little or no Opposition in the Way; tho' by Distempers, and Want of Provisions, during these tedious Marches, he lost many of his Men, and most of his Horse. Nor long after, a Day was appointed to decide the Fate of the Nation by a set Battle between the Duke of *Lancaster's* and the Duke of *Anjou's* Forces; but this was prevented by an untimely Truce, to which K. Edward had consented by reason of the Black Prince's Indisposition. The *French* made great Rejoycings, and boasted as if they had gained a compleat Victory; tho' what they gained, was no more than the common Effects of Policy. *Glequin* in the mean Time did much Damage to the *English* Party in *Guienne* and *Bretagne*; against whom Sir *Robert Knolls* acquitted himself in so extraordinary a Manner, that he alone was thought a fit Match for *Glequin*, and *Glequin* alone for Sir *Robert*. *Lancaster ravages France.*

A. D. 1373.

A Truce.

The following Year the Duke of *Lancaster* returned into *England*; upon which almost all *Gascony* revolted to the *French*; who taking Advantage of K. Edward's Age, the Prince's Sickness, and the Success of their Policy more than their Valour, began to shew themselves again. At *Bruges* a Treaty of Peace was negotiated; but all on the *French* Side was Colour and Pretence, *English Affairs decline in France.*

for at the same Time they made secret Preparations for new Attempts.

The Caval-
cade of *Alice*
Pierce.

This Summer one *Alice Peirce*, a Person of no great Quality, had by her Beauty and Artifice so much prevailed upon the aged King, as to be taken by him for his Mistress; and he having lately given her the affected Title of *Lady of the Sun*, she rode from the Tower of *London* to *Smithfield* in a triumphal Chariot, accompanied with a vast Number of Lords, and Knights, and Ladies, every Lady leading a Lord or a Knight by his Horse's Bridle, till they came to *Smithfield*, where a solemn Justing, or Tournament was performed.

A. D. 1375.
Engl. Af-
fairs decline
apace.

The Cause of
it.

The Duke of *Bretagne* suffered very much by the late patch'd up Truce; and *Glequin* got more Advantage by it than he could by his Army; for the Duke had before driven him out of his Territories. All Wonder at this Management will cease, if we consider the Posture of the *English* Affairs at this Time. The Prince of *Wales* was in a very bad State of Health; Plots were set on foot by diverse Interests at Home; the Duke of *Lancaster* had an Eye to the Succession; Domestick Affairs grew disturbed; the King's Age was abused and misled by his Concubine *Alice Peirce*, and his Treasure exhausted by others; All which Things being sufficiently known to the *French*, they made a very advantageous Use of them.

A. D. 1376.

The aged K. *Edward* was very sensible of all this; and to cure it, if possible, he called a Parliament at *Westminster*. The King's Wants and Weaknesses were all laid before the House, and Supplies desired; but instead of Contributions, they unanimously exhibited great Complaints, charging the King's Officers with fraudulent Practices; and petitioned the King to remove from the Court, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Lord Chamberlain *Latimer*, Dame *Alice Peirce*, and Sir *Richard Sturry*. The King, to get a little present Supply, removed all these Persons. The Prince of *Wales* seem'd to favour these Proceedings for the sake of his Son *Richard*, having some Reason to fear the Duke of *Lancaster*. The King being now in the 50th Year of his Reign, granted another Pardon as another Jubilee, which was kept with great Magnificence. But this Jubilee was soon changed into Sorrow throughout the Nation, for the Death of that Wonder of Mankind, the incomparable Prince of *Wales*; a Prince, one of the most renowned for Magnanimity,

Black Prince
dies.

Valour

Valour and Bravery, as well as Humanity, Courtesie, and Wisdom, that ever graced the *English* Name and Nation. He died in the 46th Year of his Age, on the 8th of *June* 1376; and was interr'd at *Canterbury* with great Solemnity.

After this, the King recalls such Persons as by Petition of the Parliament had been removed; and *Peter de la Mare*, Speaker of the said Parliament, and a true *Englishman*, who had nobly expressed the Mind of the House in the aforesaid Reformations, was condemned to perpetual Imprisonment, by the Instigation of *Alice Peirce*, and was committed Prisoner at *Nottingham*, tho' with much Difficulty he regained his Liberty in about two Years Time. *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, governed as if he had been King; notwithstanding which the good old K. *Edward's* Affections were fixed upon *Richard* the eldest Son of the late Prince of *Wales*. To shew this, he first made him Earl of *Chester*, and not long after Prince of *Wales*; and for a full Assurance and Security to his Succession, K. *Edward* procured all the Nobility of the Realm to take an Oath to accept and defend Prince *Richard* as lawful Heir and King of *England* after his Decease: And he caus'd him to take Place of all his own Children at an open solemn Feast.

A. D. 1377.

His Son Richard declar'd Heir to the Crown.

About this Time the famous Dr. *John Wickliff* declared against the Abuses of Churchmen, Monks and religious Orders; and publickly maintained several material Points and Propositions against the Church of *Rome*; particularly against the Pope's Supremacy, the Infallibility of the Church, and Transubstantiation: And he had gained many Disciples call'd *Lollards*, a Word implying a Sort of Weeds; tho' in Reality they endeavour'd to extirpate all pernicious Weeds, which Time, Sloth, and Fraud had introduced into the Church. The Pope condemned twenty three of *Wickliff's* Propositions as heretical; whereupon *Wickliff* was cited to appear before the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and others in *St. Paul's*. The Duke of *Lancaster* and Lord Marshal conduct him thither, who order'd *Wickliff* to sit, having much to answer: The Bishop forbid it; at which the Duke told him, that he had rather pull him out by the Hair of the Head than suffer such Indignities. The *Londoners* were so enraged at this Treatment of their Bishop, that the Duke and Lord Marshal with Difficulty

John Wickliff opposes Church-Power.

Great Di-
sturbance in
London.

culty escaped their Fury. The next Day the *Londoners* assemble in a mutinous Manner, break open the Marshal's Inn, and set at Liberty some Prisoners; but mistaking the Marshal, they went to the *Savoy*, (the Duke's Palace) where by Mistake they murder'd a Priest instead of the Lord Marshal, and then they went and defaced the Duke's Armouries in the open Market. The Duke was enraged at this, and would not desist from prosecuting his Revenge against the *Londoners*, till he had procured the Lord Mayor and Aldermen of the

Which cau-
sed the Lord
Mayor and
Aldermen to
be removed.

City to be turned out of their Places, and others put in their Room: And Sir *Nicholas Brember* was elected Lord Mayor, and other Aldermen were appointed. The good old King used all his Endeavours to have reconciled the *Londoners* to his Son the Duke of *Lancaster*; but fall-

King falls
sick.

ling sick, he was prevented. The King now weaken'd with innumerable Toils and Age, was forced to relinquish the World, as the World did him, before his Breath was gone. For first his Concubine *Alice Peirce* packed away what she could snatch, even to the Rings off his Fingers, and left him. Then his other Attendants seized upon what they could find, and marched off: And even his Counsellors forsook him in his last Agonies, when he had most need of them: And thus this poor King was deserted by all, and left alone in his Chamber; which a poor Priest of the House observing as he pass'd by, approach'd his Bed-side, and finding him yet breathing, call'd upon him to remember his Saviour, and to ask Mercy for his Offences; which the King did in a very devout and humble Manner, shewing all the Signs of Contrition, and with his last

His Death.

Breath express'd the Name of Jesus. Thus died this valiant, wise, and victorious Prince, at his Manor-House of *Sheen*, (now *Richmond*) on the 21st Day of *June*, 1377, in the 64th Year of his Age, having reigned fifty Years, 4 Months, and 27 Days. He was in-

And Burial.

terred with all the Pomp and Magnificence imaginable, on the South Side of the royal Chapel in the Abby-Church of *Westminster*, close by his beloved Consort *Philippa*; where his Tomb is still to be seen, and near it his large Sword is kept, which the King is said to have used in his Wars with *France*.

doners
Mar-
t mis-
Duke's
st in-
t and
arket.
defist
rs, till
of the
put in
Lord
good
ed the
t fal-
ken'd
relin-
re his
Peirce
Rings
atten-
ched
s last
d thus
in his
rving
nding
r his
which
nner,
s last
this
anor-
ay of
eign-
as in-
able,
abby-
nfort
near
id to



The



KING RICHARD THE II.ND



The R

RICHARD II. from
 been born
 Prince v
 Grandfat
 land, Ju
 ven Year
 great a
 a Dispos
 Beauty o
 were en
 him for
 tification
 Edward
 maintain
 ple, than
 Action h
 conciliat
 London;
 Moderat
 expected
 having g
 approach
 father's
 Wales, g
 vice, if t
 ed him to
 the Duke
 which A
 of his Lo
 Endeavou
 the very
 and preva
 the Differ

VOL.

The Reign of King RICHARD the Second,

RICHARD the Second was surnamed *Burdeaux*,^{1377.} from a City of that Name in *France*; he having been born there, when his Father *Edward* the Black Prince was Duke of *Aquitain*. He succeeded his Grandfather *Edward* the Third, in the Throne of *England*, June 21, 1377. Altho' he was no more than eleven Years of Age when he began to reign, yet so great a Pregnancy of Wit above his Years, so sweet a Disposition of Mind, set off with an admirable Beauty of Body, appeared in him, that the People were enamoured with him; and therefore accepted him for their King, with great Joy and universal Satisfaction, for the Sake of that incomparable Prince *Edward* his Father: And upon this Stock of Merit he maintained himself longer in the Affections of his People, than by any worthy Action of his own. The first Action he undertook, after he was King, was the Reconciliation of the Duke of *Lancaster* and the City of *London*; in the Management of which he shewed a Moderation and Prudence far beyond what could be expected from his Years; for the Citizens of *London* having gotten certain Intelligence of King *Edward's* approaching Death, did the Day before his Grandfather's Decease address him, being then Prince of *Wales*, giving him Assurance of their Fidelity and Service, if the present King should die: And also petitioned him to be a Mediator for them between his Uncle the Duke of *Lancaster* and themselves. In answer to which Address he returned them not only Promises of his Love and Favour to their City, but also of his Endeavour to effect what they desired; and accordingly the very next Day he spoke to his Uncle about it, and prevailed upon him to submit to his Decision of the Difference.

1377.
His Age and
Descent.

The Duke
of *Lancaster*
and *Londoners* recon-
ciled.

1377.

July the sixteenth was appointed for his Coronation; the Nation thinking this a fit Opportunity of giving a Testimony of their Affections to him, by a general Consent, all Things were so prepared, that it might be as splendid and magnificent as could be. On the Day before the Coronation, the King rode through the City to *Westminster*, in great State, being regally attended by his Noblemen, and Persons of Distinction; the Citizens, as he passed along, giving him great Demonstrations of their Affections and Loyalty, having adorned their Balconies with rich Tapestry, and caused several costly Pageants to be made; the Conduits ran with Wine, and the People saluted the King with loud Acclamations, and Wishes of Prosperity and Blessing.

The King took up his Lodgings at *Westminster* that Night, and was crowned the Day following, in the Abbey-Church, by *Simon Sudbury*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, with the usual Ceremonies of anointing, giving him the Sword, taking an Oath from him for the good Government of the Nation, and requiring the Consent of the People, to have him for their King, by asking them if they would be subject to this Prince as their lawful Ruler, and be obedient to his Commands.

The Oath that he took was somewhat larger than what we find was taken by former Kings:

The King's
Oath.

That he would permit the Church to enjoy all her Liberties; That he would reverence her Ministers, and maintain the true Faith; That he would restrain Violence and all Oppression, in all Sorts of Men; That he would cause good Laws to be every where observed, especially those of St. Edward, King and Confessor; and would also cause all evil Laws or Customs to be abrogated: Lastly, That he would be no Respector of Persons, but would give right Judgment between Man and Man, and would chiefly observe Mercy in all his Decrees or Judgments, as God should shew Mercy to him.

Which Form of the Coronation Oath, with some small Alterations, has been administered to all succeeding Kings and Queens ever since. *John of Gaunt*, King of *Leon* and *Castile*, and Duke of *Lancaster*, made the noblest Figure of any other at the Coronation, and claimed the Right of being Steward of *England*, to carry the King's principal Sword, and be his Carver that

that Day. Here it is to be observed, that Sir John Dimmock, in Right of the Manour of *Scrivelsey*, in *Lincolnshire*, was admitted to serve as Champion, to defend the King's Title against all Opposers; but how long that Custom of a Champion had been in Use before that Time, does not appear.

1. Ri. II.

Being crowned he went to *Westminster-Hall* to Dinner; but before he sat down, he created four Earls, viz. his Uncle *Thomas Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham* and *Northampton*, *Thomas Mowbrey*, the younger Brother of *John Lord Mowbrey*, Earl of *Nottingham*, his Tutor, *Guiscard Angoulesm*, a *Gascoign*, Earl of *Huntington*, and *Henry Percy*, Earl of *Northumberland*. He also made at the same Time nine Knights. The next Day a very devout Procession was celebrated by the Archbishops, Bishops and Clergy, to pray for the Peace of the Realm, and prosperous Reign of the King. A Sermon was also preached by *Thomas Brinton*, Bishop of *Kochester*, in which he pathetically exhorted all Men to Peace and Unity, conjuring all those of a superior Degree, to treat the Common People with Gentleness, and the People willingly to obey their Superiors, but in an especial Manner, he exhorted the Nobles who were about the King's Person to shew him a religious and virtuous Example, lest they should bring down the Curse of the People upon them, by their Flattery or Vices. The young King being thus settled in the Throne, and by Reason of his tender Age, unable to rule, the Government was committed to the Care of the King's Mother, his two Uncles, *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, and *Edmund* Earl of *Cambridge*, and certain Bishops.

Several Creations at the Coronation.

But notwithstanding the Affairs of the Realm were put into so good a Posture, yet the *French* and *Scots*, the old Enemies of the Nation, thought the King's Minority a fit Opportunity to annoy it. The *French*, who had, in the Time of the Reign of King *Edward*, been making Preparations for that End, a little before his Death, and had manned out a Fleet to take Revenge for all the Losses they had sustained by his victorious Sword, did immediately upon his Decease, and while the Nation was busied in settling their new King, invade the Coasts of *England*, and did much Mischief for several Months, without Opposition; and on *June* the twenty ninth, put in at *Rye* in *Sussex* with fifty Sail

The French and Scots invaded England.

Rye and the Isle of Wight plundered and burnt.

1377. of Ships; and having rifled and plundered it, set it on fire. From hence they coasted to the Isle of *Wight*, and entred it, without Opposition; and putting all the valuable Goods on board their Ships, compounded with the People for a thousand Marks to forbear burning their Houses: But not being able, after several Attempts, to make themselves Masters of *Carisbrook* Castle, which was bravely defended by Sir *Hugh Tyrrel*, they left the Island, and returning back, attempted *Winchelsea*, but found the Town, so fortified and manned by the Abbot of *Battel*, that they could not enter it. However the *French* sent to the Abbot to redeem it from Assault; but the Abbot returned them this Answer, *That he had no Reason to redeem what was never lost.* The *French* not being able to draw the Inhabitants out of the Town, to a pitch'd Battle, battered it, but without Success. In the mean Time they sent a Party to *Hastings*, who finding it almost empty, the Inhabitants being gone to succour *Winchelsea*, they set it on fire, and utterly consumed it. Their next Attempt was upon the small Town of *Rottington* in *Sussex*, the Inhabitants whereof defended themselves manfully, but having killed many of their Enemies, and an hundred of themselves being slain, in the End they were beaten; the Prior, Sir *John Falsely*, Sir *Thomas Cheney*, and some others, who headed them, being taken Prisoners. The *French* likewise plundered several other Towns as *Portsmouth*, *Dartmouth* and *Plymouth*, all along that Coast, and having filled their Ships with the Spoils, they returned home, and soon after their Arrival, besieged the Castle of *Arde*, which was delivered up to them for a Bribe, by the Treachery of the Lord *Gurney*, a *German*, who being afterwards taken by Sir *Hugh Calverly*, Governor of *Calais*, was sent into *England*, to receive the deserved Punishment of his Treason.

Winchelsea
bravely de-
fended by
the Abbot of
Battel.

The Castle
of *Arde* got-
ten by the
French.

The *Scots*
invade Eng-
land.

In the mean Time the *Scots* were not idle; for they assaulted the Town and Castle of *Roxborough*, and having gained it, tho' not without considerable Loss to themselves, they plundered it of all that was valuable, and then burnt it. So unsafe was *England* at that Time, when it had neither a Fleet to defend it by Sea, nor regular Troops to oppose the Enemy by Land; there being very little, or no Care taken for the Security of the People; but whether out of Negligence,

Design,

Design,
the Du-
ment of
incurabl
so dilige
required

Nor
the you
his own
by loose
good N
made hi
ing, an
upon hi

About
rectify t
the Nat
Petition
joined v
Affairs
Punishm
bine, w
many M
from th
would
longer
moved,
caused
of Com
ing it fit
it was a
banished
went up
Nation
rates; a
and two
ditions,
sited in
Philpot,
to see, t
they als
maintain
nues, v
to main

Design, or want of Shipping, is uncertain. However, the Duke of *Lancaster*, who had the chief Management of the publick Affairs, brought upon himself an incurable Odium, by not endeavouring their Relief so diligently as his Place, and the People's Necessities, required.

1. Ri. II.

Nor were the civil Affairs much better managed; for the young King's Protectors and Governors let him have his own Will, and suffered those about his Person, who by loose Principles, and ill Examples, corrupted his good Nature; and giving him false Ideas of Glory, made him think it consisted in a riotous Way of living, and in conferring extravagant Honours and Gifts upon his Favourites.

About *Michaelmas* following the Parliament met to rectify the Disorders, and provide for the Security of the Nation. The first Thing they went upon was the Petition of the Commons, to appoint a Council to be joined with the King's Officers, and advise him in the Affairs of Government; and then they proceeded to the Punishment of *Alice Pierce*, the late King's Concubine, who, during his Reign, had been the Cause of many Mischiefs, and for that Reason had been banished from the Court, and made to take an Oath, that she would never return again; but she kept her Oath no longer than till the Fear of the Parliament was removed, but returning, became as insolent as ever; and caused Sir *Peter de la Mare*, the Speaker of the House of Commons, to be imprisoned. The Parliament thinking it fit to take Cognisance of these impudent Actions, it was agreed by a general Consent, that she should be banished, and all her Goods confiscated. Then they went upon providing a Navy, for the Defence of the Nation against the *French*, and *Spaniards*, their Confederates; and granted the King two Tenths of the Clergy, and two Fifteenths of the Laity; but upon these Conditions, that the Money so collected, should be deposited into the Hands of *William Walworth* and *John Philpot*, two eminent Citizens of *London*, who were to see, that it was expended for the Use of the Publick; they also resolved, that for the future, the King should maintain his State, and Wars, out of his own Revenues, which if well managed were judged sufficient to maintain both.

First Parliament.

Alice Peirce banished.

Taxes granted.

1378

Several Actions of the English against the French.

These Matters being thus settled, the Parliament broke up. After the Rising of the Parliament the Governors of the Nation having received Information, that the *Spanish* Fleet richly laden with Wines and other Commodities lay at *Sluice*, waiting only for a fair Wind to return, they sent out a great Fleet under the Command of the Duke of *Bretagne*, Earl of *Buckingham*, the Lords *Latimer* and *Fitzwater*, to intercept them; but by contrary Winds they were shatter'd and dispersed, and so could effect nothing at that Time. But Sir *Hugh Calverly* the Governor of *Calais* was more fortunate in his Adventures against the *French*; for making an Inroad towards *Bulloigne*, he plunder'd twenty six Vessels besides Barges which lay in the Haven, and in his Return drove away to *Calais* a great Booty of Oxen and Sheep, and so both plentifully supplied and enrich'd his Garison. He also recovered the Castle of *St. Mark* which had been betray'd to them by the *Picards*; and some small Time after he with his Garison made an Attempt upon *Estaples* upon a Fair-Day when the Merchants of *Paris*, *Amiens*, *Bulloigne*, and *Luttrell*, had brought great Quantities of Goods thither to sell, which all became an easie Prey to the *English*.

In the mean Time the Fleet under the Duke of *Buckingham* being equipped and furnished, put out to Sea, and cruising upon the Coast of *Bretagne* near *Brest*, took eight *Spanish* Ships, and might have taken more, if the tempestuous Weather, and their own Divisions, had not been an Impediment to their farther Success. Besides the King's Ships, which were employ'd against the Enemy, diverse Towns and private Men took all Opportunities of annoying the Enemy. The Inhabitants of *Winchelsea* and *Rye* to revenge their late Sufferings fitted out a Number of Ships with Men and Provision, and made an Inroad into *Normandy*, and entering the Towns of *St. Peter's Haven* and *Willet*, they plunder'd them, where they found and brought away many of the Goods which the *French* had lately taken from them, and after they had fired the Houses, they took the Ships, and got home safe with their Booty. The Lord *Piercy* with one great Ship and some small Vessels met a Fleet of fifty Sail of *Spanish* and *Flemish* Merchants Ships, of which he took twenty two, the rest escaping.

About

About this Time the Duke of Lancaster desired Leave of the King to retire to his Country Seat at Kellingworth Castle; but before he retired settled such Governors about the King, as were more pleasing to the People, viz. *William Courtney* Bishop of *London*, *Edmund Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, and several others. He also desir'd that the Money granted the last Parliament, might be put into his Hands to secure the Nation from its Enemies, promising to take Care to guard the Coasts from the Incursions of the *French* and their Confederates for the Year ensuing. This Proposition was granted, and the Duke immediately set about providing a sufficient Navy, and hired eight Ships of *Bayon* to join it. But before the Ships were ready, one *Mercer* a desperate *Scot*, (whose Father had been taken not long before by some Northern Vessels, and by the Earl of *Northumberland* committed Prisoner to *Scarborough* Castle) having gotten together a small Number of *Scotch*, *French*, and *Spanish* Ships, entred the Haven of *Scarborough*, siezed several Ships in it, and carried them away to *Scotland*. This Success very much encouraged him and his Crew, so that they greatly infested those Seas. And tho' the Duke of *Lancaster* had undertaken to prevent those Mischiefs, yet no Body appeared to oppose the Pirates, so that those Parts of the Kingdom labour'd under many Calamities from them.

Duke of Lancaster requires from Court, but undertakes to secure the Nation from the French.

Upon hearing this News, *John Philpot* an Alderman of the City of *London* taking Pity of his Fellow Subjects, resolv'd upon a Relief at his own Charge; and fitting out such a Number of well-built Ships, as would conveniently carry a thousand Men, and having furnished them with Ammunition and Provision, he put to Sea, commanding himself as Captain, and finding out *Mercer* and his Comrades, he engaged them, and after a smart Dispute took them, carrying *Mercer* himself and all the Vessels he had before carried away from *Scarborough*, and fifteen *Spanish* Bottoms more that lay in the Harbour laden with rich Goods. Mr. *Philpot* returning to *London* with Spoils and Victory, was received with the Acclamations of the People, but without any Welcome from the Nobility, who envied him the Honour; and therefore he was sent for to appear before the Council, to give an Account of this Action, some of them blaming him for daring to do it without a Commission from the King

Alderman Philpot's Bravery.

1378.



and Council; and besides, he was charged by the Earl of *Stafford* with acting very illegally in levying Arms in the King's Dominions without his Leave. To which Charge Mr. *Philpot* made a modest and ingenious Defence, telling them, "it was not out of any Desire or ambitious Aim to get himself a Name or raise to himself the Reputation of being a great Soldier, that induced him to venture his Money and Men to vanquish the *Scotch* Pirate, but merely out of Love to his Countrymen, and for the Honour of the Nation, that the Sloth of such as ought to have secur'd the Nation, might not ruin the People, and make it contemptible. This Answer gave such Satisfaction to the Council, that he came away with as much Commendation from some of the Noblemen as he was received with Applause by the City.

The Duke of Lancaster's Preparations and Success.

The Duke of *Lancaster* in the mean Time lay at Anchor with his Ships, getting in Provision and Ammunition, but very dilatorily. Sir *Peter* and Sir *Philip Courtney*, who had the Command of some *English* Ships belonging to the Fleet commanded by the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Arundel*, being out at Sea, and espying certain Vessels belonging to the Enemy, attack'd them, and it proving to be the whole *Spanish* Fleet, tho' they fought bravely, yet they were beaten, many of the Men slain and themselves taken Prisoners. But the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Arundel* had that Success in their Voyage to *Bretagne*, which made them some Compensation for their former Loss; for the King of *Navarre* having fallen into Variance with the King of *France*, and desirous of an Alliance with the King of *England*, a Confederacy was established between them; and for a Sum of Money lent him, the Haven of *Cherbourg* was put into the Hands of the *English*, whereby they had at all Times an easy Entrance into *Normandy*. And the *Spaniards* did not escape long without making some Retaliation for the Loss sustained on the Account of Sir *Peter Courtney*; for those Ships of *Bayan* that coasted about the Kingdom to defend it, took fourteen *Spanish* Ships and their Cargo.

Pope Gregory sends a Letter against John Wickliff.

At the latter End of this Year, Pope *Gregory XI.* sent a Letter to King *Richard*, requiring him to assist the Bishops in suppressing *John Wickliff* and his Adherents,

ents, b
Demon
found
to the
at large
ning of

About
gotten
Sea, an
St. Ma
the Ear
other N
defende
raise th

On t
the Du
commi

whethe
tain; y
redoun
this; I
carried
file an
John S
nia Pri
had giv
his Ra
ment v
Hofstag
neglect
Years.

the He
her Ri
cover
Son w
and th
and Sh
Refusa
Towe
their I
minste
a gre
Lord
of the
the Sa

ents, but the Favour that *Wicliff* found is a sufficient Demonstration, that the Heat of the Bishops Spirit found but little Encouragement. The Pope's Letters to the King and Bishops, on this Account, are printed at large in *Fox's Acts and Monuments*, in the Beginning of this King's Reign.

About Midsummer, the Duke of *Lancaster* having gotten his Ships completely equipped, he put out to Sea, and landing his Forces in *Bretagne*, laid Siege to *St. Malo de Lisle*: But tho' the Siege was managed by the Earls of *Buckingham*, *Stafford* and *Warwick*, and other Noblemen of great Experience; yet it was so well defended by the *French*, that the Duke was obliged to raise the Siege and return home.

On the eleventh of *August*, some small Time after the Duke had left *England*, a barbarous Murder was committed in the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, which, whether the Duke was concerned in or no, is not certain; yet there were such Grounds for Suspicion, that it redounded much to his Dishonour. The Occasion was this; In the War which King *Edward* the Black Prince carried on in *Spain*, for restoring *Peter* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, two Gentlemen, *Robert Hawl* and *John Shakel*, did by their Valour take the Earl of *Denia* Prisoner; in Reward of which Bravery the Prince had given the said Earl to them, to make the best of his Ransom. The Earl afterwards made an Agreement with them for his Liberty, and left his Son as an Hostage, till the Ransom was paid; which the Earl neglecting to pay, his Son remained with them several Years. The Duke of *Lancaster*, having married one of the Heireffes of the Crown of *Spain*, was kept out of her Right by her Uncle; and he contriving how to recover his Right, thought the Restitution of the Earl's Son would oblige his Father to engage in his Interest: and therefore sends in the King's Name to Mr. *Hawl* and *Shakel*, to deliver up their Prisoner; and upon their Refusal he caused them to be sent Prisoners to the Tower. The Gentlemen, after some Time, made their Escape thence, and got to the Sanctuary, at *Westminster*. Sir *Allen Buxhal*, Constable of the Tower, a great Friend of the Duke, contrived with the Lord *Latimer* and Sir *Ralph Ferrers*, who were two of the Duke's Creatures, to take them by Force out of the Sanctuary, and with a Company of fifty Men armed,

2.Ri. II.

St. Malo besieged.

A barbarous Murder committed in the Sanctuary at *Westminster*.

1378. **W**ed, went into the *Abbey-Church*, when the Monks were at Prayers, and seized upon the two Gentlemen: Mr. *Hawl* endeavouring to defend himself, was slain together with his Servant, and a Monk, who assisted him: But Mr. *Shakel* was carried away to the Tower again, from whence he obtained not his Freedom till he resigned his Prisoner to them, on Condition he should receive an hundred Marks *per Annum*, and that the King should found a Chantry of five Priests, to pray for the Soul of Mr. *Hawl*, and his Servant. The Archbishop, and Bishops, so highly resented this Violation of the Sanctuary, that they excommunicated all that were concerned, or assisted in this Murder, excepting the King, Queen, and Duke of *Lancaster*. The King taking this as a Reflection upon himself and the Duke, sent Order to the Bishop to cease it; but he not regarding the Order, was summoned to *Windsor*, but would not appear. Upon this the Duke of *Lancaster* told the King, in a Rage, if he would give him Leave, he would fetch the Bishop to him by Force, in Spite of those Rebels, the *Londoners*; which Words lost the Duke the Good-will of the Citizens, and heightened their Suspicion, that he was the Author of the Murder.

Second Par-
liament, its
Acts and
Taxes.

In *October*, the Parliament out of Displeasure taken at the *Londoners*, met at *Glocester*, where many Things were propounded, but few concluded; however, they granted the King a Subsidy upon Wool, made some other Acts; and then having largely debated the Legality of the Election of the two Popes, *Clement* and *Urban*, they enacted, that Pope *Urban* was duly elected, and ought to be accepted and obeyed, under certain Penalties. At this Time the Archbishop complained of the late Violation of the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, desiring, that effectual Methods might be taken to secure the Privileges of Sanctuaries: But the Nobility objecting the Abuses of them in protecting Debtors, &c. The Archbishop dropped the Motion, lest they should be totally deprived of those Advantages.

The Scots in-
fest and in-
vade Eng-
land.

The Parliament being up, Robert King of *Scott*, by the Instigation of the King of *France*, raised an Army to invade the Borders of *England*; and one *Alexander Ramsay*, a valiant Scot, with forty of his Countrymen, surprised the Castle of *Barwick*, and putting Sir *Robert Boynton*, and the whole Garrison, to the Sword, made themselves Masters of it, and opened a free Pass-

sage

sage for
coming
keeping
immedi
Parts fo
Notting
Army
marched
had bro
ly Way
Ramsay
his Arm
and too
sey, wh
that he
Army.
Lords
hundred
the Lo
into the
portuni
he utter
About
Summe
burg, a
French,
ther Ac
relston
remove
of Sali
made A
mas P
with an
Hugh
as he
seven
Abou
War,
Papal
Nation
underta
A li
gain a
with a
therefo

sage for the whole Army into *England*. Advice of this coming to the Earl of *Northumberland*, to whom the keeping of that Town and Castle was committed, he immediately set about raising an Army out of those Parts for the Recovery of it; and with the Earl of *Nottingham*, and some other Lords, having gotten an Army of above a thousand Men, well armed, he marched to *Barwick*; and finding that the Townsmen had broken down the Draw-bridge, which was the only Way the *Scots* had to get into the Town; so that *Ramsay*, and his Men could have no Assistance from his Army which lay near, he laid Siege to the Castle, and took it, putting all the *Scots* to Death, except *Ramsay*, who was saved partly for his Valour, and partly, that he might discover the farther Designs of the *Scottish* Army. Being flushed with this Success, the Earls and Lords of the *English* Army, sent out a Party of six hundred Men, to pursue the *Scots* Army, who, upon the Loss of *Berwick*, were withdrawn a little Way into the Country: But Earl *Douglas* waiting an Opportunity, fell upon them, at such a Disadvantage, that he utterly defeated them.

About *Christmas*, Sir *Robert Rouse*, who had the Summer before, been appointed Governor of *Chierburg*, and had done many brave Actions against the *French*, in taking Sir *Oliver Gueselin* Prisoner, and other Adventures, was called home, and Sir *John Herlston* put in his Place. Sir *Hugh Calverly* was also removed from his Government at *Calais*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* appointed in his Place; and Sir *Hugh* was made Admiral, and joined in Commission with Sir *Thomas Piercy*. The Earl of *Salisbury* began his Office with an Inroad into *France*, taking a great Booty. Sir *Hugh* was likewise as active against the Enemy at Sea, as he had formerly been at Land; for he soon took seven Merchants Ships, and one Man of War.

About this time, the Popes began to stir up a holy War, for the Establishment of themselves singly in the Papal Chair; each of them sending his Agents into all Nations, that submitted to him, to animate them to undertake a War against his Competitor.

A little after *Easter* the Parliament assembled again at *Westminster*, and gave the King a Poll Tax with a particular Exemption of the Commons; and therefore it lay more heavy on the Nobility and Gentry.

2. Ri. II.

The Captains of *Chierburgh* and *Calais* changed.

War between the Popes.

Third Parliament, and its Acts and Taxes.

1379. For Dukes and Archbishops were to pay twenty Marks, Bishops, Earls and mitred Abbots six Marks, Monks ten Groats, and Gentlemen and all other of the Clergy at a certain Rate, but the Commons paid nothing. Another Act was pass'd about the Privileges of Sanctuaries, and particularly of that at *Westminster*, which being found to be abus'd to protect Debtors, it was enacted, "that all such Debtors as after they have made over their Goods and Lands by Feoffments, Deeds of Gift or otherwise to their Friends, and had for Protection fled into Sanctuary, Judgment should pass against them, and Execution be awarded upon their Goods and Lands, which were without such privileged Places, as well such as are given by Collusion or otherwise."

A Plague in the North. The next Summer the Plague so afflicted the Northern Counties of *England*, that the Inhabitants were in great Numbers constrain'd to remove their Habitations into other Parts of the Nation, and they who remained there were so frequently infested with the Incursions and Robberies of the *Scots*, that the Country was in a Manner depopulated.

The Duke of Bretagne returns home, and has Aid to settle him.

The Duke of *Bretagne*, who came over into *England* the first Year of this King's Reign to beg his Assistance against his rebellious Subjects, who joining with the King of *France*, had expell'd him out of his Dominions, was by his Nobles invited to return home and take upon him the Government of his Country. His Solicitations for Aid had met with but small Success, because the Duke of *Lancaster* thought to have got his Dukedom for himself, and for that End went over thither with a powerful Army; but the Constable of *France* opposing him, he was obliged to give over the Design. The Duke of *Bretagne*, now having sufficient Aid granted to attend him into his own Country, and greater Forces promised to be sent after him, was by Sir *Hugh Calverly* and Sir *Thomas Piercy* set on Shore in his own Country, where he was receiv'd with a great deal of Joy. But because it was expected that the *French* Faction would be troublesom to him, an Army was sent after him, to maintain him in his Dignity; but in their Passage, they met with such a violent Storm that they could not come nigh the Shore of *France*, twenty five of the Ships were lost, most of the Captains and a great Number of Soldiers were drown-

ed. This unhappy Accident was accounted a just Judgment from Heaven upon them for the Wickedness they had committed on Shore, by plundering Houses, robbing Churches, ravishing Women, and forcing them on Board with them to satisfy their Lusts, whom, when the Tempest began, they inhumanly cast into the Sea.

3. Ri. II.



Sir John Harlestone and his Garison, who kept the Town of Chierburg, having Intelligence that the French had laid up great Quantities of Provision in a Church and Mill, sallied out, and possessed themselves of them, tho' guarded and defended by the French: But were afterwards set upon by a Party of French that kept Mountburg a Counter-Garison to Chierburg; whereupon there followed a furious Battle, and tho' the French were superior in Number, by the Assistance of a few Men out of Chierburg, they obtain'd a compleat Victory, and taking the Governor himself and one hundred and twenty Soldiers Prisoners, they carried their Booty to Chierburg. But this Advantage over the French by Land, was soon after allay'd by as great a Loss to the English by Sea. For several English Ships then lying in the Haven of Bretagne, under the Protection of a Castle that was garison'd by English, the French sent a Squadron thither, and sending one Ship into the Haven, with Design either to fire them, or decoy them to pursue it, that by that Means they might fall into their Hands. The English not suspecting the Design, pursued the Ship, and the Commander of the Castle, and his Men went on Board in Order to assist in taking it, and so fell into the Ambuscade. And tho' they fought bravely, yet being overpower'd the French took the English Ships but so shatter'd, that they could not carry them home, and but few Prisoners, the Captain and mozt of his Men being killed; and the rest escaping to the Shore.

The English at Chierburg assault the French.

About the Feast of Hilary the Parliament met again, and sat till the Beginning of March; this Parliament granted to the King a Tenth of the Clergy, and a fifteenth of the Laity, upon Condition that the King should not summon another Parliament till the Michaelmas twelvemonth after; but this Stipulation he did not perform.

Fourth Parliament.

The Duke of Bretagne having been disappointed of the Assistance which he expected from England, and which was prevented by the Storm, but not knowing the

Aids sent to the Duke of Bretagne and their Success.

1380. the Reason of their not coming, sent a fresh Petition to the King for Assistance; and accordingly seven or eight thousand Men were raised to be sent to him under the Command of the Earl of *Buckingham*, and because the *French* Gallies infested the *British* Seas, they landed at *Calais*, in Order to travel thro' *France* into *Bretagne*. And tho' they did much Harm to the *French* in their Passage, yet they met with no Opposition from them. The Duke of *Burgundy* would fain have oppos'd them, and the People who were injured by them would willingly have repress'd their Insolencies; but King *Charles* being a politick Prince, gave strict Commandment to the People not to engage them, ordering them to keep themselves and their Cattel close in their Towns, while they passed by, so that when they arrived in *Bretagne*, they met with but cold Reception, which Disappointment did more Damage to the *English* than they had done to the *French* in their March; and so the Policy of *Charles* outdid the Force of the *English*, tho' he did not long survive to see the Success of it. For he having been poison'd about the Time that the *English* landed at *Calais*, was with much Difficulty preserved by a *German* Physician till the 24th of *September*, and died just as the *English* were passing the *Sarrie*, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Charles VI.* being but twelve Years old. Soon after this a Peace was concluded, and the *English* were sent home, to the great Displeasure of the Earl of *Buckingham* and the whole Army.

Charles the French King dies.

The *French* much annoy *England*.

While the Duke of *Buckingham's* Army were passing *France*, the *French* and *Spanish* Armies very much infested the Coasts of *England*, especially in the Western Parts, where they took several Ships, and at length entring the River *Thames*, plunder'd and burnt the Town of *Gravesend*, returning with much Booty. But the trading Towns of the West set out a Fleet to chastise their Insolences, which meeting with the *French* persued them and forc'd them into *Kingsale* in *Ireland*, where they were so attack'd by the *Irish* on one Side and the *English* on the other, that above four hundred of the Men were kill'd, most of their Ships taken, besides twenty one Vessels which they had before taken from the *English*. But four of their most desperate Captains escaping, being enrag'd at their Loss muster'd up what Force they could, and came upon the *Eng-*
lish

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

255

list Coasts, plundering, burning, and killing in a most outrageous Manner. And tho' they were opposed by the People, they burnt the Town of *Winchelsey*, and put the Abbot of *Basel* to Flight, who came to defend it; and after they had plundered and destroyed *Rye*, *Hastings*, and *Portsmouth*, they retired.

4. Ri. II.


The *Scots*, who were always confederate with the *French* against the *English*, were forward enough to contribute their Assistance: and whereas the *French* acted only as Pirates, without any Declaration of War, the *Scots* invaded *England*, under Pretence, that the Townsmen of *Newcastle* and *Hull* had taken one of their Ships, worth six or seven thousand Marks; although they had not taken it from the *Scots*, but the *French* Pirates. Upon this Pretence the *Scots* entered *Cumberland* and *Westmoreland*, with a considerable Body of Men, ravaging and laying waste the Country, and drove away about forty thousand Head of great and small Cattle, out of the great Forest of *Inglewood*; and coming to *Penrith* Fair, they seized upon all the Goods. For the Merchants and Tradesmen hearing of their coming, had fled, and left their Goods to save their Lives; so they carried off a considerable Booty, returning home by the City of *Carlisle*. The Earl of *Northumberland*, who was Guardian of those Northern Parts, having Notice of these Depredations, was preparing a sharp Revenge against them; but, to the great Wonder of the People, was forbidden by the King and Council, to proceed against them, till the Treaty with them was over, to see whether they would make any Satisfaction, or not.

The Scots invaded Eng-
land.

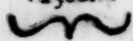
About *Michaelmas*, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls of *Warwick*, *Stafford*, and other Noblemen, went with a great Army into the North, and lay on the Borders in order to treat with the *Scots*. The Negotiation, which lasted a considerable Time, ended only in a Truce till the *Easter* following. The Truce indeed was no Security to the *English*, because the *Scots* always made use of such Cessations of Arms to plunder *England* with less Hazard; for they never observed them any longer, than till a fair Opportunity of breaking them offered.

A Treaty with the
Scots.

Another Parliament was summoned to meet in November at *Northampton*, and this Place the King chose rather than *London*, because he was resolved to punish one

Fifth Parlia-
ment.

1380.



one *John Kirby*, a Merchant, who was one that was concerned in killing a *Geonese* Merchant, who would not sell a Shipload of Spices, he had, at so low a Price as the *Londoners* would give him, fearing, that if he suffered in the City, it might occasion some Tumult; so he was tried and hanged at *Northampton*.

The King's
Marriage ne-
gotiated.

The Parliament broke up about *Christmas*: After the rising of which a Marriage began to be treated of between the King and the Sister of the Emperour of *Germany*; about which the Duke of *Tarfilia* and Cardinal of *Braxedes*, were sent over to treat with the King; and the Match was concluded. The Cardinal made it a very gainful Negotiation for himself, by selling Indulgences, Confessional Letters, Portative Altars, Absolutions, and Dispensations, to the superstitious People and Clergy, at dear Rates.

The Truce
with the
Scots renew-
ed.

The Truce with the *Scots* being now to ready to expire, the Duke of *Lancaster* was sent into *Scotland*, to procure a Prolongation of it for three Years. The Duke was the more zealous to promote a firm Peace at home; because, as he thought, he had a fair Opportunity of recovering his Wife's Right to the Crown of *Spain*, put into his Hands, by the Breach between the King of *Portugal*, and the Usurper. For the King of *Portugal* had sent to the Duke to assist him; and the Duke had sent his Brother the Earl of *Cambridge*, with the Lords *Beauchamp* and *Botreux*, with a considerable Force to help him, designing to follow himself with a greater Force, as soon as Things were put into a secure Posture in *England*. But while he was lengthening the Peace with the *Scots*, an unexpected and very dangerous Disturbance arose at Home, upon the following Occasion.

The Rebel-
lion of Jack
Straw: the
Occasion of
it.

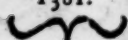
The Poll-Tax before-mentioned began to be collected in the Spring, which being in it self very displeasing to the People, and also the Collection of it manag'd by indiscreet and uncivil Officers, raised such Discontents in most Counties of *England*, that they were almost in all Places ripe for Rebellion. The Government of the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Exactions and Corruptions of Lawyers and Attorneys, the Oppressions of Lords of Manors by their Tenures of Villenage had sat very uneasy upon their Stomachs a great while, and they longed for a Deliverance from them, but in a more especial Manner from the insupportable Bur-

thens

thens
genera
as pe
Woo
were
their
ment
named
the Pe
" that
" ther
" he
" who
" unju
" ther
" requ
" to r
first be
lector
a youn
Wat T
he bea
The F
appreh
thered
became
of Ken
Body,
all, ref
such O
and Ca
thought
able to
they, i
he first
that the
Interest
never r
for the
their N
never y
Being
March
first Re
pass'd a
VOL

thens of their Lords, whose Slaves and Servants they generally were, doing all their Work, and Drudgery, as plowing, sowing, carrying their Dung, cutting their Wood, and carrying it to their Houses, and therefore were ready to embrace any Opportunity of obtaining their Liberty: And they received no small Encouragement so to do by the Sermons of a seditious Priest, named *John Ball*, who in his popular Discourses told the People, "That all Men were equal by Nature; that as Children of *Adam* no Man is better than another; that if God had appointed any Men to Slavery, he would have declar'd who should be Lords and who Servants; that Servitude which is gotten by unjust Force, is confirm'd by as unjust Laws; and therefore he advised them to go to the King, and require their Liberty, which if they could not obtain, to recover it with their Swords." The Rebellion first began at *Dartmouth* in *Kent*, where a rude Collector of the Poll-Groats, having turn'd up the Coats of a young Girl, the Daughter of one call'd from his Trade *Wat Tyler*, at *Deptford* in *Kent*; he was so enrag'd that he beat out the Collector's Brains with a Hammer. The Fact was approv'd by his Neighbours, who being apprehensive that he would be punish'd for it, gathered together to defend him, and in a little Time became a great Multitude. For not only the People of *Kent*, but of *Essex* also, united themselves in one Body, and as tho' his Case had been common to them all, resolved to vindicate themselves and him from all such Oppressions and Abuses. *Wat Tyler* became Head and Captain of this Mob, which being grown, as he thought, strong enough to meet any Resistance, and able to vindicate themselves from any Wrongs, which they, in their Opinions, suffered from their Superiors, he first engaged them one to another with an Oath, that they should be true to King *Richard*, and to the Interests of the Commons of *England*, that they would never receive a *John* (meaning the Duke of *Lancaster*) for their King, and that they would persuade all their Neighbours to join in the same Cause, and would never yield to the Payment of any Tax, but a Fifteenth. Being firmly united by this Oath, they began their March from *Maidstone*, which was the Place of their first Rendezvous, towards *London*, plundering, as they pass'd along, all who would not join with them. At

1381.



Black-Heath they had a general Muster, where they appeared to be sixty thousand, or as some say, an hundred thousand, chiefly consisting of Villains, Bond-Tenants, Debtors, Country-Clowns and Criminals. The King having Notice of the Approach of so great a Multitude in an Army, sent to them to know the Cause of their meeting in so tumultuous a Manner, to which they answered, *that they were come to speak to the King about Matters of Importance, and desir'd him to come to them.* Upon the Delivery of this Message, it was debated in Council, whether he should go to them or no. Some were of Opinion, it was the best Way to appease them; but the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Chancellor, and Sir *Robert Hales* the Treasurer were utterly against it, as not safe for the King's Person. This Advice was followed, and the Petition of the Rebels rejected; which as soon as they heard they vow'd they would cut their Heads off, who were the Authors of it: But the King being apprehensive that to deny them would provoke them, went down as far as *Rotherhith* to speak with them. They were pleas'd to see him, and petitioned him to come on Shore among them; but that not being granted, they were disgusted, and conceived a greater Displeasure against the Persons about the King.

Rebels come
to *London*,
and their
Actions
there.

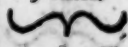
As soon as the King was gone, they marched directly to *London*, and entred *Southwark*, plundering the wealthiest Inhabitants, letting out the Prisoners in the *King's-Bench* and *Marshalsea*, whom they list'd into their own Company. The Mayor and chief Men of the City adhered firmly to the King, and shut up their Gates against them; but some of the Commonalty taking their Part, and the Rebels threatning to burn all the Borough of *Southwark*, unless they had free Access into the City, the Gates were opened to them, and being entred, they declar'd they only came to search for Traitors to the Kingdom, and to put to Death such as they called the Enemies of the Publick. They burnt the Archbishop's House at *Lambeth*, and the Duke of *Lancaster's* House in the *Savoy*, with all their rich Furniture, throwing his Gold and Jewels into the *Thames*, not suffering any Man to save any Thing; but when one of their Company took a Piece of Plate and put it into his Bosom, they cast him into the Fire after it, declaring they did not come like Thieves to

enrich

enrich
Hospit
all t
their P
the R
and al
In the
They
remain
another
at Tou
thousa
mitted
the Ar
Robert
Tower
very se
many
fled fo
they h
which
instant
of reso
nisters
venge
of his
A C
Measu
that th
for wh
to con
ly the
that Pa
Numb
was th
answer
Heirs
not be
their I
bels, e
ing on
and C
Tyler a
thousa
and plu

enrich themselves by Plunder, They set also St. John's Hospital in, *Smithfield* on Fire. They put to Death all the Professors of the Law, they could get into their Power and entring into the *Temple*, destroy'd all the Rolls and Records of *Chancery* they could find, and all the Law-Books and Writings of the Students. In the like Manner they treated all the Inns of Court. They divided themselves into three Bodies; one Part remained in the City, under the Command of *Jack Straw*; another posted themselves at *Mile-End*, and the third at *Tower-hill*. The King and his Guards, (tho' twelve thousand) were so much afraid of them, that they permitted them to enter the *Tower*, and to take from thence the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Chancellor, and Sir *Robert Hales* the Treasurer, whom they beheaded on *Tower-hill*. In like Manner, in the City they were very severe to Foreigners, especially the *Flemings*, taking many of them out of the Sanctuaries whither they were fled for Shelter, and beheading them. The *Shibboleth* they had to distinguish them was *Bread and Cheese*, which if they could not pronounce as the *English*, they instantly beheaded them. But their glorious Pretences of reforming publick Disorders, and punishing bad Ministers of State, were sullied by *Wat Tyler's* private Revenge in beheading *Richard Lyon* his old Master, because of his Severity to him when he was an Apprentice.

5 Ri. II.



A Council was call'd by the King to advise what Measures were best to be taken, and it was resolved that the King should offer them all in general a Pardon for what was past, and grant them Charters of Freedom to confirm their Liberties for the future. Accordingly the King, attended with many of his Nobles, went to that Party of them who were at *Mile-End*, and were in Number about sixty thousand, where he told them, *he was their King*, demanding *what they would have?* They answer'd him, *They desir'd he would make them, their Heirs and Lands, free for ever, so that they might not be called or reputed Bondmen.* He granted them their Desire; upon which the major Part of the Rebels, especially the *Essex* Men, returned home, leaving only some of their chief Men to get their Pardon and Charter of Freedom pass'd and sign'd. But *Wat Tyler* and his *Kentish* Men, in Number about twenty thousand, remained still unsatisfy'd, and persisted to kill and plunder whom they pleas'd. The King afterwards

The King's Method to appease the Rebels.

Wat Tyler Captain of the *Kentish* Rebels.

1381.

made more advantageous Offers to them, sending them three several Charters, but nothing would be accepted. Yet they pretended they would be quiet upon reasonable Conditions, and *Wat Tyler* said, *he would embrace Peace if he liked the Conditions*. The King being desirous to know what those Conditions were, and for the Peace of the Nation being willing to comply with them, he with many of his Nobles, his Guards, the Mayor and Aldermen of the City of *London*, went into *Smithfield*, and sent *Sir John Newton* to summons *Wat Tyler* to come and treat with him about the Articles to be inserted in their Charter. *Sir John* thinking it Condescension enough in the King to send to to mean a Subject, hastned *Wat Tyler* to attend his Majesty, but he haughtily bid him tell his Master, *he would come when he saw his own Time*: and tho' he set forward, yet he marched so slowly as tho' the King were to wait for him. He making this Delay, *Sir John* was sent to him again, to quicken his Pace, and because he approach'd him mounted, *Wat Tyler* was so highly offended, that he told him it became him to alight from his Horse in his Presence, and drew his Dagger at *Sir John* to kill him; and tho' he was in the Presence of the King would not lay aside his Fury; upon which the King commanded *Sir John* to deliver up his Dagger to him and submit. The King and *Wat Tyler* being met, he shew'd but very little Respect to the King, and his Demands were as exorbitant; for he demanded that the antient Laws of the Realm should be abolished; that the Sword which was born before the King should be delivered to him, and many other insolent Things not fit to be granted. Upon which *William Walworth* the Mayor of *London* and Alderman *Philpot*, Men of an undaunted Courage and a zealous Loyalty, being incensed at *Tyler's* Insolence, told the King, *that Tyler's rude Behaviour was intolerable, and that being within his Jurisdiction, he desired he might have Liberty to arrest the Traitor, and he would lose his Life if it did not succeed*. The King at first being doubtful of the Issue of such an Attempt, was unwilling to permit it, but at last consented. And the Mayor waiting an Opportunity, and observing *Tyler* to play with his Dagger as if he designed some fatal Stroke, and then to lay his Hand on the King's Bridle, riding up to him, immediately with his Dagger struck him on

the

the Head, and *Philpot* running his Sword into his Body, he fell dead at the King's Horse's Feet. *Wat Tyler's* Party seeing their Captain slain, urged one another to revenge his Blood, crying, *Our Captain is murder'd, let us revenge his Death*, and bent their Bows to shoot at the Murtherers, as they called them. The King considering the Danger the Mayor and Alderman were in, clapping Spurs to his Horse, rode bravely up to them, saying, *What! will you kill your King? Never grieve for the Death of a Traitor; I will be your Captain and Leader; follow me into the Fields, and I will grant you what you desire.* This had so great an Influence upon them, that they laid aside their Intentions of killing the Mayor, and march'd with the King into *St. George's Fields*, thinking themselves secure of obtaining their Requests from him. In the mean Time *Mr. Walworth* the Mayor posted to the City and brought with him a thousand Citizens well arm'd, who were got together and commanded by *Sir Robert Knowls*, waiting to be Assistant to the King, when it should be most seasonable; so marching immediately in good Order into *St. George's Fields* to the King, the Rabble seeing them, were terrified, and flinging down their Arms, beg'd the King's Pardon, which he granting them, they fled, and got home as fast as they could. The Nobles who attended the King advised him to execute three or four hundred of them immediately for a Terror to others: But the King could not be brought to consent to that, but order'd that the City of *London* should give them no Entertainment, and that the Heads of them should be apprehended and punished according to Law. However he sent them the like Charter he had granted to those of *Essex* and other Countries.

The Tumult being thus appeas'd, the King, in Reward of the good Service, that the Mayor and Alderman *Philpot* had done him, with so great Hazard of their own Lives, confer'd the Honour of Knighthood upon them, and *John Standish*, *Nicholas Brambre*, *Nicholas Twisford* and *John Lawcid* Aldermen; and in perpetual Memory of the Loyalty of the City of *London*, commanded the Dagger to be added to their Arms, and gave an hundred Pounds a Year to *Sir William*, and forty Pounds a Year to the rest. This Tumult being quieted, the King return'd to the Tower, where

S. Ri. II.
Wat Tyler
kill'd and
the Rebels
dispersed.

1381.
 Rebels in o
 ther Parts of
 the Nation.

he was receiv'd by his Mother with exceeding great Joy.

This Spirit of Rebellion was not confin'd to *London*, but had spread it self thro' several other Parts of the Nation, upon the same Pretences, by the Instigation of the same Emissaries *John Ball* and *John Wraw*, two seditious Priests, who had contributed very much to the rising of the *Kentish* Rebels, they having a special Talent of haranguing the People into Discontents and Rebellion. Near *St. Edmond's-Bury* *Robert Westbroom* an Inn-keeper and *John Wraw* the Priest, had got together a Body of fifty thousand Men, who went about the Country plundering and murdering Lawyers, Justices, and all such Persons as they imagined to be the Instruments of keeping the People in Slavery. They beheaded the Lord Chief Justice Sir *John Cavenish*, and also *John* of *Cambridge*, the Prior of *Bury*, forcing the Monks of the Abbey to bring forth and burn those Writings, by which the Privileges of the Monastery over the Townsamen were granted and confirm'd, and that the Abbot, who had escaped from them, should not recover his former Privileges, they took a Cross, Chalice and Jewels belonging to the Monastery as Pledges, to oblige the Abbot for the Recovery of them to seal a Release of all Services to them. Great Numbers also appear'd about *St. Albans*, under the Command of a common Chandler, who committed unheard of Outrages and Cruelties.

There were also the like Tumults in *Cambridgeshire*, and many Mischiefs done, and also in the Isle of *Ely*, and in *Norfolk*. *John Littester* a Dyer of *Norwich* headed a vast Mob, and was stiled by them King of the Commons; they with the like Fury destroy'd the Lawyers, Lords of Manors and others. These Rebels thought themselves more politick than their Fellows in other Parts of the Nation; for they compell'd the Lord *Scales*, Sir *John Brewes*, Sir *Stephen Hales*, Sir *William Morley* and Sir *Robert Salle*, and other Gentlemen to join with them, both to increase their Numbers, and to make their Party more considerable. But Sir *Robert Salle* having too much Loyalty to be of the Party of such a rebellious Rabble, and too much Courage to conceal his Sentiments of their unjustifiable Proceedings, reproving the Attempt, and

and the
 them, b
 Compli
 upon th
 for the
 tempted
 them, b
 escape i
 was bro
 the Rebe
 sent thre
 ley, and
 which th
 to save
 Pardon.

Henry
 tial Tem
 such Dis
 marching
 wards th
 Messeng
 to their
 three of
 those M
 Heads up
 Camp la
 with Sir
 ed an A
 to them
 and havin
 sociates,
 Priest wi
 cording t

The T
 ed, tho'
 in order
 secure it
 therefore
 don, and
 Countrie
 him, and
 could, w
 time he h
 Men, w
 beath. M

and the ill Conduct of it, was knock'd on the Head by them, but the rest of them sav'd their Lives by servile Compliances; for they were forced to serve *Littester* upon their Knees, and applaud his brave Endeavours for the Liberties of the People. The Rebels likewise attempted to bring the Earl of *Suffolk* to unite with them, but he having notice of their Designs, made his escape in Time, and went to the King. When News was brought them of the Proclamation of Pardon to the Rebels about *London*, they still kept in a Body, and sent three of their chief Leaders with Sir *William Morley*, and Sir *John Brewes*, with a large Sum of Money, which they had extorted from the Citizens of *Norwich*, to save their Town from being burnt, to obtain their Pardon.

5. Ri. II.

Henry Spencer Bishop of *Norwich*, a Man of a martial Temper, being zealous to free his Diocese from such Disturbers of the publick Peace, was at that time marching with eighty Lances and a few Archers towards the Rebels, and being met near *New-Market* by Messengers from the Rebels, of whom he enquired into their Number and Condition, and finding that three of the Chief of them were in the Number of those Messengers, he beheaded them, and set their Heads up at *New-market*; and being informed that their Camp lay at *North-Walsbam* strongly entrenched, he with Sir *William Morley*, and Sir *John Brewes*, gathered an Army of such Gentlemen and others as flock'd to them in their March, assaulted and routed them, and having taken *Littester* and several others of his Associates, he beheaded them, but sent *John Wraw* the Priest with several others to *London* to be punished according to their Deserts.

The Bishop of *Norwich* defeats the Rebels.

The Troubles of the Nation being thus a little quieted, tho' not settled, the Regency thought it necessary in order to complete the Quiet of it at present, and to secure it for the future, to raise an Army; the King therefore summoned together all his Friends about *London*, and also sent to such Persons of Interest in the Countries, as he knew to be well affected, to attend him, and to bring along with them what Men they could, well armed; so that by this means in a few Days time he had got a gallant Army of above forty thousand Men, whom he mustered himself in Person at *Blackbeath*. No sooner had the King gotten together this

The King raises an Army.

1381.
A second
Rising in
Kent and
Essex.

Force, but he receiv'd News, that the People were risen again in *Kent*, and at *Billenca* in *Essex*; the King resolv'd to go himself into *Kent* with Part of his Army, and to destroy the whole Country, and to send the Earl of *Buckingham* and the Lord *Piercy* to quell the *Essex* Men, who petitioning the King for their Liberty, tho he had promised it before, he made this reply; *they were born Villains, and so they should remain.* However by the earnest Persuasion of the Lords, the Fury of his Passion was something allay'd. The Earl of *Buckingham*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy*, with a considerable Number of Forces were sent down into *Essex*, who finding the Rebels intrench'd between *Billenca* and *Hatfield Peverel*, within Ditches and Carts, they attack'd their Camp and routed them, killing five hundred, and taking eight hundred Horses; the rest making their escape to *Colchester*, solicited the Inhabitants to join with them, but they refusing, they went from thence to *Sudbury*, but were so closely persued by the Lord *Fitz-Walter*, that they were almost all either slain or taken Prisoners. The like Success had the King's Army over the Rebels in *Kent*: These Disturbances being thus composed, a general Quietness appeared all over the Nation, which facilitated the Punishment of these Heads of the Rebels who were reserved for Justice.

Several Rebels executed.

Sir *William Watworth*, the Mayor of *London*, had taken several of the Ring-Leaders of the Rebels, as *Jack Straw*, *John Kerby*, *Allen Threader*, and *John Stirling*, who had made his boast, that he had killed the Archbishop of *Canterbury* with his own Hand; these Persons being seiz'd within his Jurisdiction, were by Law to be tried before him, and accordingly receiv'd Sentence to be beheaded, and were executed.

Jack Straw's Confession.

Jack Straw, without any Promises or Hopes of Pardon, confess'd ingenuously, when he was at the Place of Execution: 'That had they been successful in their Enterprize, and could have gotten all the Power into their own Hands, as they had no small Reason to hope, being so very strong; they intended to have slain the King, Noblemen, Bishops, Knights, especially Monks, Canons, the Hospitallers, Parsons, and all the richest and wealthiest of the Commons, and seized upon their Possessions, leaving only the Fryars Mendicants to administer Sacraments and divine Service; And when they had thus gotten all into their Hands

' Han
' the
' triv
' to b
' Cou
' he f
' last
' Joh
was f
others
Haris
King
was a
don,
treated
demit
As for
ties of
Comm
went
with h
Essex
for M
it, upo
since t
which
ter th
were h
like E
the R
deal v
many
no les
was af
his Fo
one;
Monk
testant
Cruel
Duke
did the
never
and th
Fryar,
Wickl

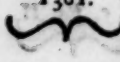
Hands, they would have established new Laws for the Government of the Realm, which they had contriv'd to divide among their Leaders. *Wat Tyler* was to be King of *Kent*, and others of them in other Countries were to have their petty Kingdoms. This he said was true, as God should help him in these his last Moments.

John Ball the Priest, who was taken near *Coventry*, was sent up and tried before the King at *St. Albans*, with others of the Rebels, which were brought thither from *Hartford Goal*. *Ball* behav'd himself towards the King with great Irreverence and Insolence, and tho' he was advis'd to tender his Submission, and to beg Pardon, yet he would not hearken to the Advice, but treated his Advisers contemptuously; so he was condemn'd and executed with fifteen others, on *July 15th*. As for the rest of the Rebels, who were in several Counties of the Nation, the King sent out his Judges with Commissions to try them. The chief Justice *Tresilian* went into *Essex*, and the King himself went with him, and was present at their Examinations. The *Essex* Men address'd themselves bare-foot to the King for Mercy, in a Body of about five hundred, and obtain'd it, upon Condition, that they should surrender up to Justice the chief Instruments of raising the Rebellion, which they did; and being too many to be executed after the usual Manner, which was by beheading, they were hang'd ten or twelve on a Beam at *Chelmsford*. The like Execution was also done in other Counties where the Rebellion had been, nor did the Lords of Manors deal with their Tenants with less Severity, punishing many of them with Death, so that, as it was computed, no less than fifteen hundred suffered. This Rebellion was afterwards imputed to the Principles of *Wickliff* and his Followers, of whom *John Ball* is said to have been one; but that this Aspersions was an Invention of the Monkish Historians to blacken the Doctrines of the Protestants, seems very plain; in that the Rebels us'd great Cruelties to some of the *Wickliffites*, as also the Duke of *Lancaster*, and in that *Wickliff* himself who did then reside at his Parsonage of *Lutterworth*, was never in the least called in Question for this Rebellion; and tho' it is said that *John Ball* who was a *Franciscan Fryar*, was imprisoned by the Archbishop for preaching *Wickliffe's* Doctrine, yet it is very probable that nothins

Opinions,

5. Ri. II.

Wickliff's
Doctrines,
no cause of
this Rebel-
lion.

1381.  Opinions, but his Discontents, made him forward to promote these Disturbances of the Nation, and therefore the Blame ought not to be laid, either on *Wickliff* or his Doctrines.

The Duke
of Lancaster
in Scotland,
during this
Rebellion.

During the Time of these Disturbances in *England*, the Duke of *Lancaster* continued in *Scotland*, more for the Security of his own Person, to whom, he knew, they bore a deadly Hatred, than to conclude the Peace; for upon the first News of these Commotions, he suddenly clapt up the Peace with the *Scots*, because if they had heard of them, they would certainly have rejected all Propositions for it. And altho' the *Scots* were vexed that the Duke had by his Policy debar'd them from a great Advantage upon *England*; yet they made him an Offer of twenty thousand Men, to guard him against the Rebels, if he had a Mind to return home, or if he would rather stay there till the Storm was over, they offer'd him the Accommodations of *Holy-Rood* House, the latter of which the Duke accepted of and stay'd some Months in *Scotland*, after the Conclusion of the Peace. His Stay there gave the Rebels an occasion to report, that the Duke of *Lancaster* was gone over to the *Scots*, and had obtain'd of them an Army to invade and conquer *England*; but as soon as the Rebellion was over, the Duke cleared himself of that Aspersion, by sending an Account to the King of the Reasons of his Stay; assuring his Majesty, that if he had any Suspicion of his Disloyalty, he would either come to him without Attendants, or at his Command go into a voluntary Exile. But the King giving no Credit to the Report, sent him Word he might return with his Retinue; and when the Duke arriv'd at Court, gave him a hearty Welcome.

A Quarrel
between the
Duke of
Lancaster,
and Earl of
Northumber-
land.

Not long after his Arrival a furious Quarrel happened between the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Northumberland*; because Sir *Matthew Redman*, Governor of *Berwick* under the Earl, had by the Earl's Orders denied Admittance to the Duke into that Garrison, when he was on the Borders of *Scotland*. The Duke complaining of this to the King, in the Presence of the Earl, and accusing him of Infidelity, Ingratitude, and Disobedience; the Earl being a Man of a warm Temper, broke out into foul and reproachful Language against the Duke, nor would he forbear altho' the King commanded him Silence; upon which the King order'd the Earl

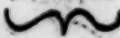
Earl to
berty
ing for
this T
London
his Do

The
member
North
Men i
in the
urbs, a
tended
Citizen
of the
fore it
not pro
of the
liamen
ception
great M
liamen
honour
Mayor
zens, r
City w
the Ki

A fe
Archbi
Daugh
to the
which
lowed
tending
Glory
Parlian
the Ber
That a
made b
should
Person
fence,
of Lav
had los
the Co

Earl to be arrested and imprisoned, but he was set at Liberty, by the Earls of *Warwick* and *Suffolk* undertaking for his Appearance at the next Parliament. About this Time the King made *William Courtney* Bishop of *London*, who was a zealous Opposer of *Wickliff* and his Doctrines.

5. Ri. II.



The Parliament met again about the beginning of *November*, and the Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Earl of *Northumberland* attended it with very great Retinues of Men in Arms. The Earl and his Men were lodg'd in the City, the Duke and his Company in the Suburbs, and both went daily to the Parliament-house, attended with their Guards, to the great Terror of the Citizens. The Debate of the Houses about the Quarrel of these two great Men, took up so much Time before it was fully decided by the King, that they could not proceed to any other Business, before News came of the Arrival of the Queen at *Dover*, and so the Parliament was prorogued to give Attendance at her Reception, and the Celebration of the Marriage: For a great Number of the Nobility, and Members of Parliament, were sent down to *Dover* to receive her, and honourably conduct her to the King's Presence. The Mayor, and Aldermen, and a great Number of Citizens, met her at *Black-heath*, and attended her into the City with great Honour, and so she was conducted to the King at *Westminster*.

Sixth Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

A few Days after she was married to the King by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, by the Name of *Anne*, Daughter to the late Emperor *Charles IV.* and Sister to the present Emperor *Wenceslaus*. Her Coronation, which was with great Splendor and Magnificence, followed soon after, all the Nobility of the Nation attending, and sparing no Cost, to heighten the State and Glory of that Day. These Solemnities being ended, the Parliament met, and enacted several good Laws, for the Benefit of the Publick; and among the rest enacted, That all Manumissions, Obligations, Releases, &c. made by Force and Compulsion, in the late Tumults, should be void: And also an Act to indemnify such Persons, who had done any Thing in their own Defence, against the Rebels, out of the ordinary Course of Law. That such Persons, as in the late Troubles had lost Deeds, or any other Writings, upon Proof of the Contents, their Effects should be confirmed otherwise

The King's Marriage, and Queen's Coronation.

1382.
The Death
of the Earl
of March in
Ireland.

wife to them: And at the Request of the Lords and Commons, the Lord *Scroop* was made Chancellor, and Sir *Hugh Seagrave* Treasurer.

About this Time *Edmund Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, Lieutenant of *Ireland*, died in that Nation, having by his prudent Government, settled that barbarous People in great Peace and Order. He left one Son, *Roger*, who succeeded him in the Earldom, and one Daughter, *Ann*, who by *Richard*, Earl of *Cambridge*, was Grandmother to King *Edward IV.* About this Time, *John Wickliff* published an Explication of several of his Doctrines and Opinions, which the Archbishops and Bishops were very zealous to suppress.

Seventh Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

The first Act for punishing Hereticks.

The Parliament met again at *Westminster*, May the 6th, in which, at the earnest Petition of the Knights of the Shire, *John Wraw*, who had been active in the Rebellion in *Suffolk*, was tried, and after a legal Trial was found guilty, and was drawn and hanged. In this Parliament one very memorable Act is said to have been made, which began the first Persecution that ever was in *England*, for the Sake of Religion. By it, it was enacted, that Commissions should, upon the Certificate and Requests of the Bishop into Chancery, be directed by the Chancellor to the Sheriffs, and others, for the apprehending certain Preachers of Heresy, who without the Licence of their Ordinaries, preached not only in Churches and Church-Yards, but in Market Places, and other Places of Concourse, Sermons full of Error and Heresy, and their Followers; and to keep them in strong Prisons, until they shall justify themselves according to the Law of the holy Church. By the Authority of this Act, the Bishops did not only prosecute the Followers of *Wickliff's* Doctrine, with great Severity, but procured Commissions from the King, directed to themselves, to prosecute them, and so cruelly imprisoned them in their own Houses, and punished them as they pleased. But this Act, tho' put in our Statute-Book, was not passed by the Assent of the Commons, (as Mr. *Fox*, in his *Acts and Monuments*, page 406, shews,) but was fraudulently obtained by the Bishops of the King, to wreak their Malice against those whom they were pleased to call Hereticks. This Parliament also granted the King a Subsidy; but upon Condition, that it should be employed in preparing a Navy to guard the Nation by Sea.

This

This Year *John Northampton* alias *Comberton*, Mayor of London, observing, with Sorrow, the Lewdness and Debauchery of the Citizens, set about the Suppression of them with great Application, and it is said he was put upon it by *John Wickliff*, because he saw the Bishops Ministers tolerated all Manner of Lewdness, for Money. He severely punished all such as he found guilty of Whoring, by imprisoning them, as well the Men as the Women; and causing the Women to be carried thro' the Street with their Hair shorn, after the Manner that Thieves, in those Days, were usually exposed to Shame, with Trumpets and Pipes playing before them; nor was he more favourable to the Men. The Bishops were highly displeased at the Mayor, for this Reformation, and forbad him, pretending, that the Punishment of such Immoralities, belonged to their Jurisdiction, rather than the Mayor's: But that did not at all deter him so long as his Mayoralty lasted.

6. Ri. II.

Several memorable things happened.

About this Time a great Earthquake happened, which shook down diverse Houses, and Churches, and chiefly in *Kent*. This happened upon Queen *Anne's* Arrival in *England* from *Bohemia*, and as soon as she had set her Foot on Shore, the Ship in which she came over being much shattered and broken; which was the more observable, because his second Wife brought a Storm with her to the *English* Coasts, in which the King's Baggage was lost, and many of his Fleet cast away. Not many Days after that, a *Water-Shake* (as it was called) happen'd, which dashed the Ships in the Havens so violently one against another, that many of them received great Damage.

Several Accidents this Year.

At *Newcastle* upon *Tine*, as two Ship-Carpenters were squaring a Piece of Timber, wherever they hew'd, Blood issued forth in Abundance, as *Sir John Hayward* relates. This Year the use of Guns came in, and *Sir Hugh Calverley*, Governor of *Calais*, was the first that employed them in the *English* Service. And about *St. Thomas's* Day, such great Rains fell that caused great Inundations, drowned many Villages, and broke down diverse Bridges.

The King being now arrived at the seventeenth Year of his Age, began to discover his Inclinations. He affected the State and Magnificence of a King, was generous and liberal, exceeding all his Ancestors in stately Equipages, and the pompous Gallantry of a Court:

But

The King's Disposition at seventeen Years of Age.

1382.

His Favou-
rites.Lord Scroop
the Chancel-
lor removed,
and the Oc-
casion of it.Eighth Par-
liament, and
its Acts.

But he did not relish the burthenfom Cares and hazard-
ous Atchievements of a Crown, giving himself up to
Ease and Pleasures, and bestowing his Favours upon
those, who by their Flatteries encouraged and applauded
him in that Course of Life. The chief of these
were the Archbishop of *York*, the Earl of *Oxford*, and
Michael de la Pool, a Merchant's Son of *London*, and
the Lord Chief Justice *Tresilian*: And whilst others
bore the heavy Toils of Government, scarcely receiv-
ing Thanks for their Pains, these Persons had the Ear,
the Company, and the Favour of the King, which caus-
ed great Discontents in the one, and raised Pride and
Insolence in the other. One of these Favourites having
obtained a Grant of some of the King's Revenues,
went to the Lord Chancellor *Scroop*, to have it con-
firmed by the Great Seal: But the Chancellor well
knowing, that Gifts ought to be the Rewards of Merit
only, and that it was hardly agreeable to the Trust re-
posed in him to confirm those Grants rashly, that the
King had given indiscreetly, put him off with this An-
swer, "That the King was himself much in Debt, and
"that all Profits of the Crown were therefore to be
"employed for the Benefit of the King; wherefore
"he refused to set his Seal to such Grants, till the
"King was of greater Age and Judgment. The Pe-
titioner goes presently to the King, and represents the
Chancellor's Refusal with aggravating Circumstances;
the King impatient of Opposition, sends to him, im-
mediately to deliver up the Seal; but he refused to re-
sign it, till the King came in Person to demand it,
which he soon did: And at parting with it, the Chan-
cellor, with all due Respect, told him, "That since his
"Fidelity to his Interest was so displeasing to him, he
"never would again serve him in any Place of Trust,
"tho' he would obey him as a good Subject." The
King gave the Seal to *Robert Braybrook*, Bishop of *Lon-
don*, but it much disgusted the Parliament, who had
put the Lord *Scroop* into the Place, and also discon-
tented the People, who from the Opinion they had of
his great Knowledge and impartial Justice, accounted
him the fittest Person in the Nation for that Office.

Soon after this, the Parliament met at *Westminster*,
who when they had confirm'd the Charter, and old
Laws, according to the usual Custom; made an Act,
"That Deeds enrolled, that had been torn and defaced
by

by the Rebels, should be exemplified under the King's great Seal, and that such Exemplifications should be of as great Force as the Originals. Mr. Fox in his Acts and Monuments, Page 406, sets down a Petition of this Parliament, wherein the Commons humbly request of the King, that the Act made the last Session, giving the Bishops Authority upon their Certificates into Chancery, to require Commissions to apprehend, and imprison the Preachers, Maintainers and Abettors of *Wickliff's* Doctrines should be dissolved, because it was procured without their Consent; and the King yielded to their Petition.

6. Ri. II.

Notwithstanding this, by the Artifices of the Bishops, the afore said Repeal was repress'd, and Prosecutions carried on by Virtue of that surreptitious Act, without the least Regard had to the Repeal.

This Parliament granted the King a single Fifteenth only, for which the King granted a general Pardon to all concern'd in the former Rebellion, some of the most notorious being excepted.

About this Time the second Holy War began, to be espous'd in *England*. For Pope *Urban* had sent over his Bulls to the Bishop of *Norwich* granting large Pardon of Sin, and promising as great Imputations of Merit and Happiness, as if they were to go against Turks and Infidels, to all such as would either go in Person, or contribute Money, to maintain a War against Pope *Clement* his Adversary. And the Clergy preaching up the Merit of this Expedition, had engag'd many of the Nobility and Gentry, as well as the common People to undertake it.

The War between the Antipopes.

Near the latter End of the Summer, the Earl of *Cambridge* returned with the *English* Army under his Command, out of *Portugal*, much dissatisfied with the ill Success of his Expedition. For besides that he had a very dangerous Passage, when he arriv'd there, he found the King of *Portugal* very backward in his Preparations, as tho' he was scarcely resolv'd upon a War, and by his dilatory Proceedings, had given Time to the King of *Spain*, to procure such Aid out of *France* and *Arragon*, as was too strong to be oppos'd. The *English* Soldiers, being weary of Idleness, could not by the Persuasions of their General be kept from attempting something, and so invaded some of the neighbouring small Cities in *Spain*, and taking them, put Garisons

Earl of Cambridge returns out of Portugal.

1382.

sons into them; but the King of *Portugal* was so angry at it, that he refus'd to pay the *English* according to Agreement; but they resolving to plunder the Country and pay themselves, he came to an Agreement with them, clap'd up a Peace with the King of *Spain*, and sent them away. But this unexpected Treatment so incensed the Earl, that he departed very angry, and would not leave his Son behind him, tho' he had been affianced to the King of *Portugal's* Daughter.

Ninth Parli-
ament, its
Acts and
Taxes.

Soon after *Christmas*, the Parliament met again at *Westminster*, to whom the Consideration of the Expedition against the Adherents of Pope *Clement* were referred, was debated and disallow'd; but, the Clergy made such Interest, that at length it was permitted, and to defray the Charge of the Expedition, the Fifteenth, that had been lately granted to the King, was appropriated, and in lieu thereof a Tenth of the Clergy was granted to the King.

The Bishop
of *Norwich's*
Expedition
against the
Abettors of
Pope *Cle-
ment*.

The Bishop of *Norwich* having obtain'd this Encouragement, immediately sent Letters to all Persons in his Diocese to preach up the Merit of this Holy War, and to pronounce Pardon of Sin to all, who would go to it, and the same was done by the Parsons in the other Dioceses; by which means by the beginning of the Spring, he had gotten together an Army of fifteen thousand Foot, and two thousand Horse. Few of the Noblemen engaged in it, because the Duke of *Lancaster* oppos'd it, and would not join in it, unless they would have made War upon the King of *Castile*, who was also of Pope *Clement's* Party. Sir *Hugh Calverly*, and several other Knights accompanied the Bishops in this War, and April 23^d they put to Sea, and landed at *Calais*. When they were arriv'd there, they entred into a Consultation, which Way they should bend their Forces: Some advis'd to invade *France*, but the Bishop was for invading *Flanders*, which they did, and in the beginning of *May*, besieged and took *Gravelin*, *Burg*, *Dunkirk* and *Mardyke*, in less than three Weeks.

Flanders in-
vaded, and
the *Fle-
mings* con-
quer'd.

Upon this, the Earl of *Flanders* sent to the Bishop, to know the Reason why he made War upon him, who return'd him Answer, because he had a Commission to assault all the Abettors of Pope *Clement*. The Messengers replied, they then were his Friends and Allies, being for Pope *Urban*. But this did not divert the Bishop from his Territories, therefore the Duke raising an

†

Army

Army
Mardi
Men
Count
Spoil
try.
lowest
for Suc
gundy,
my of
the Ex
sand G
Earl of
them, o
burg, -
gons se
perfued
of the
that up
English
to Cala
the Han
word to
upon w
hasten o
the Bish
left all,
him the
that they
Manage
the Bish
Trivet, a
After
Scots be
Scots by
vaded th
of Cattel
French
annoy th
Scots me
and rais
tion. T
bouring
Coasts,
Ships.
Vol. I

Army of twelve thousand Men, engag'd them near *Mardike*, but was routed, having nine thousand of his Men slain, and the *English* became Masters of all the Country between *Gravelin* and *Sluice*, and got as much Spoil as laded 41 Ships, of the Riches of the Country. The Earl of *Flanders* being thus reduc'd to the lowest Ebb of Fortune, solicited the King of *France* for Succour; and being seconded by the King of *Burgundy*, prevail'd; and the King of *France* rais'd an Army of a hundred thousand Men. In the mean Time, the *English* having been reinforced with twenty thousand *Gauntiers*, laid Siege to the City of *Ipres*, but the Earl of *Flanders* hastening out the *French* Army against them, oblig'd them to raise the Siege, and retire to *Burgburg*, in which they fortified themselves, with Waggon set upon the Rampiers, and Ditches. The *French* persued them and belieged them, but by the Mediation of the Duke of *Bretagne*, a Composition was made, that upon surrendring the Town to the *French*, the *English* should have safe Conduct with Bag and Baggage to *Calais*, and so all the Places they had taken fell into the Hands of the *French*. The Bishop of *Norwich* sent word to King *Richard*, of the Posture of his Affairs, upon which the King ordered the Duke of *Lancaster* to hasten over, with all the Force he could get, to relieve the Bishop; but he delay'd so long, that the Bishop had left all, and was landed in *England*, having left behind him the Prey that they had gotten, and burnt the Ships that they might not fall into the Enemy's Hands. Which Management the King so resented, that he seized upon the Bishop's Temporalities, and imprisoned Sir *Thomas Trivet*, and Sir *William Elmham*, soon after their Return.

7 Ri. II.

The *French* drive the *English* out of *Flanders*.

After the *English* Army were gone, the *French* and *Scots* began their usual Ravages on the *English*, the *Scots* by Land, and the *French* by Sea. The *Scots* invaded the Northern Borders, drove away a great Booty of Cattle, took the Castle of *Werk* and burnt it. The *French* sent out several Ships to infest the Coasts, and annoy the Passage into *Gascoign* and *Flanders*. The *Scots* met with no Opposition till the Parliament met, and rais'd a Tax to defray the Charge of the Expedition. The Inhabitants of *Portsmouth*, and the neighbouring Towns, fitted out some Ships to defend their Coasts, who after a sharp Engagement, took five *French* Ships. Another Squadron of *English* Ships took eight

The *French* and *Scots* invade *England*.

1383.

Tenth Par-
liament, its
Acts and
Taxes.

French Ships, having on board one thousand five hundred Tun of Wine.

About the Beginning of *November*, the Parliament met, and resolved, that a puissant Army should immediately be raised, to repress the Insolence of the *Scots*, and gave the King half a Tenth towards the Charge; and because it would take up some Time to raise the Army, they ordered a Tax to be allowed to the Lords of the North to guard the Borders, till the Army could arrive. The *Scots* hearing this, sent Messengers to the King for the Continuance of the Truce which they had broken; but their Suit was denied. The Care of providing, and the Command of this Army, was given to the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Buckingham*, with Orders to be ready to march early in the Spring.

A Peace pro-
pounded be-
tween the
English and
French.

Only a Truce
concluded.

The Duke of *Bretagne* seeing Matters to ripen apace between the *English* and *French*, he therefore earnestly solicited the *French* King to come to a Peace, and prevailed, of which he with all Speed, acquainted the King of *England*.

The Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earl of *Buckingham*, Sir *Thomas Holland*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy*, were Plenipotentiaries for *England*; the Duke of *Berry*, the Bishop of *Loan*, and the Chancellor of *France*, were for the *French*: But the Demands of the *French* were so extravagant, that no Peace was concluded, but for the present a Truce for ten Months was agreed on. In this Truce the *Scots* were included, and the *French* by an Article were to give the *Scots* notice of it. But the Earl of *Flanders* dying, the Duke of *Burgundy*, who had married the Earl's Daughter, was so taken up in settling himself in his Government, that it was forgotten. The Preparations for invading *Scotland*, being compleated, the *English* proceeded in the Expedition. Early in the Spring, the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Buckingham* marched down thither with a great Army, and laid all the Country waste, with Fire and Sword, as far as *Edinburgh*, out of which the Inhabitants were fled with the best of their Goods. The Duke of *Burgundy* hearing of it, immediately dispatch'd an Embassy into *Scotland*, to make up the Breach. But the *Scots* having sustained so much Damage, were very hardly brought to sit down without Revenge, tho' it was no Breach of the Truce in the *English*, because it had not been confirm'd with the *Scots*.

A Convoca-
tion of the
Nobles, in
which the
Duke of
Lancaster,
was accused
of Treason.

A little after *Easter*, there was a Convocation of the Nobility at *Salisbury*, in which one *John Latimer* B. D.

*

an *Irish*
again
make
such
probab
pen'd,
the Ki
withdr
lains a
and ho
Duke
such A
tisfied.
tage in
the Lo
that T
ter, w
on Oat
and aft
Fryars
be kep
what h
be com
Tower
and the
ture, t
the Fr
hanging
ing a g
and the
as tho'
deserve
general
Accuse
great D
The
could
lately r
the Bor
the Sun
the Inh
Earls
Army
Spears,
far as
The

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

241

an *Irish* Fryar, appear'd, and exhibited an Information 7. Ri. II
 against the Duke of *Lancaster*, that he had a Design to
 make away the King, and usurp the Crown, relating
 such Circumstances, as render'd the Accusation very
 probable. The Duke not knowing what had hap-
 pen'd, came into the King's Presence, and perceiving
 the King to shew some Displeasure in his Countenance,
 withdrew. The King having consulted his two Chap-
 lains about it, sent for the Duke, and told him by whom,
 and how he had been charg'd with high Treason. The
 Duke did not shew any Surprise of Mind at it, and gave
 such Answers to every Particular, that the King was sa-
 tisfied. But that which tended much to the Duke's Advan-
 tage in this Affair was, that the same Fryar had also accus'd
 the Lord *Zouch* of the same Treason, who being sick at
 that Time, was brought to Court to be examin'd in a Lit-
 ter, when he solemnly denied the whole Accusation up-
 on Oath, upon which he was acquitted, and return'd home;
 and afterwards became an utter Enemy to all Carmelite
 Fryars. But the Duke desiring that the Fryar might
 be kept in safe Custody, till he had cleared himself of
 what he had charg'd him with, the King ordered him to
 be committed to the keeping of the Lord *Holland* in the
 Tower. The Night before the Trial was to come on,
 and the Duke was to clear himself in a publick Judica-
 ture, the Lord *Holland*, and Sir *Henry Green*, entring
 the Fryar's Lodgings, put him to a cruel Death, by
 hanging him up by the Neck, and Privy Members, and lay-
 ing a great Stone upon his Breast, which broke his Back;
 and the next Day they drew his Body through the Streets,
 as tho' they had done this by publick Authority, and he had
 deservedly suffered as a Traitor. And tho' the Duke was
 generally thought to be innocent, and the Fryar a false
 Accuser, before this cruel Action; yet this did the Duke
 great Dishonour, and made his Innocency more suspected.

The *Scots* notwithstanding the Truce so lately made,
 could not forbear revenging the Injuries that they had
 lately received from the *English*, and therefore infested
 the Borders with continual Inroads and Plunderings all
 the Summer, and in particular did much Damage to
 the Inhabitants of *Northumberland*. Whereupon the
 Earls of *Northumberland* and *Nottingham*, raised an
 Army of six thousand Archers, and two thousand
 Spears, and persued the *Scots*, ravaging the Country as
 far as *Edinburgh*, and return'd in Safety.

The *Scots*
 break the
 Truce and
 invade Eng-
 land.

The Truce
 renewed
 with France

The Truce which had been made with the *French*,
 and

1384.

and their Allies, being now near expiring, the Duke of Lancaster was sent over again with a very splendid Equipage, to endeavour either to conclude a Peace, or renew the Truce for a longer Time, and after he had continued there a considerable Time, he return'd only with the News of the Continuation of the Truce till May. While the Duke was in France, one John Northampton an Alderman of London, was accused by his own Chaplain of a Conspiracy against the King and Government, and raising Stirs in the City. He had his Tryal before many of the Nobility at Reading, but alledged nothing in his own Defence, but that he ought not to be condemn'd in the Absence of the Duke of Lancaster. Being found guilty, he received Sentence, that all his Goods should be confiscate, and himself suffer perpetual Imprisonment, at an hundred Miles distance from his own House, which Sentence was strictly executed, he being sent to Tintagil Castle in Cornwall. He had also two Associates, John More, and Richard Norbury, who suffered the like Punishment.

Eleventh
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

Berwick taken by the Scots, and recovered by the Earl of Northumberland.

November the 12th, the Parliament met at Westminster, and presently set about raising Money for the War, which threatned the Nation from the Scots and French, which they did very liberally; in Compensation of which, the King passed several Laws for the exact Administration of Justice. During the Time this Parliament was sitting, the Scots invaded England, and took the Town and Castle of Berwick, by bribing the Governor, who having been put in by the Earl of Northumberland, to whom the keeping of that Garrison did belong by Inheritance from his Ancestors, brought great Blame upon the Earl. For the Duke of Lancaster, who had no good Will for the Earl, so aggravated the Matter, that he had near persuaded both the Houses of Parliament, that the surrendring it to the Scots was a treasonable Conspiracy between him and his Deputy; but the King taking notice of the Prejudice and Passion of the Duke, permitted the Earl to go down for the recovering it, tho' many of the Nobility were for imprisoning him. The Earl went down into the North accordingly, and bestir'd himself so briskly among his Friends, that he soon got together an Army, with which he besieged the Castle so straitly, that the Scots surrendered it in a few Days, but upon better Conditions than they had given to the English; viz. that they should march out with their Arms and Baggage, and that the Earl

Earl should pay them down two thousand Marks, to ^{8 Ri. II.} which the Earl consented, because he was desirous to recover it in as little Time, and with as little Loss to the Nation as possible. This set him right again in the good Opinion both of King and Parliament. About this Time two Combats were fought before the King, one between *John Wallis* an *English* Gentleman, and a *Navarre* Esquire, and the other between *John Welsh* and a *Navarrois*. The *English* Gentlemen were Victors, and the *Navarrois* hanged as false Accusers; for in those Days Victory in these single Fights was accounted a Token of Innocency.

The Duke of *Lancaster* being the King's Uncle, and chief Governor, was the greatest Obstruction to the ambitious Designs of the King's Favourites; who growing impatient of Delays, were busy in contriving all the Ways possible to remove him, if not out of the World, yet out of the King's Affections; so that he was now in great Danger of losing both his Honour and Life by their Contrivances. For these Parasites having by forged Crimes and Accusations incensed the King against him, they intended to have had him suddenly arrested and tried before Judge *Tresilian*, who being a Man perfectly framed to their Interests, they knew would be ready enough to condemn him upon such Evidence as they should produce. But these Designs coming to the Duke's Ear, who knowing that Innocency would not be sufficient Guard against their bloody Designs, fled to *Pontfract*-Castle, and drawing in all his Friends of the Nobility to his Assistance, fortified himself strongly against his Adversaries. The King's Mother foreseeing that if the King persisted in his Resentment against the Duke, the Foundation of a Civil War was laid between the Nobility and the King's Favourites, she therefore, altho' she was a very corpulent Woman, and unfit for Travel, undertook the Mediation between the King and Duke, and took many Journeys from one to the other, and in the Conclusion, by the Duke's dutiful Submission, brought them to a thorough Reconciliation, to the great Satisfaction of the Nation and her own Honour.

The Duke of Lancaster plotted against.

The Truce between the *English* and *French* being to expire in *May*, the *French* resolv'd to make War upon the *English* vigorously, as soon as it was ended; and accordingly first of all sent the Duke of *Bourbon* with an Army into *Aquitain*, to drive the *English* out from thence

The French and Scots make War on the English.

1385.

thence, and afterwards fitted out a great Fleet, which he furnished with Land Soldiers, to invade the Coasts of *England*; and sent Admiral *de Vienne* into *Scotland* with a thousand Men armed, besides Cross-Bows to strengthen them and enable them to make the stronger Opposition, and divert the *English* the more. The *Scots* were not at all pleased at the Arrival of the *French*, chiefly because their Country being barren, could not afford Forage for Strangers, without some Prejudice to the Inhabitants, and besides thinking themselves strong enough to encounter the *English*. But the *French* Admiral promising the King of *Scotland* a large Sum of Money for the Damages they should sustain, and for their Assistance, he agreed to raise an Army of thirty thousand Men to join with the King of *France*.

King *Richard* raises a great Army and invades *Scotland*.

King *Richard* and his Council coming to the Knowledge of these joint Proceedings against the *English* Nation, were diligent to provide against both, and sent into all Parts of the Kingdom to summon together an Army, and fitted out a strong Navy under the Command of the Lord *St. John's*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy*. The Apprehension of an Invasion had that Influence upon the Minds of so many, to excite them to stand up for the Defence of the Publick, that in a short Time the King had an Army of three hundred thousand Men. The Duke of *Lancaster* was immediately sent with sixty thousand towards *Scotland*, the King intending to follow with the rest as fast as he could. The *Scots*, before they heard of the Approach of the Duke of *Lancaster*, were very busie in plundering, burning and killing wherever they came: But no sooner had they News of that, but they retreated home, and withdrew themselves with their Cattel into the Mountains, so that the Duke met with no Opposition. The King being arrived at *York*, received the News of the Retreat of the *Scots*, yet proceeded in his Journey, and joined the Duke, and destroyed the Country of *Scotland* as far as *Edinburgh*, and burnt the City, all but the Abbey of *Holy Rood*, which was spared at the Duke of *Lancaster's* Intercession, because he had been civilly entertained there in the Time of the late Rebellion. The *French* would have engaged the *English* Army, but the *Scotch* shewing them the Numbers and Strength of the *English* from the Hills, dissuaded them from that Attempt, and advised them to wait for a more probable Way of revenging themselves by invading *England* on another Side. And ac-

The King enters *Scotland*.

cordingly

cordingly the *Scots*, not long after passing over the Hills, made an Inroad into *Cumberland*, and did much Damage. The King remained but five Days about *Edinburgh*, and in his Return heard of the Incursions of the *Scots* into *Cumberland*. The Duke of *Lancaster* advised the King to carry his Army beyond the *Friiths*, to stop up the Passes that they might all fall into his Power, which had it been done they could not have avoided; but the Earl of *Oxford*, who was most in the King's Favour, and whose Advice he principally followed, suggested to him that the Duke of *Lancaster* designed to bring his Person into Danger, and ruin his Army by long and tedious Marches. Upon his Suggestions the King neglected the Advantage, but gave the Duke very sharp and opprobrious Language, and return'd home. While the King was on his Way home, a Murther was committed by the Lord *Holland*, the King's half Brother, on the Earl of *Stafford's* eldest Son, which caused great Trouble in the Army. The Murther was so foul, being committed without any Provocation on the Part of the Lord *Stafford*, who was kill'd upon the Road, going to the Queen, whose menial Servant he was, that the King resolved to punish the Lord *Holland* by Law; and accordingly he commanded him to be seiz'd, and his Goods to be confiscated: But he avoided the Storm, by taking Sanctuary at *Beverly*, and the King's Mother was very importunate with him to pardon him; but not prevailing, she fell sick, by Reason of Discontent, and within four or five Days died, after which the King's Fury against his Brother gradually diminished. The *Scots*, upon their Return home, found their Country so miserably harassed and wasted, that they turned their Fury upon the *French*, who had incited them to this War, and stripping them of all they had, sent them home.

9 Ri. II.

The King's Justice in punishing Murther.

In the mean Time the *French* Navy had no better Success against the *English* by Sea, than the *Scots* and *French* had by Land: For altho' the *English* Fleet, thro' the Neglect of the Commanders, did not act their Part to that Advantage it might have done; however it kept them from landing, and the Inhabitants of *Calais*, *Portsmouth* and *Dartmouth*, with their Ships, took about thirty *French* Ships, and eleven more which they lost by Storm, much lessened their Fleet, and depriv'd them of the Triumph they flatter'd themselves with. And thus the *French* Expedition was at an End.

Several French Ships taken.

The

1385.

Twelfth
Parliament
its Acts and
Taxes.

The Parliament met again at *Westminster* the Monday after *St. Luke's Day*, in which a Contest hapned about raising a Subsidy then granted the King; for after the Laity had granted a Fifteenth and a half, the Clergy refused to bear their Proportion of a Tenth and a half, as was the usual Custom, and the Archbishop *Courtney* flatly denied the Payment of it. This Refusal so incens'd the Commons, that they petitioned the King that he would seize upon their Temporalities, But the King, who was always a great Favourer of the Church, answered, "that he would continue the Patronage he had always shewn to the Church, so long as he lived, and would rather gratify the Clergy's Humour, than offer any Injury to their Function. This Answer so prevail'd upon the Clergy, that they voluntarily gave the King a Tenth Part of their Benefices, which was so pleasing to the King, that he told them, that it was more acceptable to him than if he had received four Times as much by Compulsion; and upon the Petition of the Bishops who came to tender this Subsidy to him, he restored the Bishop of *Norwich* to his Temporalities, which he had kept in his own Hands for some Years. In this Session of Parliament, the King made several Promotions, creating several Dukes, Earls, and one Marquiss; and by the Authority of this Parliament, *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, was publickly proclaimed Heir Apparent to the Crown of *England*. The King's Uncle *Edward* Earl of *Cambridge*, was created Duke of *York*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Buckingham*, the King's other Uncle, was created Duke of *Glocester*, with a Settlement of a thousand Pounds per annum upon each to support their Dignity. And *Michael de la Poole* was made Earl of *Suffolk* with a suitable Pension, which occasioned some Discontents. But what rais'd the greatest Envy, was the Promotion of *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, who without any Thing more to recommend him than his Handsomness, was by an unusual Title created Marquiss of *Dublin*, and had a Grant of all the Revenues of *Ireland*, excepting some few Royalties reserved to the Crown, upon paying the annual Sum of five thousand Marks. The extraordinary Fondness the King shew'd to this handsome Favourite was Cause of great Scandal to them both. This Year the celebrated *John Wicliffe*, after he had made great Numbers of Profelytes, died of a Palsy.

Dr. Wicliffe's
Death.

Summe 280

and bonifac

The

The *Monkish* Writers of those Times boldly ascrib'd his Death to the Judgment of God, and that the Use of his Tongue was taken away as a Punishment for his Heretical Sermons. He was buried in his own Parish-Church at *Lutterworth* in *Leicestershire*, where his Bones lay undisturbed for forty one Years, till by a Decree of the Council of *Constance*, they were dug up and burnt as those of a Heretick.

The King and Queen kept their *Christmas* this Year at *Eltham* in *Kent*, where they kept open Court, and in a most magnificent and princely State feasted and entertained all the Nobility of the Nation, and foreign Princes or their Ministers, which was the usual Custom of those Times, at the three great Festivals of the Year. At this Time *Leo* King of *Armenia*, who had been expelled out of his Dominions by the *Turks*, came into *England* to the King, endeavouring to make a Peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*, that he might engage them both against the *Turk*, who was the common Enemy of Christianity; but the Animosity between the two Nations was too great for them to hearken to any moderate Terms of Agreement, so he did not succeed; but he was nobly entertain'd by the King and Nobility for two Months, and presented with many rich Gifts. And the King, by the Advice of his Privy Council, settled a yearly Pension of a thousand Pound upon him at his Departure. About the same Time, *Roger* Earl of *March* having receiv'd Intelligence that the wild *Irish* had done much Damage to his Estate in *Ulster*, he undertook a Voyage into *Ireland* to repress them, and rescue his Lands from their Depredations; but soon after his Arrival, the *Irish* being assembled in a great Company, assaulted and took his Castle, and slew him and almost all his Retinue. He left behind him two Sons and three Daughters. His two Sons *Edmund* and *Roger* died without Issue; *Anne* his eldest Daughter was married to *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, then eldest Son of the Duke of *York*, by whom she had *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, the Father of *Edward IV.* *Eleanor* was a Nun, and *Agnes*, if she was ever married, left no Children.

9 Ri. II.

9 Ri. H.
Leo King of
Armenia
came over to
King Rich-
ard.

Roger Mortimer kill'd
in Ireland.

In the Spring of the Year the King of *Spain* pretending a Right to the Crown of *Portugal*, by his Wife, made War upon that King, and besieged *Lisbon*. The *Portuguese*, by the Help of some *English*, had twice encountered him.

King of
Spain in-
vades *Portu-
gal* and Duke
of *Lancaster*
goes against
him.

1368.

countred the *Spaniards*, and as often foil'd them, but could not raise the Siege. Wherefore the King of *Portugal* thinking that the Duke of *Lancaster*, who was King of *Spain* in Title, would gladly lay hold of an Opportunity to make himself King *de facto*, sends an Ambassador into *England* to the Duke, to beg his speedy Assistance, and promise him an easy Recovery of his Right, in that he alone had twice foiled the *Spaniards*, and that their Arms being united, would infallibly effect a Conquest. The Duke had for some Time been making Preparation for this Expedition, and he having been very much encouraged to it by the King and his Friends, who were very desirous to have him out of the Way, readily embraced the Offer; so mustering up all his Forces with Speed, began his Voyage thither in the Beginning of *May*. His Fleet consisted of eighteen Ships and seven Gallies, commanded by Sir *Thomas Piercy* as Admiral: His Army, which consisted of twenty thousand Men, viz. two thousand Men of Arms, eight thousand Archers, and ten thousand others, was commanded by the Lord *John Holland*, who had married his Daughter as Constable; and Sir *Thomas Moreaux*, one of his Marshals, and many Noblemen attended the Duke to share in his Fortunes. He carried along with him his Wife the Lady *Constance* Princess of *Spain*, and her Daughter *Catherine* and his other Daughter *Philippa*. Before his Departure he and his Dutcheess took their Leave of the King and Queen, and the King presented the Duke with a Silver Crown, giving Commandment that his Men should obey him as King of *Spain*; and the Queen presented his Dutcheess with another Silver Crown, with many good Wishes of Success in obtaining their Right. The Duke in his Passage by *Brest* with his Army made a Visit to Sir *John Roche*, then Governor of the Town, who complaining to him that he was much infested by two Forts lately built by the *French* to annoy his Garrison, the Duke sent out a strong Detachment under the Lord *Fitzwater* to demolish them, but the *French* defended them so bravely, that it cost them many Lives; but at length, the *French* Governor, the Lord *Maletrés*, being wounded, and most of the Men in the Fort slain, they surrendered upon Capitulation, and the Forts were demolished. After this brave Exploit, the Duke set Sail from *Brest*, and passed along the Coasts of *Gallicia*, and landed with his whole Army at the *Green* the 9th of *August*.

The Duke
of *Lancaster*
call'd King
of *Spain*.

They

They tarried there a Month, and the Duke went to *Compostella*; in the mean Time the Lord *Holland* kept the Army in Action, and took many small Garisons in the neighbouring Country, and many others voluntarily submitted to the Duke, because his Dutcheſs was with them, who was the right Heir to the Crown of *Spain*. The Season not being fit for Action, the Duke consulted with the King of *Portugal*, about their Expedition at *Mouſon* in the Spring, and it was agreed that they would invade *Spain* with their united Forces, and to confirm their Alliance the Duke affianced his Daughter *Philippa* to the King of *Portugal*.

While the Duke of *Lancaster* was in his Paſſage to *Portugal*, the King of *France*, who had for ſome conſiderable Time been meditating an Invaſion upon *England*, thought he had now met with an Opportunity in which he could not fail of the Succeſs he deſired; becauſe he imagined the Duke of *Lancaster* had emptied the Nation both of Commanders and Soldiers: And upon this Notion raiſed ſuch a mighty Army, and provided ſuch a Fleet, as if he intended at once to make an entire Conqueſt of *England*. He is reported to have had a numberleſs Army in which were twenty thouſand Noblemen, with a proportional Number of Commons; and fifteen hundred Ships. They had alſo fram'd a wonderful Wooden Wall, three Miles in Compaſs, and twenty Foot high, with a great Number of Turrets, with which they deſign'd ſuddenly to have encls'd their Camp. But the Lord *Beauchamp*, the Governor of *Calais*, took three of their Ships laden with Part of this Incloſure, which the King cauſ'd to be ſet round *Wincheſſea* to ſecure that Town; he took alſo another Ship full of great Guns and other Instruments of War. The News of theſe mighty Preparations put all the important Affairs of *Chriſtendom* to a Stand, and alſo ſtruck a Terror into the *Engliſh*. Upon this King *Richard*, for the Security of the Realm, got together an Army of two hundred thouſand Men, and with Part of them, fortified all the Sea-Port Towns, and poſted another Part to defend the naked Shores in the Places where they were moſt likely to land. The City of *London* pulled down many Houſes to make their Defence more eaſy from them, and guarded the Walls. Publick Faſts were appointed to lament their Dangers, and implore the Protection of God from their Enemies. All good Men

The French
make vaſt
Preparations
againſt Eng-
land.

1386.

Thirteenth
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

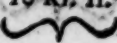
Michael Pool
the Chancel-
lor accused
and brought
to Account
for his Office.

The King
and Parlia-
ment disa-
gree, and the
King leaves
it.

Men bewailed the approaching Invasion, as an unavoidable Scourge for the Sins of the Nation, and thought upon nothing but Death or Servitude. And about *Michaelmas* a Parliament was called to consult for the Nation's Safety, which met accordingly; but the Nobility brought such Numbers of Men along with them to be ready if the *French* should land, that not only the City, but all the Towns twenty Miles round *London*, were filled with armed Men, who for Want of Pay were very detrimental to the Inhabitants. At the opening of the Parliament the King demanded a present Subsidy to pay those Armies he had already got for the Defence of the Nation, and to make such other Provisions against the Enemy, as the Affairs of the State required. The Parliament being sensible of the Danger the Nation was in, readily consented, but thought it not proper to put any great Sums into the Power of the King, he being so pliable to the covetous Humours of his Favourites, who made his Revenues but a Prey to enrich themselves.

For the Chancellor *Michael de la Pool* had in less than one Year's Time, by farming the King's Customs and other Incomes, purchased an Estate of a thousand Pound a Year in Land, besides great Sums of Money which he kept in Bank. The Parliament therefore unanimously resolved to have him removed with the rest of his Associates, or else to give the King no Tax. This they signified to him by a Petition, wherein they represented not only the Misdemeanors of the Chancellor in his Office, but also the Poverty of the People, which ought not to be pressed farther than Necessity required; which they humbly conceived was not so great, but that if the Chancellor were brought to a just Account, the Revenues of the King, and the great Debts which were in the Hands of the Chancellor, would be sufficient to defray them. This Petition was received very ill by the King, who commanded them to mention no such Matter, but immediately proceed to the Business for which they were summoned; declaring, that *he would not for their Sakes, or at their Instance, remove the meanest Scullion-Boy in his Kitchen*, and then removed to *Eltham*, that he might avoid giving any farther Answer to it, leaving Order with the Chancellor to press them to grant a Tax, and to demand four Fifteenths in his Name.

The Lords and Commons being sensible of the Reason of the King's Retreat, told him plainly, that they would



10 R. II.
10 R. II.
10 R. II.

10 R. II.
10 R. II.
10 R. II.

10 R. II.
10 R. II.
10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

10 R. II.

would give no Answer to his Demand, unless the King himself were present, and he removed the Chancellor from his Office. Intelligence was soon carried to the King, of these Proceedings of the Parliament, and he immediately sent Orders to them to send down forty of their wisest Members to him to *Eltham*, to declare to him the Reasons and Grounds of their Actions. This Message caused a great Debate, it having been said that the King had a Design to ensnare and destroy them; but at length both Houses agreed that the Duke of *Glocester* and Bishop of *Ely* should attend the King in the Name of the whole Parliament, and the King contented it should be so. When they came into his Presence, after they had paid him all due Reverence, they with great Submission delivered their Message to this Effect; "That the Lords and Commons in Parliament assembled desired nothing more than to live in Peace and Quietness, as good Subjects, under his Government; that as he might lawfully once a Year summon a Parliament, and require the Presence of the Lords and Commons at it, that by mutual Advice and Consent they might reform all Oppressions, Wrongs, Extortions, and other grievous Enormities in the Realm, and enact such wholsom Laws as were for the Peace and Welfare of the King's Subjects, so they were met according to their Duty, and had no other Design than to pursue those Ends; that his late Absence was a great Discomfort to them; and since there was an old Statute, whereby it was enacted, that if the King, not hindered by Sickness or necessary Business, did absent himself forty Days from his Parliament, they might return home, they should be oblig'd to leave him if he still denied them his Presence." The King in Anger replied, "That the people receiv'd his People went about to rebel against him, and that he thought it better to desire the Assistance of the King of *France*, than to submit to his own Subjects." The Lords replied, "That the *French* King was the most ancient and most inveterate Enemy of the Nation, who as he usurped his Dominions in *France*; so he gaped after the *English* Throne; and therefore no Assistance was farther to be expected from him; than such as might be a fair Pretence for him to get the Possession of his Right. That such Resolutions could proceed from nothing but the desperate Advice of his evil Counsellors, who by their Policy

"sought

1386.

The King
returns to
his Parlia-
ment.

"fought to uphold a Breach between him and his Parliament, which would end in his and his People's Ruin; wherefore they besought him to lay aside all Prejudice against his good Subjects, and to return to his Parliament, which no less sought and desired his Felicity and Presence."

These, and other Arguments to the same Purpose, had so good an Effect upon the King, that he promised to follow their Advice, and accordingly came to the House soon after; and without much Reluctancy, granted a Commission to the Duke of *Glocester*, Earl of *Arundel*, and certain other Noblemen and Bishops, to survey and examine the State of his House and Courts, all his Officers and Ministers Rents, Profits, and Revenues; to correct and amend any Faults and Offences prejudicial to his Person and Crown; and particularly to call *Michael de la Pool*, Earl of *Suffolk*, the Chancellor, to an Account about the Management of his Office. *John Ford*, alias *Fordham*, Bishop of *Durham*, was removed from being Treasurer, and *John Gilbert*, Bishop of *Hereford*, put in his Place. And because the Realm had, for some Years past, been badly governed, and that by the great Corruption of the King's Officers, the publick Revenue was consumed, the King insufferably defrauded, the common People by heavy Taxes miserably impoverished, the Administration of all Publick Affairs was put into the Hands of thirteen Persons, chosen by the Parliament, who had Power to inspect and determine all Affairs, Causes, and Complaints, arising from Matters of this Nature, from the Death of *Edward* the Third, till that Time.

The Duke of
Ireland sent
to Ireland.

The Earl of *Arundel*, and the Earl of *Nottingham*, were appointed Admirals, and sent to Sea with a strong Navy to defend the Coasts, and hinder the Landing of the Enemy. *Robert de Vere*, Marquiss of *Dublin*, created Duke of *Ireland*, was at the Petition of the Lords and Commons, ordered to be sent to *Ireland*, before the next *Easter*, and they consented that he should have thirty thousand Marks paid to him for his Equipage, and to support his Charge there; and this they consented to, that the Nation might be rid of so dangerous a Person, and so ill a Counsellor. While these Things were doing by the Parliament, the Duke of *Glocester* and Earl of *Arundel*, and other Lords in Commission, had examined and tried Chancellor *Pool*, and

and found him guilty of many high Crimes, Frauds, and Treasons; whereupon they not only deposed him from his Office, but confiscated his Estate of a thousand Pound a Year, and imposed on him a Fine of twenty thousand Marks. The Parliament also granted the King half a Tenth, and half a fifteenth. Then the Parliament broke up, and the King made this Protestation, *that for any Thing that was done in that Parliament, he designed it not to the Prejudice of himself or his Crown.*

20 Ri. II.
Michael Pool
found guilty
of many
Crimes, de-
prived and
fined.

The King of France held on his Purpose of invading England, notwithstanding these Preparations were made for its Defence; and having gotten all Things ready for the Enterprize, waited at *Sluice*, from *August* till the Middle of *November*, for the coming of the Duke of *Berry*, and a fair Wind: And a fair Gale blowing on *All Saints Day*, tho' the Duke of *Berry* was not arrived, he chose rather that the Duke should follow him, than lose so fair an Opportunity; and accordingly he set sail: But when they had sailed about seven Leagues, the Wind changed on a sudden, and drove them back again with much Loss. The Duke of *Berry*, who was always averse to the Attempt, had delay'd his coming, on purpose to prevent or discourage it. However, he arrived at *Sluice* before the Wind favoured them again; and it being then *December*, and so the Winter pretty far advanced, he very strenuously dissuaded the King and Council from proceeding any farther, as being both unsafe for his Kingdom and Army; and so that chargeable Design came to nothing.

The French
Invasion
hindred by
cross Winds.

A quite different Account of this Affair was carried to *Spain*; for there it was given out, that the French Army were actually landed in *England*; and therefore the King of *Portugal's* Council advised him, that he should defer his Marriage with the Daughter of the Duke of *Lancaster*, till the Event of the Expedition of the French in *England* should be known; for if that proved successful, as they thought it probably might, his Alliance with the Duke of *Lancaster* would be of no Worth to him. This occasioned some Coldness in the Duke's Affairs in *Portugal*, tho' for the present the Reasons of it were concealed from him.

The King of
Portugal de-
fers his Mar-
riage.

The Parliament being gone home, the King was at Liberty to follow his partial Affections and unsteady Resolutions; for as if their Sufferings had been undeserved,

Michael
Pool's Fine
forgiven,
and he re-
ceived into
Favour.

1387. deserved, or inflicted against his Will, he received into Favour again, with great Expressions of Love, those Persons, who were such heinous Offenders in the Eyes of the Parliament; and to the no small Grief and Trouble of the Nobility, not only immediately remitted the Fine, that had been imposed against *Michael de la Pool*, Earl of *Suffolk*, the Chancellor, but, as if he had intended to make him Satisfaction for the Wrongs he had suffered by redoubling his Honour, he caused him to be cloathed in royal Robes, and sit at Table with him, and that in Publick at *Christmas* Festivals. The Duke of *Ireland* and Archbishop of *York*, were admitted to greater Intimacy with him than ever; and they became the three only Persons, whom the King particularly delighted in. They were not wanting to improve this doting Humour of the King to their Advantage; and they imagined the best Way to promote it, would be by a sharp Revenge upon the chief Instruments of their Disgrace, whom they looked upon to be the only Obstacles of their Ambitious Aims. They easily persuaded the King, "That all they suffered was for his Sake; That their Crimes were forged to make him odious to the People; and, That if he could not protect them, who did nothing but by his Command, and for his Interest, it would not be long but he would be too weak to defend himself; That the main Aim of those ambitious Nobles, their Enemies, was to dethrone him, by disgracing his Ministers: For it is an easy and popular Inference, that the King is not fit to rule, who knows not whom to trust; and he must be a bad Prince, who hath bad Officers." By these, and such like Arguments, the King was easily wrought upon, so to hate those whom they accounted their Enemies, as to concur readily with them, to put any Contrivance in Execution for their Destruction. The Duke of *Glocester* and the Earl of *Suffolk's* Judges, were look'd upon as the most eminent, and therefore the first Plot was to take off the Duke of *Glocester*; then to proceed to the rest, as their first Attempt had Success. And this was contrived under the Pretence of Friendship: For Sir *Nicholas Exton* having prepared a Treat for several Peers and great Men, at Sir *Nicholas Bramber's* House in the City; they invited the Duke thither, having contrived, that the Duke should be either imprisoned,

The Duke of Ireland restored to Favour.

The Duke of Glocester and other Lords, to be poisoned.

or a
pecti
much
being
Con
woul
acco
firing
which
Th
of Pa
to def
the W
furnish
ready
the Fr
laden
severa
Sea v
and ha
ter a f
richly
besides
in to
Plenty
Tun,
Their
and ha
The S
Terror
cond t
they lar
and plu
and arr
French
nig put
Provisio
Thes
brave E
fit, and
lick Saf
raised in
Subject
made fo
the Ind
VOL.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

289

10 Ri. II.

or assassinated, while he was in his Mirth, and not suspecting any such ill Design: But this Villany was so much abhorred by Sir *Nicholas Exton*, the Mayor, that being asked by the King to give his Consent, or at least Conivance at the Execution of it, he declared, *he would never embroe his Hands in innocent Blood*; and accordingly gave the Duke notice of it privately, desiring him to provide for his present and future Safety; which he did by not going to the Feast.

The Earls of *Arundel* and *Nottingham*, who by Order of Parliament were appointed Admirals of the Navy, to defend the Nation, and to annoy the *French*, did all the Winter, with the utmost Diligence endeavour to furnish themselves with able Ships and stout Men, were ready in the Spring, and having received Advice, that the *French*, *Flemish*, and *Spanish* Fleet, lay at *Rochel*, laden with Wine, waiting for a Wind to sail to the several Ports to which they were bound, they put to Sea with all Expedition in Order to intercept them, and had the good Fortune to meet with them; and after a short Engagement, took an hundred Sail of them, richly fraught, with nineteen thousand Tun of Wine, besides other Commodities. These Ships being brought in to divers Ports of the Nation caused so great a Plenty, that Wine was commonly sold for a Mark a Tun, and the best for not above twenty Shillings. Their Shares they generously gave among their Friends, and having refitted their Ships, put out to Sea again. The Success of their first Atchievement struck such a Terror into the Minds of the Enemy, that in their second they met with but very faint Opposition, tho' they landed in many Places on the Coasts of *Flanders*, and plundred and burnt the Country at their Pleasure; and arriving at *Brest*, they took a new Fort which the *French* had lately built, to annoy the Castle; and having put a Garrison in it, and supplied it with Plenty of Provision and Ammunition, they returned home.

These Earls having added to their courageous and brave Exploits a generous Contempt of their own Profit, and a warm Zeal for the common Good and Publick Safety; so high an Opinion of their Worth was raised in the Minds of all Men, that they became the Subject of publick Praise and Admiration. But this made for their Disadvantage at Court; for it heightened the Indignation of those that were managing against

1387.
The Earl of
Arundel's
Service de-
cry'd by the
Court.

the Earl of *Arundel*, and his Party, that those Men whom they had decreed to Destruction should be thought most worthy, not only of Life, but Honour too, by all Men; and left for these brave Actions, the King himself should conceive a favourable Opinion of them, they endeavoured by all their Artifices, not only to lessen, but blast the Reputation of them, telling the King "That tho' the common People cried up the late Action of the Earls of *Arundel* and *Nottingham*, in taking the *Flemish* Fleet, as a brave and glorious Achievement; yet to such as could see farther into Things, it was really far otherwise; for by their robbing the Merchants, all our foreign Trade would be spoiled, and no Nation would care to trade with us, who lived so much upon the Ruin of them: So that tho' a small Gain did redound to the Nation by their Piracy, yet it would prove an inestimable Damage in the End." By these Calumnies they had biased the King's Mind to look upon his Admirals great Service to be a Disservice; so that when they came to Court, they could easily perceive that their good Actions were made a Crime, at which they were so disgusted, that they resigned their Office, and retired to their private Habitations.

Duke of *Ireland* puts away his Wife, the Duke of *Glocester*'s Niece.

Tho' the King's Favourites had met with the late Disappointment in acting against the Life of the Duke of *Glocester*, yet this did not discourage them from farther Attempts, but they were still forming new Designs against him. The Duke of *Ireland* knowing him to be a Person very jealous of his Honour, and impatient at the least Contempt of his royal Blood, having married his Niece, tho' Granddaughter to King *Edward* the third, and a Lady of considerable Beauty, and irreproachable Virtue, put her away, on purpose to affront and provoke the Duke; and married one *Lancerona*, a *Bohemian* Lady, one of the Maids of Honour to the Queen. The injured Lady being Cousin German to the King, hoped to have some Redress by appealing to him; but petitioned him often to no Purpose, her Husband being too deep in the Kings Favour, for her to hope for any Justice from him. But the Duke of *Glocester* could not forbear shewing his Resentment of the Injury done to his Family, and told the King plainly, he would revenge the Injury his Kinswoman had received. The Duke being a Man of great Power, and a rough Disposition,

position, this Menace added Spurs to the wicked Con-
trivances of the King's three Favourites, and their Party,
they being apprehensive their own Lives were in Dan-
ger, if the Duke were not suddenly taken off. By such
Means and Practices as these, King *Richard*, from be-
ing highly respected and beloved, came to be generally
hated and despised by the Nobility and People.

The Duke of *Ireland* being, according to the Reso-
lution of the late Parliament, to go into *Ireland* at
Easter, which now drew nigh, great Preparations were
made for his Departure, as if he had been in earnest;

10. Ri. II.
Duke of Ire-
land's pre-
tended Voy-
age into that
Nation.

and soon after *Easter* he set out on his Journey to
Wales. In his Passage thither he was accompanied in
State by the King, the Earl of *Suffolk*, Judge *Tresilian*,
and some others, who staid with him there some Time,
till they thought the Expectations of the Nation being
satisfied, he might return again without much Notice
being taken. In this Retirement, which was designed
for the Concealment of their mischievous Consulta-
tions, they employed all their Wits to find out Me-
thods to compass the Ruin of those they accounted their
Enemies; and coming back to *Nottingham*, they began
to make some Essays, how their Devices would suc-
ceed. The first Project was, to suppress them by
Force, and in Order to effect this, they summoned all
the Sheriffs of the neighbouring Counties, to come to
the King at *Nottingham*, and inquired of them, what
Forces they could raise, to assist the King against the
Lords, if they were required to do it? The Sheriffs an-
swered, "That the People were generally persuaded, that
"the Lords were the King's Friends, and that they
"sought the Good of the Nation in all they did; and
"therefore they believed they should get very few to
"oppose them." Then they enquired of them, whe-
ther they could not, by their Power and Interest, choose
such Men for the next Parliament, as the King should
nominate to them, and approve as most faithful to
him? They answered, "That the People would be
"very hardly deprived of their ancient Privilege of
"choosing their Members of Parliament; and that if
"there were a true Freedom observed in choosing, it
"would be almost impossible to impose any Persons a-
"gainst the People's Liking, especially since they would
"easily guess at the Design, and the more resolutely
"stand upon their Right." They were a little startled

Several Pro-
jects to de-
stroy the
Lords.

1387. at the Answer of the Sheriffs, because they had great Dependence upon this Invention, imagining, that what was done by a Parliament, would carry a Face of Justice with it, and so their private Revenge would be turned into a publick Punishment; But failing in this Point, they dismissed the Sheriffs, and betook themselves to their last, and most desperate Stratagem, which was to ruin them by Law. And for this Purpose, the King sent his Summons to all the Judges to attend him at Nottingham. The Chief Justice *Tresilian*, being one of the Cabal, had drawn up several Articles to have the Opinion of the rest of his Brethren upon them. Sir *Robert Felbnap*, Chief Justice of the Common Pleas, Sir *John Holt*, Sir *Roger Fulsthorp*, and Sir *William Burgh*, and other Judges of the same Bench, went according to the Summons; upon which a solemn Council was called the eleventh of August, and the King demanded of them the Judgment of the Law, upon these following Questions, and required them by their Faith and Allegiance, to deliver the true Sense of the Law upon them, viz.

The meeting of the Judges at Nottingham, and their Resolution of several Questions.

1. *Whether the Statute and Commission made the last Parliament, were prejudicial to the King's Prerogative?* They all unanimously answered, Yes, because it was obtained against his Will.

2 and 3. *How those Persons ought to be punished, who were either eager to procure it, or moved the King to consent to it and grant it?* They said, With Death; unless the King would pardon them.

4. *How they ought to be punished, who forced the King to grant it?* They said, As Traitors.

5. *How they ought to be punished, that restrained the King so far from exercising his Prerogative, that he might not remit Penalties or Debts owing to him?* They replied, As Traitors.

6. *Whether, when the King hath ordered the Parliament to proceed upon certain Articles, the Lords and Commons may refuse, till the King shall grant what they demand of him?* They answered, That to resist the King's Commands, in such Cases, was High Treason.

7. *Whether the King may not dissolve the Parliament when he pleases?* They resolved, he might.

8. *Whether, since it was a Prerogative of the Crown, to punish the Offences of, or remove all publick Officers or Judges,*

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

293

Judges, the Lords and Commons, without the King's Permission or Order, might impeach such Officers and Judges in Parliament? They determined, That they might not; and it was Treason in any, or all the Members of Parliament, to attempt it. 11. Ri. II.

9. *What Punishment they deserved, who moved, or brought in a Statute, by which Edward the Second was deposed, to be a Precedent for the above-mentioned Commission?* They defined, As Traitors.

10. *Whether the Judgment given against Michael de la Pool, Earl of Suffolk, was erroneous, and be revocable?* They said, That it was erroneous, And revocable in every Part; and that if it were again to be done, they would not pass it.

They having given these Resolutions, the King required them to subscribe them, and set their Seals to them, in the Presence of the Lords, and other great Persons there assembled. The Chief Justice *Tresham*, and those of his Bench, readily complied: But Sir *Robert Felknap*, with those of his Bench, refused to subscribe, nor would do it, till the Duke of *Ireland* and Earl of *Suffolk*, by severe Menaces, forced him to it; which, that it was contrary to his Conscience, the Words he spake are a sufficient Testimony: *I want only an Hardle, an Horse, and an Halter to bring me to the Death I deserve: If I had refused it, I had suffered by your Hands: And now I have gratified the King and you, I deserve to die for betraying the Nobility of the Kingdom.*

The Matters being thus prepared, a Jury was sent for from *London* to *Nottingham*, who very readily indicted the Duke of *Glocester*, Earls of *Arundel*, *Warwick*, *Darby*, and *Nottingham*, of High Treason, for what they had done in the last Parliament; and upon a formal Hearing before the Judges, they were condemned to die; and their Lands being forfeited to the King, were distributed among his Favourites.

About this Time there happened a great Disturbance in the Church. One *Walter Disse*, a *Carmelite* Fryar, who had formerly been Confessor to the Duke of *Lancaster*; having, by the Favour of the Duke, obtained of Pope *Urban*, a Liberty of conferring the Honor and Privileges of the Pope's Chaplains, on such Persons as would purchase them with Money; *Peter Pateshul*, an *Augustin* Fryar, and a Favourer of *Wickliff's*

The Lords condemned by a Jury of Londoners.

Monkish Hypocrisy discovered by one of their Brethren.

1387.

Wickliff's Doctrine, desirous to have Freedom from his monkish Confinement, and the Society of those vile Persons he liv'd with, got himself to be admitted the Pope's Chaplain, and immediately left the Monastery. He was a learned and pious Man, and after his Release, spent his Time much in preaching. He abhorring the wicked Lives of the Monks, which he had with great Sorrow taken notice of, while he lived among them, his Zeal was stirred up to blame their Hypocrisy and wicked Actions, so unbecoming a strict Profession of Religion. His Discourses were much applauded by the People, who were generally disaffected to the Monks, and addicted to *Wickliff's* Doctrine, which his Invectives did favour of. The Monks being impatient of Reproof, shew'd the utmost Dislike to him and his Sermons, frequently disturbing his preaching; so that what through the Contests between the Monks and his Auditors, who would sometimes come to Blows, even in the Churches, and what through Fear of them, he was constrained to give over his preaching, and betake himself to Writing; to which he was advised by his Friends, (some of which were very considerable Persons, viz. Sir William Nevil, Sir Richard Sturmy, and Sir John Montacute.) In his Writings he charged the Monks with many horrid Crimes, as Sodomy, Murder, and Treason, of which he gave convincing Proofs, naming the Persons, both Actors and Patients, that his Relations were credited by all Persons; so that they believed the Monasteries to be no better than he had called that from whence he came, *The Devil's Dungeon*. The Bishops were very angry at these Books, and looked upon them as the Disgrace of the Clergy in general, and were therefore very zealous to suppress them; and in Order thereto, obtained of the King a Commission directed to all Sheriffs, and Justices, commanding them to search for, and seize all heretical Books, and to suppress *Lollardy* throughout the Kingdom; and tho' this took no great Effect for the present, yet it allay'd the Heat and Contest between the Monks and their Enemies.

The Bishops
Zeal for the
Monks.

The Lords
clear them-
selves.

The Judgment which the King and his Favourites, by means of the Compliance of the Judges, had pass'd upon the Duke of *Glocester*, and other Lords, tho' absent, was no sooner given, but a full Account of all the Proceedings was carried to them; and tho' the Duke

Du
T
him
mis
for
his
Lo
van
peri
ente
him
serv
and
con
the
prov
tisfi
the
Rece
to hi
pular
tered
the B
to be
and l
the Bi
return
W
Acco
to ra
their
he so
vern's
Th
Oppo
they c
North
his Ca
guard
of his
theref
Earl s
cape t
High
Earls
News

Duke of *Glocester* was a Man of a hot and cholerick Temper, yet the Sense of his Duty to the King, taught him to provide for his own Defence, by a more submissive Way, than immediately taking to Arms. Therefore sending for the Bishop of *London*, he represented his Case to him, and also that of the other condemn'd Lords, and having taken a solemn Oath upon the Evangelists, that he was studious of the Safety and Prosperity of the King's Person, and Realm; and never had entertain'd so much as an undutiful Thought against him, much less had done any Thing which might deserve so severe a Sentence, as was pass'd upon him; and desired him to wait on the King, to mediate a Reconciliation between the King, himself, and the Lords; the Bishop readily undertook the good Office, and prov'd so good an Advocate, that the King seem'd satisfied with the Duke of *Glocester* his Uncle. But the Earl of *Suffolk* being by, and knowing that if the Reconciliation were compleated, it would prove fatal to him, interposed, and with a virulent Charge of Popularity and Rebellion laid against the Lords, quite altered the King's good Inclinations to Peace; for which the Bishop took the Liberty to tell him, *that it became him to be wholly silent, since he stood condemn'd in Parliament, and liv'd only by the King's Grace, and Favour*, upon which the Bishop was commanded out of the King's Presence, and return'd without Success in his Negotiations to the Lords.

When the Bishop was come back, and had given an Account of his ill Success, they immediately resolv'd to raise what Force they could, and to stand up in their own Defence, and expostulate with the King why he sought their Death, and suffer'd himself to be govern'd by such Traitors.

The Lords provide an Army for their own Safety, and unite.

The King and his Friends thought to prevent any Opposition from them, by siezing them singly, before they could get together, and therefore sent the Duke of *Northumberland*, to apprehend the Earl of *Arundel* at his Castle at *Rygate*; but the Duke found him so well guarded, that he was obliged to dissemble the Reason of his coming, and let it pass for a Visit: The King therefore sent a strong Force to surprize him; but the Earl suspecting what after happened, had made his escape to the Duke of *Glocester* at *Harringey Park* near *Highbgate*, and there they joined their Forces with the Earls of *Warwick*, *Nottingham* and *Darby*. This News being carried to the Court, much surpris'd the

King

1387.

Wickliff's Doctrine, desirous to have Freedom from his monkish Confinement, and the Society of those vile Persons he liv'd with, got himself to be admitted the Pope's Chaplain, and immediately left the Monastery. He was a learned and pious Man, and after his Release, spent his Time much in preaching. He abhorring the wicked Lives of the Monks, which he had with great Sorrow taken notice of, while he lived among them, his Zeal was stirred up to blame their Hypocrisy and wicked Actions, so unbecoming a strict Profession of Religion. His Discourses were much applauded by the People, who were generally dissaffected to the Monks, and addicted to *Wickliff's* Doctrine, which his Invectives did favour of. The Monks being impatient of Reproof, shew'd the utmost Dislike to him and his Sermons, frequently disturbing his preaching; so that what through the Contests between the Monks and his Auditors, who would sometimes come to Blows, even in the Churches, and what through Fear of them, he was constrained to give over his preaching, and betake himself to Writing; to which he was advised by his Friends, (some of which were very considerable Persons, viz. Sir William Nevil, Sir Richard Sturry, and Sir John Montacute.) In his Writings he charged the Monks with many horrid Crimes, as Sodomy, Murder, and Treason, of which he gave convincing Proofs, naming the Persons, both Actors and Patients, that his Relations were credited by all Persons; so that they believed the Monasteries to be no better than he had called that from whence he came, *The Devil's Dungeon*. The Bishops were very angry at these Books, and looked upon them as the Disgrace of the Clergy in general, and were therefore very zealous to suppress them; and in Order thereto, obtained of the King a Commission directed to all Sheriffs, and Justices, commanding them to search for, and seize all heretical Books, and to suppress *Lollardy* throughout the Kingdom; and tho' this took no great Effect for the present, yet it allay'd the Heat and Contest between the Monks and their Enemies.

The Bishops
Zeal for the
Monks.

The Lords
clear them-
selves.

The Judgment which the King and his Favourites, by means of the Compliance of the Judges, had passed upon the Duke of *Glocester*, and other Lords, tho' absent, was no sooner given, but a full Account of all the Proceedings was carried to them; and tho' the Duke

Duke
Tear
him
missi
fore
his C
Lord
vange
perity
enter
him,
serve
and c
conci
the I
prov'
tisfied
the E
Reco
to him
pulari
tered
the Bi
to be
and li
the Bi
return
W
Acco
to rai
their c
he sou
vern's
Th
Oppo
they c
North
his Ca
guard
of his
theref
Earl
cape t
High
Earls
News

Duke of *Glocester* was a Man of a hot and cholerick Temper, yet the Sense of his Duty to the King, taught him to provide for his own Defence, by a more submissive Way, than immediately taking to Arms. Therefore sending for the Bishop of *London*, he represented his Case to him, and also that of the other condemn'd Lords, and having taken a solemn Oath upon the Evangelists, that he was studious of the Safety and Prosperity of the King's Person, and Realm; and never had entertain'd so much as an undutiful Thought against him, much less had done any Thing which might deserve so severe a Sentence, as was pass'd upon him; and desired him to wait on the King, to mediate a Reconciliation between the King, himself, and the Lords; the Bishop readily undertook the good Office, and prov'd so good an Advocate, that the King seem'd satisfied with the Duke of *Glocester* his Uncle. But the Earl of *Suffolk* being by, and knowing that if the Reconciliation were compleated, it would prove fatal to him, interposed, and with a virulent Charge of Popularity and Rebellion laid against the Lords, quite altered the King's good Inclinations to Peace; for which the Bishop took the Liberty to tell him, *that it became him to be wholly silent, since he stood condemn'd in Parliament, and liv'd only by the King's Grace, and Favour*, upon which the Bishop was commanded out of the King's Presence, and return'd without Success in his Negotiations to the Lords.

When the Bishop was come back, and had given an Account of his ill Success, they immediately resolv'd to raise what Force they could, and to stand up in their own Defence, and expostulate with the King why he sought their Death, and suffer'd himself to be govern'd by such Traitors.

The Lords provide an Army for their own Safety, and unite.

The King and his Friends thought to prevent any Opposition from them, by siezing them singly, before they could get together, and therefore sent the Duke of *Northumberland*, to apprehend the Earl of *Arundel* at his Castle at *Rygate*; but the Duke found him so well guarded, that he was obliged to dissemble the Reason of his coming, and let it pass for a Visit: The King therefore sent a strong Force to surprize him; but the Earl suspecting what after happened, had made his escape to the Duke of *Glocester* at *Harringey Park* near *Highgate*, and there they joined their Forces with the Earls of *Warwick*, *Nottingham* and *Darby*. This News being carried to the Court, much surpris'd the

1387.

King and his Friends, whereupon a great Council was call'd to consult what was best to be done in this critical Conjunction. The Archbishop of York advised the King to raise an Army to repress them; but considering an Army of fifty thousand could not be soon enough raised, and if they were, yet very few of them would fight against the Lords, this Proposal was rejected.

The Duke of Ireland, and Earl of Suffolk, advised him to make the King of France his Friend, by resigning Calais, and all his other Dominions beyond Sea to him. And accordingly, as *Walsingham* says, the King resolv'd upon a Voyage to France, in order to have made an Agreement with that King, to have surrendred up Calais, and other important Places to him, upon Condition he would assist him to subdue his rebellious Nobility. But the Lords Party being now grown powerful, they having mustered above forty thousand, it broke all the King's Measures, and prevented that Voyage. The King therefore being in great Confusion, and being willing one Time to divert himself with the rambling Discourse of a crack-brain'd Knight, call'd Sir Hugh de Lynn, ask'd him jocularly, what he should do with the Lords at *Haringey Park*; to which Sir Hugh very gravely replied, *Let us march out Sir, and kill every Man of them; and then by God's Eyes, you'll have bravely destroy'd the most faithful Subjects in your Kingdom.* The three Favourites knowing that nothing but Arms could secure them from the Fury of the Lords, therefore gave this desperate Counsel: But quite different Proposals were made by those whose Guilt and Fears were less. The Earl of Northumberland assured the King, that the Lords tho' now in Arms were his true and faithful Subjects; and therefore humbly requested of the King, that he would send to them, and enquire the Reason of their Assembling with such a Number of People, and he did not doubt but he would give him Satisfaction. This Proposition was approv'd by the Majority of the Council, and the King himself assented to it. Whereupon the Archbishop of Canterbury, and Bishop of Ely, were sent to tell the Lords, that the King had no Mind to commence a War against his Subjects, but would know the Cause of their Discontents, and therefore desired them to meet him the next Sunday in *Westminster Hall*, and there exhibit their Complaints. The Lords were willing to meet the King, but were suspicious of the treacherous

A Meeting
agreed upon
between the
King and
Lords.

treacherous Designs of those that were about him; and told the Bishop, that upon Promise of Protection, they would certainly attend his Majesty. The Bishop of *Ely* engag'd himself upon Oath, that if there were any dangerous Designs laid against them, he would not fail to give them timely Notice of it; and upon that they promised him to meet the King at the Day appointed. The Night before the Time of Meeting, a Message came from the Bishop, giving them Information, that an Ambush of a thousand armed Men, under the Command of Sir *Thomas Trivet*, and Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, was laid in the *Mews* to surprise them, and therefore they should either not come, or come guarded with a sufficient Force; upon which the Lords came not. The King came to *Westminster Hall* according to Appointment, but the Lords not coming, he demanded with some Warmth of the Bishop, why the Lords did not appear, according to the Promise they had sent by him? The Bishop very plainly and boldly answered, that the Lords had received certain Information, that a Plot was laid against their Lives, in the *Mews*, which being so contrary to the Faith of a Prince, they thought it in vain to treat with him. The King being startled at this Answer, as tho' he had not been privy to it, swore he knew nothing of it, and presently gave Order to the Sheriffs of *London* to search the Place mention'd, and if they found any such Thing, either to kill or take them; but the chief Actors having notice of the Discovery, had dispersed themselves before this could be done. However upon the King's fresh Promise of their Security, they not long after did attend him in *Westminster Hall*, but strongly guarded.

The King being seated on his Throne arrayed in his royal Robes, the Lords kneeled submissively before him, and the Bishop of *Ely*, who was Chancellor, deliver'd the King's Mind to them in a short Speech, telling them, 'That the King hearing of their riotous Meeting in *Haringey Park*, tho' he was advised to repress them by Force, which he could easily have done; yet out of his princely Clemency, had chosen to put gentler Methods first in Execution, to avoid the Effusion of his Subjects Blood if possible; and therefore had sent for them, to know the Reasons and Causes of their Discontents, and why they in so tumultuous a Manner had drawn together such a

11 Ri. II.

The King and Lords meet in *Westminster Hall*, and are reconciled.

' Number

1387.

‘Number of People.’ The Lords made answer, ‘That it was not out of any ambitious or turbulent Humor, that they had taken Arms; for they neither affected his Crown, nor envied his Peace, but through an unavoidable Necessity of preserving his Person and Realm, and securing their own Lives from the impending Dangers, which were falling upon them, by such Persons as were Enemies to both, and shrowded their ill Actions under his Favour; that the Duke of *Ireland*, Earl of *Suffolk*, Archbishop of *York*, Sir *Robert Tresilian*, Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, and some others, were those Traitors to the King and Realm, that they were afraid of, and sought to remove; because so long as they were in Place and Favour, the Nation must be miserable, nor could any Man be safe; and that they had not brought any false Accusation against them, they declar’d themselves ready (if his Majesty would yield to it) to justify what they had alledg’d by single Combat;’ and then threw down their Gloves at the Challengers. The King having heard them with much Calmness, gave them this rational and moderate Reply, ‘That supposing it were true, which they had alledg’d, yet they had taken a very improper Method to rectify their Grievances, which ought to be done by Rules of Justice, not Acts of Rebellion; that their present Tumults were of very ill Consequence, and would encourage the Multitude to make use of the like Methods, which would be difficult to repress; that he would speedily call a Parliament, wherein the Persons accused should appear, and all Matters of Difference should be adjusted, and all true Causes of Trouble or Fears, to themselves, or the Nation, be removed; and in the mean Time would pardon all that was past, and take them into his Protection.’ The King having finish’d his Speech, took the Duke of *Glocester* by the Hand, and raising him from his Knees, bid the rest rise; then retreating with them into a private Chamber, gave them a Treat, and after the Treat was over, gave them leave to depart. The Lords were thoroughly satisfied with the King’s Behaviour towards them; and after the King had put forth his Proclamation of Pardon, they looked upon all Things in a certain Way of Settlement, at the Meeting of the next Parliament.

The

The Duke of *Ireland*, and the other Persons accused, were not present at the late Interview of the King, and Lords; and the Lords thought it not safe to dismiss their Army, lest there should be some secret Contrivance still on Foot against them. And this Suspicion was very fortunate: For notwithstanding the seeming Sincerity of the King's being reconcil'd to them, yet the Duke of *Ireland* had a secret Commission, to raise an Army of the King's Friends about *Chester*, and to come to *London*, in which they hoped to find such Assistance, as to be able without Difficulty to subdue the Lords. Tho' this was acted with great Privacy, and at so great a Distance, yet the Lords had notice of it, who therefore contriv'd to intercept the Duke in his Way to *London*; and therefore sent the Earl of *Derby* with a strong Party, to post themselves in the Countries, through which he was to pass. The Duke of *Ireland*, having raised a Body of six thousand Men, stout and well armed, out of *Cheshire* and *Lancashire*, was marching towards *London*; but the Earl of *Derby*, and his Party met him at *Radcot-bridge* near *Bursford* in *Oxfordshire*, and had broken down the Bridge to force them to fight. The Duke of *Ireland* was surpris'd at their meeting him, and being fearful of his own Fate, perswaded the Gentlemen to retreat. But Sir *Thomas Molineux* being a Gentleman of great Courage, replied, 'that it was but a Party of the Lords Army, and that commanded by the Earl of *Derby*, a Man famous, neither for Courage, nor Conduct; and that if they should give Ground to these, they could not hope to effect any Thing else against the whole Power of the Lords, and therefore encouraged them to prepare for a Fight. The next Day a Fight began, which was very sharp, and lasted long; but in the End, Sir *Thomas Molineux* was slain, and most of his Men were either kill'd or taken. The Duke saw the Beginning of the Engagement, but fled before he saw to which Side Victory inclin'd, and swimming over the River *Thames*, made his escape, quitting his Horse, because he could not make the farther Bank, and got away on Foot. His Horse, Baggage, and Armor were all taken, with a great Sum in Gold; and in his Trunk, was found a Letter sent to him by the King himself, wherein he commands him to hasten to *London*, with what Speed he could, and promises to live and die with him. The Duke fled

11 Ri. II.

The King privately raises an Army against the Lords.

The Earl of Derby vanquishes the Duke of Ireland.

1688.

to *Holland*, and from thence into *France*. This happy Victory prov'd to the Lords, in a Manner, the utter Overthrow of their Enemies; for the Duke of *Ireland* never return'd, and the Earl of *Suffolk* fled to his Brother at *Calais*, who was Captain of that Fortrefs; the King betook himself to the Tower, and chief Justice *Trefilian*, the Archbishop of *York*, and all the rest of the Party withdrew from *London*, and lay conceal'd. About this Time an Envoy from the King of *France* was taken with Letters, in which Letters of safe Conduct were sent to King *Richard*, the Duke of *Ireland*, and some others to come to *Boloign*, where he would be ready to receive him, and then was to take Possession of *Calais*, and other Fortresses, for which, *Walsingham* says, he had already paid King *Richard* Part of the Money.

The Enemies of the Lords thus disappearing, they had no visible Opposition, whereupon they marched with their Army of forty thousand Men to *London*, and muster'd at *Clerkenwell*. The Archbishop and some other Peers desired the King to condescend to a peaceable Composure of Affairs; but he set light by their Advice, and told them, 'That they would soon dissolve of themselves without any Treaty, their Multitude would in a short Time consume all their Provision, and then they must break in Pieces of Course.' Notice of these Words being carried to the Lords, they swore they would not depart from *London*, before they had spoke with the King; and having given him notice of it, they set a strong Guard about the Tower, that he might not escape privately. The King being thus beset, condescended to a Treaty, and sent the Archbishop to acquaint them with it. The Lords were joyful at the News, but fearing some Treachery, if they treated with the King in the Tower, desired him to meet with them at *Westminster*; but he sending them the Keys of the Gates, Turrets, and strong Chambers, and permitting them with two hundred Men, to search all Places, and clear up all Suspicions, they at length receded from that Desire. The Duke of *Glocester*, and Earls of *Warwick*, *Arundel*, *Derby*, and *Northampton*, were the chief Managers of the Treaty with the King, who receiv'd them in a Pavilion of State, and then retired with them into his Chamber.

The Lords there charged him with many unjust and dishonour-

The King
and Lords
meet again
and the King
confesses his
faulty Ma-
nagement.

dishonourable Actions, against the Nation and themselves, viz. 'That he had by forg'd Crimes, and an unjust Sentence, conspired with his Favourites at *Nottingham*, to take away their Lives; which tho' they had at their Meeting at *Westminster*, been sparing to upbraid him with, out of Respect to his Honour, because they saw an amicable Agreement like to go forward, yet now they could not but lay before him, because they had since found Letters from him to the Duke of *Ireland*, to raise Forces in *Cheshire* against them, even at the Time of their former Treaty; by which Action he added Perfidiousness to Cruelty, and plainly shew'd that his Favour and Grace then pretended was but a Vail to his ill Designs against them. That he had made an Agreement with the *French King*, (as by some Letters, which they had intercepted, and then shew'd, they made appear) to resign *Calais*, and his other Dominions on that Side to him, upon Condition that he might enjoy them as an Homager to his Crown, and that Letters of safe Conduct were sent to him, to complete this Agreement, which was indeed to betray the *English* Possessions, purchased with so much Blood, into their Enemies Hands.' They likewise mentioned many lesser Grievances by the ill Conduct of the Ministers of State, employ'd by him. The King had but little to say in his own Defence, but falling into an ingenuous Confession of his Errors and Misgovernment, with Tears, agreed to meet them next Day at *Westminster*, and rectify whatsoever was amiss by their Consent. Upon this Promise, the Lords all departed, except the Earl of *Derby*, whom the King desired to stay with him, as an Instance of his Resolution to join with them in settling the Disorders of the Nation; which he express'd much Satisfaction in, while the Earl was with him, but the Earl being departed, consulting with those about him, who buzz'd it in his Head, that that Meeting would tend much to the Hazard of his Person, and would end with a great Diminution of his Authority, he fully resolv'd against it. The Lords met the next Day at *Westminster*, according to Appointment, but the King came not, nor would leave the Tower; which when they understood, they sent him word plainly, 'That if he would not meet them according to his Promise, they would certainly chuse another King, who should have more Regard

1388. ' Regard to the faithful Advices, and Services of his Lords than he had.' This Message wrought the King into a Compliance, and he met them the next Day in *Westminster Hall*. The main Thing that the Lords insisted upon, was that several traiterous Persons should for the Honour of the King's Person, and the Good of the Nation, be removed from Court, to which the King, tho' not very freely, consented. And accordingly the Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Durham*, and the King's Confessor, Fryar *Rustock*, and the Bishop of *Chichester*, were strictly forbid to come into the King's Palace, or Presence; the two first of which were fled. The Lords *Zouch*, *Burnel*, and *Beaumont*, also the Knights, Sir *Alberich de vere*, Sir *Baldwin Bersford*, Sir *John Worth*, Sir *Thomas Clifford*, Sir *John Lovel*, and Sir *Richard Adderbury*, were likewise banish'd the Court, and oblig'd to give Security for their Appearance at the next Session of Parliament. Likewise some Ladies of no good Reputation, as the Ladies, *Mobun*, *Molings*, *Poynings*, and *Worth*, were forced to find Sureties for their Appearances the next Parliament. And several others, who were greater Offenders, or at least more open and prejudicial to the Nation, were imprisoned, as Sir *William Ellingham*, Sir *John Salisbury*, Sir *Simon Barly*, Sir *James Barnish*, Sir *Nicholas Dagworth*, Sir *Thomas Trivet*, Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, Sir *John Beauchamp*, Keeper of the King's privy Purse; *Nicholas Lake*, Dean of the Chapel, *Richard Clifford*, *John Lincoln*, and *John Motford* Clerks, and *John Blake* Barister at Law, who were ordered to be tried the next Parliament.

Fourteenth
Parliament
its Acts and
Taxes.

The Time drawing near, when the Parliament was to meet, tho' it was by the general Consent of the King, Lords and Commons; yet he knowing it would prove fatal to his Friends, contrived all Means possible to prorogue it; but not daring to insist upon his Prerogative at that Time, it met on the 3^d of *February*. The Lords came to it with such Attendants as seem'd necessary for their Safety. The Commons resorted to it with great Diligence, because of the general Expectation they had of a compleat Reformation of all Disorders, which they so well effected, that it was call'd the *Wonder-working Parliament*. On the first Day of their meeting, they caused all the Judges that were sitting in *Westminster-Hall* to be arrested. Their Crime was,

' That

" That
" Acti
" Adv
" all w
" given
" ham,
" Acti
" terou
but thei
their R
and the
ment; v
naged b
were su
only bar
Goods,
lian, wh
they pro
bishop o
silian, an
who bei
and for
Banishm
Time af
one of h
Westmin
ledge of
before th
to *Tybur*
was imm
had been
to serve
his illeg
of the L
made Du
Name of
headed w
he had i
James B
Uske and
for the 1
Dover-C
to delive
not prov
terceeded
morese

That in the last Parliament they had over-ruled the
 Actions and Determinations of the Lords with their
 Advice and Directions, and had assured them, that
 all was done according to Law, but afterwards had
 given the King a contrary Judgment at *Notting-*
ham, and had deliver'd it as their Opinion, that the
 Actions of the said Parliament were illegal and trai-
 terous. The Judges had nothing to plead in Excuse,
 but their Fears of the Duke of *Ireland*, who threatned
 their Ruin unless they gave such Answers as he desir'd;
 and therefore they submitted themselves to the Parlia-
 ment; who considering that the whole Affair was ma-
 naged by the Chief Justice *Tresilian*, and that the others
 were surpris'd and forc'd to give their Opinions, they
 only banish'd them for their Lives, and confiscated their
 Goods, but resolv'd to deal more severely with *Tresi-*
lian, when they could apprehend him. In the next Place,
 they proceeded against the Duke of *Ireland*, the Arch-
 bishop of *York*, the Earl of *Suffolk*, the Chief Justice *Tre-*
silian, and *Nicholas Bramber* the Lord Mayor of *London*,
 who being fled from Justice, were summoned to appear,
 and for Non-Appearance, were sentenced to perpetual
 Banishment, and their Estates confiscated. Some small
 Time after the Chief Justice *Tresilian* was discover'd by
 one of his own Servants, and seiz'd at an Apothecary's at
Westminster, where he had lain concealed to get Know-
 ledge of the Parliament's Transactions. Being brought
 before the Parliament, he receiv'd Sentence to be drawn
 to *Tyburn*, and have his Throat cut, which Judgment
 was immediately executed. Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, who
 had been several Times made Lord Mayor of *London*
 to serve the Court-Designs against the Lords, and by
 his illegal Cruelties in that Office, had murdered many
 of the Lords Friends, for which Services he was to be
 made Duke of *Troy*, (which some say was the ancient
 Name of the City of *London*) was condemned to be be-
 headed with the same Ax (as some write) with which
 he had inflicted the same Punishment on others. Sir
James Barnish, Sir *John Salisbury*, *John Blake*, *Thomas*
Uske and *John Beauchamp* were all drawn and hang'd
 for the same Crimes. Sir *Simon Burley* Constable of
Dover-Castle was beheaded, being accused of conspiring
 to deliver up that Castle to the *French*, tho' this was
 not prov'd against him, and tho' the Earl of *Derby* in-
 terceded much for him, yet to the Duke of *Glocester's*
 morose Temper he fell a Sacrifice.

11 Ri. II.

The Judges
punished.

Judge Tre-
silian's Pu-
nishment.

Sir Simon
Burley un-
justly put
to Death.

The

1388.

The King
and Parlia-
ment renew
their Oaths
of Coronati-
on and Feal-
ty.

The Parliament hoping that those Persons who were the chief Causes of the Disorders of the Nation being remov'd, all Things would be settled, the King and Parliament, as if all Things were to begin anew, agreed to ratify their Resolutions of doing their Duty to each other by an Oath. The King promised to stand by the Lords in governing the Realm, and took his Coronation-Oath again, and the two Houses of Parliament swore Homage and Fealty to him. This being done, they granted the King half a Tenth of the Clergy, and half a Fifteenth of the Laity, and some other Subsidies. They likewise granted twenty thousand Pounds to the Lords, out of a Tax upon Leather and Wool, in Consideration of their Labour and Expences, for the Honour, Profit, and Safety of the King and Kingdom. After which an Act of Indemnity was pass'd for the Pardon of all other Persons concern'd on either Side, during the late Insurrections; and the Parliament declar'd, *That considering the tender Age of the King, and the Innocency of his Royal Person, nothing should be accounted any Fault or Dishonesty in his Person in any Manner, nor should turn to his personal Prejudice by any Contrivance or Interpretation whatsoever*; and then was dissolv'd, the King being discontented and angry at what he had done in it. At that Time the King created *John Holland*, Earl of *Huntingdon*.

Extraordi-
nary Swarms
of Gnats.

This Year, while the King was at his Palace at *Sheen*, now call'd *Richmond*, in the Month of *July*, there appear'd on a sudden such innumerable Swarms of Gnats, that they darkned the Air. They skirmished and fought in Parties; the slain fell down to the Ground by Heaps, and being swept together with Brooms, were found to be many Bushels full; above a third Part of the whole came off Conquerors, and flew away.

Earl of *Arundel* sent
to assist the
Duke of *Bre-*
tagne.

The Duke of *Bretagne* being under the Displeasure of the King of *France*, because he had imprison'd the Lord *Gueselin* the Constable, fear'd an Invasion; whereupon the Earl of *Arundel* being made Admiral again by the Parliament, put to Sea with a great Navy, well stor'd with Land Forces, and several Noblemen to assist the Duke. The *English* Fleet arriv'd at *Rochel*, and landing some Forces, began to lay waste the Country about *Marrant*; but a Peace being suddenly concluded between the *French* King and the Duke, the Earl return'd, and in his Passage met with the *French* Fleet, of which

he too
it, an
Th
expire
to be
did no
Prepar
plund
they ca
in *Cu*
They
hundre
next I
castle,
his So
Ralph,
Noble
to eng
Party
Fight
Force
Lord
and ov
Victor
bar car
and ha
Lord
In Se
Acts fo
one for
burg to
of the C
Soon
Peace
Scotlan
at *Bali*
loign, a
upon a
Years.
had ma
carried
ham w
inferior
their R
Voy

he took eighty, and invaded the Isle of *Beas* and burnt it, and also took the Isle of *Oleron*. 12. Ri. II.

The Truce between the *English* and *Scots* being lately expired, the *Scots* thinking the Dissentions of *England* to be an advantageous Juncture for them to invade it, did not let the Opportunity slip; and as soon as their Preparations were ready, entred the bordering Countries, plundering, burning and killing in every Place where they came. The first Place they came to, was *Gillestland* in *Cumberland*, where they committed great Barbarities: They shut up the Inhabitants in their Houses by two hundred in a Company, and set them on Fire: Their next Inroad was to the North, and coming to *Newcastle*, they were met by the Earl of *Northumberland* and his Sons *Henry* Lord *Piercy*, surnamed *Hotspur*, and *Ralph*, with a small Force to oppose them. The young Noblemen being desirous of Honour were very eager to engage them. Earl *Douglafs*, who commanded that Party of *Scots*, was as forward to join the Battle. The Fight was at *Otterburn*, and Earl *Douglafs*, seeking by Force to extort his Name from him, encountred the Lord *Piercy* singly; but being equal'd in Courage, and overmatch'd with Strength, he was slain. But the Victory was hardly compleated, before the Earl of *Dunbar* came upon the *English* with a much greater Force, and having slain the greatest Part of them, he took the Lord *Piercy* and his Brother Prisoners.

In *September* the Parliament met again, and made several Acts for the Benefit of the Publick, and among the rest, one for the removing the Staple of Wool from *Middleburg* to *Calais*. They also granted the King a Fifteenth of the Clergy, and a Tenth of the Laity, and then broke up.

Soon after the rising of the Parliament, a Treaty of Peace was set on Foot between *England*, *France*, and *Scotland*. The Commissioners of each Nation met at *Balingham*, a small Town between *Calais* and *Bulloign*, and after long Debates, came at length to agree upon a Truce between the three Nations for three Years. While the Treaty was carrying on, the *Scots* had made several Incurfions into *Northumberland*, and carried off great Booties, which the Earl of *Nottingham* was not able to prevent, because his Force was inferior to theirs. The *Scots* were so well pleas'd with their Robberies, that the News of the Truce was very

1389.

An eminent
Quarrel be-
tween the
Oxford Scho-
lars.

The King
being of Age
assumes the
Government
of his King-
doms.

The great
Officers of
State chang-
ed.

coldly receiv'd by them, and they were not easily persuaded to accept of it.

There was a great Contest between the *Oxford* Scholars this Year. The *Welsh*, who were always proud and quarrellous, having united the Scholars of the Southern Parts to their Side, began to abuse the Northern Scholars, who being very numerous, stood up together in their own Defence; and much Mischief was done on both Sides. At length the Matter came to this Issue, that they would determine all by a pitcht Fight; but the Duke of *Glocester* hearing of it, and being much concern'd not only at the ill Example, but also the ill Consequences of it, found Means to prevent it, and caused several of the *Welsh*, who had been the Authors of the Broil, to be expel'd the University, and others of them to be punish'd with the usual Mulcts of the Academy, and so settled the University in Quiet and good Order again.

The King was now full one and twenty Years of Age, and the Lords Regents, either not knowing or not willing to take any Notice of it, did not resign; he therefore resolv'd to take the Government into his own Hands, and for that Purpose, calling together a great Council of his Nobility at *Westminster*, demanded of them, what Age they suppos'd him to be of? They answer'd, "That they thought him to be something above one and twenty." The King then replied, "That it was unreasonable, that he should be denied what his meanest Subjects enjoy'd, who at that Age came into the Management and full Possession of their Birthrights, and were no longer under Guardians and Tutors, and therefore he challenged the Government of his Kingdoms out of their Hands." The Lords, tho' they feared the ill Consequences of his Rule, yet did not deny what he required, but yielded up their Power entirely to him: However, the King was not so well satisfied with their so readily doing it, but that he declar'd publickly, "That he renounc'd their Rule, and from thenceforth did assume to himself as full a Power of governing, disposing Affairs, and administering Justice in his Realm as any of his Predecessors, the Kings of *England* did, and might lawfully use and exercise." And that he might give them Instances of his Power, and to try their Submission, made an Alteration among the great Ministers of State, as the Lord Chancellor, the Treasurer, the Lord Privy Seal,

Seal,
othe
coun
had b
T
whil
it wa
their
they
Parts
Pasto
cram
began
the l
Salish
Socie
their
threat
cese,
gov.
Heret
there
bable,
Trou
the W
ges, e
Th
cil, it
seek h
ged C
depose
amine
himself
cil tho
that th
nished,
Wh
Rival,
was th
almost
and ha
an hon
Spain,
vering
Arms

Seal, the Lord Admiral, and several others. Many other Alterations he made in the Court, which was accounted a new Model of a worse Management than had been before for some Time carried on by the Lords.

The Followers of *Wickliff* were very sensible that while their Enemies Heads were otherwise employed, it was a favourable Juncture for them to propagate their Doctrines, and accordingly had so far advanc'd, that they were now become a form'd Church, and in many Parts of the Nation had regular Congregations, with Pastors well qualified to preach and administer the Sacraments. The State being thus at Peace, the Bishops began to look into Matters of Religion, which during the late Troubles they had neglected. The Bishop of *Salisbury* had gotten, from one that had been of their Society, a particular Account of all their Party, and their present Condition. The Bishop of *Norwich* threatned severely, that if any were found in his Diocese, he would make them *bop beadless*, or *fry a Faggot*. One *John Swinderby*, a Priest, suffer'd as an Heretick in the Bishop of *Hereford's* Diocese; but as there is no Account of any other that suffer'd, it is probable, that some Imprudence in himself brought his Troubles upon him. The main *Popish* Doctrine that the *Wickliffites* oppos'd, was their Pilgrimages to Images, especially the *Rood* and *Lady of Walsingham*.

The Duke of *Glocester* not being of the King's Council, it gave Encouragement to some Court-Parasites to seek his Ruin, and therefore they accus'd him of a forged Crime, that he was about to raise an Army, and depose the King; the Duke was thereupon privately examined and charg'd with the Accusation, but he cleared himself of it so well that both the King and his Council thought it a Forgery. The Duke beg'd of the King that the Authors of the false Accusation might be punished, but the King would not permit it.

While the King was under the Apprehension of one Rival, another more formidable arriv'd in *England* which was the Duke of *Lancaster* out of *Spain*. And altho' for almost three Years he had undergone a various Fortune, and had past thro' many Troubles, yet at last he made an honourable Conclusion. At his first Entrance into *Spain*, many *Spaniards* came over to assist him in recovering his Wife's Right against the Usurper, and his Arms were every where victorious, so that he met with

13 Ri. II.

The Bishops concerned at the spreading of *Wickliff's* Doctrine.

The Duke of *Glocester* falsely accus'd of Treason.

The Duke of *Lancaster's* Return out of *Spain*, and his Success there.

1389.

as good Success as he could have desired. The *Spanish* Army, under the Command of *Don Alvarez de Perez*, was totally routed, and the *Spaniards* so terrified with the Loss, that they kept themselves close in their walled Towns. But the Heat and Unkindness of the Climate so afflicted his whole Army with mortal Diseases, that he lost many of his best Men, particularly the Lord *Fitzwalter*, and the rest were rendred unfit for Service: And the *Spaniards* which had sided with the Duke were so angry with the *English* for making such Havock of their Country, that they deserted him, by which Means the Duke and his Friends were left so weak and expos'd to the Enemy, that in great Sorrow and Anguish of Mind he lamented his Misfortune, and beg'd of God, who judges of every Man's Right, to interpose on his Behalf, and give him an honourable Conclusion of that Expedition; and that God heard him in his Troubles, may be judg'd by the Event. Indeed the Duke had some Hope to retrieve his Loss, by sending into *England* for Recruits; but the Troubles there were such, that the King could not spare him any: This farther increas'd his Grief. The Duke therefore having obtain'd Leave of the King of *Spain*, that his sick Soldiers might remain in *Spain*, till they recovered their Health, departed in much Grief to *Bayona* City in *Gascoigne*, and there remained in much Melancholy for his ill Success. But there Providence made Way for that happy Conclusion which the Duke desir'd: For the Duke of *Berry*, Uncle to the King of *France*, made a Proposition of Marriage with *Katharine* the Duke's Daughter and Heiress to the Crown of *Spain* after the Death of her Mother. This so rous'd the Thoughts of the King of *Castile* and *Leon*, lest that Match, by the Union of two such potent Interests in *France* and *England*, should bring greater Danger to his Throne, than her Mother's had; that he by the Advice of his Council earnestly solicited the Duke of *Lancaster*, that his eldest Son *Henry* might marry his Daughter. The Offers of the King of *Spain* being more agreeable to the Duke of *Lancaster* than the Duke of *Berry's*, a Marriage was concluded on upon the following Conditions, "That after Prince *Henry* of *Spain* had married the Lady *Katherine*, the Duke of *Lancaster's* Daughter, they should be call'd Prince and Princess of *Asturia*, so long as the present King lived. 2. That the Kingdom of *Spain*, after the

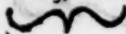
The Duke
of *Lancaster*
marries his
eldest Daugh-
ter to the
King of
Spain's Son.

“ the Death of the present King, should descend to the
 “ said Princes, and the Heirs of their Bodies; and for
 “ want of such Heirs, to *Edmond Duke of York*, who
 “ had married the other Daughter of King *Peter*, and
 “ to his Heirs. 3. That the King of *Spain* should pay
 “ the Duke of *Lancaster* two hundred thousand Pound
 “ towards the Charges of his Expedition, and ten
 “ thousand Pound a Year, during his and his Dut-
 “ chesses Life at *Bayon*.” This being concluded on,
 the Duke returned with Joy into *England*; and hear-
 ing that a Difference began to arise between King *Richard*
 and his Nobles, upon which Account the King
 had summoned a great Council to meet at *Reading*,
 the Duke posted thither to pay his Duty to the King,
 and to reconcile them, which he happily effected.

While the *Christmas* Carnivals were kept at Court, *The young*
John Hastings, Earl of *Pembroke*, learning to just *Earl of Pem-*
 (which was an Exercise much used in those Times) *broke killed*
 with Sir *John St. John*, received an unfortunate Blow *at Just.*
 on the Bottom of his Belly, which proved his Death.
 He was much lamented, because he was a hopeful No-
 bleman, a generous and affable Person; but it seems as
 tho’ it were a Fate intailed upon the Family, to meet
 with an untimely Death; for it was an Observation
 made by many, that from the Time of *Aumer de Va-*
lence, Earl of *Pembroke*, who was one of the Peers,
 who condemned *Thomas Earl of Lancaster*, at *Ponte-*
fract, about eighty Years before, none ever lived to
 see his Son, tho’ the Descent in the whole Blood lasted
 all the While. This was deem’d a just Punishment of
 the Sin of their Ancestors against that Nobleman, whom
 the Pope canonized for his Virtues as a State Martyr.

The Parliament met at *Westminster*, after the Feast
 of St. *Hilary*, and divers Things were enacted for the
 Good of the Publick, the most remarkable of which
 were against the Procurement of Pardons for Mur-
 ders, Treasons, and Rapes. The Commons having ob-
 served, that the King’s Pardons were an Encourage-
 ment to such Facts, petitioned the King that he would
 oblige himself, not to grant any Pardons for those
 Crimes. But the King refused to do it, because he
 would not deprive his Crown of a Branch of its Pre-
 rogative; but yet passed an Act much to the same Ef-
 fect, viz. That all Persons, who procured a Pardon
 for any guilty of the said Crimes should be fined ac-
 cording

1390.



cording to their Quality ; an Archbishop, or Duke, a thousand Pound ; a Bishop, or Earl, a thousand Marks ; an Abbot, Prior, or Baron, five hundred Marks ; and inferior Ranks, two hundred Marks, and a Years Imprisonment. The Parliament granted the King Subsidies ; and at the rising of it, the King made *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, Duke of *Aquitain*, and had him installed by the Cap and Bonnet, and also *Edward* the eldest Son of the Duke of *York*, Earl of *Rutland*.

Several unhappy Accidents.

In the Beginning of the Spring several unhappy Accidents befel *England*. The Plague raged sorely, especially in the North, so that many thousands died of it ; and it was particularly observed, that its Effects were most malignant upon young Men, who were most easily infected with it, and rarely escaped ; there died of it, in a few Weeks Time, eleven thousand in the City of *York*. At the same Time there was a great Scarcity of Corn, so that a Bushel of Wheat was sold for thirteen Pence, which was thought a great Price in those Days. In *March* there arose such a tempestuous Wind, that it blew down many Houses, and did a great deal of other Harm in several Parts of the Kingdom.

An English Army sent against the *Saracens*, and another into *Prussia*, which had both Success.

The *Saracens* of *Barbary* being very troublesome to the *Genoese*, and by their Numbers threatening the Ruin of their Territories ; the Citizens of *Genoa* begged the Assistance of the *English* and *French* ; who thinking it the common Interest of *Christendom*, to keep those *Barbarians* out of *Europe*, therefore the King of *England*, sent an Army under the Command of *John Beaufort*, natural Son of the Duke of *Lancaster*, over to *France*, to join the Forces to be sent by the *French* King, on the same Expedition. They marched through *France* to *Genoa*, and there took Shipping, to assault the Infidels in *Africk*. The *Saracens* had planted themselves upon the Shore, to oppose their Landing, and were ready prepared to engage them at their first Entrance : But the *English* and *French* Archers soon made Room with their Arrows, for their Landing, and having slain a considerable Number of them, put the rest to Flight. Then the *English* and *French* marched directly to *Tunis*, and besieged it, and in a small Time took it, having slain the King's Brother, several great Men, and above four thousand of the *Barbarians*. The King himself, and a considerable Party fled into the Castle, and held

it

The Reign of K. RICHARD II.

311

it out for six Weeks : But in the End, being very much streightned for Provisions, he was constrained to desire Peace, and offered them a large Sum of Money to depart his Country. The *English* and *French* tho' they had been much disabled by Sickneſs in their Camp, inſiſted upon other Conditions, that they ſhould carry their Prey away with them, and have ſuch Chriſtian Priſoners, as they had taken, delivered to them ; and that the *Saracens* ſhould oblige themſelves, that from thenceforth they would ceaſe from plundering *Italy* and *France* ; which Conditions having obtained, they returned home, laden with Riches and Honour. This was the only Voyage in which the *English* and *French* were ſucceſſful in their Union ; for before they were uſed to defeat the Deſign of their Arms by their mutual Diſſentions.

The *Lithuanians* having by their Incurſions much afflicted *Pruſſia*, and reduced the Inhabitants to great Miſeries, the *Pruſſians* entreated King *Richard* to ſend them Succours ; and accordingly an Army was ſent over under the Command of *Henry* of *Lancaſter*, Earl of *Derby*, who not only drove the *Lithuanians* out of *Pruſſia*, but alſo invaded their Country, and took one of their Cities ; the Earl of *Derby* himſelf being one of the firſt who ſcaled the Walls, and erected the *English* Banner upon them, to the great Honour of himſelf, and the *English* Nation ; and having reſtored the *Pruſſians* to Peace and Safety, he returned home.

An Army ſent againſt the *Lithuanians* in *Pruſſia*, and their Succels.

While theſe Things were tranſacting abroad, all Things being quiet at home, the King diverted himſelf with Feats of Arms, as Juſts and Tournaments, at which twenty four *Engliſhmen* challenged all Comers, and were encountred by ſo many Foreigners, with much Valour and Art. Theſe Exerciſes were appointed to be performed in *Smithfield*, and to begin on the Sunday after *Michaelmaſs* Day, and were proclaimed by Heralds in all the Courts of Chriſtendom. The Earls of *St. Paul* and *Oſtronant* came over from *France* to be Spectators of this Trial of Courage and Skill, which was deſervedly admired.

The King diverts himſelf with Feats of Arms.

As to theſe Juſts and Tournaments it may be obſerved, That the Solemnity began at the Tower of *London*, with a noble Cavalcade of ſixty Ladies, richly adorned, who riding upon fine Palſryes, led every one their Knight by her Side, by a Silver Chain, garniſhed

1391.

ished with white Harts and golden Crowns, having Coursers led before by as many Esquires of Honour; and in this pompous Manner they passed through *Cheapside* to *Smithfield*. These Jufts continued for many Days, in which the King himself performed his Part. The Nights were concluded with Musick, Dancings, and softer Entertainments; and during the whole Time, the King and Queen lodged at the Bishop's Palace, near *St. Paul's*, and kept a most noble House for all Strangers and others. The King gave the Foreigners Gold Chains, as Badges of his royal Favours; and having feasted them royally at *Kensington* several Days, they departed with great Satisfaction.

Seventeenth
Parliament.

The King of
France de-
sires Peace
with Eng-
land.

About *St. Martin's Day*, a Parliament met, but gave no Taxes, nor did any Thing extraordinary.

The King of *France* considering that his continual Dissentions with *England* had brought great Detriment to his Country, about *Christmass* sent over an Embassage to *England*, to make Proposals of a perpetual Peace between the two Nations. King *Richard* having taken Advice with his Council concerning the Proposal, was much encouraged to a Compliance, and dismissed the Embassadors with Promises of a speedy Treaty about it. This coming to the Pope's Ear, he sent a Message to the King, insinuating that the Propositions of Peace made by the King of *France*, were only intended to further a Design, which he had contrived with the Antipope, to make himself Emperor, and his Brothers the Dukes of *Turin*, and *Anjou*, the one King of *Tuscany* and *Lombardy*, and the other King of *Sicily*; and that if he could lull *England* asleep, with Hopes of a Peace, till he could bring this Plot to Effect, he would then be in a Capacity to make himself Master of all; and therefore, as it much concerned *England* to prevent it, the *Nuntio* besought him to assist his Master against the *French* King, if he should invade *Italy*, as he had threatned to do.

Laws against
Papal In-
croach-
ments.

The King having put out a Proclamation pursuant to the Statute of Provisors, and having it published in *London*, commanding all beneficed Clergymen, who were *Englishmen* by Birth, and then resided in the Court of *Rome*, to return Home within a Year, under certain Penalties; the Pope was startled at this Proclamation, thinking now, that the *English* began to be in earnest, and that the Laws formerly

ly made against his Profit would lye no longer dormant, as they had for some Time done; and therefore gives his Nuntio Instructions to require of King Richard, to abolish and repeal the said Statutes and Proclamation, so far as they tended to derogate from the Church's Liberties, declaring that otherwise he thought himself oblig'd in Conscience to proceed against all such Persons, who had been instrumental in making those Laws, according to the Severity of the Canons. The King seem'd to give a favourable Ear to the Nuntio's Words, and having communicated them to his Council, ordered him to stay till the Parliament, and then he should receive a full Answer to all his Demands.

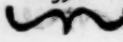
This Spring, the Duke of Gloucester went into Prussia, to the great Trouble of the People; he was always accounted the Darling of the People, but before this Voyage, it was not well known how great a Share he had in their Affections, who then discover'd them by their Heaviness at his Departure. He had a very rough and dangerous Voyage, as if Providence had been as much against it as the People; for he was in his Return by a violent Tempest driven to the Coasts of Norway and Denmark, and at last with great Difficulty arrived at Timmouth, where having tarried a short Time to refresh himself, he return'd to his Seat at Pleshey, receiving extraordinary Expressions of Joy from the People for his safe Arrival, all the Way in his Journey thither.

The Duke of Gloucester's Voyage into Prussia.

Many great Calamities afflicted England this Summer, which seem to have been presag'd by certain strange and dreary Clouds, which hid the Sun for six Weeks together, and very much obscur'd the Light of it; its Beams at first appeared red and bloody, and remain'd all the forepart of the Day upon the Face of it; but about Noon they turn'd black, and permitted little or no Light till Night.

The Nation variously afflicted.

Immediately after the disappearing of this Phœnomenon, both Pestilence and Famine afflicted the Nation; the Plague broke out in several Parts, but raged most violently in Norfolk, and about York. In York there are said to have died above ten thousand, and in Norfolk a greater Number. The Famine chiefly afflicted London, and the Countries adjoining, which were not so much afflicted with the Plague, but labour'd under a great

1392.  great Scarcity of Corn, insomuch that the Poor of the City were fed at the Charge of the City, two thousand Marks being taken out of the Orphans Stock to buy Corn; and the twenty four Aldermen were oblig'd to contribute twenty Pounds a Piece for that Purpose, that the Wants of the Poor might not create them Troubles. The Corn was sold to such as had Money, at a moderate Price, and to such as had no Money, upon Trust, to be paid the next Year; and so they not only preserv'd the Peace of the City, but gain'd a good Opinion of all Men for their Charity, and Care for the Good of the Publick. A plentiful Harvest succeeding, put an end to these Calamities; but the unwholsom Food that many had liv'd upon in the Time of Scarcity, had thrown them into Fluxes, and other Distempers, of which they died in great Multitudes. About this Time, *Henry Hotspur* Earl of *Northumberland*, and Governor of *Calais*, was called home, and made *Warden* of the Marches in *Scotland*, and the Earl of *Nottingham* made Lieutenant in his Place.

Eighteenth
Parliament
its Acts and
Taxes.

The Parliament, according to the King's Promise to the Pope's Nuncio, met immediately after the Feast of *All Souls*. And several Things were enacted for the Good of the Publick; but that which was thought of the greatest Benefit at that Time, and since hath done great Service in the Church, was the Act about *Impropriations*, concerning which it was enacted, 'That in every Licence to be made hereafter in Chancery for the Appropriation of any Church, the Bishop of the Diocese should have Power to reserve a convenient Sum of Money out of the Fruits and Profits of it, to sustain the poor Parishioners of the said Church, and to endow a perpetual Vicar, sufficiently to supply the Cure of Souls constantly.' This Act was the Original of most of our Vicaridges. The Pope's Complaint against the Statute of Provisors was prefer'd to the Parliament, and the King, and Duke of *Lancaster*, labour'd all they could to have it repeal'd; but by all their Endeavours could not obtain it, yet by much Importunity it was allow'd, that notwithstanding the Provisions of the Pope were accounted an intolerable Grievance to the Nation, yet the King by his Proclamation, should have Power to dispense with the Execution of the Statute. The Duke of *Lancaster* being design'd to go very soon to *Amiens*, to treat of a final Peace with the

The Pope's
Nuncio answered
by
Parliament.

the King
cessary
for the
the King
from the
the E
from
ted, b
unless
on ag
being
The
some o
hundre
mas, t
The K
the Du
nificen
been th
self at
The C
the Kin
from C
Treaty
but not
to end
Whi
Richar
and his
of Fru
Great v
deur of
Servant
Bread,
of his K
men in
Want
to borro
thousan
ing und
taken t
and abu
Death;
of the
should c
their un

the King of *France* in Person, and it being thought necessary he should be attended with a stately Equipage, for the Honour of the Nation; the Parliament granted the King a Tenth from the Clergy, and a Fifteenth from the Laity, to support the Charge. And because the *English* were under Apprehensions of an Invasion from *Scotland*, another Tenth and Fifteenth was granted, but upon Condition that it should not be collected, unless the *Scots* were so troublesome, that an Expedition against them were judg'd necessary. These Things being done, the Parliament were sent home.

15 Ri. II.
Taxes granted by the Parliament.

The Duke of *Lancaster*, Bishop of *Durham*, and some other Noblemen, attended with a Train of eleven hundred Horse-Men, set forwards soon after *Christmas*, towards *France*, to the Place of Treaty at *Amiens*. The King of *France* having heard a great Character of the Duke for his Wisdom and Prudence, made as magnificent Preparations for his Reception, as if he had been the greatest Emperor in the World, and met him himself at *Amiens*, attended with the chief Peers of *France*. The Charges of the *English* Ambassadors were born by the King of *France*, from the Time of their coming from *Calais*, to their Return thither again. At the Treaty divers Propositions were made on both Sides; but nothing was concluded, but that the Truce which was to end at Mid-summer, should continue a Year longer.

The Duke of Lancaster goes to *Amiens*, to make a Peace with *France*.

While this Treaty was carried on in *France*, King *Richard* kept the noblest Court of any King in *Europe*, and his Subjects by his Example abandon'd all Thoughts of Frugality, and gave themselves over to Luxury: Great was the Excess of Diet, the Pomp and Grandeur of his Court, in Apparel inimitable, in Number of Servants incredible; ten thousand Men fed daily on his Bread, and three hundred were employ'd for the Service of his Kitchen, and the Queen had three hundred Women in her Service; and by these Means he became in Want of Money, and sent to the Citizens of *London*, to borrow of them a Thousand (or as others say ten thousand) Pounds but they denied him; and having understood that an *Italian* Banker had undertaken to furnish the King with the Money, they beat and abused him so grossly, that he was in Danger of Death. The King being displeas'd at this rude Denial of the *Londoners*, advis'd with his Council how he should deal with them, and they advis'd him to chastise their uncivil Behaviour by Arms; but he wisely wav'd

The Splendor of the King's Court.

The *Londoners* refuse to lend the King Money.

his

his Resentment, till another Opportunity, which he quickly found out.

A great Council called at Stamford by the King.

Soon after the Duke of *Lancaster* was arriv'd in *England*, the King call'd a great Council, like a Parliament, at *Stamford*, to consult about the Peace to be concluded with *France*, or to resolve upon a War, as soon as the present Truce was expir'd. The King had been put upon this Determination by the Duke of *Lancaster*, because the King of *France* had engaged him to hasten the Peace, that he might restore *Leo* King of *Armenia*, and subdue the other *Barbarians*, who were troublesome to *Christendom*.

But this Council after long Debates came to no Conclusion, and the rather because at that Time, the King's Cousin the Duke of *Gelderland* came over to *England*, and promising him an Assistance of a considerable Body of Men to make War upon *France*, or the *Scots* if there were occasion, he advis'd the King to make no Agreement with the King of *France*, but upon such Conditions as were advantageous and honourable to himself, and Realm. Which Offer made the King more indifferent for the Peace, and more resolute to obtain good Conditions if it were carried on.

A great Tumult in the City, and the Bishop of Salisbury's Palace assaulted.

About this Time an unhappy Accident fell out in the City of *London*, which tho' from an inconsiderable Beginning proceeded so far, as to cause the Citizens to stand as much in Need of the King's Favour, as he lately had of their Money. The occasion was this: A Baker's Man carrying a Basket of Bread thro' *Fleetstreet*, as he pass'd by the Bishop of *Salisbury's* Palace, one of the Bishop's Servants took a Loaf of Bread out of his Basket; the Baker endeavour'd to take it from him, but was worsted by the Servant, and wounded in the Scuffle; the People gathered together to apprehend the Bishop's Servant, but his Fellow Servants got him into the Palace, and secur'd him. The People enrag'd at this Rescue, first demanded the Servant peaceably by a Constable, but he being denied, the Mob, who neither lov'd nor fear'd the Bishop altho' he was Lord Treasurer, became very outrageous, and endeavour'd to break open the Gates, and being resisted threaten'd to fire them. The Mayor, Sheriffs, and Aldermen, having Information of this Tumult, endeavour'd with all the Care and Speed they could to repress it. But the Company was grown so numer-

ous, a Force, at last quietly Wind because Wick the Fa and all represe only a Treasu the lat lending gravati of bein the Cit better the Cit gainst Defenc but th and the all the the Kin Title of Courts York. Discont Duke o Noblen their an that the was me cence, Citizens lue, fen ties of t allowing again to by a Ma ral Tim Marks Which Citizens

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

317

ous, and justly provok'd, that neither Persuasion nor Force, would for a long Time prevail with them, but at last by much Intreaty, they were appeas'd, and went quietly Home. The Bishop, who was at that Time at *Windsor* with the King, and who hated the *Londoners*, because they were commonly reputed Favourers of *Wickliff*, represented the Matter to the King with all the Favour possible, on the Side of his own Servants, and all the Aggravations on the Part of the Citizens, representing the Tumult, as a malicious Outrage, not only against the Church, but the State, he being both Treasurer and Bishop. The King who had not forgotten the late Affront offered him by the *Londoners*, in not lending him the Money he desir'd, needed no great Aggravations, to make him lay hold on this Opportunity of being reveng'd, in a furious Rage threatned to raze the City; but some of the Nobility bringing him into a better Temper, he sent for the Mayor, and Officers of the City, and objected many Crimes and Disorders against them, to which they made a modest and plain Defence, but nothing was accepted as sufficient, but the Mayor was made a Prisoner at *Windsor*, and the rest were committed to other Goals, and all the Liberties and Privileges of the City seiz'd into the King's Hand; and he put in a Governor under the Title of the *Warden of the City*, and the Terms and Courts of Judicature were remov'd to the City of *York*. The Citizens in this Condition, were in great Discontent, and made humble Suit by the Queen, the Duke of *Glocester*, the Bishop of *London*, and other Noblemen, to the King, that they might be restor'd to their antient Privileges; and at length prevail'd so far, that the King came into the City of *London*, where he was met with the most imaginable Pomp and Magnificence, and he, and the Queen, being presented by the Citizens, with each a Crown of Gold of great Value, sent for their Charter and other Grants of Liberties of their City, and caus'd them to be perus'd, and allowing some, and cancelling others, restor'd the City again to their antient State, except their Government by a Mayor, which they could not obtain, till at several Times they presented the King with two thousand Marks of Gold, and ten thousand Pound in Silver. Which severe Usage lost him the Affections of the Citizens ever after. The Bishop of *London*, who was

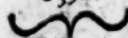
16 Ri. II.

King seizes the Liberties of the City.

The City restor'd to their antient Privileges again.

a prin-

1392.



a principal Instrument in bringing about this Reconciliation, was much honour'd by the Citizens all his Life for it; and after his Death, the Mayor, Aldermen, and many of the chief Citizens went nine Times a Year in solemn Procession to *Westminster*, where he lay buried, to pray for his Soul, and the Souls of all Christians, as a grateful Return of his Kindness to them.

The Duke of
Glocester ready to go to
Ireland is
forbidden.

About this Time, the *Irish* revolted from their Subjection, and the Duke of *Glocester* having been first made Duke of *Ireland*, was supplied with Money to raise an Army to repress them. And when he had with great Application provided an Army, and was ready to go thither with a considerable Force, his great Name had, before he came thither, subdued the Rebels; for the chief Leaders of them had determined to submit to him, as soon as he should arrive. But the Duke's Enemies, envying him the Honour, prevail'd with the King to countermand him.

Nineteenth
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

The Parliament met at *Winchester*, and among diverse Acts, for the Benefit of the Publick, that of greatest Note was the Act called the Statute of *Præmunire*, by which it was enacted, "That whereas the
" Bishop of *Rome*, under Pretence of an absolute Supremacy over the Church, took upon him to dis-
" pose by his Mandates, of most of the Bishopricks,
" Abbacies, and other Ecclesiastical Benefices,
" Worth, in *England*; and if the Bishops did upon
" legal Presentments of the Patrons of such Benefices, institute any Clerks to them, they were there-
" upon excommunicated by the Pope, to the great
" Damage, and unjust Wrong of the King's good
" Subjects: And whereas the Bishop of *Rome* took
" upon him to translate and remove the said Bishops,
" either out of the Realm, or from one See to another
" within the Realm, without Knowledge of the King,
" or Consent of the Bishops themselves: If any Per-
" sons shall purchase, or cause to be purchased, in the
" Court of *Rome*, any such Translations, Sentences
" of Excommunication, Bulls, or other Instruments,
" to the Detriment of the King, and his Realm, both
" they, and such as bring, receive, notify, or put them
" in Execution, shall be put out of the King's Pro-
" tection, and their Lands and Tenements, Goods
" and Chattels, forfeited to the King, and their Bodies
" attach'd, if they can be found, Process being made
" out

" out
" cias
Th
before
ther A
into f
of Be
bile, a
turpe
Tax o
toward
Glocest
In t
bert de
Anguil
Earl o
Uncle
Piercy
liam S
the Re
puted a
a Crow
Lord
ver Ca
In th
and Gl
to Fran
both b
Englan
ty was
they en
were la
insisted
swered,
ter, and
must no
put an
insisted,
late been
Third,
stored, a
son of
would
bates w
on both

out against them, by the Writ called *Premuniri facias*, as is ordained in other Statutes of Provifors. 16 Ri. II.

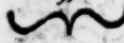
The Pope refented this Statute very highly; he was before very peevifh for the Statute of *Mortmain*, and other A&ts againft his Encroachments; but this put him into fuch a Fury, that he wrote a Letter to the Duke of *Bedford*, wherein he calls the A& *Statutum execrabile*, a curfed Statute, and the Paffing of it, *Fœdum & turpe facinus*. In this Parliament the King had no Tax of the Laity, but the Clergy gave him a Fifteenth towards the Charges of the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocefter*, in their negotiating the Peace with *France*.

In the Time of the Seffion of this Parliament, *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, died at *Louvain*, in great Anguifh of Mind and Poverty; and his Honour of Earl of *Oxford* was conferred by the King, on his Uncle, the Lord *Aubery de Vere*. The Lord *Thomas Piercy* was made Lord High Steward, the Lord *William Scroop* Vice-Chamberlain, and foon after bought the Regality of the Ifle of *Man* (for that Ifle was reputed a Kingdom, and the Lords of it crowned with a Crown of Gold) of the Earl of *Salisbury*; and the Lord *Thomas Beaumont* was made Conftable of *Dover* Caftle, and Warden of the Cinque Ports.

In the Spring of this Year the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocefter*, together with other Peers, went over to *France*, with full Commiffion to conclude a Peace both by Sea and Land, between the Kingdoms of *England*, *France*, and their Allies. The Place of Treaty was *Balingham*, where ftately Tents being fet up, they entred upon the Treaty, and feveral Propofals were laid down and argued on both Sides. The *French* infifted upon having *Calais* raz'd: But the *Englifh* answered, that they had no Power to treat of that Matter, and that, if they intended to conclude a Peace, they muft not mention it any farther. This fmart Reply put an End to that Demand. Then the *Englifh* Dukes infifted, that the Countries on that Side, which had of late been either in the Poffeffion of King *Edward* the Third, or King *Richard*, their Mafter, fhould be reftored, and the *Florens* which were left unpaid, by Reafon of the War, fhould now be paid. The *French* would by no Means yield to either, and fo the Debates were adjourned for nine Days, that the Kings on both Sides might be made acquainted with them.

But

1392.



The Duke of
Glocester ready
to go to
Ireland is
forbidden.

Nineteenth
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

a principal Instrument in bringing about this Reconciliation, was much honour'd by the Citizens all his Life for it; and after his Death, the Mayor, Aldermen, and many of the chief Citizens went nine Times a Year in solemn Procession to *Westminster*, where he lay buried, to pray for his Soul, and the Souls of all Christians, as a grateful Return of his Kindness to them.

About this Time, the *Irish* revolted from their Subjection, and the Duke of *Glocester* having been first made Duke of *Ireland*, was supplied with Money to raise an Army to repress them. And when he had with great Application provided an Army, and was ready to go thither with a considerable Force, his great Name had, before he came thither, subdued the Rebels; for the chief Leaders of them had determined to submit to him, as soon as he should arrive. But the Duke's Enemies, envying him the Honour, prevail'd with the King to countermand him.

The Parliament met at *Winchester*, and among diverse Acts, for the Benefit of the Publick, that of greatest Note was the Act called the Statute of *Praemunire*, by which it was enacted, "That whereas the Bishop of *Rome*, under Pretence of an absolute Supremacy over the Church, took upon him to dispose by his Mandates, of most of the Bishopricks, Abbacies, and other Ecclesiastical Benefices, of Worth, in *England*; and if the Bishops did upon legal Presentments of the Patrons of such Benefices, institute any Clerks to them, they were thereupon excommunicated by the Pope, to the great Damage, and unjust Wrong of the King's good Subjects: And whereas the Bishop of *Rome* took upon him to translate and remove the said Bishops, either out of the Realm, or from one See to another within the Realm, without Knowledge of the King, or Consent of the Bishops themselves: If any Persons shall purchase, or cause to be purchased, in the Court of *Rome*, any such Translations, Sentences of Excommunication, Bulls, or other Instruments, to the Detriment of the King, and his Realm, both they, and such as bring, receive, notify, or put them in Execution, shall be put out of the King's Protection, and their Lands and Tenements, Goods and Chattels, forfeited to the King, and their Bodies attach'd, if they can be found, Process being made

" out

out against them, by the Writ called *Premuniri facias*, as is ordained in other Statutes of Provisors. 16 Ri. II.

The Pope resented this Statute very highly; he was before very peevish for the Statute of *Mortmain*, and other Acts against his Encroachments; but this put him into such a Fury, that he wrote a Letter to the Duke of Bedford, wherein he calls the Act *Statutum execrabile*, a cursed Statute, and the Passing of it, *Fœdum & turpe facinus*. In this Parliament the King had no Tax of the Laity, but the Clergy gave him a Fifteenth towards the Charges of the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, in their negotiating the Peace with *France*.

In the Time of the Session of this Parliament, *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, died at *Louvain*, in great Anguish of Mind and Poverty; and his Honour of Earl of *Oxford* was conferred by the King, on his Uncle, the Lord *Aubery de Vere*. The Lord *Thomas Percy* was made Lord High Steward, the Lord *William Scroop* Vice-Chamberlain, and soon after bought the Regality of the Isle of *Man* (for that Isle was reputed a Kingdom, and the Lords of it crowned with a Crown of Gold) of the Earl of *Salisbury*; and the Lord *Thomas Beaumont* was made Constable of *Dover* Castle, and Warden of the Cinque Ports.

In the Spring of this Year the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, together with other Peers, went over to *France*, with full Commission to conclude a Peace both by Sea and Land, between the Kingdoms of *England*, *France*, and their Allies. The Place of Treaty was *Balingham*, where stately Tents being set up, they entred upon the Treaty, and several Proposals were laid down and argued on both Sides. The *French* insisted upon having *Calais* raz'd: But the *English* answered, that they had no Power to treat of that Matter, and that, if they intended to conclude a Peace, they must not mention it any farther. This smart Reply put an End to that Demand. Then the *English* Dukes insisted, that the Countries on that Side, which had of late been either in the Possession of King *Edward* the Third, or King *Richard*, their Master, should be restored, and the *Florens* which were left unpaid, by Reason of the War, should now be paid. The *French* would by no Means yield to either, and so the Debates were adjourned for nine Days, that the Kings on both Sides might be made acquainted with them.

But

1393.
A Peace for
four Years
made with
France.

Several cala-
mitous Ac-
cidents befel
the Nation.

Twentieth
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

The King
goes to Ire-
land.
Queen Anne
dies.

But the King of *France* falling into his old Disease, the Frenzy, a Peace was concluded for four Years only. However, this did not please the Duke of *Glocester*, who in his Heart was intirely for War with *France*, which having been formerly so advantageous to *England*, was most desirable to the People, whom the Duke of *Glocester* sought by all Means to please.

After the Conclusion of the Peace, the King made Sir *Thomas Piercy*, the younger, Lord Warden of *Bourdeaux* and *Aquitain*, and he was sent thither. Such violent Thundrings and Lightnings happened in many Parts, that many Houses and Stacks of Corn were beat down and burnt by them. And in other Parts, as *Suffolk* and *Norfolk*, such Abundance of Rain fell, that the Floods carried away many Houses and Bridges. The Pestilence raged in *Essex*, and swept away great Multitudes. Three *Scotch* Gentlemen challenged three *English* to fight at Justs, viz. the Earl of *Mar*, the Lord *Nottingham*, Sir *William Darrel*, the King of *Scotland*'s Banner-Bearer, Sir *Pierce Courtney* the King of *England*'s Standard-Bearer; and one *Cockburn*, Sir *Nicholas Hawkirk*. The *English* were Conquerors in this Trial of Manhood: for the Earl of *Mar*, and *Cockburn*, were unhorsed by their Opponents; and the Earl of *Mar* was so bruised and wounded by the Fall, that he died in his way home; *Darrel* ran five Courses, and was so equally matched, that neither of them were Victors.

The Parliament being met at *Westminster*, a little after the Feast of *St. Hilary*, the King desired a Tax to enable him to make an Expedition into *Ireland*, to reduce it by Force, for as it now stood it was an insupportable Burden to *England*; for whereas it formerly brought thirty thousand Pound *per Annum*, into the Treasury, it now cost *England* thirty thousand Marks yearly, to preserve the Dominion of it. The Parliament consented, and the Clergy granted him a Tenth, if he went to *Ireland*, and but half a Tenth, if he did not go thither in Person.

The Parliament being up, the King made a speedy Preparation for his Journey into *Ireland*; but when he was just ready to go, his beloved Queen *Anne* died at *Sheen*, near *Richmond* in *Surry*, which put a Stop to his Proceedings, for some Time. The King was

as pass
been
"cu
"aste
"mar
to hav
Charit
said to
Cultor
rode at
the is
dure t
she hac
position
Doctri
her Do
to Bob
formati
A fu
Arunde
her hig
the Scr
said, sh
selves,
was int
being co
in his d
Duke o
Ireland,
sand Ho
ed with
October
Irish Ra
but they
King's E
Surprise
the King
tiring in
the King
by this r
their Est
to the M
an Adv
in and f
Chief of
Vol.

as passionately grieved for her, when she died, as he had been fond of her while she lived, insomuch that he "curst the Place of her Death, and hated it so ever after, that he would never come there, but commanded the Buildings to be demolished." She is said to have been a Princess of great Worth, for Beauty, Charity, good Humour, and Piety. She is likewise said to have first taught the *English* Ladies the modest Custom of riding on Side-saddles, whereas before they rode altride like Men. In the blind Age she lived in she is said to have enjoyed Light, and could not endure the implicit Devotion of the *Romish* Church; she had the Gospels in *English*, and several good Expositions upon them. She was a Favourer of *Wickliff's* Doctrines, and had several of his Books; which after her Death, being carried by her Maids of Honour into *Bohemia*, became a Means of promoting the Reformation there.

A funeral Sermon was preached for her by *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *York*, in which he commended her highly for the great Pains she took in the Study of the Scriptures, and reading godly Books; in which he said, she was more diligent than the Prelates themselves, tho' their Office and Business required it. She was interred at *Westminster*. Her funeral Obsequies being celebrated, the King, tho' full of Grief, proceeded in his designed Expedition, and being attended by the Duke of *Glocester*, and other Noblemen, set out for *Ireland*, *September* the eighth, with an Army of four thousand Horse, and three thousand Foot. The King landed with his Army at *Waterford*, in the Beginning of *October*: He encamped very warily, expecting that the *Irish Rebels* would at first make a vigorous Assault; but they thinking themselves too weak to oppose the King's Forces in a pitch'd Battle, did nothing but by Surprise, either falling unexpectedly upon some Part of the King's Camp, or upon straggling Foragers; then retiring into their boggy Woods and Mountains, when the King's Forces advanced towards them: But altho' by this means they saved their Persons, yet they lost their Estates, by leaving them and their Towns exposed to the Mercy of the King's Army; who made so good an Advantage of it, that the *Irish* were obliged to come in and submit to the King, to save their Estates. The Chief of these were four Kings, viz. *Oneal*, the great

18. Ri. II.

Ireland subdued.

1194.

King of Meath; Brine, King of Thomond; Arthur Macmur, King of Leinster, and Conbur, King of Cheveno and Dap. These King Richard courteously entertained and kept with him, lest, if they returned to their People again, they should relapse into their former Rebellion. The King kept his Christmases at Dublin that Year, and call'd a Parliament there, summoning all his Subjects to the Parliament in Ireland; not only those who had continued loyal, but also those who had lately submitted, that by shewing them Favour impartially, he might oblige them equally to Fidelity for the future.

Strange Appearances in England.

This Year an Apparition of Fire was seen in divers Places in England, in several Forms; sometimes like a turning Wheel burning, sometimes like a Barrel with Flames of Fire flashing out at the Head, and sometimes like a long burning Lance: When it appeared to any Persons, it would go as they went, and stop when they stopped. About this Time a Head was made, while the Parliament, called *The cruel Parliament*, was sitting, which spoke of it self, and said, *The Head shall be cut off; the Head shall be lift up aloft; the Feet shall be lift up aloft above the Head.* This *Holingshead* supposes was done by Necromancy.

Twenty first Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

In February, the King's Uncle, the Duke of York, Lord Warden of England, called a Parliament by the King's Order, to furnish him with farther Supplies, to carry on his Expedition; and the Duke of Gloucester came from Ireland, to represent to them the State of the King's Affairs there. The Parliament readily granted the King a Tenth of the Clergy, and a Fifteenth of the Laity, and withal, sent a Petition to the King, that Things might be settled in Ireland, with as much Expedition as could be. While the Parliament was sitting, the Followers of *Wickliff*, then called *Lollards*, being grown very numerous among the common People, and having gotten some Friends in the Houses of Parliament, were encouraged to attempt a Reformation of the Disorders of the Churchmen, both in Doctrine and Manners; and did prefer to the Parliament several Conclusions, in Opposition to the present Tenets and Orders in the Church, and not without some Assurance of Success. They were in Number twelve, and delivered in Words to this Effect.

feet. 1. "That Pride, through the Greatness of the
 "Temporalities, daily increased in the Church, and
 "Faith, Hope, and Charity decay'd. 2. That the pre-
 "sent Priesthood was not a Priesthood of Christ's In-
 "stitution. 3. That the Celibacy of the Priests was
 "the Cause of Sodomy, Whoredom, and other foul
 "Sins. 4. That Transubstantiation engaged Christians
 "in a brutish Idolatry. 5. That Exorcisms and Con-
 "secrations were not of divine Appointment, but ma-
 "gical Incantations. 6. That it was very unseemly
 "for the Prelates to be Justices of Peace, and Cu-
 "rates Civil Officers. 7. That Prayers for the Dead
 "were a bad Motive of Alms-giving. 8. That Pilgri-
 "mages to Crucifixes, to our Lady's Image, &c.
 "were idolatrous. 9. That Auricular Confession
 "makes Priests arrogant and proud, and is an Encou-
 "ragement of Sin. 10. That Manslaughter and War
 "for temporal Gains, or Religion Sake, is unlawful.
 "11. That Womens Vows of Chastity produced much
 "Sin. 12. That a Multitude of Arts and Trades that
 "were not necessary, were a Means of begetting
 "much Pride and Vanity among Christians." These
 Positions were not only presented to the Parliament,
 but were fixed upon the Doors of St. Paul's Church;
 and met with a very favourable Reception in both
 Houses of Parliament; and had so great a Party for
 them, that the Prelates were afraid that all their gain-
 ful Doctrines and Practices would not be long tole-
 rated, if the King did but give his Consent; therefore
 in order to pre-engage the King, the Bishops bestirred
 themselves to save their tottering Church. The Arch-
 bishop of York, Bishop of London, and many of the Cler-
 gy, being, as was supposed, sent by the Archbishop of
 Canterbury, took a Voyage to Ireland, to complain to
 the King of the Insolence and Prevalence of the Here-
 ticks, and to entreat him to interpose his Power in the
 Defence of the Church; for without his Assistance, it
 was in great Danger of being ruined. The King gave
 Ear to the Importunities of the Bishops, and promised
 them his Protection; and having made what Dispatch
 he could, to settle his Affairs in Ireland, came home to
 England about Easter.

Presently after his Arrival, he began to examine into
 the Cause of the Bishops Complaints, and finding that
 some of his Officers and Servants, viz. Sir Lewis Clif-
 ford, The King's
 Actions a-
 gainst the
 Lollards,

1395. *ford*, Sir *Thomas Latimer*, Sir *Richard Story*, and Sir *John Latimer*, had been most forward to uphold and encourage them, he had them call'd before him, and made them take an Oath, that they would not thenceforward hold or maintain any such erroneous Opinions, telling them, that if they were found again so to do, they should certainly die for it. He likewise gave the Bishops a Charge to execute their Offices diligently in their Dioceses according to the Canon, to correct all Offenders, to search after and examine all *English* Books, to root out all erroneous Teachers and Doctrines with all their Endeavours, and to bring all the People into the Unity of the Catholick Faith. He likewise sent out a Commission into every County, appointing several Persons zealous for the Church to search out the *Lollards*, and their Books, and the Favourers of them, charging them to use their utmost Diligence to find them, and to commit them to the next Goal till he should give farther Orders concerning them. The Bishops having receiv'd this Encouragement, were several of them very active; and the Archbishop immediately began a Metropolitan Visitation, to make strict Search for the *Lollards* and their Books, and excommunicated all Persons who held any of the Opinions of *Wickliff*, at the Cathedral in *Lincoln* and *Leicester Abby*, and made several recant and do Penance at *Oxford*, and other Places. But the Laity and several of the Bishops did not shew as much Zeal in persecuting them, as the King had done in exciting them to it; for we do not find there were any Prosecutions of the *Lollards* by the Laity.

The Arch-
bishop visits
to suppress
the *Lollards*.

Both the
Popes con-
firm'd by
National
Councils in
France and
England.

This Spring the *French* King call'd a Council of his most able Divines at *Paris*, and requir'd their Decision of the Question, which of the Antipopes was to be acknowledged for the Head of the Church; and they after much Debate, determin'd that Pope *Clement* was lawfully chosen and ought to be accepted as Head of the Church; and confirm'd this Determination by the Seal of the University of *Paris*. The King of *France* sends a Copy of this Decision to King *Richard*, upon which he summoned a Convocation of his most able and learned Divines to meet at *Oxford*, and they after mature Deliberations, determin'd that *Urban* and his Successors were to be acknowledged for the Head of the Church, and warranted their Judgment by the Seal of the Uni-

verfit
was
much
Th
felt th
attack
wich,
Poun
being
some
were
whom
Th
the P
Prom
Clergy
out of
pay it,
Archb
trover
Securi
a bitte
Lord
was b
Westm
Treasu
The
Irelan
lay ign
be mo
and the
Gold
gers, i
himself
Affecti
bare F
the Co
shops a
few or
his Rel
because
the cor
Favour
The
summo

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

325

versity of *Oxford*. So that the Breach in the Church was made wider than it was before, and the Schism much more justifiable. 19 Ri. II.

This Summer the *Danish* Rovers did very much infect the *British* Seas, and on the Coasts of *Norfolk* they attack'd several Merchants Ships belonging to *Norwich*, whose Cargo was valued at twenty thousand Pounds, and took them. The Inhabitants of those Parts being provok'd by the Injuries receiv'd, man'd out some Ships to fight them; but after a sharp Engagement were defeated, and many of them taken Prisoners, whom they made to pay great Sums for their Ransom.

Danish Rovers pillage the Coasts.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury* purchas'd a Bull of the Pope to levy 4 *d.* per Pound, upon all the Spiritual Promotions and Benefices within his Province; tho' the Clergy were generally disgusted at it, yet they paid it out of Fear; but the Prebendaries of *Lincoln* refus'd to pay it, and appeal'd to the Pope; but the Death of the Archbishop prevented the farther Progress of the Controversie. His Death was look'd upon as no small Security to the Followers of *Wickliff*, to whom he was a bitter Enemy. The Bishop of *Salisbury*, who was Lord Treasurer, died much about the same Time, and was by the King's Order buried among the Kings at *Westminster*; and *Roger Walden* Secretary of State and Treasurer of *Calais*, was put in his Place.

The Archbishop taxes the Clergy.

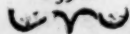
The King out of the Love he bore to the Duke of *Ireland*, had his Corps fetch'd from *Brabant*, where it lay ignobly buried; and it was brought into *England* to be more honourably interr'd. It was first embalm'd, and then being richly adorn'd with Robes, a Chain of Gold about its Neck, and rich Rings on its Fingers, it was put in a Cypress Coffin. The King himself came to view his Body, and to shew his Affection to him, touch'd him and look'd on his bare Face, and attended the Corpse accompanied with the Countess of *Oxford*, his Mother, and several Bishops and Abbots, to *Coln Priory* in *Essex*. But very few or none of the Nobility would shew any Respect to his Reliques, for the Hatred they had to him when alive, because they look'd upon him to be a great Enemy to the common Good, so long as he was in Power or Favour.

The Duke of Ireland's Body is brought into *England* and solemnly interr'd.

The Duke of *Lancaster* being arriv'd in *Aquitain*, summoned the Lords and Chief Inhabitants and declared

The Duke of Lancaster goes into *Aquitain*, to take Possession of it.

1396.



clar'd to them, that their Country was given to him and his Heirs, for an Inheritance, by the King of *England*, and desir'd their peaceable Subjection to him as their supreme Lord; but they return'd him this Answer, That their Country was inseparably united to the Crown of *England*, and therefore they would never be subject to him any otherwise than as Lieutenant of the King of *England*. So this Grant being recall'd, the Duke remain'd there governing as the King's Lieutenant only, which Station he manag'd so well, being wise, moderate, and liberal, that he gain'd the Love and willing Submission of all the People; so that lest the Grant which the King had so lately recall'd, should be obtain'd again'st his Will, he sent for him home, and so eas'd himself of that Jealousie. The Duke being return'd, staid a little while at Court, and then retir'd to his House at *Lincoln*, and married the Lady *Katherine Swinford*, who had been his Concubine in his Wife's Days, and had born him two Sons *Thomas* and *Henry*, and one Daughter, whom he named *Beaufort*. Tho' the Court Ladies much dislik'd this Match, and several of them despis'd her, yet her prudent Behaviour overcame their Passions and she became very grateful to them in a short Time.

King *Richard* desires the Lady *Isabel* the French King's Daughter to Wife.

The King's Mind inclining to a second Marriage, and desiring a firm Peace with *France*, he sends an Embassy, thither, to treat of a Marriage between himself, and the Lady *Isabel*, the Daughter of the King of *France*, who was then but eight Years of Age. This Lady had not long before been promis'd in Marriage to the Duke of *Bretagne*'s Son, but this being thought a more advantageous and honourable Match, and in all Probability, like to settle the Peace so much desired between both the Crowns, the former Contract was dissolv'd, and she was assur'd to the King of *England*.

The Pope's Letters to King *Richard* to suppress the *Lollards*, and repeal the *Premunire* Act.

Pope *Boniface IX*, who after the Decease of Pope *Urban*, had got into the Papal Chair, having receiv'd Information from several Bishops in *England*, that notwithstanding their Endeavours to suppress them, the Followers of *Wickliff* grew more numerous, and were spread almost into all Parts of the Nation, writes a very pathetic and earnest Letter to King *Richard*, to assist the Bishops in the Cause of God, as he call'd it, against the heretical Teachers of his Realm, and to take Care that the late Statutes of Provisors, call'd the *Premunire*, and *quare impedit* Acts should be abolish'd. But the King being taken up with Matters of State, es-

peciall

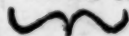
pecial
it, fo
In th
sadors
necess
which
firmly
agreed
Letter
Richar
call'd
prepar
had be
the D
Numb
The P
and A
two K
to obs
to a C
a Peac
swore
keep it
own H
and he
ken of
and the
and G
The tw
feasting
ther, d
and sta
the Ar
Nichola
thence
met at
the City
zens in
Kensing
crown
ficence
ster the
Actions
and adv
for carr
Peace.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

327

pecially about his Marriage, took little or no Notice of it, so that it did not produce the Effects desired.

20 Ri. II.



In the Beginning of the Spring, the King sent his Embassadors into *France*, to settle certain Points of Agreement, necessary for the Completion of the Marriage: One of which was, that a Truce for thirty Years, should be firmly entred into by both Nations. The Articles being agreed to on both Sides, the Lady *Isabel* was married by Letters of Proxy, to the Earl *Marshal*, in the Name of *Richard* King of *England*; and was from that Time call'd the *Queen of England*. Matters being thus prepar'd, the King went to *Calais*, to accomplish what had been agreed to on both Sides: His two Uncles, the Dukes of *Lancaster*, and *Glocester*, with a great Number of Noblemen and Gentlemen attended him. The Place of Treaty was a Town between *Guines* and *Arde*, where rich Pavilions were erected for the two Kings, who being met, and having solemnly sworn to observe the Laws of Amity at this Interview, came to a Conference about the Peace, and having agreed on a Peace for thirty Years, upon certain Conditions, they swore solemnly upon the Evangelists, to observe and keep it faithfully. Then the King of *France*, with his own Hands, deliver'd his Daughter to King *Richard*, and he receiving her, protested, he took her as the Token of a perpetual Peace between the two Nations, and then delivered her to the Dutchesse of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, who convey'd her honourably to *Calais*. The two King's staid some Days in their Pavilions, feasting each other, and having taken Leave each of other, departed home. King *Richard* return'd to *Calais*, and stay'd there a few Days, until he was married by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the Church of St. *Nicholas*, and then sail'd with his Queen to *Dover*, and from thence proceeded on his Journey to *London*. They were met at *Black-beath*, by the Mayor, and Aldermen of the City, in their Robes, and a great Number of Citizens in rich embroider'd Liveries, and conducted to *Kensington*. On the 6th of *January*, the Queen was crown'd at *Westminster*, with all the State and Magnificence that could be devis'd. But the Duke of *Glocester* shew'd much Discontent, both in his Words and Actions, as well at the King's Marriage, as the Peace, and advis'd the *Londoners*, not to pay the Tax granted for carrying on a War with *France*, because there was Peace. The Citizens would have follow'd his Advice

King *Richard's* Marriage, and the Peace between *England* and *France* settled.

1396.

Twenty second Parliament, its Acts, and Taxes.

King Richard oppresses his Subjects by Loans.

Brest restored to the Duke of Bretagne, for which the Duke of Gloucester reproach'd the King.

had not the Duke of *Lancaster* assur'd them, that the Peace was settled at a great Expence; but the King was very much displeas'd at the Duke of *Glocester*, for his Management in that Affair.

Soon after *Christmas*, the Parliament met at *Westminster*, and made many Laws for the common Good; one of which enacted, That no Persons, Lords, or Commons, except the King's Officers in doing their Duty, should ride armed. In this Parliament, the Duke of *Lancaster* obtain'd a private Act, to legitimate the Children he had begotten on the Lady *Katharine Swinford*, before his Marriage with her; and his eldest Son by her *Thomas Beaufort*, was made Earl of *Somerset*. The Parliament gave the King a Tenth, and so was dissolv'd.

All Things seem'd now to be in a peaceable and quiet Condition in *England*, and there being Rumours spread abroad, that King *Richard*, either was now, or else very shortly to be chosen Emperor, he thereupon began to take greater State upon him, and a more sumptuous Way of Living, than ever before: To maintain which, he fleec'd his Subjects, and borrow'd large Sums of Money; so that there was scarce any Man of Quality, Prelate, or Commoner in the Kingdom, but were oblig'd to lend him Money; which procur'd him the ill Will of the trading Part of the Nation. And he resolving to remove out of the Way, all such as had, or might oppose him, and thinking his Uncle the Duke of *Glocester* was the Chief of them, design'd to begin with him, and ruin him first, not by Law, but by secret Contrivances, and accordingly laid hold of the following Opportunity.

A little after the Dissolution of the Parliament, the Duke of *Bretagne* sent over a Sum of Money, for the Payment of which he had engag'd the Haven of *Brest*, and deliver'd it up to him, to discharge that Debt, and recover the Town to himself again: The King receiv'd the Money, and resign'd it up to him. The Duke of *Glocester*, knowing the Haven to be a Place of great Importance to *England*, was highly displeas'd at this Point of Justice, unusual among Princes; and being one Day at Court, where he saw many of the Soldiers who were lately come from *Brest*, being out of Employment, crowding about the Hall, told the King, That those poor Men had been ill paid, and now hav-

ing

ing no Employment, knew not how to live.' The King replied, That it was not his Fault, he would take Care they should be paid. The Duke answered, "That it had been better they had continued where they were; he should first have taken a Town by his own Valour and Conduct, before he resigned what his Ancestors had left to him." The King immediately changing his Countenance, said, *What is it you say, Uncle?* The Duke then repeated the same Words again: Whereupon the King in a great Passion replied, "Think you that I am a Fool, or a Merchant, to sell my Land? No, by St. John Baptist, no: But our Cousin, the Duke of *Bretagne*, having paid the Sums, for which the Town and Haven of *Brest* were engaged to me, Reason and good Conscience required, that I should restore it." The King hated the Duke ever after, for the Brand of Cowardice he had put upon him.

Immediately after this *Guido* Earl of *St. Pauls* was sent by *Charles*, King of *France*, to visit and complement the King and Queen; who arriving at Court before the King's Passion was thoroughly cooled, and being admitted into great Familiarity with the King, he being one Day discoursing with the Earl, complained to him of the factious and mutinous Behaviour of his Uncle, the Duke of *Glocester*, towards him, viz. That he openly disliked his Marriage, and used his utmost Endeavours to break the Peace, so happily concluded between *England* and *France*, by stirring up a Rebellion among his Subjects. Upon hearing the King's Complaint, the Earl made this Reply, "That he had no Way to secure himself, and the Peace of his Kingdom, but by taking away his Life; for when a Subject is grown so great and popular, it is impossible for a King to be safe, so long as he is alive." The King easily assented to his Counsel; and that he might not want Pleas to justify what he had in a Manner determined to put in Execution, he from that Time observed very narrowly, every Word and Action of the Duke, interpreting every Thing in the worst Sense, as Desire of Revenge or Jealousy had suggested; and thought him so diseased a Member, as could not be cured without cutting off. He complained very grievously of him to the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *York*, his Brothers, and others of the Nobility: But as he found the Generality

Earl of *St. Paul* comes into *England*, and advised the King against the Duke of *Glocester*.

1397.

nerality of the Nobility had a good Opinion of the Duke, so also his Brothers told him, "That tho' their Brother *Glocester* was somewhat rash in his Words, yet they knew him to be of truly loyal Principles, really studious of his Majesty's and the Realm's Happiness; and that he would not do any Thing prejudicial to either." These Words seem'd somewhat to abate the King's Resentment: But soon after the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Huntington* informed the King, that the Duke of *Glocester* was much discontented, that his own Counsels were not followed, and had uttered many seditious Speeches, as that the King was misled by the evil Counsellors he daily had about him; That he was not fit to govern, and therefore ought to be removed from his Throne; That he would undertake a Reformation of Things, and to that End had conspired with the Earls of *Arundel*, *Warwick* and *Darby*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Abbot of *St. Albans*, and Prior of *Westminster*, (the two last of which had encouraged him in the Attempt, by pretending, that it had been revealed to them in a Vision, that King *Richard* should destroy the Kingdom by his Misgovernment) to take him and his whole Council, and punish them according to their Demerits. The King's Anger was so sharpened against the Duke of *Glocester*, by these Accusations, that he enter'd immediately into a Consultation with the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Huntington*, and others, to apprehend the Duke and his Confederates suddenly, and put them to Death, which was effected in the following Manner. The Duke of *Glocester* was at his House in *Pleshey* in *Essex*, suspecting nothing of what was resolved against him. The King himself, with the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Huntington*, having laid an Ambush of armed Men in *Epping-Forest*, went early in the Morning, with a small Retinue, to the Duke of *Glocester* at his House, and finding him in Bed, caused him to get up, and pretending, they wanted his Assistance in some eminent Business of State, they took him along with them to *London*. The Duke went away presently with the King, taking only five or six Attendants with him. When they came to the Place where the Ambush was laid, the King clapping Spurs to his Horse, rode away; and the Earl Marshal arrested him, and the Soldiers seizing him, carried him blindfold to a Barge, and having put him on Ship-board, they carried him

The Duke
of *Glocester*
apprehended
and murdered.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

331

to *Calais*. He being either too popular, or too innocent to be brought to a publick Trial in *England*, was there, after a formal or pretended Trial before Judge *Rikell*, an *Irishman*, condemned, who sent Word to King *Richard*, that the Duke, upon his Examination, confessed all that was alledged against him; upon which he was ordered to be executed. But *Thomas Mowbrey*, Earl Marshal, to whom the Execution was committed, is said to have been so unwilling to put him to Death, altho' he was the Person who arrested him, that he would not do it, till the King threatned him with Death, if he did not execute his Orders. Whereupon, as tho' he was ashamed to be seen an Instrument of such a base Act, he caused him to be smothered by Pillows, or Feather Beds, privately.

24 Ri. II.

The Seizure of the Duke of *Glocester* was managed so secretly, that there was no Noise of it; and the King carried it with so even a Countenance to the Earls of *Warwick* and *Arundel*, that he invited them to Dinner with him: But while they were in their Mirth, he caused them to be arrested, and committed them close Prisoners to the Tower. At the same Time the Lord *Cobham* and Sir *John Cheyney* were apprehended and sent Prisoners to the Isle of *Wight*. The People being much amazed at these Proceedings, a Proclamation was put out to assure the People, that they were seized for new Crimes, which should be proved against them at the sitting of the next Parliament. In the Interval, between the seizing of the Lords, and the meeting of the Parliament, the King and his Friends were busily employed in laying a sure Train for their Ruin; and all Endeavours were used to procure such a Parliament, as would be ready to concur with the King's Designs. And certain of the Nobility, whom the King could best confide in, were employed to impeach them of High-Treason, viz. the Earl of *Rutland*, the Earl of *Nottingham*, Earl of *Kent*, Earl Marshal, Earl of *Huntington*, Earl of *Somerfet*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Lords *Spenser* and *Scroop*, Vice-Chamberlain, whose Greatness and Honour was thought sufficient alone almost to justify a false Accusation. Things being thus prepared, lest the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *York*, or the Friends of the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, should attempt their Rescue, the King provided a strong Guard of *Cheshire* Men, and four thousand Archers, besides the Forces

The Earls of *Warwick* and *Arundel* imprisoned in the Tower.

he

1397.

The twenty
third Parlia-
ment, its
Acts and
Taxes.

he had commanded the Lords of his Party, to bring with them, to attend and guard the Parliament; and at the same Time to be an Awe upon any Members, that should be refractory.

The Parliament met at *Westminster*, about the Middle of *September*; the Duke of *Lancaster* being doubtful of his own Safety, brought with him a strong Body of Men to defend himself; but the King sending some of the Nobility to give him Assurance, that there was no ill intended against him; and that nothing should be done against the Lords, but with his Advice and Concurrence, he was prevailed upon to dismiss his Forces. But the Lords of the King's Party, especially those who were to manage the Impeachment, brought great Troops of armed Attendants, which they quartered in the Towns about *London*, all the Session. The Session was opened by *Edward Stafford*, Bishop of *Exeter*, who was then Lord Chancellor, who in a grave Speech delivered, "That the King was of absolute and uncontrollable Authority, inferior to none but God; That all Persons, that shall dare to lessen or limit his Power, upon any Pretence whatever, are worthy of Death, as wicked Traitors." This Speech within the House being seconded with the Guards without, was accounted a plain Indication, that not Law, but arbitrary Power, was to order Matters that Sessions. In the Lower House Sir *John Busby* was chosen Speaker of the House of Commons; and he, and other Members, who were in the King's Interest, had a strong Party, so that they could carry all Things as they pleased; and accordingly a Vote passed presently, "That any one that should be convicted of opposing the King's Power and Regality, should suffer as a Traitor." Having laid these Foundations of Action, the King by his Attorney preferred his Complaint of Rebellion and Treason against *Thomas Duke of Gloucester*, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and several others. Sir *John Busby* having aggravated the Crimes and Ingratitude of the said Peers, first required, That since the King's former Grace and Favour had wrought so little upon them, their Pardon might be revoked; which being done, as he required, he demanded Judgment upon them for their late Crimes, and particularly for Treason, in compelling the King to grant them a Commission to govern

govern
curing
The A
King co
appeared
manded
he did f
Archbish
to chuse
not law
upon w
ed the H
several
High-St
and Tre
der to t
like a gr
was con
Examina
Traitors
"Comm
"For u
"liamer
"under
"For tr
"James
"witho
"traite
"arm'd
"wick,
"hung do
"sation b
"answered
"that he
"Deed;
"the af
"with th
"wick,
"the Kin
"and his
"make g
"if it we
"dicat
But as his
if treason

21 Ri. II.

govern the Realm; and upon the Archbishop for procuring those Commissions, and granting their Pardons. The Archbishop stood up to make his Defence, but the King commanded him Silence till the next Day; he appeared again the Day following, but the King commanded him, by the Bishop of *Carlisle*, to go Home; he did so, and came no more to the House. After the Archbishop was gone, the King commanded the Bishops to chuse for themselves a Procurator, because it was not lawful for them to be present in Cases of Blood; upon which they chose Sir *Thomas Piercy*, and departed the House. Then the King granted a Commission to several Peers, of which the Duke of *Lancaster* was High-Steward, to examine and try them for all Crimes and Treasons laid against them. The King had, in Order to their Trial, a little before prepar'd a Building like a great Hall. When the Day of their Arraignment was come, and the Earls were brought forth to their Examination, the Appellant Lords accused them as Traitors; "1. For forcing the King to grant them a Commission for the Government of the Realm. 2. For usurping the Regal Authority in holding a Parliament in Prejudice of the King's Royal Dignity, under Pretence of that traiterous Commission. 3. For traiterously murdering Sir *Simon Burley* and Sir *James Barnisb*, two of the King's Liege Subjects, without the King's Consent. And 4. For raising a traiterous Insurrection at *Haringey Park*, and entering arm'd with the Duke of *Glocester* and Earl of *Warwick*, into the King's Presence;" and then severally flung down their Gloves, offering to justify their Accusation by Fight. *Richard Fitz-Allen* Earl of *Arundel* answered first, and boldly denied the Charge, saying, "that he was not a Traitor in Thought, Word or Deed; and that what he acted, either by Virtue of the aforesaid Commission, or while he was in Arms with the Duke of *Glocester*, and the Earl of *Warwick*, was not done with any ill Intention against the King's Person, but for the Good of the King and his Realm, which he did not doubt but he could make good against any or all the Appellants by Fight, if it would please the King to permit him so to vindicate his Innocency against their false Accusation." But as his firmest Plea, he added, that those very Acts, if treasonable, were pardoned to him by the King's Grace,

Earl of *Arundel* tried and condemned.

1357. Grace, and that not only more publickly with the Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Warwick, but he had a special and particular Pardon for himself. The Duke of Lancaster and Sir John Busby replied to this, "That both those Pardons were revoked by the King, his Lords and his faithful People assembled in Parliament, and therefore could not avail him in this Case. The Earl replied, "that the Revocation of his Pardon was not done by the People; for they lamented him; but by him and his Company, who love no faithful Dealings." Then the Duke of Lancaster asked him if he had any Thing farther to alledge for himself? But he said, "the King's Pardon was freely granted him, and the Benefit of it, he hop'd, would not be denied him, for he insisted upon it." But that being overruled, they proceeded to give Sentence upon him in this Form, *I John, Steward of England, judge thee Richard, to be a Traitor; and I condemn thee to be drawn, hang'd, beheaded and quartered; and thy Land entail'd and not entail'd, from thee and from thine Heirs of thy Body descending, to be confiscated* This Sentence, according to Custom, was releas'd in respect to his Blood; but he was beheaded on *Tower-Hill* the same Afternoon. He behav'd himself with much Courage and Calmness in his Sufferings. As he was carried to Execution, he gave all the Money he had to the Poor, that he might have their Prayers. Several Noblemen attended him to his Execution, and among the rest, three that were nearly related to him, the Earl of Nottingham, who had married his Daughter, the Earl of Kent his Sister's Son, and the Earl of Huntington; he could not forbear taking Notice of the Forwardness of these Men, and therefore told them, "It had been more decent for them to have been absent; but since they pleas'd themselves in his Misfortunes, he could foretel them, that their Miseries in a short Time would be as remarkable as his then were." When he had said this, he turned to the Executioner, and felt the Sword, bidding him do his Office as carefully and speedily as he could, and kneeling down, his Head was severed from his Body at one Blow. His Body was interred in the *Austin-Fryars Church in Broadstreet, London*. His Death was much lamented by the Common People, with whom he was in great Esteem for Valour, and his Love of the common Good. Divers Reports went about

Beheaded on
Tower-hill.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

335

about, that Miracles were done by his Reliques, and ^{21 Ri. II.} that his Head was miraculously cemented to his Body; which, together with the good Opinion People had of him, caus'd him to be honour'd as a Martyr. *Walsingham* affirms, that the King was often haunted with an Apparition or Imagination of his Ghost; for he no sooner clos'd his Eyes to Sleep, but he fancied *Arundel* stood by him. His Lands, which were confiscate to the King, were annexed to the Earldom of *Chester*, which was thereupon advanced to a Dutchy.

Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of *Warwick*, was next brought to his Trial, and accused of the same Articles of Treason. To which he answer'd, "He never knew it was Treason to ride so arm'd as he confess'd he had done in *Haringey Park*; but since the Judges had declar'd it to be so, he beg'd the King's Pardon, and besought the Nobles to intercede for him to his Majesty. The King ask'd him, "whether he acknowledged himself guilty of the Treason charg'd on him? The Earl answer'd, "that he could not deny it, and wish'd he had never seen the Duke of *Glocester*, and Earl of *Arundel*, by whom he was led into it." Then the King having confer'd a little while, with the Duke of *Lancaster*, and receiv'd the Request of several Peers to save his Life, told the Earl, "that the ingenuous Confession of his Fault had more pleas'd him, than all the Profit of their Lands could, and therefore he would pardon his Life." But his Estate was seiz'd upon for the King's Use, and the Earl was banish'd into the Isle of *Man*, where he and his Lady are said to have liv'd in great Poverty in their old Age; for tho' there was an Allowance ordered of four thousand Marks *per Annum*, for their Maintenance out of the Estate, yet it was so badly paid, they were put to great Streights. The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who had been summoned to answer to the said Treasons, but was excus'd by the King, and pardon'd, together with the Archbishop of *York*, Bishop of *Winchester*, and some others, was at the earnest Importunity of some in the House of Commons, banish'd, and his Temporalities seiz'd into the King's Hands. The Lord *Cobham* and Sir *John Cheney* were indicted and condemn'd for the same Treasons, but by the Intercession of some of the Noblemen they had their Lives given them, but were condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment.

While

1897.

The Duke
of Gloucester,
tho' dead
condemned.

Several Acts
of Parli-
ament.

Twenty
fourth Par-
liament.

While the Trials of these Peers were carrying on in England, a Certificate was sent over from the Earl of Nottingham from Calais, where he was Governor, and Judge Rikel read a Confession of several Treasons, which he said were owned and acknowledged by the Duke of Gloucester under his own Hand. The Appellants, upon this petitioned, that the same Sentence should be pronounc'd against him, tho' dead, which had pass'd upon the Earl of Arundel, which was done accordingly; but his Body was allow'd to be delivered to his Friends, who procur'd it to be conveyed to Plesby in Essex, and inter'd it honourably in the Tomb in the Church, which he had caus'd to be erected in his Life-time.

The Parliament sat after the Trials of the Peers, till near Christmas, and among other Acts, they enacted, That all Benefices or Gifts, granted, or alienated by those that were already condemn'd, or should be hereafter condemned by this Parliament, granted since the tenth Year of this King, should be revoked and made void. That all such, as give either Counsel, or Aid, or Favour, to the Children of such as were, or should hereafter be condemn'd in this Parliament, should be punish'd as Traitors. That all the Lords spiritual and temporal should swear, inviolably to observe whatsoever in this Parliament was enacted, and that the Censures of the Church should be pronounced by the Prelates, against all those who should oppose or violate the same.

In the Time of this Session, the King ordered, that the Arms of King Edward the Confessor should be added to his own, and bare them together, *parte per pale*. And having a Mind to see the Forces of the City of London, in a Body, caused them to muster before him on Black-beath. And then he prorogued the Parliament till after Christmas, which was appointed to meet at Shrewsbury.

The King having remov'd his Enemies, either by Death, or Banishment, kept a magnificent Christmas at Litchfield, and went thence to Shrewsbury, to meet the Parliament at the Time appointed. As soon as he arriv'd there, he entertain'd all his Nobility and Commons, at a sumptuous Feast, at which he created five Dukes, four Earls, a Dutcheß, and a Marquess, viz. Henry Earl of Darby, Duke of Hereford, the Earl of Rutland, Duke of Albermarl, the Earl of Kent, Duke of

of Sur
the Ear
Somer
of Glo
William
Earl of
greate
Earl of
firmly
made t
upon hi
As th
and en
contrib
For the
the Kin
reform
be repea
no such
and that
tenc'd b
their In
not exac
That it
ever, Fi
King. Se
ride arm
Realm.
him; an
vict'd o
should be
of their
an Actio
tain'd of
Houses,
certain P
of Lanc
eter, the
berland,
John Bu
empower
determine
last Sessio
they conc
pleas'd.
VOL. I

of Surrey, the Earl of *Huntington*, Duke of *Exeter*,^{21 Ri. II.} the Earl of *Nottingham*, Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earl of *Somerset*, Marquiss of *Dorset*, the Lord *Spencer*, Earl of *Glocester*, the Lord *Nevil*, Earl of *Westmorland*, *William Scroop*, Earl of *Wiltshire*, and *Thomas Piercy*, Earl of *Worcester*. Among whom he dispos'd of the greatest Part of the Estates of the Duke of *Glocester*, Earl of *Arundel*, and *Warwick*, to oblige them more firmly to be his Friends. At the same Time also, he made the Earldom of *Chester* a Principality, and took upon himself the Name and Title of Prince of *Chester*.

As the King sought all Means to strengthen himself, and enlarge his Power; so he had a Parliament, that contributed what they could to promote his Designs: For they enacted; That the Commissions granted by the King to several Noblemen, to inquire into, and reform Abuses, in the tenth Year of his Reign, should be repealed, as extorted from him by Threats, and that no such Commission should be granted for the future; and that the Heirs of such Persons, as had been sentenc'd by the said Commission, should be restor'd to their Inheritances, Lands and Possessions, but should not exact the Revenues of the Possessors from that Time. That it should be high Treason for any Person whatsoever, *First*, to compass, or imagine the Death of the King. *Secondly*, To contrive his Deposition. *Thirdly*, To ride armed, or make War against the King in this Realm. Or *Fourthly*, To disclaim the Homage due to him; and that the Heirs of all Persons, who were convicted of any of the said four Articles of Treason, should be for ever depriv'd of the Lands and Possessions of their Ancestors, and should not be allow'd to have an Action of Claim for them. The King also obtain'd of this Parliament, that the whole Power of both Houses, should for a Time, be put into the Hands of certain Persons, nominated by himself, viz. the Dukes of *Lancaster*, of *York*, of *Aumerle*, of *Surrey*, of *Exeter*, the Marquess of *Dorset*, the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Salisbury*, *March*, *Glocester* and *Wiltshire*; Sir *John Busby*, and some others. These Persons, were empowered by Virtue of the said Grant, to hear, and determine all Matters and Petitions not ended in the last Session of Parliament; and by Virtue of this Grant, they concluded and determin'd in a Manner what they pleas'd. The Parliament granted the King a Tenth,

Several Acts
of Parlia-
ment.

1398. and a half of the Clergy, and a Fifteenth and a half of the Laity, besides some Duties on Wool, &c. and then broke up. The King after this, granted a general Pardon to all Persons, but fifty, not named, which was done to keep the Nobility in Awe, the King being at Liberty to except, by that Means, whom he pleas'd.

Discontents
about the
last Parli-
ment.

The King having by these Methods establish'd his Power, and set himself beyond all Opposition and Contradiction, thought himself sufficiently secure, and in a Manner, an absolute Prince, which is what he had a long Time a strong Inclination to be. But this produc'd many Discontents among the common People, and the whole Fabrick proving weak, was soon follow'd with a total Ruin. Altho' the Parliament was dissolv'd, yet there was great Murmuring about many Things that attended it, and were done by it. As *First*, 'That it was a Parliament not freely chosen, but pack'd by the King's Interest, and consisted of Men impos'd on the Shires and Towns, by the King's Authority. *Secondly*, That it was wholly managed by Court Favourites, and had bent all its Endeavours to destroy the Liberties and Privileges of the People. *Thirdly*, That tho' the Duke of Gloucester was so illegally murdered, they were so far from punishing the wicked Actors, that they approv'd their Deeds. *Fourthly*, That the Lords, who had deserv'd well of the Nation, and were pardon'd all irregular Actions, were made guilty by an unprecedented Power of revoking their Pardons. *Fifthly*, That by disannulling the Grants of the condemned Persons, made so many Years before, they had deprived many honest and good Men, both menial Servants of the said Lords, and others, of their lawful Inheritances and Estates. *Sixthly*, That they had not only laid heavy Taxes on the Nation themselves, but had exalted the King's Authority to such a Pitch, and allow'd him such a Power of Acting, that he need not observe any Laws but his Will.' These Matters concurring with other Causes of Complaint, partly grounded on the Grants of Parliament it self, his imposing the Oaths so severely on all Persons, to observe inviolably the Ordinances of it, and *Bussy's*, *Baggot's*, and *Green's* farming the Taxes, who exacted them with the utmost Rigour and Severity; and partly on the King's

own

own M
pences
vours
and pr
Perfon
tue; th
away u
That s
and ot
him, o
Things
from th
on the
pened f
The
ride tog
a friend
The D
the Pec
ver'd hi
ling him
'sters,
'that t
'Coun
'Nobl
'due, f
'Cond
'the pu
'of No
'easie
'of it, t
'prever
'follow
'bore
'that he
'piness
of Norf
Duke o
sent it
ungratef
a very
Words
his own
his Maj
rag'd at

own Management; as, that he was lavish in his Expences, lewd in his Manners, and partial in his Favours: That he discountenanc'd his antient Nobility, and prefer'd such to the nearest Attendance about his Person, who were neither eminent for Birth nor Virtue; that the Revenues of the Crown were squandered away upon them, and thereby the Nation impoverished: That such of the Clergy were preferred to Bishopricks, and other Dignities in the Church, as either join'd with him, or favour'd him in his lewd Courses: By these Things, the Affections of the People were so alienated from the King, that they were ready for a Revolt, upon the least Temptation; of which an Occasion happened soon after, as followeth.

The Dukes of *Hereford* and *Norfolk* happening to ride together, between *London* and *Branford*, fell into a friendly Discourse, concerning the Affairs of State. The Duke of *Hereford*, having observed how much the People's Affections declin'd toward the King, deliver'd his Thoughts freely to the Duke of *Norfolk*, telling him, 'That the present Management, and Ministers, were very distasteful to the Nation in general; that the King was made odious by his mean and bad Counsellors, who not only rais'd the Envy of the Nobles, by enjoying the Favours which were their due, but gain'd him the Hatred of the People by their Conduct, which manifestly tended to their own, not the publick Interest; and therefore he advis'd the Duke of *Norfolk*, who was a Privy Counsellor, and had an easie Access to the King's Ear, to advertise the King of it, that he might by a prudent Alteration of Things, prevent the ill Consequences which would certainly follow; adding, that it was not out of any ill Will he bore to the King, or an Hamour of finding Fault, that he said this, but out of a pure Desire of the Happiness of the King, and his Government.' The Duke of *Norfolk* seem'd to assent to the Truth of what the Duke of *Hereford* had said, and promised him to represent it candidly to the King: But being sensible how ungrateful such a Message would be to the King, gave a very invidious Relation of the Duke of *Hereford*'s Words to him, adding such aggravating Expressions of his own, as made them seem like a Calumny, both of his Majesty and Government. The King being entrag'd at the Duke of *Hereford*, sends for him to appear before

The Conference between the Dukes of *Hereford* and *Norfolk*.

The Duke of *Norfolk* accuses the Duke of *Hereford*.

1398.

before the Council, to answer the Accusation. The Duke did appear, and having heard what the Duke of *Norfolk* had said of him, thank'd the King for his Favour, in giving him Liberty to answer for himself, and then confess'd ingenuously what he had said to the Duke of *Norfolk*, and with what Intention; but accused him of misrepresenting and perverting his Words, which he offer'd to justify against the Duke of *Norfolk* by Combat, if the King would please to permit him. The Duke of *Norfolk* not being willing to suffer the Disgrace of recanting, or refusing to defend what he had said; stiffly avouch'd the Truth of his Relation, and throwing down his Glove, accepted the Challenge. The King was unwilling to grant them the Combat, and endeavour'd to pacify them, but not prevailing with them, he swore by St. *John Baptist*, that he would never more concern himself to make them Friends, and granted them a Combat to be fought at *Coventry*, the 17th of *September* following, and accordingly order'd a Stage to be erected for that Purpose; but having been inform'd how dissatisfied the People were, that so valiant and heroick a Nobleman, as the Duke of *Hereford* was, and capable of being so serviceable to the Nation, should be suffer'd to justify his Innocence by the Hazard of a Combat, he permitted them to meet at the Time appointed, and bid Defiance each to other; but before they engag'd, put an End to the Quarrel by banishing the Duke of *Norfolk* for his Life, as having by his false Information, sowed Discord between the King and his Peers; and the Duke of *Hereford* for ten Years, as not altogether guiltless of the Calumny. The Duke of *Hereford*, when he took his Leave of the King, had four Years of his Banishment releas'd, and went into *France* for the other six Years, where he was very honourably receiv'd by King *Charles* the VI. The Duke of *Norfolk* went into *Germany*, and from thence to *Venice*, where he died through Trouble and Melancholy.

Both the
Dukes ban-
ished.

King fined
seventeen
Counties.

The Duke of *Hereford* being gone, who was the only surviving Person of the popular Lords, who was likely to head a Faction against the Court, the King, and his Ministers, were encourag'd to proceed more arbitrarily, than they dar'd to attempt before. For the Duke had not left *England* long, before the King impos'd a great Fine upon all the chief Inhabitants of

seven-

seven
ing b
them
terwa
his F
ters,
Sums
some
and s
swear
Parlia
offenc
they re
to opp
fition
more
Archb
interce
give th
had sq
est C
had do
Easter
On
between
became
the fan
withou
were a
in Stat
Candle
fourth
in St.
Altar.
all his
Henry I
ment at
to take
the Cou
Duke o
Letters
any Lar
which r
pite of
sonable

seventeen of the Eastern Counties of *England*; and having by his Agents, persuaded them to acknowledge themselves Rebels, upon Assurances of Pardon he afterwards compell'd them to secure their Pardon, and his Favour for the future, by subscribing blank Charters, by which they oblig'd themselves to pay him such Sums of Money, as he should please to require; as some a thousand Pounds, others a thousand Marks, and such large Sums; and oblig'd them also to swear inviolably to maintain the Statutes of the last Parliament. The Citizens of *London* were very much offended at this Oath, and these Charters, and therefore they required their Sheriffs, who were ordered to levy them, to oppose the Imposition. This their refractory Opposition so angered the King, that he threaten'd them with more than usual Severity. But *Roger Walden*, the new Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Bishop of *London* interceeding for them to the King, he promis'd to forgive them; but was not as good as his Word, till he had squeez'd great Sums of Money out of all the richest Citizens, by his blank Bonds, and Charters, as he had done from the Clergy and Gentry of the seventeen Eastern Counties.

And extorts great Sums, from "the Londoners."

On *New-years-day*, the River near *Bedford*, that runs between *Swelstone* and *Harewood*, divided it self, and became dry, for almost three Miles; and much about the same Time the Bay Trees dried up and withered, without any unusual or extraordinary Cold, which were afterwards thought to portend the great Changes in State, which happened the Year ensuing. About *Candlemas*, died *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, fourth Son of *Edward III.* and was honourably interr'd in *St. Paul's Church*, on the North-side of the high Altar. By his Death the Dukedom of *Lancaster*, with all his other Honours descended to his eldest Son, *Henry Duke of Hereford*, who was then in his Banishment at the Court of *France*; and he not being present to take Possession of his Inheritance, it became a Prey to the Court *Harpies*. For tho' the King had granted to the Duke of *Hereford*, when he left *England*, a Power by his Letters Patents, to sue out by his Attorney a *Livery* to any Lands or Possessions, holden of the King *in capite*, which might befall him in his Absence, and also a Respite of his Homage till he should return, for a reasonable Fine: Yet contrary to all Faith and Justice,

Several Accidents.

1399.
The King's
Injustice to
the Duke
of Hereford
after his Fa-
ther's Death.

Several of
the Nobility
being dis-
gusted, re-
tire from
Court.

The Earl of
Arundel's
Son escapes
out of his
Confinement.

The Bishop
of Chalcedon
comes into
England.

The Irish re-
volt, and the
King goes
over in Per-
son against
them.

the King revok'd his Grant, and seiz'd upon the Duke of *Lancaster's* whole Estate, for the Time of his Son's Banishment, which by the Advice of his Favourites he made perpetual. This unkingly and arbitrary proceeding brought an Odium upon the King, not only among the Commons, but the Nobility themselves, who began to be in Doubt of their own Security, under so easie a King, and such covetous Counsellors. The Duke of *York*, the only Uncle of the King, that was then surviving, tho' he did not seem much concern'd at the Murther of his Brother the Duke of *Glocester*, was so much disgusted at their Proceedings, that he, and his Son, the Duke of *Aumerle*, retir'd from Court, to his Country-house at *Langley*, and other Noblemen finding the King look cold upon them, retired from Court. The Duke of *Hereford*, found more Favour and Preferment in *France*, than the Severity he suffered by the Loss of his Inheritance in *England*; for being reputed one of the richest, as well as bravest Princes in the World for Valour, he was courted to marry the Daughter of the Duke of *Berry*, the Uncle of the King of *France*. But as soon as King *Richard* had Notice of this Design, he dispatch'd over the Duke of *Salisbury*, immediately to prevent it, insinuating that it would be a great Dishonour to a Lady of the Royal Blood of *France*, to be married to an *English* Rebel, and notorious Traitor, and so hindred the Match.

About the Time of the Duke of *Lancaster's* Death, the Earl of *Arundel's* eldest Son, who had been kept a close Prisoner, ever since the Death of his Father, in the House of the Earl of *Exeter*, got over to his Uncle the late Archbishop *Arundel* at *Cullen*. The Bishop of *Chalcedon* came out of *Greece* into *England*, with apostolical Letters from the Pope, exhorting all well disposed Persons to assist the Emperor of *Constantinople*, with a liberal Contribution of Money, to enable him to defend *Christendom* against the Inroads of the *Tartars*, and to encourage them so to do, he promis'd them a plenary Pardon of their Sins: But this Affair met with no Success, being impeded by the Revolt of the *Irish*. For *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March* and *Ulster*, (who had been lately declar'd Heir Apparent to the Crown, and made Lieutenant of *Ireland*) being besieged at *Kenlis* by a strong Body of the wild *Irish*, was slain in a Sally against them, and the *English*

Town

Town
of *Ob*
and *B*
of this
Coun
aband
quer,
they w
make
the *K*
Perfor
tion,
Exacti
upon t
from t
he did
of the
Army
leave t
celebr
from
Ships,
of *Yor*
send h
forcem
he was
North
triving
upon t
Associ
Force
berlan
safe
again
with
Mean
juries
portu
Adva
than
with
Guar
his M
his A
rage

Towns left as a Prey to the *Irish*, who under the Command^{22 Ri. II.} of *Obrian Mackmore*, and others, committed great Spoil, and Barbarity upon the King's Subjects there. The News of this Rebellion was very perplexing to the King and his Council; for as it would be a great Shame to them to abandon that Nation, which had cost so much to conquer, and had been held so long by the *English*; so also they were not prepar'd for War, nor with Money to make Preparations. However at last, it was resolv'd, that the King would raise an Army, and go over thither in Person to reduce them. But in Order for this Expedition, the King's Ministers were obliged to use many Exactions, partly borrowing of the Bishops and others, upon the King's Letters Patents, and partly extorting it from those that were unwilling to lend him, so that tho' he did raise an Army, it was with the great Discontent of the whole Nation. In the Spring, the King and his Army were ready to embark; but that he might not leave the Queen in Discontent, he ordered Jufts to be celebrated several Days; and about *Whitsuntide* set sail from *Milford Haven*, with his Army in two hundred Ships, and landed at *Waterford* in *Ireland*. The Duke of *York* was left his Deputy in *England*, with Orders to send his Son the Duke of *Aumerle*, with some Reinforcements to his Army. Before they embark'd, while he was at *Bristol*, he had Information that the Earl of *Northumberland*, and some other Noblemen were contriving to raise an Insurrection in his Absence: Whereupon the King sent a Pursuivant to the Earl and his Associates, with Orders to attend him, with all the Force they could get together. The Earl of *Northumberland* sent the King this Answer, 'That it was not safe to draw away the Strength of the North, to go against the *Irish*, whom a less Force than what he had with him, was enough to subdue, because by that Means, he should expose those Countries to the Injuries of the *Scottish* Borderers, who waited all Opportunities, as the King well knew, to make their Advantage of *England*, and were no longer Friends, than they wanted an Occasion to shew their Enmity with Gain to themselves; that since there was no Guard appointed of those in his Absence, he hoped his Majesty would be better advis'd, than to require his Attendance, which would be a greater Disadvantage to him at Home, than his Service could profit him

The Earl of Northumberland accus'd of Treason, and his Estate confiscated.

The Earl of Northumberland's Answer to the King.

1399.

‘him Abroad.’ The King looked upon this Answer as a crafty Evasion, and was confirm’d in his Opinion, that he was guilty of what he had been accus’d of; and therefore seiz’d upon his Estate, to deter him from any farther Attempts, and having proclaimed him and his Associates Traitors, prosecuted his Journey to *Ireland*.

The King being landed in *Ireland*, stayed some Time in *Waterford* to refresh his Army, and then marched forward to *Kilkenny*, where he determin’d to halt some Time, and wait for the Arrival of the Duke of *Aumerle*. The Rebels were so terrified by the Approach of the King’s Army, that they did not dare to appear; but according to their usual Manner, kept close in the Woods, and made their Assaults upon the *English*, as they could take them at a Disadvantage. But the *English* being well acquainted with their Artifices, were so well prepar’d for them, that they slew many of them. When the King had waited at *Kilkenny* a Fortnight, and the Duke of *Aumerle* did not come, he marched forward, and invaded the Country of the Arch-rebel *Mackmore*, who skulking in the Woods with about three thousand Men, valued little the King’s Army. The King having with him two thousand five hundred Pioneers, set them to work to grub up the Woods, and open Passages for his Army; but they could by no Means come at *Mackmore*, and his Party. *Mackmore*’s Uncle, and some of the *Irish* of the better Fashion, came to the King with Withes about their Necks, and submitting themselves to the King, he pardoned them. Upon this, the King invited *Mackmore* himself to come in, and accept of the same Mercy; but he considering that the *English* could not subsist there long, for Want of Provisions, refus’d to submit; but offered to lay down his Arms upon Assurance of Pardon for his past Offences, and his Liberty for the future. The King was so much enrag’d at this Answer, that he swore he would not leave *Ireland*, till he had *Mackmore* dead or alive; and being obliged to retreat to *Dublin*, to refresh and victual his Army, the first publish’d a Proclamation, wherein he promis’d a great Reward to any Person, who should bring *Mackmore* to him dead or alive; and after he had rested and refreshed his Army for fifteen Days, he drew it out into three Divisions, and sent them to environ the Enemy on all Sides, and by all Means possible to reduce them. Just as the King

The King’s
Arrival in
Ireland, and
Action there

had

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

345

had given these Orders, and the Army were on the March, the Duke of *Aumerle* arrived in *Ireland*, with a great Reinforcement, in 100 Ships; the Conjunction of these, with those with the King before, brought so many of the *Irish* into Subjection, that he had reduced *Ireland* into as intire Obedience as ever, had he not been called home. But it being his Fate to rule no longer, his Dignity came thus to a Period.

22. Ri. II.

The Nobility, Gentry, and common People, having been slighted, and intolerably oppressed by the King and his Favourites, for many Years past, began to long for Relief; and laying hold of the Opportunity the King's Absence had put into their Hands, of putting their Designs in Execution, contrived to put the Crown on another Head, from whom they might expect to be governed with more Prudence and Clemency. The Person whom they esteemed the fittest to sway the Scepter of these Realms, was *Henry of Bullingbroke*, Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, who had as well a lineal Title to it, as he had all the Qualifications fit to make an excellent King. He was a Prince of great Wisdom, Courage and Experience; a Friend to the Nobility, and a Lover of the common People, and having suffered so severely by the Cruelty and Injustice of a bad King, was most likely to make a good one. The Earl of *Northumberland*, and his Friends, who had of late, for a bare Suspicion, suffered so much, were among the most forward in this Enterprize. The Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, was then in *France*; they therefore took up a general Resolution, to send for him with all possible Privacy and Speed, giving him Assurances of their Assistance in settling him on the Throne. Their Requests and Desires they sent over to him in a Letter, by trusty Messengers, to Archbishop *Arundel*, who was then in *Bretagne* in *France*, importuning him also by Letters, to be their Advocate with the Duke to comply with them. The Bishop being a Fellow-sufferer with them, readily accepted the Office; and going along with the Messengers to *Paris*, obtained of the Duke of *Hereford* a Meeting, as private as the Importance of the Matter required. The Messengers having delivered their Letters from the Nobles and Commons of *England*, were seconded by the Archbishop, with the best Persuasions that Reason could invent, or Rhetorick urge. He represented to the Duke,

The Conspiracy to depose King Richard, with the Reasons and Causes of it.

The Duke of Lancaster and Hereford solicited to take the Crown.

1399.

Duke, the Misery of the present State of the People
 of *England*, " That they were utterly ruined and de-
 stroyed by the ill Management of the publick Af-
 fairs ; in which, tho the King himself was not actu-
 ally concerned, yet so long as he employed and up-
 held such unfit Ministers, he could not be thought
 fit to govern ; That it is far more intolerable to be
 Slaves to mean Persons, than to the King himself ;
 and therefore so long as the King could not be won
 from maintaining their Pride and Tyranny over his
 Subjects, it was hardly any Crime to depose that Per-
 son, who left his Power in such base Hands ; That
 the present Condition of the Nation was so low
 and distracted, that nothing but a present Remedy
 can save it from utter Ruin ; for the antient Honour
 of the Nation for Chivalry was degenerated into
 Effeminacy, and the Men that were famous for their
 Courage and Conduct, either put to Death or ba-
 nished ; the Nobility was contemned and slighted,
 the Gentry abused, and the Commons miserably pol-
 led and taxed, and that not to support the Govern-
 ment, but the Pride and Avarice of their Fellow
 Subjects ; that the Relief of these Grievances could
 not be expected from any Hands but his, reasonably ;
 not only because he was so eminent for all warlike
 Atchievements, but because he had so near a Rela-
 tion to the Crown ; and therefore the Nation had
 devolved their Hopes of Ease entirely upon him,
 which he in Honour and Duty ought to endeavour,
 especially since they had resolved to stand by him in
 the Attempt ; and it could hardly prove unfortunate
 to him, where so much Love, Power and Interest
 were united." The Duke, tho' he had all the Rea-
 son in the World to give ear to those Proposals, it
 being the only Way left him to revenge the barbarous
 Death of his Uncle, recover his Estate and Honour,
 and set himself at Liberty from an uneasy Banishment,
 and restore his Family and Children to their natural
 Rights, yet he was very cautious of accepting, and told
 them, " That tho' he was sensible of the bad State of
 Things in *England*, which stood in great Need of a
 present Redress, and was much obliged to his Coun-
 trymen for their good Opinion of him ; yet he was
 not insensible of the great Danger in attempting the
 Deposing of a King, and the Fickleness of the Peo-

The Duke
 of Lan-
 caster's An-
 swer.

" ple's

"ple's Affections; which, tho' they might lead Men ^{23 Ri. II.}
 "into hazardous Attempts, yet seldom held up to carry
 "them through; and therefore could hardly think it
 "prudent to trust to them. He declared himself free
 "from all ambitious and aspiring Thoughts, being now
 "of more staid Years and Consideration; and if he
 "should engage in so difficult an Action, it would be
 "more for the Love of his Country, than his own
 "Honour; that tho' it was some Motive to rescue
 "him and his Family from Ruin, yet it was much
 "greater to retrieve a whole Nation; and therefore,
 "since the Nobles and Gentry had gone too far to re-
 "treat with Safety, he would rather run the Hazard
 "of his own Life, than desert them; and so dismissed
 "the Messengers with Promises of Acceptance, if the
 "Nobles and People of *England* would hold to their
 "Petition." This Answer was carried back with all
 possible Speed and Privacy, upon which the Nobility
 set about raising all the Men they could, to receive
 him; and the Duke himself carried the Matter very
 closely. He desired Leave of the King of *France*, to
 go and pay a Visit to his Kinsman, the Duke of *Bre-*
tagne, that he might pass the more unsuspected, into ^{The Duke}
England, whither Archbishop *Arundel*, *Thomas Earl of* ^{of Lan-}
Arundel, his Nephew, Lord *Cobham*, and diverse other ^{caster's Pas-}
 Gentlemen of Note, attended him, to the Number of ^{sage, and}
 about eighty, being accommodated by some Ships, and ^{landing in}
 Men, for the Design. He set Sail from Port *Blanc* in *England*.
Bretagne, for *England*; and being arrived on the Coasts,
 he hovered about some Time, to observe in what For-
 wardness the Nobility were to receive him, and where
 he might land with the most Safety. The Duke of *Nor-*
thumberland and his Friends had so well disposed the
 People of the *North*, that he found a very kind Recep-
 tion; and therefore he landed at *Raven-Spurg*, in *Hol-*
derness in *Yorkshire*. Upon the first notice of his Ar-
 rival, the common People flocked in to his Assistance,
 in great Numbers; and the Earl of *Northumberland*,
 his Son *Henry Hotspur*, the Earl of *Westmoreland*, the
 Lords *Willoughby*, *Rosse*, *Darcy*, *Nevil* and *Beaumont*,
 and many other Persons of Honour and Interest, came
 with a considerable Body of Men to him; so that in a
 very few Days, his Army was grown to near sixty
 thousand Men, well arm'd and accoutred.

The

1399.
The Duke
of York ga-
thers an Ar-
my against
the Duke of
Lancaster.

The Duke of York, to whom the Regency of the Nation was committed, during the King's Absence, having Intelligence of this Insurrection, took the most effectual Methods he could, to meet the impending Danger; he immediately calls a Council to consult by what Means they might secure the Nation in its Obedience to King *Richard*, and defeat the Designs of the Invader. The Chief Persons in the Council, were the Bishop of *Exeter*, Lord Chancellor, the Earl of *Wiltshire*, Lord Treasurer, *John Busby*, *Henry Green*, *John Baggot* and *John Russel*, Knights.

The King's
Party resolve
to leave Lon-
don.

In this Council it was resolv'd, that it was best to leave *London*, which had always been inclin'd to the Lords Party, and had been lately disoblig'd, and to raise an Army about *St. Albans*, either to oppose the Duke at his Landing, or before he had gotten any considerable Body of Men together. An Army was rais'd; but when they understood they were to fight against the Duke of *Lancaster*, they declar'd unanimously, they would not oppose him, because his Quarrel was so just, and they did believe he came not for the Crown, but the Restitution of his Right, which it would be the highest Injustice to keep him from. This so discouraged the King's Friends, that they dismiss'd their Army, and betook themselves to other Methods for their Security. The Duke of *York*, and Bishop of *Exeter*, kept a good Body of Men; but the Lord *Scroop*, *Busby* and *Green* fled to *Bristol*, and fortified themselves in the Castle: *Baggot* made his Escape into *Ireland*.

The Duke
of Lancaster
marches to
London.

The Duke of *Lancaster* having met with that Success which was beyond his Expectation, was encourag'd thereby to proceed in his Design, and having taken an Oath to the Lords, "that he would neither procure nor permit any bodily Harm to be done to King *Richard*;" "that he would require only the Lands which were descended to him by Inheritance from his Father and Right of his Wife; that he would obtain that the Commons should be eas'd of their Taxes and Subsidies, cause the King to send home his Guard of *Cheshire* Men, and bring him to a better Order of Government; he made all the Haste he could to *London*. His Army increased daily in his March, partly by reason of the good Inclination the People had toward him, and partly through the Encouragement that was given them by Archbishop *Arundel*, by his Pardons from

from t
to suc
The
Duke
him;
King
Lancas
imagin
tainme
made;
all thei
him; b
Railing
City o
where
ments
selves,
seize th
join wi
my laic
took it,
ers. T
great, t
ment; f
before
guilty o
ed. Af
became
the Dul
had sent
Elmbam
rence Dr
to Chesh
yielded r
his Son
but the l
While
gland, K
telligence
for near
the Duke
sition be
The N
England,
in Ireland

from the Pope, promising Remission of all their Sins ^{23 Ri. II.} to such as should assist the Duke against his Enemies. The Duke of *York* had gotten an Army to oppose the Duke of *Lancaster*, but they would not fight against him; and so he was obliged to pass by him, to meet King *Richard* at his Landing in *Wales*. The Duke of *Lancaster* being arriv'd at *London*, was receiv'd with all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy: The costliest Entertainments by Pageants, Processions and Banquets were made, as Expressions of their Happiness at his Presence; all their Promises and good Wishes were bestow'd on him; but on King *Richard* and his Party, nothing but Railings and Curses. The Duke having secur'd the City of *London* to himself, marched towards *Bristol*, where *Scroop*, *Bushy*, and *Green*, the three great Instruments of the Misery of the Nation, had fortified themselves, sending out Parties on all Sides to plunder and seize the Estates and Persons of all such as would not join with him and his Confederates. The Duke's Army laid Siege to *Bristol*-Castle, and after four Days took it, with the Lord *Scroop*, *Bushy*, and *Green* Prisoners. The Hatred of the People toward them, was so great, that it would admit of no Delay of their Punishment; for which Cause they were immediately arraign'd before the Constable and Marshal, and being found guilty of Treason in misleading the King, were beheaded. After this Execution, the Duke of *York* himself became not only a Friend, but a chief Counsellor to the Duke of *Lancaster*. The Parties which the Duke had sent out, took the Bishop of *Norwich*, Sir *William Elmham*, Sir *Walter Burley*, *John Goliser*, and *Laurence Drew*, Esquires. From *Bristol* the Duke march'd to *Chester*, which receiv'd him with great Joy, and yielded their Charter up to him. From *Chester* he sent his Son with the Duke of *Glocester*'s Son into *Ireland*, but the latter was drowned in his Passage.

While these Things were thus carrying on in *England*, King *Richard* was in *Ireland*, and had no Intelligence of it; for the *Irish* Seas were so tempestuous for near six Weeks that no Vessels could pass, so that the Duke of *Lancaster* met with but very little Opposition before he was settled in *England*.

The News of the Duke of *Lancaster*'s Invasion of *England*, and the Success he had therein at last arriv'd in *Ireland*, and put the King into strange Perplexities and

The News of the Duke of *Lancaster*'s Invasion of *England* carried to the King in *Ireland*.

1399. and Agonies; but what Course was best to be taken, he knew not, but at last resolv'd to hasten with his Army into *England*, and give the Duke Battel, before he should be join'd by his Friends; and likewise to make the Duke of *Lancaster's* Son *Henry*, and the Duke of *Glocester's* Son *Humphrey*, Prisoners in the Castle of *Trim*. The Duke of *Aumerle* advised and earnestly persuaded the King, not to go into *England* himself till the whole Fleet was ready, as it might be in a few Days, and to send some of his Friends before, to gather him an Army, that he might land without Danger. The King followed this Counsel, and sent the Earl of *Salisbury* before, to procure an Army of *Wells* and *Cheshire* Men against his Arrival, which he had promised should be within six Days. The Earl landed at *Conway* in *Wales*, and sending Letters to the Gentlemen in those Countries that still adher'd to the King's Interest, he soon rais'd an Army of forty thousand Men, ready to march with the King against his Enemies. But there being a Report rais'd that King *Richard* was dead in *Ireland*, and the King not coming at the Time appointed; the Army was put into such a Fright, that they would by no Means enter upon any Action till they saw the King, but were persuaded by the Earl of *Salisbury* to wait fourteen Days longer for the King's Arrival; but on Condition, if the King came not in that Time, they should return home. The King did not leave *Ireland* till eighteen Days after, and was three Days in his Passage; so that the fourteen Days being elaps'd, and the King not arriv'd, they returned home. They were no sooner separated, but the King with his Forces, landed at *Milford Haven* in *Wales*, attended with the Dukes of *Aumerle* and *Exeter* and others of the Nobility; and leaving the Army with the Duke of *Aumerle*, he went to *Conway* in a Disguise, to see what Body of Men the Earl of *Salisbury* had gotten together to receive him; but to his great Mortification found his Delays had depriv'd him of the Assistance of his Friends, which both he and the Earl of *Salisbury* very much lamented. While the King was gone to *Conway*, the Duke of *Aumerle* gave it out, that the King had quite left his Army, and was fled; so dismissing every Man to provide for his own Safety, he fled himself with five hundred Men, to the Duke of *Lancaster*. And the Earl of *Worcester*, who was Steward of the King's House, broke his

King *Richard*
lands at
Milford Haven.

his Staff
solving
of *Aumerle*
the King
trymen,
up a R
gainst t
ving be
ders of
into the
General
the No
him, an
been bel
and call
own H
Duke o
Lives o
so he, v
shop of
of his f
resolving
tain son
The
Fortress
might e
ned by
quence
who wa
King ha
not fear
sensible
Power b
where F
so strong
try, call
Party, w
bishop A
and crec
that whe
Exeter a
what he
the King
"but a
"of the

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

351

his Staff in the midst of the King's Servants; and so dissolving the King's Family, went along with the Duke of *Aumerle*. The *Cheshire* Men went to *Conway* to the King, and there meeting with others of their Countrymen, they made up a considerable Army, and took up a Resolution to maintain King *Richard's* Right against the Duke and his Adherents. But the King having been inform'd, that all the Castles from the Borders of *Scotland*, as far as *Bristol*, had been surrendred into the Hands of the Duke of *Lancaster*; and that the Generality of the Nobility, Gentry, and Commons of the North and South Parts of the Nation, had joined him, and that his trusty Friends and Counsellors had been beheaded at *Bristol*, he despaired of all Success; and calling his Army together, dismissed them to their own Homes, determining to submit himself to the Duke of *Lancaster's* Mercy, rather than to hazard the Lives of those who were so loyal to him in vain: And so he, with the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey*, the Bishop of *Carlisle*, Sir *Stephen Scroop*, and about ten more of his fast Friends, betook himself to *Conway-Castle* resolving to defend themselves there till he could obtain some good Terms.

23 Ri. II.

The King dismisses his Army, and betakes himself to *Conway Castle*.

The Castle of *Conway* was not only a very strong Fortrefs, but so situated on the Sea-Shore, that they might easily make their Escape into *Ireland*, if streightned by a Siege. This was the only Castle of Consequence that held out against the Duke of *Lancaster*, who was hastening thither with all his Army; but the King had so well secur'd these Advantages, that he did not fear all the Force of his Enemy. The Duke being sensible how impossible it was to get the King into his Power by Force, while he kept himself in this Castle, where Force of Arms would be of little Use, against so strong a Fortrefs, and in so mountainous a Country, call'd a Council of those Peers who were of his Party, who being of his Mind, it was advis'd by Archbishop *Arundel*, that the King who was always simple and credulous, should be dealt with by Policy; and that whereas he had not long before sent the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey* to the Duke of *Lancaster* to know what he intended, certain Messengers should be sent to the King with this Answer, " That he sought nothing " but a peaceable Settlement of Things for the Good " of the Nation, and that if he would be pleas'd to " call

A politicke Contrivance to get the King into the Duke of *Lancaster's* Hands.

1399.

“ call a Parliament, wherein those who had barbarously murdered, or advis’d the Death of the Duke of *Glocester*, should be punish’d, and other Irregularities of Government reformed, he and the Duke would be good Friends; only the Duke should have his Pardon of all Offences granted upon his begging of it upon his Knees, and enjoy the Office of High Judge, as his Ancestors had it for an hundred Years, to himself and Posterity.” This Advice being approv’d, the Earl of *Northumberland* was sent with four hundred Lances, and a thousand Archers, to deliver this Answer to the King. The Earl in his Way had the two Castles of *Flint* and *Rutland* delivered up to him. When he arriv’d at a narrow Passage near the Town of *Conway*, he divided his Men into two Ambushes, and posted them under a Rock, giving them Command to keep it; and himself with five Men only went to the Town, and sent an Herald to the King to acquaint him that he was sent by the Duke of *Lancaster* with a Message about an Agreement with him, and therefore desir’d that safe Conduct should be granted him. The King, not suspecting any Deceit, allow’d it him, and the Earl entering the Castle, deliver’d his Message to the King and Earl of *Salisbury* with much Seriousness, and confirm’d it with a solemn Oath taken upon the Sacrament, that the Duke should perform what he had promised in his Name, and that if the King pleas’d to go to the Duke, and confirm those Proposals, he should depart whither he pleas’d afterwards. The King not suspecting any Treachery, agreed to meet the Duke of *Lancaster*, and settle the Agreement, intending to go afterwards into *Wales*, and gather an Army to secure himself against all future Hazards. The Earl hastened the King away with him to the Duke, and being mounted on Horseback, attended with the Earl of *Salisbury*, Bishop of *Carlisle*, Sir *William Peribee*, and Sir *Stephen Scroop*, who attended him, rode along with him to conduct him. The King desir’d the Earl of *Northumberland* to ride before to *Rutland*, to provide a Dinner, which he seem’d to be very ready to do, and rode apace from them; but went no farther than to the Place where his Ambushes lay, and having given them Notice of the King’s Approach, staid there while the King came up. The King seeing such a Number of Men with the Earl, found he was betray’d; but being on all Sides

The King taken by the Earl of *Northumberland*, and carried to the Duke of *Lancaster*.

enclos’d

enclo
Earl
fallin
he had
swere
his Pr
above
he wo
to be
had hi
Duke
before.
having
where
having
drew u
hundre
the Arc
Sir Tho
him, an
ternoon
much C
ing to h
which t
pointed
for these
gorously,
Heaven
future.
“ to obt
“ thro’
“ that h
when the
“ compl
“ twenty
“ to gov
“ sin of
“ pleas
Duke ore
the King
ducted to
under the
Arundel’s
their Fath
Day of th
VOL.

enclos'd with Rocks, he had no Way to escape. The Earl perceiving the King's Surprise, went to him, and falling on his Knees, told him, they were a Guard which he had appointed to attend his Person. The King answered him, they were needless, and not according to his Promise, who had assur'd him he would not have above six Persons with him; and being angry, he said he would go back to *Conway*: But the Earl then began to be plain with the King, and told him, that now he had him in his Power, he would conduct him to the Duke of *Lancaster*, as he had engag'd to do ten Days before. The King was forc'd to go forward, and having din'd at *Rutland*, was conducted to *Flint-Castle*, where he lodg'd that Night. The Duke of *Lancaster* having Notice of the King's Arrival at *Flint-Castle*, drew up his Army the next Morning, consisting of an hundred thousand Men, round about the Castle; and sent the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Earl of *Rutland*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy* to the King, to prepare and discourse him, and the Duke himself waited on him in the Afternoon. The Duke was receiv'd by the King with much Calmness of Temper and obliging Carriage, he saying to him, *Cousin of Lancaster, You are welcome.* To which the Duke replied, *I am come sooner than you appointed me, because the Fame of your People is, that for these twenty one Years you have govern'd ill and rigorously, for which they are highly dissatisfied; but if Heaven pleases, I will help to govern them better for the future.* And when the Duke told him, "that he came to obtain the Restitution of his Lands and Honours, thro' his favourable Permission;" the King replied, "that he was ready to accomplish his Will:" And when the Duke added farther, "that since the People complain'd of his rigorous Government for these twenty two Years, he was now resolv'd to help him to govern better;" the King replied, "Fair Cousin of *Lancaster*, since 'tis your Will to do so, it pleaseth us well." This Discourse being ended, the Duke ordered the King's Horses to be brought out, and the King and his Friends being mounted, he was conducted to *Chester*, where he was confin'd in the Castle under the Care of the Duke of *Glocester's* and Earl of *Arundel's* Sons, who hating him for the Murder of their Fathers, were very watchful to keep him for the Day of their hop'd for Revenge. The King was afterwards

23 RI. II.

The King
and Duke
meet.

1399

wards remov'd from *Chester* to *Newcastle* in *Staffordshire*, where the old Earl of *Warwick* being recall'd from his Banishment in the *Isle of Man*, went to upbraid him with his Severity towards him. From thence he was carried to *Litchfield*, and lodg'd in the Castle, from whence he had like to have escap'd out of a Window; but being discover'd, was the more strictly guarded. From thence in a few Days he was carried to *London*.

When the Duke of *Lancaster* was arrived within six Miles of *London*, the Mayor and Companies met him in their Liveries, with Trumpets sounding before them, and paid him much more Reverence than the King himself. When the Duke was come within two Miles of *London*, he made a Halt, and enquired of the Citizens, what he should do with the King? Who, as some say, answer'd, "that they, in Behalf of the Commons of *London*, desired, that he would cut off the Head of *King Richard* and all that were taken with him." But the Duke replied, "that such an Act would prove an everlasting Reproach unto him and his Adherents; but he would carry him along with them to the Tower of *London*, and then leave him to the Judgment of the Parliament." Accordingly he was carried to *Westminster*; but he lodg'd but one Night there, but being carried the next Day to the Tower, to be kept close Prisoner, till the meeting of the next Parliament, there was a Conspiracy of several of the Citizens to have kill'd him as he pass'd thro' the City, but the Mayor and Aldermen having Notice of the Design, prevented it.

The Duke of *Lancaster* having staid some Days in the City, at the Bishop of *London's* Palace, and *St. John's* Hospital without *Smithfield*, retir'd for a small Time into *Hertfordshire*. When he was at *Chester*, he caus'd Writs to be issued out in the King's Name, for summoning a Parliament, which was to meet on the last Day of *September*, against the meeting of which he and his Friends were busy in consulting how Matters should be manag'd, and at length came to this Conclusion, that *King Richard* should no longer govern the Nation; but they were for making Use of the most plausible Methods of dethroning him. Many Things were propounded; among which, the Duke of *York* advis'd, that *King Richard* should both voluntarily resign his Crown, and be solemnly deposed by the Parliament also; be-

Consultations to depose *King Richard*.

cause, as he said, tho' the Judgment of Parliament may make him be thought worthy to be deposed, yet his Deprivation will never be just, unless he joined in a Resignation. His Advice was approved, and accordingly put in Execution: For the Day before the Parliament met, there assembled in the Tower, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Hereford*, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland*, and divers others of the Nobility, Judges, and others. When they were seated in their Places, the King was brought forth in his kingly Robes and Habiliments, and being placed in a Chair of State, he read the Form of his Resignation to this Effect.

"In the Name of God, Amen. I *Richard*, by the Grace of God, King of *England*, and *France*, and Lord of *Ireland*, do hereby acquit and discharge all Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Barons, Lords, and all other my Subjects, both spiritual and secular, of what Degree soever, from their Oath of Fealty, and Homage, and all other Bonds of Allegiance to me due, both from them and their Heirs; and do hereby release them from the said Oaths and Allegiance, so far as they concern my Person for ever. I also resign all my kingly Majesty and Dignity, with all the Rights and Privileges thereunto belonging; and do renounce all the Title and Claim which I ever had, or have, to them. I also renounce the Government of the said Kingdoms, and the Name of regal Highness thereunto belonging, freely and wholly swearing upon the Evangelists, that I will never oppose this my voluntary Resignation, nor suffer it to be opposed, as judging my self not unworthily deprived of my regal Dignity, for my Deserts." This Resignation King *Richard* read with much Calmness and Chearfulness, and then signed and subscribed it in their Presence, and putting his Ring on the Duke of *Lancaster's* Finger, desired, that his Cousin, the Duke of *Lancaster*, might be his Successor. He likewise appointed the Archbishop of *York*, and Bishop of *Hereford*, to be his Procurators, to declare and shew this his voluntary Resignation to all the States of Parliament, and his Desire, that the Duke of *Lancaster*, his Cousin, should succeed him in his Throne. When this was done, they took their Leave of him.

The Form
of King *Richard's* Resignation.

1399.

King Ri-
chard depos-
ed.

The Parliament met the *Monday* following; and after the Archbishop of *York*, and Bishop of *Hereford*, had declared in the King's Name, that he had voluntarily resigned his regal Dignity and Power, the Lords and Commons agreed to, and accepted it, and then proceeded to his Deposition; in order to which they digested all the Misdemeanours of his Reign, as far as they could recollect them, into thirty three Articles of Accusation, alledging against him, " That he had wasted the publick Treasure, and given away the Possessions of the Crown to Persons of no Merit; That he had impeached certain Lords of Treason, for treating of Matters concerning the Estate of the Nation, tho' appointed to it by Parliament; That he had forced the Judges to give their Opinions contrary to Law, for the Destruction of the Lords; That he had punished the Lords, and fined their Attendants for Crimes pardoned by his Proclamation and Charter; That he had detained Records of a necessary Concern for the Good of the Nation; That he had unjustly banished the Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, and forbad all his Friends to sue for his Return; That he had procured Bulls from the Pope, to force his Subjects to observe Laws made for his own Ends; That he forbad the Duke of *Hereford*'s Proxies to prosecute or defend his Cause, notwithstanding his Grant to him under Seal; That he put out divers High-Sheriffs duly elected, put in his Favourites, and kept them in that Office longer than usual; That he borrowed great Sums of his Subjects and would not pay them; That he taxed his Subjects at his Pleasure, and would not pay them for Provisions had of them; That he said, *All Law was in his own Breast and Head, and the Lives of his Subjects were in his Hands*; That he put out Knights and Burgeses duly elected for the Parliament, and put in Men for his own Turn; That he had extorted several Sums of the Clergy, at his going into *Ireland*, contrary to Law; That he devised certain new Oaths, and forced his Subjects to take them; That he banished the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, without just Cause, and gave his Goods to his Successor, on Condition, that he should observe the Statutes made at *Shrewsbury* and *Coventry*, with other Misdemeanours of less Importance. These Articles being composed in Form, and brought into the Houses

" of

of P
the
conc
" w
" in
" to
And
both
in the
" J
" St.
" of
" pin
" Just
" Stat
" of
" to u
" and
" Rich
" done
" the
" made
" sever
" own
" deme
" confi
" come
" noun
" thy o
" and f
" Digni
" bishop
" and K
" dom,
" Day
" afore
This Ser
Commis
ed unto
which, in
and so h
prived o
The R
to the Pa
Throne v
Depositio

of Parliament, and being read, it was demanded of ^{23 Ri. II.} the Lords and Commons, what their Judgment was concerning them? To which they replied, "That they were notorious Crimes; and that King *Richard* being manifestly found guilty of the same, was worthy to be deposed from his royal Authority and Dignity." And thereupon Commissioners were appointed by both Houses, to pronounce a Sentence of Deposition in the Manner and Form following.

"In the Name of God, Amen. We, *John*, Bishop of *St. Asaph*, *John*, Abbot of *Glassenbury*, *Thomas*, Earl of *Glocester*, *Thomas*, Lord *Barkley*, Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, Sir *Thomas Gray*, and *William Thirning*, Justices Commissioners, specially chosen by the three States of this Parliament, representing the whole Body of the Realm, for all Matters by the said States to us committed, considering the manifold Perjuries and Cruelties, notorious Crimes and Offences, by *Richard*, late King of this Realm, committed and done contrary to the Laws and good Government of the Kingdom, during the Time of his Reign, as was made manifest to the whole Body of Parliament, by several Articles exhibited against him, and by his own Confession of his own Insufficiency and Misdemeanors of Government: We, the Premises well considering, do by the Power and Authority to us committed, in the Names of all the said States, pronounce, decree, and declare the said *Richard* unworthy of the Rule and Government of the said Realm; and for the said Causes do deprive him of all kingly Dignity and Worship, expressly forbidding all Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Barons and Knights, and all other Persons within this Kingdom, of what Quality or Degree soever, from this Day forward, to be obedient or attendant on the afore said *Richard*, as King and Lord of these Realms. This Sentence of Deposition being pronounced, the Commissioners, in the Name of the Parliament, resigned unto King *Richard* all their Homage and Fealty, which, in Time past, they had made, or did owe him; and so King *Richard* was looked upon as wholly deprived of his regal Power and Kingdoms.

The Report of the Commissioners being given in to the Parliament, it was immediately voted, that the Throne was vacant, by the voluntary Cession and just Deposition of King *Richard*; and therefore they ought

1399.

The Duke
of Lancaster
claims the
Crown.

to proceed immediately to the Election of a new Prince into the Throne. Upon this Vote, *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster*, rose up immediately from his Seat, and standing so as he might be seen of the People, and crossing himself on the Forehead and Breast, as the Custom was in those Times, he put in his Claim for the Kingdom in these Words :

"In the Name of God, Amen, I *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster*, do claim as my Right, the Crown and Realm of *England*, with all the Dominions and Appurtenances thereunto belonging, being lineally descended from *Edmund*, surnamed *Crouch-back*, eldest Son of our good Lord, *Henry* the Third; and thro' the Right which God of his Grace hath sent me, by his Assistance, and Help of my ready Kindred and noble Friends, who have adventured with me to recover the same, being at the Point of Destruction, for want of good Government, and an orderly Distribution of Justice." And then he went to his Place, and sat down again.

The Duke
of Lancaster
elected King.

The Archbishop put the Question to the Houses of Parliament, Whom they would have for their King? First, *Whether they would have the Duke of York for their King?* and they said, *No*. Then, *Whether they desired his eldest Son Edward, Duke of Aumerle?* and they replied, *No*. Then he proposed the Duke of York's youngest Son, and several others, but all were refused. Then the Archbishop pausing a While, asked them, *Whether they would have the Duke of Lancaster for their King?* They said, *We will have him, and none else*; and made the same Answer three Times. Then the Arch Bishop going to him, kneeled down before him, and declared to him, That the People had unanimously chosen him to be their King, and desired him to take upon him the Care and Government of the Realm. The Duke, who was also upon his Knees, when the Archbishop said this to him, rose up and replied, *That since the Kingdom was devolved upon him by a special Dispensation of divine Providence, he durst not refuse it*. After this, the Archbishop read to him the Duties of a King, and having signed the King with the Sign of the Cross, the King kissed the Archbishop; and the Constable taking the Ring with which the Kings were wedded to the Realm, shewed it to the whole Assembly, and then put it on the

the King's Finger, and the King kiss'd the Constable. Then the King was led to the Royal Seat by the Archbishops, who made his Prayers immediately before it, and then turned to the Assembly, and gave Thanks to the Lords spiritual and temporal, and all the States of the Realm; assuring them he would not, by Way of Conquest, disinherit or deprive any Man of his Rights or Franchises, which he now enjoyeth, or hath had by the Custom and good Law of the Realm, certain evil Members only excepted. Then a general Silence being kept for a small Time, the whole House gave Thanks to God, for his Gift of so good a King to the Nation. Then the Archbishop rose up, and in a Sermon-like Speech from these Words, *1 Kings ix. 17. A Man shall rule over my People*; he set forth the Happiness of the Nation, in the Person they had chosen; that he was not, as the former King, a Child in Understanding, tho' not in Years, under whose Government they suffer'd so many Miseries, but a Man of perfect Reason, and vast Experience and Judgment; under whose auspicious Government, they had Assurance of a full and free Profession of Religion, a due Administration of Justice, a lasting Peace and Plenty, concluding with a short Prayer, 'That he might long prosperously reign over the Kingdom, to the Glory of God, and the Prosperity of the Nation.' To which the whole Assembly with a joyful Acclamation, said, *Amen, Amen.*

King Henry, as soon as the Parliament rose, went to *Whitehall*, and made a great Feast for all the Members, at which he demean'd himself with much kind and obliging Carriage, without the majestick Reservedness, or Distance of a King, to the well pleasing of all his Subjects then present. In the Afternoon, he was proclaimed King of *England*, and *France*, and Lord of *Ireland*; and a Proclamation was issued out for the Continuance of all Officers, and Justices in their Places.

Thus was King *Richard* depos'd from his royal Dignity, and *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* settled on the Throne, when he had reigned twenty two Years, two Months, and eight Days. The Manner and Form of his Deposition, was signified to him the next Day by Justice *Thirning*, who at the same Time, surrendered back all Homage and Fealty due unto him. King

1399.

Richard seem'd to be very easy, telling Sir William, That he look'd not after such Things; but after all, he hop'd, that his Cousin would be his good Lord and Friend.

King Richard's Person and Character.

Richard II. was a Prince, who as to his Person, was the most handsom and amiable that ever had reigned since the Conquest; there appear'd in him many good Inclinations, which might have grown to perfect Virtues, if they had not been blasted in his Youth by corrupt Flatterers, who taught him Luxury, Vitiousness, and the Desire of Power. He was rather profuse than liberal in his Gifts and Expences, guilty of many Breaches of Faith, and of a revengeful Spirit, which lost him all the Esteem the Nation had for him: He obtained a more absolute Power, than any of his Predecessors; but these were but so many Steps to his Ruin, at which he arriv'd when he was in the very Strength and Vigour of his Age, being not above thirty three Years old.



The Reign of King HENRY IV.

King Henry's Parentage and Succession.

HENRY, firnam'd of *Bullingbrook*, a Town of *Lincolnshire*, the Place of his Birth, was the eldest Son of *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, fourth Son of King *Edward the III.* and was himself Duke of *Lancaster* after his Father's Death, as he was before Duke of *Hereford*. He came to the Crown at about thirty three Years of Age; the Crown did not belong to him in a lineal Succession after King *Richard II.* because some of the Posterity of *Lionel Duke of Clarence*, (the elder Brother of his Father the Duke of *Lancaster*) by his Daughter *Philippa*, were yet surviving; for *Edmund Mortimer Earl of March*, to whom she was married, left a Son, *Roger Mortimer*, who had been declar'd next Heir to the Crown, by the Parliament in the Time of King *Richard II.* and dying, left *Edmund Mortimer*, the Heir to his Honour and Estate, besides several

am,
he
and

was
igned
ood
Vir-
cor-
ness,
than
Brea-
lost
tain-
eces-
n, at
h and
Years



wn of
the el-
fourth
uke of
before
t about
belong
ll. be-
larence,
ncaster)
for Ed-
as mar-
een de-
ment in
Edmund
besides
several



KING HENRY THE IVTH



several
insensib
it in
fected
rent of
and the
nor of
Mind,
Englan
bares m
Goods.
being f
Merit,
Favour
and be
conside
tur'd up
King
the Life
the Cro
ament.
Richar
which
King R
on the
ed on a
Archbisp
the Cau
to shew
nourable
govern'o
sons, so
highly to
sent a k
would b
tients an
upon the
Kingdom
the Affi
then she
dom, the
Justice, C
it was t
perform

several other Children. *Edmund Mortimer* was not insensible of the Right he had to the Crown, but thought it in vain, while the People were so passionately affected to the Duke of *Lancaster*, to oppose the Current of Favour and Power, by putting in his Claim, and therefore betook himself to Retirement at his Manor of *Wigmore* in *Hertsfordshire*; but it grated upon his Mind, to hear him call himself Heir of the Crown of *England*, and therefore said to his Friends, that he was *hæres malus*, such an Heir as a Pyrate is to a Merchant's Goods. On the other Hand, the Duke of *Lancaster* being sensible of the great Opinion the People had of his Merit, in rescuing the Nation from the Tyranny of Favourites, and the Oppression of bad Governors, and being therefore confident of their Favour, and considering the Obscurity of *Edmund Mortimer*, ventur'd upon the Crown.

1 Hen. IV.

King *Henry*, by the Management mentioned before in the Life of King *Richard*, having gotten into Possession of the Crown, the first Step he took was to summon a Parliament. And whereas a Parliament had been call'd by King *Richard*, he immediately call'd one in his own Name, which however consisted of the same Members that King *Richard* had summoned. This Parliament met on the 6th of *October*, in which King *Henry* being seated on a Royal Throne in *Westminster Hall*, *Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, made an Oration, declaring the Cause of their coming together; then he proceeded to shew, that the Kingdom of *England*, the most honourable and abounding with Riches, had been long govern'd by Children, and the Counsels of young Persons, so that it was reduc'd to a State of Desolation, highly to be lamented; but the Goodness of God had sent a knowing and discreet Man for its Governor, who would by the Assistance of Heaven be rul'd by the Antients and Sages of his Kingdom. Then he largely insisted upon the Excellencies of the *English* Empire, that no Kingdom in the World could support itself, without the Assistance of others, so compleatly as this. And then shew'd that in the Government of every Kingdom, three Things were in a special Manner requir'd, Justice, Observation of Laws, and Liberty, which Things it was the King's Will, by the Help of God to see perform'd. He farther declar'd, that it was the King's Will

The Archbishop's Speech to the Parliament.

1399

Will that the Church should enjoy all her Liberties, that the Laws should be strictly observ'd, and that both the Nobility and Commonalty should enjoy their Liberties and Franchises, according to the Grants made by his Predecessors: And that he was resolv'd to do equal Justice to all Parties, by the Grace and Help of God. After this the Parliament was prorog'd till the 14th of *October* the Day after his Coronation.

He supplied all Offices of the Court, which were vacant, with such Persons as were most faithful and deserving, viz. he made the Earl of *Northumberland*, high Constable, the Earl of *Westmorland*, Earl Marshal; Sir *John Norbury* Lord Treasurer, Sir *John Shirly* Chancellor, and Sir *Richard Clifford* Keeper of the Privy Seal, and confirm'd the other Officers of State, who were to assist at his Coronation. On *St. Edward's* Eve, the King lodg'd in the Tower of *London*, and there made his three Sons, and other Sons of the Nobility, to the Number of forty six, Knights of the *Bath*. The next Day in the Morning being the 13th of *October*, he rode through the City to *Westminster*, attended by the Mayor and Aldermen, and chief Citizens of *London*, in rich Liveries, and with a costly Equipage, where he was consecrated, anointed, and crown'd by *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

He was anointed with an Oil, which was at that Time thought to have a peculiar Virtue and Sanctity in it, having been given to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster*, his Grand-father by the Mother's side, by a religious Hermit, with this Prediction; *That the Kings who should be anointed with it, should be endued with a Zeal to patronise and defend the Church.* King *Richard* found this Oil among his Father's Jewels and Treasures, with a Label, signifying the Use of it, and would have been crown'd again, that he might be anointed with it; but the Archbishop, telling him it was unlawful for him to be anointed twice, diverted him from that Purpose. King *Henry* by the Assistance of the Archbishop, having gotten this Oil from King *Richard*, when he was in *Flint* Castle, was the first that was anointed with it.

King *Henry's* Title.

King *Henry* at his Coronation, taking Notice that his Claim by Way of hereditary Right was not justifiable, and that it was mention'd by his Enemies by Way of Ridicule, caus'd himself to be proclaim'd King of

of England, first by Conquest, and then by special Designation by King *Richard*, who at his Resignation of the Crown, gave it to him, then Duke of *Lancaster*, as his adopted Son.

The Parliament being met, according to Appointment, the King ordered them in the first Place, to inspect into the Abuses of the Government, in the Reign of King *Richard*, to regulate all Matters, that had been found to be prejudicial to the Interest of the Publick; to examine into the Case of the condemn'd Lords; and especially to bring the Murtherers of the Duke of *Glocester*, to a condign Punishment. The Parliament readily obey'd the King's Orders, and accordingly recited, and condemn'd the Transactions of the Parliament, in the twenty first of King *Richard* II. in banishing the Duke of *Hereford*, without a reasonable Cause; in condemning the Archbishop without hearing his Defence; in barbarously justifying the Duke of *Glocester's* Murther; in denying the Earl of *Arundel* the Benefit of his Pardons, and putting the whole Power of the Parliament into the Hands of certain Persons, to the Injury of the Nation; and all, and singular the Statutes, and Ordinances of the said Parliament they abrogated, and repeal'd, and utterly made void all the Authority and Power given to any Persons, by any Act or Law of the same; they likewise reviv'd the Statutes of the Parliament held in the eleventh of *Richard* II. by which the Power of the Nation was put into the Hands of the Duke of *Glocester*, Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, and some others, till the King should be of full Age, to take upon him the Government himself. By these Acts, the Attaint of Blood was taken off from the Lords, who either were condemn'd, or had suffered in the said Parliament; and by another Act for that Purpose, the Heirs of the condemn'd Lords were restor'd to their Honours and Estates; and because many Things had by the same Parliament been made Treason, which had not been formerly so esteem'd, and for no other Reason, but that the Crime of the Lords might be made more notorious, and so much to the Prejudice of the King's Subjects in general, that scarce any Man could behave himself cautiously enough to avoid the Penalty of it; it was enacted, That for the future, nothing should be esteem'd

Proceedings
in Parlia-
ment.

1399. esteem'd or adjudg'd Treason, but what was ordained to be Treason by the 25th of *Edward III.*

The Duke of
Glocester's
Murder ex-
amined into.

The next Thing the Parliament entred upon was the Murther of the Duke of *Glocester*, concerning which Sir *John Baggot*, who was then a Prisoner in the Tower, gave them a particular Information, "That it was by the Advice and Instigation of the Duke of *Aumerle*, that the Lords were apprehended by the King; and that the Duke of *Glocester* was inhumanly murthered at *Calais*; That the Duke of *Norfolk* did keep the Duke of *Glocester* alive three Weeks against the King's Will; but that for Fear of the King's Displeasure, both the said Duke and himself, with several of the King's and Lords Servants, went over to *Calais* and saw him put to Death." The Duke of *Aumerle* denied this Charge, and offered to justify his Innocency by Combat: But Sir *John Baggot* not being at Liberty to accept the Challenge, the Lord *Fitz-water*, with twenty other Lords, offered to make it good by their Bodies, That he was the very Cause of the Duke of *Glocester's* Death. The Duke of *Surrey* stood up against the Lord *Fitz-water*, and affirming, that what the Duke of *Aumerle* had done against the Duke of *Glocester* was by Constraint and Force, offered to vindicate him by Fight. These Lords upon this flung down their Hoods as Pledges of their Intention, and they were delivered to the Constable and Marshal to be kept.

Those concerned in the
Murder of
the Duke of
Glocester pu-
nished.

The King having prescribed the Parliament such Measures as were most suitable for his present Condition, they were content to inflict a more moderate Punishment on the Instruments of this barbarous Fact, than it deserved, viz. That the Dukes of *Aumerle*, *Surrey*, and *Exeter*, the Marquiss of *Dorset*, and Earl of *Glocester*, who had been the Accusers of the Duke of *Glocester*, and the other Lords, should be reduced to the same State they were in before the Arrest of the said Duke and Lords, losing not only their present Titles of Honour of Duke, Marquiss and Earl, but also all those Castles, Lordships, Manors, or other Possessions, which had been given them since the last Parliament, and belonged to any of the Persons whom they had impeached, or were held by Gift from the King; and that they should forthwith bring the Char-

ters,

ters,
nors,
should
to give
about
be high
Ways
disturb
Tho
the Inf
People
the Ki
and ot
the im
fessed h
sion of
Head
King's
Action
more p
tences
enactin
any Per
he was
a gener
Murthe
The
Things
the Co
Person;
should
ble to
hot and
cerning
Carlisle,
in depo
Lancaste
both; i
charging
This
himself
and the
"been
"his M
"Henry

ters, and Deeds, of the said Lands, Castles, or Manors, into the Chancery to be cancelled; and that it should be utterly unlawful for any of the said Lords, to give Liveries to any Retainers, or keep any Persons about them but necessary Servants; and that it should be high Treason in any of them, to enable, or any Ways assist King *Richard*, to recover his Crown, and disturb King *Henry* in the Possession of it.

Tho' the King and Parliament were satisfied with the Infliction of these Punishments, yet the common People were not so contented, but murmured against the King, Archbishop, and Earl of *Northumberland*, and others, that they were not put to Death as well as the immediate Actors had been, as *John Hall*, who confessed himself to be one, was in the Time of this Session of Parliament hanged, and quartered, and his Head sent to *Calais* to be set upon the Castle: But the King's Authority being pleaded in Justification of this Action, a more moderate Punishment was thought more proper at this Juncture; but that no such Pretences might be used for the future, a Law was made enacting, That it should be no Excuse hereafter for any Persons doing an unlawful Action, to alledge, that he was forced and constrained by the King; and then a general Pardon was granted to all Persons but the Murtherers of the Duke of *Glocester*.

The Parliament having thus proceeded, as to the Things done in King *Richard*'s Reign, went next to the Consideration of what should be done about his Person; and upon the making of a Motion, how he should be disposed of, so that he might not be a Trouble to the King and Nation for the future, there were hot and long Debates, in the House of Lords, concerning it, and among others, *John Merke*, Bishop of *Carlisle*, having always disliked the former Proceedings in deposing King *Richard*, and setting the Duke of *Lancaster* on the Throne, made a long Speech against both; in many Things vindicating King *Richard*, and charging King *Henry*.

This Speech gave a general Disgust, and the Bishop himself was sent Prisoner to the Abbey of *St. Albans*, and the House enacted, "That King *Richard* having been lawfully deposed from his royal Dignity for his Misgovernment, was by the Clemency of King *Henry* granted his Life; yet for the Security of the King-

1 Hen. IV.

The People discontented that the Lords were not put to Death.

Proceedings against King *Richard*.

The Bishop of *Carlisle* sent to the Tower.

1399.

King Henry's
Message to
the Convo-
cation.

“ Kingdom should be kept in close Imprisonment so long as he lived, being allowed a princely Attendance and Maintenance: But if any Person should attempt his Deliverance, King *Richard* himself should be the first Man that should be put to Death for it.

King *Henry* having both Lords and Commons so zealously on his Side, thought it proper to secure the Clergy to his Interest, and to that End, (during this Session of Parliament, the Archbishop having convoked a Synod in *St. Paul's Church*) he sent the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmorland*, who declared to the Clergy, that they were not sent to them to require any Money of them, but to acquaint them with his Majesty's Resolution, to confirm all their Privileges and Immunities, and to join with them as they should desire him, in the Punishment of all Hereticks, and Opposers of the established Religion: For all which, he only craved their Supplications to God, for the Safety of him and his Posterity, and the Prosperity of the Kingdom; which all these presently, solemnly, and religiously promised.

The Parlia-
ment pro-
vide for the
King's Secu-
rity.

The Houses having thus secured the King and Nation against King *Richard*, and the bad Effects of his Government, proceeded to provide as effectually as they could for the future Safety, Greatness, and Continuance of King *Henry*, his Friends and Children; and for that End made several Statutes, viz. “ That no Person, who had been assisting to King *Henry*, either in subduing King *Richard* and his Adherents, or in raising King *Henry* to the royal Dignity, should be hereafter impeached for Rebellion and Treason.” And whereas King *Richard* had procured a Bull of the Pope for the more certain Observation of some Statutes made by him and his Parliament, as tho' there were not sufficient Power in them to enforce Obedience without the Pope's Concurrence: This was look'd upon by the Parliament, as a Derogation to the regal Dignity of *England*, and accordingly they enacted, “ That the Crown of the Realm of *England*, and the Jurisdiction belonging to the same, as also the whole Realm is still, and at all Times lately pass'd, hath been at such Liberty, and enjoyed such an independent and absolute Prerogative, that neither the Pope, nor any other Prince, or Potentate, who is out of the Kingdom, ought, or may intrude himself,

“ or

"or intermeddle with the Rule and Government of
 "the same;" and so secured the full Power of the
 regal Dignity to King Henry: And that not only he
 himself, but his Posterity after him, might enjoy it, an
 Act of Settlement was made to intail the Crown up-
 on King Henry, and the Heirs of his Body lawfully
 begotten, viz. "That from and after the Decease of
 "King Henry, his eldest Son Henry, lately created by
 "his Father, Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, and
 "Earl of Chester, should succeed him in the Crown
 "and Government of the Nation, and his Heirs after
 "him: But for want of such Heirs it should descend
 "and come unto his three younger Brothers, Thomas,
 "John and Humphrey, in Order, in case the Heirs of
 "any, or all of them did not survive them.

King Henry attending this Parliament for his Estab-
 lishment, did not much regard how other Affairs went,
 till that was settled, knowing, that if the Parliament
 stood by him, all other Oppositions would be easily
 overcome, tho' he found the *English* Dominions, both
 at home and abroad, in much Disorder; for the *Scots*
 knowing, that while the Parliament was sitting, those
 Lords, who were the Guardians of the Northern
 Parts could not be absent from it, in this Juncture, in-
 vaded those Countries; and the Inhabitants of them be-
 ing so sorely afflicted with the Pestilence, that few
 Men of Estates or Interest were left in them, there-
 by they had an Opportunity of doing much Mischief,
 and having taken the Castle of *Wark* in *Northumber-*
land, they demolished it.

The People of *Aquitain* were much discontented,
 and ready to desert the *English*, who had rebelled a-
 gainst King *Richard*; the King of *France* was much in-
 censed at the *English*, for their Severity against his Son
 in Law, King *Richard*; and therefore was not a little
 pleased to see the *Aquitani*ans so much disturbed at
 the Change in *England*; and endeavouring to make
 their Discontents turn to his Advantage, sent the Duke
 of *Bourbon* to solicit them to revolt, which they had
 been induced to do, had they not been over-persuaded
 by Sir *Robert Knolles*, the *English* Governour there, and
 some other Men of Note, who told them, that it was
 Madness to yield their Necks to the insupportable Bur-
 then of *French* Tyranny, out of mere Fears and Jeal-
 ousies of a bad Consequence of the Revolution in
 Eng-

1 Hen. IV.

King Henry
 composes
 the Disor-
 ders of the
 Nation.

King Henry
 secures his
 Interest a-
 broad.

1399.

England. King Henry, who was a crafty and watchful Prince, was not insensible of all these Inconveniencies, and with a wonderful Dexterity, applied such suitable Remedies to them all, as soon dispelled the Dangers which threatned him on all Sides. His own Subjects he won by Kindness, taking the Dukes of *Aumerle* and *Exeter* into particular Favour, and special Trust about his Person. The *Scots* he contemned, because they appeared to be rather Robbers than Enemies. The neighbouring Princes he endeavoured to satisfy by sending Ambassadors to them, fully instructed with all Arguments, that would either justify, or render his assuming the royal Dignity plausible; and had such Success with all the Princes, who were unconcerned, that they seem'd to approve what he had done: But the King of *France*, being instigated to it by many of his Nobles, and principally by the Earl of *St Paul*, who had married King *Richard's* half Sister, resolved to make War upon *England*, to restore his Son in Law, King *Richard*. King Henry appeased the People of *Guyenne* and *Aquitain*, by sending over to them the Earl of *Warwick*, a Person faithful to his Interest, with a Body of Men; who behaved himself so prudently towards the wavering People, persuading the better Sort by good Arguments and fair Promises to continue in Subjection, and terrifying the meaner Sort with Threats and Arms, that in a short Time he brought those Provinces to swear Fealty to the King, and yield as willing Obedience to him, as to any of the former Kings of *England*; and to secure their Allegiance, he planted some Garisons among them. King *Richard*, who had been committed Prisoner to the Tower of *London*, during this Session of Parliament, was removed to his Castle of *Leeds* in *Kent*, and a While after to *Pontefract* Castle in *Yorkshire*.

King Henry
keeps his
Christmas at
Windsor.

Things being thus settled, the King kept his *Christmas* at *Windsor*, with Feasting and Sports, after the usual Manner, thinking himself secure from all Dangers within his own Dominions; and having Time enough to prepare against his only open Enemy, the King of *France*. But this sudden Settlement of Affairs, after so great a Change, proved to be weak: For tho' the Nation in general did like and approve of King Henry, yet there were Malecontents, who either out of a Principle of Loyalty, or Pity to King *Richard*, or out of

Dis-

Discontent for their own Sufferings and Losses, were industriously bent upon overthrowing King Henry's Government.

The first Attempt against King Henry was begun while he was giving up himself to the Divertisements of Christmas; and it was contriv'd to be manag'd in a Sport usual at that Time, call'd *Mumming* or *Justring*, in the Manner following. The Abbot of *Westminster*, who being a much better Politician than Divine, had upon that Account been in great Favour with King Richard, was upon his Master's being depos'd much troubled for the Loss of the Grandeur and Honours that he had enjoyed under him; and being also in great Fears of losing what he still enjoyed; because he had often heard King Henry say, when he was a Subject, *that the Revenues of the Church were too great, and the Estates of the Noblemen in England too little*; he thence drew this Conclusion, that he being now King, in Order to ingratiate himself with the Laity, and to strengthen his Interest with the great Men of the Nation, would certainly take away the Revenues of the Abbies, to enrich his Nobles. The Abbot therefore, to prevent this Mischiefe to the Church and himself, invited several of the Nobility and Genrry, whom he knew to be disaffected to the present Government to a Feast in his Monastery, viz. the Lords who had lately been degraded by Parliament, the Earl of *Rutland*, the late Duke of *Amberle*, the Earls of *Huntington* and *Kent*, the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, *Hugh Lord Spencer* late Earl of *Glocester*, the Bishop of *Carlisle*, *Sir Thomas Blunt*, *Sir Bennet Celey*, *Sir Ralph Lumley*, *Sir Bennet Brochas* and one *Magdalen* a Priest, one of King *Richard's* Chaplains; and after Dinner, withdrawing with them into a Chamber, he propounded to them the Restitution of King *Richard*. The Earl of *Holland*, who was half Brother to King *Richard*, whose Mind was full of Revenge against King *Henry* for his late Disgrace, as well as desirous to restore King *Richard*, readily embraced the Proposal, telling the Company very pressingly, *that they were in Conscience obliged to endeavour to set their lawful King on his Throne again, and depose the Usurper, tho' with the Loss of their Lives; that they had no Reason to think it an unlawful Fact, since the Laws and Examples of all civiliz'd Nations, did not barely permit this Action, but*

A Conspiracy to murder King Henry, and restore King Richard, and the Occasion of it.

1400.

w rewarded and honoured the Actors, as the greatest Benefactors to a Commonwealth; and he prevailed upon them so far, that they all promised their utmost Assistance to destroy and murder King Henry, and entered into a sextipartite Indenture, to bind themselves each to other to be faithful and diligent, swearing to keep their Design secret, and attend carefully upon the Execution of it.

The Discovery of it.

The Manner of bringing about what they had contriv'd, was this: The Earls of *Huntington* and *Salisbury* appointed to celebrate solemn Jufts with twenty Men on a Side at *Oxford*, under a Pretence of diverting the King; and the Earl of *Huntington* went to him, to desire his Presence, and that he would be Judge if any Controversy should arise in their Exercise; the King suspecting no ill Design, promised that he would be there at the Time appointed, and the Earls made such Preparations as if they had been in Earnest; having before resolved that when the King was intent upon the Sport, a Party of Men, who were to be placed conveniently for the Design, should fall upon him and kill him. The Plot was carried on smoothly and unsuspectedly, till the Time drew near, and the Lords having gotten all Things in Readiness, were preparing to set out for *Oxford*. The Earl of *Rutland*, the late Duke of *Aumerle*, being on his Way to *Oxford*, left his direct Way to make a Visit to his Father the Duke of *York*. The Earl had brought with him the Counter-Part of the Indenture, in which he was bound to the other Conspirators; and having put it into his Bosom, it was espied by his Father, as they sat at Table, who immediately asked him, what Writing it was, and what was the Purport of it? The Earl being conscious to himself, and knowing how unwelcome such an Enterprize would be to his Father, told him in a very submissive Manner, *that it was nothing that concern'd him, and humbly beg'd that he might be excus'd*. But the Duke taking Notice of his Son's Surprise and Backwardness to shew him the Writing, was the more eager to know the Contents of it, and swearing by *St. George*, that he would see it, flew upon his Son, and took it from him by Force. The Duke having read it, fell into a great Passion with his Son, charging him not only with Treason against the King, but the most ungrateful Perfidy to himself, who in being bound for his Allegiance in the last Parliament, was involved in the same De-

struction

struction with him, telling him, *that since he had so lit-¹ Hen. IV.*
tle Regard to the Safety of a Father, that had been so
tender of his Preservation, as to lay his Life as a Pledge
for it, he would take Care to secure his own Life, tho'
with the Hazard of his; and immediately ordered his
 Horses to be saddled to go to *Windsor*, and discover the
 whole Matter to the King.

The Earl of *Rutland* being terrified with his present
 Danger, and having his Father for his Accuser, was
 in great Perplexity what to do; and seeing nothing but
 unavoidable Ruin would attend the Prosecution of their
 Design, resolv'd to become the first Betrayer of the
 Plot himself, and therefore taking Horse as soon as his
 Father was gone, rode another Way, and got to *Wind-*
for before his Father. The Earl being come to the
 Castle, saying he had earnest Business with the King,
 was admitted in, and having caus'd the Gates to be
 lock'd, he took the Keys with him. Being come into
 the King's Presence, he kneel'd down, and with a de-
 jected Countenance and trembling Voice beg'd his Ma-
 jesty's Mercy and Pardon. The King admiring at his
 Petition, ask'd him, *for what Offence?* Upon which he
 gave him a full Account of the Conspiracy and Con-
 spirators, with the Manner it was design'd to be put in
 Execution. The King entertain'd the Discovery kind-
 ly, and told the Earl, *that if his Relation were true, he*
would pardon him, but if he sought to impose upon him,
it should be at his own Peril. These Things were hard-
 ly pass'd between the King and Earl, before the Duke
 of *York* came; who gave a sufficient Confirmation of
 the Truth of the intended Treason and Plot against his
 Life, by delivering the Indenture to the King. The
 King having made some Reflections upon the Baseness
 and Ingratitude of his Enemies, whom he had spared,
 contrary to the Desire of the People; he began to con-
 sult for his own Safety, and for that End wrote Letters
 to the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland* to
 raise what Forces they could with all Speed, and come
 to him to *London*, whither, lest his Enemies should sur-
 prise him at *Windsor*, he posted with all Speed; and
 having acquainted the Mayor with his Danger, he pro-
 vided a Force in the City for his Defence, resolving to
 abide there, till he saw what Course his Enemies would
 take against him.

The Conspi-
 racy betray'd
 by the Earl
 of Rutland.

1400.

The Lords
carried on
the Rebelli-
on after Dis-
covery.

In the mean Time the Lords and other Conspirators were arriv'd at *Oxford*, where they waited the Coming of the Earl of *Rutland*; but hearing nothing of his or the King's Coming, they readily guess'd the Plot was betray'd; and considering that they having been so lately pardoned, could not hope for Mercy again, which they had abused so grossly, therefore came to a Resolution to attempt to effect that by open Arms, which they had design'd to do more privately: And that they might make their Party as great as possible, they clothed *Magdalen* the Priest, who had been one of King *Richard's* Chaplains, and did much resemble his Master in Person, in royal Robes, and gave it out, that King *Richard* had made his Escape from *Pontfract* Castle, and was come among them to recover his Right. And knowing that the King of *France* would be glad of an Opportunity of restoring his Son-in-law King *Richard*, they sent to him for his Assistance, which tho' they could not have presently, yet it might be of Advantage to them in the Spring of the Year. In the mean Time they sent out their Emissaries to get what Assistance they could to restore King *Richard*; and the People generally pitying the hard Fate of the Captive King, were so wrought upon by their Insinuations, that in a few Days they had gotten together an Army of 40000 Men well arm'd; and in the first Place they march'd towards *Windsor*, to surprise King *Henry*, hoping if they could effect that, to bring Matters to a speedy Conclusion; but the King had gone thence to *London* the Night before, and so that Project miscarried. Meeting with this Disappointment, some advised to march to *London*, and fall upon the King, while the City was unresolved what to do, and unready to make Resistance; but the most Part, who were more timorous and cautious, thought it was best to set King *Richard* at Liberty first; for if it were discover'd that he was still in Prison, all their Plot would be unravell'd. This Advice they follow'd, and marching back to *Colebrook*, went to *Sunnings* near *Reading*, where Queen *Isabel's* Palace was, and told her that King *Richard* was escaped from his Imprisonment in *Pontfract* Castle, and was at the Head of an Army of an hundred thousand Men. The Queen was so overjoy'd at this News, that she immediately defac'd King *Henry's* Arms, and pull'd off his Badge from her Servants, who were constrain'd to

to wea
meet K
along,
who w

Whe
ed their
their Q
late D
one In
Exeter,
in ano
Friend
that reb
of the
soon di
ther ab
Time v
and wit
vants;
bury, w
the Pla
were al
cept th
Lords
to furt
Fire in
Escape
Houses
them t
prov'd
at their
them, a
to be th
headed
Market
Town,
suit of
they fle
King
my, wi
being c
vice the
Rebels
Bernar
Lords,
chief L

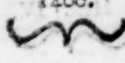
to wear it, and then went along with the Lords to ^{Hen. IV.} meet King *Richard*; exhorting the People as she pass'd along, to take Arms, and vindicate their injur'd King, who was, is, and should be their lawful Sovereign.

When they were come to *Cirencester*, they encamp'd their Army in the Fields; but the Lords took up their Quarters in the Town, the Earl of *Kent*, the late Duke of *Surrey*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* in one Inn; and the Earl of *Huntington* late Duke of *Exeter*, and the Lord *Spencer* late Duke of *Glocester*, in another. The Bailiff of *Cirencester* being a fast Friend to King *Henry*, observing the ill Conduct of that rebellious Rout, and considering that if the Heads of the Faction could be secur'd, the Multitude would soon dissolve of themselves, he therefore getting together about eighty Archers, and such other Arms as the Time would permit, beset the Inns which were weak and without Guards, saving a small Attendance of Servants; and tho' the Duke of *Exeter* and Earl of *Salisbury*, with their Servants, made as good a Defence as the Place and their Company would permit, yet they were all taken and carried Prisoners to the Abbey, except the Duke of *Exeter* and Sir *John Shelley*. The Lords Servants and Retainers us'd all Means possible to further their Masters Escape, setting the Town on Fire in several Places, hoping that they might make their Escape while the Townsmen were busy in saving their Houses and Goods: Others fled to the Army to bring them to rescue their Captains and Leaders; but all prov'd in vain: For the Townsmen were so enrag'd at their setting their Houses on Fire, that they neglected them, and bringing forth the Lords, whom they thought to be the Authors of this mischievous Action, they beheaded the Duke of *Surrey* and Earl of *Salisbury* in the Market-Place. And the Army seeing the Fires in the Town, and thinking that King *Henry*, who was in Pursuit of them, with a good Army, had entred the Town, they fled every Man to save himself.

King *Henry*, who was marching down with his Army, with Intention to stop the Progress of the Rebels; being come to *Oxford*, receiv'd the News of the Service the Men of *Cirencester* had done him, and that the Rebels were disperst; and that Sir *Bennet Shelley*, Sir *Bernard Brochas*, Sir *Thomas Blunt*, and twenty eight Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen more, who were the chief Leaders of the Rebels, were brought thither under

Several of the Rebels executed.

1400.

 a strong Guard, to be dispos'd of at his Pleasure: He caused them to be executed immediately at *Oxford*. Several others of the Lords, and those who were chief in the Revolt, were fled, as the Duke of *Exeter*, and Sir *John Shelley*, who making their Escape into *Essex*, attempted several Times to get over into *France*, but being driven back by contrary Winds, were at last apprehended at *Prittlewell*, and being carried to *Plesby*, were executed in the very Place where the Duke had before arrested the Duke of *Glocester*. The Earl of *Glocester* fled towards *Wales*, but was taken and beheaded at *Bristol*. *Magdalen* the Priest, the counterfeit *Richard*, with one *Fereby*, another of King *Richard's* Chaplains, were seiz'd in their Flight to *Scotland*, and sent up to *London*, where they were hang'd and quarter'd. The Heads and Quarters of many of the Conspirators were set up on *London-Bridge*, and were likewise sent into other Parts of the Nation to be set up for a Terror against such Attempts for the future; which, tho' it was a just Punishment, yet it was thought by many to favour too much of Cruelty, and they spared not to say, *that in a short Time they should wish they still had King Richard for their Governor; the Faults which proceeded from his Remissness and Mildness being more tolerable than the Cruelty of their new King.* The Abböt of *Westminster*, who had been the Author of this Rebellion, fled from his Monastery, and took the Disappointment so to Heart, that he fell suddenly into an Apoplexy of which he died shortly after. And the Bishop of *Carlisle* who had been condemn'd for his Rebellion, prevented his Execution by dying of Grief and Trouble in Prison.

King Richard
murdered.

Altho' most of King *Richard's* best Friends were thus taken off by this first Attempt, yet so long as the Cause remain'd, King *Richard* being alive, King *Henry* thought he could never promise himself any Security, but that upon every slight Discontent, the Malecontents would make Use of the plausible Pretence of restoring King *Richard*, to revenge themselves and disturb his Quiet, (for notwithstanding the Rebellion was now suppress'd, yet the Body of the Rebels still remain'd, wanting only Heads to lead them;) and that as long as King *Richard* was alive, whose Right was confirm'd by twenty two Years Possession, he should be look'd upon but as an Usurper: These Arguments grounded upon strong Fears and Presumptions made him first think *Richard's* Death necessary, and afterwards put him upon Resolu-

tions

tions to destroy him. Historians differ very much in the Manner of King *Richard's* Death; tho' most of them agree, it was by King *Henry's* Means. Some say King *Richard* voluntarily starv'd himself to Death, for Discontent at the ill Success of the late Rebellion; but this seems very improbable. Others who impute King *Richard's* Death to King *Henry's* Order or Encouragement, do nevertheless differ in the Method of doing it. Some write, that he was by King *Henry's* Order kept fifteen Days together without Food, and so with the Help of the Cold was starv'd to Death. Others relate, that he was daily serv'd with Plenty of Dishes fit for a King's Table, as had been ordered by Parliament, but was not permitted to taste of any of them, and so died with Hunger. But the most follow the Relation of an Author of those Times, who seems to have had very good Intelligence of the Manner of his Death, who thus relates it; That King *Henry* one Day sitting at Table very sad and melancholy, burst out into these Expressions, *How miserable is my Condition, who live in continual Fears and Dangers from but one Cause, and yet have no Man so much my Friend as to free me from them!* Sir *Pierce de Exton* being present, and hearing these Words, easily guess'd what the King meant; and thinking that it would be acceptable to the King, to undertake to execute his Desire without an express Command from him, immediately went accompanied with eight Ruffians to *Pontfract* Castle to execute his bloody Design. When he was arrived there, he presently ordered the Gentleman who was King *Richard's* Taster to neglect his Service, and let him eat what he pleas'd, because he should not eat long. When his Dinner was serv'd in, the Taster omitted his Duty; whereupon King *Richard* demanded the Reason of it; the Taster replied, *that Sir Pierce de Exton, who was lately come from the King, had forbid him.* King *Richard* being enrag'd at this Answer, catch'd up the carving Knife, and striking the Taster with it, said, *the Devil take Harry of Lancaster, and thee together.* As soon as the King had spoken these Words, in came Sir *Pierce* and his eight Attendants armed. The Roughness of their Entrance plainly discover'd their Design; however King *Richard* was so far from being daunted at their Presence, that he wrested a Pole-Ax out of one of their Hands, and stood upon his Defence. Sir *Pierce*

1400.

and his Russians persued their Design, and assaulted the King; but he defended himself so well, that he kill'd four of them before they could master him: But at last Sir *Pierce* getting behind him, struck him a Blow on the Head, and fell'd him, and so he died. When the News of King *Richard's* Death was brought to King *Henry*, (however it might inwardly please him, yet) he receiv'd it openly with no small Tokens of Sorrow for his untimely Fate, and shew'd a great Disgust against the Instruments of it; so that Sir *Pierce Exton*, who expected a great Reward for this Piece of Service, was forc'd to fly to escape the Punishment due to his Crime, (which King *Henry* for his own Honour seem'd zealous to execute) and died in Discontent and Horror of Conscience.

The Inter-
ment of
King *Rich-
ard*.

King *Henry* order'd King *Richard's* Body to be embalm'd and wrap'd in Sear-Cloths, and cover'd with Lead, all but the Face, and to be set in the Minster at *Pontfract* several Days, to be seen of all Persons, who, either out of Curiosity, or Pity, had a Mind to behold him. From thence it was remov'd to *London*, and was shew'd to all Spectators in most of the principal Towns thro' which it was carried. When the Corps arrived at *London*, it was carried thro' the City bare-fac'd, and placed in *St. Paul's Church*, three Days, open to all Beholders; during which Time, solemn Obsequies were held, both in that Cathedral, and at *Westminster*. King *Henry* himself and all the Magistrates and chief Men of the City being present at them. These Ceremonies being perform'd according to the Religion of those Times, the King commanded his Corps to be carried down to *Langley-Abbey* in *Buckinghamshire*, and to be there interr'd in the Church of the *Fryars-Preachers*. This was perform'd by the Bishop of *Chester*, and the Abbots of *Waltham* and *St. Albans*; but none either of the Nobility, or Commonalty, were allowed to attend it, nor any Dinner or other Ceremony us'd at it, as was the Custom of those Times. But King *Henry V.* afterwards ordered his Body to be brought back again, and magnificently entomb'd at *Westminster*, by the Body of his Queen *Anne*, endeavouring by this pious Deed to expiate the Injustice and Cruelty done by his Father to him.

Several great
Persons die.

Much about the Time of the Death of King *Richard*, the Dutcheß of *Glocester* died of Grief for the Loss of

of her eldest Son *Humphrey*, who died of the Pestilence at *Chester*. And *Thomas Mowbrey* Duke of *Norfolk*, who had been banish'd for his Life for his accusing the King while he was Duke of *Hereford*, died in his Exile at *Venice*; and *John* Duke of *Bretagne* died in *France*, leaving behind him a Widow *Joanna*, who was not long after married to King *Henry*. Also *Edmund* Duke of *York*, died about this Time, leaving behind him two Sons, the Earl of *Rutland*, and *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, who marrying *Anna* the Heiress of *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, and *Philippa*, the only Child surviving of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, became afterwards a Competitor for the Crown of *England*.

While these Matters were transacting in *England*, the King of *France* was very active and busy in gathering such an Army as might be able to revenge the Injury done to his Son-in-law King *Richard*; and by the Assistance of his Nobles, who readily concurr'd with him, had got all Things necessary for the Expedition ready against the Spring, and had drawn down a mighty Army into *Picardy*, intending to sail from thence into *England*; but before the Forces were imbarked, News was brought to the Army of King *Richard's* Death; upon this, the King and chief Men engag'd in that Enterprize, thought, that since it was impossible to restore him, it was the best Way to desist from the intended Invasion. It was thereupon resolved, that a solemn Embassage should be sent over to *Henry*, to demand that Queen *Isabel* should be sent over to her Father into *France*, with her Dower; and an Embassage was sent accordingly; but King *Henry* gave them no other Answer but this, that he would shortly send his Commissioners to *Calais*, to treat and conclude with their Master about that and several other Affairs of Importance to both Realms, and then would do what was just and reasonable.

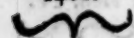
This Summer the *Welsh* being grown weary of Subjection to the *English*, thinking it a fit Opportunity to revolt, when Subjection was come to be a disputable Duty, set up *Owen Glendour* to be their Prince and Captain, and being resolved to recover their antient Liberties, and free themselves from the *English* Yoke, they join'd in a firm League with him. This *Owen* was a Man of no great Parentage nor Estate; but being a Gentleman of great Courage, and Boldness, and having been

Hen. IV.

The King of France ready to invade England desists from it upon the News of King Richard's Death.

The Welsh rebel under Owen Glendour.

1400.



been a Servant to King *Richard* in *Flint-Castle*, was very forward to oppose King *Henry*, partly to vindicate his Master, and partly his own private Injuries. And therefore having had a Dispute about a Common which lay between his Estate and the Estate of *Reginald Lord Gray of Ruthen*, which had been enjoy'd by *Owen* in King *Richard's* Days, but had since been adjudged by Law to the Lord *Gray*, he took Occasion from the rebellious Humour of his Countrymen to invade the Lord *Gray's* Estate, with a Body of Men, burning down his Houses and Woods, trampling down his Corn, and barbarously murdering his Servants and Tenants. The Lord *Gray*, with what Assistance he could get, stood in his own Defence; but being overpower'd by *Owen Glendour's* Party, was taken Prisoner. *Owen* thinking by that Means to raise his Family, treated the Lord *Gray* civilly, and promis'd to set him at Liberty upon Condition he should marry his Daughter: But altho' the Lord *Gray* at first scorn'd the Offer, yet at last considering that he was unable to pay his Ransom, without greater Damage to his Estate, he did marry her to him: But *Owen* dealt deceitfully with him, and kept him Prisoner till his Death. The *Welsh* encourag'd by their Success against the Lord *Gray*, made an Inroad into *Herefordshire*, and having spoil'd and ravag'd the Country, return'd home with much Prey. *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, who was at that Time retir'd to his Country-Seat at *Wigmore* in that Country, commiserating the Calamities his Country suffer'd, assembled all the Gentry of those Parts, to repress the Insolencies of the *Welsh*, and engaging with them, sustain'd a long and bloody Fight; but at last having lost a thousand Men, was overcome by the *Welsh*, and taken Prisoner. The *Welsh* by this Victory grew very insolent, and not only abus'd the Bodies of the slain, but loaded the Earl of *March* with Chains, and imprisoned him in a nasty Dungeon, and ravag'd all the Countries on the West of the River *Severn*, destroying and burning the Towns and Villages with the utmost Barbarity. King *Henry* was not ignorant of these Mischiefs, but would not concern himself in them; and tho' he was earnestly solicited by the Friends of the Earl of *March* to interpose in his Behalf, and free him from his Captivity, yet he would give no Ear to their Sollicitations, knowing that the Earl's Title to the

The Earl of
March taken
Prisoner by
the Welsh.

Crown

Crown
but tol
rel, and
him.

Whi
Scots b
tho' the
did the
had do
the gre
under
the En
esteem
took
Henry

Geor
ving b
Son of
Mone
which
in his
the D
with t
Daugh
mande
land,
off wi
Earl f
missio
minio
him b
Engli
ses.

pen t
might
into h
missio
Scotla
land,
Advis
into
and r

TH
was f
prive

Crown and his Liberty might be prejudicial to him'; ^{2 Hen. IV} but told them, *the Earl had not engaged in his Quarrel, and therefore he was under no Obligation to redeem him.*

While Matters were thus manag'd by the *Welsh*, the *Scots* busily molested *England*, both by Sea and Land, tho' they got no great Advantage by it; for the *English* did the *Scots* as much Damage in the Isles of *Orkney*, as they had done the *English* in *Northumberland*; for they took the greatest Part of the *Scotch* Fleet which was sent out under the Command of Sir *Robert Logan* to surprise the *English* Fishermen. However the Peace was not esteem'd to be actually broken, till *Robert* King of *Scots* took Occasion to proclaim open War against King *Henry* upon the Account following.

George Dunbar, Earl of the Marches of *Scotland*, having betroth'd his Daughter to Prince *David* the eldest Son of the King of *Scotland*, had paid a great Sum of Money to the King in Consideration of that Marriage, which was shortly to be celebrated; but was defeated in his Agreement by the Earl of *Douglafs*, who envying the Dignity of the Earl of *March's* Family, prevail'd with the King to marry his Son Prince *David* to his Daughter *Mariel*. The Earl of *March* upon this, demanded the Restitution of his Money of the King of *Scotland*, but he either not able, or not willing, put him off with delusory Answers and Delays. Upon this the Earl sends Messengers to King *Henry*, requesting a Permission for himself and Family to come into his Dominions, complaining very grievously of the Injury done him by his own King, intending by the Assistance of the *English*, to revenge his Wrongs, and recover his Losses. King *Henry* thinking, that if there should happen to be War between the two Nations, the Earl might be of Service to him, gave him Liberty to come into his Kingdom. Upon the first Notice of this Permission, the Earl of *March* immediately fled out of *Scotland* with his Family, to the Earl of *Northumberland*, who gave him a very kind Reception, and by his Advice and Assistance, the Earl made many Incursions into *Scotland*, burning and plundering their Towns, and returning with much Booty.

The King of *Scots* hearing, that the Earl of *March* was fled into *England*, and turned his open Enemy, deprived him of his Honour, seized upon all his Possessi-

1400.
The King of
Scots Mes-
sage to King
Henry, and
his Answer.

ons and Goods in Scotland, and openly proclaimed him a Traytor, and sent Messengers to King Henry, to tell him, *That he must either deliver up to him the Earl of March, or banish him his Dominions, or else not expect that the Truce between the two Nations should last long.* King Henry returned this Answer; *That he was desirous of the Continuance of the Peace, but not fearful of the War, which he would rather run the Hazard of, than falsify his Honour and Promise to the Earl of March, and his Company, who had come into his Nation by Permission and Leave.* This Answer so enraged the King of Scots, that he proclaimed War against the King of England; and so both the Kings made Preparations for it against the next Spring.

The Greek
Emperor
comes into
England.

About this Time Immanuel Paleologus, the Grecian Emperor, came into England to beg King Henry's Assistance, because his Dominions were in great Danger of being lost by the Incurfions of the Turks, under Bajazet the sixth, their Emperor. The King met him at Black-beath, and with great Honour and Respect, conducted him through the City of London, and entertained him magnificently, during the Time of his Stay in England, and dismissed him with rich Gifts and Promises of Assistance, when he should have Peace settled among his own Subjects.

Second Par-
liament, and
its Acts.

The Parliament met at Westminster the twenty first of January, and made diverse Acts for the Benefit both of Church and State: But that which was then thought to be the best Act for the Support of the Church, was the Statute against the Lollards. The Occasion of this Act was this: One William Sawter, a Priest, and a Follower of the Doctrines of Wickliff, having formerly recanted his Opinions before the Bishop of Norwich, and afterwards repented of his Recantation, grew more zealous; and that he might atone for his Lapse, by an Act of singular Courage and Charity, came into the Parliament House and put up a Petition, that he might be permitted to speak something for the inestimable Benefit of the Nation, designing to propound a general Reformation, both of Doctrine and Discipline, in the Church. The Bishops, who some of them knew him to be a Man of singular Piety and Virtue, yet because he worshiped God after the Way which they called Heresy, opposed his Request, and desired, that he might be turned over to

The Occasion
of the Sta-
tute against
the Lollards.

the Convocation to be examined; which being granted, ^{2 Hen. IV.} he was there accused of holding heterodox Opinions about the Worship of Saints and Angels, Pilgrimages to Tombs and Shrines, and the real Presence of the Body and Blood of Christ in the Sacrament. Many Days were spent in his Examination and Conviction; and he stily maintaining his Opinions, the Clergy were very pressing with the King to provide a Remedy against so growing an Evil; and he willing to gratify the Clergy, caused it to be enacted, "That none ^{The Statute against the Lollards.} should preach without License, except Persons privileged; That none should preach any Doctrine contrary to the Catholick Faith, or the Determination of the Holy Church; and that none should favour, or abet such Preachers or their Doctrines, nor keep their Books, but deliver them to the Diocefan of the Place, within forty Days after the Proclamation of this Statute: And if any Persons were defamed, or suspected of doing against this Ordinance, then the Ordinary might arrest them, and keep them in Prison, till they were canonically cleared of the Articles laid to their Charge, or abjured them according to the Laws of the Church; and if they were convicted, he might fine them and keep them in Prison as to him should seem fit; and if any being convicted, did refuse to abjure; or after Abjuration did fall into a Relapse, then they were to be left to the secular Court, and the Mayors, Sheriffs, and Bailiffs being present at the passing of the Sentence, were to receive them after Sentence, and they before the People, in a high Place, to be burnt.

No sooner was this Act passed, but the Clergy put it in Execution upon *William Sawter*, to be a Terror ^{William Sawter executed.} to others; for he having been convicted of Heresy and Relapse, the King issued out his Writ, *February* the twenty sixth, for his Execution, which was done accordingly; and so the Act was sealed with Blood.

As soon as the Parliament was broke up, the King, ^{A Treaty between the English and French; and Queen Isabel sent into France.} according to his Promise, sent his Ambassadors to *Guisnes*, to treat with the *French* about the Restitution of *Queen Isabel*, and other Matters of Importance. The Matters that the *English* chiefly insisted on were, that *Queen Isabel* might be given in Marriage to King *Henry*, since the Marriage between her and King *Richard* had never been consummated by actual Knowledge

1401. ledge; and that the Truce which was made by King *Richard* for thirty Years, might be continued. The *French* Embassadors would not treat about the Marriage, because they had no Instructions about it; but they came to an Agreement concerning the Truce, that so much of it as was unexpired, should go on till the thirty Years were out. Queen *Isabel* was sent to *France*, and was afterwards married to *Charles* the eldest Son of the Duke of *Orleans*.

King *Henry* goes into *Scotland* to make War there. King *Henry*, having gotten together a great Army to invade *Scotland*, thought it was most adviseable, not to wait for the coming of the *Scots*, but to fall upon their Country, because by that Means the Miseries of War would fall entirely on the *Scots*, and both Sides make a Prey of *Scotland*: Therefore he sent some of his light Troops before, to terrify them that they might not invade *England*, before he could draw his whole Army thither; so at last entring *Scotland* with all his Forces, he burnt many of their Towns and Villages, took many of their Castles, and destroy'd the greatest Part of *Edinburgh* and *Leith*, sparing nothing but Monasteries and Churches. The *Scots* being terrified with the Greatness of the King's Army, made no Resistance, but fled before them, so that wherever he came, the Country was in his Power, and at the Mercy of the Soldiers.

King *Henry* challeng'd by the Duke of *Albany*. While King *Henry* remain'd in *Scotland*, having the Lords Wardens of the *Marches* with him, the *Scots* made Inroads into *England*, and did much Mischief in *Cumberland*, about *Bamborough* Castle; but retired, when the People got together to oppose them. In the mean Time, about the End of *September*, the King besieged the Castle of *Maidens* in *Edinburgh*, which was defended by *David* Duke of *Rothsay*, and *Archibald* Earl of *Douglass*. During this War, the King of *Scotland* being sick, and unable to govern, *Robert* Duke of *Albany* was appointed Regent, who sent a Message to King *Henry*, desiring him to forbear making an Assault upon the Castle for six Days, and he would give him Battel, and either raise the Siege, or lose his Life. King *Henry* being a very magnanimous and valiant Prince, who put more Value upon an heroick Action than taking an inconsiderable Fort, receiv'd the Herald with great Civility, rewarded him nobly, giving him a Silk Gown, and Chain of Gold, and sent the Duke Word, that he would

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

383

would tarry the Time desired. But it did appear after-³ Hen. IV.
wards, that the Duke had no other Design, but by De-
lays to keep the King from Action, till either Want or
Winter should oblige him to break up the Siege, it be-
ing late in the Year: For the Duke never kept his Pro-
mise, nor did he dare to look King *Henry* in the Face.
It happen'd according to the Regent's Project; for the
King generously waiting longer than his Appointment,
the Weather proving bad, and Provision growing scan-
ty, he was forc'd to quit the Siege, and return home
without any farther Action. The King, and his Army
being withdrawn, the *Scots* again haras'd the Borders,
under the Command of Sir *Thomas Haliburton*, and
Sir *Patrick Hebborn*, shewing that tho' they had not
Courage to fight, yet they had Malice enough to re-
venge themselves of their Enemies. And thus the first
Summer's War between the *English* and *Scots* ended.

While the King and his Army were in *Scotland*, King *Henry*
goes against
the *Welsh*.
Owen Glendour and his Party were very active in burn-
ing, plundering and destroying the Counties adjoining.
The King being return'd and hearing of the Miseries of
his Subjects in those Parts; tho' he was not much con-
cern'd to revenge the Quarrel of the Earl of *March*, nor
took much Pity of his Captivity, because he had been better
pleas'd if a worse Fate had befallen him; march'd his
Army against the *Welsh*, to punish them for their Cruel-
ty. But *Owen Glendour* and his Party withdrew, and
betook themselves to the Deserts, and inaccessible Pla-
ces about *Snowden Hills*, so that the King could not
do any Thing against them, but plunder and waste the
Country, which he did severely carrying away a great
Booty of Cattel.

King *Henry's* Enemies, tho' discourag'd by the ill Some Acci-
dents of this
Year.
Success of their Plot the last Year, so that they did
not dare to appear in any open and form'd Action, yet
are suppos'd to have convey'd a Galthrap into his Bed,
which having three Iron Spikes, very sharp, stood up-
wards, so that if he had chanced to have lyen down up-
on it, it was almost impossible for him to have escaped
Death, but discovering it before he went into Bed, he
escap'd the Danger. Tho' great Enquiry was made after
the Contrivers and Layers, yet they could never be found
out. Wheat this Year, which a little before was at
four Shillings a Quarter, was advanced to sixteen Shil-
lings, and had been much dearer, if Rye had not im-
ported

1401.

ported by Merchants out of *Sprucia*; yet notwithstanding this Judgment of Famine, the Natives were not humbled by it, but great Pride and Vanity in Cloathing were used, Masters and Servants wearing Gowns with Poke-Sleeves down to the Ground. This Year, the Conduit in *Cornhill* was built, in a Place, where a Prison for Night Walkers call'd *the Inn* had stood before.

Libels and
Reports a-
gainst the
Kings, and
Authors pu-
nished.

A very terrible blazing Star appear'd about the beginning of *March*, which was afterwards thought to portend the bloody Wars between the *English* and *Scots*, and the Executions done this Year upon the Malecontents to the Government. The latter rais'd diverse Reports, that King *Richard* was alive, and would shortly come with a powerful Army to recover his Right, and industriously dispers'd them thro' the whole Nation, by Books and Libels, in which they aspers'd King *Henry*, as an Usurper and cruel Tyrant, and encourag'd all Persons by Hopes of great Rewards, to assist King *Richard*. The King to deter these Disturbers, declar'd he would be at any Pains or Charge to discover those that there instrumental in promoting these Reports, and would spare none of them. Several Persons were apprehended on this Account and executed, as Sir *Roger Clarendon*, who was said to be the Bastard Son of *Edward* the black Prince; and eight Fryars were hang'd and beheaded for reporting, that King *Richard* was alive. A Priest was hang'd and quarter'd, who had a List of several Persons, who had avouch'd that King *Richard* was alive, and had promis'd him their Assistance: But several Persons who had been imprison'd on that Account, were discharg'd, there being no Proof against them; the Priest himself confessing, that he had only set down their Names by Hear-say, and had never heard any Thing of that Nature from them: *Walter Baldock* Prior of *Laund*, a Monastery in *Leicestershire*, was hang'd for Misprision of Treason, because he had confess'd in his Examination, that he knew some who had been industrious in spreading such treasonable Reports. *Richard Frisby* a Doctor in Divinity was likewise executed, for saying, upon the Report that King *Richard* was alive; *That if he were indeed alive, he would fight to Death in his Quarrel*. These and many others suffer'd for those Reports and Libels; the King sparing none, according as he had threatned.

Owen

Owen
mer wi
ing, bu
Upon
Wales
of the
retain
well-pr
a panic
King a
duing
enter up
tempest
much b
out doi
Storms
they w
magical
be a W
The
Wales,
Guardia
and tha
tunity
chosen
ter'd N
many S
berland,
the Sect
a suffici
and aft
having
Comm
this Ba
Earl of
lish, an
Englan
my of t
enrag'd
of Nor
tice of
ees in
Rood D
The Ba
Scots bei
V O I

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

385

Owen Glendour, and his *Welsh*-men, began the Summer with fresh Assaults upon the Inhabitants, plundering, burning, and laying waste all wherever they came. Upon this the King assembled a great Army, to reduce *Wales* to its due Obedience. *Owen Glendour* hearing of the mighty Preparations, could not himself seem to retain so much as Hopes of withstanding so great and well-provided an Army; and the *Welsh* were seiz'd with a panick Fear of their approaching Destruction. The King and Nobles went with full Resolution of subduing *Wales* before their Return; but before they could enter upon any Action of Consequence, such foul and tempestuous Weather happened, that the Army suffered much by it, and the King was oblig'd to return without doing any Thing worthy his Reputation. These Storms falling out at a Season of the Year, when they were most unusual, were said to be rais'd by the magical Skill of *Owen Glendour*, who was deem'd to be a Wisard.

3 Hen. IV.
King Henry's second Expedition to Wales.

The *Scots* hearing of King *Henry's* Expedition into *Wales*, suppos'd that the Northern Lords who were the Guardians of the Borders, were gone along with him, and that therefore they could not have a fitter Opportunity to invade *England*. Sir *Patrick Hebborn* was chosen their Captain, and with a considerable Army enter'd *Northumberland*, as far as *Newcastle*, carrying off many Spoils and Prisoners. But the Earl of *Northumberland*, who was left behind to watch the Motion of the *Scots*, hearing of these Things, fell upon them with a sufficient Body of Men, at a Town call'd *Nesbyt*; and after an obstinate Fight put them to the Rout, having slain Sir *Patrick*, and many of the principal Commanders, and common Soldiers. The News of this Battel made the *Scots* very uneasy; and *Archibald* Earl of *Douglas* resolv'd to take Revenge on the *English*, and to that End procur'd a Commission to invade *England* at his own Charge, and having rais'd an Army of twenty thousand Men, entred *England* like an enrag'd Enemy, destroying all before him. The Earl of *Northumberland*, and his Son *Hotspur*, having Notice of the Incurfion of the *Scots*, augmented their Forces in Proportion to their Enemies, and upon *Holy Rood Day* met the *Scots* at *Halidown*, and engag'd them. The Battel was very furious and continu'd long; but the *Scots* being unable to bear the violent Shot of the *English*

The Scots invade England, and are twice routed.

1402.

Archers, were forc'd to give Ground, and were put to flight with an incredible Loss; for there were slain twenty seven Knights, and ten thousand common Soldiers; and *Mordach* Earl of *Fife*, Earl *Douglas's* Son, the Earls of *Angus*, *Murray*, *Athol*, and *Monteith*, and a great Number of Men, were taken Prisoners.

The Earl of Northumberland makes Incursions into Scotland.

The Earl of *Northumberland*, resolving to pursue the Advantage he had gotten over so restless and troublesome an Enemy, invaded *Scotland*, and entering *Tivendale*, he burnt and destroy'd the whole Country, and then laid Siege to the Castle of *Cocklaws*, of which Sir *Thomas Greenlow* was Governor; who being unable to hold out against so great an Army, promis'd to resign the Castle to the Earl of *Northumberland*, if it were not reliev'd within three Months; but before that Time was expired, the King call'd off the Earl to serve in another Enterprize, and so the Castle was preserv'd.

Particular Accidents.

This Year the Devil is said to have appear'd in *Danbury* Church in *Essex*, in the Habit of a grey Fryar, and behav'd himself so outrageously, that the Inhabitants were very much affrighted: At the same Time a great Tempest arose thereabout, which blew down the Steeple, and carried away half the Chancel. The Lady *Blanch*, King *Henry's* eldest Daughter, was married to *William* Duke of *Bavaria*, the eldest Son of *Lewis Barbatus*, the Emperor. *Thomas Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, died on the 8th of *April*. Also Sir *Lewis Clifford*, who for a considerable Time had inclin'd to the *Lollards*, deserted them, and confessing his Error, discover'd all that he knew of them, their Doctrines, and chief Ministers.

Third Parliament its Acts and Taxes.

At *Michaelmas*, a Parliament met at *Westminster*. In this Parliament, the King declaring, that he had in Remembrance the faithful Hearts, and inward Affections, that the Clergy of *England* had born to him, and also the great Charges they had sustain'd for his Honour and Profit, since the Time of his Coronation; and therefore being desirous to be unto them a gracious Lord, he caus'd several Privileges of the Church and Clergy to be established and enacted. There were nine several Acts made to settle the Disorders in *Wales*: That the *Welsh* should not pass any judicial Sentence upon an *English*-man, have any publick Assemblies, to wear Arms, or buy any out of *England*, raise any Forts Castles, to bear nor any Office in Church or

State;

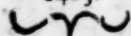
State; and commanding them to put all their walled ⁴ Hen. IV. Towns into the Custody of *Englishmen*. The Parliament gave the King a Tenth and a half of the Clergy, and a Fifteenth of the Laity, and some other Subsidies, and particularly recommended to the King's Favour, the *Scotch* Earl of *March*, because he had behav'd himself with so much Fidelity to the *English* Nation; and then were dismiss'd.

King *Henry* having, the Year before, made some Propositions of Marriage to *Joan de Navarre*, the Widow of the Duke of *Bretagne*, which were agreed to, he sent several Persons of Honour into *Bretagne* about *Christmas*, to conduct her over into *England*; and accordingly she landed safely at *Falmouth* the 7th of *February*. The King having heard of her Arrival, went to meet her at *Winchester*, and there was married to her in *St. Swithin's* Church, by the Bishop of that See. Thence he pass'd with her to *London*, where they were magnificently receiv'd by the Citizens; and she was crown'd at *Westminster* by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *February* 26th. She had three Sons, but she left them in *France*, under the Care and Guardianship of that King. Her Coronation was celebrated with great State and Magnificence, and there appear'd nothing but Signs of an universal Joy, not only at Court, but throughout the Kingdom, for these Nuptials.

The Earl of *St Paul*, who envied King *Henry's* Power, because it was rais'd upon the Ruins of his Interest, rais'd an Army of sixteen or seventeen thousand Men, and made a Descent upon the Isle of *Wight*, and burnt two small Villages. The Inhabitants of that Island, having before suffer'd the like Injuries from the *French*, and found by Experience that they lov'd Plunder more than fighting, and would seldom hold out against but a faint Resistance, drew up against them to fight them. The *French* seeing the Courage of the People, tho' their Number was sufficient to have conquer'd the Island, withdrew to their Ships, with little Prey, and less Honour. The Earl, that he might make the Expedition seem the more glorious, knighted four of his Captains, as he pretended for their Valour and Bravery: But those in his Army of more Penetration repin'd at the Fruitlessnes of the Expedition, well knowing that the Charge of it was far greater than the Gain. About the same Time, the Earl of *Clermont*, Son to

The *French* invade the Isle of *Wight* and *Galesaign*.

1403.



The Rebel-
lion of the
Earl of Nor-
thumberland,
its Cause
and Success.

the Duke of *Bourbon*, was sent with an Army against the Subjects of King *Henry* in *Gascoign*, and took the Castles of *St. Peter*, *St. Mary*, and *Newcastle*, from the *English*; and at the same Time, the Lord *De la Bret* took the Castle of *Carlasfin*; all which were a considerable Loss to the *English*. King *Henry*'s Courage would not have patiently suffer'd those Damages, without a sharp Revenge, had his Kingdom been at Peace at Home; but before he could get his Preparations ready for a foreign Expedition, the Rebellion of his own Subjects call'd for all his Endeavours to secure himself at Home. The Occasion of it was this.

The Earl of *Northumberland*, in his late Victories over the *Scots*, had taken many considerable Prisoners; and King *Henry* not content with the Peace, that those Victories had brought to his Dominions, was desirous to share in the Profit of them, and to that end, requir'd of the Earl all the Lords, whose Ransom would raise great Sums. The Earl alledg'd, "*That as it was just, that they who had undergone the Danger of the Battel, should have all the Advantages of Prey, and Prisoners; so it had been the Custom of the Kings of England, to allow the Lords of the North, all the Advantages of the Scots Wars, to encourage them in defending their Dominions, and make up the Damages of the continual Depredations of that faithless People.*"

The King was very angry at this Denial, and not only took from him the Prisoners he demanded, but carried his Resentment so high, as not to suffer the said Earl to come into his Presence. The Earl who had been so instrumental to raise King *Henry* to the Throne resented this Severity, not only as great Injustice, but also as great Ingratitude; and therefore resolv'd to revenge his Wrong on the King himself, thinking, that as he had set him up, so he had Power enough to pull him down. The Earl was indeed in very great Power in the North, and in his Country commanded as a petty King. He was also nearly related to *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, having married his Aunt *Eleanor*; and *Mortimer*, being Heir to the Crown, had no small Interest in the Nation; and upon that Account, he might very well pretend some Obligation to restore him to his Right, or at least to his Liberty. These two Interests the Earl thought sufficient to effect his Design, especially since the Earl of *March* being upon fair Terms with *Owen*

Glendour,

Glendour
Welsh
Train o
Advice
ter, goe
his King
miserabl
The King
" or rel
" was n
" suffer
" dour,
The Ea
angry, a
would
And his
Heir of
ber will
long af
Northun
and Ow
of Bang
firmly,
ry); and
on, "G
" yond
" supre
" shoul
" the R
" enjoy
" supre
all emp
suffici
land, b
Neighbo
of them
Captives
mising t
Parts b
count t
ing thus
" King
" Calu
" Aver
" his P

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

389

Glendour, it would be no difficult Matter to unite the 4 *Hen. IV.*
Welsh with him, in dethroning King *Henry*. The
 Train of the Rebellion being thus laid, the Earl by the
 Advice of his Brother *Thomas Piercy* Earl of *Worcester*,
 goes to the King, and demands the Redemption of
 his Kinsman the Earl of *March*, who had long lain in
 miserable Imprisonment among the King's Enemies.
 The King answer'd, "*That he had no Reason to redeem,*
or relieve the Earl of March; nor would he; because he
was not taken for his Cause, nor in his Service, but had
suffered himself to fall into the Hands of Owen Glen-
dour, and the Welsh, being not willing to resist them."
 The Earl having receiv'd this Answer, pretended to be
 angry, and blaz'd abroad the Cruelty of the King, who
 would not redeem a Person so nearly related to him :
 And his Son *Henry Hotspur*, said openly, *Behold the*
Heir of this Realm is rob'd of his Right, and the Rob-
ber will not redeem him with a Part of his own. Not
 long after this, there was an Interview of the Earl of
Northumberland, and his Son, with the Earl of *March*,
 and *Owen Glendour*, in the House of the Archdeacon
 of *Bangor*, where they oblig'd themselves mutually and
 firmly, by an Indenture tripartite, to depose King *Hen-*
ry; and it was farther agreed on, that after his Deposition,
Glendour should have *Wales*, and all the Lands be-
 yond the *Severn*, to rule over them as their King, and
 "supreme Lord: That the Earl of *Northumberland*
 should govern all the Countries on the North-side of
 the River *Trent*; and the Earl of *March* should
 enjoy all the Residue of *England*, in his Right, as
 "supreme Lord." This Agreement being made, they
 all employ'd their utmost Interests, to raise an Army
 sufficient for their Design. The Earl of *Northumber-*
land, besides those Forces that he rais'd among his
 Neighbours in the North, procur'd an Augmentation
 of them out of *Scotland*, partly by setting at Liberty the
 Captives that he had in his keeping, and partly by pro-
 mising the *Scots* several Lordships and Signiories in the
 Parts bordering on their Country, upon which Ac-
 count they rais'd a considerable Army. Matters be-
 ing thus prepar'd, they put out a Declaration, "That
 King *Henry* giving Encouragement to Flatterers and
 "Calumniators, their Enemies had attain'd such an
 "Aversion to them, that they dared not come into
 "his Presence, but by the Mediation of the Bishops :
 "That

1403.

“ That tho’ he was rais’d to the Throne for the Good of the Nation, yet he had play’d the Tyrant, and abus’d his Trust, converting the Money given by Parliament for the publick Defence, to his own private Interest: Wherefore that they might secure their own Persons, and reform the Government, they had rais’d such Force, as might be sufficient to reduce Things into a better Course, both for themselves, and the whole Nation.” They also gave out a Report, that King *Richard* was yet alive in the Castle of *Chester*, ready to join with *Owen Glendour* to recover his Right. Things being thus prepared, they marched to *Shrewsbury*, intending to make that City the Rendezvous of their Army. These treasonable Contrivances were carried on so secretly, that the King had no Suspicion of them, yet was industrious in raising a powerful Army to reduce the *Welsh*, so that altho’ the Earl of *Northumberland*’s Forces appeared against him, unexpectedly, he was in a good Condition to oppose him.

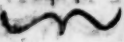
The King’s
Mercy to the
Rebels.

King *Henry* considering that a civil War would bring great Calamities upon his Subjects, chose to allay the Discontents of the seditious Party, by answering their Declaration: Alledging that he never had denied the Earl of *Northumberland*, the Lord *Piercy* his Son, or any of the Lords of their Party, any Access to him; but allowed them to come into his Presence at any Time, without all Danger or Damage to their Persons; and that the Money which had been given by the Parliament, for the Defence of the Nation, was paid to the Earl of *Northumberland* himself for that End, as he could prove by his Receipts; so that their Complaints were ill grounded and slanderous. The King would have waited to see the Effect of this Answer; but the Earl of *March* a *Scot*, telling the King that his Enemies would be strengthened by Delays, put the King upon making haste towards them, which indeed proved advantageous to him: For the Earl of *Northumberland*, being indisposed, was not arrived at *Shrewsbury*, and the Suddenness of the King’s Arrival there, put the Earl’s Army into so great a Consternation, that they were unfit to engage in Battel. The King, tho’ he was ready to have engag’d them, yet was very loth to spill his own Subjects Blood, and therefore sent to offer them Pardon, upon Terms as reasonable as they could

could
of the
Worce
and ha
The K
neath
cester,
lesseni
so ill t
more
pet to
receiv
St. *Ge*
Lord
the Ki
that th
broke
ed by t
was to
which
fresh R
Army.
of the
slain th
King’s
overthr
and the
ded it.
Design
and cau
disappo
of assa
nerals;
set upo
them to
no less
lasted t
mound
Father,
the An
discour
Knights
Lord
sixteen
ded.

could desire. The Lord *Piercy* was inclin'd to accept ^{4 Hen. IV.} of the King's Mercy; and sent his Uncle the Earl of *Worcester* to the King, to represent their Grievances, and having obtain'd a Redress, to submit to the King: The King also condescended so far, as was thought beneath him, to heal the Breach. But the Earl of *Worcester*, being a Man that was rather for widening, than lessening the Breach, at his Return, represented Things so ill to the Lord *Piercy* his Nephew, that he being more incensed than he was before, ordered the Trumpet to be blown for the Battel. The King was ready to receive him, and the Signs being given on both Sides, *St. George* by the King, and *Esperance Piercy* by the Lord *Piercy*, the Fight began. The *Scots* fell upon the King's Van-guard, with that Resolution and Fury, that they forc'd them to give Ground, and had almost broke in upon the King's main Body; and being seconded by the *Welsh*, put the King to his last Refuge, which was to call in his Reserve to reinforce his Army, by which Means he recover'd his Ground, and after a fresh Rencounter, got the better of the Lord *Piercy's* Army. The Lord *Piercy*, and Earl *Douglass*, General of the *Scots*, despairing of Victory, attempted to have slain the King; and so forcing their Way through the King's Party, they got to the King's Standard, which they overthrew, killing the Standard Bearer, Sir *Walter Blunt*, and the Earl of *Stafford*, besides many others who guarded it. The Earl of *Dunbar* the *Scot*, perceiving their Design, gave the King timely Warning of his Danger, and caused him to retreat from the Standard, and so disappointed them. The King took this Opportunity of assaulting his Enemies, in the Absence of their Generals; and crying *St. George*, made so impetuous an Onset upon the Rebels, that he broke their Order, put them to flight, and obtain'd a complete Victory, killing no less than thirty six with his own Hand. The Battel lasted three Hours; the King himself was once dismounted, and the Prince fighting in Defence of his Father, was wounded in the Face, yet would not leave the Army, till the Fight was ended, lest he should discourage his Men. The Rebels had two hundred Knights, and five thousand Soldiers slain, besides the Lord *Piercy* himself. The King had ten Knights, and sixteen hundred Soldiers slain, and four thousand wounded. This Victory was gain'd on the twenty first of

1404.



July; in Memory of which, the King founded a College on the Place, and called it *Battlefield*. The valiant *Douglas*, the Earl of *Worcester*, the Baron of *Kinderton*, and Sir *Richard Vernon*, were taken Prisoners, and the three last beheaded two Days after the Battle. The Earl of *Worcester's* Head was sent up to *London*, to be set up on *London Bridge*. The King permitted the Body of the Lord *Piercy* to be buried, but afterwards commanded it to be taken up again, and be beheaded and quartered, and disposed of it into several Parts of the Nation. This was the End of one of the bravest Warriors of the Age, who till this Time had ever been victorious. *Douglas*, who had once unhorsed the King, being no Subject to him, was set at Liberty, without Ransom. The Earl of *Northumberland*, who by Reason of his Indisposition, had been kept from joining with his Brother, the Earl of *Worcester*, and his Son the Lord *Piercy*, soon after the Fight set out towards *Shrewsbury*, with a considerable Recruit, to their Assistance; but was met by the Way, by the Earl of *Westmoreland*, and Sir *Robert Waterton*, with a strong Force; upon which, judging neither of them to be his Friends, he retreated to *Warkworth Castle*, and there fortified himself. The King having settled the Countries about *Shrewsbury*, went to *York*, and there sent a Command to the Earl of *Northumberland*, to dismiss his Forces, and come to him upon Assurance of Mercy, which the Earl, seeing no possibility of standing out against the King's Power, accordingly obeyed, going thither only with a small Train, like an humble Petitioner. The King pardoned him as to his Life, but detained him in Prison, till the Ferment of his Troubles was a little over, and afterwards restored him to his Liberty, but took away his Estate, and deprived him of his Honour; yet afterwards gave him good Part of his Estate again, and soon after granted a Pardon to all such Persons as had been engaged in that Rebellion. The King having thus settled the Disgusts of the North, resolved to return towards North *Wales*, to chastise the *Welsh*, but wanting Money to pay his Soldiers, the Archbishop and Clergy supplied him with a Tenth, and the Prince was sent with an Army into *Wales*.

Old *Piercy*
submits.

The Prince
sent into
Wales.

This

This
Coasts,
William
man'd
he took
hundre
ties, an
the Co
threw's
set for
bour.

This
Qualit
cer, E
Reign
Thomas
Family
in Eng
for he
the fir
give a
was un
fore t
French
cal, w
becam
in the

Ab
try, b
soon p

A l
prifal,
bitant
with
Richa
Cattle
therin
to the

Th
of *Jas*
bled t
take
berlan
only
besto

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

393

This Summer the *Bretagnes* assailing the *English* ^{Hen. IV.} Coasts, plundered and burnt *Plymouth*, upon which *William de Wilford*, Esq; by the King's Permission, ^{William Wilford's Ex-} man'd out a Fleet to cruise in the narrow Seas, where ^{ploits.} he took forty Sail of Merchants Ships laden with an hundred Tun of *Roche* Wine, and other Commodities, and landing near *Pennarch*, he plundered and burnt the Country for six Miles in Length as far as *St. Matthew's*, which he left in Flames; and at his Return, set forty Sail of Ships on fire, which lay in the Harbour.

This Year died the famous *Jeoffery Chaucer*, a Man of ^{Sir Jeoffery Chaucer's} Quality, Wit and Learning, the Father of *Thomas Chaucer*, Esq; Speaker of the House of Commons, in the Reign of King *Henry* the fifth. The Daughter of this *Thomas* was married to the Duke of *Suffolk*; and so the Family of *Chaucer* became allied to the greatest Houses in *England*. He was the Father of the *English* Poetry; for he, and his Friend and Associate *John Gower*, made the first Attempt to refine our *English* Language, and give a Tune and Harmony to the *English* Verse, which was unknown to their Forefathers. The Learned before their Time, always used to write in *Latin* or *French*: But they made the *English* Tongue so musical, which was before of it self very significant, that it became common afterwards; and most Authors wrote in their native Language.

About *November* a Parliament was called at *Coven-* ^{The fourth} *try*, but the Place not being convenient, they were ^{Parliament.} soon prorogued, having done nothing of Moment.

A little before *Christmas*, the *French*, by Way of Re- ^{The French} prisal, landed in the Isle of *Wight*, telling the Inha- ^{invade the} bitants, *That they were come to keep their Christmas* ^{Isle of Wight.} *with them*. They demanded Money of them for King *Richard* and Queen *Isabel*, and began to drive off their Cattle to their Ships; but the People of the Island gathering together in a Body, compelled them to retire to their Ships, and leave their Prey behind them.

The Parliament met at *Westminster* in the Beginning ^{The fifth} of *January*. In this Parliament, the King having hum- ^{Parliament.} bled the Earl of *Northumberland*, thought it Policy to ^{The Earl of} take him into Favour again. The Earl of *Northum-* ^{Northumber-} *berland* was restored to his Lands and Honours, except ^{land restored} only the Isle of *Man*, which the King had formerly ^{to his Lands.} bestowed on him to hold of the Crown by the Tenure

1404

of carrying the *Lancaster's Sword* at the Coronation. This Parliament granted the King an unusual Tax, or Subsidy, but desired there might be no particular Record left of it, that it might not be drawn into a Precedent. The Clergy also being met in Convocation, gave the King a Tenth.

The Duke of
Orleans chal-
lenges King
Henry.

During the Session of this Parliament, the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to the *French King*, sent a Challenge to King *Henry*, to meet him at *Bordeaux*, with an hundred *Englishmen*, to fight the same Number of *French*, and every Victor to have his Prisoner; but the King returned him Answer, that it was against the Custom of Nations for any crowned and anointed King to accept a Challenge from any Person, but such as is of equal Dignity; but promised upon the Word of a Prince, that he would soon go into *Gascoigne*, with a convenient Number of Men, and there enter the Lists with him, as he had proposed, or by single Combat. The Duke of *Orleans* being enraged, raised an Army of six thousand Men, invaded *Guienne*, and besieged the Town of *Vergi*; but it was so well defended by Sir *Robert Antifield*, that he was forced to leave it, after he had besieged it three Months.

The Bre-
tagnes infest
England, but
are repulsed.

In the Spring the *Bretagnes*, under the Command of the Lord *Castel*, came with thirty Ships, and one thousand two hundred Men, to *Dartmouth*, to plunder and burn it; but the Inhabitants, who had armed themselves in Expectation of their coming, engaged them so fiercely, the Women also assisting by hurling of Stones, that they were obliged to depart without accomplishing their Design; and being afterwards met by the *English Fleet* in *Black-Pool*, there followed a sharp Engagement, the Lord *Castel* himself, and four hundred of his Men being slain, and two hundred taken Prisoners. The Country People presented the King with their Prisoners, among whom were the Lord *Baquevil*, the Marshal of *Bretagne*, and some other Lords; and he graciously accepted their Present, and rewarded them with Plenty of Gold.

Owen Glen-
dour's Ra-
vages.

All this Summer *Owen Glendour*, and the *Welsh*, with more than usual Cruelty, burnt and ravaged the *Marches*, killed and took many Prisoners, and got a great Booty, and partly by Force, and partly by Fraud, possessed himself of diverse Castles, some of which he fortified, and others he demolished. With these Calamities

mities
the B
Engl
rich M
riners.

But
Misto
and de
chard
Army
Rumo
who b
Richa
port, v
he fou
ry we
King
unto
Frien
was in
fort o
much
Count
Duke
News
Stags
King
dents,
soon
order
sex, b
Secre
suffer
cation
tive,
Sir W
cured
incurr
Berw
prefer
Mean
soon
murd
On
which

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

395

mities by the *Welsh*, concurred other Damages done by the *Bretagnes* and *Flemings*, who cruising upon the *English* Coasts, took several *English* Ships laden with rich Merchandise, and either slew or hung up the Mariners.

5 Hen. IV.

But the King was not so much disturbed at these Misfortunes, as at a Rumour which was dispersed up and down the Nation at this Time, That King *Richard* was alive, and in *Scotland*, at the Head of an Army of an hundred thousand *Scots* and *French*. This Rumour owed its Original to the Letters of one *Serle*, who had been Gentleman of the Bedchamber to King *Richard*; who being in *France*, and hearing such a Report, went into *Scotland* to satisfy himself, where indeed he found one very like King *Richard*, but knew him very well to be an Impostor. However, in Hatred to King *Henry*, he caused a Privy Seal to be made like unto King *Richard*'s, and wrote several Letters to his Friends, sealed with it, affirming, that King *Richard* was indeed alive, and would shortly appear, to the Comfort of his Friends, and Confusion of his Enemies, in so much that he distracted the Minds of many. The old Countess of *Oxford*, Mother to *Robert de Vere*, late Duke of *Ireland*, eagerly laid hold upon this false News, and published it as certain, and caused many Stags of Gold and Silver, which were the Badges of King *Richard*, to be made, and given to her Dependents, that they might wear them on their Cloaths as soon as King *Richard* came into *England*. She also ordered her Secretary to send this false News into *Essex*, by which Means it was discovered; for which her Secretary was hanged and quartered, and she her self suffered close Imprisonment during Life, and Confiscation of her Goods. *Serle* finding his Plots Abortive, and wanting Money to return to *France*, went to Sir *William Clifford*, at *Berwick*, hoping to have procured some Money from him: But Sir *William* having incurred the Displeasure of King *Henry*, in holding out *Berwick* Castle against him, apprehended *Serle*, and presented him to the King at *Pontefract*, and by that Means obtained his Pardon: But *Serle* was executed soon after, confessing he was one of those who had murdered the Duke of *Glocester* at *Calais*.

A Rumour of King Richard's being alive.

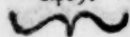
A counterfeit King Richard.

The Design defeated.

On *October* the sixth, a Parliament met at *Coventry*, which, because it consisted of such Persons as were illiterate

Sixth Parliament, called the Lack-learning Parliament.

1405.



illiterate, or unskilful in the Laws, tho' it was by the King's particular Orders to the Sheriffs of Counties, that none but such Persons should be chosen, was called *Parliamentum indoctum*, or the *Lack-learning Parliament*. This Parliament, to supply the King's Wants, exhibited a Bill against the Temporalities of the Clergy; but it proved abortive by the Opposition it met with, from the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who declared, that *it was the enriching of themselves, and not of the King, that they aimed at*; the King also declaring, *he would leave the Church in no worse State than he found it*.

William of
Wickham's
Death.

About this Time died *William of Wickham*, Bishop of *Winchester*, one of the greatest Benefactors to the Publick that ever *England* had. He was the Son of *John Long*, a Parish Clerk of *Wickham*; but having heaped up great Riches by the Preferments he had under *Edward* the third, and *Richard* the second, he employed them wholly in Works of publick Charity and Piety. He founded *New-College* in *Oxford*, and another at *Winchester*, and other Buildings of less Note. *Trussel* relates, that he was entrusted with a very important Secret relating to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, the Father of this King *Henry*; particularly that his Mother *Philippa* did in her Confession, upon her Deathbed, acknowledge to him, that *John* was a supposititious Child, and that he ought to use all Means possible to prevent him or his Issue from stepping up into the *English* Throne.

A new Con-
spiracy a-
gainst the
King.

Several Lords taking a Disgust at King *Henry's* Treatment of them, form'd a Conspiracy against him to depose him; among these were *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl Marshal, *Richard Scroop*, Archbishop of *York*, the old Earl of *Northumberland*, the Lords *Baldorf*, *Hastings*, and *Falconbridge*, who made an Appointment to assemble all the Forces they could get together on *York Wolds*, where they composed Articles against the King of such Things as they thought themselves aggrieved in, and caused them to be set upon the Doors of Monasteries in the Streets of *York*. These being approved brought a mighty Concourse of People to the Assistance of the Archbishop. The Earl of *Westmoreland*, at that Time marching with an Army towards the Borders of *Scotland*, and hearing of this In surrection, being too weak to oppose it by Force, betook himself to Stratagem, and sent Messen-
gers

gers to
Design
both h
made
both p
Westm
The E
ed into
Army
took t
and b
Berw
Succo
a To
Term
prison
all the
land.
Th
to W
the A
in a
of M
Wor
took
lost a
fifty
and
them
ing c
ney a
Or
minst
the
with
was
liver
the
Nati
them
gave
into
Lor
A&
of S

gers to the Archbishop, pretending to approve of their Design, desiring a Meeting, and by that Means got both him and the Earl Marshal into his Hands, and made a Present of them to the King; and they were both publickly beheaded, notwithstanding the Earl of *Westmoreland* had before promised them their Lives. The Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord *Bardolf*, escaped into *Scotland*; the King being at *Pontefract* with an Army of thirty seven thousand Men, persued them, and took the Lord *Hastings*, *Falconbridge*, and some others, and beheaded them at *Durham*. Then he assaulted *Berwick*, whither the Archbishop's Party were fled for Succour, and having by a Battering Piece thrown down a Tower on the Wall, they surrendered upon hard Terms; for he hanged one Part of the Rebels, and imprisoned the other. After this he took *Alnwick*, and all the Castles belonging to the Earl of *Northumberland*.

This Rebellion being quelled, the King led his Forces to *Wales*, against *Owen Glendour*, who having obtained the Assistance of twelve thousand Men from *France*, in a hundred and forty Ships, under the Command of Marshal *Montmorancy*, they besieged *Carmarthen*, *Worcester*, and several other Places; from whence he took Store of Spoils. King *Henry* halting against them, lost all his Carriages in a violent Tempest, and above fifty Waggon's loaden with Treasure, in his Passage; and being arrived there, could effect nothing against them; for the *Welsh*, after their usual Manner, retreating over the Mountains, the King for Want of Money and Forage was forced to return Home.

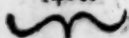
On the first of *March* the Parliament met at *Westminster*, and the King being again in Want of Money, the Parliament did with much Importunity, tho' not without Reluctancy, furnish him. Some of this Money was employed in secret Practices with the *Scots*, to deliver the Earl of *Northumberland* and Lord *Bardolf*, into the King's Hand, in Exchange for some Prisoners of that Nation: But the Lord *Fleming*, who had entertained them, being loth to violate the Rules of Hospitality, gave them Notice of it; and so the Earl and Lord fled into *Wales*; for which the *Scots* were so enraged at the Lord *Fleming*, that they slew him; which barbarous Act filled *Scotland* with new civil Discords. The King of *Scots* not thinking it safe to keep Prince *James* his Son

7 Hen. IV.

King Henry's Expedition against the Welsh.

Seventh Parliament.

1406.



Son and Heir at Home, sent him under the Care of the Earl of *Orkney*, with a Bishop into *France*; but as they sailed by the Coasts of *Norfolk*, they were taken by some *English* Ships, and sent to King *Henry* to *Windsor*, who sent him Prisoner to the Tower of *London*; but afterwards gave him a noble Education, so that the Misfortune might be thought to turn to his Advantage, as to princely Qualifications.

The *French* prosecuting their Affairs in *Wales*, sent a farther Aid of Forces to them in thirty eight Ships, of which Number the *English* took eight; the rest hardly escaping, got to Shore in much Fear and Danger. Not long after, the *English* took fifteen Sail of Merchant Ships loaden with Wax and Wine. And *Henry Pay Esq;* with fifteen Ships, and some others belonging to the *Cinque Ports*, cruising upon the *British* Coasts, took an hundred and twenty Prizes laden with Iron, Salt, Oil, and *Rochel* Wines. About the same Time, a Person was executed for setting up Bills in several Parts of *London*, containing an Account of King *Richard's* being still alive. This Summer the City of *London* was so much infected with the Plague, that it is said thirty thousand died of it. The King, who resided in *Essex* to avoid it, designing to pass from *Queensbury* to *Leigh* in *Essex*, narrowly escaped being taken by some *French* Pirates, who lay at the *Thames* Mouth, watching for a Prey, who took four Ships which were next to him; he only escaping by the Swiftneſs of his Ship.

A dreadful
Plague in
London.

Sir Robert
Knolles's
Death.

In *August* died Sir *Robert Knolles*, that valiant Hero, a Man of mean Parentage, but by his Courage and Valour, raised to be a Commander of Armies, and Governor of Provinces, under King *Edward* the third. He built the large Bridge at *Rocheſter*, over the *Medway*, with a Chapel at the Foot of it; he was also celebrated for many Acts of Charity.

The Prince
of *Wales*
takes the
Castle of
Aberiswith.

In the mean Time, the Wars of *Wales* were managed by young Prince *Henry*, who won the Castle of *Aberiswith*, in *Wales*; but the Prince was no sooner departed from those Parts, but *Owen Glendour*, by a subtle Stratagem, got Possession of it, and put into it a Garison of his own.

This Year died Mr. *John Gower*, of the Family of the *Gowers* of *Sittenham* in *Yorkshire*, the Friend and Assistant of

of Sir
English
Earl
Bardolf
in *Wales*
turned
and raised
of affairs
of *York*
was slain
died for
in the
did not
heard
and be
punished
Abbot
the Bishop
was par
land an
The
Time
was ch
contrar
was su
Contro
ther, a
Oxford
both P
for the
Henry,
with H
the Ca
sand C
Cardin
assemb
trained
Time
chiefs,
ties, fi
Death
This
the Lo
in the
trines

of Sir Geoffery Chancer, in refining and polishing the *English* Tongue, and *English* Poesy.

9 Hen. IV.

Early this Spring the Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord *Bardolf*, who had for a whole Year been raising Forces in *Wales*, *France* and *Flanders*, to invade *England*, returned into *Scotland*, and thence coming into *England*, and raising new Forces in the North, under a Pretence of asserting their Rights, were encountred by the Sheriffs of *Yorkshire*, and after a sharp Engagement, the Earl was slain, and the Lord *Bardolf* so wounded, that he died soon after. The King hearing of those Troubles in the North, was hastning thither with his Army, but did not arrive time enough; and altho' by the Way he heard of this Success, yet he continued his March; and being arrived at *York*, some he put to Death, and punished others with Fines and Imprisonments. The Abbot of *Ailes* being taken in Armour, was hanged; the Bishop of *Bangor*, being taken in his own Cloaths, was pardoned. The Heads of the Earl of *Northumberland* and Lord *Bardolf* were set up on *London* Bridge.

The Earl of *Northumberland* slain.

The Ambition of the two Popes having for a long Time disturbed the Peace of Christendom, one of which was chosen at *Rome*, and the other at *Avignon*, by two contrary Factions of the Cardinals, a general Council was summoned to be held at *Pisa* in *Italy*, to decide the Controversy. King *Henry* sent his Ambassadors thither, and the Clergy chose *Robert Alan*, Chancellor of *Oxford*, and Bishop of *Salisbury*, to signify, *That unless both Popes would decline the Pontificate, neither of them for the future should be acknowledged as Pope.* King *Henry*, in his Letter to Pope *Gregory*, charged him with Perjury, and, *That this Papal Emulation had been the Cause of the Deaths of more than two hundred thousand Christians slain in the Wars.* A great Number of Cardinals, Archbishops, and other mitred Prelates were assembled, who elected *Alexander* the fifth, a Man trained up at *Oxford*, for the new Pope. In the mean Time *Owen Glendour*, who had done innumerable Mischiefs, being abandoned to all Miseries and Extremities, finished his Life with Hunger and Famine; at the Death of whom, all the *Welsh* Broils were at an End.

The Schism between the two Popes ended.

This Summer, notwithstanding the Severity against the *Lollards*, it was found, that several learned Men, in the University of *Oxford*, were inclinable to the Doctrines of *John Wickliff*. The Bishops being much concerned

1410.
John Wick-
liff's Books
condemn'd
at Oxford.

Ninth Par-
liament.

Complaint
against the
Ecclesiast-
icks.

The Mar-
tyrdom of
John Bodly.

cern'd at it, a Convocation of the Heads of the University were ordered to meet, and examine the Doctrines of *Wickliff*; who with one Consent condemn'd his Books, prohibiting under the Penalty of the great Curse, and Deprivation of all Scholastick Degrees, that any should teach or preach any of the Opinions or Doctrines contain'd in his Books, *De sermone in monte, Triologorum de Simonia, de Perfectione Statuum, de ordine Christiano, de gradibus Cleri Ecclesie*, and his *Treatise of Logick and Sophistry*.

King Henry, wanting more Money, call'd a Parliament; and having made Sir Henry Scroop Lord Treasurer, and Thomas Beaufort, his own half-Brother, Lord Chancellor, committed the Charge and Management to them. Upon which the Commons presented a Petition to the King, purporting, *that what the Bishops, Abbots, Priors, &c. had leudly and wastfully spent, would be sufficient to maintain an hundred and fifty Earls, fifteen hundred Knights, six thousand two hundred Esquires, and a hundred Hospitals more than were already founded; and therefore they desir'd the King to take them into his own Hands, and order them so, that the Safety of the Nation might be better provided for, the Poor better maintain'd, and the Clergy rendred more humble and pious*. But it is said, the King was displeas'd at this Motion, and order'd them for the future never to meddle with any such Matters. This Parliament also petitioned, that the Act pass'd in the second Year of the King, against the *Lollards*, might either be revok'd or mitigated; but the King told them, *he was so far from disannulling or mitigating the said Act, that he would have it made more vigorous and sharp for the Punishment of such erroneous Persons*; which gave Encouragement to the Clergy to prosecute them.

Not long after, John Bodly, a Tailor, of the Diocese of Worcester, was convicted of Heresy before the Archbishop of Canterbury, and burnt in Smithfield to Ashes in a Pipe or Tun. Henry Prince of Wales being present at this Execution, and compassionating his Sufferings, offer'd him a Pardon, if he would recant before the Fire was kindled; but he refusing, was tied to the Stake, and the Fire made about him. As soon as he felt the Fire, he cried out most hideously; upon which, the Prince order'd the Fire to be put out, and offer'd him his Pardon again, and promis'd him a Maintenance

if

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

401

if he would renounce his Errors; but he refusing the Prince's Offers, was burnt to Ashes with wonderful Constancy.

This Year the Duke of Burgundy, intending to take Calais, had laid up great Store of Engines and other Warlike Stores in a Monastery at St. Omers. The Calisians therefore hired a Man to set Fire to the Monastery, which he did, and the Stores and the greatest Part of the Town it self being reduc'd to Ashes, the Duke's Charge, as well as Aim, was lost.

About this Time, Vice-Admiral *Humfrevil* being sent against the Scots with ten Ships of War, entred the Frith of *Edinburgh*; and landing, daily brought great Spoils on Board. At his Departure, he burnt the Galliot of Scotland, a Vessel of great Account with them, and many other Vessels, and brought away fourteen Ships laden with diverse Sorts of Merchandise, of Corn and other Commodities, which he selling at a low Price, Corn grew much cheaper than it was before, and for that he gain'd great good Will among the poor People, who gave him the Name of *Robert Mend-Market*.

This Year the Guild-hall of the City of London, which was but a mean Cottage before, was made a stately Building by the Mayor and Aldermen, at the Charge of the City; and the Company of Grocers laid the Foundation of their Hall in a Piece of Ground they had purchased in *Cunihope-Lane* for 320 Marks.

This Summer broke out in France the furious Factions of the Dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, which involved the whole Kingdom in the Broils of a Civil War. The Cause of it was a Murther committed upon Lewis the Brother of the French King, and Father to the Duke of Orleans, near the Barbet-Gate in Paris, as he came late from the Queen's Lodgings, who was then in Childbed. The Duke of Burgundy was greatly suspected to have procured this Murder to be committed, and confirm'd the Suspicion, by flying to Antwerp, where he kept himself several Months; but having brought about a Reconciliation with the King, and being invited to Court again, he got into as great Favour as ever; and still retaining his Enmity to the Duke of Orleans's Family, he discountenanc'd the Duke and all his Friends, put some out of their Places, and others to Death. Upon this, Charles Duke of Orleans, Son of Duke Lewis, took Occasion hence to revenge

VOL. I.

D d

his

1411.

The Duke
of Burgundy
seeks to King
Henry for
Assistance.

The Duke
of Burgun-
dy's Cruelty.

his Father's Death on the Duke of Burgundy, who justified the Fact, alledging that *Lewis* had us'd Means with the Pope to depose the King of *France*, upon Pretence he was unfit to govern, by reason of his Frenzy. Each Party endeavour'd to strengthen themselves by foreign as well as Domestick Assistance. The Duke of *Burgundy* had the King and *Dauphine* on his Side, and the Duke of *Orleans* had the Kings of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, and Dukes of *Berry* and *Bretagne* on his Side. The Duke of *Burgundy*, fearful of the Power of his Adversaries, kept in *Paris*, and sent into *England*, offering a Daughter of the King of *France* in Marriage to *Henry* Prince of *Wales*, in Order to engage King *Henry* to join in his Defence, and send over a competent Number of Forces to his Assistance. King *Henry* received the Ambassadors honourably, but told them, that the Duke of *Orleans* did only prosecute a just Revenge for his Father's Blood, and therefore was not to be fought against, but appeas'd; and therefore he thought it reasonable he should be tender'd all suitable Satisfaction, which yet if he refus'd to accept, then he would lend him all convenient Assistance. However, King *Henry* considering that this Civil Dissention in *France* might prove of good Advantage to him; and tho' it would not look well in him openly to encourage a Murderer, yet on the other Hand, that it would be impolitic to neglect his own Interest, sends twelve hundred Archers and Spearmen under the Command of the Earl of *Arundel*, and many Men at Arms, who join'd the Duke of *Burgundy*, who lay at *Arras* with fifteen thousand *Flemings* and *Picards*. The Duke of *Orleans* having put a Garison in *St. Clou*, the *English* belieg'd it and took it, and a good Number of Prisoners, which the Duke of *Burgundy* bought of them, they not suspecting his Design; for, contrary to the Law of Arms, he put them all to Death. This cruel and ungenerous Action much disturbed the *English*. Soon after the Armies of the two Dukes had a Skirmish, and the *English* having again the upper Hand, got a great many Prisoners, whom, the Duke of *Burgundy*, wanting either Money or Will to redeem, would have persuaded the *English* to put to Death; but the *English* boldly answer'd, that they would not be guilty of such a Breach of the Law of Arms, as he had been, and would rather die themselves, than any of their Prison-

ers shou
After thi
Party to
withdrew
Country
English
The F
ning of
Moment
made his
Lord St
of *Clare*
of *Gloce*
Dorset.

The F
Refuge
who, as
of *Burg*
to him,
won ov
some Pe
Confede
bon, and
offer'd h
that if t
defend a
upon the
upon the
should g
and their
repair'd.
Peace
their B
Service
to their
ters, Ne
in Mar
ly, their
to be at
tlemen
were all
nally, t
and in a
his Pre
acknow

ers should, but they would keep them for Ransom. ^{13 Hen. IV!}
After this Engagement, the Duke of *Orleans* finding his Party too weak for that of the Duke of *Burgundy*, they withdrew themselves into the mountainous Part of the Country; whereupon the Duke of *Burgundy* sent the *English* home with Rewards and Thanks.

The Parliament met at *Westminster* about the Beginning of *November*, but nothing was enacted of great Moment; but soon after the rising of it, the King made his Sons, the Lord *Thomas* of *Lancaster*, who was Lord Steward of *England* and Earl of *Aumerle*, Duke of *Clarence*, *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, and *Humfrey*, Duke of *Glocester*; and his Brother *Thomas Beaufort*, Earl of *Dorset*. ^{Tenth Parliament. Some new Creations.}

The Party of the Duke of *Orleans* had now no other Refuge left for their Relief, but the King of *England*, who, as he had been engag'd on the Side of the Duke of *Burgundy*, yet being now free from any Obligations to him, might by fair and advantageous Proposals be won over to his Side. He therefore sent into *England* some Persons, who in the Name of himself and his Confederates, who were the Dukes of *Berry*, *Bourbon*, and *Alençon*, and Earl of *Arminiach*, and others, offer'd him the following Articles and Covenants: First, that if the King of *England* as Lord of *Guienne* would defend and succour them, until they had executed Justice upon the Duke of *Burgundy* for the Murder committed upon the late Duke of *Orleans*. Secondly, that if he should give this Assistance till all the Losses which they and their Friends had suffer'd upon this Occasion, were repair'd. Thirdly, that if he should help to settle the Peace and Quiet of the Realm, &c. then they offer their Bodies to be employ'd against all Men for the Service of the King of *England*, saving their Allegiance to their own Sovereign. Secondly, their Sons, Daughters, Nephews, and Neices, and all other their Kindred in Marriage at the King of *England*'s Pleasure. Thirdly, their Castles, Towns, Treasure and all their Goods to be at his Service. Fourthly, their Friends, the Gentlemen of *France*, the Clergy and rich Burghers; who were all on their Side as by Proof should appear. Finally, they offer to him the Dukedom of *Gascony* intire, and in as full a Manner as ever it had been enjoy'd by his Predecessors; so that they themselves will hold and acknowledge to hold their Lands in those Parts direct-

1412.

The Kings
joins with
him.

Prince Hen-
ry's Loose-
ness.

ly of the King of *England*, and deliver all they can into his Possession, and do their utmost to conquer the rest for him; only desiring that the Duke of *Berry* might hold the Country of *Ponthien* during his Life, and the Duke of *Orleans* the County of *Angoulesm* for his Life, and the County of *Perigart* for ever, and the Earl of *Arminiach* four Castles upon certain Conditions. These Offers prevail'd and Forces were ordered to assist the Duke of *Orleans*, which were sent into *Normandy*. But in the mean Time a Peace was concluded between the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*; for which Cause, and the latter not coming to receive them according to Appointment, the *English* fell to plundering the Country to satisfy themselves, till the Duke of *Orleans* should see them paid. Which being done, the *English* marched into Winter Quarters in *Aquitain*.

King *Henry* having reduced his Kingdom into a calm Condition, and Prince *Henry* being eas'd from the Employment of the *Welsh* Wars, and being of an active and brisk Spirit, fell as eagerly upon the Sports and Pleasures, which usually debauch the Minds of Youth in Times of Leisure, as he had been bold and adventurous in Feats of War. He had been formerly a Student in *Queens College* in *Oxford*, under his Uncle *Henry Beaufort* Chancellor of that University; and afterwards being removed to Court, was committed to the Government of the Earl of *Worcester*. His Carriage and Behaviour had been all along, such as had raised the Hopes of the whole Kingdom concerning him: But being now arrived to the Age of twenty four Years, he ran into many Courses unworthy of a Prince, so that it seem'd very doubtful how he would prove, when he came to the Throne. He kept a Court separate from his Father, maintain'd a princely Port and Magnificence, but ran into vitious Excesses. His Palace was like a Camp, Multitudes of Persons flocking thither, either to please the Prince's Genius, or to gratify their own; he pleased himself more in Dancings, Musick, Revellings and Maskings, than ever he had done in Man-like Feats of Arms. It is reported, that he lay in wait for the Receivers of his Father's Revenues, and set upon them, and rob'd them in the Person of a Highway-Man. After that, when one of his Associates was arraign'd for Felony, before the Lord chief Justice, he went to the King's Bench Bar, and

The Reign of King HENRY IV.

403

and attempted to take away the Prisoner by Force ; but ^{13 Hen. IV.} the Judge not suffering him, he stepped up to him, and struck him over the Face. Upon this, the Judge told ^{He affronts} him, that this Affront was not to himself, but to the ^{a Judge.} King his Father, in whose Place he sat, wherefore he commanded him to Prison, to make him sensible of his Crime. The Prince, tho' he had been so violent in the Case of his Friend, very calmly submitted, and quietly obeyed the Judge's Sentence, and suffer'd himself to be carried to Prison. The King hearing of this Transaction was well pleas'd, that he had a Judge of such Courage, and a Son of so much Submission; so that he look'd upon this Action, but as a youthful Prank, or a Sally of Passion, and did not esteem it as prejudicial to himself and Realm; till some who were about him, and who were Enemies to the Prince, not only complain'd of his Lewdness and Excesses, but insinuated to him, that tho' he drew such a Multitude about him, under a Shew of Sports and Pastimes, yet he carried on a secret Design of deposing him. The King was so influenc'd by these Insinuations, that he remov'd him from being President of the Council, and put his Brother into his Place. The Prince perceiving his Father's Displeasure, was very desirous to recover his good Opinion; but finding it impracticable, so long as his Accusers had his Father's Ear, he attempted it by as strange a Way, as he had lost it. For, having provided himself with a rich Satin Suit of Cloaths, made full of Oyler Holes, the Needle hanging at every Hole, he put it on, and on his Arm wore a Hound's Collar set full of S S and Tyrets of Gold: And being thus apparelled, and attended with a great Train of Nobles, he went to his Father's Palace, and desir'd to be admitted into his Presence. The King demanded of him the Cause of his strange Dress and Appearance. He answer'd to this effect, that being not only his Subject, but his Son, and in all Things obedient to his Commands, yet since by false Suggestions, his Majesty had been induc'd to suspect his Affections towards him, he was come to rectify his Misapprehensions, and to give him convincing Proofs of his Loyalty; yet since he had imprudently, tho' not designedly, rais'd Suspicions of his Disloyalty in his Mind, he there tendred his Life as forfeited to his Majesty: Adding, that he had that Day by the Christian Preparation of an humble Confession

Prince Henry
accused of
Disloyalty.

1413. and receiving the Sacrament, prepar'd himself to be made a Sacrifice; and therewithal reaching his Dagger to his Father, he added, *I humbly beg of your Majesty, that you would make this Dagger an Instrument of easing my Grief and your Fears, by thrusting it into my Heart; for it is as little Comfort for me to enjoy Life, as it can be to you to have such an undutiful Son; and if you shall vouchsafe to do it, I do here in the Presence of your Nobility, freely forgive you, and will in the Presence of God and all his Angels, in the last Judgment acquit you of the Guilt of my Blood.* By this, and more to the same Purpose, the King was so mov'd with Affection toward the Prince, that he blam'd his own Credulity, promising him upon his Honour, never to harbour any Jealousies concerning him for the future.

He is reconcil'd to his Father.

The King's last Sickness.

King Henry, being reconcil'd to his Son, and having Peace both at Home and Abroad, spent his Time in Acts of Charity and Piety, and in providing for the Safety and Welfare of his People, but liv'd not long to enjoy the Fruits of his Happiness; for having kept his Christmas at Eltham in Kent, and labouring under an Apoplectic Distemper, being a little recovered, he repaired to London about Candlemas, to hold a Parliament. The Design of this Session seems to have been, chiefly to furnish him with Money for a Crusado, designing to take a Voyage to the Holy-land in the Spring; but being worshiping at St. Edward's Shrine, to take his Leave in Order to his Journey to Jerusalem, he was suddenly taken with an Apoplexy; and being remov'd thence into a Chamber belonging to the Abbot of Westminster, and laid on a Pallat before the Fire, he recovered his Senses, and finding himself in a strange Place, he enquired where he was? And being told, he was in the Abbot's House in a Chamber called Jerusalem, he then said, *Lord have Mercy upon me, for this is the Jerusalem, where a Sooth-sayer told me I must die; and accordingly he made suitable Preparations for his Death.* And first calling for the Prince, he had several Discourses with him, as his Sickness would give Leave. He said, *That he had great Fears that after his Death, his Brother the Duke of Clarence would contend with him for the Crown, because he was a Man of an ambitious Spirit and daring Courage, and would reach at the highest Dignity, by which the Nation would fall into great Miseries; and when he thought of this, he repented him,*

he had
wer'd,
Majesty
but if
in the
love his
continuu
should i
Justice
of his o
was we
and pro
structio
when it
Flesh, t
Crown
an Hon
Burthen
of all P
of the B
whole,
Good an
to adm
Virtue
Sin, an
ready a
true Pi
thy Sub
will ma
Fear G
for his
phanene
let him
Victory
Obedien
ches an
not thy
these Th
Justice
Body an
due Ex
row, if
Delays,
thine A
lieve th

be had ever meddled with the Crown. The Prince answered, That it was his earnest Prayers to God, that his Majesty might long continue with them to rule them both; but if God had so order'd it, that he should succeed him in the Government of the Realm, he would honour and love his Brethren above all Men, so long as they should continue true and faithful Subjects; but if any of them should conspire or rebel against him, he would execute Justice upon them with as much Severity, as upon any of his other Subjects. The King hearing this Answer, was well pleased at his Son's Resolution and Courage, and proceeded to give him pious Admonitions and Instructions for governing this Realm: Saying, *My Son*, when it shall please God to call me to go the Way of all Flesh, to thee, as my Son and Heir, I shall leave my Crown and Realm; and I advise thee not to take it as an Honour, to puff up thy Mind with Pride, but as a Burthen and Charge to provide for the Good and Safety of all Persons in the Realm: For as the Heart in the midst of the Body, administers Heat and Nourishment to the whole, so must a King in this Realm, provide for the Good and Safety of all. Let it then be thy continual Care to administer all Things well for the Encouragement of Virtue and Diligence, and the Punishment of Vice and Sin, and then the People will be obedient to thee, and ready at all Times to assist thee. Go before thy People in true Piety and Devotion, and what thou wouldest have thy Subjects be, be thou first thy self; for thy Example will make thy Subjects count it an Honour to be Good. Fear God, and dread him above all Things, be zealous for his Worship, and discountenance all Atheism and Profaneness. Ascribe all thy fortunate Actions to him, and let him have the Praise of whatever Good befalls thee; as Victory over thy Enemies, the Fidelity of thy Friends, Obedience of thy Subjects, Greatness of thy Power, Riches and Honour, and Number of thy Children; think not thy own Desert, but God's Goodness the Cause of all these Things to thee. But above all Things, administer Justice equally and impartially; for the Health of thy Body and Soul, and of thy Kingdom, depends upon the due Execution of it. Defer not to do Justice till to Morrow, if thou canst do it to Day, lest God for thy unjust Delays, do Justice on thee in the mean Time, and take thine Authority from thee. Punish Bribery severely, relieve the oppressed, zealously vindicate the wronged, protect

14 Hen. IV.

The King's
Advice to
his Son.

1413. rect the religious, and love the virtuous: So shalt thou obtain the Favour of God, and Love of thy Subjects, and have a flourishing and prosperous Reign here on Earth, and an everlasting Reward in Heaven. Having made an End of giving his Son this Advice, he dismiss'd him with his Blessing; and finding himself to grow every Moment weaker, he commanded his Crown to be set upon his Pillow, that when he died the Prince of Wales his Son might have it, as his right Heir. At length his Fits came on very thick, and so violent, that he was often thought to be dead, and in one of them, the Prince took the Crown from the Pillow to secure it: But he coming to himself again, and as he was accusom'd in every Interval to look for it, he asked who had got it, and called for it again. Being told the Prince had taken it, he ordered him to come before him, and with some Warmth said to him, Son, why dost thou thus misuse me? The Prince replied, Sir, to me, and all Men present, you seem'd dead in this World; wherefore I as your next Heir apparent, took it as my own, and not as yours; but since I claim no Right to it, but from and after your Decease, therefore I restore it to you again, and God Almighty give you many Days to enjoy it. The King replied, Well fare you with it my Son: And fetching a deep Sigh, added, What Right I had to it, God knoweth. Well, replied the Prince, if you die King, I will inherit the Crown, and trust I shall keep it, with the Sword, against all my Enemies, as you have done. Then said the King, I commit all to God, and advise you to do well. Then turning to the Wall, he expired the 20th Day of March, in the 47th Year of his Age, after a politick active and victorious Reign of thirteen Years, five Months, and twenty one Days; and being carried by Water to *Fewston*, his Corps was magnificently interred at *Canterbury*.

His Death.
His Character.

He was a Person of a middle Stature, well proportioned and compact, but had far greater Endowments of Mind than Body; for as he was of great Strength and Agility, skilful in Arms, and of quick Dispatch; so he was ready at Invention, forward in Attempt, courageous in Execution, and generally fortunate in the Event. His Expences were liberal and honourable, but not beyond the Measure of his Receipts; he was courteous and affable to all; in all Charges of State he was much

much the same Man, never dejected in Adversity, nor ^{14 Hen. IV.} ever secure in Prosperity; he was not elated by the Continuance of his Reign, but in the latter End of it became so mild and gentle, that it had almost worn out all Hatred born him, upon the Account of the Death of King Richard. He had all the Qualifications of a great and mighty Prince, and by his Vigour and Management, surmounted infinite Difficulties. His great Error was, his Ambition of human Glory, which caused him to wade thro' Seas of Blood; but it was Necessity rather than Cruelty, that made him severe. Indeed he was never lov'd, tho' he was really a very good Prince, because the Occasions of State required great Taxes. However Success so attended his Undertakings, that he died a Victor over all his Enemies Abroad and at Home, and laid the Foundation of his Son's Greatness, in whose Reign the *English* Power was got to its greatest Height and Grandeur.

He had four Sons, and two Daughters, but all by ^{His Offspring} his first Wife the Lady Mary, Daughter and Co-heir of Humphry Bohun, Earl of Hereford, who died before he came to the Crown; for he had no Issue by his second Wife, Joanna de Navarre, the Widow of John de Mountfort Duke of Bretagne.

His eldest Son Henry Prince of Wales, and Earl of Chester, succeeded him in the Throne, and prov'd the Glory of our *English* Kings, as in his Life will appear.

His second Son, Thomas Plantagenet, he made Duke of Clarence. He married Margaret, the Daughter of Thomas Holland Earl of Kent, and Widow of John Beaufort Earl of Pontfract. He was slain at Bongy Bridge in France, by the Duke of Orleans.

His third Son John, he made Duke of Bedford, Earl of Richmond, and Lord of Kendal; he married two Wives, viz. Anne the Daughter of John Duke of Burgundy, and Joqueline the Daughter of Peter Earl of St. Paul, who out-lived him.

His fourth Son Humphry he created Duke of Gloucester, he was in very great Honour in the Time of his Nephew Henry VI. styling himself Humphry by the Grace of God, Brother and Uncle to Kings, Duke of Gloucester, Kennault, Holland, Zealand, and Earl of Pembroke, Lord of Freezland, great Chamberlain of England, Protector of the Realm, and Defender of the Church

1413. Church of *England*. He had two Wives, but was unhappy in them both; the one being divorced for a Pre-contract, and the other infamous for Sorcery and Poisoning; but he had no Issue by them. He was found murdered in his Bed, at *St. Edmund's-bury* in *Suffolk*, and was buried at *St. Albans* in *Hertfordshire*.

His two Daughters, *Blanch* and *Philippa*, were married in his Life-time, the former to the Duke of *Bavaria*, and the latter to the King of *Denmark*, but both died without Issue.

Sir Richard
Whitting-
ton's Acts.

In this King's Reign, lived Sir *Richard Whittington*, Mayor of *London*, who built a College in the City, with Lodgings, and weekly Allowances for divers poor People. He built the Gate in *London* called *Newgate*, and above half of *St. Bartholomew's* Hospital in *Smithfield*, and a Library in the *Gray Friars*, now called *Christ's* Hospital. He also erected a great Part of the East-end of *Guild-hall*, and a Chapel adjoining to it, and a Library for the keeping the Records of the City; and died, much loved and lamented, for his noble and pious Acts.



The Reign of King HENRY V.

Henry V.
succeeds his
Father.

HENRY, firnam'd of *Monmouth*, because he was born there, when his Father *Henry IV.* was Duke of *Hereford*, and resided in those Parts; succeeded him in the 26th Year of his Age, by Right of Inheritance. He had given Proofs of his Love for Virtue and Learning while he was at *Oxford*, of his Courage and Conduct in the Battel at *Shrewsbury*, and the *Welsh* Wars; but the Liberties which he had allow'd himself a little before his Father's Death, and the Extravagancies of himself and Companions, had brought some Blemish upon his former good Inclinations; yet as if all Men had foreseen that the Change of his Condition would have work'd as great a Change in his Manners, they gave him more than usual Testimonies



KING HENRY THE V.TH



nies o
Comm
Allegi
before
govern
Mean
but ga
ons :
not suff
ment o
Glory,
if Goa
would
to live
try.
April,
which
diverse
gan a
summer
them f
ces : T
Manner
they n
that A
would
his Co
come u
the nex
vest an
Judges
either l
rices, h
for the
jects n
to the
Day fo
Cushio
of his
his Inj
they te
Word
but to
As for
as he ki

The Reign of King HENRY V.

411

nies of their intire Confidence; in that both Lords and Commons on the 24th of *March*, offered to swear Allegiance to him, which was neither paid nor required before the Coronation, or taking the customary Oath to govern according to Law. The King would by no Means accept of their Tenders till he was crown'd, but gave them hearty Thanks for their good Affections: Saying, *That he earnestly prayed that God would not suffer him to be crown'd, or admit him to the Government of the Nation, but as he should rule well, for his Glory, and the Good and Prosperity of his Subjects; which if God did foresee that he should not do, he desir'd he would rather take him to his Mercy, than permit him to live and reign, to be a publick Calamity to his Country.* The Coronation was performed on the 9th of April, by *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; He is crown-
ed King. which proving a very stormy Day, gave Occasion for diverse superstitious Observations. He immediately began a Reformation both of himself and Court, and summoning his old Companions and Servants, gave them such Rewards as were due for their former Services: Telling them, *That if they would reform their Manners as he had begun, and was resolved to hold on, they might continue in their Places, and should upon that Account be more in his Favour; but if any of them, would still persist in their evil Actions, he forbid them his Court, and charged them upon pain of Death, not to come within ten Miles of the Place where he resided.* In the next place, he chose himself a Council of the gravest and wisest of his Nobility; and removing such Judges, or other Officers of the Crown, which were either known, or suspected to be guilty of corrupt Practices, he filled up their Places with others, as eminent for their Integrity as Knowledge. And that his Subjects might have free and impartial Justice, according to the Example of his Father, it was his Custom every Day for an Hour or more after Dinner, leaning on a Cushion, to receive Petitions, to hear the Complaints of his Subjects, and redress them. He also sent out his Injunctions to the Clergy, commanding them as they tendered his Displeasure, not only to preach the Word of God diligently and sincerely to the People, but to be Examples of Piety and Holiness themselves. As for inferiour Magistrates, he employed only such, as he knew to be Men of loyal Principles, knowing in
the

1413. the Laws and of Probity and Sobriety; forbidding upon his highest Displeasure, all Adulteries, common Swearing, Drunkenness, and Perjury.

His Piety to-
wards the
Body of
King Rich-
ard, and
Charity to
his Soul.

The King having thus provided for the Happiness of the Nation, began to shew his Disposition to Piety, as it was esteemed in those Days; for his Father in his Sickness, being touched in Conscience for deposing King *Richard*, and consenting to his Death, had sent to the Pope for Absolution, in Order to which the Pope had enjoined this Penance: *That since he had deprived King Richard of his bodily Life, and earthly Honour, he should by the continual Prayers of the Church, cause his Soul to live for ever, in heavenly Glory.* But he being by Death prevented from performing it, King *Henry* remov'd his Body from *Langley* in *Hertfordshire*, where it had been too meanly interred, and in great State laid him enshrin'd, by Queen *Ann*, in *Westminster Abbey*, and ordered a *Dirige* to be sung weekly for his Soul, and a *Requiem* the next Day, and both a weekly and annual Distribution of Money to the Poor. Four Wax Tapers were to burn upon his Tomb Day and Night; and that the Guilt of his Father's Sins might not cleave unto him, he is said to have undergone a strict Penance himself, and to have founded three religious Houses; one of *Cistercian* Monks at *Shene*, one of Nuns of *St. Bridget*, which he called *Sion*, and an House of Observants, which he called *Bethlehem*, both at *Richmond*.

The first
Parliament.
Sir John
Oldcastle,
Lord Cob-
ham, ac-
cused of He-
resie.

The Parliament met after *Easter*; and the Convocation of the Clergy being conven'd at the same Time according to Custom, Archbishop *Arundel*, having by twelve Inquisitors sent out the Year before, made a full Collection of the principal Doctrines and Opinions maintain'd by the *Lollards*, and discovered the chief Maintainers and Upholders of them; the Clergy accused Sir *John Oldcastle* Lord *Cobham*, of Here-*sie*, in maintaining several of *Wickliff's* Opinions, and propagating them in the Dioceses of *London*, *Roche-*ster** and *Hereford*. The King being incensed by the Suggestions of the Archbishop against the *Lollards*, that they had set up Bills in diverse Places, threatening, that a hundred thousand Men were ready to take up Arms against all that opposed their Reformation; and the Lord *Cobham* being a Nobleman very much endeared to the King by his excellent Qualities, he therefore took upon him to confer with him himself, and admonished him to re-

nounce

nounce
and O
thanked
returne
he owe
who w
and to
mit at
rarchy,
therefor
to be t
standing
them in
ed with
present
mine,
Church
The
in Ex
to cite
he no
caused
thedral
not ap
the Ma
King
Writin
and pr
receiv
own P
that th
fore o
he w
sonall
as to
cil on
quires
accep
Arch
minat
of Re
how
he w
to th
into

nounce his Opinions, and submit himself to the Church and Obedience of the Bishop. The Lord Cobham thanked his Majesty for his Kindness and Favour, and returned him this Answer, *That by the Law of God he owed Obedience to no Person on Earth but himself, who was his natural Prince, and God's Vicegerent; and to his lawful Commands he would readily submit at all Times: But as for the Pope and his Hierarchy, he owed them neither Suit nor Service; and therefore would pay them none, because he knew him to be the Antichrist, and them to be the Abomination standing in the holy Place, by the Description given them in Scripture.* The King being somewhat offended with this resolute Reply, dismissed him, and represented it to the Bishop, with Power to cite, examine, and punish him, according to the Canons of the Church.

The Archbishop did not defer to put it immediately in Execution, and accordingly sent his Summoner to cite him personally to appear at his Court; but he not daring to deliver his Summons to him, he caused a Citation to be set upon the Doors of the Cathedral Church of Rochester. The Lord Cobham would not appear according to the Summons; but fearing, lest the Malice and Fury of the Archbishop should engage the King against him, drew up the Sum of his Faith in Writing, according to the Sense of the Apostles Creed, and presented it to the King; but the King refused to receive it, and suffered him to be cited, even in his own Presence, and arrested. The Lord Cobham alledged, that the Archbishop was his avowed Enemy; and therefore ought not to be his Judge; yet if the King saw fit, he would justify himself by single Combat, either personally against any Man living, Christian or Heathen, as to the Truth of his Faith, the King and his Council only excepted; or with an hundred Knights or Esquires on each Side: But these Offers would not be accepted; and so he was obliged to appear before the Archbishop, and his Suffragans; where, at diverse Examinations, he answered with that Courage and Strength of Reason, that the whole Convocation was at a Loss, how to reply. But notwithstanding all he could say, he was condemned for a Heretick, and sent a Prisoner to the Tower; but he soon made an Escape thence into Wales. In this Synod the Archbishop enacted, that

Hen. V.

Lord Cobham excommunicated.

Condemned for Heresy.

the

14.3. the holy Scripture should not be translated into the *English* Tongue. Not long after, his Tongue, as it is said, while he was pronouncing the Sentence of Excommunication and Condemnation against the Lord *Cobham*, swelled at such an excessive Rate, that it deprived him wholly of his Speech, and soon after of his Life, not being able to swallow Meat or Drink, so that he was starved to Death.

A pretended Conspiracy against King Henry, by the Lord *Cobham* and the *Lollards*.

The King kept his *Christmas* at *Eltham* in *Kent*, and on Twelfth-Day Information was brought him, that Sir *John Oldecastle* Lord *Cobham*, and his Party, to the Number of twenty thousand, were assembled in *St. Giles's Fields*, to destroy the Monastery of *Westminster*, the Cathedral of *St. Pauls*, and all the Religious Houses in *London*. Upon this the King went thither with a great Army, about Midnight, and there finding about eighty Men, he fell upon them, slew about twenty, and took the rest Prisoners; the chief of whom were Sir *Roger Aston*, *John Brown* Esq; *John Beverly*, a Preacher, and one *Morby* a Malster; so that this meeting seems to have been nothing else but a religious Assembly for the Worship of God, which, because the *Lollards* could no where safely enjoy, for fear of their Adversaries, they were constrained like the first Christians under Persecution, to celebrate in the Night, in Woods and Thickets, and such was *St. Giles's Fields* at that Time. However some of them confessing they came there to meet the Lord *Cobham*, tho' it is certain he was not there, they were condemned as Rebels; thirty of them were hanged, and seven burnt in *St. Giles's Fields*; and Sir *John Aston* hanged and buried under the Gallows; and so this imaginary Plot was suppressed.

Henry Chiche-tychofen Archbishop.

The King restores the Earl of *Northumberland's* Grandson to his Honour and Estate.

Upon the Death of Archbishop *Arundel*, *Henry Chicheley*, a violent Opposer of the *Lollards*, was by the King, and the Monks of *Canterbury*, elected their Archbishop; but he politickly refused to accept the Office, till he had the Pope's Consent and Confirmation, who, tho' he was at first displeased that they had proceeded so far without his Directions, yet was afterwards pacified by some Gratifications.

King *Henry* hearing of the miserable Condition of *Henry Piercy*, Son to *Henry* surnamed *Hotspur*, and Heir to the Earldom of *Northumberland*; who was carried into *Scotland* to be educated, but was after kept by

by the
he was
ther r
him to
been fo
A& he
Nobilit

The
other A
relies, a
a very f
were: b
foreign
contra
ing abo
had non
and the
they ha
for as m
voutly g
dred an
sides th
many T
Priests
a Tear
the Dis
religious
employe
Poor;
nues in
tage of
clinable
into a g
gan to f
curse, a
now be
pending
shop C
Employ
he with
the Cro
"ry, b
"rige,
"Island
"Sham

by the Scots as a Prisoner; pitying him, and considering he was then an Infant, when his Father and Grandfather raised the Rebellion, redeemed him, and restored him to his Honour, Dignity and Estate, which had been forfeited by his Ancestors; by which generous Act he gained much Respect and Love, both from the Nobility and Commonalty.

The Parliament met in April at Leicester, and among other Acts one was made very severe against the Heresies, as they called them, of the Lollards, which rais'd a very sharp Persecution against them, in which many were burnt; and many, to save their Lives, fled into foreign Parts; and others of a timorous Spirit were constrained to abjure the Truth. This Parliament being about to raise the King some Money, he having had none before, were willing to do it the more largely; and therefore put up a fresh Petition to the King, (as they had before done to his Father) to this Effect, *That as much as the temporal Revenues which had been devouly given to religious Persons (amounting to three hundred and twenty two thousand Marks yearly, and besides the said Sum, diverse religious Houses possessed as many Temporalities, as would maintain fifteen thousand Priests and Clerks, allowing to each man seven Marks a Year) were disorderly consumed and spent, as well to the Dishonour of God and Religion, as the Prejudice of religious Persons themselves, which might be much better employed for the Safety of the Realm and Relief of the Poor; they besought the King to take the said Revenues into his Hands, and to employ them to the Advantage of himself and the Nation. The King seeming inclinable to acquiesce with this Petition, it put the Clergy into a great Ferment, so that Hall says, The fat Abbots began to sweat, the proud Priors to frown, the poor Fryars to curse, and the silly Nuns to weep, lest their Babel should now be utterly demolished. Therefore to avert the impending Storm, it was politickly contrived by Archbishop Chicheley, and others, to find the King some other Employment; and accordingly, in a full Parliament, he with much Eloquence set forth the King's Title to the Crown of France, to this Effect, "That King Henry, being a Prince so well qualified with Piety, Courage, and wise Conduct, to govern, not only a small Island, but the whole World, it would be a great Shame if the English should suffer his Power to be*

1 Hen. V.



Second Parliament.

The Commons petition the King to seise the Temporalities of the Monks.

The Archbishop's Speech encouraging King Henry to a War with France.

"con-

1414

“ confined within narrower Limits than Nature and
 “ Providence had given him ; that tho’ indeed King
 “ Henry ruled only *England* and *Ireland*, at present,
 “ yet the Dutchies of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*, and
 “ the Countries of *Anjou*, *Gascoigne* and *Maine* in
 “ *France*, did by antient Inheritance belong to the
 “ Crown of *England* ; and the whole Kingdom of
 “ *France* was really and truly his, as Heir to King *Ed-*
 “ *ward* the third, his Grandfather, who bravely at-
 “ tempted to conquer by Arms, what he could not ob-
 “ tain by a just Treaty ; That his Majesty had the same
 “ Title to demand that Crown, and the same Reasons
 “ to denounce War upon a Refusal ; That tho’ *Phi-*
 “ *lip de Valois* had possessed himself of that Kingdom,
 “ upon a pretended fundamental Law, called the *Sal-*
 “ *lick* Law ; and the *French* would oppose their imagi-
 “ nary *Salick* Law against that Claim, yet that Law
 “ had been unjustly pleaded, to bar the Kings of *Eng-*
 “ *land*, from their Inheritance ; That the Law was
 “ made by *Charles* the Great, when he conquered the
 “ Parts of *Germany* between the Rivers *Elbe* and *Sala*,
 “ where having observed the Women to be very lewd
 “ and voluptuous, and consequently unfit to govern ;
 “ therefore he made a Law wherein was this Term,
 “ *in terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant*, that in these
 “ Countries no Woman should rule ; That as to the
 “ Pretence of the *French*, that it was made by *Phara-*
 “ *mond*, it was evident there was no Mention made of
 “ it in History, till four hundred Years after : But what
 “ signified this Law to the *French* Nation, unless they
 “ could prove their Country to be situated between those
 “ two *German* Rivers ? That the *French* never made it any
 “ Bar in a Succession of their own ; for it manifestly
 “ appeared, that the Title of the great *Pepin*, the Claim
 “ of *Hugh Capet*, the Possession of *Lewis* the Saint,
 “ and of all the *French* Kings to that Day, were de-
 “ rived from Female Heirs ; so that the Name of the
 “ *Salick* Law was but a Shift to debar the *English*
 “ Kings from their Claim to the Crown of *France* :
 “ But supposing it to be granted, that such a Law had
 “ always been observed, yet it was contrary to the
 “ Laws of God, and Customs of all Nations : But if
 “ his Majesty would extend his just Arms into the Bow-
 “ els of *France*, there was no true *Englishman*, but
 “ would be ready to devote his Life and Fortunes to

“ the
 “ fion
 “ gy
 “ a Su
 “ fore
 “ but
 “ their
 This
 ment u
 Affistar
 himself
 could t
 Bill ag
 ly laid
 given t
 A V
 ing wa
 though
 nearest
 more p
 port of
 Deltra
 While
 bassado
 before
 them,
 Offers
 he wou
 and sign
 an Em
 Charles
 Manne
 the La
 take hi
 with al
 but if K
 Fire an
 his Life
 of the
 their B
 knowin
 of Life
 of Der
 enraged
 they m
 Vo

“ the Service of so great a King ; and in full Persua-
 “ sion of the Justice and Success of the War, the Cler-
 “ gy, besides their Prayers, would assist him with such
 “ a Supply of Money for that End, as no King be-
 “ fore him had ever received ; and he did not doubt,
 “ but the Laity, by their Example, would contribute
 “ their Proportion.”

2 Hen. V.

This Oration had the desired Effect ; for the Parlia-
 ment unanimously agreed to give the King their utmost
 Assistance, for the Recovery of *France* ; and the King
 himself being inflamed with the Desires of Victory,
 could think of nothing but Armies and Laurels. The
 Bill against the Temporalities of the Clergy was whol-
 ly laid aside, and a Subsidy of thirty thousand Marks
 given the King to carry on the War.

The Suc-
 cess of the
 Oration.

A War being agreed on, the Method of proceed-
 ing was next debated. The Earl of *Westmoreland*,
 thought it most requisite, first to check the *Scots*, the
 nearest Enemies ; but the Duke of *Exeter* judged it
 more proper to begin with *France*, the Root and Sup-
 port of the other, especially it being at that Time in
 Distraction by the Factions of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*.
 While these Things were transacting in *England*, Em-
 bassadors came to King *Henry* from the two Factions,
 before mentioned, and solicited him earnestly, to assist
 them, each against their Adversaries, making very large
 Offers ; to whom the King returned this Answer, *That*
he would shortly send over his Embassadors into France,
and signify his Resolutions to both of them. Accordingly,
 an Embassy was dispatched to that Kingdom, to King
Charles the sixth, to require of him, in a peaceable
 Manner, to surrender the Kingdom of *France* to him as
 the Lawful Heir ; upon which Condition he would
 take his Daughter *Katherine* to Wife, and endow her
 with all the Duchies belonging to the Crown of *France* ;
 but if King *Charles* refused, he would enter *France* with
 Fire and Sword, and either recover his Right, or lose
 his Life. The *French* King having heard the Demands,
 of the Embassadors, answered them in Scorn, *That*
their Business required Deliberation. And the Dauphin,
 knowing something of King *Henry*'s effeminate Course
 of Life, when he was Prince of *Wales*, sent him, by Way
 of Derision, a Turt of Tennis-Balls. King *Henry* being
 enraged at this Treatment, declared, *That as light as*
they made of his Demands, he'd make the French know,
that

An Embassy
 sent to
 France.

1414.

King Henry
makes Pre-
parations to
invade
France.

An Embassy
from France
to King
Henry.

that he deserved the Respect of a Prince from them; and that he would send among them such Balls, as the strongest Walls of France should not be able to withstand.

The King having gotten his Treasury pretty well furnished, sets about preparing for his Expedition with all Haste imaginable, and having raised a very puissant Army, hired a great Number of Ships out of *Holland, Zealand, and Freizland*, to join with his own Fleet, and provided Engines of Battery of vast Bulk and Force, he ordered the Fleet and Army, to rendezvous at *Southampton*. The *French* being terrified at these Preparations, solicited the *Scots* to annoy *England*, hoping by that Means to divert the Storm from themselves. Accordingly the *Scots* raised an Army in order to make Inroads into *England*; but Sir *Robert Humfrevil* came to an Engagement with them, routed their whole Army, took three hundred and sixty of them Prisoners, and with much Spoil got safe into *Roxborough Castle*, of which he was Governor.

Early in the Spring King *Henry* took a Journey to *Southampton*, to see what Readiness his Fleet was in; and in his Journey News was brought him, that a pompous Embassy from the *French King* was landed at *Dover*, upon which he retreated to *Winchester*, to receive them. The Chief of the Ambassadors was the Archbishop of *Bourges*, who with the rest, were introduced to King *Henry*, who in great State was sitting in his Chamber, in Robes of Cloth of Gold, leaning on a Cushion: His three Brothers, the Dukes of *Clarence, Bedford, and Gloucester*, and his Uncle the Duke of *York*, and many other Noblemen standing on his right Hand, and several Bishops on his left. The Archbishop of *Bourges*, in an eloquent Speech having set forth the barbarous Cruelties of War, and the Advantages of Peace, made an Offer of several Territories in *France*, together with the Princess *Katherine*, the *French King's* Daughter, and a Dowry of eight hundred thousand Crowns in Gold, if King *Henry* would immediately disband his Army, and conclude a Peace. The King did not presently give the Ambassadors an Answer to their Proposals; but having feasted them royally at his own Table, for several Days, ordered the Archbishop of *Canterbury* to answer their Proposals as followeth, *That the Dutchies of Aquitain and Anjou, with several Seignories and Dominions, did of*

Right

Right belong to his Master, the King of England, as ^{3 Hen. V.} they had formerly done to his royal Progenitors; and tho' he was fully resolved to recover them by Force, as he did not doubt but he should be able to do, by the Divine Assistance; yet for Peace Sake, and to avoid the Loss of so many Lives, as would probably perish in the Quarrel, he was contented to dismiss his Army, and give over his intended Expedition, if their Master would restore them to him by a Marriage with the Lady Katherine; if not, he would enter France with all his Force; and destroying the People and Towns, with Blood, Fire and Sword, never desist till he had recovered them, which were his antient Right and Patrimony. The King himself being present, assented to what the Archbishop had delivered, and promised upon the Word of a Prince, he would perform it to the uttermost. The Archbishop of Bourges being a lofty Prelate, heard it with Impatience, and with Warmth and Passion replied; *That his Majesty, the most Christian King, who was the most renowned, mighty and excellent Prince of Europe, without Competition, both in Blood, Power, and Prebeminence, did not offer those Things, which he had propounded, out of Fear of King Henry, or his Nation, but merely out of Compassion, to avoid the Effusion of Christian Blood; and since his Proposals, tho' very advantageous, were despised, God and his Good Subjects would put an End to the Quarrel: And that King Henry was so far from having a Right to the Crown of France, that he had none to that of England, which belonged to the Heirs of King Richard. After this, the Embassadors desired their Passport to depart. The King bore these Insults with great Temper; and with a princely Gravity and Mildness, told the angry Prelate, That he valued not his Bravadoes; and as he was satisfied in his Right, so he doubted not, but through God's Help he should find Means to recover it; That if his Master had many Subjects to assist him, he doubted not to find their Equals in Number and Courage among his own, by whose Help he would make the highest Crown in France to stoop, and the proudest Mitre to kneel. And giving them his Letters of safe Condu&t, bad them go tell their Master, That within three Months he would enter France, as into his lawful Patrimony; and by God's Assistance take that by Dint of Sword, which he unjustly detained from him.*

The Embassadors reflect on King Henry.

1415.

His new
Demands of
the French
King.

The French
King's An-
swer.

A great Con-
spiracy a-
gainst King
Henry.

King Henry having dismissed the Embassadors, proceeded in his Journey to Southampton, to view the Fleet; and from thence sent his Pursevant at Arms to the French King with Protestations, *That it was not Avarice, but a just Design to recover his Rights, that moved him to war; therefore he once more required him to restore those Provinces, which had been so often demanded by his Embassadors; That it was only the Fear of God, and Love of Peace, that made him so moderate in his Demands; That his Desire was to enjoy a peaceable Life with that excellent Princess, his Daughter; and therefore would relinquish fifty thousand of the Crowns, offered in Marriage with her, but could not do any Thing to the Prejudice of his Right and Honour.* The French King returned an Answer to this Effect, *That King Henry's Demands were unjust, and that it was very preposterous, to make Love to a Princess covered with the Blood of her Father's Subjects: But since he was resolved upon being his Enemy, and to enter his Dominions in an hostile Manner, he should find him prepared to make such Opposition as should easily repel him.*

The War with France being unmoveably resolved upon, King Henry doubled his Diligence to have all Things ready within the three Months appointed, and he went down to Southampton to embark on the last Day of July; but a dangerous Conspiracy, which was formed against him in his Army, being discovered, it put Things to a Stop for a small Time.

The French King chusing rather to dispatch King Henry by Treachery, than fight him fairly in the Field, had with a Million of Gold bribed three Persons most in Favour with the King, viz. Richard, Earl of Cambridge, Brother to the Duke of York, Lord Scroop, the High Treasurer, and Sir Thomas Gray, a Privy Councillor, either to kill King Henry in his Voyage to France, or to deliver him up to him. They to make the Design look the more plausible, communicated it to Edmund Mortimer, the Earl of March, pretending, that it was to restore him to his Right, and would have him concur with them, or at least, to take an Oath of Secrecy. The Earl desired them to allow him an Hour's Time to consider of it, which being granted, he went to the King and discovered the whole Conspiracy. The King immediately caused them to be

ap.

7
apprehen
of the N
King to
think up
to the D
Followe
they wer
nemies,
no Reve
Nation,
Punishm
Safety o
whole N
Repenta
comman
was per
Lord Sc
of Cam
Thes
ward hi
him, he
prise ag
their F
Treason,
would n
they per
ful to re
him, he
France
them in
The N
tion, fe
faithfull
suffer hi
this En
his two
his Un
Nobilit
sisting
Army
twenty
gineers.
arrived
three M
withou

The Reign of King HENRY V.

421

apprehended, and examined before himself and several of the Nobility, where confessing the whole Plot, the King told them, *That he could not but with Horror think upon their execrable Fact, which not only tended to the Destruction of his own Person, and the Nobles, his Followers, but to the Ruin of the whole Nation, of which they were so unnatural Sons, as to betray it to their Enemies, by this Treason. That as to himself, he desired no Revenge: But as he was supreme Governor of the Nation, he looked upon himself to be obliged to inflict the Punishment upon them, which they had deserved, for the Safety of his dear Friends, and the Preservation of the whole Nation: And thereupon wishing them an hearty Repentance for their Offences, and Mercy from God, he commanded them to be executed; And the Execution was performed in the Face of the whole Army. The Lord Scroop was drawn, hanged and quarter'd, the Earl of Cambridge and Lord Grey beheaded.*

3 Hen. V.

These Conspirators being punished, the King put forward his Expedition, and having called his Nobles to him, he represented to them the Glory of this Enterprize against France, and how much he depended upon their Fidelity and Courage, and told them, *That the Treason, which by God's Mercy he had so lately escaped, would make him value their Loyalty to him the more, if they persisted in their Duty, and he would not be forgetful to reward it; and in Confidence of their Firmness to him, he was resolved to proceed in his Design against France; and that he would not only be a Partner with them in all Hazards, but also foremost in the Danger.* The Nobles being moved with this generous Declaration, fell down on their Knees, and promised him faithfully to serve and obey him, and rather die than suffer him to fall into the Hands of his Enemies. With this Encouragement, on August the seventh, the King, his two Brothers, the Dukes of Clarence and Gloucester, his Uncle the Duke of York, and a great Body of Nobility and Gentry, went on board the Fleet, consisting of one thousand five hundred Vessels, with an Army consisting of six thousand Men at Arms, and twenty four thousand Archers, besides Gunners, Engineers, Artificers and Labourers; and on the fifteenth arrived at the Mouth of the River Seyne, in France, three Miles from Harfleur, where he landed his Army, without any Opposition; and falling down on his

King Henry proceeds in his Expedition.

1415.

King Henry
challengeth
the Dau-
phine.

Knees, he desired God's Assistance to recover his Right; then put forth a Proclamation, forbidding his Soldiers, upon Pain of Death, to plunder Churches, or Monasteries, to abuse any Priest, Woman, or unarmed Person. The next Day he sent to view *Harfleur*, and marching to it, besieged it on the seventeenth: The Town being strong, and commodiously seated between two Hills, as well as strongly garisoned, made a stout Resistance. The King posted his Party on one Hill, and his Brother *Clarence* upon the other; and having commanded the Ships to cast Anchor as near the Town, as they could with Safety, it was besieged both by Sea and Land. The Duke of *Glocester*, who carried on the Siege, endeavoured to reduce it with all Expedition imaginable, by Mines, battering the Walls with Engines, and continual Assaults; but the Besieged stopping the Course of the River, so swelled it, that it became dangerous to the King's Camp. While the King lay before the Town, he sent a Letter of Defiance to the Dauphine of *France*, challenging him to a single Combat, that the Lives of so many Men might be spared; upon Condition, that if the Dauphine fell in the Encounter, the Crown of *France*, and its Dependencies should be surrendered to King *Henry*, after the Death of the present *French* King; but the Dauphine returned him no Answer. At Length the Town being reduced to very great Streights, solicited the *French* King for Relief; but not obtaining any, they capitulated, and on the twenty second Day of *September*, the Governour with twenty four Captains and Burghers, came out of the Town to King *Henry*, who then sat in his Pavilion, in great State; and prostrating themselves at his Feet delivered the Keys of the Town to him, upon Condition, that if no Relief came in five Days, they would surrender the Town, which they performed accordingly, after a Siege of five Weeks; and King *Henry* made his Entrance into the Town, in a most humble Manner, walking barefoot through the Streets to the Church of *St. Martins*, where he gave solemn Thanks to God, for the Prosperity of his Arms. The Soldiers, and Inhabitants being suffered to depart, but unarmed; the Prey was given to the Soldiers, who enrich'd themselves with the Spoils of a Place grown opulent by Piracy: And having made his Uncle *Thomas Beaufort*

Earl

Earl of
Gariffo
thither,
their C
which
pled w
And
King's
by lying
the blo
into W
the Eng
march
the Fr
Aquitai
Passage
breakin
and sta
convey
the En
ny Dis
whole
King A
Somme
ed; the
likewit
Remy,
River
other E
and hea
by the
pass'd
encoun
Vidual
from th
in restr
one w
him gr
they fo
Prohibi
not su
King H
he can
where

The Reign of King HENRY V.

423

Earl of Dorset, Governor, and supplied it with a good Garrison, he peopled it with *English*, whom he invited thither, giving all such Families as would go over, and their Children after them, their Dwellings for nothing, which so many accepted that the Town was well peopled with *English* in a very short Time.

And now the Season being far advanc'd, and the King's Army very much weakned, and grown sickly by lying in the Field, a great many of them dying of the bloody Flux, the King resolv'd to send the Army into Winter-Quarters to *Calais*: But for the Glory of the *English* Name, he resolv'd not to go by Sea, but to march directly through the Enemy's Country. But

3 Hen. V.

marches to-

wards Calais.

the *French* King sent the *Dauphine* and Duke of *Aquitain*, with a considerable Force to obstruct the Passage of the Army, who by continual Skirmishes, breaking down the Bridges, stopping up the High-ways, and staking the Rivers where they were fordable, and conveying their Provisions out of the Countries where the *English* were to pass, had involved them in so many Difficulties, that they thought King *Henry* and his whole Army, would be caught as a Deer in a Toil.

The French

with a great

Army op-

pose him.

King *Henry* kept on his March, designing to pass the *Somme* at *Blanchetaque*, but that was too well defended; then he march'd to *Vermes*, but that was secur'd likewise; then intending to pass the River at *Pont St. Remy*, that was likewise guarded; so he march'd by the River *Hargess*, the *French* Army marching along on the other Bank, till passing by *Amiens*, *Bowes*, and *Corbie*, and hearing that the River was fordable at *Bethencourt*, by the Remifness of the Garrison of *St. Quintin*, he pass'd the River *Somme*. In this tedious Journey, they

He is ex-

tremely in-

commoded.

encountred many Difficulties, partly thro' Want of Victuals, and partly from the Assaults of the Enemies from their Garrisons; for tho' the King's great Justice in restraining the Army from pillaging, and in hanging one who had stollen a Pix out of a Church, procur'd him great Love from the People of the Country, so that they sold them Provisions contrary to their own King's Prohibition; yet the Supply that came that Way was not sufficient for their Subsistence. In this Manner King *Henry* marched till towards the End of *October*, when he came in View of the *French* Army near *Agincourt*, where he commanded the Horsemen to alight, and the

1415.

whole Army to kneel down, and implore the divine Assistance to make them victorious.

He is challenged by the French.

His Answer.

The French Army under the Command of the Constable, and the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, now lying between King Henry's Army and the Town of Calais, they sent three Heralds to King Henry with a Challenge to give them Battle, leaving it to him to fix the Time. The King receiv'd the Heralds very kindly, and sent two of his own with them to signify to the French Generals, *that they well knew he had lately kept on a constant March, and they might have fought him when they pleas'd, therefore if they desir'd a general Battle, there was no Need of appointing Time and Place, since they should always find him in the open Field: That his great Care was not to do any Thing unworthy of himself; and as he would not be the first Aggressor, yet when once attack'd, he would not decline fighting: That he was resolv'd to continue his March to Calais, and whoever endeavour'd to stop him, should do it at their Peril; and therefore he advis'd them not to oppose his Passage, that those Fields might not be stain'd with Christian Blood.* After this Answer, King Henry kept on his Way, and on the 20th of October the French Generals sent again to King Henry to let him know they would give him Battle the next Saturday. The King gave the Herald two hundred Crowns and a rich Robe, and dismissed him: After that Time he rode every Day in Armour, and us'd all Methods to rouse the Courage of his Soldiers. The King having sent out one David Gain with a Party of Welch, to get Intelligence of the Strength of the Enemy, he made this gallant Report to him, *May it please you, my Liege, there are enough to be kill'd, enough to be taken Prisoners, and enough to run away.* And indeed the Difference in Number was very great; for the French Army, according to their own Writers, amounted to an hundred and forty thousand, and they fresh and vigorous, and well supplied with Provisions; whereas King Henry's amounted to no more than nine or ten thousand, and those half starv'd and tir'd with Travel, and many of them sick. These great Advantages made the French so confident and presuming, that they commanded all the neighbouring Cities and Towns to make publick Rejoicings, as for a certain Victory; and in Scorn sent one to King Henry, to demand, *what he would give for his Ransom?* To which he replied, *that*

he hop'd
a Condi
viding

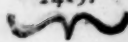
The
precedin
ing, Ga
Conque
Battel u
on their
press'd
Time w
Officers
would
were no
ven and
upon th
exceedi
fessing
mighty,
doubting
ingly th
The im
the Fie
consiste
every o
with Ir
leaning
ing in
hundre
Meadow
es, and
Flanks
of whi
to atta
was jo
Stakes
mande
the ma
pleat f
Arms o
he had
rial F
richly
English
born b

The Reign of King HENRY V.

425

he hop'd within a few Hours to reduce the French to such a Condition, that they should have the sole Care of providing Ransoms. 3 Hen. V.

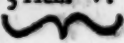
The French being secure of Victory, pass'd the Night preceding the Day of Battel in Jollity and Mirth, Drinking, Gaming, Triumphs and all the Insults of merciless Conquerors. King Henry on the other Hand, seeing a Battel unavoidable, and the Enemy rang'd ready to fall on them if they lay still, or block up all Ways if he press'd forward, made all the Preparation so short a Time would admit; and having call'd a Council of his Officers, he declar'd, *that since the implacable Enemy would be satisfied with nothing but their Blood, there were now no Hopes of Safety but in the Protection of Heaven and their own Courage: That if they would rely upon those two, they had no Reason to fear an Army so far exceeding them in Strength and Number: Therefore confessing their Sins, and making their Peace with the Almighty, they should prepare for the glorious Battel, not doubting but he would be their Deliverer.* And accordingly they spent the Night in Prayers and Confessions. The important Morning approaching, the French took the Field, and King Henry knowing that their Strength consisted chiefly in their Horse, ordered his Men to take every one a sharp Stake, six or seven Foot long, shod with Iron at both Ends, which being fixed in the Ground leaning forward, might keep off the Horse from rushing in upon his Foot. He likewise ordered two hundred stout Bowmen to lodge themselves in a low Meadow, cover'd from the Enemy's Sight by Bushes, and secur'd from the Horse by a Ditch. The Flanks of his Army were guarded by Woods, in one of which he plac'd an Ambush of Horse, with Orders to attack the Enemy in the Rear, when the Battel was join'd: He had the Town on his Back, and the Stakes fixed in the Front. The Van-guard was commanded by the Duke of York, who desired that Service; the main Body was led by the King himself, all in compleat shining Armour; his Shield quarter'd with the Arms of *England* and *France*; on his Helmet for a Crest he had a bright Crown of Gold, made after the Imperial Form; the Furniture and Caparisons of his Horse richly embroider'd with the glorious Ensigns of the *English* Monarchy, and the Royal Standard richly adorn'd born before him. On the other hand, the French Army was

1415.  was led by the Flower of their Nobility, and drawn up in three Lines: The first commanded by the Constable of France, and the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon; the second by the Duke of Berry, Alençon and Nevers; the third by the Duke of Brabant, Earls of Marle and Fauquenberge.

The Battle at
Agincourt.

The two Armies stood thus drawn up till between Nine and Ten in the Morning, when King Henry riding in the Front of his Batalions, by his Behaviour and Words animated the Courage of the Soldiers, telling them, *that they were now entering into the most glorious Field of Honour, which by their Valour might prove more renowned than those of Cressly and Poictiers: That as for his own Part, England should never be charg'd with his Ransom, nor any Frenchman triumph over him; but Death or Victory should be his certain Fate, as he expected it would be theirs. He was sensible, from the noble Fury sparkling in their Eyes, that future Ages would stand amaz'd at what the Lance, the Ax, the Sword and the Bow could perform in the Hands of such valiant Soldiers: Yet tho' these were the brave Instruments to reap Honour, he relied upon Omnipotence for the Victory; and it was a remarkable Effect of Divine Providence, that their Enemies offered them Battle on the very Day appointed in England, for the People to implore a Blessing on their Arms: So that at the Time that they were fighting, the whole Body of the English Nation were lifting up their Eyes and Hands to Heaven for their Success and Safety. If they were victorious now, they would not only enrich themselves with the Wealth of so many Nations gathered together; but a Kingdom to which he had an undoubted Right would be conquer'd, and England from that Time would give Law to France.* The Soldiers being, by the King's Speech, inspir'd with new Valour, call'd out to be led on immediately to Battle; and the Dukes of York, Clarence, and Gloucester advis'd the King not to suffer their first Ardour to cool. And tho' he was unwilling to quit the Advantages of his Ground, but expected the French to give the first Charge; yet finding the Eagerness of his Men was no longer to be restrain'd, he cried aloud, *Since our Enemies have intercepted our Way to Calais, let us break thro' their Army in the Name of the most glorious Trinity, and in the most propitious Hour of the whole Year.* Then lighting from his Horse, he commanded

T
manded
ers upon
Sir T
rang'd th
the Sign
which
ed to re
move t
gave a
forward
gall'd
withou
fore;
were
heedles
throwi
The E
on the
tain th
tion u
Ranks
away
rush'd
Confu
In
the G
the F
tlemen
up so
Crest
all fla
struck
over
lish b
into
and
Amb
Shou
Fren
Batt
of th
son,
Blow
whi
rou

manded his Standards to move forward, and the Arch-^{3 Hen. V.}
ers upon the right and left to advance upon the Enemy. 

Sir *Thomas Erpingham*, an old experienc'd Knight, rang'd the Army with a Truncheon in his Hand, and gave the Signal of Battle by throwing it up into the Air, at which the whole Army gave a Shout which seem'd to rend the Skies. They perceiving the *French* not to move towards them, halted a little to take Breath, and gave a second Shout; upon which, the *French* rushed forward upon the *English* with their Horse, but were so gall'd by the *English* Archers, that they madly ran on without Order, the hindermost Ranks pressing those before; and the Horses being wounded by the Arrows, were grown furious and ungovernable, and being heedlessly spur'd on, ran upon the pointed Stakes, and throwing their Riders, cruelly impal'd many of them. The *English* continued to pour Vollies of Arrows upon the disordered Enemies, who not being able to sustain the Shower of them, fell back with that Precipitation upon their main Body, that they broke all their Ranks. The Archers seeing their Ranks open, threw away their Bows, and with Sword and Battle-Axe rush'd into close Fight, and the *French* being in that Confusion, they slew great Numbers of them.

In the mean Time, King *Henry* advanced to charge the second Line of the *French*, and fought bravely in the Front of all his Men, where eighteen *French* Gentlemen having resolutely combin'd to slay him, charg'd up so close to him, that one of them struck him on the Crest of his Helmet with a Battle-Axe, but they were all slain. And the Duke of *Glocester* being likewise struck down with Battle-Axes, the King bravely stood over him, defended him, and sav'd his Life. The *English* being animated by the Bravery of their King, broke into the *French* Battalions, and put them out of Order; and the *English* Horse which had been placed in an Ambuscade behind the Wood, rush'd out with a mighty Shout, and with great Fury attack'd the Rear of the *French*. Upon this, the Duke of *Alençon*, seeing the Battle lost, out of Desperation press'd into the thickest of the Fight, and crying out he was the Duke of *Alençon*, attack'd King *Henry* in Person, and with a violent Blow of his Sword cleav'd off a great Part of the Crown which was the Crest of the King's Helmet. The King rous'd with this Blow, furiously struck *Alençon* to the Ground,

The great
Valour of
King *Henry*.

1415.

The French
fly.A Party of
French plun-
der the Eng-
lish Camp.

Ground, and slew two of his Followers with his own Hand. The King's Attendants being enrag'd at the Sight of their Prince's Danger immediately surrounded the Duke, and with many Wounds dispatched him, tho' the King call'd out for them to save so gallant a Man. The Rere-Guard of the *French* were yet in good Order; but seeing the two first Lines of their Army intirely routed, they were dismay'd; and observing the *English* Horse wheeling off to charge them, they fled without making any Resistance. The *English* pursued, having nothing to do but kill, and take Prisoners. Some flying Troops of the *French* had rallied and made a Stand at some Distance; which the King perceiving, he sent an Herald to them, threatening them, *that if they did presume to withstand his Army, he would shew them no Mercy.* This so terrified them that they withdrew all but 600, who were all cut to Pieces. When King *Henry* thought he had clear'd the Field of his Enemies, he was suddenly alarm'd with a Report that the *French* had entred his Camp, and plunder'd it: For in the Flight, the Rere-Guard of the *French* which got off almost intire, set upon the King's Camp which was but slenderly guarded, and killing those that defended it, pillag'd it, taking the King's Crown, and a rich Sword set with Diamonds which they carried off, as if the Victory had been theirs. King *Henry* hearing a great Cry in the Camp, suppos'd that the *French* had been gotten together in a Body again; and seeing the King of *Sicily* come in with some fresh Troops, began to fear the Loss of his new gotten Victory; and knowing that the Number of his Prisoners exceeded that of his own Men, and that it was impossible at the same Time, to fight and secure them from killing his Soldiers, he, not without great Regret, immediately gave Orders to slay all the Prisoners, but some of the greatest Quality. But this Fear soon vanish'd; for the King of *Sicily* seeing the *French* Army routed, drew off without fighting; and so King *Henry* caus'd a Retreat to be sound'd about four a Clock in the Afternoon, and the Soldiers having plunder'd the slain and wounded, retreated. The base Surprisal of the King's Camp having been one chief Cause of the Slaughter of the *French* Prisoners, was so resented by the Duke of *Burgundy*; that considering the Party who had plunder'd the *English* Camp had cowardly deserted the Army in Danger, and by pillaging the *English* for their own pri-

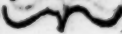
private
thren w
in coo
and wo
the Med
Henry's
set with
In thi
Constab
Brabant
Vaudem
Noblem
of whor
noble, a
had Bar
there we
ninety t
thousan
sixteen h
were the
Fouiqua
Eu. O
inconfid
of York
Suffolk,
common
the Nun
hundred
King *H*
dering t
and at t
but to th
Army to
of their
and Offi
to desire
it was n
gain'd so
had befor
nish the S
and Eng
was to be
that he v
and bein
to all Po

The Reign of King HENRY V.

429

private Gain, had been the Cause that their braver Brethren who had been taken in the Fight had been killed in cool Blood, a he put the chief Actors in Prison, and would have put them to Death, had it not been for the Mediation of his Son, to whom they presented King Henry's Sword, the Guards of which were of Gold beset with Jewels, of great Value.

3 Hen. V.



In this Battle there were kill'd on the *French* Side the Constable and Admiral of *France*, the Dukes of *Barr*, *Brabant* and *Alençon*, the Earls of *Nevers*, *Blamont*, *Vaudemont*, *Faukemberge* and *Roussy*, and many other Noblemen. In all there were about ten thousand slain, of whom about seven or eight thousand of them were noble, and above an hundred of them Princes, who had Banners born before them. *Elmhams* relates, that there were kill'd one Archbishop, three Dukes, six Earls, ninety two Barons, fifteen hundred Knights, and seven thousand Esquires and Gentlemen. Of the Prisoners sixteen hundred were Men of Quality, among whom were the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Bourbon*, the Marshal *Fouciquart*, and the Earls of *Richemont*, *Vendosme*, and *Eu*. On the Side of the *English*, the Loss was very inconsiderable: For *Walsingham* reckons only the Duke of *York* King Henry's Uncle, *Michael de la Pool* Earl of *Suffolk*, four Knights, one Esquire, and twenty eight common Soldiers, tho' the *French* Historians account the Number of the slain to have been about four or five hundred. In the Evening at the Head of his Army King Henry solemnly prais'd God for his Success, ordering the hundred and fiftenth Psalm to be sung, and at that Verse, *Not unto us, O Lord, not unto us, but to thy Name be the Glory*, he commanded all his Army to prostrate themselves to the Ground, as a Sign of their Humility. And afterwards, to his Nobility, and Officers, and five *French* Heralds, who were sent to desire Leave to bury their Dead, he declar'd, that it was not his own, but an Almighty Hand, which had gain'd so great a Victory; and that the dismal Sight they had before their Eyes, was ordered by divine Justice to punish the Sins of *France*. Then he demanded of the *French* and *English* Heralds, *Whether he or the King of France was to be acknowledg'd Conqueror?* And being answer'd, that he was, he enquir'd the Name of the next Castle, and being told it was *Agincourt*, he said, *Then let this to all Posterity be called the Battle of AGINCOURT.*

The great
Loss of the
French, and
small Loss of
the *English*.

Then

1415. Then the Night growing on, he marched with his fatigu'd Troops to *Mascomelles*, where they had lodged the Night before, and refreshed themselves with the Provisions of the *French* Camp.

King Henry
marches to
Calais.

The Day after the Battle, King Henry continued his March towards *Calais*; and passing by the Field of Battle, he ordered Search to be made for all the *English*, whom he caus'd to be interr'd according to their Quality, bringing along with him the Bodies of the Duke of *York*, and Earl of *Suffolk* to be honourably interred in *England*. Upon viewing the Field of Battle and his Army, he made a Speech to them, applauding their Valour, but admonishing them, to ascribe all to the Favour of the Almighty, who had wrought a Miracle, in making a Handful of Men victorious over such a numerous Army, to abate their Vanity and Presumption. And added, that he could not but adore the Divine Providence for its Care of the Lives of his Subjects, that so few had fallen in Battle. Yet he could not behold such Streams of Blood, and Heaps of Carcasses, tho' of Enemies, without Horror; but the Sight of his own Fellow-Soldiers affected him with the tenderest Compassion; therefore he had performed the last Rites due to such magnanimous Souls, in burying their Bodies, that they might not be expos'd to Wolves and Vultures. Then marching forward, after two Days he arrived at *Calais*, and by the Way treated the Dukes of *Orleans*, *Bourbon*, and other Prisoners, with very obliging Carriage, condoling their Condition, and applauding their Valour, attributing nothing to himself, but all to the Hand of Heaven, in punishing the Sins of *France*; and having nobly entertained them at Dinner, afterwards presented each of them with a Robe of rich Damask, testifying the same Inclinations to Peace now, that he had before he began the War. And taking Notice that the Duke of *Orleans* was very melancholy, and declin'd eating, King Henry, in a very obliging Air, said to him, *Courage, good Cousin, I have not conquer'd you, because I am superior in Merit; but because God would punish the French People for their Sins, and if he is justly angry with them, it is not decent for you to be angry with him, or to repine at his Proceedings.*

King Henry's
Carriage
to the French
Prisoners.

Not long after the Duke of *Burgundy* being enrag'd at the Loss of the Duke of *Brabant*, and Count de *Nevers*, his two Brothers, sent a Herald with a Gauntlet of Defiance to King Henry, threatening him with the

The Duke of
Burgundy
challenges
King Henry.

of Defiance to King Henry, threatening him with the

Th
utmost
much C
that he
for the
upon m
logne,
the Fre
is to re

The
persue
but it p
bark'd
trouble
23^d, w
ot the
the Ar
bits; a
dermen
their G
as also
Relique
The S
peltry,
along,
so little
forbad
Victor
his din
before
Paul's
his Off
to Wes
Recept
ers. T
compa
him w
Value,
he appo
moned
brate t
Suffolk
Fodring
Suffolk
of this
English
ut

The Reign of King HENRY V.

431

utmost Revenge. The King return'd the Gauntlet with much Calmness, with this Answer, *Go tell your Master, that he has no Reason to be my Enemy; that I am sorry for the Death of his Brothers, which is not to be charged upon me or my Soldiers; and if he please to come to Boulogne, he shall be satisfied from the Prisoners I have, that the French alone are guilty of their Blood, and of them he is to require it.*

The King remained at Calais a while, intending to pursue this Victory closely, had the Season permitted; but it proving very wet and unfit for Action, he embark'd for England, the 16th of November, and after a troublesome and dangerous Passage, landed at Dover the 23^d, where he was received with the loud Acclamations of the People. Arriving near Canterbury he was met by the Archbishop, Abbot and Monks in their richest Habits; and approaching near London, by the Mayor, Aldermen, and four hundred of the principal Citizens in their Gowns, who attended his coming on Black Heath, as also did the Clergy in a solemn Procession with the Reliques of seventy Saints at St. Thomas a Waterings. The Streets of London were hung with the richest Tapestries, and Psalms and Hymns were sung as he went along, for Joy of the Victory. However, the King was so little taken with these outward Ceremonies, that he forbid any Songs or Ballads should be made of the Victory, ascribing all to God: Nor would he permit his dinted Helmet and bruised Armour to be carried before him, as Trophies of his daring Valour. At St. Paul's Cathedral he alighted from his Horse, and made his Offerings with great Devotion, and then proceeded to Westminster, where his Palace was prepar'd for the Reception of him and the noblest of his French Prisoners. The next Morning the Mayor and Aldermen, accompanied with two hundred of the Citizens, presented him with a thousand Pound in two Basons of equal Value, which the King received very graciously. Then he appointed a Day of publick Thanksgiving, and summoned a great Number of Bishops and Abbots to celebrate the Obsequies of the Duke of York and Earl of Suffolk, and interr'd the Body of the Duke of York at Fodringhey in Northamptonshire, and that of the Earl of Suffolk at Ewbelem in Oxfordshire. But the good Success of this Battle was not more joyfully receiv'd by the English, than the ill Success of it was lamented by the French;

3 Hen. V.

King Henry
lands at Dover.

His Entry
into London.

1416. *French*; and the *Dauphine*, the Heir of the Crown, took it so grievously, that he died soon after of mere Sorrow.

The Bravery
of the Earl
of Dorset in
Normandy.

After this, the Earl of *Dorset* who was Governor of *Harfleur*, made an Inroad into *Normandy*, almost as far as *Roan*, where the King of *France* and his Court then were, and got a great Booty of Money, Prisoners, and Cattle; but being attack'd by the Earl of *Armagnac* the Constable of *France*, with a superior Force, was so distressed that he was forced to retire into an Orchard well fenced with Ditches and Banks, with the Loss of three hundred of his Men, and all their Prey. After this, the *French* withdrew to a neighbouring Village that Night, and in the Morning pursued the *English* again, when being much superior in Number and the Advantage of the Place, the Constable thought himself so secure of Victory, that he sent an Herald to the Earl of *Dorset* to summon him to surrender himself and all his Men Prisoners: To which the Earl heroically replied, *that it was not the Custom for the English to yield without fighting; nor was he so cowardly as to surrender to an Enemy whom God might deliver into his Power.* After which, *Armagnac* attack'd the *English* very furiously; but they made so gallant a Defence, that they defeated the Constable with the Loss of twelve hundred of his Men, altho' their Numbers were so unequal, that *Walsingham* says the *English* were but fifteen hundred, and the *French* fifteen thousand. The Constable of *France*, to repair this Disgrace, hang'd up some of his Men; and then having receiv'd a Reinforcement, besieg'd the Town of *Harfleur* by Land, while the Vice-Admiral of *France* block'd it up by Sea.

Third Parliament.

On *Monday March 16.* the King summoned a Parliament, but demanded no Money of them; and after they had enacted several Laws for the Good of the Publick, they were prorogu'd upon Account of the Coming of the Emperor.

Sigismund
the Emperor
comes into
England.

For *Sigismund* the Emperor, Cousin German to King *Henry*, and a very wise and learned Prince, came into *England* the Beginning of *May*, to endeavour to make Peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*. He had before been at the *French* Court, where he earnestly solicited the King, and he seeming inclinable to it, he brought with him the Archbishop of *Rheims* as an Agent for the *French* King, and travel'd in State, be-

The Reign of King HENRY V.

433

4 Hen. V.

ing attended with eight hundred Horse to Calais, in Order to visit King Henry in England. Being arriv'd at Calais, he was entertain'd by the Earl of Warwick the Governor, with that Magnificence and Gallantry, that the Emperor was so charm'd with his Reception, that he afterwards told King Henry, *that no Christian Prince had a Knight equal to him for Wisdom, good Breeding and Courage; and if all Courtesie were lost, it might be found again in the Earl of Warwick.* The Earl of Warwick sent thirty of the King's Ships to carry him to England, with his Retinue, which consisted of a thousand Persons, among whom were many sovereign Princes of the Empire of Germany. King Henry having had Intelligence of his coming, sent the Duke of Gloucester with a large Train of Nobility to meet him at Dover, commanding them to meet him on the Shore with their drawn Swords, and to demand of him, *whether he came as a Mediator of Peace only, and the King's Friend, or as an Emperor, to claim England as Part of his Dominions:* If as the former, they were ready to give him a kind Welcome; but if as the latter, to resist his Entrance: which they performed exactly, entring into the Water with their drawn Swords in their Hands. The Emperor made Answer with a Smile, *that he came as the King's Friend, and to make Peace between England and France.* Upon this Answer, he was receiv'd by the Nobility, and honourably conducted, being met at Canterbury by the Archbishop, at Rochester by the Duke of Bedford, at Dartford by the Duke of Clarence, and at Black-Heath by the King himself, who conducted him to his Palace at Westminster; where he was magnificently entertain'd at the King's Charge, who the more to honour him, install'd him Knight of the Garter at Windsor in the most pompous Manner; which Honour the Emperor so esteem'd, that he always wore the Collar when he sat in any Assembly.

The Emperor was very earnest with King Henry to make a Peace with France, and his Persuasion had almost wrought upon the King to comply: But the French not giving over their Acts of Hostility, while they knew the Peace was in Agitation, but taking all Advantages, King Henry would not bear such Usage. The Emperor therefore saw it in vain to use any farther Endeavours; for the King was so incens'd, that he recall'd

1416. his Ambassadors, resolving to prosecute the War with the utmost Vigour. The Emperor therefore entred into a League with King Henry, to this Effect; "That the Emperor and King of England would be Friends and Confederates to each other against all Persons whatsoever, the Church and Pope of Rome only excepted. 2. That neither of them should pursue any Designs injurious to the other's Advantage; but contribute all they could, to the Advancement of each other's Honour and Benefit. 3. That the Subjects of both Princes should have free Liberty of trading in all their Dominions without any Acts of Hostility, paying the usual Tolls and Customs. 4. That neither of the two Princes should engage in any War without the Knowledge and Consent of the other. 5. That neither of them should allow Sanctuary to any Rebel or Exile of the others Subjects. 6. That both of them might prosecute the War against France for the Recovery of their Rights; and that they should mutually assist each other for the obtaining that End. 7. That if a Peace should be concluded with France, and the Territories demanded were restor'd, they should mutually support one another in Possession of them." This League was concluded and sign'd in August, and ratified by the Parliament the October following.

The French
defeated at
Sea.

While the Emperor remain'd in England, the French who had block'd up *Harfleur*, resolv'd to rig out the greatest naval Power they could, and for that End hired Ships from *Genoa*, *Spain* and *Flanders*, which with their own Ships, made a Fleet of five hundred Sail, designing with them to annoy the *English*. King Henry would have gone in Person against them; but the Emperor dissuaded him from it. And he having fitted out about four hundred Sail, man'd with twenty thousand Men, committed the Charge to his Brother the Duke of *Bedford*, accompanied with other Noblemen; who after a long Engagement, so prevail'd, that the French Fleet was, most of it, either batter'd, taken, or sunk, that it is reported they lost twenty thousand Men. After this the Duke supply'd *Harfleur*, which was in great Want of Provisions; upon which the Constable of France despairing of Success rais'd the Siege, and march'd to *Paris*. This extraordinary Service was so admir'd by the Emperor, who heard of the Success of the *English*

Fleet,

Fleet,
thither,
in hav-
ving ju

The
returns
to Cala
his Hon
a farthe
Gloceste
Hostage
ing all
where
Emper
Archiv
Calais,
Henry's
rightful
for him
gotten
with th
Power

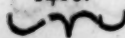
The
shew'd
ous De
Infince
sponder
King H
the oth
fection
ces. A
bark'd
cester a
ror we
at Con
the Co
the Spa
gory XI
cil ther
seven C
and fix
ons, wi
sand.
of the

Fleet, before he could have imagined them to be got thither, that he openly declar'd, that *England was happy in having such a King, but the King more happy in having such Subjects.* 4 Hen. V.

The Emperor having finish'd his Affairs in *England*, returns to *Germany*, King *Henry* bearing him Company to *Calais*, where the Duke of *Burgundy* repaired to pay his Homage to the Emperor. King *Henry*, in Hopes of a farther Amity with him, sent his Brother the Duke of *Glocester*, and the Earl of *March*, to lie at *St. Omers*, as Hostages for the Duke of *Burgundy's* safe Conduct, sending also the Earl of *Warwick* to conduct him to *Calais*, where he was very honourably receiv'd both by the Emperor and King *Henry*. And it appears from the Archives of *France*, that secret Articles were sign'd at *Calais*, by the Duke of *Burgundy*, in Vindication of King *Henry's* Title to *France*, acknowledging him to be the rightful King, and that in due Time he would declare for him; but in a few Months Time he had so forgotten all, that he consented and swore to a League with the King and *Dauphine* of *France*, against the Power of *England*, and acted accordingly.

The Emperor being about to return into *Germany*, shew'd a very great Satisfaction at the plain and ingenuous Dealing of the *English*, and his Detestation of the Insincerity and mean Shifts of the *French*. The Correspondence had been so free and open between him and King *Henry*, that one conceal'd not any Thing from the other, so that the like Confidence and mutual Affection was scarce known between two such great Princes. After reciprocal Friendships, the Emperor embark'd for *Dort*, being accompanied by the Duke of *Glocester* and many Knights and Gentlemen. The Emperor went first to *Dort*, and from thence to the Council at *Constance*, which continued for three Years to decide the Controversy between three contending Popes: For the *Spaniards* had elected *Benedict XIII.* the *French* *Gregory XII.* and the *Italians* *John XXIV.* at which Council there were several Princes, four Patriarchs, twenty seven Cardinals, forty seven Archbishops, one hundred and sixty Bishops, Barons and Gentlemen of all Nations, with their Attendants, to the Number of thirty thousand. By this Council the three Popes were depriv'd of the Papal Dignity, and *Otho Colonna* made Pope by

1416.

Fourth Par-
liament.

the Name of *Martin V.* In this Choice the *English* Prelates had the greatest Interest.

King *Henry* being returned from *Calais*, called a Parliament, and by his Chancellor acquainted them, that tho' for the Ease and Quiet of his Subjects, he had waived the Pursuit of his Conquests, which God had so successfully begun, and had condescended to disadvantageous Terms of Peace; yet the *French* had rejected all, and against the Law of Arms, denied upon Ransom to deliver the Prisoners taken at *Agincourt*; and therefore since he could not give over the War with Honour, he hoped that they would give him such Supplies of Money, as were necessary for so great an Undertaking. The Parliament readily assented and granted him a Fifteenth of the Laity, and two Tenths of the Clergy; but the King not thinking this sufficient, pawn'd his Crown to the Bishop of *Winchester*, for twenty thousand Pounds, and his Jewels to the City of *London*, for ten thousand Marks.

King *Henry's*
second Ex-
pedition in-
to *France*.

After *Christmas*, the King set himself with all Diligence, to make Preparations for his second Expedition to *France*; and in the Spring having gotten an Army of twenty five thousand stout Soldiers, and fifteen hundred Ships designed to set sail, as soon as the Weather and Seas should favour him. But having Intelligence that the *French* Army had hired foreign Ships, in order to hinder his Passage, he sent his Fleet before to scour the narrow Seas, which did his Business so effectually, by taking some, and sinking others, that he set sail from *Southampton*, in a Ship with Sails of purple Silk, most richly embroidered with Gold, *July* the 28th, and landed in *Normandy* *August* the 1st, where to encourage them in future Attempts, he made forty eight Knights of the most valiant of his Captains. The Arrival of the *English* was no sooner known in *Normandy*, but the Inhabitants were so terrified, that they fled either into walled Towns and Castles, or into *Bretagne*, leaving the Country open to the Will of the Invaders.

1417.
Several Ca-
stles and
Towns ta-
ken by the
English.

After King *Henry* had viewed *Hur fleur*, his first Attempt was upon *Conquest* one of the strongest Castles in *Normandy*, and having taken it in a small Time, he gave it and the Demesnes belonging to it, to his Brother the Duke of *Clarence*; and having won the Castle of *Damvillers* much about the same Time, he gave that to the

Earl of
Sal.
and be
provid
resolu
8. Th
surren
the T
did so
Town
Henry
them,
He lik
volunt
ty and
were fl
by a ce
Soldier
down
which
Whi
the gre
did ant
thinkin
Englan
Fire an
and *Rox*
of the
whom
Gentry
Duke o
able to
which
and dep
A Pa
the Duk
having
War, th
sion wa
Cobham
Place to
was afte
taken in
sent up
With hi

The Reign of King HENRY V.

437

Earl of *Salisbury*, and also that of *Lovers* to the Earl *Mar-* 5 Hen. V.
shal. Next he marched against *Caen*, one of the strongest
 and best Towns in *Normandy*; which Town, tho' well
 provided with Men, Ammunition, and Provision, and
 resolutely defended, yet he took it by Storm *September* *Caen taken*
 8. The Castle still held out, but despairing of Relief, by Storm.
 surrendered the 20th of *September*. King *Henry* peopled
 the Town with *English*. The taking of this Town
 did so terrify the neighbouring Towns, that fourteen
 Towns and Castles voluntarily surrendered to King
Henry; who having taken an Oath of Fidelity of
 them, permitted them to enjoy their former Privileges.
 He likewise published a Proclamation, that they who
 voluntarily submitted themselves, should enjoy all Safe-
 ty and Privileges under his Government; but those who
 were fled from their Habitations, if they did not return
 by a certain Day, he would give their Lands to the
 Soldiers. After this, on the 1st of *December*, he sat
 down before the strong Town and Castle of *Falaise*,
 which surrendered upon Articles.

While King *Henry* had in four Months recovered The Scots
 the greatest Part of those Dominions in *France*, that invade Eng-
 did antiently belong to the Kings of *England*, the Scots land.
 thinking he had left his own Nation unprovided, invaded
England with a great Army, wasting the Country with
 Fire and Sword, and besieged the Castles of *Berwick*
 and *Roxburgh*: And that they might have the Assistance
 of the *English*, they brought with them a Person,
 whom they pretended to be King *Richard*. But the
 Gentry of the Northern Parts raising Forces, and the
 Duke of *Exeter* marching his Forces thither, they were
 able to muster an hundred thousand Men; the News of
 which so terrified the *Scots*, that they rais'd the Sieges,
 and departed in a Fright.

A Parliament was call'd in the King's Absence, by Fifth Parlia-
 the Duke of *Bedford*, the Regent of the Nation, and ment.
 having given the King a Supply for carrying on the
 War, the most remarkable Transaction during the Ses-
 sion was; the Trial and Condemnation of the Lord
Cobham, who having for four Years shifted about from
 Place to Place, to secure himself from his Enemies,
 was after a noble Resistance, and many Wounds, The Lord
 taken in *Powisland* in *Wales* by the Lord *Powis*, and Cobham ta-
 sent up Prisoner to the Tower, in order to his Trial. ken, senten-
 With him were taken some Mass Books, with the Fa- ced, and ex-
 ecuted.

1418.

ces of the Saints and Heads scraped out, and their Names blotted out of the *Litany*. These were deliver'd to the Archbishop, and by his Means expos'd to the Sight of the Auditors of the Sermons of *St. Paul's* Cross, by the Preachers, who aggravated the Fact, telling the People that it was an Injury done to the Saints in Heaven. He having before been outlaw'd, and excommunicated for Heresie, being brought before the Parliament, received Sentence to be drawn through the City to the new Gallows at *St. Giles's*, and there to be hang'd about the Middle, and burnt, hanging in a Chain, which Sentence was executed on *Christmas* Day. King *Henry* prosecuted the War in *France*, with that Vigour, that neither the Depth of Winter, nor Rigour of the Season, could stop the Progress of his Conquests. And for the greater Expedition, he divided his Army into several Bodies. The Duke of *Clarence*, with his Party, besieged *Chambroise*, and the Castle of *Beche-lowyn*, which surrendred to him. The Duke of *Glocester*, with his Detachment, took the County of *Constantine*, the Town and Castle of *Vire*, and *St. Lo*, *Carenton*, *Pontdown*, and *St. Saviour le Viconte*; the Town of *Chierburg* made a longer Defence, but at last surrendred.

The Strength
and Greatness
of *Roan*.

While these and several other Places were taken by the *English*, King *Henry* having received his Recruits out of *England*, he resolv'd to besiege *Roan*, the capital City of *Normandy*; a City strongly fortified with extraordinary Walls, Towers and a vast Ditch; and accordingly sat down before it *July* the 30th. The Citizens, who had been long expecting a Siege, had made as great Provision as possible; for the Inhabitants being in Number near three hundred thousand, had train'd fifteen thousand of their Body in Arms, and had been reinforced by a thousand disciplin'd Men from the Duke of *Burgundy*; they had laid in Provision for ten Months, and burnt the Suburbs, that it might not be a Harbour to the *English*, and having made the Fortifications as strong as possible, and the People of *Normandy* having brought all their Treasure thither, accounting it their last Refuge and Retreat, they had sworn never to resign the Town to the *English*, so long as they could hold their Swords in Hand.

King *Henry* in his March to *Roan*, having taken several small Fortresses, and *Pont de l' Arche*, eight Miles

Mil
the
it wi
of th
sum
but
had
none
the
back
ter
but
Cour
into
great
havin
round
shod
prise
tion
to sur
to sur
they
quietl
the K
of B
the S
Rob
ber, be
and to
Men,
as to
miser
unwil
People
to en
them
which
made
the Di
Days,
their
that he
Gariso
within

Miles distant from it, which was accounted the Key of ^{6 Hen. V.} the River *Sein*, he laid close Siege to *Roan*, surrounding it with his Army by Land, and blocking up the Mouth of the River *Sein* with a Fleet. He sent an Herald to summon the Inhabitants to surrender the Keys to him, but they returned him this resolute Answer, *That they had received none of him, and therefore would deliver up none to him*; and thereupon made a brisk Sally out of the Town, upon the King's Forces, but were driven back again with the Loss of thirty Men. The King after this having made many Assaults upon the Town, but to little purpose, thought it was the most prudent Course to save the Lives of his Men, to turn the Siege into a Blockade, and so to starve them, which their great Numbers made them liable to the sooner. So having stopped all the Avenues, he cast up a Trench round about his Camp, and defended it with Stakes shod with Iron Spikes, that the *French* might not surprise them. While the King lay idle, and without Action about the Town, he sent the Earl of *Warwick*, to summon *Caundebeck*, and fourteen other Fortresses, to surrender to him, who return'd him Answer, *That they would follow the Fate of Roan, and would resign quietly, if that City were taken without Relief*; which the King was contented to yield to, because the Duke of *Burgundy* having promised the Inhabitants to raise the Siege, he was not willing to weaken his Army.

King Henry besieges Roan.

Roan having been block'd up from *July* till *December*, began to be in great Distress for Want of Provisions, and to unburthen themselves, put out twenty thousand Men, Women and Children, who were unserviceable as to the Defence of the Place. King *Henry*, seeing this miserable Multitude shut out of the Gates, tho' he was unwilling to attack a miserable Company of helpless People, but resolving to force them back into the City to encrease the Famine, gave Orders to pour upon them a Shower of Arrows from Bows lightly drawn, which should rather scare than wound them. This made the poor starv'd Wretches shelter themselves in the Ditches of the Town, where they remaining three Days, and many of the Women falling in Labour, their Cries and Groans so prevailed upon King *Henry*, that he sent them some Subsistence, till the Pity of the Garrison was moved to receive many of them again within the Walls. The Famine and Mortality grew to

The besieged suffer all the Miseries of Famine.

1418.

that Height, that five thousand perished by them, and they of better Quality eat their own Horses, but the poorer Sort fed on Dogs, Cats, Rats, and Mice; little Infants hung on the Breasts of their Mothers as they lay dead in the Streets, and they wounded and killed one another, to take away the vilest Nourishment of Life; young Virgins abandon'd their Modesty, and prostituted themselves for a piece of Bread. At last being grown desperate, they resolv'd to make a brave Sally upon the King's Quarters; to perform which, ten thousand chosen Men issued out of the Town, and the Vant-guard, which consisted of two thousand, having advanced and engaged King Henry's Forces, a Draw-bridge broke down with their Weight, and drowned and killed many of them; and the rest not being able to come timely to their Assistance, they were most of them killed or taken Prisoners. Upon this, the Soldiers within the City mutinied against their General, charging him with having contrived the breaking of the Bridge; and a Message coming to the besieged from the King of France, that they must take care of themselves, they came to a Parley upon *New-years-day*, and after several Meetings for eight Days together, and nothing being concluded on, the Town's People threatened to kill the Governor and Burgeses, if they did not yield to the King of England's Demands; whereupon they desiring another Meeting, the Surrender of the City was fully agreed on, in twenty three Articles.

This Agreement being concluded on the 19th of *January*, the half famished Citizens repaired in great Multitudes, to buy Victuals in the *English* Camp, where Provisions were so plenty, that a fat Sheep was sold for six Sols.

King Henry
enters Roan.

On the 20th, the King entred the City in a most triumphant Manner, accompanied with four Dukes, ten Earls, eight Bishops, sixteen Barons, and a great Number of Knights, Esquires, and Men at Arms. At his entring the Gates of the City, all the Bells were set a ringing, and the Abbots and Priests met him in a solemn Procession, bearing forty two Crosses before him, with the Reliques of Saints, and the Burghers met him to welcome him, by whom being conducted to the Cathedral of *Notredame*, he offered up his Thanks for the Conquest of the City. Then he went to the Castle

The Reign of King HENRY V.

441

to receive the Homage of the Citizens. The next Morning he ordered *Alain Blanchard* an Incendiary to be beheaded, and pardoned the rest who were left at his Mercy. Then he established his Exchequer, Coinage and Chamber of Accounts of the Revenues of *Normandy*, to be in that City; and to keep the Townsmen in their Obedience, he re-edified the Castle and Walls, and built another strong Tower. He kept his Court at *Roan* for some Time, wearing the Ducal Robes as Duke of *Normandy*; he likewise caused Proclamation to be made, that all who would swear Allegiance to him, should be received into his Favour and Protection. Thus was *Roan* again in the Power of the *English*, after the *French* had been Masters of it two hundred and fifteen Years.

7 Hen. V.

After the Surrender of *Roan*, *Caudebec*, and the other Towns and Castles that had promised to follow the Fate of *Roan*, surrendered to King *Henry*; so that he had now not only the Dukedom of *Normandy* subjected to him, but *Picardy* and the Isle of *France* lay open to his Arms. For notwithstanding the *French* had fortified and garison'd the Frontiers, to stop the IncurSIONS of the *English* Troops; yet they penetrated as far as *Ponthoife*, *Cleremont*, *Beauvais*, *Montdidier*, *Bretevel*, *Amiens*, *Abbeville*, and *St. Valerie*, laying the Country waste, and enriching themselves with great Booty. Upon these Successes the Duke of *Bretagne* likewise came into an Alliance with King *Henry*. In the mean Time, the *Dauphin* invited King *Henry* to a Treaty, but it prov'd of no Effect. However the Duke of *Burgundy* fearing the growing Interest of the *Dauphine*, desired another Treaty with the King. It was therefore resolved in the *French* King's Council, That it was expedient for the Safety of the Nation, to settle an Alliance with the King of England, by giving him the Princess in Marriage, with some Provinces of the Kingdom. After an Embassy, and a short Truce, it was concluded that the two Kings should have an Interview at *Melan*.

Other Places
taken, and
Offers of
Peace made.

A spacious Plain being intrench'd and ramparted, with strong Gates, two stately Pavilions were erected for the two Kings. The *French* King *Charles*, Queen *Isabel*, the Princess *Katharine*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and others arrived there with a Train and Guard of a thousand Horse. On the other Side, King *Henry*, with the Dukes

The Treaty
of Melan,

1419.

Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, his Brothers, attended with a thousand Horse, arrived there likewise. King *Henry* saluted the Queen and Princess, and embrac'd the Duke of *Burgundy*; and the two Nations, tho' Enemies, demeaned themselves with the greatest Respect and Civility towards each other. Many Points were debated, and many Days spent, without coming to any Conclusion; and there had been several Conferences, where the Princess was not present. The Queen had brought her to the first Interview, hoping that the Charms of her Beauty, which were very extraordinary, might have more Prevalence on a young Conqueror, than all the subtle Arts of Statesmen in a Treaty. Nor was she wholly mistaken, for it was very discernible, that King *Henry* was sensibly enamour'd with her. The Queen taking Notice, that her Daughter's Eyes were more powerful than the Arms of *France*, designing to make all the Advantage possible of his Affection, by gaining the better Terms of Peace, thought to practise upon King *Henry* the usual Arts of her Sex, and to enflame his Passion by the Absence of his Mistress; but King *Henry* being sensible of the Artifice, became more inflexible to any Condescension, and insisted more strenuously upon what he had at first proposed. And imagining the Duke of *Burgundy* to have obstructed the Peace and Marriage, he so highly resented it, that in a great Passion he told the Duke, *I'll not only have your Princess, but your King himself in my Power, and I will have what I demand in Marriage with her, or force him from his Throne, and you out of his Kingdom.* To whom the Duke replied, but more calmly, *Before you can dethrone my King, and expel me out of the Kingdom, you may find cause to repent the Enterprize; and I doubt not but we shall make you weary of the War.*

King *Henry* breaksoff the Treaty and makes new Conquests.

King *Henry* perceiving that in reality the *French* never design'd to conclude a Peace, but only aimed to amuse him with vain Offers and Promises, resolved to break off the Treaty; and according to the first Agreement, gave publick Notice of its Dissolution; complaining of the unfair Dealings of the *French*, who had continually deceived him, and only designed, under pretence of a Treaty, to work Delays, and hinder his Conquests. This Meeting enflamed King *Henry's* Courage, and with fresh Vigor he prosecuted the War,

for

7 Hen. V.

for he immediately surpris'd and took *Ponthoife* without Resistance; for the *English* having scaled the Walls, and let in three thousand upon them, before they could be provided to oppose them, Monsieur de *Lisle Adam*, a Marshal of *France*, Governor of the Place, fled out of the Gate next *Paris*, and was followed by ten thousand of the Inhabitants. This Town was so considerable for Riches, and such an advantageous Post, that the King in a Letter said, *he accounted it the most important Place he had taken since the War*. This Place being taken, King *Henry* sent to the *French* King this Message, *That tho' he had taken so considerable a Place, which opened a Way to the Conquest of his capital City, yet he now offered him Peace upon the same Terms he had proposed at the Treaty of Melun*. The News of this Conquest being carried to *Paris*, so terrified the King, Queen, and Duke of *Burgundy*, that they fled from *Paris* to *Troyes* in *Champaign*, leaving that City under the Command of the Count *De St. Paul*, and the Chancellor *Eustace de Laitre*. The Duke of *Clarence* marched to the Walls of *Paris*, and lay before it two Days, his Troops ravaging all the Country thereabouts. After this the Castle of *Gisors* was taken, *Preaux* sacked, *Bretveil*, *Clermont*, and the Castle of *Vendueil* burnt. The Castles of *Galliard* and *Rochguen* surrendered to King *Henry*. Then the King divided his Army into three Bodies, and sent one under the Duke of *Glocester*, to storm the Castle of *St. Germain en Lay*, and another Body he sent to attack the Castle of *Mountjoy*, which both yielded; and he himself marched with the third, to besiege *Meaulan*, in the Isle of *France*, not far from *Paris*, which was strong by Nature, situated on the *Seine*, and surrounded by that great River, which surrendered upon Capitulation. In the mean Time, the Earls *Marshal* and *Huntington*, with some other Commanders, were ordered to march with Forces into the Country of *Main*, where they gallantly encountred a strong Body, sent by the *Dauphine*, and defeated them, killing five thousand upon the Spot, and taking six hundred Prisoners, many Standards, the Marshal *de Rous*, and other Noblemen.

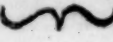
The French King flies from Paris.

Farther Advantages gained by the English.

The Duke of Burgundy murdered.

The Miseries of the Kingdom of *France* did not only proceed from the Success of the *English* Arms, but by domestick Factions, between the *Dauphin* of *France*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*; and there being no Prospect

1419.


 spect of Relief, without a Reconciliation between those two, great Endeavours were used to bring them to an Amity, that by their united Force they might stop the Current of King *Henry's* Conquest. Upon this, the *Dauphin* sent for the Duke of *Burgundy* under pretence of concerting Measures with him, about a farther Alliance, and employing their united Powers against the common Enemy the *English*. The Duke, tho' he had some Suspensions, at last ventured to go to him, accompanied with five hundred Horse, and two hundred Archers at *Montereau*, the Place of Meeting. The *Dauphin* had fixed three several Barricadoes, and stood armed beyond the third, to receive the Duke, with only ten Attendants; the Duke approaching his Presence, kneeled down upon one Knee, and saluted him very respectfully. But the *Dauphin* charged him with the Breach of Fidelity, and not performing his Promises in not withdrawing his Garisons, agreed to be removed by their League of Amity, and gave him other reproachful Language. The Duke happening to put his Hand behind him, to adjust his Sword, which had been entangled by kneeling, one of the *Dauphin's* Attendants cried out, *What do you draw the Sword against the Dauphin?* Whereupon an old Servant of the murdered Duke of *Orleans*, with a Battle-Ax struck him on the Face, and cut off his Chin, and others, with many Wounds, put an End to his Life. Thus fell the great Duke of *Burgundy*, who had twelve Years before caused the Duke of *Orleans* to be assassinated in the Streets of *Paris*. By this Murther, the *Dauphin* got himself a more zealous and furious Party of Enemies than ever; for the Queen his Mother was not only enraged for the Loss of her Favourite, and encouraged the young Duke of *Burgundy* to revenge his Father's Death, but was very urgent with the King, to give his Daughter *Katharine* in Marriage to King *Henry*, and to disinherit the *Dauphin*.

A Treaty
 proposed to
 King *Henry*.

The Queen, and young Duke of *Burgundy*, having prevailed upon King *Charles* to make a Peace with the King of *England*, sent the Bishop of *Arras*, and other Embassadors to him at *Roan*, to assure him of their real Intentions, and Willingness to come to a Peace, as advantageous and honourable to him, as they desired it should be safe to them. King *Henry*, to avoid the Effusion of Christian Blood, hearkned to their Propo-

sals

fals, and
chester,
 tained in
 sing back
 Agreem
 that the
 to them
 come to
 after the
 ready c
 should l
 and all
France.
 the Du
Warwic
 with fir
 the King
 resided.
 young
 Nobilit
 the To
 King
 fit to th
 dresse
 a Ring
 veral A
 Peace
 up in V
 and at
 1420, l
 violabl
 The
 and ver
Henry
 marry
 sand C
Charle
 Rights
Henry
 King C
 King A
 King
Charle
 King,
 tinued

fals, and sent the Earl of *Warwick*, and Bishop of *Ro-*
chester, to the Duke of *Burgundy*, to be better ascer-
 tained in Matters; and after two or three Times pas-
 sing backward and forward, they at length came to an
 Agreement upon certain Articles, upon Condition,
 that the *French* King and his Parliament would consent
 to them. The Agreement was, that King *Henry* should
 come to *Troyes*, and marry the Lady *Katharine*, and
 after the Celebration of the Marriage, a firm Peace, al-
 ready concluded and finished upon certain Articles,
 should be then sealed and fully ratified by both Kings,
 and all the Nobles and other Estates of the Realm of
France. Upon this, King *Henry*, accompanied with
 the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, the Earls of
Warwick, *Salisbury*, and other Noblemen, attended
 with fifteen hundred Men, set out for *Troyes*, where
 the King of *France*, Queen and Princess *Katharine* then
 resided. Being arrived near *Troyes*, he was met by the
 young Duke of *Burgundy*, and many of the *French*
 Nobility, and with great Magnificence conducted into
 the Town.

King *Henry* immediately after his Arrival paid a Vi-
 sit to the King and Queen of *France*, and made his Ad-
 dresses to the Princess *Katharine*, presenting her with
 a Ring of inestimable Value. After there had been se-
 veral Assemblies of the King of *France's* Council, the
 Peace and Alliance was concluded, and being drawn
 up in Writing, King *Henry* struck out what he mislik'd;
 and at length, it was completed on the first Day of *May*
 1420, both Kings swearing upon the *Evangelists* in-
 violably to observe it.

The Articles of the Treaty were large and numerous,
 and very much to the Advantage and Honour of King
Henry: The Principal were, that King *Henry* should
 marry the Princess *Katharine*, and allow her forty thou-
 sand Crowns a Year Dowry. That after the Death of
Charles, King of *France*, all the Dominions and
 Rights of that Kingdom should devolve upon King
Henry and his Heirs for ever. That in as much as
 King *Charles* was indisposed, and incapable to reign,
 King *Henry* should be Regent of *France*, during the said
 King *Charles's* Life; that after the Death of King
Charles, *France* and *England* should be united under one
 King, viz. under King *Henry* and his Heirs in a con-
 tinued Succession. That because the *Dauphine* opposed
 the

7 Hen. V.

The Treaty
 concluded
 with a Peace.

Some of the
 Articles of
 the Treaty.

1420.

the Peace of the two Kingdoms, King Henry should make use of all the Power of his Arms to reduce him, and make no Peace with him, but with the Consent of King Charles, the Duke of Burgundy, and the three Estates of England and France.

King Henry
marries the
Princess Katharine.

These and many more Articles being confirmed, King Henry, attended with many Noblemen and Ladies, and the Princess Katharine, attended with the Queen her Mother, the Duke of Burgundy and his Council, went to St. Peter's Church in Troyes, and going up together to the high Altar, where the Articles of Peace were openly read, sealed by both Kings, and a solemn Oath taken to observe them, the King and Princess joining their Hands, were solemnly married. Then the Duke of Burgundy took an Oath to obey King Henry as Regent of France, during the Life of Charles the present King; and that after his Decease he would obey him as his Liege Subject. And in Conclusion of all, the Peace was proclaim'd both in French and English, and the Articles of it published in Paris, and all the principal Cities of France. King Henry sent Order to his Brother the Duke of Bedford to proclaim it likewise in England, instructing him to alter his Title in his Proclamations and Seals, which was to run thus during the French King's Life, Henry, by the Grace of God, King of England, Heir and Regent of the Realm of France, and Lord of Ireland. The Nuptials were solemnised with the utmost Pomp and Magnificence; and all the Nobility that were at the French Court swore Fidelity to him; at which Time he made the following Speech to them:

King Henry's
Speech.

My noble Lords, I do assure you, it is and shall be my perpetual Concern, how, by all my Counsels and Actions, I may make both these Nations, now by the Favour of Heaven so fortunately united, a great and flourishing Kingdom; and as it is at present the most flourishing in Europe, so all Animosities and Factions extinguished, it may continue happy, as well as great, to all future Successions. To accomplish this noble Design, it is necessary, that we all endeavour to suppress the Flames of those civil Dissentions, which are alone kept alive by that Person, whom you have justly deprived of the Honour of being Dauphin of France. That our Country therefore may flourish in Peace, and undisturb'd Greatness, we must use our utmost Power to reduce him to that Obedience that

he owes
him to J
blished b
if not es
Calamiti
ment of
ranny.
Nation,
Affectio
and grac
most Sa
King
Pitch of
phin, an
malities
reduce h
consider
it was b
tune sho
therefor
Life, up
in no C
Force th
Places i
In the n
gundy,
them, b
twelve
tereau,
thered I
inter'd
wards
in the I
lute Op
chanced
tentio,
the Kin
the Lor
both bel
resolved
known
on Bar
closed,
besieged
of Fra

he owes to his Father, and his Sovereign, and to oblige him to submit to that Government which has been established by an Assembly of the States of the Kingdom; which if not effected, France will not only be exposed to present Calamities, but the Fears of greater from the Government of one, who has already shewn such Marks of Tyranny. Then declaring his high Esteem of the French Nation, he exhorted them to an Union of Hearts and Affections, as well as of Nations, with such obliging and graceful Behaviour, that they departed with the utmost Satisfaction.

8 Hen. V.

King Henry having now almost arrived at the highest Pitch of his Desires, had nothing to fear but the Dauphin, and his Party: Wherefore as soon as the Formalities of the Marriage were over, he set himself to reduce him. On the other Hand, the Dauphin's Party, considering they were overmatched in Power, thought it was best to be only upon the defensive, till Fortune should give a more favourable Opportunity; and therefore came to a Resolution, that the Dauphin's Life, upon which all their Hopes depended, should be in no Case hazarded, but that they would raise what Force they could, and put strong Garisons into the Places in their Power, and only be upon the defensive. In the mean Time, the two Kings, and Duke of Burgundy, resolving to use all possible Means to reduce them, besieged Sens, a Town in Burgundy, which after twelve Days surrendred; and thence marching to Monttereau, took it, and taking up the Body of the murdered Duke of Burgundy, sent it in great Pomp to be inter'd at Dijon, the Capital of his Dukedom. Afterwards the King besieged Melun, a strong Town in the Isle of France, where he met with a very resolute Opposition. While he lay before the Town, it chanced that two of the English Lords began a Contention, about entring a new Mine, to decide which, the King himself went in first, and meeting there with the Lord Barbasen, fought with him over the Barriers, both behaving themselves gallantly, till at length they resolved to discover themselves; and first Barbasen made known his Name, and then King Henry his, whereupon Barbasen retired, and caused the Barricadoes to be closed, and King Henry returned safe to his Camp. The besieged defending the Town very obstinately, the King of France summoned them to yield to their natural Sove-

King Henry endeavours to subdue the Dauphin and his Party.

Melun besieged.

1420.

Melun sur-
rendred.

King Henry's
Entry into
Paris.

The Mur-
derers of
the Duke of
Burgundy
punished.

Sovereign; but they resolutely answered, *That they would joyfully open their Gates to their Monarch; but would never obey an English King, the antient and mortal Enemy of France.* And there being a strong Party of Scots in the Garison, the young King of Scotland, now in the Army with King Henry, sent to require them upon their Allegiance, that they should not make use of their Arms against Troops, where he was in Person, but come and fight under their King's Standard. They answered, they would not own or obey him as their King, who was in the Power of another: For which Affront, twenty of them were executed upon the taking of the Place. At Length, they being extremely distressed with Famine, and other Calamities incident to long Sieges, after a Siege of eighteen Weeks, surrendred.

King Henry having put an *English* Garison into *Melun*, the two Kings and Queens of *France* and *England*, who, during the Siege, had lain at *Corbeil*, returned to *Paris*, which they entred in great State; the two Kings riding under a rich Canopy, followed by the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Bedford*; and on the other Side of the Way the Duke of *Burgundy* in deep Mourning, and the Nobility of each Nation in their proper Order; the Clergy in Procession carrying the venerable Reliques, walked before them to the Cathedral of *Notredame*; the Citizens received them with great Marks of Honour and Respect, with rich Presents, Flags and Streamers, causing the Conduits to run with Wine, and shewing the utmost Demonstrations of Joy and Satisfaction; where the first Thing they did after their Arrival, was to put to Death the Murtherers of the Duke of *Burgundy*, of which several of the Captains were found guilty, and were punished accordingly; and among them *Bertrand de Chaumont*, a *Gascoign*, who had been much in Favour with King Henry, was executed for having conveyed away one *Amerion de Lau*, who was proved guilty of the same Crime; and altho' the Duke of *Burgundy* himself, and the Duke of *Clarence*, interceded for him to King Henry, yet he was inexorable, saying, *he would have no Traytors in his Army.* The valiant *Barbason* was likewise accused by the Duke of *Burgundy*, as an Accomplise in his Father's Death; and tho' the Evidence was not clear, yet there being Grounds for Suspicion, he was kept in Prison nine Years, till he was delivered by the *Dauphine*, at the taking of

Castle

Castle Galliard. Some Historians relate, that he saved his Life by pleading, *It would be a Dishonour to King Henry, to put to Death a Person, who was his Brother in Arms, and had signalized himself in a single Combat with him;* which was allowed by the Heralds to be the same Thing as if he had fought with him in appointed Lists.

8 Hen. V.

King Henry being returned to Paris, kept his Court and Christmas in the Louvre, which was most rich and magnificent, all the Grandeur in France being to be seen there, and many military Shews and Pastimes, daily; and King Charles kept his in the Hotel St. Pol, and much inferior in all Respects. King Henry commanded all, had the Disposal of all Places of Trust and Honour, and therefore was courted by all the French Nobility and Gentry, and was looked upon by all foreign Embassadors, as well as the native French, as their King. He placed and displaced Officers at Pleasure, and as Regent of France, reformed Abuses, redressed Grievances, and corrected all Miscarriages in the Government; while Charles the King of France, had indeed the Name, but lived very privately, as one whose Power was out of Date. King Henry caused a new Coin to be stamp'd, call'd a *Salute*, to express the Union of the two Kingdoms; on the Reverse of which, the Arms of England and France were quartered together.

King Henry's Grandeur.

While King Henry remained at Paris, a Parliament was call'd, in which the Agreement between the two Kings was acknowledged by King Charles, as made by his Assent, and by the Advice of the whole Council of France; which being ratified by the general States of the Kingdom, and solemnly sworn to by all the Nobility and Magistrates, the Instruments were sent into England, to be laid up in King Henry's Exchequer at Westminster. This Parliament particularly examined into the Murther of the Duke of Burgundy, and solemnly sentenced all the Actors and Accomplices in it; who were laid under Obligations to build Churches, and to perform several publick Acts of Charity, by Way of Penance, to expiate that execrable Fact. They likewise summon'd the Dauphin himself before the Grand Marble Table, with all the usual Formalities; and for Non-appearance publickly attainted and convicted him of the Murther, and declared him unworthy of the Succession to the Crown of France, and sentenced him to be banished the Kingdom for

King Henry recognised by the Parliament at Paris.

The Dauphin condemned, and disinherited.

1420.

ever. On the other Hand, the *Dauphin* appealed to God and his Sword, against this Sentence, as given by incompetent Judges, and removed the Parliament and University to the City of *Poitiers*. Thus was every Thing double in *France*; there were two Kings, two Regents, two Parliaments, two Constables, two Chancellors, two Admirals, and so of most of the great Officers.

King Henry
returns to
England.

Christmas being over, and the grand Affairs of *France* being as well settled as those unsettled Times would permit, King *Henry* resolved to leave *France* a While, and go into *England*, to have his Queen crowned; and having appointed his Brother, the Duke of *Clarence*, his Lieutenant, and left the Duke of *Exeter*, with five hundred Men at *Paris*, he went to *Roan* in great State, where having remained some Time to receive the Homage of the Nobility of *Normandy*, he repaired to *Amiens*, and from thence to *Calais*; and taking Ship with a glorious Train he crossed the Seas to *Dover*, where arriving about *Candlemas*, he made a triumphant Entry into *London*, where he was received by the People with as great Joy, as if he had been an Angel from Heaven.

King Henry
appoints a
Day of
Thanksgiving,
and
the Queen's
Coronation.

King *Henry* being safely arrived in *England*, would not enter upon any Business, till he had given his Subjects an Example of his Devotion, in returning publick Thanks to God, for the Success he had given him in *France*; and accordingly appointed a Day by Proclamation, to be kept on that Account, throughout *England*; and appointed the Queen's Coronation to be on the twenty fourth of *February*, which was performed with great Magnificence, by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*. There was also more than ordinary Cost and Magnificence bestowed on the Coronation Dinner; for tho' it was *Lent*, and so consisted of Fish, and sweet Meats chiefly, there were such rare Devices in each Course, as were never before seen, upon the like Occasion.

The King
and Queen
go to York.

The Solemnity of the Coronation being over, the King, Queen, and many of the Nobility, took a Journey to *York*, where they were received with great Joy, and richly presented by the Citizens. The Queen continued there, while the King went in Pilgrimage to *Bridlington*, where having paid his Devotions, he took a Progress through great Part of his Kingdom, hearing the Complaints of the Injured and Oppressed, redressing

sing their Wrongs, punishing the Corrupters of Justice, and reforming Abuses in the Government, not sparing the greatest of the Ministers, if he found them guilty of Misdemeanors in their Places; telling them, *That since they had no Respect to his Honour, which was wounded by their Injustice and Partiality, he had no Reason to shew them any Favour, but punish them more severely, because for the Sake of a little Gain, or Friendship, they had rob'd him of what he most valued, his People's Love and Affections.*

While these Things passed in England, the Duke of Clarence having ordered the Forces which were in Normandy, to attend him, began an Invasion in *Angion*; but having received Intelligence, that the Duke of Alençon was come into those Parts with a considerable Body of the Dauphin's Forces, and that seven hundred Scots were coming to join him, under the Command of the Earls of Douglas and Buchan, he intended to give the Duke of Alençon Battle before the Scots had joined him; and being informed by some stragling Scots, that the French were but a small Party, and might easily be vanquished by his Forces, (tho' indeed they were much greater, and had been join'd by the Scots) the Duke of Clarence being hasty and credulous, set upon them, and after a sharp Battle, wherein the English lost one thousand five hundred Men, was slain, being wounded in the Face by a Spear, and afterwards struck down to the Ground with a Truncheon, by the Earl of Buchan; and several Noblemen, and diverse Persons of Note, as well as common Soldiers, were taken Prisoners: But tho' the Victory fell to the French, it cost them one thousand two hundred Men. The Earl of Salisbury having notice of this Action, made all the Haste he could to recover the Loss received; but came too late to do any Service; only the French flying at his Approach, left the Dead at his Disposal; and so he sent the Duke's Body to Roan, to be conveyed to England, and buried. The King was still in his Progress, and had left Leicester to go to York; and having visited the Shrine of John of Beverley by the Way, heard the News of his Brother's Death, which he received with Abundance of Sorrow, and resolved to revenge it very severely upon the French.

About the Beginning of May, a Parliament met at Westminster, and granted the King a fifteenth of the Laity, and the Clergy being met in Convocation, gave him

9 Hen. V.

The Duke of Clarence invades Angion, and is slain.

Sixth Parliament. King Henry's third Expedition to France.

1421.

him two Tenths; but this being too little to support so great a Charge, he pawned his Crown again to the Bishop of *Winchester* for twenty thousand Pounds; and with this Money prepared his third Expedition into *France*. And having made his Brother, the Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of the Kingdom, and left with him an Army of thirty thousand, to defend the Nation against the *Scots*, who had engaged in the Interest of the *Dauphin*; he with four thousand Horse, and twenty four thousand Foot, began his Journey to *France*; and embarking at *Dover*, landed at *Calais* the tenth of *June*, with all his Forces, having the King of *Scots* with him, to draw off the *Scots* from taking Part with the *Dauphin*. This King of the *Scots* had been taken by *Henry* the fourth, ten Years before, and was set at Liberty by King *Henry* the fifth, to return to his own Country; but he went not till the next Reign.

King *Henry* sends the Duke of *Burgundy* to raise the Siege of *Chartres*.

King *Henry* being landed in *France*, in his third and last Expedition, went to pay a Visit to his Father and Mother, the King and Queen of *France*, before he would enter upon any Action: And being met on the Road by the Duke of *Burgundy*, who gave him a Petition from the Governor of *Chartres*, who had valiantly defended the Town for three Weeks, against all the *Dauphin's* Forces, and now began to be streightned so much, that he could hold out no longer; he made the Duke Commander of his Armies, and sent him to relieve the Town with all Speed. Upon his Approach the *Dauphin* raised the Siege, and retreated to *Tours*. King *Henry*, in the mean Time, went on to *Paris*, to pay his designed Visit, and was honourably received and entertained by the King and Queen of *France*. In his Passage he took a small Fort called *La Ferte*, which surrendered upon Summons; but it was soon after betray'd to the *Dauphin* by the Commander.

King *Henry* pursues the *Dauphin*.

King *Henry* being arrived at *Paris*, had great Invitations to pass his Time in Pleasures, every one being desirous to please him with the most grateful Delights; but his Mind was wholly engaged in the Glory of Conquest, which seemed a little eclipsed by the small Advantages the *Dauphin* had gained; wherefore having added some *French* Forces to his Army, he marched towards the *Loire*, to fight the *Dauphin*, who had given it out, that he would try the Fortune of a Field Battle with King *Henry*; but his Courage failed upon

He takes several Towns from the *Dauphin*.

upon
ward
ry any
which
Bourg
proce
his Ob
fore t
appreh
surren
Relief
lydon
permit
Henry
ing.
this P
presen
by his
of *Fra*
ven;
him w
not de
visiona
secuted
ing the
thither
and sev
ed him
the lat
Forage
my wa
King
which
flying
cessarie
the Ci
Streng
fions.
King *A*
tainly
Duke
preven
on the
Camp
against

The Reign of King HENRY V.

453

upon King *Henry's* Approach, and he withdrew towards *Bourges*, where he lay still, not giving King *Henry* any Molestation or Hindrance in his Victories; for which he was by Way of Jeer, called the King of *Bourges*. King *Henry* meeting with no Opposition, proceeded with all Expedition, to reduce all Places to his Obedience, and marching to *Dreux*, sat down before that Place. The Inhabitants and Garison being apprehensive of Danger, beat a Parley, promising to surrender the Town on the twentieth of *August*, if no Relief came in the mean Time, which was accordingly done; and eight hundred of the *Dauphin's* Men were permitted to depart in Safety, having sworn to King *Henry*, not to bear Arms against him for a Year ensuing. *Mezeray* relates, that while the King lay before this Place, an unknown Hermit came to him, and represented the great Evils he brought upon *Christendom*, by his unjust Ambition and Usurpation of the Crown of *France*, against known Right, and the Will of Heaven; wherefore in the Name of God, he threatened him with a severe and sudden Punishment, if he did not desist. The King looking upon this to be either a visionary Fancy, or a Suggestion of the *Dauphin's*, prosecuted his Designs with the greater Vigour; and hearing the *Dauphin* was retired to *Baugency*, he marched thither; but not finding him there, took that Place, and several other Towns, and designed to have attacked him at *Bourges*, where he lay strongly fortified; but the latter having carried away, and destroyed all the Forage and Provisions of the Country, the King's Army was forced to retreat back to *Orleans*.

King *Henry* having refreshed and recruited his Army, which had been fatigued and diminished in pursuing the flying *Dauphin*, and provided Engines and all other Necessaries, marched out with his whole Army to besiege the City of *Meaux* in *Brie*. This City was of great Strength, and well man'd, and furnished with Provisions. The Suburbs of it were large and populous, and King *Henry* being sensible, that if his coming were certainly known, the *Dauphinists* would burn them, sent the Duke of *Exeter* before him, with four thousand Men to prevent it, following himself within a few Days; and on the sixth of *October* invested the Place, enclosed his Camp with an Intrenchment, and rais'd his Batteries against the Walls, and Gates. The Bastard *De Varus* was

1422.

Henry the
sixth born.King Henry
takes Meaux
by Assault.

was Governor of the City, who had with him many Officers, and a thousand select Soldiers, besides the Inhabitants, who were also resolute to defend the Place to the last Extremity; and indeed they gallantly held out for the Space of seven Months, during which Time great Numbers, both of the Besieged and Besiegers, died by Sickness, Sallies, or Shot from the Walls.

While this Siege was carrying on, King Henry had the Satisfaction of hearing that Queen Katherine was delivered of a young Prince at Windsor, on St. Nicholas's Day, to whom he gave the Name of *Henry Sixth*. It is generally reported, that when he heard his Son was born at Windsor Castle, he raised a bad Omen from the Place of his Birth, as foreboding some unhappy Fate, and spoke these prophetic Words to his Chamberlain, the Lord Fitz-Hugh, *I Henry, born at Monmouth, shall a small Time reign and gain much; and Henry, born at Windsor, shall reign long and lose all; but God's Will be done.*

Christmas was now come; and tho' King Henry always kept it with some Solemnity, yet he chose rather to abridge himself of that Custom, than break up the Siege of Meaux, tho' the Extremity of the Weather, both for Cold and Wet, the Sickness of the Army, and the great Losses which he sustained by the Besieged, they having killed many of his Men, and among the rest, the Earl of Worcester, and Lord Clifford, might have discouraged him; but these Difficulties rather increased his Resolution: Whereupon he battered the Walls more fiercely; and having laid Bridges over the River Marne, begirt it so close, that it was much distressed. However they held out as resolutely, as Men in so much Danger could, having had Intelligence, that the Arms of the Dauphin had been successful in Normandy, and had taken Auranches, so that King Henry would be obliged to send away Part of his Forces to secure his Conquests there; which he did under the Command of the Earl of Salisbury, who soon regained that Town. The Town resolutely bent upon holding out, earnestly desired to have a valiant Commander, the Seigneur de Offement, for their Governor; and he found an Opportunity to approach the Walls with forty select Soldiers, in order to enter the Town; but being ready to be receiv'd by Ladders, over the Walls in the Night,

his Fol
himself
the Di
and wo
Compa
raged,
all thei
vering
their B
entred
plantin
notwit
not de
Words
Cause,
they w
before
and G
sure, c
de Var
were t
The C
a Tre
becaus
Burgu
of the
it. D
of the
ficers
of Ma
mitted
to his
the G
hearin
that v
Appre
that t
dring
give t
Brie,
to Ki
into t
turne
ther,
joyfu

his Followers were discovered by the Centinels; and he himself not being able to recover the Ladders, fell into the Ditch; and being encumbered with his heavy Armour, and wounded, was taken Prisoner, with most of his Companions. At this Disappointment they were discouraged, and despairing to hold out long, began to carry all their Goods into the Castle: But the Besiegers discovering what they were about, and unwilling to lose their Booty, made a sudden and furious Attack, and entred the Town Sword in Hand; and King *Henry* planting his Canon, began to batter the Castle, which notwithstanding they were reduced to Extremity, did not desist from provoking the *English* by opprobrious Words, as if they had been invincible; which was the Cause, that when they were obliged at Length to yield, they were reduced to such hard Conditions, as no Town before had imposed upon them; for the whole Town and Garison were to be Prisoners, at the King's Pleasure, only to have their Lives saved: But the Governor *de Varus*, and some other Persons of Quality and Note, were to be delivered up, to be immediately executed. The Governor was beheaded, and his Body hung on a Tree, before the Town called by his own Name, because he had before hang'd on it many *English* and *Burgundians*; his Head being fixed upon the Top of the same Tree, his Standard also being set up by it. Diverse others were executed, and all the Wealth of the Place was distributed by King *Henry* to his Officers and most deserving Soldiers. Upon the taking of *Meaux*, diverse other Places surrendred, and submitted to King *Henry*; while others were set on fire, to hinder him of the Fruits of conquering them. And the Governors of the Places, in the Marches of *Beauvais*, hearing, that King *Henry* had taken Towns and Forts, that were thought to be impregnable, were under such Apprehensions of the Irresistibleness of his Power, that they sent Deputies to him to treat about surrendring at the Time appointed, if the *Dauphin* did not give them due Assistance: So that all the Isle of *France*, *Brie*, *Lainnois*, and *Champain*, became intirely subject to King *Henry*, who put most of his faithful Captains into the most important Places of them, and then returned to *Bois de St. Vincennes*, to his Father and Mother, the King and Queen of *France*, who gave him a joyful Welcome.

1422.

Queen Katherine arrives in France.

Queen Katherine being perfectly recovered of all the Weaknesses of Childbearing, and daily hearing of the King's Successes whose Glory sounded all over the World, greatly desired the Sight of his Person; and for that End prepared for a Voyage to France. John, Duke of Bedford, having deputed his Brother Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, in his Absence, set sail with the Queen from Southampton, and landed at Harfleur, the twenty fifth of May, and with encreasing Trains of Nobility, by easy Journeys arrived at Roan, and from thence proceeded to Bois de St. Vincennes, to which Place King Henry, her Father and Mother, in great State came to meet her, with the utmost Demonstrations of Joy. They all staid a small Time at Bois de St. Vincennes, and on Whitsun Eve, removed to Paris, where King Henry, in the Castle of the Louvre, and the French King in the Hostel St. Pol, kept their Whitsuntide in the greatest State and Magnificence; King Henry and his Queen sitting in their Robes with their Crowns on their Heads, and keeping their Court with a wonderful Confluence of People, while the King of France appeared but like some petty Prince or Nobleman to him. King Henry governed and disposed all Things, and the King of France contentedly suffered him to act like a Sovereign; at which, tho' many of the French were uneasy, yet the English King was too great to be opposed: But their Resentments were something abated by King Henry's just and moderate Government, and exact Administration of Justice. By this just Conduct he gained the Love of the common People, who looked upon him, not as their Conqueror, but as their Father and Protector.

The Dauphin, while King Henry lay at Paris, invades his Conquests.

The Dauphin, who had constant Intelligence of King Henry's Actions, was not remiss to lay hold of an Opportunity of regaining what had been conquered by him; for tho' the King had conquered all Picardy, Normandy, Brie, the Isle of France and Champaign, yet still the greatest Part of the Nation held out for the Dauphin; he therefore having an Army of twenty thousand Men, and thinking the King was taken up with Pleasures and Ease, besieged La Charitie upon the Loire, and took it; and afterwards laid Siege to Com, on the same River, which not willing to undergo the Straights and Difficulties of a Siege, agreed to surrender to him, if they were not relieved by the Duke of Burgundy by the

the sixte
by Com
of a Ba
ed by th
being in
pointm
more F
come h
Battle;
the lon
tracted
and the
der the
gundy.
per, wa
fore wa
could n
least an
carried
his Bod
his Min
return
gundy b
of Wan
the Da
Dauphin
to abid
as soon
withsta
to Bou
sious t
to grati
unwilli
to Troy
portant
could t
thourn
was in
tended
St. Vin
Spirits
in the
and the
The
arrived

the sixteenth of *August*. The *Dauphin* and the Duke, ^{to Hen. V.} by Consent, agreed to put the Cause to the Decision of a Battle on that Day; and this was mutually declared by their Heralds. The Duke of *Burgundy's* Forces being inferior to the *Dauphin's* sent Word of the Appointment to King *Henry*, desiring he would send him more Forces. The King sent him Word, that he would come himself with his whole Army to join him in the Battle; and accordingly began his March; but having, by the long Fatigues he had undergone in the Wars, contracted a Fever and a Flux, was not able to proceed; and therefore remained at *Senlis*, sending his Army under the Duke of *Bedford*, to assist the Duke of *Burgundy*. The King, tho' he was very ill of his Distemper, was very desirous to be at the Battle; and therefore was carried after them in a Horse-litter, that if he could not engage with them in the Fight, he might at least animate them with his Presence. Thus was he carried as far as *Melun*; but his Distemper increasing, his Body being too feeble to answer to the Greatness of his Mind, he was obliged to give over his Design, and return to *Bois de St. Vincennes*. The Duke of *Burgundy* being joined by the Duke of *Bedford* and Earl of *Warwick*, advanced to *Cone*, which was besieged by the *Dauphin*, and encamped near the Town. The *Dauphin*, tho' he had faithfully promised by his Herald, to abide the Field, and try his Fortune by a Battle, yet as soon as he saw the *English* Colours displayed, notwithstanding his Vaunts, raised the Siege and retreated to *Bourges*. Upon this the Duke of *Bedford* being desirous to do something for his Master's Honour, and to gratify the eager Courage of the Soldiers, who were unwilling to return back without Action, led the Army to *Troyes* in *Champain*, and began the Siege of that important Place: But before any Thing considerable could be attempted, the Duke of *Bedford* received the mournful News, that his Brother, King *Henry's* Life was in Danger; Upon which he left the Army, and attended with some Friends, rode full Speed to *Bois de St. Vincennes*. This News put such a Damp upon the Spirits of the whole Army, that they could not proceed in the Siege, and so the Earl of *Warwick* and *Salisbury*, and the rest of the Nobility, returned to the King.

The King designs to fight the *Dauphin*.

The King's last Sickness.

The Duke of *Bedford* and other Noblemen being arrived at *Vincennes*, and seeing the low and dangerous Con-

1422.

King Henry's
farewell
Speech.

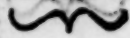
Condition of King Henry, much lamented his approaching and untimely End; but the King, as unconcerned at his own Death, looked chearfully upon them, and comforting them, for his Departure from them, gave them Directions for the Management of his Kingdoms for his young Son after his Decease, to this Effect. *That he knew his Death would be born by them with great Sorrow; but they had as little Reason to be troubled at it as he himself had: For tho' indeed his Life and Reign had been but short, yet that was so far from disturbing him, that he placed it among one of his Felicities, that he should not outlive his Glories, but carry flourishing Laurels out of the World with him; That tho' indeed much Blood had been shed in his Quarrel, yet his Conscience accused him of no Guilt upon that Account; for it was only for the Recovery of his undoubted Right; That he was sensible his untimely Death would create great Troubles to them, and all his People, because he should leave them in such a Multitude of Business depending; but the Consideration of the Frailty and Uncertainty of all worldly Things should mitigate their Concern.* Having thus comforted them concerning his own Death, he gave them Directions about his Son, earnestly entreating them, *To love Prince Henry, his Infant Son, and their King; to take Care of his Education, and to give him pious Examples, that he might be made fit to rule so great Kingdoms; That they would comfort his Wife, now the most disconsolate Princess living, That they would never make Peace with the Dauphin upon any other Condition than that of having all the Dukedom of Normandy intirely secured to the Crown of England; That they would preserve a strict Union among themselves, and not discharge the Duke of Orleans, and other noble French Prisoners, till his Son became of Age to govern, lest being at Liberty, they might be troublesome in France. He recommended his Brother, the Duke of Gloucester, to govern England, and the Duke of Bedford, with the Assistance of the Duke of Burgundy, to govern France.* The Noblemen, full of Grief, stood silent about him, and promised him to perform what he had desired.

King Henry
prepares
himself for
Death.

The King having thus settled his temporal Affairs, turned his Thoughts wholly upon a Preparation for that State, which he was sensible by the Violence of his Distemper, he was just ready to enter upon. And ordering his Physicians to be called in, he demanded of them,

them; he
declin
Allegia
some li
in the M
upon yo
cannot
dered
their O
having
he com
and wh
Build
burst o
it was
cue it
thee to
seated
they co
the 31
say, th
glorior
Month
Month
tion w
Duke
By t
were
Bowel
of St.
was e
by all
Englan
Honou
set in
said fo
given
Roan,
ready
there;
Dover
set in
lebrate
don w
Charic

them; how long it was possible he could live, and they declining a direct Answer, he charged them upon their Allegiance to tell him their Opinion plainly. And after some little Consultation among themselves, one of them in the Name of the rest, kneeling down, said, *Sir, think upon your Soul; for as we judge, without a Miracle, you cannot live longer than two Hours.* Whereupon he ordered his Chaplains to be call'd, bidding them to do their Office, and fit his Soul for its Dissolution. And having made his Confession, and received the Sacrament, he commanded them to sing the seven Penitential Psalms, and when in the 51st Psalm, they came to those Words, *Build up the Walls of Jerusalem,* he bad them stop, and burst out into this Ejaculation, *Lord, thou knowest that it was in my real Purposes to conquer Jerusalem, and rescue it out of the Hands of the Infidels, if it had pleased thee to lengthen out my Life, but thy Providence hath defeated my Design; thy Will be done.* And then, before they could proceed many Verses farther he expired, on the 31st Day of *August*, 1422. in the 34th, or as others say, the 36th Year of his Age; after a short, but most glorious and triumphant Reign of nine Years, four Months, and eleven Days; leaving a Son of eight Months old, Heir of all his Dominions, whose Education was at the Desire of his Father committed to the Duke of *Exeter*.

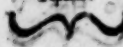
10 Hen. V.


He dies.

By the Gratitude of his Friends, his Funeral Obsequies were proportioned to his Merit and Grandeur. His Bowels being taken out, were interr'd in the Church of *St. Maur de Toffes*, and his Body being embalmed was enclosed in a Coffin of Lead, and being attended by all the Lords and great Men, as well of *France* as *England*, and the whole Army, was brought with much Honour and Lamentation to *Paris*, and there being set in the Church of *Notredame*, solemn Obsequies were said for him several Days, and a great deal of Money given to the Poor. From thence he was carried to *Roan*, where he remain'd till all Things could be got ready for his Conveyance into *England*, and Burial there; then being remov'd to *Calais*, he was carried to *Dover*, and thence to *London*, where the Corps being set in *St. Paul's Church*, his Exequies were again celebrated. The Entrance into, and Passage thro' *London* was very magnificent. His Corps was laid on a Chariot of State, richly adorn'd with Cloth of Gold, and

The Manner
of his Buri-
al.

1422.



and on a Bed on the same Chariot was laid an Effigies representing his Person as near as could be, the Head thereof of massy Silver, with imperial Robes, a Crown of Gold, a Scepter and Globe, like a triumphant Monarch; and a Canopy of very great Value was born over his Body by certain Noblemen. The Chariot was drawn by six Horses in rich Harness; the first bore the Arms of *St. George*, the second the Arms of *Normandy*, the third those of *King Arthur*, the fourth those of *St. Edward*, the fifth the Arms of *France*, the sixth those of *England*. The Corps was attended by *James* King of *Scots*, as principal Mourner; the Nobility follow'd according to their Quality; the Banners of the Saints were born by four Lords, and the great Standard by the Baron *Dudley*, and the Banner by the Earl of *Longueville*. The Hatchments were carried by twelve Commanders; and five hundred Men at Arms, all in black Armour, their Horses barb'd black, and their Lances held with their Points downward, rode around the Chariot, which was also surrounded with three hundred clothed in white, bearing lighted Torches, with Lords bearing Banners, Bannerols and Penons; then followed the King's Household cloth'd in Black, and after them the Royal Family in deep Mourning. The sorrowful Queen, with a noble Retinue, followed at a League's Distance; and in this pompous Manner the Corps was attended from *Bois de Vincennes* to *Paris*, and so to *Roan*, to *Abbeville*, to *Calais*, to *Dover*; from thence thro' the City of *London* to *Westminster*, where it was inter'd among his Royal Ancestors in *November*, by *St. Edward* the Confessor, and his Effigies laid upon his Tomb, where it remains still, but headless, the Head being taken away.

His Character.

His Stature was tall and majestick; his Body, tho' slender, had all its Limbs well proportioned, and strongly framed, his Neck long, his Hair black, and a manly Beauty appear'd in his Face, a Sprightliness in his Eyes, his Speech grave, and his Wisdom conspicuous in all his Actions. His Strength and Agility was admirable in all the Exercises he perform'd; he was temperate, chaste, inur'd to all the Hardships of War, patient of Heat, Cold, Hunger and Thirst. That he was as brave as the bravest Captain of *old Rome*, appears, in that he undertook no Enterprize that he thought too perilous to engage in himself, and never put his Troops upon

Th

upon an
Person.
his Subi
displeas
to burth
equally
gious ac
he was t
reticks i
gion, an
tial in th
Councils
persuing
his Deat
Admirat

His Q
to Engla
Gentlem
than a pl
Personag
him into
Jasper, a
terest ma
Daughte
Somerse
caster, a
Jasper w
Queen K
Nunnery
14th Year
ried in
In her C
was take
it still re
that plea

upon any Action, to which he durst not lead them in Person. As he was brave, he was generous; he treated his Subjects like his Children, and was never so much displeas'd with his Condition, as when he had Occasion to burthen them with Taxes, which he always laid as equally and lightly as possibly he could. He was religious according to the Custom of those Times; for tho' he was too severe with the *Lollards*, yet they being Hereticks in his Judgment, it was the Error of his Religion, and not of his Mind. He was strict and impartial in the Distribution of Justice. He was wise in his Councils, magnanimous in his Designs, and resolute in pursuing them: His whole Life from his Manhood to his Death, was the Wonder of his own Age, and the Admiration of Posterity.

His Queen, who not long after his Death came over to England, was afterwards married to *Owen Tudor*, a Gentleman of *Wales*, more eminent for noble Birth than a plentiful Fortune; but being of a very graceful Personage, found such Favour with her that she received him into her Bed, and by him had three Sons, *Edmund*, *Jasper*, and *Owen*. *Edmund* was afterwards by her Interest made Earl of *Richmond*, and married to *Margaret* Daughter and sole Heiress to *John Beaufort*, Duke of *Somerset*, natural Son of *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, and by him she was Mother of King *Henry VII*. *Jasper* was made Earl of *Pembrook*, by King *Henry VI*. Queen *Katherine* survived *Owen*, and retreated into the Nunnery of *Bermondsey* in *Surrey*, where she died in the 14th Year of the Reign of *Henry* her Son, and was buried in our Lady's Chapel in *St. Peter's Westminster*. In her Grandson, King *Henry VII*'s Time, her Corps was taken up, and set by her Husband's Tomb, where it still remains unburied to be seen and touch'd by those that please.

Queen Katherine married Owen Tudor.

The

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

King Henry's
Age and Suc-
cession.

HENRY the Sixth, the Son of that most heroick Prince *Henry* the Fifth, but Heir rather of his Piety than Valour and Conduct, was left his Successor to the Crowns of *England* and *France*, when he was not above nine Months old, and accordingly was proclaim'd King *August* 31, 1422. and soon after at *Paris*. The Care and Tuition of him was committed to the two Brothers, *Thomas* Duke of *Exeter*, and *Henry* Beaufort, Bishop of *Winchester*, and Chancellor of *England*; and the Regency, according to his Father's Direction, was committed to his two brave Uncles, *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* Duke of *Glocester*, the latter had the Government of *England*, and the former joining with the Duke of *Burgundy* had the Government of *France*.

The State of
the English
Affairs.

At his Accession to the Throne; the State of the *English* Affairs was in a flourishing Condition, being intirely at Peace at home; and as to *France*, the nobler Parts of it, and the Capital City of *Paris* it self, was at the Devotion of *England*. But it seem'd meet to Providence in a small Time to change the whole Course of the *English* Affairs; and the first Disadvantage that happened to the *English* Cause was the Death of *Charles* King of *France*, whose Life was many ways an Advantage to the *English*; as the Infancy of young *Henry* was to the *Dauphin*, who by those of his own Party was proclaim'd King of *France* at *Porchiers*. And tho' his Fortunes were at so low an Ebb at his Father's Death, that little of *France* was in his Power, but the City of *Bourges* in *Berry*, and the Territories thereunto adjoining; yet the Justice of his Title, his undaunted Courage, and his Resolution to recover his Right, and restore the Liberties of *France*, were such Endearments of him to his Countrymen, that it soon appear'd, that tho' *Henry* had the largest Territories, *Charles* had most Hearts.

The Duke
of Bedford's
Care in
France.

The Duke of *Bedford* easily apprehending the approaching Dangers of the *English*, by the Death of the *French* King, and the Advantages the *Dauphin* would make of it, and that the Allegiance of the *French*, tho' never so often sworn and promised, would bind them no longer to King *Henry*, than either Fear or Lack of Opportunity, could prevent their Revolt, he therefore re-inforced the Army, and fortified the Garrisons on the *English* Pale. Then summoning the Nobility



KING HENRY THE VI.TH



lity to
him o
of All

The
mon'd
ter to
to pro
Queen
to be h
Winds
Arms,
throug
house
Lap o
lor fal
the hi

The
by the
Years
got to
Duke
and P
purcha
best P
so seve
nemie

Crava
was n
Loss o
this di
his lat
ty of A
hundr
afterw
put the
enjoy
Place,

The
streng
ing P
saries,
the D
Richer
newec
" be t
" nite

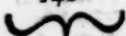
lity to *Paris*, he required them to do their Homage to him on the King's Behalf, and to take a solemn Oath of Allegiance to King *Henry*, which they readily did. 1 Hen. VI.

The Duke of *Glocester*, the Regent of *England*, summoned a Parliament to meet *November* the 9th, the better to establish the Crown upon the young King, and to provide for the publick Necessities of the State. And Queen *Katherine*, the more to influence that Assembly to be hearty in the young King's Cause, removed from *Windsor* to *London*; and with her Royal Babe in her Arms, was carried in a pompous and splendid Manner through the City to *Westminster*, to the Parliament-house; where being seated upon the Royal Throne in the Lap of his Mother, he by the Mouth of the Chancellor saluted that august Body, and proposed Matters of the highest Consequence to their Consideration. The first Parliament.

The *Dauphin* having been proclaimed King of *France*, by the Name of *Charles* the VII. being then about 27 Years of Age, wanting neither Courage nor Hopes, got together what Forces he could; and having the Duke of *Alençon*, with several Princes of the Blood, and Peers of *France* of his Party; several of which he purchased at a dear Rate, by engaging his Castles, and best Part of his Demesnes in Pawn to them; and also several thousands of *Scots*, which were constant Enemies to the *English* in his Army, marched to relieve *Cravant*, which had been besieged by the *English*, but was not able to effect it, being put to Flight, with the Loss of two thousand Men in the Attempt. However this did not dishearten him, and soon after he repaired his late Loss by the Overthrow which he gave to a Party of *English*, from whom with the Slaughter of fifteen hundred, they recovered a great Booty of Cattel, and afterwards took *Meulann*, upon the River *Sein*, and put the *English* Garison to the Sword, but did not long enjoy it, for the Earl of *Salisbury* soon recovered the Place, and killed all the *French* that were found in it. The Dauphin endeavours against him.

The Duke of *Bedford* thinking it necessary to strengthen himself by Alliance with those neighbouring Princes, who if they should join with his Adversaries, might prove prejudicial to the *English*, invited the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne*, with the Earl of *Richemont*, to an Interview at *Amiens*, where they renewed the former League, adding, "That each should be the other's Friend, and that all of them should unite their Forces in the Defence of King *Henry's* Right." The Duke of Bedford makes Alliances, and punishes the Parisians.

1422



"Right." And the Alliances were strengthened by the Duke of Bedford's marrying one of the Duke of Burgundy's Sisters, and the Earl of Richemont another, while the Duke of Bedford was absent from Paris. Upon this Occasion, the Parisians, notwithstanding they had lately sent Embassadors into England, to acknowledge King Henry, now had entred into a Plot, to deliver up the City to Charles the new King; but the Duke having timely Notice of it, posted thither, and executing several of the chief Actors, reduced them to their Duty. Soon after this, a Reinforcement of ten thousand Men came out of England, with which Addition to his Army, he took several strong Towns and Forts from Charles.

William Taylor burnt for an Heretick.

About March the 2^d, one William Taylor a secular Priest and Minister of Bristol was burnt in Smithfield for Heresie. He had been accused several Years before, of holding some Opinions contrary to the Doctrines of the Church, and infecting the People with them by preaching, viz. 1. That whosoever shall hang any Part of holy Scripture about his Neck, to defend him from Danger or Infection, or to free him from any bodily Diseases, or other Maladies (as was frequently done) taketh away the Honour due unto God only, and giveth it to the Devil. 2. That no human Creature, neither in Heaven nor Earth is to be worshiped. 3. That the Saints in Heaven are not to be worshiped or invocated. For these Doctrines, he was imprisoned and summoned before the Archbishop of Canterbury, who condemned them as Heretical; but upon his Promise not to hold such Opinions for the future he was set at Liberty; but soon after a fresh Accusation being brought against him, that he had written to Thomas Smith a Priest of Bristol, That any Prayer, wherein we petition any supernatural Gift, ought to be made only to God, and that to pray to any Creature on that Account is Idolatry; for these Opinions, he was by the Archbishop condemned, as a lapsed and incorrigible Heretick, and being degraded of his priestly Office, was burnt in Smithfield, which he suffered with great Constancy, and Christian Resolution.

The Duke of Bedford overcomes the Duke of Alençon.

The Duke of Bedford, designing to draw Charles to a general Battel, laid Siege to Ivry, whereupon the Duke of Alençon was sent with sixteen thousand Men, with Orders to fight if there were occasion: The two Armies drew up in Battel-Array near Verneville, and after a sharp Engagement, the Regent him-

himself w
Alençon's
many N
the Duke
Prisoners.
one hund
and Char
ris, and
other To
and there
Name gr

While
James th
been sett
berty; bu
mage to
the Nobl
of Scotla
King of E
of Scotla
Kingdom
shall bea
ly Honou
ledge, an
afore said
But lest
he was r
ser's Day
whom h
of Plate
Kindred
Return
French
Marriage

After
liament
great P
in a Cha
er in an
then re
the Na
Acts w
Edmun
and ne
withou
Richar
Vo

himself with a Battel Ax doing Wonders, the Duke of ^{2 Hen. VI.} *Alençon's* Army was put to flight, with the Loss of many Noblemen, and above seven thousand Soldiers, the Duke of *Alençon* himself being taken amongst the Prisoners. This Victory cost the *English* two thousand one hundred common Soldiers, and the Lords *Dudley*, and *Charleton*. After this, the Regent returned to *Paris*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* took *Mans* and several other Towns, from whence he marched into *Anjou*, and there performed such heroick Acts, that his very Name grew terrible to all *France*.

While these Things were transacting in *France*, ^{James King of Scots set at Liberty.} *James* the first, King of *Scotland*, whose Ransom had been settled in the late Reign was now fully set at Liberty; but before he departed to *Scotland*, he did Homage to young King *Henry*, in the Presence of many of the Nobility, in these Words. *I James Stewart, King of Scotland, shall be true and faithful unto thee Henry King of England and France, the noble and superior Lord of Scotland, and to thee I make my Fidelity for the same Kingdom of Scotland, which I hold and claim of thee; and I shall bear you my Fidelity of Life and Limb, and worldly Honour against all Men, and faithfully I shall acknowledge, and do you Service for the Kingdom of Scotland aforesaid. So God me help, and these holy Evangelists.* But lest these Obligations should not be strong enough, he was married to the Lady *Jane*, the Duke of *Somerset's* Daughter, and Cousin-German to the King, with whom he had a large Dowry, and many rich Presents of Plate and Jewels from the Nobility that were her Kindred. But all this did not avail; for soon after his Return Home, he entred into a strict League with the *French* King, and promised his Daughter *Margaret* in Marriage to *Lewis* the *Dauphin*.

After *Easter*, in the Name of the young King, a ^{Second Parliament.} Parliament was called, and he was carried to the House in great Pomp and State, and sat on his Mother's Knees in a Chair of State among his Lords; where the Speaker in an eloquent Speech first extolled his Person, and then recommended to their Care the Government of the Nation in his Infancy. Upon which several good Acts were made for that Purpose. During this Session, *Edmund Mortimer*, the last Earl of *March* of that Name, and nearest Heir to the Crown of *England*, deceas'd without Issue, and his great Patrimony descended to *Richard Plantagenet* Earl of *Cambridge*, Son and Heir

1425.

The Duke
of Gloucester
marries the
Countess of
Holland, &c.

to the Earl of Cambridge, who had been beheaded in the last Reign. Also Sir *John Mortimer* Cousin to the de-
ceas'd Earl was impeach'd for high Treason, and executed,
which caused no small Murmurings among the People.

In the mean Time, the Friendship and Alliance be-
tween the *English* and the Duke of *Burgundy*, which
had been very advantageous in their Conquests in *France*,
having receiv'd some Sights before, was now in Dan-
ger of being quite broken. For the Duke of *Glocester*
had contracted a Marriage, and cohabited with the
Lady *Jaqueline* of *Bavaria*, Inheretrix of *Holland*, *Zea-*
land, *Hainault*, and other Dominions in the *Nether-*
lands, notwithstanding the Duke of *Brabant* her Hus-
band was then living; and Pope *Martin V.* had declared
the Marriage of the said *Jaqueline* with the Duke of *Gloce-*
ster to be utterly unlawful and sinful. He having pre-
pared an Army of twelve thousand Men, pass'd over
to *Calais*, and march'd from thence to *Mons* in *Hai-*
nault to recover his Wife's Inheritance. The Duke of
Brabant, who was in Possession of those Countries,
had, by the Assistance of his Brother the Duke of *Bur-*
gundy, rais'd an Army of fifty thousand Men to oppose
him. Upon this the Duke of *Glocester* sent to challenge the
Duke of *Burgundy* to a single Combat, and call'd him
Traitor. The Duke of *Burgundy* sent him Word he
accepted the Challenge, but the Duke of *Glocester* drew
off his Forces, and departed with them immediately to
England; leaving the Dutcheß at *Mons*, but afterwards
sent over some Forces to assist her against her Husband,
which being defeated, he laid aside all Hopes of those
Countries, and married the Daughter of the Lord *Cob-*
bam. After which *Jaqueline* was reconciled to her
Husband; so these Wars were ended, but the Combat
agreed on between the two Dukes remained to be per-
formed; but the Regent of *France*, considering that it
might be of very ill Consequence to the *English*, be-
came a Mediator between them, and made a friendly
Conclusion of all.

A Dis-
pute be-
tween the
Duke of
Glocester, and
Bishop of
Winchester.

Now *England* began to be sensible of the ill Effects
of an Infant's sitting upon the Throne, by the danger-
ous Emulation of the two principal Men in the Nation,
the Duke of *Glocester*, and his Uncle the Bishop of
Winchester, the one Protector of the Kingdom, and
the other Tutor to the King. For both Court and
Kingdom were disturbed by their unhappy Contention,
which

which
Bishop
New
France
on be
ently
of B
Char
France
Men
with
Coun
ces.
Th
ful in
Gloce
Debat
lastly
Bedfo
ther
than i
the M
the N
pruden
persua
which
and th
ward:
our a
Oblivi
This I
Festiv
five Y
gent o
bridge
Order
tainted
Duke
caused
own F
Nov
King d
Beauch
Place;
France,

which proceeded from a boundless Ambition in the Bishop, and as lofty a Temper in the Protector. The News of these Disturbances obliged the Regent of France to leave that Kingdom, to make a Reconciliation between them, tho' the State of that Realm sufficiently required his Presence. In his Absence the Duke of Bretagne, and Earl of Richemont, went over to Charles's Party; and the latter being made Constable of France by him, gathered an Army of twenty thousand Men, and invested St. Jean in Normandy; but meeting with a Repulse there, he turned his Fury upon the Country of Anjou, burning and plundering many Places.

The Presence of the Duke of Bedford was very useful in England. The Differences between the Duke of Gloucester and Bishop of Winchester, occasioned long Debates, first at St. Albans, then at Northampton, and lastly in a Parliament at Leicester, where the Duke of Bedford, to avoid any Tokens of Partiality to his Brother of Gloucester, would not intermeddle, otherwise than in general Words to encourage Amity, but had the Matter referred to the most considerable Men in the Nation, for Nobility and Wisdom; by whose prudent Management, the Parties contending were persuaded to leave the Matter to their Arbitration, which they did, and swore, the one by his Prince-hood, and the other by his Priesthood, to stand to their Award: Which was, that they should each of them, without any Compensation, bury all their Differences in Oblivion for ever; and so they were fully reconciled. This Reconciliation was succeeded by several Acts of Festivity and Honour; for the young King, not then five Years old, solemnly knighted his Uncle the Regent of France, and also honoured the Earl of Cambridge, Heir to the late Earl of March, with the same Order of Knighthood; and altho' his Blood had been tainted by his Father, by a fatal Error he was created Duke of York, and was the Person who afterwards caused the Extirpation of the Male Lines, both of his own House, and that of Lancaster.

Now the Duke of Exeter, Guardian to the young King dies, a Man of great Wisdom and Abilities, and Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, was constituted in his Place; but he being Lieutenant to the Regent in France, did not presently come over to England, but

1426.

staid to perform many noble Exploits there, taking many Cities and Towns, and garisoning them with *English*. During this Time, the Duke of *Burgundy* solicited for the setting the Duke of *Alençon*, who had been taken at the Battle of *Verneville*, at Liberty, which was done for the Sum of two hundred thousand Crowns; but he would by no Means be induced to acknowledge King *Henry's* Title to *France*.

The Regent
returns to
France.

The Lord
Talbot's Va-
lour.

About *Candlemas*, the Duke of *Bedford*, the Regent of *France*, left *England*, and returned to *France*, attended by the Bishop of *Winchester*, who being arrived at *Calais*, received the Habit, Cap, and Dignity of a Cardinal to his own great Profit, and the Impoverishment of the Spiritualities of *England*. With the Regent there went over likewise a good Number of fresh Soldiers, under the Command of the renowned Lord *Talbot*, whose Victories were so numerous, that his Name was not only formidable to the *French*, but famous throughout the World. Upon one Side of his Sword was inscrib'd *Sum Talboti*, and on the other, *Pro vincere inimicos meos*. Not long after his Arrival, the Inhabitants of *Mans* in *Maine* had let in the *French* by Night, and massacred most of the *English* in the Place; the Earl of *Suffolk*, Governor of the Town, retiring with some Men into the Castle, sent to the Lord *Talbot* for Succour: He came immediately, and his Men on a sudden crying out *St. George a Talbot*; the *French* Soldiers being surpris'd, were most of them put to the Sword. Thirty Citizens and thirty five Priests were beheaded as Traitors, and then the City remained in its former Condition.

The Earl
of *Salisbury*
goes into
France, and
besieges *Or-*
léans.

The Earl of *Warwick* having continued above a Year in *France*, after he had been declared Governor to the King, return'd into *England*, and was succeeded by the Earl of *Salisbury* who went over with five thousand Soldiers; and being desirous to do some Action, that might answer the Greatness of his Name, resolves to besiege *Orléans*. The Inhabitants having Notice of the Design, provided for their Defence, and the Suburbs, as large as some Cities, were levell'd to the Ground, that the City might not be annoy'd from them: They also were well provided with Men, Ammunition and Provision. The Earl of *Salisbury* finding that Attacks would be fruitless, surrounded the City, and casting up Intrenchments for the Security of his Camp, invests it

so

so close
to them
Siege
Blood
Fortre
spect in
used to
besiege
non w
dischar
were v
shatter'
the Fac
This w
Misfor
their Po
times g
How
the Reg
who w
till the
much h
despair
at last
would
ry, but
Duke
agree to
in King
his. T
ill, con
terest,
Whil
of his
eighteen
Daught
the Me
to faint
deliver
restore
at first,
Counci
cloath'd
to have
at Fire
so

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

469

so closely, that *Charles of France* could send no Relief Fea. VI.
 to them. The City was reduc'd to the last Distress, the
 Siege having lasted two Months, and that with much
 Bloodshed on both Sides. The Besiegers had taken a
 Fortress upon the Bridge, from which was a free Pro-
 spect into all Parts of the City: The Earl of *Salisbury*
 used to go into this Tower, to view the Posture of the
 besieged; which being taken Notice of by them, a Ca-
 non was level'd against that Window, which being
 discharg'd while the Earl and Sir *Thomas Gargrave*
 were viewing the Town thro' the Grate, the Bullet so
 shatter'd the Bars, that Splinters wounded them both in
 the Face so desperately that they died within a few Days.
 This was accounted to the *English* the Beginning of
 Misfortunes; for after this, by Degrees, they lost all
 their Possessions in that Kingdom; for, tho' they some-
 times gain'd, yet they lost three times more.

However the Siege did not end with his Life, for The City of
Orleans a-
gree to sur-
render.
 the Regent appointed the Earl of *Suffolk* in his Place,
 who with the Lord *Talbot* and others held on the Siege
 till the End of *Lent*. The *French* King knowing how
 much his Affairs depended upon that Siege, began to
 despair, and the besieged being reduced to great Distress,
 at last beat a Parley, and agreed to a Surrender, but
 would not resign to the Duke of *Bedford* for King *Hen-*
ry, but to the Duke of *Burgundy*, to be kept for the
 Duke of *Orleans*. But the Regent would by no means
 agree to that, returning Answer, *that the War was made*
in King Henry's Name, therefore Orleans ought to be
his. This Answer the Duke of *Burgundy* took very
 ill, conceiving the *English* envied his Honour and In-
 terest, and kept it laid up in his Mind.

While *Charles of France* was under Apprehensions The Story of
Jean de Arc.
 of his Ruin being near compleated, a young Maid of
 eighteen Years came to him, named *Joan of Lorain*,
 Daughter to *James de Arc*, dwelling in *Damremy* upon
 the *Meuse*, an ordinary Shepherdess, who bad him *not*
to faint, constantly affirming, *that God had sent her to*
deliver the Realm of France from the English Yoke, and
restore him to all his Dominions. She was not credited
 at first, but she constantly affirming it, *Charles* and his
 Council began to hearken to her. Upon which *Joan*
 cloath'd and arm'd her self like a Man, and demanded
 to have that Sword that hung in *St. Katherine's Church*
 at *Firebois in Touraine*; and upon Search there was
 found

1429.

Her Letter
to the En-
glish to ren-
der them
Peace.

found an old Sword among the Donatives of that Church, which gain'd her more Credit and Admiration. Thus warlikely accountred she rode immediately to Blois, where Forces and Provisions lay for the Relief of Orleans, with which she and the Marshal and Admiral of France entred. This mightily encourag'd the besieged, and they began to call her the *Maid of God*; she then wrote this Letter to the Earl of Suffolk, at that Time lying before the Town.

King of England, give an Account to the King of Heaven for his Royal Blood. Surrender up to the Virgin the Keys of all the good Towns which you have taken by Force. She is come from Heaven to vindicate the royal Blood of France, and is ready to make Peace, if thou wilt submit to reasonable Terms, and (as Equity and Justice requires) restore what thou hast taken from him. King of England, if thou wilt not do thus, I am the Captain of the Wars, and in whatsoever Part of France, I shall find any of the English Nation, I will drive them out, whether they will or no; but if they will submit, I will take them to Mercy. I am come from the King of Heaven to expel you out of France, and if you will not obey, I will make such a Slaughter and Stir among you as hath not been this thousand Years in France. Believe me, the King of Heaven will give me and my Forces such irresistible Courage and Strength, as you shall not be able to oppose. Go in God's Name into your own Country, and be not obstinate to your own Opinions; for ye shall not hold France of the King of Heaven, the Son of the Virgin Mary; but Charles the true Heir of it, shall again possess it, and be King of it; for God hath given it him, and he shall enter Paris with a goodly Train. You William Pawlet, Earl of Suffolk, John Lord Talbot, Thomas Lord Scales, Lieutenants of the Duke of Bedford, who callest thy self Regent of the Kingdom of France, be sparing of innocent Blood, and give Orleans its Liberty. If you will not do Justice to those whom you have wrong'd, the French will do the noblest Exploit that ever was done in Christendom. Mind this wholesome Advice given you by God and his Virgin.

Her Letter
derided by
the English.

The Earl of Suffolk received this Letter with great Laughter: King Charles and his Council were derided, and Joan reputed no better than an Enthusiast. The Trumpeter who brought it was imprisoned, which, tho' the French complained of, as against the Law of Arms, the English justified it by the Madness of the Message.

Messa
gin, t
resolu
her A
nity,
tions
Englis
had si
with
Siege
most
on the
Arm
from
of God
march
whom
Memo
Orlean
of Fra
ed kn
Heave
Aft
and F
Duke
denly
above
charg
to fo
Palifa
Hour
worst
in his
other
Horse
Safety
and t
shook
Franc
swore
City
Joan
Th
denn
Procl

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

471

Message. *Du Serres* gives this Character of the *Virgin*, that she was of a modest Aspect, sweet, civil and resolute, her Discourse moderate, rational and reserv'd, her Actions demonstrating great Chastity, without Vanity, Affectation, or Levity. Whatever her Qualifications were, by her Encouragement and Conduct the *English* soon lost their Hopes of *Orleans*; for after they had suffer'd the Duke of *Alençon* to enter the Town with fresh Forces, they were obliged to break up the Siege with great Loss. *Joan* made one and the foremost in all Actions, and made several fierce Sallies upon the *English*, in one of which, being shot thro' the Arm with an Arrow, she cried out, *This is a Favour from Heaven, let us go on; they cannot escape the Hand of God.* At last the Lord *Talbot* raised the Siege, and march'd off in good Order with nine thousand Men, whom *Joan* would not suffer the *French* to pursue. In Memory of this extraordinary Deliverance the City of *Orleans* erected a Monument, where *Charles VII.* King of *France*, and *Joan* the martial Virgin, were represented kneeling in Armour, with Eyes and Hands lift up to Heaven, in Token of their Thanks and Acknowledgment.

After this, there was interchangeable taking of Towns and Places of Importance on both Sides. And the Duke of *Alençon*, being considerably reinforced, suddenly attack'd the valiant Lord *Talbot*, who had not above a fifth Part of their Number, whom they charg'd so unexpectedly, that his Archers had no Time to fortifie their Stations, after their usual Manner, by Palisadoes or Impalement of Stakes; so that after three Hours brave Resistance, the *English* were put to the worst, and the Lord *Talbot* having receiv'd a Wound in his Back, was taken Prisoner, as were also some other Commanders. The Foot under Shelter of the Horse retreated in good Order, and got to a Place of Safety, after they had lost about twelve hundred Men, and the *French* about half that Number. This Blow shook the Foundations of the *English* Greatness in *France*, and many Places revolted from the *English*, and swore Fealty to King *Charles*, who having taken the City of *Rheims* in *Champaign*, was there, according to *Joan's* Direction, crowned King of *France*.

This Year *John Wickliff* and his Memory were condemned at the Council of *Constance*, after this Manner: Proclamation being made, that if any Person could or

The English routed at Patay, and the Lord Talbot taken.

Wickliff condemned by the Council of Constance and his Bones burnt

1429.

would defend *Wickliff* or his Memory, they should immediately appear and be heard; none daring to be his Advocate, they proceeded to examine several Witnesses, whom they had brought to prove that *John Wickliff* in his Life-Time held and taught many heretical and heterodox Doctrines, contrary to the receiv'd Tenets and Practices of the *Christian Church* in all Ages, and that he died in an obstinate and wilful Impenitency of those Opinions. Therefore they proceeded to give Sentence as followeth, *That the said John Wickliff being a notorious obstinate Heretick, and dying in his Heresy, his Body and Bones, if they might be discern'd from the Bodies of other faithful People, should be taken up out of the Ground, and thrown away far from the Burial of any Church, according to the Canon-Laws and Decrees.* Accordingly the Bishop of *Lincoln* sent his Officers to *Lutterworth*, who took his Bones out of his Grave forty one Years after his Burial, burnt them and cast them into a Brook adjoining, call'd *Swift*, which carry'd them into the Sea, as a Presage of the spreading of his Doctrine into all Parts of the World.

The Regent
sends a Chal-
lenge to King
Charles.

The Duke of *Bedford* being concerned at the Progress of *Charles's* Arms, resolved to try another Field-Battle, and leaving *Paris*, marched with ten thousand *English*, and some *Norman* Troops, into the Country of *Brie*, from whence he sent a Challenge in Writing to King *Charles* by a Herald, to this Purpose: That whereas contrary to the Agreement between King *Henry V.* and his own Father *Charles VI.* and the Kingdom of *France*, he had taken upon him, contrary to all Laws and Right, the Title and Dignity of King of *France*, and had violently taken and wrongfully held many Cities and Towns belonging to the King of *England*; he was come from *Paris* with his Army to prove by Dint of Sword and Stroke of Battle his Challenge and Cause true, requiring him to appoint the Place of meeting. *Charles* resolutely answer'd the Herald, That his Master should not need to come to him, nor invite him to a Battle; for he was determined with all Speed to seek out his Master, and by Battle put an End to all Disputes between them. Upon this, the two Armies met near *Senlis*, where they were drawn up in Order of Battel, two Days, without Action: But on the third Day, King *Charles*, tho' he was much superior in Numbers to the *English*, in the

Dead

Dead
Upon
Th
deav
King
prov
const
Whi
of S
of A
Frien
an E
throv
Excr
had
out;
Upon
the
Duke
hastn
Th
dienc
with
of Fr
Men
with
by th
to the
three
was
exam
was
culin
solem
Life,
ackno
self t
Place
Ma
for he
Pile
Hand
sice w
them
series

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

473

Dead of the Night broke up his Camp, and withdrew. ^{8 Hen. VI.}
Upon which the Duke of Bedford return'd to Paris.

The Regent having been informed, that various Endeavours had been used to win the Burgundians from King Henry's Side, took a Journey into Normandy, to provide a safe Retreat there, if the English should be constrain'd to quit their other Holds and Dominions. While he was in Normandy, Charles gain'd the Town of St. Denis near Paris, from whence he sent the Duke of Alençon and Joan of France to try their Fortunes and Friends at Paris. But the English gave them so rough an Entertainment that Joan her self was wounded, and thrown into the Town-Ditch, full of the Filth and Excrements of the City, and had certainly been taken, had not a Servant of the Duke of Alençon pulled her out; and the rest were repuls'd with great Slaughter. Upon the News of which, the Regent having committed the Trust of the Coast-Towns of Normandy to the Duke of York, and of Roan to the Duke of Somerset, hastned to Paris.

The Regent goes into Normandy.

The next Enterprize was to reduce Compeign to Obedience, which was invested by John of Luxemburgh, with the Burgundians and some English. Hither Joan of France had entred, and with a Party of six hundred Men, made a vigorous Sally; but they were repuls'd with considerable Loss, and Joan was taken Prisoner by the Burgundians, and John of Luxemburgh sold her to the English for ten thousand Pound Tournois, and three hundred Crowns annual Rent. After which, she was sent to Roan in Normandy. She afterwards was examined and tried before the Bishop of Beauvois, and was condemned to die for the unnatural Use of masculine Habits, Bloodshed and Sorcery; but upon her solemn abjuring all her ill Practices, was pardon'd her Life, till again being convicted of a perjurious Relapse, acknowledging her self a Strumpet, and feigning her self to be with Child, she was burnt in the Market-Place at Roan, and her Ashes cast into the Air.

Joan taken and burnt.

Many of the French Writers shew the highest Value for her Memory; and Mezeray says, that being on the Pile for Execution, she foretold the English, that the Hand of God was ready to strike them, and that his Justice would not only drive them out of France, but pursue them into England, and make them suffer the same Miseries and Calamities, they had inflicted on the French.

How-

1431.


King Henry
 crown'd in
 Paris.

However this is certain, that she was a brave and valiant *Amazon*, the Restorer of the *French* Monarchy, who if she did not drive out the *English* as she vaunted her self, yet was the chief Cause that the *English* lost *France*.

The *English* Affairs being in a declining Condition in *France*, it was thought necessary for the young King to come over, and be crown'd in *Paris*. Accordingly the Duke of *York* being made High Constable of *England* during Life, King *Henry*, with a noble Retinue, took Shipping at *Dover*, and landed at *Calais*, from whence he went to *Roan*, in Order to make a publick Entry into *Paris*, all which was perform'd with the utmost Magnificence; where being arriv'd, he was receiv'd with the utmost Pomp and Demonstrations of Joy imaginable, and was publickly crown'd King of *France*, on the 7th Day of *December*, in the Cathedral Church of *Paris*, by the Cardinal of *Winchester*; and having staid five Days in *Paris*; which were spent in Tournaments, and the most splendid Entertainments, he returned to *Roan*, and there kept his *Christmas*. But yet *Charles* of *France* esteemed himself no less a King for the Coronation of King *Henry*, but persued his Interests with the utmost Application; and having taken the City of *Chartres* by Stratagem, put the Bishop and others to the Sword. Nor were the *English* idle, but made up that Loss with much Advantage, and set the valiant Lord *Talbot* free by Exchange.

The *Wickliffites* persecuted.

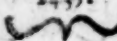
Jack Sharp's
 Rebellion.

In *England* there were great Rejoicings upon Account of King *Henry's* being crown'd at *Paris*; yet as if the poor *Wickliffites* were to be their Peace-Offering, the Bishops persecuted them with the utmost Severity; and several were put to Death in various Places. These Cruelties much incensed the common People against the Clergy, and begat a Rebellion. For *William Mandeville*, Bailiff of *Abington* in *Berkshire*, stirred up the People to Revenge, and getting together a Multitude of People, took upon himself to be their Captain, under the Name of *Jack Sharp* of *Wigmore's* Lands in *Wales* (the antient Inheritance of Earl *Mortimer*, and now in Possession of the Duke of *York*, who from thence challenged the Crown of *England*;) giving out that he would make the Heads of Priests as cheap as Sheeps Heads, which were then three, or as others say, ten a Penny. But the Duke of *Glocester* having Notice of this Insurrection,

rection, immediately sent down a sufficient Force to ^{12 Hen. VI} disperse the Rebels, which was soon effected, the Captain himself, and others being taken Prisoners, who was hanged and quartered, and some of the rest, upon their Submission, were pardoned and dismissed.

King Henry having staid in France till the latter End of February, took his Leave of it; and landing at Dover, came to London, where he was received in a triumphant Manner. Still the Accidents of War, between the *English* and *French*, were various and numerous, sometimes the one, and sometimes the other getting the Advantage. It would be both tedious and endless to recount the Surprises, Sieges, Skirmishes, and the like. In the mean Time a Controversy happened between *Reyner*, Duke of *Anjou* and *Barre*, and the Earl of *Vallemont*, which proceeded so far as to be decided by War. *Charles*, King of *France*, supported the Duke's Claim, and the Duke of *Burgundy* the Earl's: The Arms of the latter prevailed, so that *Reyner's* Troops were beaten, and himself taken Prisoner: but yet this made for the Interest of King *Charles*; for while *Reyner* was in his Captivity, he by his Persuasions prepared the Duke of *Burgundy* for a Reconciliation, which tended much to the Damage of the *English*.

While the Earl of *Arundel* and Lord *Talbot* rang'd about with victorious Forces, terrifying *Anjou*, *Maine*, and other Parts, the *French* King was busy, clandestinely exciting Tumults in *Normandy*, so that the common People had gathered together to the Number of sixty thousand in *Vex*, and twenty thousand in *Caux*: Their Designs and Pretensions were to drive out all the *English* Officers, and to favour the Interest of King *Charles*. To stop their Progress, the Earl of *Arundel* march'd against them with one thousand three hundred Light Horse, and six thousand Archers, two Parts of which he laid in Ambuscade, while the Lord *Willoughby* drew them into it by the third. The Rebels upon the Surprise threw down their Arms, and begged for Mercy: But before the Soldiers Hands could be stop'd, a thousand of them were slain. Some of the Ring-leaders were executed, and the Multitude permitted to return to their Habitations. Not long after this, the Earl of *Arundel*, after having performed several noble Actions, during the Wars in *France*, received his Death's Wound

1435.  in a Skirmish, where *La Hire*, a famous *French* Commander, won the Day.

The Regency still continued in *France*, and the Amity between the Dukes of *Bedford* and *Burgundy* was not intirely dissolved, tho' it had been for some Time slackned: But fresh Distastes and Grudges being taken one at another; and these being heightened by Court Parasites, they thought it a Diminution of their Honour, to hold any League or Amity one with another. However several Lords endeavoured to heal the Breaches betwixt them, and an Interview was appointed for that End; but for want of Condescension on both Sides, it was prevented; and they lived ever after, as if there never had been any Affinity betwixt them. The Duke of *Burgundy's* Affection to the *English* declining, there wanted nothing but a fair Opportunity of being reconciled to *Charles* the *French* King. To prepare the Way to this, several of the Nobility, that were in the Interest of *Charles*, insinuated to him, *That the King had upon all Occasions spoken honourably of him, and inwardly wished well to him; and that he never heard the Murder of his Father named, but it caused him with Sighs and Protestations to declare his Innocence.* In the mean Time, to put an End to the Calamities of War, the Deputies of the Grand Council of *Basil* urged the *French*, *English* and *Burgundians*, to come to a Treaty, and the City of *Arras* was appointed for that Purpose.

The Treaty
at Arras.

There was a very great Assembly met there, so that *Mexeray* says, it was the greatest and noblest, that had been known: But the *English* proposing no Conditions of Peace; but that *Henry* their King should have all, and that *Charles* should hold under him; and the *French* offering him only the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Gascony*, the Assembly broke up without coming to any Agreement. Upon this, King *Charles* being desirous to agree to any Terms, to weaken the *English* Interest, sent the Duke of *Burgundy* a blank Paper, desiring him to prescribe his own Demands and Conditions, which he did; and the Duke transported with Profit, declared himself an Enemy to all that should oppose King *Charles*; after he had caused the Deaths of three hundred thousand Men in his Quarrel, besides the Destruction of innumerable Cities and Towns.

By this Conjunction, King *Henry* lost not only a power-

power
nemy
gundy
Henry
King
what
to the
to see
swer,
the po
that re
ny of
tion c
of his
Duke
ance t

Sev
John,
wheth
other
his Co
lish P
ried a
under
maini
Reign
some
to der
France
his So
was al
As for
his no
is no
Worth

The
tween
to pro
for the
minio
diction
tion to
Duke
Duke

powerful Ally, but had the same to deal with as an Enemy. To give a Colour to this Fact, the Duke of Burgundy sent Embassadors into England, to give King Henry the Reasons of his having made a Peace with King Charles; and to persuade him to be satisfied with what he had done: But the Message was so displeasing to the English, that the Embassadors were not permitted to see King Henry, but were sent away with this Answer, That their Master was a *perjured Traitor*. And the popular Fury rose so high against the *Burgundians* that resided in London, for the Sake of Traffick, that many of them were assaulted and slain, before a Proclamation could come out to prevent it. After the Return of his Embassadors, he sent back all Contracts to the Duke of Bedford, at Paris, and renounced his Allegiance to the King of England.

14 Hen. VI.

The Duke of Burgundy sends an Embassy into England.

Seven Days after the Conclusion of this Peace died John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France, uncertain whether out of Grief for the Evil he foresaw, or some other Distemper; a wise and warlike Prince, who by his Courage and prudent Conduct, had kept up the English Power in France for fourteen Years. He was buried at Roan in Normandy, in the Cathedral Church, under a sumptuous and costly Monument; which remaining whole and intire many Years after, in the Reign of Lewis the eleventh, the Son of King Charles, some of his Courtiers advised him, being then at Roan, to demolish it, because his Memorial was a Shame to France: But King Lewis generously replied, *God save his Soul, and let his Body now lye at rest, who, when he was alive, would have made the proudest of us to tremble: As for his Tomb it is not so decent, nor convenient, as his noble Achievements deserved; and I am sorry it is no more stately, that its Richness might answer his Worth.*

The Duke of Bedford Regent of France dies.

The Duke of Bedford being dead, the Treaty between King Charles and the Duke of Burgundy began to produce Effects very destructive to the English Cause; for they began almost in all Places of the English Dominions, to think of revolting from under their Jurisdiction; and Normandy began first to shew its Inclination to King Charles. To supply the Vacancy, the Duke of York was created Regent of France; and the Duke of Somerset, his perpetual Rival, still continued Governor

The Duke of York made Regent of France.

1436.
Paris lost
from the
English.

Governor of *Normandy*. Before the Duke of *York* could arrive, *Paris*, the Capital City, was lost; for the Lord *Willoughby*, who was then Governor for the *English*, had not above two thousand Soldiers, relying upon the Fidelity of the Citizens; but they, after the Death of the Regent, perceiving the Declension of the *English*, conspired against them. And the Earl of *Richmont*, Constable of *France*, hovering about *Paris*, was, by Treachery, let into the City: And now the Citizens, who were lately Subjects, on a sudden turn'd Enemies; and the *English* were attacked from the Windows by Women and Children, with Stones, and other Things; and many were massacred in the Streets. The Lord *Willoughby*, the Governor, and many others, fled to St. *Anthony's Gate*, and the *Bastile* Places, which they had reserved for Defence, in Case of Extremity. Many had been saved in those Places, but that the perfidious Citizens drew Chains over the Streets, and stop'd their Passage. They in the *Bastile* standing upon their Defence, demanded a Parley, and agreed to depart with their Lives and Baggage. Thus *Paris* returned to its former Government, about sixteen Years after the Duke of *Clarence* had plac'd an *English* Garrison there, in Behalf of his Brother, *Henry* the fifth.

The Insurrection in
Normandy
quelled.

The *English* Affairs were not yet come to the last Extremity, and the seizing of *Paris* might have been of no Service to the *French* had it not been at a Time that was as bad as could be to march an Army, which hindred the Duke of *York* from attempting it in Time, tho' he arrived there afterwards with a Body of eight thousand Men; but too late to do any Service. The *English* still held *Normandy* intire, tho' not without a great deal of Trouble; for the People in *Caux* rebelled again, but were quelled, and suffered more severely for that, than the former Rebellion; for five thousand of them were cut in Pieces, and trampled upon, by the Fury of the *English*, who made Booty of their Goods, burnt their Habitations, and drove the whole Body of them out of the Country.

The Duke
of *Burgundy*
besieges *Calais*.

The *English*, upon the Duke of *Burgundy's* forsaking their Alliance, had endeavoured to stir up *Gaunt*, and other *Flemish* Towns, subject to the Duke, to rise in Rebellion, which, tho' they did not succeed, yet the News of it incited him to a Revenge; in Prosecution

tion
Men
bloo
Ston
ment
man
ley,
Tow
land
who,
gundy
of *B*
ing t
Dom
great
Place
Engla
Burge
contri
with
Th
of thr
sent K
fourth
within
Ab
ned D
of *Ma*
with
mation
France
attemp
could
murth
Villain
his nea
which
have a
In *F*
very ad
wanted
done f
impute
Somerse

tion of which, he brought an Army of forty thousand ^{15 Hen. VI.} Men before *Calais*. The Duke's Design was to have block'd up the Harbour by sinking of Ships loaden with Stones; but the *Calisians* easily removed those Impediments at the Ebb-tide. At that Time the chief Commanders there, for King *Henry*, were the Lord *Dudley*, Governor of the Castle, and Sir *John Ratcliff* of the Town; and the Duke of *Glocester* was sent from *England* with a powerful Fleet and Army to relieve it; who, upon his Arrival, challenged the Duke of *Burgundy* to meet him in the open Field; but the Duke of *Burgundy* raised the Siege without any Battle, leaving the *English* Masters of his Camp; who entring his Dominions, burnt *Poppering* and *Bell*, and committed great Ravages about *Graveling*, *Boloign*, and other Places; then settling the Affairs of *Calais*, returned to *England* with great Honour. After this, the Duke of *Burgundy's* third Wife *Isabel*, an ingenious Woman, contrived a Medium, whereby he might hold a League with *England*, and yet make no Breach with *France*.

The Deaths
of three
great Prin-
cesses.

The following Year was memorable for the Death of three great Princesses, *Katherine*, Mother to the present King *Henry*, the old Dowager of King *Henry* the fourth, and the old Countess of *Armagnack*, who all died within forty eight Hours of each other.

About this Time happen'd a Match, which threatened Danger to King *Henry*, and that was the Marriage of *Margaret*, the Daughter of *James*, King of *Scots*, with *Lewis*, the Dauphin of *France*; upon the Consummation of which, he sent new Supplies of Men to *France*, against the *English*. He designed also to have attempted something himself in Person; but before he could put his Designs in Execution, he was barbarously murdered in the Sanctuary at *Perth*, by certain bloody Villains, who had been employed by the Duke of *Athol*, his near Kinsman, in Hopes to obtain the Crown; for which Impiety, one Part of his Punishment was, to have a red hot Crown of Iron put upon his Head.

James King
of *Scots* mur-
thered.

In *France*, the Duke of *York*, the new Regent, was very active, but performed nothing memorable, tho' he wanted neither Opportunities nor Advantages to have done something worthy his noble Office; tho' some impute it to the Opposition he met from the Duke of *Somerset*, who in the mean Time, with the Lord *Talbot*, and

Harflaw sur-
rendred to
the Duke of
Somerset.

1439. and others, managed the *English* Affairs in *Normandy* very strenuously, laying Siege to *Harfleur*, which had been seized by the *French*; and tho' King *Charles* sent a Body of four thousand Men to relieve the Place, yet they being not able to effect it, *Harfleur* was surrendered to the Duke.

The Earl of
Warwick
made Re-
gent.

Soon after this the Duke of *York* was recalled, and the Earl of *Warwick* constituted Regent in his Place, who carried over with him a thousand fresh Soldiers, and vigorously applied himself to the Business of his Station; and under his Conduct the Forces of the Duke of *Burgundy* were driven from before *Crotoy*, by the brave Lord *Talbot*: And several other considerable Advantages were gained by the *English* Forces; and the *English* Interest was still maintained in *France*, not only by Means of King *Henry's* Ministers and Forces, but also by the Remissness of King *Charles*, who gave his Son Occasion to raise a Rebellion against him: But before any great Advantage could be made of the Breach between the King and *Dauphin*, the Earl of *Warwick*, after many worthy Actions, died at *Roan*, and the Duke of *York* was sent over a second Time, in the Quality of Regent of *France*.

One *John*
Gardiner
burnt for
Heresy.

On *Easter* Day, one *John Gardiner*, a Person that favoured the Doctrines of *Wickliff*, but yet conformed outwardly to the *Romish* Ceremonies, was discovered to convey the Sacramental Bread from his Mouth, after he had received it from the Priest's Hands, in a foul Cloth, in *St. Mary Ax's* Church in *London*. This Fact was observed with Abhorrence by his Fellow Communicants; upon which he being examined, was condemn'd as an obstinate Heretick, and burnt in *Smithfield*, *May* the fourteenth.

The Duke
of *York* twice
offers King
Charles Bat-
tle.

King *Charles* having besieged *Ponthoife*, near *Paris*, with twelve thousand Men, the Duke of *York* landing in *Normandy*, gathered a Body of seven or eight thousand Men, and offered the King Battle; but he kept himself within his Trenches. The Duke upon this passed, with his Army, the River *Oyse*, which ran between the two Camps. This caused King *Charles* to remove in such Haste, that the *French* could hardly call it any Thing but flying. The Duke took his Camp, reinforced *Ponthoife*, and pursued the King to *Poissie*; where the Duke again provoked him to Fight; but he declined the Offer, upon which the Duke returned

ed to his Charge in *Normandy*. This seeming Cowardice brought King *Charles* under that Obloquy and Contempt with the People, especially the *Parisians*, that had he not a second Time attempted, and prevailed against *Pontboise*, it might have endangered his whole Fortunes. He therefore returned to the Siege in great Fury, and took it by a general Assault, with much Bloodshed on his own Side, and the Loss of five hundred of the *English*. By this Exploit he re-established his Reputation with his People.

On *June* the seventeenth, a Priest named *Richard Wicke*, Minister of *Hermetsworth* in *Essex*, who had before been convicted of Heresy, and abjured, was found guilty of a Relapse; and being degraded of his priestly Dignity, was burnt as an incorrigible Heretick on *Tower-hill*. Before his Death he had foretold, That the *Postern-gate of the Tower should sink into the Ground*; which accordingly coming to pass upon the eighteenth of *July* following, when the said Gate sunk in the Night more than seven Foot into the Earth; this added so much to the Opinion that many had of him, after his Death, that he was a good Man, and burnt out of Malice; that many Persons went by Night to the Place where he was executed, and offered Images of Wax, and other Things, according to the Superstition of those Times, kissing the Ground where he suffered, and carrying away his Ashes as a sacred Relique. The Vicar of *Barking*, to increase their Adoration, mingled Spices with the Ashes, that they might believe, that the Fragrancy proceeded from the Holiness of the Sufferer; which so deceived the People, that they raised a great Heap of Stones in the Place, and erected a Cross; and many went on Pilgrimage to it to the great enriching the Vicar of *Barking*, who received the Offerings of the People. Upon this the Clergy being offended, procured a Proclamation, forbidding these Superstitions; and the Mayor of *London* set a Guard upon the Place, and apprehended some of the Visitants; and among the rest, the Vicar of *Barking*, who confessed the Delusion, that, for his own Gain, he had put upon the People.

Both Sides now growing weary of the War, a Treaty of Peace was appointed at *Calais*, but not concluded: But the Ransom of *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, who had been a Prisoner in *England* for twenty six Years,

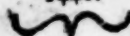
19 Hen. VI.

Richard Wicke burnt on Tower-hill, for Heresy.

Richard Wicke burnt on Tower-hill, for Heresy.

The Duke of Orleans released.

1440.



ever since the Battle at *Agin-court*, was agreed on for four hundred thousand Crowns, which the Duke of *Burgundy* paid to pacify him for the Murther of his Father. The Duke of *Glocester* foreseeing the ill Consequences that were like to ensue upon the Duke of *Orleans's* Liberty, strenuously opposed it, and ordered his Reasons to be entred upon Record, in Testimony of the Discharge of his Duty. The Cardinals of *York* and *Winchester*, assuming to themselves a Power of acting many Things without the Consent of the King, or Duke of *Glocester*, who was Protector of the Realm; the Duke declared to the King, how much the Cardinal of *Winchester* had offended both his Majesty and the Laws of the Nation, by his ambitious Desire of surmounting all others in Honour and Dignity, and enriching himself, to the defrauding of his Treasure; and had practised Things highly prejudicial to his Affairs in *France*. These Complaints were drawn up in twenty four Articles, which being heard in Council, the Cardinal found so many Friends, as not only protected him, but afterwards found Means to work the Ruin of the Duke of *Glocester*.

1443.
A Match
proposed be-
tween King
Henry and
the Earl of
Armagnack's
Daughter.

The Countess of *Cominges* dying, the King of *France* and Earl of *Armagnack* became violent Competitors for the Inheritance. The Earl took Possession; but fearing the Greatness of the King of *France*, offered his Daughter in Marriage to the King of *England*, with a large Fortune in Money, and the Possession of the Towns and Castles in *Gascony*. This Offer King *Henry* accepted; but the King of *France* disliking it, sent the *Dauphin* with a powerful Army, who took the Earl and his Daughter Prisoners; and so the Marriage was never effected.

Accidents in
England.

On *Candlemas* Day, the Steeple of *St. Paul's* Church was set on fire by Lightning, in the midst of the Wood of the Shaft, but was quenched by the great Pains and Diligence of the Citizens: And at the same Time, the Steeple of *Waltham-Cross*, in *Essex*, was in the same Tempest consumed; but the Church was saved.

1444.
A Peace
treated on,
but not con-
cluded.

The Kings of *Spain*, *Denmark*, and *Hungary* became Mediators for a Peace between *England* and *France*, but after many Proposals made, nothing but a Truce for eighteen Months was agreed on. While this Negotiation was carried on, the Earl of *Suffolk*, one of the

the Commissioners for this Peace, took upon him a ²⁴ Hen. VI. bold Thing, beyond his Commission, and treated of a Marriage between King Henry and Margaret the Daughter of the Duke of Anjou, and Niece to the Queen of France. When the Earl came to England, he set forth the Beauty and Qualifications of the proposed Bride, and the Advantages that would redound to the Kingdom by the Match. The Duke of Gloucester strenuously opposed it, for weighty Reasons, but to no Purpose. King Charles of France understanding that King Henry had consented to it, sent over the Duke of Vendosme, and Archbishop of Rheims, to conclude the Match, which being done, the Earl of Suffolk was made a Marquis, and appointed to celebrate the Formality of the Nuptials, and to bring the Bride into England. Accordingly, after great Preparations, and all Things being in Readiness, the new Marquis, with his Wife, and great Numbers of Ladies and Gentlemen, gloriously adorned, went over to France, to fetch her; for her Father, tho' rich in Titles, was so poor in Purse, that he was not able to send her honourably to her Husband; so that the whole Charge, which was very great, fell to King Henry's Share. The noble Company being arrived at Tours, the Marquis married the Lady, as Proxy to King Henry, in the Presence of the King and Queen of France, and many Princes and Noblemen; and the Nuptials having been solemnized with Feasts and Tournaments, she was convey'd into England with great State, and married to King Henry at Southwike in Hampshire; from thence being conducted to London, was received by the Citizens in great Splendor; and on the thirtieth of May following crowned Queen at Westminster.

1445.
A Marriage
between
King Henry
and the
Duke of
Anjou's
Daughter.

Here some English Writers tell us, that it did appear, by Reason of the Breach of Promise made to the Earl of Armagnack's Daughter, that God was not pleased with the late Marriage: For from that Day forward, King Henry's Fortunes began to decline; so that he lost all his Friends in England, and all his Dominions in France. For in a little Time, the Queen and her Council governing all Things, to the Derriement of the King and his Realm, it highly disgusted the greatest Part of the Nobility, and the whole Nation. But still some Care was taken about the Affairs of France; the Parliament granted Supplies, to carry

1446.
The Begin-
ning of
England's
Miseries.

1446.

The Duke
of Gloucester
murdered.

on the War against the Expiration of the Truce ; the Duke of *York* was recalled from his Regency, and the Duke of *Somerset* sent in his Place.

The Protector, the Duke of *Glocester*, felt the fatal Blow of that evil Angel that was sent to punish *England*. The Duke had been a bold Opposer of the late Marriage, and therefore was hated by the Queen, Duke of *Suffolk*, and her Faction ; because, by the Honour of his Birth, and Authority of his Place, he seem'd to hinder that Sovereign Power they pretended to settle in the King's Person, but designed in Reality to invest themselves with. In the first Place she caused the Duke to be removed, not only from any Command about the King's Person, but Council too ; and the Dukes of *Suffolk* and *Buckingham*, Cardinal of *Winchester*, and Archbishop of *York*, all the Duke's Enemies, were employ'd to set on Foot whatever Accusations they could either in Malice invent, or in Policy contrive, against him. And a Parliament upon that Account being call'd at *Bury*, on the second Day of their Sitting they caused the Duke of *Glocester* to be arrested for High Treason, by the Lord *Beaumont*, Constable of *England*, and all his Followers to be taken from him, whereof thirty two were committed to several Prisons ; and the next Day after his Imprisonment he was found murdered in his Bed. Some say he was strangled ; some, that a hot Spit was run up his Fundament ; and some, that he was stifled between two Feather-Beds. Thus died the good Duke of *Glocester*, lamented by all the Nation, being a Lover of his Country, a Friend to the Learned, and so great an Encourager of them, that he built the Divinity School at *Oxford* ; a Defender of the Innocent, and a Terror to the Guilty. And tho' the Queen and her Party triumphed in his Overthrow, yet by his Death they wrought the Ruin of the King himself, having opened a Gap for *Richard*, Duke of *York*, to put in his Claim to the Crown ; which in a few Years made King *Henry's* Throne very uneasy, and ended in his Deposition ; which he would not in all Probability have attempted, had not the brave Duke of *Glocester* been dead.

The Cardinal of *Winchester* dies.

Soon after the Decease of the Duke of *Glocester*, God seemed to revenge his Murther upon one of his principal Enemies, the rich Cardinal of *Winchester*, whose Heart was so much set upon the World, and the

Glories

Glories
ment o
not ab
on his
Impati
save hi
nothing
Death
dom for
who w
of his
his Pre
dalen C
Wit
gan th
Duke
of the
all Th
use of
Usurp
tolerat
the Ne
of *Yor*
though
lay ho
the Th
Miser
King,
bitious
it into
on fo
King
Queen
Henry
Cloith
dom
Wom
their
them.
In
Franc
Duke
Fouge
ried o
Crow

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

485

Glories of it, that there could not be a greater Punishment of his Sins than to call him out of it. He lived not above a Month after the Duke of *Glocester*, and on his Death-Bed, is said to have shewn very great Impatience, and being told that no Medicines could save his Life, he cryed out in a Passion, *What! will nothing save my Life? Will Money do nothing? Cannot Death be bribed a few Years? I'd give the whole Kingdom for my Life.* He was succeeded by *William Patin*, who was afterwards surnamed *Wainfleet*, from the Place of his Nativity, and lived as eminent for his Piety, as his Predecessor was for his Riches, and founded *Magdalen College* in *Oxford*.

With this six and twentieth Year of the King, began the Rule of the Queen, who having removed the Duke of *Glocester* out of the World, by the Assistance of the Duke of *Suffolk*, her chief Favourite, managed all Things without Controul; wherein, tho' she made use of her Husband's Name, yet she could not hide her Usurpation. Her Ambition and Tyranny grew so intolerable, that it begat a general Discontent among the Nobility, as well as common People. The Duke of *York* having been made great, and grown strong, thought this Management a proper Handle for him to lay hold of, to farther his Designs to raise himself to the Throne; for having represented to his Friends, the Misery of the Nation, which under the Name of a King, weak and unable to govern, was ruled by an ambitious Queen and her Minions; he first whispered it into their Heads, that it was necessary to pitch upon some other Person to be King, since the present King had deposed himself in Effect, by suffering the Queen and *Suffolk* to over-rule all; that tho' King *Henry* was really a good Man, yet he was fitter for a Cloister, than a Palace; and therefore the Kingdom ought to be put into better Hands, than those of Women, and Favourites. This he said to prepare their Minds for what he had in Time to propose to them.

In the Time of the Truce between *England* and *France*, a Knight of *Arragon*, who served under the Duke of *Somerset*, the Regent, surpris'd the Town of *Fougiers*, belonging to the Duke of *Bretagne*, and carried off a Booty of one Million six hundred thousand Crowns; upon which the Duke of *Bretagne* demanded

1448.
The Designs
of the Duke
of *York*.

1449.
All Norman-
dy lost from
the English

1449.

W Reparation and Restitution of the Regent ; but he, contrary to good Discipline, neglected to give him Satisfaction, rather encouraging his Soldiers in their Riots and Disorders. Upon this the Duke of *Bretagne* began to make Reprisals, and surpris'd *Pont de Larche*, and Town after Town, so many, and so fast, that King *Charles* of *France*, uniting his Forces with his, soon became Master of *Roan*, and of *Caen*, *Bayeux*, and indeed of all the other Places belonging to the *English* in those Parts. In this Dukedom were an hundred strong Towns and Forts. And thus was *Normandy* lost in the Space of one Year, after it had been in the Possession of the *English* above thirty Years.

1450.
The People
discontented
with the
King's Mi-
nisters.

The People seeing all Things running to Confusion both Abroad and at Home, grew very uneasie, and began to exclaim against those who had the Management of the publick Affairs, and especially against the Duke of *Suffolk* ; charging him with being the Cause of the delivering up *Anjou* and *Maine*, the chief Procurer of the Death of the Duke of *Glocester*, the Occasion of the Loss of *Normandy*, the Devourer of the King's Treasure, and the Remover of good and virtuous Counsellors from about the King, and the Advancer of vicious Persons, and such as were Enemies to the Publick. The Parliament being met, drew up several Articles of Impeachment against him, upon which he was committed to the Tower ; where after he had remained about a Month, he was set at Liberty, and taken into the King's Favour again ; at which the People were highly displeased, and began to assemble in numerous Bodies in many Places, and had chosen themselves a Captain, whom they called *Blue-Beard* ; but the Leaders being apprehended before they had entered upon any Enterprize, Matters were pacified.

The Duke
of *Suffolk*
banished.

After these Disturbances were quieted, the Parliament was adjourned to *Leicester*, where the King and Queen were present in great State, and the Duke of *Suffolk* with them as their chief Counsellor. The House of Commons resenting it highly, that their Impeachment was set so light by, petitioned the King, that all such Persons as consented to the Delivery of *Anjou*, and *Maine* might be punished according to their Demerit. The King being sensible that nothing else would appease the People's Fury, removed the Lord *Say* from being high Treasurer, and some other of the Duke of *Suffolk*'s Adherents from their Offices, and banished him

for

for five
to *France*
Man o
ing take
his Hea

The
mate th
spared n
Queen c
Valour
a Mann
that Ob
how mu
being th
popular
People
mand o
been Se
a Wom
took up
be of th

Jack
Mien, o
who hav
at *Black*
Captain
and Red
large R
One of
recalled
the King
of *Gloce*
of his D
the Grie
King's l
ticulars.
teen tho
Rebels,
ces into
London,
some F
Sir *Hum*
Rebels,
Flight.
Duke o

for five Years. The Duke thereupon designing to go^{29 Hen. VI.} to France, embarked in *Suffolk*, but was set upon by a Man of War belonging to the Earl of *Exeter*, and being taken by the Captain, and brought into *Dover Road*, his Head was stricken off in a Cock-boat. And murdered.

The Death of the Duke of *Suffolk*, did much animate those of the Duke of *York*'s Faction, who now spared no Pains to render the King despicable, and the Queen odious. They extol'd the Duke's Wisdom and Valour in his Government of *Ireland*, where he had in a Manner tam'd a savage People, and reduced them to that Obedience and Discipline, that he thereby shewed how much *England* wanted such a King. The Way being thus prepared, the Duke began his Work with a popular Sedition. And for that End, the *Kentish* People were excited to take up Arms, under the Command of *Jack Cade* an *Irishman*, who had formerly been Servant to Sir *Thomas Dagre*, and having killed a Woman with Child, fled to *France*; and returning, took upon him the Name of *Mortimer*, pretending to be of that Family, and Cousin to the Duke of *York*. The Duke of York's farther Designs.

Jack Cade was a Youth of a princely Stature and Mien, of a very pregnant Wit, and undaunted Boldness, who having drawn together great Numbers, encamped at *Black-heath*, styling himself the Captain of *Kent*, and Captain *Mendall*; his Pretences were the publick Good, and Redress of Grievances; to effect which, he sent a large Roll of Complaints and Demands to the King. One of which was, that the Duke of *York* should be recalled out of *Ireland*, and be one of the Principal of the King's Council. Another was, that whereas the Duke of *Glocester* had been proclaim'd a Traitor, the Authors of his Death might be punished. The Complaints were, the Grievances and Extortions of the Courts of the King's Bench and Exchequer, and many other Particulars. Upon this, the King raised an Army of fifteen thousand Men, and marched in Person against the Rebels, but *Jack Cade* politickly withdrawing his Forces into *Sevenoke Wood*, the King returned again to *London*, without doing any Thing; but the Queen sent some Forces under the Command of two fiery Youths, Sir *Humphry* and Sir *William Stafford*, to pursue the Rebels, but they were both slain, and their Men put to Flight. And now the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and Duke of *Buckingham* were sent to expostulate with them Jack Cade's Rebellion in Kent.

1450.

them, about their Demands, to whom *Jack Cade* gave civil Language, but positively denied a Cessation of Arms, unless the King in Person would hear the Grievances of his Subjects, and give his royal Word that they should be redressed. The King not being able to trust to his Soldiers Fidelity, retired with the Queen to *Kenelworth Castle in Warwickshire*.

Jack Cade
enters Lon-
don.

The King's Retreat from *London* being heard of by *Cade*, the Rebels immediately broke up their Camp, and marched towards the City, himself lodging the first Night at the *White-bart* in *Southwark*; where hearing what a great Party of the People of *Essex* were come to his Assistance, and were encamped at *Mile-end*, he did not doubt but to carry all before him. He gave strict Charge to his Men to offer no Injury to any, which was duly observed. On the second of *July* he marched into the City, and coming to *London-stone*, struck his Sword upon it, saying, *Now is Mortimer Lord of London*. The Lord Mayor standing by his Door as he passed by, bad him *beware of attempting any Thing against the Peace of the City*. To whom he replied, *Let the World judge of our honest Intentions by our Actions*. Then he took upon him to send out Letters to diverse Citizens of Note, to bring him certain Numbers of Arms and Horse, at the Charge of the *Genoese, Venetian, and Florentine* Merchants, threatening to take off the Heads of those that refused Payment. The next Morning he ordered the Lord *Say* to be brought to *Guildhall*, where he had summoned the Lord Mayor and Aldermen to meet, before whom he caused him to be arraigned; who demanding to be tried by his Peers, was hurried away to the Standard in *Cheapside*, and beheaded, and his Head being put upon the End of a Pike, was carried before him to *Mile-end*, where he went to confer with the *Essex* Rebels; and in the Way meeting Sir *James Cromer*, who had married the Lord *Say's* Daughter, he also caused his Head to be taken off, and born before him; the Bearers making them seem to hiss in every Street to move Laughter. The next Day he entred the City again, and put to Death some of his Men who had acted contrary to his Orders; and for some Displeasure taken against Alderman *Malpas*, he seized upon his Goods, and fined Alderman *Horn* five hundred Marks, and then returned to his Quarters in *Southwark*.

The Citizens
oppose the
Rebels.

The chief Citizens finding the intolerable Insolence of

of *Cade*, resolved for the future to keep him out of the City, and for that End sent to the Lord *Scales* to assist them, who appointed Sir *Matthew Gough* for that Purpose; who having raised the trained Bands of the City; planted themselves to keep the Bridge against them. The Rebels in *Southwark* hearing that their Entrance would be disputed, ran furiously to Arms, and *Cade* endeavoured to open his Passage by Force, but the Citizens opposed him so stoutly, that he could not pass the Bridge; the Conflict continued all Night, and till nine in the Morning, and several brave Citizens were slain in the Dispute. Upon this, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who was Chancellor, caused a Proclamation of Pardon to be published for all Offenders; upon which the Rebels left their Captain, and departed Home, glad to secure themselves as fast as they could. *Jack Cade* not daring to stay for the Succours that had been promised him, by the Favourers of the Duke of *York*, fled in Disguise into *Sussex*, into the Wood Country adjoining to *Lewes*, thinking so to escape, and by raising another Rebellion, to compass his Designs; which being known, the King's Council offered a Reward of a thousand Marks, to any Person that should bring him alive or dead. *Alexander Eden*, a Gentleman of *Kent*, seeing *Cade* in a Garden at *Hothfield* in *Sussex*, valiantly attempted to take him, and in Fight with him slew him, and brought him up to *London* in a Cart; his Body was quarter'd, his Head set on *London* Bridge, and his Quarters were sent into several Parts of *Kent*; into which Country the King came afterwards in Person; where tho' five hundred were found guilty, so merciful was he that only eight were executed. There were also Insurrections in some other Parts of the Nation, and in *Wiltshire*, the Rebels drew *William Askot* Bishop of *Salisbury* from the high Altar, when he was saying Mass in *Edington* Church, to the Top of the Hill, and there in his Episcopal Robes inhumanly murdered him.

The Duke of *York* having received Intelligence in *Ireland* of the bad Success of his Affairs in *England*, that *Jack Cade* was defeated, and his Army wholly routed, resolved to go himself into *England*, to consult with his Friends, and lay a better Foundation for his Proceedings. Being arrived in *England*, he apprehended the Lord *Dudley*, the Abbot of *Glastenbury*, and another, and imprisoned them in his Castle of *Ludlow*.

1451.
The Duke of York proceeds in his former Designs.

The

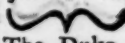
1451. The Duke of *Somerſet* was the Man, that ſince the Death of the Duke of *Suffolk*, moſt ſupported the Interests of King *Henry*; therefore was to be removed and incapacitated for oppoſing his Deſigns. The Duke of *York* hereupon entred into a Conſultation with his chief Friends, the Earls of *Salisbury*, and *Devonſhire*, the Lord *Cobham*, and others, how he might moſt eaſily get into the Throne of *England*, and how to ruin the Duke of *Somerſet*, from whom they were to expect the greateſt Oppoſition. At length it was concluded, to have recourſe to Arms, but firſt to publiſh to the World, *That they deſigned all Honour and Obedience to King Henry, but only would remove certain ill Men from about his Perſon, who oppreſſed the People, and made a Prey of the Publick.* And to gain the more Credit, and to blind the King, the Duke in his Proclamation uſed theſe hypocritical Words: *God knows, from whom nothing is hid, I am, have been, and ever will be, his true liege Man, &c. For Proof of which, I offer my ſelf to be ſworn on the bleſſed Sacrament, and receive it as a Pledge of my Salvation at the Day of Doom.* And whereas *Normandy* was loſt during the Regency of the Duke of *Somerſet*, his Enemies had the more Opportunity to aſperſe him with the People, who at his Return offered him ſeveral Indignities and Injuries, till a Proclamation was iſſued out, upon pain of Death to reſtrain them, for the Breach of which one was be-headed in *Weſt-cheap, London*.

He takes up Arms.

King Henry marches againſt the Duke of York.

King *Henry*, notwithſtanding all the Duke of *York*'s Artifices, ſaw ſo much of his Deſigns, as not to rely upon his Pretenſions; but by the Advice of the Duke of *Somerſet*, and the reſt of his Friends, gathered an Army, and marched againſt him into *Wales*. The Duke having Notice of the King's Approach, turned aſide, and marched with all poſſible Speed to *London*; but not meeting with Encouragement there, retired into *Kent*, and encamped at *Brent-heath*; near *Dertford*. The King with as much Expedition marched back to *London*, and encamped at *Black-heath*, reſolving to fight the Duke. The Duke was inferior to the King in Numbers; ſome therefore about the King, who favoured the Duke, and were afraid of his Overthrow, adviſed the King to an Accommodation; and Meſſengers were daily ſent between the two Armies. The Duke in a Letter to the King, according to his uſual Manner, pretended

pretended
had
either
good
Perſon
King
and
Some
to ſaf
he w
the
do.
TH
ling
Beha
gard
for th
admit
belove
ther,
done
report
of So
overw
done
ſent f
Somer
ed his
Som
King's
tation
into a
Breach
Duke
That k
contriv
King,
vehem
and ar
pacity
guishea
the En
But the
Indemn
come

pretended Loyalty, and particular Injuries : *That he* ^{30 Hen. VI.}
had taken up Arms, not to do any Damage to the King, 
either in his Honour or Person, nor any of the King's ^{The Duke}
good Subjects, but to remove from him several ill disposed ^{Parlies with}
Persons of his Council, Enemies of their Country and ^{the King.}
King, who abused the Nobility, oppressed the Clergy,
and impoverished the Commons, of whom the Duke of
Somerfet was Chief, and if the King would put him in-
to safe Custody, till he should clear himself in Parliament,
he would dismiss his Troops, and present himself before
the King, and serve him as all good Subjects ought to
do.

The King condescended to answer this Letter, tel-
 ling him, *That the Suspicion universally conceived of his*
Behaviour, produced those Effects : Nevertheless in Re-
gard to the humble Obedience he had lately protested, he,
for the easing the Duke's Heart, does declare, repete, and
admit him as a true and faithful Subject, and as his well-
beloved Cousin. Upon this the Duke proceeded far-
 ther, and wrote to the King, *That Justice might be*
done upon all Persons whatsoever, which were guilty, or
reported to be guilty of Treason ; aiming at the Duke
of Somersset in particular, whom he doubted not to
overwhelm with Calumnies, as he and his Party had
done to the Duke of Suffolk. The Lords who were
 sent from the King promised him that the Duke of
Somersset should be confined, and upon this he dismiss-
 ed his Army.

Some Days after, the Duke of York went to the
 King's Tent at *Black-beath*, but contrary to his Expec-
 tation, finding the Duke of Somersset at Liberty, fell
 into a great Passion, and complained of the King's
 Breach of Promise, in not imprisoning him. The
 Duke of Somersset recriminated as warmly, telling him,
That he was the greatest Traitor, affirming that he had
contrived with his Friends and Accomplices, to depose the
King, and assume the Crown to himself and Posterity :
 vehemently urging, *that the Duke might be committed*
and arraigned, that by his deserved Death, and the Inca-
capacity of his Posterity, all civil War might be extin-
guished : Finally praying, That Heaven would not suffer
the Enemy of the Kingdom to escape the Hand of Justice.
 But the King having engaged his Word for the Duke's
 Indemnity, and the Report of his Son's being ready to
 come with an Army to rescue his Father, were the
 Causes

1452.



Causes he was no longer kept under Restraint, as he had been by the Duke of *Somerset's* weighty Accusations; and to assure the King of his Fidelity, he made a formal Submission, and took a solemn Oath, to be a true, obedient, and faithful Subject, in *St. Paul's Church*, in the Presence of many of the Nobility, Archbishops, and Bishops. These were afterwards reiterated by him at *Westminster*, and then at *Coventry*, which manifestly shew the highest Degree of Perjury, Treachery, and Treason.

1453.
Talbot Earl
of Shrews-
bury sent into
Gascoign.

The People of *Gascoign*, having been oppressed with the King of *France's* Army, and Taxes, grew weary of the *French* Yoke, and longed for the old Liberty they had enjoyed under the *English*; and secretly sent over two *French* Noblemen, desiring that an Army might be sent over, declaring that *Bourdeaux* and *Gascoign* would readily return to the *English* Subjection, if they were duly supported against the *French* King; upon which an Army was sent under the Command of the renowned Lord *Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, whose Fame caused several Places to yield. The City of *Bourdeaux* it self secretly open'd a Gate to him, which the *French* Garrison perceiving, fled out at a Postern, but being persued were many of them slain. After which, the Earl having received Intelligence that the *French* had besieged *Chastillon*, he marched thither, but too adventrously charging the Enemy upon unequal Terms, both he and his Son were unfortunately slain. After this *Bourdeaux*, and other Places fell again into the *French* Hands. From that Time forward the *English* never obtained any Hold, or Footing in those Parts. This Dukedom of *Gascoign* or *Aquitain*, was a large Province containing four Archbishopricks, twenty four Bishopricks, fifteen Earldoms, two hundred Baronies, and above a thousand Captainships and Bailiwicks; so that the Loss of so noble an Inheritance, which had continued *English* for about three hundred Years, was very great.

Constantino-
ple taken by
the Turks.

This Year, on the 13th Day of *October*, the Queen was delivered of a first Son, who was named *Edward*; and as this was an unfortunate Year to *England*, so it was to all *Europe*, by the great Progress of the *Turks*, who made themselves Masters of the famous City of *Constantinople*, and put a final Period to the *Grecian* Empire,

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

493

Empire, after it had lasted from *Constantine* the Great ^{32 Hen. VI.} upwards of eleven hundred Years.

The Wars of *France* being now at an End, civil Dissentions began at Home. The Duke of *York* considering that King *Henry VI.* held the Crown not by any Usurpation of his own, but by two successive Descents from Father and Grandfather, two most excellent Princes, and that being himself a Prince of known Goodness and Piety, he had so deep an Hold in the People's Affections, that any barefaced Pretensions to the Crown would probably have turned to his Prejudice; therefore made it his Business to insinuate Jealousies into the Heads of the People, and by common Bruits and Reports to foment their Discontents: Representing King *Henry* to be mean spirited; and that the Condition of the present Times required a King that would not be governed by his Wife, or any third Person, but by his own Judgment, a Man wise and vigorous; that notwithstanding the King had promised, that the Duke of *Somerset* should be kept in safe Custody, till he had given an Answer in Parliament, against all Accusations; yet he enjoyed not only Liberty, but was in greater Favour and Power than ever, and no Parliament likely to meet; and the Men who were the Ruin of the Nation, were honoured and encouraged. Having by these Means prepared the People, he secured two extraordinary Men to his Interest, the Earl of *Salisbury*, whose Daughter he had married, and the Earl of *Warwick*; the former eminent for Policy and Council, the other for Valour and Magnificence: By the Assistance of these two, he caused the Duke of *Somerset* to be arrested in the Queen's own Lodgings, and sent to the Tower; to which he was the more emboldened, because the King was at that Time very sick, and hardly sensible, and, as some say, the Regency of the Kingdom was committed by the Council to him, during the King's Weakness; and by Virtue of that Authority he called a Parliament, and accused the Duke of *Somerset* of high Treason. But the Queen, who was as Intent for the Deliverance of the Duke of *Somerset*, as his Enemies were on his Destruction, had so contrived Matters, that nothing should be done against him; for the King being something amended, and come well to his Senses, she caused him, tho' very weak, to be carried to the Parliament-house, and there to dissolve the Parlia-

The Duke
of *York* still
pursues his
old Design.

1454

1455

1455.

 The Duke
 of York raises
 an Army.

The Battle
 at St. Albans

Parliament. Upon which *Somerset* was immediately set at Liberty, and that he might be out of the Reach of his Enemies Malice, he was made Captain of *Calais* and *Guisnes*, the only Places in *France* that remained in the Hands of the *English*. The Duke of *York* finding that he had twice fail'd in his Attempts to ruin him, withdrew into *Wales*; where having gathered an Army, he took his Way towards *London*. The King not depending upon the Fidelity of the City, march'd his Forces to *St. Albans*, where he encamped, and there the two Armies met: The King sent Messengers to the Duke, to know why he came in that hostile Manner. The Duke, after Expressions of his Loyalty, demanded of the King, that he would deliver up such Persons as he should name, to deserved Punishment. The King returned Answer, *That he and his Adherents were Traitors, and rather than he would deliver up any Lord to them, he himself would live and die in the Quarrel.* Upon this the Earl of *Warwick* unawares attacked the King's Vant-guard, and put it into Disorder before the Duke of *Somerset* could come to their Assistance; so that the Forces on both Sides falling in, a bloody Battle ensued, in which of the King's Party, the Duke of *Somerset*, the Earls of *Northumberland*, and *Stafford*, the Lord *Clifford*, and about five thousand more, were slain. The King himself was wounded in the Neck with an Arrow, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and Lord *Scales* in their Faces, and the Lord *Dorset* so desperately, that he was forced to be carried away in a Cart. And on the Duke's Side about six hundred were slain. The King's Army being at length all either slain or dispersed, the King fled to a poor thatch'd House not far off, thinking there to have conceal'd himself; but the Duke of *York* having notice of it, went with the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, and on their Knees humbly implored the King's Pardon, declaring, *That since the common Enemy was dead, they had no more to require.* Upon which the King required of them, *to take care that there were no more Hurt done, and to keep their Soldiers from killing and plundering his Subjects.* The Duke thereupon, in the King's Name, commanded a Cessation from farther Hostilities, and with great Shew of Reverence conveyed the King to *London*, where they kept the Feast of *Pentecost* together. This Battle

Battle
 in the
 A
 all
 the
 the
 abund
 was
 faith
 of the
 men
 voked
 Duke
 guilt
 Alba
 Some
 kept
 Know
 have
 these
 Thir
 Grou
 cord
 Prote
 Chan
 Calan
 was i
 and A
 all th
 ally
 nour
 was b
 ster,
 lege
 Th
 Regre
 to his
 mascu
 to eff
 Lords
 was e
 Duke
 all the
 Tende
 the C

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

495

Battle at St. *Albans* was fought on the 23^d Day of *May*, 35 Hen. VI. in the 35th Year of the King's Reign.

After *Whitsuntide*, a Parliament was called, in which all Things were decreed, according to the Minds of the Duke of *York* and his Adherents; to testify that the late Government had been unjust, and the King abused by his Counsellors; *Humphry* Duke of *Glocester*, was declared to have been loyal to the King, and faithful to his Country; that all Alienations and Gifts of the Crown, whether made by the King or Parliament, from the first Year of his Reign, should be revoked; that no Person should judge or report, that the Duke of *York*, Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, were guilty of Rebellion or Treason, for their Action at St. *Albans*, but all Blame was to be laid upon the Duke of *Somerset*, Baron *Thorpe*, and Esquire *Joseph*, who had kept a Letter sent by the Lords from the King's Knowledge, which if it had been delivered, would have taken away the Occasion of all Disorders. By these Votes and Acts they made Way for the main Thing they aimed at, which was a Triumvirate, for the Ground-Work of their designed Monarchy; and accordingly the Duke of *York* caused himself to be made Protector of the Realm, the Earl of *Salisbury* Lord Chancellor, and the Earl of *Warwick* Governor of *Calais*; so that all Authority, both civil and military, was in a Manner put into the Hands of these Lords, and *Henry* had only left him the Name of a King; for all that had a Dependence upon the King, were gradually removed from his Council, and all Places of Honour and Trust: And *John Holland*, Duke of *Exeter*, was by Force taken out of the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, and sent Prisoner to *Pontfract* Castle, a Sacrilege not ventured on before by any King.

The Queen beheld all these Transactions with great Regret, and sought all Means to reinstate the King in his Authority and Power; and being a Person of a masculine Spirit, was not afraid to undertake any Thing to effect it; and being sure of the Assistance of several Lords in her Design, as the Duke of *Somerset*, who was eager to revenge the Death of his Father, as the Duke of *Buckingham*, that of his Son and Heir. And all the Lords of the *Lancastrian* Faction, seeing the Tendency of the Duke of *York*'s Actions to be towards the Crown, thought it for their own Safety to join with the

Parliament
called.

1456.
The King
reassumes
his Power.

1456. the Queen, in pulling him down from his Usurpation; and to that End, they all met in a great Council at *Greenwich*, and came to this Resolution; That the King was no Child, and therefore needed no Tutor, but it being a Reproach to his Majesty to be governed at the Discretion of others, the Duke of *York* should be put out of the Protectorship, and the Earl of *Salisbury* deprived of his Chancellorship. Which the King being very easily persuaded to do, an express Order, under the King's Seal, was sent to them to resign their Offices. The Duke of *York* was amazed at this sudden Turn of Affairs; but did not dare to oppose it, lest he should be plainly guilty of Rebellion; so that he was forced to endure it, tho' with the great Dislike of his Adherents, who were not wanting to foment new Discontents among the People.

Two Prodigies appear in England.

In *November*, in the Isle of *Portland*, not far from *Weymouth* in *Dorsetshire*, was seen a Cock having great red Gills, and Legs half a Yard long, which stood upon the Sea, and crowed three Times, turning himself every Time a several Way, and nodding his Head towards the *North, South, and West*; he was parti-coloured like a Pheasant, and when he had so done, he vanished. A little after, there were taken at *Erithe*, within twelve Miles of *London*, four wonderful Fishes, viz. two Whales, one Sword-Fish, and a Fish called *Mors Morina*. These Prodigies were amazing to many Persons, and some ventured to prognosticate, that they were Fore-runners of Wars and Troubles in *England*, which afterwards happened.

The Duke of *York*, confirmed in his former Designs by this new Affront, retires from Court. In the mean Time, the *French* infest *England* by Sea, they surprised *Sandwich*, pillaged some Houses, took some Ships, and returned to *Normandy*: Nor were the *Scots* idle, they made Inroads into the North Parts, carrying away much Booty. *England* was in that Distraction by the Factions of the Nobility, that it was not in a Capacity to defend it self against foreign Enemies. The Queen being sensible the King could not be secure, but by the Ruin of the Duke of *York*, and Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, had contrived by Stratagem, to get them into her Power; but they having Notice of it, retired, the Duke to his Castle of *Wigmore* in the Marches of *Wales*, the Earl of *Salisbury* to his Castle of

1457. The Queen's Designs against the Duke of York

Middleham

Middleham
Calais
with
Kin
ings,
ed fro
and ca
of the
home
him, a
a Reco
Family
get the
vours
them,
promis
in this
fire.
of bot
York c
in Arr
tle; th
his Ho
Duke
in Tem
was lo
berland
teen hu
the Cu
were l
Godfrey
cestor
dred M
the Pre
After
to this
Salisbury
tions u
merset
the Du
Lord C
Liege
as well
Warwick
commo
Vor

Middleham in the North, and the Earl of *Warwick* to 37 Hen. VI.
Calais, where they kept a continual Correspondence one with another.

King *Henry* being displeased at the Queen's Proceedings, as being contrary to his pious Inclinations, returned from *Coventry* where he then resided, to *London*, and call'd a Council; where having stated the Condition of the Kingdom, he argued, that the late Divisions at home had encourag'd both French and Scots to assault him, and therefore it was necessary that there should be a Reconciliation, which, if the Failings of those of his own Family, were likely to obstruct, he for his Part would forget the Injuries done to himself, and would use his Endeavours that his Relations should come to an Agreement with them, who in the late Contests had shed their Blood; promising that the Duke of York and his Friends, should in this Affair have nothing to do but barely to ask and desire. Upon this, Persons were sent to the chief Men of both Parties to come to a Treaty. The Duke of York came to *London* attended with four hundred Men in Arms, and lodg'd at his House called *Baynard's Castle*; the Earl of *Salisbury* with five hundred lodg'd at his House called the *Harbour*; the Duke of *Exeter* and Duke of *Somerset* with eight hundred more, lodged within *Temple-Bar*; the Earl of *Warwick* with six hundred was lodged at *Gray-Friars*; and the Earl of *Northumberland* with the Lords *Egremont* and *Clifford* with fifteen hundred Men, were lodg'd in *Holbourn*; such was the Custom of that military Age. The King and Queen were lodged in the Bishop of *London's* Palace, and *Godfrey Boleign* the Mayor of *London*, who was Ancestor to *Anne*, Queen to *Henry VIII.* having five hundred Men in Readiness, rode daily round the City for the Preservation of the King's Peace.

After several Meetings, the contending Parties came to this Agreement; That the Duke of York, and Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, were to make particular Satisfaction upon Account of the Death of the Duke of *Somerset* and others slain in the Battle of *St. Albans*; and the Duke of *Somerset*, Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord *Clifford* slain at *St. Albans*, were declared true Liege Men to the King at the Day of their Deaths, as well as the Duke of York, Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*. Great Rejoycings were made for this Accommodation, and a solemn Procession made to the

The King
 proposes an
 Accommo-
 dation,

They come
 to an Agree-
 ment,

1458.

W Cathedral of *St. Paul's*, whither the King, adorn'd with his Crown and royal Robes, went in Person. Before him the Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Salisbury* walk'd in one Rank, the Duke of *Exeter* and Earl of *Warwick* in another; and so one of each Party, till they were all marshalled; and behind the King himself came the Queen, led by the Duke of *York*, with the utmost Significations of Satisfaction on both Sides.

The Earl of
Warwick in
Danger.

All Things being thus concluded, the Lords parted from the King and Queen, with all outward Signs of Friendship; and the Duke of *York* and Earl of *Salisbury* went to *York*; but the Earl of *Warwick* staid awhile at Court about the Business of *Calais*, and about *Whitsuntide* went over thither, and returned to *England* again about *Michaelmas*; and in the *November* following as the Earl sat in Council at *Westminster*, one of the King's Servants affronting one of the Earl's, they fell to Blows, and the Earl's Servant having sorely wounded the King's, fled to secure himself. The King's Guards and other of his menial Servants, in Revenge for the Injury of their Fellow-Servant, watching the Earl when he came from the Council to his Barge, suddenly set upon him and his Retinue, the Yeomen with Swords, and the Cooks and black Guards with Spits and Fire-Forks, and many of them were wounded on both Sides, and the Earl himself with great Difficulty escap'd to his Barge. The Queen immediately commanded the Earl to be committed to the Tower; but he being acquainted thereof, posted into *Yorkshire*, and acquainted the Duke of *York* and his Father the Earl of *Salisbury* with it. The *Yorkists* charg'd the Queen with all this as a Plot laid for the Earl's Life; and *Warwick*, being then Lord Admiral, hastned to *Calais*, taking with him all the King's Ships, that were in Readiness, and scouring the narrow Seas, met with five great *Spanish* and *Genoese* Carricks, of which he took three, and carried them into *Calais*, where he found the Freight to be worth ten thousand Pounds. Not long after this, the young Duke of *Somerset* was sent to be Governor of *Calais*; but *Warwick* refused to resign, and commanded several of the Attendants of the Duke of *Somerset* to be beheaded, and he himself was in Danger.

The civil
War begins
again.

Upon this, the Earl of *Salisbury* having consulted with the Duke of *York*, resolved with Sword in Hand to expostulate the Injury offered to his Son the Earl of

War-

War-
his C
Men.
now
active
the C
theref
all Si
as his
out E
hearin
Audley
Blore-
bloody
Lord
sand f
the Ch
was th
Lancas-
The
Victor
but eith
and the
the Ea
Shropsh-
wick at
Assistan
lais wi
select M
Torkists
sent ou
and in
marched
to *Wor-*
to offer
to accep
ler. U
advance
deliver
pression
and mig
&c. Bu
on upo
ledging
own De

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

499

Warwick at Westminster, and therefore set forward from his Castle at *Middleham* with four or five thousand Men. In the mean Time, the Queen being sensible that now either King *Henry* or the Duke of *York* must perish, actively bestirred her self to maintain the Possession of the Crown, and advance her own Son Prince *Edward*; therefore she endeavoured to strengthen her Interest on all Sides, and caused her Son to distribute Silver Swans as his Badge and Device, to many Gentlemen throughout *England*, and especially those of *Cheshire*. And hearing of the Earl of *Salisbury*'s Design, sent the Lord *Audley* with Forces to encounter him, which he did at *Blore-Heath* near *Mucklestone*; where, after a long and bloody Fight, the Earl of *Salisbury* got the Victory; the Lord *Audley* himself being slain, and with him two thousand four hundred Men, and the chief Loss fell upon the *Cheshire* Men, who wore the Prince's Badge. This was the second Battle fought between the Houses of *Lancaster* and *York*.

The Duke of *York* having receiv'd the News of this Victory, resolves no longer to conceal his Intentions, but either to get the Crown, or perish in the Attempt, and therefore marches to join his Forces with those of the Earl of *Salisbury*, sending to raise Forces in *Wales*, *Shropshire*, and other Counties, and to the Earl of *Warwick* at *Calais*, to bring what Troops he could to their Assistance, who immediately leaving his Charge of *Calais* with the valiant Captain *Trollop*, and a Troop of select Men, came to the general Rendezvous of the *Yorkists* at *Ludlow-Castle*. The King, in the mean Time, sent out Commissions into all Parts of the Kingdom, and in a small Time rais'd a considerable Army, and marched in Person, attended with many of the Nobility to *Worcester*; where, upon Consultation it was agreed to offer the Rebels a general Pardon, but they refused to accept it, calling it a *Staff of Reed*, or a *Glass Buckler*. Upon this, the King commanded his Standards to advance towards them; and in his March a Letter was deliver'd to him fill'd with the usual hypocritical Expressions, stiling him, *most Christian King, right high and mighty Prince, and our most dread Sovereign Lord*, &c. But the Letter made no Overture of any Condition upon which they would lay down their Arms; alleging *they were constrained to stand together in their own Defence, against such great Courtiers as design'd their*

^{38 Hen. VI.}

The Lords raise an Army.

The King raises an Army.

1459.

The King
offers them
Pardon.

They fly.

The Earl of
Warwick
keeps Calais.

Destruction, and that they only desired to make their Way to the King to redress Grievances. The King not being satisfied with this Letter, gave a second Order for his Army to march. And the Armies now being come in Sight of each other, the King caus'd Proclamation to be made, that whoever would abandon the Duke of York, should be received into Mercy, and have Pardon. Upon this, the brave Commander Trollop finding he had been impos'd upon, by the Duke and his Party, who while they pretended to act for the King's Interest, designed nothing less, abandoned the Duke's Camp at Midnight, and went over to the King with all his Men, and discover'd all the Duke's Counsels. Upon this the Duke was so discourag'd, that taking with him his younger Son the Earl of Rutland, he fled into Ireland and the Earls of Salisbury and Warwick with much Difficulty escaped to Calais. The News of their Flight being carried to the King's Camp, he sent out some Troops of Horse to pursue them, but they were gotten out of Reach. The private Soldiers were pardoned and sent home, but some of the most forward in the Rebellion were executed. The Town of Ludlow was plunder'd to the bare Walls, and the Dutcheſs of York and her two youngest Sons were taken in the Castle and confin'd. And then the King returned to Coventry, where a Parliament being assembled, they attainted the Duke of York, Earls of Salisbury, Warwick and Rutland, and many others, of High Treason, and their Estates were confiscated.

After the rising of the Parliament, the Duke of Somerset was sent over to take Possession of Calais with some Forces under the Lords Ross and Audley; but did not succeed; whereupon the Duke repair'd to Guisnes, a neighbouring Castle, where he daily disturb'd the Garrison of Calais, but rather to his Loss than Advantage; for the Lord Audley was taken by Warwick's Men, and carried into Calais, and the Lord Ross hardly escaped. Upon this, Letters were sent to foreign Courts, desiring that no Relief might be given to the Traitors at Calais, who held it against the King's Will, and at home, all Persons were forbid to transport any Provisions to that Place. The Duke of York now being in Possession of Ireland, the Earl of Warwick wanted to consult him about the Measures to be taken; and hearing that some of the King's Ships lay at Sandwich, in Order to trans-

port

port S
Guine
Forces
took t
seized
Provisi
Earl of
The D
to inter
desertin
The
both th
over co
Artifice
Minds
tioned
Excepti
blessed
When
of Shre
Beaumo
tainders
try. T
Injuries
Justice,
Corrupt
selves a
and Loy
their spe
quiring
always t
Sovereig
nence, a
which u
his Subj
ry, and
By th
only on
Canterbu
spake; a
the Cro
Faith an
Lord Fa
tions of
and Sali

port Succors and Supplies to the Duke of Somerset at ^{38 Hen. VI.} *Guisnes*, he sent Sir *John Denham* with some Ships and Forces, who having surpris'd the Town in the Night, took the Lord *Rivers* and his Son in their Beds, seized on the King's Ships, furnished with all warlike Provisions, and carried them to *Calais*. With these the Earl of *Warwick* sail'd to the Duke of *York* in *Ireland*. The Duke of *Exeter* was made Admiral, with Orders to intercept him in his Passage, but many of his Men deserting him, he durst not attack him.

The King having been thus disappointed in gaining both the Town of *Calais* and the Earl, the *Yorkists* sent over certain Articles into *Kent*, in which, with much Artifice and Subtilty they endeavour'd to prepossess the Minds of the People in their Favour. When they mention'd the Person of the King, they freed him from all Exceptions, as *being of as noble, virtuous, righteous, and blessed a Disposition as any earthly Prince whatever*. When they mention their Enemies, they name the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, the Earl of *Wiltshire*, and the Lord *Beaumont*, as the principal Persons concern'd in the Attainders of the Partizans of the Duke of *York* at *Coven-*
try. Their Complaints were, of *general Enormities, Injuries done to the Church, and the ill Administration of Justice, Abuse of Purveyors, the King's Poverty by the Corruption of his Officers, &c.* Where they spoke of themselves and their Pretensions, they profess'd all Sincerity and Loyalty to King Henry. In the Conclusion of these their specious Pretences, they us'd these Words; *Re-*
quiring you on God's Behalf, therein to assist us, doing always the Duty of Liege Men in our Persons to our said Sovereign Lord, to his Estate, Prerogative and Preheminence, and to the Security of his most noble Person, to which we have ever been, and will be as true as any of his Subjects alive; whereof we call God, our Lady Ma-
ry, and all the Saints in Heaven to witness.

By these treacherous Proceedings they prevail'd not only on the unthinking People, but the Archbishop of *Canterbury* himself to believe, they designed as they spake; and the Earl of *Warwick* took an Oath upon the Cross at *Canterbury*, that they had ever born true Faith and Allegiance to King Henry. After this, the Lord *Fauconbridge* was sent over to sound the Inclinations of the People, and the Earls of *March, Warwick, and Salisbury* landed soon after in *Kent*.

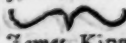
1460.
The Third
Battle at
Northampton.

The King
defeated and
taken Prisoner.

The King, before their Arrival, not trusting to the Fidelity of the Citizens, had quitted *London*, and retired to *Northampton*, where he had got together a considerable Army, to which the Dukes of *Somerset* and *Buckingham* came from *Guines*, who were no sooner arriv'd, but they heard of the Approach of the Lords Army; therefore passing the River, they went and encamped in the neighbouring Fields. The Bishop of *Salisbury* was sent to the King, to request him to admit the Earl of *Warwick* into his Presence, in Order to accommodate Matters; but this being denied, the Earl of *March* resolv'd to set upon the King's Army without Delay, and in the Night remov'd his Camp nigh *Northampton*, marching in Order of Battle. About two of the Clock in the Afternoon the next Day, the two Armies met; and the Earls of *March* and *Warwick* having given a strict Charge to the Soldiers, that they should none of them lay Hands on the King, nor the common People, but the Nobles and Gentlemen only, the Battle began and lasted for five Hours, with great Fierceness on both Sides; but at Length by the Treachery of the Lord *Grey*, who went over to the Enemy with a good Party, the King's Side was vanquished with the Loss of ten thousand, partly drowned and partly slain, among which were the Duke of *Buckingham*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, Lord *Egremont*, Viscount *Beaumont* and others. The Duke of *Somerset* narrowly escaped, and with the Queen, and Prince *Edward*, fled into the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and so got into *Scotland*. Many were taken Prisoners; the King himself who remained in his Tent during the Battle, being left alone, fell into his Enemies Hands: But the Earls of *March* and *Warwick* assuring him, that they sought the Welfare of his Person and Happiness of the Realm, in destroying their malicious Enemies, he was much comforted; and being carried to *Northampton*, and from thence to *London*, was lodged in the Bishop's Palace. The Victors being arrived at *London*, inflicted such Punishments on those of the King's Party as they thought convenient, fining and imprisoning some, and beheading others.

In the mean Time *James II.* King of *Scotland*, partly in Favour of King *Henry*, laid Siege to *Roxborough* Castle then in Possession of King *Henry's* Enemies; where going into the Trenches to see the *Lion*, a famous Piece of Ordnance and other Artillery discharged,

ged,
the
Years
Charl
Nobi
Perfo
take
Physic
from
eat, b
Meat
ger, l
The
ruling
vigoro
call a
follow
to *Ire*
their S
land.
into *L*
pets so
ried be
Kings
before
ked.
The
came,
into th
placed
upon t
of the
a whil
stedfast
Count
Action
King *A*
having
came t
be won
tion w
a Passio
dom to
contrar
Henry

ged, one of them burst, and with a Shiver of it flew 39 Hen. VI.
the King. And James the III^d. a Child of seven 
Years of Age succeeded his Father. Soon after died *James King
of Scotland,
and Charles
King of
France die.*
Charles King of *France*, who being sick, some of his
Nobility put an Imagination into his Head, that some
Persons designed to poison him, upon which he would
take no Sustenance for several Days; and when his
Physicians told him, that his Weakness proceeded not
from Sicknes, but Want of Meat, he endeavoured to
eat, but could not; for the Channels thro' which the
Meat passed were closed up, so that he died with Hun-
ger, leaving his Kingdom to his Son *Lewis XI.*

The Lords having the King now in their Power, and
ruling all Things almost at their Pleasure, proceeded
vigorously in the Execution of their Designs; and first
call a Parliament to meet at *Westminster*, October the 8th
following, but in the King's Name, and then send in-
to *Ireland* to the Duke of *Tork* to acquaint him with
their Success, and invite him to come forthwith to Eng-
land. Which accordingly he did, and made his Entry *The Duke
of Tork's En-
try into Lon-
don.*
into *London* with numerous Troops of Men and Trum-
pets sounding before him, causing the Sword to be car-
ried before him, as it was customary to be done before
Kings, only with this Difference, that as it was carried
before Kings sheath'd, it was carried before him na-
ked.

The Parliament was met two Days before the Duke *His Behavi-
our in the
House of
Lords.*
came, who having passed thro' the City, went directly
into the upper House, or Chamber of the Peers, and
placed himself in the King's Seat, laying his Hands
upon the Cloth of State, as if he had taken Possession
of the Crown and Kingdom. When he had stood so
a while, he turned himself to the Lords, and look'd
stedfastly upon them, as tho' he would read in their
Countenances their Thoughts and Resentments of that
Action. After he had stood a while in that Posture,
King *Henry*, who was then in the Queen's Lodgings,
having sent the Archbishop of *Canterbury* to him, he
came to him with much Reverence, and asked him, *if
he would not go see the King.* The Duke at this Ques-
tion was observed to change his Colour, and then in
a Passion answered him, *that he knew none in this King-
dom to whom he owed that Duty or Honour; but on the
contrary, all Men owed it to him, and therefore King
Henry ought to come to him.*

1460.
He claims
the Crown
of England.

The Archbishop having received this Reply, went back to the King to let him know it; which the Duke of York perceiving, he rose up hastily, and following him into the Palace, got Possession of the King's Lodgings, breaking open several Locks and Doors to enter them. And having staid there a little while, he return'd to the House of Lords again, leaving his Servants and Attendants to keep Possession for him; and being again settled in the royal Throne, he boldly made his Demand of the Crown and regal Authority of England, notwithstanding his solemn Oaths and Engagements to the contrary. Most of the House stood amazed, and the Duke observing their Astonishment and Silence, deferred the deposing King Henry and his own Coronation till he had sent them his Pedigree and Claim in Writing, that they might better consider of it, pretending at the same Time to submit to their Determination.

The Substance of the
Duke of
York's Claim.

The Duke of York's Claim was in Words to this Effect, "That he approached that Throne, as the Place to him in Justice belonging, not as requiring their Favour, but friendly Indifferency, and true Administration of Justice; for the high and mighty Prince Richard II. Son of Edward the black Prince, eldest Son of King Edward III. was the true and undoubted Heir of these Realms, and was in Possession of the regal Dignity, till Henry Earl of Derby and Duke of Lancaster and Hereford, Son of John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster, by Force and Violence, contrary to the Duty of his Allegiance, raised War against the said King Richard, imprisoned him, and intruded upon and usurped the royal Power, and after compass'd his Death and Destruction; upon whose Decease, having no Heirs, the Right and Title of the Crown and Superiority of this Realm lawfully reverted and returned to Roger Mortimer Earl of March, Son and Heir to the Lady Philippa, only Child of Lionel Duke of Clarence, and Roger's eldest Daughter Ann, being Mother to him the said Duke of York, he was the true and lawful Heir, and had an undoubted Right to the Crown," saying, *If my Title be good, why am I kept from it? If my Claim be good, why have I not Justice? For Men of Knowledge must own that usurped Possession, tho' strengthened with a Lineal Descent, can nothing prevail, if Claim be lawfully made and openly published by the right Heirs as it had been by*

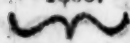
Ed-

Edmund
York
and
it, so
Right,
a Succ
undone
and do
Kind o
tion,
Henry
thirty
confir
that th
The D
put hi
with h
scarce
ing not
to con
do wh
departe
was thu
of Lon
a Crow
adorn a
withou
upon th
upon a
did beto
have a
ons in
After
the Du
of Maj
King H
could b
Conclu
was sub
was sup
Dispute
about th
sion; th
King fo

Edmund Earl of March my Uncle, and Richard Duke of York my Father, and my self: But thro' sinister Counsel and unjust Detention, I neither could obtain nor recover it, so that I am forced to make Use of Force to regain my Right, and settle the Peace of the Realm, which thro' a Succession of Usurpers hath been miserably ruined and undone, especially in this last Reign; and therefore I have and do now take Possession of the royal Throne. This Kind of Speech struck all the Auditors with Consternation, and the Lords themselves sat mute; for King Henry's Piety and a Succession in the third Degree and thirty eight Years Possession of the Crown had so far confirmed most of them in the Opinion of his Right, that they were loth to be instrumental in deposing him. The Duke of York, whose Eagerness to be a King had put him under Expectation of a ready Compliance with his Desires, was much disappointed when he saw scarce any Man seconding him in his Pretensions; but being not willing to seem much displeas'd, he desired them to consider throughly of what he had said to them, and do what in Justice and Wisdom seem'd right, and so departed to his Lodgings at Whitehall. While the Duke was thus declaring and shewing his Title in the House of Lords, it happened that in the House of Commons a Crown which hung up in the middle of the Roof to adorn a Branch set up for Lights, fell down suddenly without any imaginable Cause, and also another Crown upon the Top of Dover-Castle; which were both look'd upon at this Juncture, as ominous Accidents, which did betoken that the Crown should some Way or other have a Fall, and that there would be sudden Alterations in the Government.

After this, frequent Consultations were held about the Duke's Pretensions, who taking upon him a Kind of Majesty, kept in the King's Lodgings, and tho' near King Henry, would not, by all the Persuasions that could be us'd, condescend to visit the King till some Conclusion was come to in the Matter, saying, *that he was subject to no Man, but God only, under whom none was supreme in this Realm, but he.* After many hot Disputes had passed between the Lords and Commons about this Affair, at Length they came to this Conclusion; that forasmuch as Henry had been acknowledged King for the Space of thirty eight Years and more, he should

The Duke's Pretensions debated, and the Settlement of the Crown agreed on.

1460.  should enjoy that Name and Title and Possession of the Kingdom during his natural Life; and if he either died or resigned, or forfeited the same, by breaking or violating any Point of this Contract, then the said Crown and Dignity should be immediately devolved upon the Duke of York and the Heirs of his Body lawfully begotten, excluding all those of King Henry.

A Procession
to thank God
for this A-
greement.

This Agreement being drawn up in Form, was sealed and sworn to by King Henry and the Duke of York, as likewise all enacted in this Parliament. For Joy of which, the King accompanied with the Duke, attended with the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Warwick*, and other Nobility, on *All Saints* Day, rode in solemn Procession to the Cathedral of *St. Paul's*, with the Crown upon his Head to give Thanks for that Accommodation. The next Day the Duke of York was by Sound of Trumpet solemnly declared Heir apparent to the Crown of *England*, and Protector of the Nation during the King's Life.

The Duke of
York causes
the King to
send for the
Queen.

And now the Duke of York's Power began; and he knowing the Queen to be a Woman of a masculine Spirit, who would make all the Opposition she could to this Settlement, therefore he instigated King Henry to send for her, and Prince *Edward* his Son. But by that Time the Messengers were arrived, the Queen was got at the Head of an Army of eighteen thousand well disciplin'd Men, under the Command of the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Somerset*, and Earls of *Devonshire*, *Northumberland*, and other Lords, and therefore refus'd to go along with them. The Duke of York missing his expected Prey, left the King at *London* with the Duke of *Norfolk* and Earl of *Warwick*, and taking with him his young Son the Earl of *Rutland*, the Earl of *Salisbury* and five thousand Men, he marched towards *Wakefield* in *Yorkshire*, to pursue the Queen and her Son, sending Orders to the Earl of *March* to follow him with all his Forces. On *Christmas* Eve the Duke took up his Quarters in *Sandal-Castle* in View of *Wakefield*, waiting for the Encrease of his Army. The Queen and Lords of her Party having Notice of this, thought it best to fight before his Army was reinforced, and to that End advanced with their Army. When they drew near, and the Duke found that the Queen's Forces were much superior to his, the Earl of *Salisbury* advised him

The fourth
Battle at
Wakefield.

him
shou
fore
the
der
Brav
Cast
her
cam
diate
Amb
on e
was
thou
of S
many
and
Dist
ill S
him,
Dagg
Yout
with
The
who
be sho
viol
serve
ger in
the d
and h
Head
the se
City o
Prison
Peopl
sent t
Th
ty thr
when
solved
ing to
broke
were
on a

him to keep within the Walls till the Earl of *March*^{39 Hen. VI.} should join him. The Queen and her Army came before the Castle, and having laid two Ambushes, Part of the Army presented themselves before *Sandal*, in Order to provoke the Duke to Fight, who fir'd with this Bravado, and counting it a Shame to be shut up in a Castle by a Woman, resolv'd to venture out and give her Battle; so marching down the Hill in good Order, he came into the open Field, to his Enemies, who immediately joined Battle. Soon after the Battle began, the Ambushes rose, and encompassed the Duke and his Men on every Side; so that within half an Hour he himself was slain, and his whole Army utterly defeated, two thousand eight hundred of them being kill'd, the Earl of *Salisbury* being wounded and taken Prisoner, and many other Persons of Note. The Duke's Chaplain and Tutor to the Earl of *Rutland*, who stood at some Distance to see the Event of the Battle, perceiving the ill Success of it, fled with the young Earl to secure him, but was overtaken by the Lord *Clifford*, who with a Dagger in his Hand, demanded who he was. The poor Youth, a Gentleman of about twelve Years of Age, with Tears beg'd Mercy of him upon his Knees. The Chaplain thinking by that Means to save him, told who he was, promising *that if he would save his Life, he should spend it in his Service.* But *Clifford* swore violently, that as his Father had slain his, so would he serve him and all his Progeny, and then struck his Dagger into his Heart; after which he went away to find the dead Body of his Father, whose Head he cut off, and having made a Crown of Paper, and set it on his Head in Derision, he presented it to the Queen, and she sent it to be set upon a Pole over the Gate of the City of *York*. The Earl of *Salisbury* who was sent a Prisoner to *Pontfract*-Castle, being hated by the common People, was pulled out of it and beheaded, and his Head sent to *York* to be set up upon a Gate there.

The Earl of *March* having raised an Army of twenty three thousand Men in *Wales* was then at *Glocester* when he heard the News of his Father's Death, and resolved to march against the Queen, who was then marching towards *London*; but hearing that the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Ormond*, with a great Army of *Welsh* and *Irish* were pursuing him, he marched back to fight them, and on a large Plain by *Mortimer's-Cross* near *Ludlow*,

The fifth Battle at Mortimer's Cross.

1461.

met them, and on *Candlemas-Day* engaged them. It is reported, that on that Morning, the Sun at his rising appeared to the Earl of *March* like three Suns, and suddenly running into one, gave him (as he guess'd) an Omen of Victory. The two Armies join'd Battle, and after a sharp Conflict the Queen's Forces were put to Flight, with the Slaughter of three thousand eight hundred Men, the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Wiltshire* saving themselves by Flight; and, many Gentlemen of Note were taken, and as a Sacrifice to the Duke of *Tork's* Ghost were beheaded at *Hereford*, among the rest Sir *Owen Tudor*, Husband to King *Henry* the Vth's Queen.

The sixth
Battle at St.
Albans.

The Queen who was marching towards *London* with her Northern Rabble, who after they had passed the River *Trent*, plunder'd the Villages and Towns, as if that River was the utmost Bounds of their good Behaviour, heard of the Discomfiture of her Friends; yet elevated with her former Victory, held on her March, and being come near *St. Albans*, heard the News that the Earl of *Warwick* and Lords were coming against her with a numerous Army, raised by the King's Authority, with the King at the Head of them. The Lords who were with the Queen advis'd her to march thro' *St. Albans*, and meet their Enemies on the other Side of the Town; but the Earl of *Warwick* having ranged his Archers in the middle of it, they were forced to take another Way, and so the two Armies met upon *Barnard-Heath*, on the North-Side of *St. Albans*. The Battle was fierce, and the Victory dubious for some Time; but at length by the Treachery of *Lovelace*, who kept back the main Body of the King's Army from coming in to their Assistance, they being overpowered, were forced to fly; and the Queen's Side gaining the Victory with the Slaughter of two thousand three hundred Men obtain'd the King into their Power, with the Lord *Bonville* and Sir *Thomas Kiriell*; who upon the King's Promise of Safety to them, staid with his Majesty, but to their Cost; for when the Queen heard that the Commons had beheaded Judge *Thorpe* at *Highgate*, she cut off both their Heads.

The King
and Queen
return
Thanks for
the Victory.

After this Battle, the King and Queen, and Prince *Edward*, now about eight Years old, and the Northern Lords, went to the Abby Church, and gave Thanks to God for this Victory, and then the King at the Queen's Request, knighted the Prince with thirty others, who had

had fig
being c
ings in
Confus
facked
Abbot,
their L
but the
the Spo
nued th

Whi
in War
Mayor
having
the co
Gates,
their T
obedien
lent Tr
plunder
the Car
back,
Alderm
resent i
Bishops,
some o
Men ar
pease th
dermen
duct the
the Que

But v
Queen r
vanquish
joined v
London
Queen,
Northern
Earl of
ched dir
with the
the 28th.
try of th
ing grea
2^d of M

had signalized their Courage in fighting for her; which being done, the King and Queen went to their Lodgings in the Abby. But the Town of *St. Albans* was in Confusion; for the Northern Men plundered and ransacked the Houses without Mercy: Whereupon the Abbot, and Inhabitants petitioned the King to restrain their Licentiousness, and a Proclamation was put out; but they replied, *That it was their Bargain to have all the Spoil of every Place beyond the Trent*, and so continued their pillaging.

39 Hen. VI.



While the Queen lay at *St. Albans*, the Army being in Want of Provisions, she sent Orders to the Lord Mayor of *London* to send her some; accordingly he having filled several Carts, was sending it to her, but the common People stopped the Carts at the City Gates, saying, *They would not feed them, that would cut their Throats, and rob them of all they had.* This Disobedience grew more obstinate, by Reason of an insolent Troop of Horse, who came from *St. Albans*, to plunder the Suburbs, who coming to *Cripplegate*, where the Carts were, attempted to enter, but were beaten back, and three of them slain. The Mayor and Aldermen thinking, that the Queen would rigorously resent it, sent the Recorder of the City, with some Bishops, and others, to excuse it, persuading her that some of the Lords might be sent with four hundred Men armed, who riding about the Streets, might appease the Tumult; and promising that Part of the Aldermen should come to meet her at *Barnet*, and conduct the King and her peaceably into the City; which the Queen did, and was pacified for the Disappointment.

The Queen sends to the Mayor of London for Provisions.

But while these Things were thus carrying on, the Queen received News, that the Earl of *March* who had vanquished the Earls of *Ormond* and *Pembroke*, being joined with the Earl of *Warwick*, was coming towards *London* with a mighty Army. This so terrified the Queen, that she withdrew from *St. Albans*, into the Northern Parts where she had most Friends. The Earl of *March* hearing of the Queen's Retreat, marched directly towards *London*, and was there received with the universal Joy of the People, upon *February* the 28th. His coming to *London* being known, the Gentry of the South and East Parts flocked to him, bringing great Numbers to his Assistance. On *Sunday* the 2^d of *March*, the Earl of *Warwick* mustered all his Army

The Earl of March enters London.

1461.

Army in St. John's Fields, in the midst of Throngs of People, whom having drawn into a Ring round him, he read aloud to them the Agreement of the last Parliament, and then demanded, *Whether they would have King Henry, who had violated that Agreement, to reign over them?* They all cried, *no, no.* Then he asked them, *Whether they would have the Earl of March, who according to the same Agreement ought to be King, to reign over them?* They unanimously cried out, *yea, yea.* Upon which some Commanders, and others of the City repaired to the Earl of March at Baynard's Castle; where a Council being held, they at length concluded, that King Henry should be deposed, and the Earl of March made King. The Earl at first seemed to excuse himself, as being young and insufficient for so great a Charge; but being persuaded by the Archbishop of Canterbury, Bishops of London and Exeter, and Earl of Warwick he consented, and took upon him the Name and Title of King of England. The next Day he went in Procession to St. Paul's, and after *Te Deum* had been sung, was in great State conducted to Westminster, and there seated in the great Hall with St. Edward's Scepter in his Hand. Where being thronged with Multitudes of Spectators, it was again asked them, *Whether they would have the Earl of March for their King, and serve, love, honour, and obey him, as their sovereign Lord?* They all joyfully answered, *yea, yea.* Then he took the Homage of the Nobility there present, and afterwards was conducted by them to the Abby; where having sat in the Quire till *Te Deum* was sung, he went unto St. Edward's Shrine, and made his Offerings according to Custom, and then returned by Water to the Bishop of London's Palace, and the next Day was proclaimed King of England, by the Name of Edward IV.

He is proclaimed King.

The End of King Henry's Reign, and his Character.

Thus ended the Reign of King Henry VI. of whom it is observed, that none ever came to be King so soon after his Birth, nor ceased to be King so long before his Death; for he was but eight Months old when he was made King, reigned thirty eight Years, six Months, and three Days, and lived twelve Years after he was deposed. His Person was comely, and well-proportioned, and his Mind adorned with Virtues sufficient to make a Saint. No King ever shewed more Devotion than himself; On great holy Days, he used to wear

Sack.

The Reign of King HENRY VI.

511

Sackcloth next his Skin ; so free from Swearing, that ^{39 Hen. VI.} he never used any Asseveration, but *forsooth* and *verily*. So modest, that when in a Mask, some Ladies appeared with their Breasts bare, he immediately exclaimed against it. So merciful, that when he saw the Quarters of a Traitor over *Cripple-gate*, he caused them to be taken down, declaring, *He would have no Christian so cruelly treated for his Sake*. So innocent, that his Confessor declared, *That for ten Years space, he never found any Thing he had said or done, for which he might justly enjoin him Penance*. He had one Immunity peculiar to himself, that no Man could ever be revenged on him, because he never offered any Man an Injury ; and was so patient, that to one who struck him, when he was taken Prisoner, he only said, *You wrong your self more than me, to strike the Lord's Anointed*. But tho he was a Prince of such Piety and Virtue, yet he was always unfortunate ; for whatsoever Side he was of, the Victory always went against him. He had no Genius for Government, but was a great Lover of Charity and good Works ; he founded two famous Colleges, the one at *Cambridge*, called *King's College*, the glorious Chapel of which shews of what wonderful Magnificence the whole would have been, had the Founder reigned to finish it ; the other at *Eaton* near *Windsor*, to the Maintenance of which he gave three thousand four hundred Pounds *per Annum* ; and had he been guided by a good Council, he might have been as good a King as ever *England* had, but being governed by the Queen, and her Favourites, who were envied by a proud Nobility, this brought great Miseries upon the Nation. His Fall was much pitied, because as to his Person undeserv'd ; but it was judged better for the common Good, that one should suffer, rather than the whole Nation perish.



The



The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

1461. **N**OW begins the History of the second great Branch of the *Plantagenets*, that sat upon the *English* Throne. The Reign of which began the 4th of *March* 1461, in King *Edward IV*, who was then about twenty Years of Age, in the Prime of his Youth and Beauty, which with the Charms of his Behaviour, rendred him the Object of the People's Affections. Yet great Numbers were still in the Interest of King *Henry*, who was now with his Queen, raising a powerful Army in the *North*: And King *Edward's* Jealousie gave him Cause to suspect, that there were not a few in King *Henry's* Interest in *London* it self; of which one *Walker* a Grocer was an unhappy Proof, who was beheaded in *Smithfield*, for saying, *That he would make his Son Heir to the Crown*, meaning the Sign of the Crown in *Cheapside*. This severe Beginning caused many to think, they had injured themselves in wronging King *Henry*; which Opinion was the more confirmed, by King *Edward's* retaining a large Sum of Money borrowed of the *Staplers Merchants*, the Restitution of which he utterly denied, with an angry Command, that they should no more demand it of him.

King Edward's severe Beginning.

The Queen in the North had gotten together an Army of sixty thousand Men, which King *Edward* hearing, he with a complete Army set out from *London*, the 12th of *March*, attended with his two Brothers, and many other Noblemen. And marching towards *Pontefract* in *Yorkshire*, he appointed the Lord *Fitzwater* to keep the Passage of *Ferribridge*. King *Henry's* Army was commanded by the Duke of *Somerset*, the Earl of *Northumberland*, and the Lord *Clifford*, whose Fathers had been slain at the first Battle of *St. Albans*; among whom it was resolved, that *Ferribridge* was by Reason of the Consequence of the Place to be recovered at any Hazard. Accordingly the Lord *Clifford*, suddenly attacked the Party, and defeated them, killing the Lords
Fitz-

Queen Margaret raises an Army.



KING EDWARD THE IV.TH



Fitzwa
Noife
Warw
killing
have m
Beginn
let him
of his
me, fa
got ov
ribridg
ty; bu
and pu
Heat i
throug
he diec
The
ing the
Field o
the Fig
ward's
diately
endeav
who sh
manful
Morni
King
sand, c
made a
was c
charge
Flight
by whi
Stratag
North
and ha
Blows
of the
ned to
stickin
and p
the So
the fa
in thei
Earl
Vo

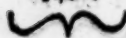
Fitzwater, Bastard of Salisbury, and many others. The Noise of this Defeat coming to the Ears of the Earl of Warwick, he posted in all Haste to King Edward, and killing his Horse in his Presence, cried out, Sir, God have mercy upon their Souls, who for Love of you in the Beginning of your Enterprize, have lost their Lives; yet let him fly who will fly, by this Cross, (kissing the Hilt of his Sword) I will stand by him, who will stand by me, fall Back, fall Edge. The Lord Falconbridge soon got over the River at Castleford, three Miles from Ferrisburgh, designing to surround the Lord Clifford's Party; but he perceiving the Design, sought to avoid it; and putting off his Gorget, but whether for Haste or Heat is uncertain, an Arrow without a Head pierced through his Throat, and stuck in his Neck, of which he died.

The next Day being *Palm-Sunday*, early in the Morning the two Armies came in sight of each other. The Field of Battle was betwixt *Gaxton* and *Towton*: Before the Fight began, Proclamation was made in King Edward's Camp, *That whoever feared to fight might immediately depart, but if any Soldier that remained should endeavour to fly, he should be slain by his next Fellow, who should receive double Pay; and whoever should fight manfully, should be well rewarded.* About nine in the Morning both Armies drew near, sixty thousand for King Henry, and for King Edward scarce forty thousand, only the Presence and Courage of King Edward made an Equality. The Lord Falconbridge, to whom was committed the Van of King Edward's Army, charged his Archers, as soon as they had shot their first Flight, to fall three Steps back, and make a Stand, by which they might avoid the Enemies Arrows; which Stratagem succeeded according to Expectation; for the Northern Men with a sudden Fury answered the Onset, and having emptied their Quivers, hastened to hand Blows; but the Arrows they had discharged, by Reason of the Fog, having not reached their Adversaries, turned to their Annoyance; for the Splinters of them sticking in the Ground, pierced and galled their Feet, and put them to a confused Stop. In this Trouble the Southern Men shot another Flight, and the Wind at the same Time blowing a Shower of Snow and Hail in their Faces, the Vanguard of King Henry, led by the Earl of Northumberland and Andrew Trollop, gave back,

Ed. IV.

The seventh Battle between the Houses of Lancaster and York.

1461.



King Edward's Forces prevail.

back. Yet did not the main Battle stir with this Motion; but as if the Enemy had gained no Advantage, continued with the first Constancy.

Victory hung in Suspence for ten Hours together, but at length, after a piteous Slaughter of a great many eminent Men, as the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland*, the Lords *Beaumont*, *D'Acres*, *Gray*, *Scales*, *Wells*, and many other great Commanders, the Northern Men began to fly. The Dukes of *Somerset* and *Exeter*, seeing all Things desperate, the greatest Part of the Army slain, the rest broken and flying, posted to *York*, to carry the fatal News of this Overthrow to King *Henry*, whose Virtue yet had a Patience greater than his Ruin. In no Battle since the *Norman* Conquest was ever poured forth so much *English* Blood; so that the Fields were not only drench'd with Blood, but the Rivers ran red for a great Distance: For in this and the two preceding Days, were slain thirty six thousand seven hundred seventy six Persons, all of one Nation, many near in Alliance, some in Blood fatally divided by Faction, yet all animated by the same Zeal, to maintain their Prince's Right; which being so difficult to resolve, doubtless made the Quarrel on either Side, how ruinous soever to their Families, not unsafe to their Consciences.

King Henry flies into Scotland.

King *Henry*, seeing his Affairs desperate in *England*, fled with his Queen, young Son, and the Remains of his Army to *Berwick*, and leaving the Duke of *Somerset* in that Place, went into *Scotland*, where he was kindly received, and a Pension allowed him by the King of *Scots*; who affianced the Princess *Margaret* his Sister to Prince *Edward* King *Henry's* Son, and he in Requital delivered up the Town of *Berwick* to *James* King of *Scotland*. King *Edward* after the Victory rode to *York*, from whence King *Henry* was fled, where he was received with great Marks of Esteem; and first he caused the Heads of his Father, the Earl of *Salisbury*, and other of his Friends to be taken down, and then the Earl of *Devonshire* and others to be beheaded, and their Heads set in the same Places. Queen *Margaret* with her Son went to *France*, to her Father the Duke of *Anjou*.

King Edward returns to London, and is crowned.

In the Interim, King *Edward* with as glorious Triumph, and large Joy as a Victory could beget, which brought no less to him than absolute Sovereignty, march-

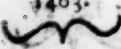
ed to
was r
and o
ty cro
of So
imme
Title
and hi
Enem
his F
had r
Duke
Lord
Earl o
making
nism
ford,
and W
Trial,
Affi
Insult
of *Eng*
ten the
first la
and af
it retur
Confer
to unc
Englis
haps h
those
sention
reign S
this, th
took
whose
tory, t
of thei
mised t
The
her Spi
Revolt
tions t
Husban
French

ed towards London, by the Inhabitants whereof he ^{1 Ed. IV.} was received with great Splendor and Magnificence, and on the 29th Day of June was with great Solempnity crowned at *Westminster*: And that no Circumstance of Sovereignty might be wanting, a Parliament was immediately called to meet in November; by which his Title to the Crown might be confirmed, King Henry and his Son disinherited, his Friends rewarded, and his Enemies punished. Which being effected, he conferred his Favours on those Persons that Blood or Service had rendred dear to him; created his Brother George Duke of *Clarence*, and Richard Duke of *Glocester*, the Lord *Nevill* Viscount *Montague*, Henry *Bourchier* Earl of *Essex*, and the Lord *Falconbridge* Earl of *Kent*; making others Barons and Knights. And several Punishments concluded the Session, the Earl of *Oxford*, his Son, Sir *John Tiddenham*, *William Tyrrel*, and *Walter Montgomery*, Esquires, being, without any Trial, condemn'd of Treason, and beheaded.

Affairs thus happily settled at Home, to check the ^{1462.} Insults of Foreign Neighbours, the new created Earls ^{King Ed-} of *Essex* and *Kent*, and Lord *Audley*, were sent with ^{ward's At-} ten thousand Soldiers to scour the narrow Seas; who ^{chievements} by Sea, first landing in *Bretagne*, took the Town of *Conquet*, and after invaded the Isle of *Ree*, and having pillaged it returned Home. By this Enterprize, tho' of no great Consequence in it self, King *Edward* made the *French* to understand, how dangerous it was to provoke the *English*, governed by an active Prince, who might perhaps hereafter appear in Person, for the Recovery of those Provinces in *France*, which nothing but our Dissentions could have lost; and likewise terrify'd all Foreign States from adhering to King *Henry*. Soon after this, the Duke of *Somerset* and Sir *Ralph Piercy* forsook King *Henry*, and submitted to King *Edward*; whose Submission being to him as welcome as a Victory, they were presently restored to the full Possession of their Honours and Estates, and the same Grace promised to any that should return to their Allegiance.

The indefatigable Queen did not lose any Thing of ^{1463.} her Spirit and Endeavour, by her late Discomfiture and ^{Queen Mar-} Revolt of her chief Adherents, but tried all Na- ^{garet's At-} tions to gain Succours towards the Restitution of her ^{tempts for} Husband; at length having obtained five hundred ^{King Hen-} *Frenchmen*, she passed over with them into *Scotland*, ^{ry's Re-} and

1463.



The eighth
Battle at
Hexham.

and from thence was sailing into *England*; but meeting with a violent Storm, was obliged in a small Vessel to put into *Berwick*; her *French* Forces were driven into *Holy Island*, where many were slain by King *Edward's* Forces, and four hundred put to their Ransoms. Yet this did not daunt the Queen's Courage, whose chief Hopes were founded on the *Scots*; so leaving her Son *Edward* in *Berwick*, she with the King her Husband, and a *Scotch* Army, entred *Northumberland*, and having won *Bambury Castle*, marched into the Bishoprick of *Durham*, their Forces daily encreasing. Upon this the Duke of *Somerset*, Sir *Ralph Piercy*, and others, revolted from King *Edward* to King *Henry*.

These new Commotions coming to King *Edward's* Ears, he made Preparations both by Land and Sea, and sent the new Viscount *Montague*, who having gathered some Forces in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and received others from King *Edward*, then at *York*, marched directly against King *Henry*. By the Way the Lords *Ross* and *Hungerford*, and Sir *Ralph Piercy*, met him to hinder his March; but perceiving the good Order and Courage of *Montague's* Army, they all fled but the valiant *Piercy*, who disdaining to secure his Life with the Loss of his Honour, fought it out with his Regiment, till he and his were all cut to Pieces, he himself crying out when dying, *I have saved the Bird in my Bosom*, meaning his Oath to King *Henry*. *Montague* encouraged with this Success, marched to attack King *Henry's* Army near *Hexham*, and falling upon it suddenly in the Night totally defeated it, taking the Duke of *Somerset*, Lords *Hungerford*, *Ross*, *Moulins*, and others Prisoners. *Somerset* lost his Head in the Place; the rest were sent to *Newcastle* to be executed; but King *Henry*, in Disguise, and the Queen escaped into *Lancashire*, where he was taken as he sat at Dinner in *Waddington Hall*, by Sir *Edward Talbot's* Son, who forgetting all due Respect to so great a Prince, carried him up to *London* like a common Malefactor, with his Legs tied under the Horse's Belly. He was met by the Way by the Earl of *Warwick*, who arrested him, and taking off his gilt Spurs, carried him Prisoner to the Tower, together with Doctor *Manning*, Dean of *Windsor*, Doctor *Bedle*, and Mr. *Al-learon*, a young Gentleman, all of so divine a Calling, as shew'd no Misfortune could separate him from his

Piety,

Piety,
escape

Th
gave
fairs
sion
gular
ment
ingrat
by A
serve
over
them
form
Statu
long-
to tha
ed up
or Sil
Thing
with
grante
Cotes
ly, th
Engli
in the

Th
Edwa
Queen
garet,
of He
of Fr
last of
the E
Court
ceived
propo
ments
Engla

But
on a
King
Forest
solicit
Daugh

The Reign of. King EDWARD IV.

517

Piety, nor them from their Duty. Queen *Margaret* 4 Ed. IV. escaped into *France* to her Father.

The forementioned Advantages over his Enemies gave King *Edward* an Opportunity of settling the Affairs of the Publick, which had been put into Confusion by the late Disorders. He corrected several Irregularities in the Courts of Judicature, and the Management of the Publick Revenues. He endeavoured to ingratiate himself with the Nobility and Commonalty by Affability and Courtesy; to unite those who had served him more firmly to him by Liberality; and to bring over those who were still his Enemies by promising them Pardon. The Laws of the Land he in Part reform'd, and in Part augmented. He ordained Penal Statutes against Excess in Apparel, particularly against long-piked Shoes, then commonly worn, which grew to that Extreme, that the Pikes in the Toes were turned upwards, and tied to the Knees with Silver Chains, or Silk Laces: But among his good Acts, he did one Thing very injurious; for having concluded a League with the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, in *Spain*, he granted them Liberty to transport certain Numbers of *Coteshwold* Sheep, which increased there so numerously, that it afterwards prov'd a great Prejudice to the *English* Merchants in the Sale of their Woolen Cloths in the *Levant* Seas.

The Affairs of the Realm being thus settled, King *Edward* began to think of providing himself with a Queen. Three Marriages were proposed to him, *Margaret*, Daughter of the King of *Scots*; *Isabel*, Sister of *Henry*, King of *Castile*; and *Bona*, Sister to the Queen of *France*, and Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. The last of these Ladies was approved of in Council, and the Earl of *Warwick* was deputed to go to the *French* Court, to treat about it, where he was very kindly received, and met with a ready Acceptance of what he proposed; and being dismissed with no small Compliments, the Earl of *Damp-martin* was to come into *England*, for the final Conclusion of it.

But while Policy acted several Parts abroad, Love on a sudden changed the whole Scene at Home. For King *Edward*, after he had been hunting in *Wychwood* Forest, coming to visit the Duchess of *Bedford*, was solicited by a fair Petitioner, *Elizabeth*, the Duchess's Daughter, Widow of Sir *John Gray*, slain on King *Henry's*

King *Edward's* Regulations in the Publick.

The Earl of *Warwick* sent to treat of a Marriage in *France*.

King *Edward* falls in Love with the Lady *Gray*.

1664.

Henry's Part at the Battle of St. Albans. The King enamoured with her Beauty, presently grew earnest in soliciting her in a more unlawful Suit: But she, tho' assaulted on every Side with the Batteries of Temptation, repulsed her Enemy so nobly, by telling him, *That tho' she knew her self unworthy to be a Queen, yet she valued her Honour and Person more than to be the greatest Prince's Concubine,* that he offered to treat upon honourable Terms. The King finding her adorned with a Chastity strong enough to resist him, who had scarce failed to be a Victor in those Attempts, grew more enamoured with the Beauty of her Mind, and accounted her Virtue Dower enough for the greatest King. His Mother, and others, pressed him very hard, arguing very sharply against so unequal a Match to his Majesty, by alledging the Danger of angring so potent a Neighbour as King *Lewis*, and so dangerous a Subject as *Warwick*; the Inconvenience of raising a Widow to his Bed, who could bring nothing with her but her improvided Issue, putting him in mind also of a Precontract with the Lady *Lucy*; yet he broke through all these Difficulties, and married her privately; and not long after, she was crowned Queen with the usual Solemnities. Her Mother was *Jaqueline*, Daughter of *Peter* of *Luxemburgh*, Earl of *St. Paul's*, and Duchess to *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*, after whose Death, she was married to Sir *Richard Woodvil*, and among others, bore him this celebrated Lady.

The Earl of
Warwick en-
raged at it.

This Match was pleasing to none, but less to the Nobility than the Commonalty; because their own Grandeur seemed to be obscured by the sudden Splendor of the Queen's Relations; for her Father was created Earl of *Rivers*, and soon after made Constable of *England*; her Brother *Anthony* was married to the Daughter and Heiress of the Lord *Scales*, and honoured with the Title; and her Son *Thomas Gray*, whom she had by her former Husband, created Marquis of *Dorset*. The Earl of *Warwick* being in *France*, and having been informed of this Match, and sensible how great an Affront by it was given to his Employment, left *France* with such angry Resentments, that were plainly perceivable by the King of *France*. But being returned into *England*, he dissembled them to the King, and seemed to approve of the Match: But the present Af-

front

front revived the Remembrance of many he had formerly received; upon which, he conceived such a Hatred against King *Edward*, that he resolved to depose him, and reinthroned King *Henry*. And under the Pretence of Indisposition of Body, he desired Leave of King *Edward* to retire to *Warwick*.

The succeeding Year the Queen was delivered of a Daughter, who was named *Elizabeth*, who afterwards put an End to the Civil Wars, by marrying King *Henry* the Seventh. The same Year King *Edward* concluded a Treaty of Alliance with the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, and a Truce for fifteen Years with *Scotland*; and married his Sister *Margaret* to the Duke of *Burgundy*.

5 Ed. IV.

1466.
King Edward's Alliances.

The Earl of *Warwick's* Resentments against King *Edward* daily increasing, he resolved to put his Designs immediately in Execution; and got his two Brothers, the Archbishop of *York* and Marquiss of *Montague*, to join with him, by magnifying the Gratitude and Goodness of King *Henry*, and aggravating the Ingratitude and Wickedness of King *Edward*. In the next Place he attempted the King's second Brother, the Duke of *Clarence*, whom he found to be a Malecontent; because being profuse in his Expences, his Brother having not taken care to supply him, he was become indigent, of which he complained to the Earl; and that whereas he had married his Queen's Relations, three upstart Lords, to some of the richest Heiresses of the Nation, he had taken no Care of his own Brothers; therefore the Earl, to engage him to his Interest, proposed a Marriage of his own Daughter to the Duke, with a Portion equal to the richest of them. Upon this they both went to *Calais*, where the Lady resided, her Father being Governor, and there the Duke married the Earl's Daughter.

1468.
The Earl of Warwick's Resentments.

Before the Departure of the Duke and Earl, the Management of the setting the Rebellion on Foot was committed to the Archbishop of *York* and the Marquiss of *Mountague*, who were privately to procure some Insurrection in the North of *England*, and give the Occasion of the War, while they being beyond Sea, might not be thought the Authors of it; and accordingly they going down to *York*, soon effected it. The first Occasion of taking up Arms was raised from the Abuse of a Charity in *St. Leonard's Hospital* in *York*,

A Rebellion raised.

1469.



which consisted chiefly in Corn, which the factious Persons pretended to be converted by the Governors to their own Use; whereby the Poor were defrauded, and the charitable Intention of the Donors perverted, The Marquiss of *Montague* was President for King *Edward*, who having raised a Body of Men, quieted the Commotion, and beheaded *Robert Huldern* their Leader; yet were the People ready to assemble again upon the least Encouragement given them. The Marquiss, by this Appearance of Fidelity to King *Edward*, passed unsuspected at Court, and was in a better Capacity to augment his Forces, and so be ready to join in any Enterprize that should be entred upon.

Against their Return the Archbishop of *York* had wrought so diligently to foment Discontents, that the Multitude, that were before dispersed, were again in the Field; but commanded by Leaders of far more eminent Name; the Son of the Lord *Fitz-bugh*, and the Son of the Lord *Latimer*, both Cousins to the Earl of *Warwick*, and both Gentlemen great in Blood and Spirit; but in Regard of their Youth and want of Experience, they submitted themselves to the Direction of Sir *John Conyers*, an experienced and valiant Commander. They directed their March towards *London*, proclaiming by the Way, *That Edward was neither a just Prince to God, nor a profitable King to the Nation.*

King *Edward's* Preparations.

King *Edward* hearing of these Proceedings in the North, sent for the Earl of *Pembroke*, giving him Commission to raise what *Welsh* Forces he could. The Earl taking with him Sir *Richard Herbert* his Brother, and seven thousand *Welshmen*, advanced forwards, and was joined by the Lord *Stafford* with eight hundred Archers: And understanding that the Northern Army was near *Northampton*, he marched against them with the Body of his Army, giving Orders to Sir *Richard Herbert*, with two thousand *Welsh* Horse, to charge the Enemy in the Rear: But Sir *John Conyers* had so carefully secured the Rear, that the *Welsh* were put to Flight. Upon this Sir *John Conyers*, lest *Pembroke* in the Way might gain some Advantage, diverted from his direct Course to *London*, and marched to *Warwick*, where the Earl of *Warwick* and Duke of *Clarence* had gotten together a good Army. The Earl of *Pembroke* marches after Sir *John Conyers*, watching an Opportunity, either to cut off some Part of his Force, or to give Battle to the whole; but a Difference between him and

and the Lord *Stafford* ruined the Design: For encamp-
ing at *Banbury*, there happened a Dispute about an *Inn* where *Pembroke* was resolved to lodge, claiming his Preheminence as General. This Distaste grew so high, that *Stafford* withdrew himself and his *English* Archers, leaving the *Welsh* in Arms and Numbers far inferior to the Enemy.

The Rebels having notice of this Discord, attack'd the Earl of *Pembroke's* Camp the next Morning. The Fight was obstinate on both Sides; but the *Welsh* took Sir *Henry Nevill*, and most cruelly slew him in cool Blood; which Action excited a Spirit of Revenge, that the next Day they gave the Earl a general Battle, and the Fight was long and cruel; neither had the Victory fallen so absolutely to the Northern Men, but that one *John Clopton*, a Retainer to the Earl of *Warwick*, appearing upon the Top of a neighbouring Hill with five hundred Men under *Warwick's* Standard, and the Northern Men at their Approach crying out, *A Warwick, a Warwick*; the *Welsh*, thinking that all the Earl of *Warwick's* Forces were there, and that it would be but foolish Desperation to fight longer against an Enemy that was fresh and so superior in Force, fled.

Five hundred of the *Welsh* were slain either in the Battle or Flight, and among the Prisoners were the Earl of *Pembroke* and Sir *Richard Herbert* his Brother, who were beheaded at *Banbury*. The Earl, who was to suffer first, petitioned Sir *John Conyers*, and others, who were his Judges, for his Brother's Life, upon the Account of his Youth and Bravery: But the Death of *Henry Nevill* so exasperated them, that it occasioned not only the Execution of those two, but many others also. Upon this Success, some Companies of them retired into *Northamptonshire*, where being joined with some of the most desperate Inhabitants, under the Conduct of one *Robert Riddisdale*, they went to *Grafton*, a Seat belonging to the Earl of *Rivers*, King *Edward's* Father in Law, which they plundered, carrying the Earl, and his Son Sir *John Woodvill*, to *Northampton*, where they beheaded them.

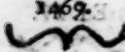
After this Victory Sir *John Conyers* retired with his Party to *Warwick*, where the Earl of *Warwick* was arrived with a considerable Army; and being informed, that King *Edward* was marching towards him, he gave notice of it to the Duke of *Clarence*, who immediately joined him with a considerable Force. The two Armies

9 Ed. IV.

The ninth Battle at Danesmore, or Banbury Field.

Great Severities.

Sir John Conyers retires to Warwick.

1462.  Armies being come so near to one another, that they could hardly part without coming to Blows, some Persons proposed an Accommodation, by way of Treaty; both the King and Earl seemed inclined to it; and the Negotiation of it made King *Edward* so remiss, that he betook himself in his Camp to the Pleasures of a Court; which the Earl being informed of, and also the Negligence of the King's Guards, set upon them by Night, and took the King Prisoner without any Resistance, and immediately sent him away to *Middleham* Castle in *Yorkshire*, there to be kept by his Brother the Archbishop of *York*: But the Bishop giving him not only Liberty of the Castle, but Freedom to hunt with a very small Guard, he was rescued by his faithful Friends Sir *William Stanley* and Sir *Thomas Burg*. The Earl of *Warwick* hearing of his Escape, was in great Perplexity, but at last gave it out, *That he himself had so ordered it, having Power to make and unmake Kings at his Pleasure.*

An Interview between King *Edward* and the Earl of *Warwick*.

The King being at Liberty went to *York*, and from thence to *Lancaster*, where the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* had gathered some Forces; with these he marched directly to *London*, where all his Studies were to be revenged of those disloyal Lords, his Brother the Duke of *Clarence* and the Earl of *Warwick*; and they on the other Side were busily employed in increasing their Party and Interest against the King. In the mean Time the Solicitations of those Persons that had before laboured for Peace, continued, and at last brought both Parties to agree to an Interview in *Westminster* Hall. Oaths were exchanged on both Sides: But no sooner was the Earl of *Warwick*, accompanied with the Duke of *Clarence*, entred the Hall, and bid to express his Desires, but he fell into a bold Expostulation of Injuries, charging the King with Ingratitude, as the King did them with Disloyalty; so that instead of their Resentments being appeased, they were much more exasperated; upon which the King, full of Indignation, departed the Hall, and took his Journey to *Canterbury*, and the Duke and Earl to *Warwick*.

The tenth Battle at *Stamford*, called *Loosecoat Field*.

The Earl of *Warwick* raising new Commotions in *Lincolnshire*, had got together an Army of thirty thousand Men, commanded by Sir *Robert Wells*, who very much disturbed the Country, and proclaimed King *Henry* wherever he came; and at last encamping near *Stamford*,

Stamford
meant
his F
off hi
with
comi
Way
he se
solvin
Pard
Usag
defilt
the L
effect
King
Lord
mised

Th
tion
rous
nothi
blind
not
who
and
equal
and
thou
and
who
way
ward
soner
Wells
Libe
perfid

Th
last E
ter, d
tired
mouth
he to
was C
and g
Lord

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

323

Stamford, resolved to wait for his Opposers. In the 10th Ed. IV. mean Time King *Edward* sent for *Richard Lord Wells* his Father, that having Possession of him, he might draw off his Son from the Earl of *Warwick*. The Lord *Wells*, with his Brother in Law, Sir *Thomas Dimmock*, were coming to Court to King *Edward*; but having by the Way secret Notice how unsafe his Approach would be, he secured himself in a Sanctuary. But the King resolving to get him upon any Terms, granted a general Pardon, and received him upon Promise of all fair Usage, and commanded him to write to his Son to desist; and then marching towards *Stamford*, he took the Lord *Wells* along with him: But his Letters not effecting what he desired, but Sir *Robert* still proceeding, King *Edward* was so enraged, that he beheaded the Lord *Wells* and Sir *Thomas Dimmock*, tho' he had promised them their Lives and Safety.

The Report of this Execution clouded the Reputation of King *Edward*, it being an Action both barbarous and unfaithful; but in Sir *Robert Wells* it begot nothing but Fury and Revenge: And indeed Rage so blinded his Judgment, that contrary to all Persuasion, not staying for the coming of the Earl of *Warwick*, who was every Day expected, he drew out his Forces and charged the King's Army, who received him with equal Courage; and having enclosed him, took him and sixty seven more Prisoners. There were ten thousand slain of the Earl of *Warwick's* Party, and but thirteen hundred of the King's; and they who escaped, to make their Flight the swifter, cast away their Coats; upon which Account it was afterwards called the Battle of *Loose-Coat Field*. The Prisoners were immediately executed, except Sir *Robert Wells*, who in his short Delay of Death, had the longer Liberty to express his Hatred against the King and his perfidious Cruelty.

This Overthrow drove *Clarence* and *Warwick* to the last Extremity: However, the great Spirit of the latter, disdaining any Thing that resembled Flight, he retired very leisurely to *Exeter*, from thence to *Dartmouth*: There, with many Ladies and a large Retinue, he took Ship, and sailed directly to *Calais*, where he was Governor; where casting Anchor before the Town, and giving notice that they were ready to land, the Lord *Vauclere*, a *Gascoign*, whom *Warwick* had made his

The Earl of
Warwick flies
to *Calais*.

1470.

his Deputy, to their great Surprise, discharged some Canon against them, and denied them Entrance. For which Service King *Edward* made *Vauclere* Governor of *Calais*, and the Duke of *Burgundy* promised him a Pension of a thousand Crowns *per Annum*. But tho' *Vauclere* seemed so hearty to King *Edward's* Interest, yet he sent the Earl of *Warwick* Word how hazardous his entring there would be, advising him to go to the *French King*, promising him to give him a good Account of *Calais* when Time should serve.

The Earl
goes to the
French King.

By this Counsel the Earl of *Warwick* steered his Course to *Dieppe* in *Normandy*, taking in his Passage several Ships, and a considerable Treasure, belonging to the Duke of *Burgundy*. From thence he pass'd to *Amboise*, where King *Lewis* was, who received him with great Respect, furnish'd him with Necessaries, promised him Assistance, and fitted him out a Fleet with Mariners and Soldiers. Queen *Margaret* also, with the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Oxford*, (the last having escaped out of Prison in *England*,) came to meet him. And King *Lewis*, to strengthen the Amity between them, procur'd a Match between Prince *Edward*, King *Henry's* Son, and the Earl of *Warwick's* Daughter *Anne*. Upon this Marriage the Earl of *Warwick* and Duke of *Clarence* took a solemn Oath never to give over the War, till King *Henry* or Prince *Edward* should recover his Kingdom; and Queen *Margaret* engaged her self to make them two Regents till her Son came of Age.

The Earl of
Warwick
lands at *Dartmouth*.

King *Edward* hearing of this Confederacy against him, sent over an ingenious Gentlewoman to *France*, who under the Pretence of visiting the Duchess of *Clarence*, perswaded her to be urgent upon her Husband to quit the Earl of *Warwick's* Interest: She managed her Part so well, that the Duke promised to do it immediately after his Return to *England*. King *Edward* having secured this Division between the Earl and Duke of *Clarence* his Brother, and relying upon *Burgundy* abroad, and his Friends who flatter'd him at home, gave himself up to Hunting and Hawking by Day, and to Dancings and amorous Addresses to fair Ladies at Night. In the mean Time, all Things being in Readiness for an Invasion, as Ships, Men and Money, furnish'd by the *French King*, under the Command of the Admiral of *France*, they set Sail and landed at *Dartmouth*, where the Earl of *Warwick* proclaim'd King *Henry*, commanding all

Persons,

Persons, from sixteen to sixty, under severe Penalties, to take Arms against *Edward Duke of York*, as an Usurper; upon which he took his March towards *London*, his Numbers continually encreasing. King *Edward* seemed but little to regard it; but thinking he had *Warwick* in a Snare, wrote to the Duke of *Burgundy* to secure the Seas against his Retreat; he also summoned the Lords of *England* to attend him in his Wars. But very few of them repairing to him, he soon became sensible of his Danger; upon which he with a few Lords of his Party retir'd from *London* to *Nottingham*.

In the mean Time the Earl of *Pembroke* in *Wales*, and the Bastard of *Falconbridge* in the *West*, proclaimed King *Henry*; and at the same Time Dr. *Gooddiard*, Chaplain to the Earl, at *St. Paul's Cross* in his Sermon declared King *Edward* an Usurper, commended the good Intentions of the Earl in restoring their imprisoned Sovereign King *Henry* to the Scepter, and the Kingdom to Liberty; and the like did most of the Clergy in *England*; likewise the late reconciled Archbishop of *York*, and Marquiss of *Montague*, who had so often sworn never to forsake the Title of King *Edward*, took the first Opportunity of declaring against him, and crying out, *Long live King Henry*. The Marquiss of *Montague* having raised in King *Edward's* Name six thousand Men, and drawn them down near to *Nottingham*, suddenly marched back his Forces, alledging, that *Edward* was ungrateful and regardless of his Friends, of whom himself was an Example, who having served him in many bloody Battles, was only rewarded with the bare Title of a MARQUISS, without any Estate to support it; and therefore had just Cause never more to draw his Sword in his Quarrel, and those who did would receive no better Reward than himself. These and the like Complaints being divulged among the common People, it caused a mighty Alteration in their Inclinations and Affections: In every Street were Bonfires, ringing of Bells, and crying out King *Henry*. King *Edward* finding no Place of Safety, went immediately to *Lynne*, where finding two *Holland* and one *English* Ships, he embarked with about seven hundred Men, without either Baggage or Money. In his Passage he was encountred with eight *Easterling* Ships, and with great Difficulty got to *Alchemar* in *Holland*, belonging to the Duke of *Burgundy*; but not having Money to pay his Passage, he gave the Captain a rich

A Revolt
from King
Edward.

1470.

Warwick
comes to
London.

rich Vestment furr'd with Martins, promising to satisfy him better afterwards.

In these Times of Trouble *Elizabeth*, King *Edward's* Queen, took Sanctuary in a Monastery, where she was deliver'd of a Son named *Edward*, who was afterwards *Edward V.* likewise many of King *Edward's* Friends betook themselves to several Sanctuaries. Things being in this Posture, the *Kentish* Men finding that one King was fled, and the other in Prison, came to *London*, and pillaged the Suburbs, and intended to have enter'd the City; but the Earl of *Warwick* prevented them, punishing the Ringleaders of the Insurrection, which gain'd him much Reputation with the People. This Tumult being quell'd, the Earl, attended with some other of the Nobility, went to the Tower of *London*, and brought out King *Henry*, who had been kept Prisoner there for seven Years; and he being conducted thro' the City in a blue Velvet Gown, to the Bishop's Palace, went in Procession crown'd to *St. Paul's*, the Earl of *Warwick* bearing his Train, and the Earl of *Oxford* his Sword, the People crying out, *God save King Henry.*

King *Henry*
recognis'd,
and *Edward*
declar'd a
Traitor in
Parliament.

In November a Parliament was call'd in the Name of King *Henry*, in which *Edward* was declared a Traitor and Usurper, his Estate confiscated, all Statutes made in his Name and by his Authority annull'd, the Crowns of *England* and *France* confirmed upon King *Henry* and his Male Heirs, and for Want of such, to the Duke of *Clarence* and his Heirs Male. Those that sided with King *Henry* were restored to their Privileges, and those who sided with King *Edward* were deprived of their Honours and Estates, and several Noblemen were executed. And the Regency of the Kingdom was committed to the Earl of *Warwick* and Duke of *Clarence.*

Henry's proph-
etical
Speech con-
cerning King
Henry VII.

It hapned not long after, that the Earl of *Pembroke* going to view his Lands in *Pembrokeshire*, found there the Lord *Henry*, Son to *Margaret*, the only Daughter and Heir to *John Beaufort* the first Duke of *Somerset*, not then full ten Years of Age, who had been kept in some Measure like a Prisoner, but honourably educated by the Lady *Herbert*. The Earl brought this young Lord to *London*, and presented him before King *Henry*, who after he had seriously fixed his Eyes upon him, said in a very solemn Manner to the Lords about him, *Lo, this*

is the
both w
afterw
Opinio
since b
cession
of the
preced
Wh
Henry
to rece
upon t
very h
all Th
cautio
ward
Easter
by the
him w
under
assist
Suspici
be, he
King
besides
in *Nor*
he fail
at *Rav*
to the
to reco
ing an
ry, pro
came;
Letters
he affi
safe C
City o
had sw
to such
to all
took a
first by
by re-a
King
wards

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

527

is the Person to whom, after all our violent Struggles, both we and our Adversaries must at last submit. Which afterwards hapning as he had predicted, confirmed the Opinion that People had of his uncommon Sanctity; since by the Spirit of Prophecy he could foresee the Succession of King Henry VII. when at that Time many of the Houses both of *Lancaster* and *York* were alive to precede him.

While Things went on thus in *England* on King Henry's Side, King Edward was using all possible Means to recover his Kingdom, and his chief Dependance was upon the Duke of *Burgundy*. But he, tho' he had been very hearty for King Edward's Interests before, seeing all Things make against him, was very backward and cautious to assist him publickly. Upon this, King Edward impatient of Delays, hired fourteen Ships of the *Easterlings*, to which four more were added, fitted out by the Duke of *Burgundy*, who also privately furnished him with fifty thousand Florins, but at the same Time, under Colour, by a Proclamation forbad all Men to assist King Edward, that he might free himself from Suspicion to *England*; and whatever the Success should be, he would seem a Friend to both Sides.

King Edward having gotten about two thousand Men, besides Sailors, embarked for *England*, intending to land in *Norfolk*; but finding the Coasts strongly guarded, he sailed more Northerly, entred *Humber*, and landed at *Ravenspur* in *Yorkshire*; where laying aside all Claim to the Crown, he declared upon Oath he came only to recover his Inheritance the Dutchy of *York*; and wearing an Estrich Feather, his Son Prince Edward's Livery, proclaimed King Henry in every Place where he came; shewing the People that flock'd to his Army the Letters and Seal of the Earl of *Northumberland*, which he affirmed and made them believe, were sent for his safe Conduct. In this Manner he proceeded to the City of *York*, which refused to receive him before he had sworn that he would treat the Citizens according to such Articles as were agreed on, and to be faithful to all King Henry's Commands: To both which he took a solemn Oath, but immediately broke them both; first by seizing the City into his own Hands, and then by re-assuming his former Title to the Crown.

King Edward leaving a Garison in *York*, marched towards *London*, altho' the Marquis of *Montague* lay then

10 Ed. IV.

1471.

King Edward's Endeavours for his Restoration.

King Edward lands in *Yorkshire*.

1471. then at *Pontefract*, with a far superior Power, to hinder his Journey. Nigh which, when King *Edward* came expecting Battle, *Montague* let him pass quietly, not permitting any Act of Hostility to be shewed, or Advantage taken. When he arrived at *Nottingham*, many of the Nobility came to him with Forces, where he was proclaimed King: From thence he went to *Leicester*, to meet the Earl of *Warwick*, who lay near the City of that Name, in Order to give him Battle. The Earl hearing this, sent for the Duke of *Clarence* to join him, and marched away to *Coventry*. *Edward* coming to *Warwick*, and finding the Earl gone to *Coventry*, followed him. The Earl intrenched himself to wait for the Arrival of the Duke of *Clarence*, who he understood was not far off. The King perceiving nothing would provoke *Warwick* to fight upon unequal Terms, marched against *Clarence*, and as soon as he drew near, both Armies made a Shew of preparing for the Encounter. But being come in Sight of each other, the Duke of *Glocester*, without so much as demanding the usual safe Conduct, ran into *Clarence's* Camp, and seemed to treat of what they had long before concluded on. *Clarence* carried over to the King the Army raised by the Earl of *Warwick*, and the two Brothers joyfully embraced each other; and *Edward* was proclaimed King.

The Duke of *Clarence* comes over to King *Edward*.

The Duke of *Clarence* sends Messengers to the Earl of *Warwick*.

The Duke of *Clarence* having thus disappointed the Earl of *Warwick*, that he might not appear to forget the Office of a Son in Law, and a Friend, he, jointly with the King, sent to intreat the Earl to come to an Accommodation, upon such Conditions as he himself should require; depending upon it, that he would be so rational in his Demands, as not to require what was unfit for a Subject to ask, and a King to grant. But *Warwick* had a Spirit too stubborn to stoop to any Conditions that were not of his own proposing, much less from one who had betrayed him; and therefore returned this Answer. *Go tell your Master, I had rather be an Earl and like my self, than a false and perjured Duke; and before I will falsify my Oath like him, I will lay down my Life at my Enemies Feet; which I doubt not but will be dearly purchased.* This resolute Answer caused *Edward* to be very wary, and therefore he resolved in the first Place, to gain the City of *London*, and secure King *Henry*; upon which he marched

his

his Arm
ed by
Duke
Henry,
ing left
from w
Liberty

King
marched
was co
tion wo
Party.

tween t
Commu
King *H*
him wit

ward e
was co
Body b
On the
in Order

Wing t
tagne, t
to the
whole

tions in
solving
or Vict
his great
respectiv

It wa
Armies
the Vi
Earl of
Disorde
throw.

with Str
stake, t
was the
of the M
and pre
Edward
Body to
Oxford
eight hu

VOL

his Army up to *London*, where he was readily received by the Citizens. Upon *Edward's* Approach the Duke of *Somerset*, and those that attended on King *Henry*, left him, and fled to secure themselves; so being left in a manner alone, he was sent to the Tower, from whence, six Months before, he had been set at Liberty by the Earl of *Warwick*.

11 Ed. IV.



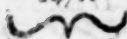
King *Edward* having settled his Affairs in *London*, marched his Army to meet the Earl of *Warwick*, who was come to *St. Albans*, in Hopes that his Reputation would draw over many of the *Londoners* to his Party. But *Edward*, to prevent this, encamped between that Town and the City, that he might have no Communication with it; and that the Presence of King *Henry* might occasion no Disturbance, he took him with him, and kept him in his Camp. King *Edward* encamped upon a Plain near *Barnet*. The Van was commanded by the Duke of *Glocester*, the main Body by himself, and the Rear by the Lord *Hastings*. On the other Side, the Earl of *Warwick* set his Forces in Order with great Resolution, committing the right Wing to the Earl of *Oxford* and Marquiss of *Montague*, the Left to the Duke of *Exeter*, and the Main to the Duke of *Somerset*: And having surveyed the whole Army, and lik'd their Order, he gave Directions in every Quarter. He sent away the Horses, resolving to fight on Foot, thinking of nothing but Death or Victory. Then having affectionately embraced all his great Commanders, every Man betook him to his respective Charge.

King Edward marches against the Earl of Warwick.

It was *Easter Sunday* in the Morning when the two Armies approached each other for Battle. Six Hours the Victory was doubtful, tho' it often inclined to the Earl of *Warwick's* Side; till at last Error alone brought Disorder to *Warwick's* Army, and that a final Overthrow. For the Earl of *Oxford* giving his Men a Star with Streams for his Badge, begot in the Army a Mistake, that they were Part of the Enemy, whose Badge was the Sun, which Error was caused by the Mistiness of the Morning; wherefore being in the right Wing, and pressing forward, they were thought to be King *Edward's* Men flying, which caused their own main Body to attack them fiercely in the Back; whereupon *Oxford* suspecting Treason in *Warwick*, fled away with eight hundred Men; and King *Edward* with fresh

The eleventh Battle at Barnet.

1471.



Troops in Reserve, perceiving some Disorder in the Enemy, violently assaulted them, and soon forced them to give back. *Warwick* used all Methods both of Language and Example, to encourage them to fight; but when he saw nothing did prevail, he rushed furiously into the thickest of his Enemies, hoping that either his Men would bravely follow, or otherwise by Death to prevent the Misery of seeing himself defeated. *Montague* seeing to what Danger his Brother was reduced, run violently in to his Rescue, and both presently oppress'd with Numbers fell, and with them the Spirit of the Army, which thereupon immediately fled; and King *Edward* obtained a compleat Victory having slain ten thousand of his Adversaries, with the Loss of fifteen hundred of his own Men. The Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Oxford* fled towards *Scotland*, but turned aside to *Wales*. The Duke of *Exeter*, who was left half slain among the dead Bodies, escaped, and took Sanctuary at *Westminster*. The Bodies of the Earl of *Warwick* and Marquis of *Montague* were brought to *London*, and exposed barefac'd three Days in *St. Paul's Church*, that no Pretence of their being alive might stir up any Rebellion afterwards. This was the End of the mighty Earl of *Warwick*, the greatest and busiest Subject, in those Days, in *England*, whose Ambition was to make and unmake Kings.

Queen Margaret lands at Weymouth.

Queen *Margaret*, who had been some Time preparing for *England*, and had been detained by contrary Winds, landed at *Weymouth*, having in her Retinue some few *French* Forces, where she was soon entertained with the melancholy News of the Defeat of the Earl of *Warwick*; at the hearing of which she fell into a Swoon, and despairing of any future Success, she registred her self, Prince *Edward* her Son, and Followers, in the Abby of *Ceerne*, betaking her self to the common Refuge of Sanctuary. Here the Chief of her Party resorted to her, as the Duke of *Somerset*, and several other Persons of Note, who encouraged the Queen still to pursue her former Designs, offering their Assistance to establish her Son *Edward* in the Throne, tho' it were with the Loss of their Lives; desiring her only to undertake the Authority of the War, and they would sustain the Charge and Burden of it; telling her, they did not doubt but to abate the Pride of the Usurper, who thinking himself secure, began to relapse into

into h
ed by
to sen
Secur
new
ward
fence
the E
ing o
this h
in A
many
Bath
shire
rity n

Ki
ed, a
stanc
Parts
York
made
ed h
Mile
raiser
Quee
Arm
com
the l
she r
cester
it be
bury
fore
wer

T
tho'
to K
Duk
adjo
roun
on
Nec
him
the
Ma

into his former Negligence. The Queen being persuaded by these Assurances, consented, but thought it best to send Prince *Edward* back to *France*, as well for his Security, as that from thence he might supply them with new Forces. But the Lords alledged, that Prince *Edward* being the sole Hopes of the *Lancastrians*, his Presence was absolutely necessary in the Field, both for the Encouragement of his own Soldiers, and the bringing over many to his Side. The Queen yielding to this Resolution, leaves the Sanctuary, and puts her self in Arms; and the very Name of Prince *Edward* drew many to the War. She straightway led her Forces to *Bath*, where the Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Devonshire* were in great Reputation, and by whose Authority new Forces came daily into the Prince's Service.

11 Ed. IV.

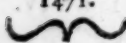
King *Edward* hearing that Queen *Margaret* was landed, and that great Numbers daily came to her Assistance out of *Cornwall*, *Devonshire*, and the Western Parts, committed King *Henry* and the Archbishop of *York* to the Tower, gathered his Army together, and made Preparations with that Expedition, that he marched his Army down to *Marlborough*, within fifteen Miles of *Bath*, before the Earl of *Pembroke*, who had raised a considerable Force in *Wales*, could join the Queen's Army; and so getting between the Queen's Army and *Wales*, hindred all Succours that could come from thence. This sudden and near Approach of the King very much perplexed the Queen, wherefore she retired to *Bristol*, and sent to the Governor of *Glocester* Castle to desire Passage over the *Severn* there; but it being denied, she was obliged to march up to *Tewksbury*, and endeavour to pass the River there, but before she could reach *Tewksbury*, the King and his Horse were in Sight.

King *Edward* marches against the Queen's Forces.

The two Armies being come so near to each other, tho' the Queen's Army was much inferior in Number to King *Edward's*, it was resolved to fight it out. The Duke of *Somerset* therefore pitched his Field in a Park adjoining to the Town, and intrenched his Camp round so high, and so strong, that the Enemy could on no Side force it; and when he saw an inevitable Necessity to fight, marshaled his Army for Action. He himself commanded the first Battle, the Prince, under the Direction of the Lords *Prior* and *Wenlock*, the Main, and the Earl of *Devonshire* the Rear. Before the

The Queen's Preparation for the Battle.

1471.


 Battle began, the Queen rode about the Army, and the Prince with her to encourage them to fight; and tho' she was under great Apprehensions of the Consequences, yet she concealed her Despair so much, that in her Looks appeared nothing but Life and Resolution, in her Language almost Assurance of Victory: She told them, "That it rested in their Courage that Day to restore their imprisoned King to his Liberty and Crown, and themselves not to Safety only, but to Honour and Treasure; for the Wealth of the rebellious Cities should be their Spoil, the Kingdom their Inheritance; and all those Titles the Enemy so proudly wore, should be conferred upon their Deserts. That if the Inequality of their Numbers frightened them, they might be confident their great Hearts, animated by the Justice of the Cause, would easily take away the Disparity. Then she bid them look upon the Prince her Son, and fight for him their Fellow Soldier, with whom they were to share in Fortune, and who once in Possession of the Throne, would never forget them, by whose Courage he was seated there."

The twelfth
 Battle at
 Tewkesbury.

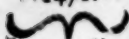
King *Edward* likewise drew up his Army in three Lines of Battle; the first was commanded by the Duke of *Glocester*, the second by the King himself, and the Rear by the Lord *Hastings*. The Armies being thus drawn up, and the Signal given, an obstinate Fight ensued. The Duke of *Glocester* planted the Ordnance against the Duke of *Somerset's* Men; and they being lodged between Ditches, Bushes, and Hedges, with their Showers of Arrows, so galled *Glocester's* Line, that he commanded them back, as tho' they had fled. *Somerset* perceiving this, rashly left his Places of Strength to pursue them, and advanced as far as King *Edward's* Quarter, expecting to be followed and supported by the Lord *Wenlock*. Upon this the Duke of *Glocester* made good his Retreat, and charged *Somerset's* Battalion so briskly, that his Men were put to Flight. He himself recovering the middle Line, found the Lord *Wenlock*, who should have supported him, looking on as if he had been only a Spectator. *Somerset* being enraged call'd him Coward and Traytor, and with a Battle-Ax clove his Head asunder. This Outrage begat nothing but Disorder in the Queen's Camp, and the King taking the Advantage of it, gained a complete

pleat
 made
 thoug
 the E
 sons
 John
 ry in
 this o
 ward,
 of rel
 forced
 the E
 Place,
 this P
 ing th
 ed bef
 stable
 conde
 the M
 on of
 nion
 that R
 so as t
 Que
 in her
 Richar
 but Kin
 if he w
 dred P
 alive o
 looking
 ness o
 asked
 his Kin
 which
 ther mi
 ed, he
 make a
 had bee
 his Fath
 of Engl
 fwer, t
 and for
 raged t
 quifs o

pleat ViStory ; for entring the Queen's Trenches, he made a most cruel Slaughter on all who resisted. Three thousand of the common Soldiers were slain, as were the Earl of *Devonshire*, Lord *Beaufort*, and other Persons of Note. The Duke of *Somerset*, Prior of *St. John's*, and many Knights and Esquires, took Sanctuary in the *Abbey*, and other Places in the Town ; but this only preserved them for a While ; for King *Edward*, who was never an over scrupulous Observer of religious Rites, would have entred the *Abbey*, and forced them from thence : But a Priest coming with the Eucharist in his Hand, would not let him enter the Place, till he had granted a Pardon for all there : But this Pardon betrayed them ; for on the *Monday* following they were taken out from thence, and were arraigned before the Duke of *Glocester*, who sat as High Constable of *England*, where they were without Mercy condemn'd to Death, and beheaded on a Scaffold in the Market-place in *Tewksbury* ; by which Violation of the Sanctuary King *Edward* confirm'd the Opinion which the World before had conceiv'd of him, that Religion would never prevail upon his Conscience, so as to be any Bar either to his Pleasures or Revenge.

Queen *Margaret* was taken in the Battle half dead in her Chariot, and not long after the Prince, by Sir *Richard Crofts*, who intended to have conceal'd him ; but King *Edward* having promised the Prince his Life, if he were not already dead, and a Pension of two hundred Pounds a Year to any one who should bring him alive or dead, he presented him to King *Edward*, who looking stedfastly upon him, and admiring the Comeliness of his Person, and Sweetness of his Disposition, asked him, *How he durst come with flying Colours into his Kingdom, and raise his People against him ?* To which he courageously replied, *That to recover his Father miserably oppressed, and the Crown violently usurped, he had taken Arms ; neither could he be reputed to make any unjust Claim, who desired no more than what had been possessed by Henry the Sixth, Fifth, and Fourth, his Father, Grandfather, and Great Grandfather, Kings of England.* King *Edward* being provoked by this Answer, thrust him disdainfully away with his Gauntlet, and some say, struck him on the Face ; which encouraged the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, the Marquis of *Dorset*, and the Lord *Hastings*, to seize on

1471.



the Prince suddenly, and barbarously to murder him with their Ponyards. His Body was buried without any Solemnity, in the Church of the Monastery of *Black-Fryers* in *Tewksbury*: But all his Murtherers came to violent Deaths; for *Glocester* was the Cause of the Death of the rest; and the Earl of *Richmond*, the next surviving Kinsman of the murder'd Prince, of the Duke of *Glocester* himself.

The Earl of
Pembroke
escapes into
Bretagne.

This was the twelfth Battle that was fought between the Houses of *Lancaster* and *York*, and the sixth and last that was fought in the Reign of King *Edward*, and was the only compleat Victory he ever gained, from which no Man of Eminency escaped; nor was any Man, who could pretend to a Competition left, but King *Henry*, and he without Issue. After the Battle was over, and Matters settled in the Country, the King returns for *London*, carrying with him the captive Queen, whom he kept in Prison till her Father *Reyner*, Duke of *Anjou*, ransom'd her for fifty thousand Crowns. The Earl of *Pembroke* kept himself some Time in *Wales*, and King *Edward*, desirous of getting him into his Power, had employed one *Vaughan* to entrap him, but the Earl having notice of it, beheaded him, and afterwards, for his greater Security, sailed into *Bretagne*, carrying with him his Nephew *Henry*, Earl of *Richmond*, Heir of the *Tudors* Family by the Father's Side, and of the House of *Somerset* by the Mother's Side; where they were kindly received by the Duke, not only with Promise of Safety, but also an honourable Pension.

The Bastard
of *Falcon-*
bridge attacks
London.

Soon after the Battle at *Tewksbury*, the Bastard of *Falconbridge*, a base Son of the Earl of *Kent*, having been before employ'd by the Earl of *Warwick*, during the late Troubles of the Kingdom as Vice Admiral, to secure the narrow Seas, and hinder all Succours that might come from the Low Countries to King *Edward's* Assistance, as soon as he heard of the Death of the Earl of *Warwick*, fell to open Piracy, and became a Terror to our Merchants. His common Station was between *Dover* and *Calais*, where having gotten a Navy of some considerable Strength, and the chief Men of *Calais*, (who were of the Earl's Party,) of his Confederacy, he had a secure Place of Retreat upon any Occasion, in that Harbour; he having gathered together many of those who had escaped the two last Battles, and presuming upon the Affection of


the

the K
that
Liber
Marg
Army
in the
a hos
that
ston E
Way
Plun
Subur
self f
preve
King
South
thous
Kath
gate,
and V
his S
he w
Heath
that
Death
they b
that
to rec
and f
which
conbr
and g
niary
Kin
to Lo
ing Q
was
Joy,
vour,
pulsed
Loyal
shoul
All
Edwa
Invita

the *Kentish* Men, put in at *Dover*, and giving it out, that his taking Arms was for the Sake of the common Liberty, and for delivering King *Henry* and Queen *Margaret*, imprisoned by an Usurper, he had gotten an Army of seventeen thousand Men, and leaving his Ships in the *Downs*, he marched his Forces to *London*, and in a hostile Manner demanded Entrance into the City; but that being denied, he marched with his Army to *Kingston* Bridge, to pass the River of *Thames* there; by the Way promising his Soldiers, that they should have the Plunder of *Westminster* for their Dinner, that of the Suburbs of *London* for their Supper, and of *London* itself for their Breakfast the next Morning: But being prevented of passing over at *Kingston*, and hearing of King *Edward's* March towards *London*, he returned to *Southwark*, and caused the Bridge to be fired, and three thousand of his Men to be transported by Boat at *St. Katherine's*, to make an Assault at *Aldgate* and *Bishopsgate*, both which they set on fire; but by the Care and Valour of the Citizens, he was at last driven to his Ships with the Loss of seven hundred Men: Then he went and entrenched his Army for a while at *Black Heath*, and at length he got to *Sandwich*, and fortified that Place, and defended it till after they heard of the Death of King *Henry*; for then the Pretence for which they began the Rebellion being taken away, and hearing that King *Edward* was coming with a powerful Army to reduce them, they offered to lay down their Arms and surrender the Place upon Condition of Pardon, which was granted them; but notwithstanding that, *Falconbridge*, and several others, were afterwards beheaded, and great Numbers suffered either corporal or pecuniary Punishment.

King *Edward*, after the Battle at *Tewksbury*, came to *London* with an Army of thirty thousand Men, bringing Queen *Margaret* with him to grace his Triumph. He was received by the Citizens with great Tokens of Joy, on whom he bestowed several Marks of his Favour, knighting the Mayor, and others who had repulsed the Rebels, commending both their Valour and Loyalty, and promising to requite them when Time should serve, with more ample Satisfaction.

All Commotions of the State being now quieted, King *Edward* considering that the People, upon every slight Invitation, were apt to run to Rebellion, when the Pre-

1472.

 King Henry
 murdered
 in the
 Tower.

servation or Restitution of King *Henry* was but mentioned; it was therefore resolved, that to take away all Pretence from future Insurrections, King *Henry* should be sacrificed. Upon this the Duke of *Glocester* took an occasion to visit King *Henry* in the Tower, and there either stabbed him with his own Hands, or commanded it to be done in his Presence. And that the World might not suspect King *Henry* was still alive, he was no sooner dead, but with some Shew of funeral Rites, his Body attended with some Guards, was brought into St. *Paul's* Church, where he lay with his Face uncovered, and exposed to the Curiosity of every Spectator. Here it bled afresh, and was a melancholy Spectacle to most of the Beholders. From thence it was carried to *Black-fryars* Church, and being laid barefaced as before, bled afresh again, to the great Amazement of the Spectators, who looked upon it as a miraculous Way of demanding Justice from Heaven, since it could not be had on Earth. At last it was put into a Boat, without Priest, Clerk, Torch, or Taper, or any other of the usual funeral Ceremonies of those Times, and carried into the Abby of *Chertsey* in *Surrey*, and there interred without any Pomp.

King *Edward's* Care
 for his fu-
 ture Safety.

King *Edward* having thus destroyed the very Root of the *Lancastrian* Party, proceeded to lop off all such Branches as might any Ways disturb his Security; and first, under pretence of Treason, he apprehended the Archbishop of *York*, Brother to the Earl of *Warwick*, and sent him Prisoner to the Castle of *Guisnes* in *France*, from whence he never obtain'd his Liberty, till Death enlarged him; he seized all the Bishop's Goods, Lands, and Lordships, and got Possession of his rich Plate and Jewels; of which one in his Mitre was of such Value, that he caused it to be set in his own Crown. The Treason laid to his Charge was secretly aiding the Earl of *Oxford*, who at that Time had fortified and held St. *Michael's* Mount in *Cornwall*, ever since the Battle at *Barnet*. The said Earl afterwards yielding himself to King *Edward*, obtained his Life, but lost all his Estate, and was sent beyond Sea to the Castle of *Hammes*, where he was kept a close Prisoner for twelve Years, till the Death of King *Richard* III. And so desirous was King *Edward* to get *Jasper* Earl of *Pembroke*, and *Henry* Earl of *Richmond* into his Power, that

he

he offered large Sums of Money to the Duke of Bre-^{12 Ed. IV.} tagne to deliver them up; but he refused to do it, saying, *That he could not in Honour deliver up those distressed Princes, who had fled to him for Protection*; but he would, for his Sake, take such Care of them, that he should have no Cause of Apprehension from them. And upon that Account he removed their own Servants from them, appointing *Bretaigns* to attend upon them. But deplorable was the Condition of *Henry Holland*, Duke of *Exeter* and Earl of *Huntington*, a Person who for many Years made such a mighty Figure in the World, who was reduced to such extream Wants, that *Comines* relates, that he himself saw the Duke running bare-leg'd after the Duke of *Burgundy's* Train, begging his Bread for God's sake, but did not make his Name known, he being the nearest of the House of *Lancaster*, and Brother-in-law to King *Edward* himself. But afterwards his Quality being known, the Duke of *Burgundy* gave him a small Pension to maintain him. Not long after he was found dead, and strip'd quite naked upon the Shore at *Dover*, but no Discovery could be made how he came by his Death.

All Things being now brought to a reasonable Composition, and *Edward* having no Competitor, or dangerous Disturber, called a Parliament, in which those Acts were re-established that King *Henry* had abrogated, and those annulled which were made against his Adherents; and at the same Time there was a general Pardon.] During this Session the Duke of *Burgundy* sent Embassadors to King *Edward*, to desire his Assistance against the *French King*; but Money was wanting, the Aid which the Parliament had liberally given, being not sufficient to satisfy his numerous Creditors, who were very importunate. He therefore made use of a new Invention, which was called a *Benevolence*. He procured a List to be made of the wealthiest Persons in the Kingdom, who being summoned before him, he by his Arts of Insinuation and Persuasion prevailed upon them to suffer themselves to be assessed, which they did, some for Fear, some for Love, and some for Example. Among the rest, one rich old Widow being courteously asked by the King what she would contribute, she replied, *For your Majesty's royal and amiable Countenance, I will contribute twenty Pounds*. This pleased the King so, that he gave her a hearty Kiss; with

1473.
The Duke
of *Burgundy*
desires Aid
of King *Edward*.

1474. with which the old Gentlewoman was so transported, that she immediately doubled the Sum.

By this Art Money was raised, and now nothing was wanting to the Expedition. The universal Language of the Kingdom was of Wars, and very few Persons of Blood or Quality, but prepared for the Journey. And those who went emulated each other in the Glory of their Armour, the Richness of their Pavilions, the Bravery of their Horses Furniture, and Servants Apparel. The Army consisted of fifteen hundred Men at Arms, fifteen thousand Archers on Horseback, eight thousand common Soldiers, and three thousand Pioneers, an Army more formidable than any that hitherto had invaded *France*. This Army was three Weeks in passing from *Dover* to *Calais*, but before their landing, King *Edward* sent Garter King at Arms with a Letter of Defiance to the *French* King, demanding no less than the whole Realm of *France*; threatening, if refused, to invade his Dominions with Fire and Sword. King *Lewis* having read the Letter, withdrew into a Wardrobe, and commanded the Herald to be brought into his Presence; where, in a private Conference, he made use of many Arguments against King *Edward's* relying upon the Fidelity and boasted Assurances of the Duke of *Burgundy* and Earl of *St. Paul*, and several Motives to induce him to enter into a Treaty of Peace: Then he dismissed the Herald with a Reward of three hundred Crowns, and thirty Ells of crimson Velvet, promising him a thousand Crowns more if the Peace were concluded; as also with a Present of a very fine Horse, a wild Boar, and a Wolf to King *Edward*.

King *Edward* being arrived at *Calais*, expected to have been met by the Duke of *Burgundy*, with two thousand Lances, and four thousand light Horse, as he had promised; but they not coming, the King sent the Lord *Scales*, to put the Duke in Mind of the Agreement. Upon this the Duke came attended with a small Troop to the King, to excuse his Backwardness, and promise that he would very speedily bring the Troops expected. At the same Time a Letter was sent to King *Edward* from the Earl of *St. Paul*, persuading him to proceed in the Enterprize, and not to be doubtful of any Assistance, or Accommodation, either from the Duke or himself. Upon these Assurances King

Edward

Edw
of P
the I
ne w
the I
Agre
such
upon
caus
then
farth
Bur
coul
prett
part
a litt
there

T
twel
ved
he p
Tru
a P
Her
the
and
him
his
grea
sing
alle
curl
Ma
his
and
Pro
ver
Kin
got
wh
war
fary
mer
Fra
the

Edward advanced forward, but found no Performance of Promises, neither from the one nor the other. For the Duke did not accommodate his Soldiers at *Peronne* with Lodging or Victuals, as was expected, nor did the Earl receive them at St. *Quentin's* according to Agreement; but on the contrary, sallied out upon such as King *Edward* sent to take Possession, and plaid upon them with the Canon, killing three of them. This caused King *Edward* to suspect their Sincerity, and from thenceforward he stood upon his own Guard, giving no farther Credit to their Protestations. The Duke of *Burgundy* endeavoured to palliate Matters as well as he could, but finding the Resentments of the *English* ran pretty high, he pretending extraordinary Occasions departed, promising a speedy Return; but this also did not a little encrease the Suspicion of King *Edward*, that there was Treachery in the Management.

The *French* King having Intelligence of the Disgusts between King *Edward* and the Duke, and his Departure, resolved to mediate a Peace in the Duke's Absence. Whereupon he privately dispatched a Messenger, cloathed with a Trumpets Banner-roll, in Appearance an Herald, but a Person in no Office or Reputation. This counterfeit Herald having received full Instructions from his Master the *French* King, addressed himself to the Lords *Stanley* and *Howard*, and the *English* Herald, who introduced him to the King, to whom he handsomely delivered his Message. The Effect of which was to shew the great Desire the King his Master had for Peace, excusing his Master's succouring the Faction of *Lancaster*, alledging he supported the Earl of *Warwick* only to curb *Burgundy*. The Conclusion was, to desire his Majesty to grant a safe Conduct to Embassadors, from his Master, who should come with larger Instructions, and such Proposals as should be for the Honour and Profit of both Kingdoms. This Message being delivered in a submissive Tone, and ever ascribing to the King's Greatness of Spirit, and the Nation's Glory, begot a favourable Audience. And many of the Lords who had plentiful Revenues at Home, were as forward as the King to listen to Peace, and avoid unnecessary Dangers Abroad. Neither did the greatest Statesmen dislike a Treaty, considering that all our Wars in *France* had rather purchased Fame, than Treasure, to the Kingdom, and that when our Soldiers returned Home

14 Ed. IV.

The French King sends a Message to King Edward.

1474. Home, their Scars were greater than their Spoils. Upon these Considerations, King *Edward* granted a safe Conduct, and sent an *English* Herald along with the Messenger to receive Assignments from the *French* King.

The Duke
of *Burgundy*'s
discontent at
the Peace.

The Duke of *Burgundy* hearing that Peace was mediating between the two Kings, posted to the *English* Camp, attended by sixteen Horsemen; his Looks and Gestures discovered the Height of his Resentments: At his first Approach to King *Edward*, he broke forth into most passionate and fierce Language, upbraiding King *Edward* with the Courage of the former Kings of *England*, and his own inglorious Sloth. He made a scornful Repetition of the Mirth his Enemies would make at his Return; as if he had come over with so great an Army, (Merchant-like, to traffick for a little Money; and the Contempt he must needs become to his own People, when they should see the great Conquests their Contributions had brought Home. And when it was intimated to him, that he and the Duke of *Bretagne* were included in the Peace; he disdainfully rejected it, protesting that he had persuaded King *Edward* to this Enterprize, not so much for the Care of his own Safety, as for the Love he bore the *English* Name. And to shew how little Dependency his Fortune held on any other, and how without Mediation of an Ally he was able to make his own Peace; he vowed to conclude none with *France*, until the *English* Army had been gone three Months out of that Kingdom; and having said these Things departed in great Discontent.

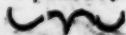
A Peace concluded between the Kings of *France* and *England*.

The Peace being resolved on between the two Kings of *England* and *France*, the Place appointed for Conference was near *Amiens*, where a Peace was soon concluded; the Substance of the Articles of it were as follows: That the *French* King should immediately pay to King *Edward* fifty thousand Crowns and fifty thousand Crowns a Year, during his Life: That *Charles* the Dauphin should marry the Lady *Elizabeth*, King *Edward*'s eldest Daughter, and they two to have for their Maintenance the whole Dukedom of *Gascony*, or else fifty thousand Crowns to be paid annually for nine Years; and at the End of that Time, the *Dauphin* and his Lady were to enjoy *Gascony*: That a general Peace should be concluded for

nine

nine Years, in which the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne* were to be included, if they thought fit. And to compleat all, it was agreed that the two Kings should have a personal Interview at *Perpigny*, a Town three Miles from *Amiens*, seated on the River *Somme*, on which a strong Bridge was built for that Purpose, and in the midst of it a Grate made of cross Bars, the Squares just wide enough for a Man to thrust in his Arm, and the Bridge so broad, that twelve Men might stand in a Rank.

14 Ed. IV.



At the Day appointed, the two Kings repaired to the Place in great Splendor. The King of *France* came first to the Grate, accompanied with twelve Persons of the chief Nobility, and King *Edward* enter'd the other End of the Bridge, with twelve of the chief of his Noblemen; and both gracefully approaching the Grate, with a reverend Bow, and bending of the Knee, the two Monarchs embraced through the Grate with mutual Courtesie. King *Lewis* said, *That he never coveted any Sight so much as this, and that he blessed God, who had brought them together to so glorious an End.* After this an elegant Oration was made, and the Articles of the Peace were read by the Bishop of *Ely*, who was Chancellor of *England*; and then it was demanded of the two Kings, if they were made by their full Consents. Which being acknowledged, each of them laying one Hand on the Missal, and the other on the Cross, took their solemn Oaths to observe the same. After this falling into a more familiar Conversation, *Lewis* with a pleasant Air invited King *Edward* to take a Journey to *Paris*, telling him, *That if any of the fair Ladies there should make him trespass upon his Chastity, the Cardinal of Bourbon would easily afford him Absolution.* After some private Discourse, and the Exchange of some Compliments, both Kings parted with great Satisfaction. Upon the Day of this Interview, before the two Kings met, a white Pigeon happened to light upon King *Edward's* Pavilion, and there prun'd itself after a Shower of Rain, the Sun shining comfortably; the Soldiers cried out it was the Holy Ghost, which descended in that Form, to shew how grateful the present Accord was to Heaven. Which Interpretation exceedingly pleased King *Edward*, since the superstitious Notion tended to advance the Reputation of his Conduct as to that Peace.

An Interview between the two Kings.

At

1474.
The King of
France's Li-
berality to
the English
Nobility.

At what Rate King *Lewis* valued his Amity with *England*, is easily to be judg'd by his profuse Liberali-ty: For he endeavoured to purchase the Affection of the *English* Nobility, by Presents and Pensions, buying them up according to the ordinary Course in Markets; as they were worth in King *Edward's* Estimation, so was their Price raised; even the Duke of *Glocester* himself, who disapproved the Peace, returned not Home without a large Present both of Plate and Horses. One of King *Edward's* Servants, named *Lewis Bretailles*, being with *Comines*, and demanded by him in how many Battles King *Edward* had been present; he answered, *In Nine, and was victorious in all; but in this you have made him lose, for his Return into England without Fighting or Danger, will redound more to his Dishonour, than all his Victories have done to his Honour.* *Lewis* being informed of this Answer, swore, *That this Man's Mouth must of Necessity be bridled;* and immediately sent for him to dine with him, making great offers to engage him in his Service; which he refusing, he gave him a thousand Crowns, with particular Promises, if he would cultivate the Amity between *England* and *France*. King *Edward* having received the Money agreed by Articles, marched to *Calais* in Order to pass into *England*, and being arrived at *London*, was received with the Acclamations and Triumphs of a Conqueror.

1475.
King *Ed-ward* endea-
vours to get
the Earl of
Richmond
from the
Duke of
Bretagne.

Things being thus settled as to *France*, and a Truce being made with the *Scots*, and all dangerous Opposers at Home having been removed either by the Sword or the Ax; King *Edward* was pretty secure. The Life of young *Henry*, Earl of *Richmond*, now in *Bretagne*, was the only Thing could give him Trouble, that Earl being the only Person remaining of the House of *Lancaster*. Therefore he sent Embassadors to the Duke of *Bretagne* with large Sums and fair Promises, pretending that he would marry his eldest Daughter *Elizabeth* to the Earl, by which all unhappy Causes of Dissention might be intirely extinguished. This Pretence induced the Duke of *Bretagne* to deliver up the Earl to the Embassadors, who conducted him to *St. Malo's*, where while they staid for a fair Wind, he made his Escape, and fled to a Sanctuary; and so the Embassadors were forced to return to King *Edward* without him.

King

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

343

King *Edward* now being in a great Measure free from all Apprehensions of Danger, and all Things succeeding without Interruption, he addicted himself to his Pleasures, not only to a profuse Hospitality in Living, but shewed a particular Grandeur to the Eye, by presenting the People with Jufts and Tournaments, and the like, as well as the softer Entertainments of Wit and Ingenuity. And frequently laying aside the State of a Prince, he would be very familiar with the inferior Part of the People. At *Windsor* he sent for the Mayor and Aldermen to hunt, and to eat and drink, and be merry with him. And the like he did at another Time at *Waltham*, where besides a noble and familiar Entertainment to themselves, he sent two Harts, six Bucks, and a Tun of Wine to their Wives, which gained him great good Will among them. He took his full Scope of Liberty in conversing with the Ladies: For besides the Lady *Lucy*, and some others, he kept three Concubines, of whom he used to say, *One was the merriest, another the wittiest, and the third the holiest Harlot in the Kingdom, she being one whom no Man could get out of Church, unless it were to his Bed.* The merriest was *Jane Shore*, Wife to a Citizen in *London*, in whom he greatly delighted.

16 Ed. IV.

His Way of
Living in
Time of
Peace.

In these Times of Ease and Pleasure, the Duke of *Glocester* began to shew his Ambition and Malice, and that chiefly against his own Brother the Duke of *Clarence*. For *Glocester*, who studied nothing but his own Purposes, and cared not by what Violence all Obstacles of Nature and Friendship were removed, so the Way were planed to his Ambition, privately persuaded the Duke of *Clarence* boldly to express his Resentments against King *Edward's* Mismanagement; and on the other Hand, he whispered in the King's Ear the Danger of *Clarence's* Spirit, apt to receive any Discontent, and wanting only Power to make use of unlawful Remedies. The main Thing that wrought his Ruin, was the Queen's Apprehension, that as there had been an Agreement in Parliament, that he should succeed to the Crown upon the Failure of King *Edward's* Heirs, her Children would never succeed their Father. She was confirmed in this Opinion by the Rumour of a Prophecy, that *G.* should be the first Letter of his Name, that should succeed King *Edward*; and this Duke's Name being *George*, it was thought that he

1477.

Designs against the
Duke of
Clarence.

1474.
The King of
France's Li-
berality to
the English
Nobility.

At what Rate King *Lewis* valued his Amity with *England*, is easily to be judg'd by his profuse Liberali-ty: For he endeavoured to purchase the Affection of the *English* Nobility, by Presents and Pensions, buying them up according to the ordinary Course in Markets; as they were worth in King *Edward's* Estimation, so was their Price raised; even the Duke of *Glocester* himself, who disapproved the Peace, returned not Home without a large Present both of Plate and Horses. One of King *Edward's* Servants, named *Lewis Bretilles*, being with *Comines*, and demanded by him in how many Battles King *Edward* had been present; he answered, *In Nine, and was victorious in all; but in this you have made him lose, for his Return into England without Fighting or Danger, will redound more to his Dishonour, than all his Victories have done to his Honour.* *Lewis* being informed of this Answer, swore, *That this Man's Mouth must of Necessity be bridled;* and immediately sent for him to dine with him, making great offers to engage him in his Service; which he refusing, he gave him a thousand Crowns, with particular Promises, if he would cultivate the Amity between *England* and *France*. King *Edward* having received the Money agreed by Articles, marched to *Calais* in Order to pass into *England*, and being arrived at *London*, was received with the Acclamations and Triumphs of a Conqueror.

1475.
King *Ed-ward* endeavours to get the Earl of *Richmond* from the Duke of *Bretagne*.

Things being thus settled as to *France*, and a Truce being made with the *Scots*, and all dangerous Opposers at Home having been removed either by the Sword or the Ax; King *Edward* was pretty secure. The Life of young *Henry*, Earl of *Richmond*, now in *Bretagne*, was the only Thing could give him Trouble, that Earl being the only Person remaining of the House of *Lancaster*. Therefore he sent Embassadors to the Duke of *Bretagne* with large Sums and fair Promises, pretending that he would marry his eldest Daughter *Elizabeth* to the Earl, by which all unhappy Causes of Dissention might be intirely extinguished. This Pretence induced the Duke of *Bretagne* to deliver up the Earl to the Embassadors, who conducted him to *St. Malo's*, where while they staid for a fair Wind, he made his Escape, and fled to a Sanctuary; and so the Embassadors were forced to return to King *Edward* without him.

King

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

343

King *Edward* now being in a great Measure free ^{16 Ed. IV.} from all Apprehensions of Danger, and all Things succeeding without Interruption, he addicted himself to his Pleasures, not only to a profuse Hospitality in Living, but shewed a particular Grandeur to the Eye, by presenting the People with Jufts and Tournaments, and the like, as well as the softer Entertainments of Wit and Ingenuity. And frequently laying aside the State of a Prince, he would be very familiar with the inferior Part of the People. At *Windsor* he sent for the Mayor and Aldermen to hunt, and to eat and drink, and be merry with him. And the like he did at another Time at *Waltham*, where besides a noble and familiar Entertainment to themselves, he sent two Harts, six Bucks, and a Tun of Wine to their Wives, which gained him great good Will among them. He took his full Scope of Liberty in conversing with the Ladies: For besides the Lady *Lucy*, and some others, he kept three Concubines, of whom he used to say, *One was the merriest, another the wittiest, and the third the holiest Harlot in the Kingdom, she being one whom no Man could get out of Church, unless it were to his Bed.* The merriest was *Jane Shore*, Wife to a Citizen in *London*, in whom he greatly delighted.

His Way of
Living in
Time of
Peace.

In these Times of Ease and Pleasure, the Duke of ^{1477.} *Glocester* began to shew his Ambition and Malice, and that chiefly against his own Brother the Duke of *Clarence*. For *Glocester*, who studied nothing but his own Purposes, and cared not by what Violence all Obstacles of Nature and Friendship were removed, so the Way were planed to his Ambition, privately persuaded the Duke of *Clarence* boldly to express his Resentments against King *Edward's* Mismanagement; and on the other Hand, he whispered in the King's Ear the Danger of *Clarence's* Spirit, apt to receive any Discontent, and wanting only Power to make use of unlawful Remedies. The main Thing that wrought his Ruin, was the Queen's Apprehension, that as there had been an Agreement in Parliament, that he should succeed to the Crown upon the Failure of King *Edward's* Heirs, her Children would never succeed their Father. She was confirmed in this Opinion by the Rumour of a Prophecy, that *G.* should be the first Letter of his Name, that should succeed King *Edward*; and this Duke's Name being *George*, it was thought that he would

Designs a-
gainst the
Duke of
Clarence.

1478. *w*ould be the Murtherer of *Edward's* Son, which the Duke of *Glocester* afterwards was. In order to compass his Death, many Things were alledged against him; the most material of which were, that he had caused a Report to be raised, that King *Edward* was illegitimate, and had procured many to swear to him and his Heirs, without reserving due Obedience to his Brother; and that he had pretended to the Crown by Virtue of the Contract he had made with King *Henry VI.* Upon these Accusations he was found guilty by the Parliament, and committed Prisoner to the Tower of *London*, where he was not long after put to Death; the Manner, as it is generally received, was by thrusting his Head into a Butt of *Malmsey* Wine, by which he was suffocated. The Death of this Prince being sudden and extraordinary, begot every where an extraordinary Censure. It was generally condemned, both in Regard of the Manner, it being prodigious to be drowned without Water upon dry Ground; and the Quality of the Person, he being the first Brother to a King in this Country, that ever was attainted. It is related, that King *Edward*, who had consented to it, was afterwards severely afflicted with the Remembrance of it; so that when any sued to him for the Life of a condemned Man, he would cry out; *Oh unfortunate Brother, who had no Man to interceed for him!* This Year the Nation was punished with such a raging Pestilence, that the Wars for fifteen Years before destroyed not so many, as this did in four Months.

He is drown
ed in a Butt
of *Malmsey*.

King *Ed-
ward's* Seve-
rities.

After the Death of the Duke of *Clarence*, King *Edward* began to shew a quite different Temper and Disposition to what he had done before; for whereas before he had been affable and liberal, he now became austere and covetous. For whereas the Laws of *England* had granted many Things in Favour of their Kings, which the Kings themselves seldom put in Execution, as being too full of Rigor; he by Virtue of those Laws, took such Penalties as they that were rich had incurred, for want of a punctual Observance of them. So that a general Fear possessed the People, that his after Government would be both sharp and heavy, considering the first Part of it had not been without Blemish in that Kind.

1481.
A Treaty
with *Scot-
land*.

This Year, the King of *Scotland* sent his Embassadors to King *Edward*, to move and treat of a Marriage between

between the Lady Cecily, King Edward's second Daughter, and his eldest Son. The King and Council approving of the Proposal, furnished the King of Scotland with certain Sums of Money; upon this Condition, that if the intended Marriage should by any Accident be broken off, the Merchants of Edinburgh should be bound for the Repayment of the Money. But the King of Scotland afterwards, by the Instigation of the French King, neglected his Promise and Affinity made with King Edward, and caused an Army to be raised in Order to invade England; and sent a peremptory Message to King Edward; that he should not dare to assist his Sister the Dutcheß of Burgundy against King Lewis, who was his Ally; and also with Menaces of War commanded him to deliver to his Embassadors the Duke of Albany, then residing at the English Court; and lastly, to make full Satisfaction for all the Damages that had been done upon the Borders of Scotland.

King Edward being greatly enraged at these perfidious Dealings of the King of Scots, raised an Army, prepared his Artillery, and fitted out a Navy to be ready early in the Spring, and appointed his Brother Richard Duke of Gloucester his Lieutenant; who with several Lords, and the Duke of Albany himself, marched into the North with the Army, consisting of upwards of twenty thousand Men. The first Enterprize that was undertaken was the Siege of Berwick, after which he marched to Edinburgh, laying all waste with Fire and Sword. Being arrived there, the Duke sent to King James, demanding of him the Performance of his Covenants, concerning the Marriage between his Son Prince James and the Lady Cicely, threatening Ruin and Devastation, if the Marriage was not consummated. The Scots Nobility seeing their imminent Danger, put to Death such wicked Counsellors as had put King James on those perfidious Measures, ordained the Duke of Albany Vicegerent of Scotland, and promised to repay the Money received according to Covenants; which being effected, and the Town of Berwick surrendered to the English, the Duke of Gloucester returns to London in a great deal of Pomp: And by the Way he caused the Honour of this Action to be divulged with the greatest Applause, thereby to insinuate his Reputation into the common People, and to shew how much more nobly

A War commences with the Scots.

1482.

he, in this Expedition against *Scotland*, had managed the Peace for the Honour of the *English* Nation, than his Brother King *Edward* had in his undertaking against *France*: His Flatterers also giving it out, that if their General had but had Commission ample enough, he would not have returned before he had reduced the whole Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Obedience of *England*. And in this Expedition did the Duke of *Glocester* lay the Foundation of all his after Achievements in attaining the Crown; for by the Plunder of *Scotland* he gained the Affections of the Soldiery, and by his Courage and Conduct got Estimation among the Nobility.

1483.
King *Edward*
deluded
by *France*.

As King *Edward* had been disappointed in the Marriage of his second Daughter to *Scotland*, so was he also in that of his eldest Daughter to *France*. For he being of too easie Belief, suffer'd himself to be deluded by King *Lewis*, nor would be persuaded to believe his Infidelity, till the Lord *Howard* returning from *France*, told him, that he was present, and saw the Lady *Margaret* of *Austria* receiv'd into *France* in great Pomp and Splendor, and contracted and espoused to the Dauphin at *Ambois*. But then the King was so provok'd at the Indignity offer'd to him, and the Falseness of *Lewis*, that he resolv'd upon a Revenge. The Lords also resented the Affront with Indignation, and desir'd that instant Preparations might be made for War; and the Duke of *Glocester* was so zealous for it, that he express'd his Desire aloud, *that all his Estate might be spent, and all his Veins emptied in Revenge of this Injury*. All the Court was presently for the Design, and the whole Kingdom with a fierce Appetite desir'd to arm. The King eagerly persued his Determination, and that very Spring resolv'd to begin the War. But he was diverted on the sudden from calling *Lewis* to an Account for his Crimes, and summon'd by Death to give a strict Account of all his own.

The King's
Preparation
for Death.

Concerning the Occasion of his Death, there are various Opinions. Those who favour not the Duke of *Glocester* ascribe it to Poison, administred to make Way for his ambitious Designs of mounting the Throne. The *French* impute it to Grief or Anxiety of Mind at the Indignities offer'd him by the King of *France*; but the most probable Opinion is, that it was a Surfeit which brought him to his End. Whatsoever was the Cause, he finding little Hopes of Recovery, began to consider the

the Va
with th
upon t
cerned
ed and
gan to
Time
comm
deavou
Contri
tice.
then in
mende
Sons.
left to
advisin
tion wo
the yon
in the
selves
vance
Where
ger Ra
be sole
Crown
relspil
juries
the T
Age,
two Y
The
was c
on a T
by the
The n
where
and D
Night
eight
ster-A
ver'd
of Clo
Imper
Knigh
so by

the Vanity of all his Victories, which he had purchased with the Expence of so much Blood. He look'd back upon the Beauty of his sensual Pleasures, and now discerned it was only fair on the Outside, inwardly deformed and rotten. Perceiving his Doom inevitable, he began to order his Affairs as well as the Shortness of the Time would permit. The great Affair of the Soul he committed to the Mercy of his Redeemer, and he endeavoured to expiate the Crimes of his past Life by Contrition and the Use of the Sacraments then in Practice. Then causing his Lords, which were numerous, then in Court, to be sent for, he pathetically recommended to them the Care of the young Princes his Sons. The Protection of the King and Kingdom he left to the Lords nearest in Kindred to his Children, advising them to *Amity and Concord, by which the Nation would flourish in Greatness abroad, and Safety at home; the young King be secur'd from Flattery, and instructed in the best Discipline for Government; and they themselves live in much Honour and Felicity, if united to advance the Commonwealth, and oppose all foreign Danger: Whereas Discord would beget civil War, and that endanger Ruin.* Among his Words of Farewel at his Death, he solemnly protested his Repentance for obtaining the Crown with so much Blood, as the Necessity of the Quarrels spilt. Having also desired Forgiveness of all the Injuries he had done to any Persons, he expir'd amidst the Tears of those about him in the 42^d Year of his Age, upon the 9th of April, after a Reign of twenty two Years, one Month and five Days.

23 Ed. IV.

He dies.

The Manner of his Burial was thus: First the Corps was covered from the Navel to the Knees, and so laid on a Table naked above for twelve Hours, to be view'd by the Nobility and Gentry, and then he was seared. The next Day it was brought to St. Stephen's Chapel, where three Masses were sung over it in the Morning, and *Dirige & Commendam* in the Afternoon; and by Nights he was watch'd by his Nobles and Servants for eight Days; on the ninth he was conveyed to *Westminster-Abbey*, born by several Knights and Esquires, cover'd over by a large black Cloth of Gold, with a Cross of Cloth of Silver, and over that a rich Canopy of Cloth Imperial fring'd with Gold and black Silk, born by four Knights, having at the Corners four Banners, born also by four Knights; the first of the *Trinity*, the second

His Interment.

1483.



of our *Lady*, the third of *St. George*, and the fourth of *St. Edward*. The Lord *Howard* carried the King's Banner, and the Officers of Arms surrounded him. On the Hearse in *Westminster-Abbey*, above the Body and Cloth of Gold, was the Effigies of the King in royal Robes, having a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in one Hand, and a Globe of Silver in the other, with a Cross *Pattee*. Then after many Solemnities had been performed, the Corps was laid on a Chariot drawn by six Horses, and so was carried in great Pomp to *Charing-Cross*, where the Chariot was cens'd, and from thence to *Eaton*, where it was met by the Procession of *Windfor*. When it came to the Castle-Gate, the Archbishop of *York* and Bishop of *Winchester* cens'd the Corps, and from thence it was carried to the new Church, and was there buried with all Solemnities befitting so great and victorious a King.

His Person
and Character.

Comines relates, that he was the goodliest Gentleman that ever his Eyes beheld, tall of Stature, fair of Complexion, and of a most noble Presence. He had a courageous Heart, a magnanimous Disposition, politick in Council, witty in Conversation, and in Adversity undaunted. He was not proud, yet very ambitious, and to gain his Ends, no Man was Master of more insinuating Methods than himself. But among all his shining Qualifications, he could set no Bounds to his Lust or Ambition, in both of which he was remarkably punish'd: For his two Sons were both deprived of all Things by their unnatural Uncle. As to his Ambition, tho' according to the exact Rules of Lineal Succession, he had the nearest Right to the Crown, yet considering his innumerable Perjuries, Treasons, Bloodsheds and other Calamities, his and his Father's Actions were less justifiable than those of many real Usurpers. As for his Descent, he proceeded from a very unfortunate Family, he being the only Male of all his House except a Child of *Richard III.* that died a natural Death after it had claimed the Crown. His Grandfather was beheaded at *Southampton*, his Father slain before *Sandall*; of his three Brothers, the Earl of *Rutland* was slain in cold Blood, the Duke of *Clarence* drowned in a Butt of *Malmsey*, his two Sons strangled by their Uncle the Duke of *Glocester*, who afterwards lost both Life and Kingdom in Battle. Besides two Sons, *Edward* left seven Daughters, of which *Elizabeth* the eldest

birth of
King's
n. On
dy and
n royal
pter in
with a
ad been
awn by
to *Cha-*
d from
ocession
ate, the
ns'd the
he new
ities be-

ntleman
f Com-
a cou-
itick in
sity un-
us, and
e insinu-
shining
Luft or
unish'd:
ings by
tho' ac-
ion, he
sidering
eds and
s were
rs. As
fortunate
use ex-
Death
ner was
re *San-*
was slain
ed in a
eir Un-
st both
ns, *Ed-*
the el-
dest





KING EDWARD THE V.TH

deft
ry V
In
Arts
Chan
the L
Little
duc'd
was
and S
jocul
Caxt
Engl
John



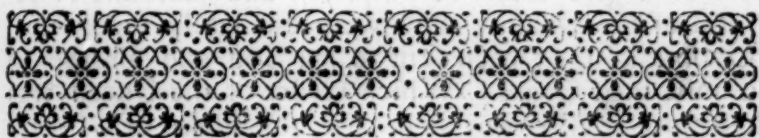
K
old,
Prim
King
ed a
he v
bou
Cou
Que
to b
turn
on l
For
disp
his
secre
you
lati
Att

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

549

deft met with good Fortune, and was married to *Henry VII.*

In this Reign flourished several Persons eminent for Arts and Learning; as *John Fortescue*, a Judge and Chancellor of *England*, famous for his Knowledge in the Laws and Constitutions of the Realm; *Thomas Littleton*, a Judge of the Common-Pleas, who reduc'd great Part of the Law into Method, which before was confusely disperfed; *Scogan*, a learned Gentleman and Student at *Oxford*, who for his pleasant Wit and jocular Conceits, was called to Court; and *William Caxton*, a Mercer of *London*, who brought Printing into *England*, which was first found out in *Germany* by *John Gutterbergen*, about the Year 1440.



The Reign of King EDWARD V.

KING *Edward IV.* left behind him two Sons, *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, twelve Years and five Months old, and *Richard* Duke of *York*, about nine Years of Age. Prince *Edward*, when his Father died, was proclaimed King, and was at *Ludlow* in *Shropshire*, where he had resided a considerable Time, in Order to awe the *Welsh*. While he was there, he had many of his Mother's Relations about him, and the Lord *Rivers* was appointed his chief Counsellor and Director. This placing so many of the Queen's Friends about the young Prince was thought to be good Policy in her; but the Duke of *Glocester* turned it to their Destruction, and upon that Foundation built all his ambitious Aims of aspiring at the Throne. For whomsoever he found either Friends to himself, or displeas'd with them, he by various Methods imparted his Thoughts to them, either by Word, Writing, or secret Messages, that it was not to be suffered, that the young King should be in the Hands of his Mother's Relations, sequestred in a Manner from their Company and Attendance, who were far superior to them both in Birth

Ed. V.
Young *Edward* proclaimed King.

The Duke of *Glocester* aspires at the Crown.

1483.

and Merits. By these and the like Insinuations, he brought over many to his Purposes; especially the Duke of *Buckingham* and the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings*, both of great Power and Authority. These two agreed with the Duke of *Glocester*, to remove from about the King all his Mother's Friends, under the Name of Enemies to the Publick. The Duke of *Glocester* having gained this Point, and understanding that the Lords who were about the King design'd to bring him to *London* to be crown'd, attended with such Numbers of his Friends, that it would be difficult for him to effect his ambitious Designs, without such a Power as would raise the Appearance of a Rebellion; he therefore by his Emissaries perswaded the Queen, that if the young King came to *London* with such a numerous Retinue, it would give Cause of Suspicion and Jealousie to several of the Nobility who were but lately reconciled. Upon this, the Queen sent to her Son and Brother to dismiss their Guard. Which Order of the Queen was the more readily obey'd, because the Duke of *Glocester* himself, and other Lords of his Party, had wrote to the King so reverently, and with so much Respect, that the King, without any Suspicion, set forwards with an inconsiderable Train.

He goes to
meet King
Edward at
Northampton.

The Duke of *Glocester* having succeeded in this, he with the Duke of *Buckingham* and other Lords, resolved to meet the King in his Passage to *London*; and being come to *Northampton*, where the King was arriv'd, under Pretence that it was incommodious for so many to lodge in the same Place, they perswaded the King to go twelve Miles farther to *Stony Stratford*. But the two Dukes of *Glocester* and *Buckingham* staid behind, and under Pretence of Honour, kept the Earl of *Rivers* with them, entertaining him with the utmost Tokens of Civility and Respect. Upon his going to his Lodgings, they caused the Keys of the Gates to be brought to them, to secure any from going out, and sent Orders to all their Attendants, who were quartered in the neighbouring Villages, to be ready on Horseback early in the Morning, and secure the Way to *Stony Stratford* from all Passengers going thither. The Earl of *Rivers* being under some Apprehensions, resolved to go himself and discover the Bottom of this Design; but the two Dukes knowing what he intended, began in a very rough Manner

The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

551

1 Ed. V.

Manner to charge him with endeavouring to keep them from the King and ruin them, and seizing him, committed him into the Custody of some of their Servants. This being done, they immediately posted to *Stony Stratford*, where they found the King just ready to mount his Horse, and with the utmost Reverence address'd themselves to him. Then coming up to the Lord *Gray*, the King's half Brother, they immediately accused him with joining with his Brother the Marquis of *Dorset*, and his Uncle the Earl of *Rivers*, to get the Government of the King and Kingdom into their own Hands, and sowing Divisions among the Nobility, charging the Marquis with having taken out of the Tower of *London* all the royal Treasure, and with having sent Men to Sea for dangerous Designs. To which King *Edward* reply'd, That as to what concerned the Marquis, he was ignorant, because of his Absence; but as to his Uncle *Rivers*, and his Brother *Richard*, he was sure they could not be guilty, because they had always been in his Company. To this *Buckingham* made Answer, *That his Majesty was deceiv'd; that their Designs were conceal'd from him; and that they did not deserve to be excus'd by so good a Prince.* And then immediately arrested the Lord *Richard* and several others in the King's Presence, and then the King, instead of going forwards to *London*, was carried back to *Northampton*. Then the Duke of *Glocester* removing from about the King such of his Attendance as he pleas'd, put others of his own Creatures in their Places, at which the poor young King could not refrain from Tears. The next Day, according to his usual Dissimulation, the Duke of *Glocester* sent a Dish of Meat from his own Table, to the Earl of *Rivers*, desiring him *to be at Ease, for all should be well.* The Earl return'd him Thanks, desir'd the Messenger to carry it to his Nephew *Richard*, for he being young, and unaccustomed to Adversity, stood more in Need of this Favour. But after all this feigned Courtesy, and being sent from Prison, they were all carried to *Pontfract*, and afterwards lost their Heads.

The News of these Transactions being brought to the Queen in the Night, she immediately guess'd at the Duke of *Glocester's* Designs, and then heartily repented her advising her Brother to disband his Forces, and apparently saw the Danger that she and her Sons were in, and immediately fled with her Children from her Palace,

The Queen
Mother
takes Sanctu-
ary.

1483.

Palace, and took Sanctuary at *Westminster*. The Lord *Hastings* having receiv'd the like Advice, and of the Queen and her Childrens being retir'd into the Sanctuary, sent after Midnight to the Archbishop of *York*, acquainting him with it, assuring him, *that all would be well*. To which the Archbishop hastily answered, *Be it as it will, it will never be so well as we have seen it;* and immediately rose from his Bed, and causing all his Family to arm themselves, he took the great Seal, and went to the Sanctuary to the Queen. When he came there, he found nothing but Hurry and Confusion, People jostling each other, some carrying in Goods, others going out to fetch more, and Sighs and Lamentations every where. The Queen her self was sitting on the Ground with her Children in a most disconsolate Manner, whom the Archbishop comforted with such Reasons as Hope then could suggest, also acquainting her with the Message sent to him by the Lord *Hastings*: But the Queen reply'd, *He was the Man that endeavoured the utter Extirpation of her Blood*. Upon this the Archbishop answered, *That if any other King should be crowned but her eldest Son, they would crown the Duke of York, who was now in her Possession*, and delivered her the Great Seal of *England* for her Son's Use, and so departed about Day-light. But being returned home, and from his Window seeing the *Thames* cover'd with Boats fill'd with the Duke of *Glocester's* Servants, watching if any went by Water to the Sanctuary, and hearing that there were Cabals and Tumults in the City, he considering the Seal could be no Advantage to the Queen, sent for it again.

The Cause of
the Commotions in *London*.

The Tumults and Commotions in the City were occasioned by the Apprehension the People were under that the Proceedings at *Northampton* were designed to hinder the Coronation of the young King, and more Troubles had likely ensued, had not the Lord *Hastings* at a publick Assembly assured them, "That the Lords *Rivers, Gray*, and the rest were imprisoned for certain Conspiracies against the Dukes of *Glocester* and *Buckingham*, as would appear by due Process of Law: "That the Fidelity of the Duke of *Glocester* was not "to be doubted, since he had always been faithful to "the King; and that it might prove of dangerous Consequence to suspect it, and not to lay down their "Arms readily." These Assurances, and the hearing that

that the King was coming to *London*, attended by his Uncle with all due Respect, quieted the greatest Part of the People.

By this Time the Lords, who seem'd as zealous for the King's Coronation as his Uncle had been, and behaved themselves with so much Reverence and Respect to the King, that he suspected no ill Designs in them, were upon their March to *London*. By the Way as they pass'd, the Duke of *Glocester* demeaned himself as a dutiful Subject; and that he might give a Demonstration to the People of the treacherous Designs of the Lord *Rivers*, and the Queen's Friends, against himself and the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Duke's Servants shew'd the Barrels of Harness which they had privily convey'd in their Carriage to murder them; which altho' a great many did not believe, yet others were so wrought upon by the Duke's Emissaries, that they cried out, *That it would be a great Service to the Nation to hang them.* When the King and Dukes drew nigh to *London*, the Mayor and Sheriffs, with all the Aldermen in Scarlet, and five hundred Commoners on Horseback in Purple-Gowns, met them at *Harnsey-Park*, and with great Honour and Reverence conducted him thro' the City to the Bishop of *London's* Palace near *St. Paul's Church* the 4th of *May*. In this Cavalcade the Behaviour of the Duke of *Glocester* to the King was very remarkable, for he rode bare-headed before him, and often with a loud Voice said to the People, *Behold your Prince and Sovereign*; by which Actions he so won upon all the Spectators, that they look'd on the late Representations of him as the Effect of his Enemies Malice. At the Bishop's Palace he did the King Homage, and invited all the Nobility to do the same; by which he put his Loyalty out of Dispute with the Nobles, and by this and such like Methods he got himself to be made Protector to the young King during his Minority.

The Duke of *Glocester* having gained this main Point, was resolved to proceed in his Design of stepping into the Throne; but there was another Difficulty behind that he had to get over; for tho' he had got the King into his Custody, yet if he were destroy'd, his Brother the Duke of *York* would still succeed; and this requir'd the Exercise of his utmost Policy: For the Queen being suspicious of him, and the young Duke in a Place

Ed. V.

The young King enters *London*.

The Duke of *Glocester* endeavours to get the King's Brother into his Possession.

not

1483.

not to be violated, he could not come at him, but by Deceit or Sacrilege. Therefore at the next Meeting of the Council, he began to represent the Queen as highly to blame in detaining the Duke of York in Sanctuary, *when the Honour, the Health and Conveniency of the King requir'd his Presence and Company with him in his Palace*; declaring, "That the Coronation could not be performed without Scandal, while the Duke of York, who was to be the second in the Solemnity, continued in a Sanctuary, a Shelter for Criminals and Delinquents. Therefore, that in his Opinion some Person should be sent to the Queen, whom she did not mistrust, to persuade her to deliver him up; and that if this did not prevail, the Duke of York by regal Power should be taken out of his Prison, and brought to the King his Brother." After several Debates about the Matter, it was resolved, that the Cardinal Archbishop of York should go to the Queen to persuade her to deliver him up; but if he could not prevail with her so to do, the Duke should be taken out by Force, and brought to them.

The Arch-
shop of York
goes to the
Queen.

The Council having come to this Conclusion, they remov'd to the Star-Chamber, there to expect what would be the Issue. The Cardinal went to the Queen, attended with several Lords, telling her, *He was sent by the Protector and Privy Council to let her know how much her detaining the Duke of York in that Place had given Offence to them and others; as if one Brother lived in Danger, and could not be preserved but by the Life of the other. Therefore they desired and expected to have the Duke set at Liberty, and to be with his Brother where they might not only be a Comfort to each other, but he live answerable to his own Condition and Quality.* And after much Discourse and Persuasion, finding the Queen averse to any Compliance, he proceeded to inform her, that she neither ought nor could keep him in Sanctuary, and that to take him thence by Force would be no Violation of it. To all the Cardinal alledged, the Queen gave distinct and rational Answers, and at last very plainly declar'd the Apprehensions she was under from the Protector. Upon this the Cardinal, who had a better Opinion of him than the Queen had, grew warm, and told her, *He was not sent to argue with her, but to demand the Duke; and if she would deliver him to them, he would pawn his Body and Soul for his Safety.*

The

The Reign of King EDWARD V.

555

The poor Queen was now reduc'd to the greatest Perplexities, considering the Hazards she ran, whether she deliver'd him up to them or not. But supposing the Mischief would be greater in having him taken from her by Force, than parting with him by Choice, she was willing to hope that her Suspicions might be groundless: Therefore taking the young Duke by the Hand, she spoke thus; *My Lord Cardinal, and you my Lords, I am not so opinionated of my self, or so ill advi'd concerning you, as to mistrust either your Wisdom or Fidelity, as I shall prove to you by reposing such a Trust in you, as if either of them be wanting in you, will redound to my inexpressible Grief, the Damage of the whole Realm, and your eternal Shame and Disgrace: For lo! here is my Son, and tho' I doubt not but I could keep him safe in this Sanctuary from all Violence, yet here I resign him into your Hands. I am sensible that I run great Hazards in so doing; for I have some so great Enemies to my Blood, that if they knew where any of it lay in their own Veins, they would presently let it out, and much more in others, and the nearer to me the more zealously. Experience also convinces us all, that the Desires of a Kingdom know no Kindred. The Brother in that Case hath been the Destruction of the Brother, and the Son of his Father; and have we any Reason to think the Uncle would be more tender of his Nephews? I do here deliver him, and his Brother in him, to your keeping, of whom I shall require him again at all Times before God and the World. Then assuring them of her Confidence in their Abilities and Fidelity, she added, One thing I conjure you, by the Trust which his Father ever repos'd in you, and for the Confidence I now put in you, that as you think I fear too much, you will be cautious that you fear not too little, because your Credulity here may make an irrecoverable Mistake. Having thus spoken, she turn'd to the Child, and said to him, Farewel mine own sweet Son, the Almighty be thy Protector: Let me kiss thee once more before we part, for God knows when we shall kiss again; and then having kiss'd him, she bless'd him, and turned from him and wept, and so went away, leaving the Child with the Lords, weeping also for her Departure.*

The Cardinal having gotten the Duke of York from his Mother, immediately led him to the *Star-Chamber*, where the Protector and Lords of the Council staid in Expectation of him. The Protector receiv'd him with

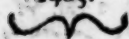
1 Ed. V.

The Queen, tho' unwillingly, delivers the Duke of York.

The Duke of York carried to his Brother.

all

1483.



all the seeming Kindness imaginable, and taking him in his Arms, kiss'd him, saying, *Now welcome, my Lord, with all my Heart*, and the same Day carried him to the King his Brother at the Bishop of *London's* Palace, near *St. Paul's* Church; from whence with much Pomp and State, they were a few Days after conducted to the Tower, from whence they never departed.

Buckingham
engages with
the Protector
in his De-
signs to take
the Crown.

Tho' the Protector had gained this Point, yet he was at a Stand how to proceed; but that the People at present might be amus'd with a Belief of the Reality of his Design to proceed with all convenient Speed to the Coronation of the young King, he appointed the Archbishops, Bishop of *Ely*, Lords *Stanley*, *Hastings*, and others, to sit in Council at *Baynard's*-Castle, to order Matters for it. For tho' he intended rather his own Coronation than the young King's, he still wanted the Assistance of some particular Men, and especially the Duke of *Buckingham*. In Order therefore to bring him over to his Designs, he suborn'd certain Persons about the Duke, to represent to him how highly the King was offended with him for imprisoning his Mother's Relations; so that if they should be releas'd, they would bear him a mortal Grudge; and if they were put to Death, he was sure to incur the King's Anger so much, that he could hope for nothing but Misfortunes on all Hands. Having by these Insinuations made him apprehensive of Danger, and predisposed him to lay hold of an Opportunity of securing himself, the Protector invited him to a Conference, at which he desir'd his Assistance, in taking upon him the Crown of *England*, shewing him the Judgment of the Civil Lawyers concerning the Illegitimacy of his Brother's Children; promising that his Son should marry the Duke's Daughter, and that he would give him the Earldom of *Hereford*, with all the Appurtenances; which, tho' his Inheritance, yet had been unjustly kept from him by his Brother; that he would allow him a large Share of the King's Treasure, and so much of the Wardrobe as should furnish his House; and lastly, that he would settle upon him and his Posterity the Office of the High Constable of *England*, which his Ancestors by Descent for many Generations had enjoy'd.

The Duke of *Buckingham* being by these Measures brought over to promote the Protector's Designs, he became so zealous an Actor for him, that he soon brought many

many of his Friends into the same Designs with him, and with the Protector constituted a Council which sat at *Crosby's Place*, the Protector's Mansion-House, to contrive to settle the Crown on his Head; but this Council met very privately. This Council had not sat long, but the other Council that had sat at *Baynard's Castle*, to order Matters for the young King's Coronation, began to be jealous that there were some bad Designs on Foot, and the Lord *Stanley* openly declar'd his Suspicions; but the Lord *Hastings* assuring them that there was one of his Friends in that Council, that there could nothing be spoke of ill against him, but that it would be brought to his Ears almost as soon as out of their Mouths, they relying upon his Words, and being willing to construe all Things for the best, laid themselves open to Ruin.

The Jealousies of the Council at *Baynard's Castle* soon came to the Knowledge of the Protector and *Buckingham*; who tho' they seem'd to take no Notice of it, yet they came to Resolutions within themselves, either to win them over to their Party, or to secure them from being Enemies; and to this End they shew'd great Favour to the Lord *Hastings*, who had a great Influence over all the rest, and made Use of one *Catesby*, who was a special Confident of the Lord *Hastings*, to propound the Design to him. This *Catesby* coming to the Lord *Hastings*, who had not the least Mistrust of him, after a great deal of other Discourse about the present Circumstances of his Affairs, asks his Opinion about the Protector's Title to the Crown; insinuating, that if it might be lawfully done, it would be much better that an experienc'd Person, and a brave Commander, should rule than a Child. The Lord *Hastings* presuming upon *Catesby's* Fidelity, freely open'd his Mind to him, telling him, *he had rather see the Death and Destruction of the Protector and Duke of Buckingham, than the young King depriv'd of the Crown; and that if he discern'd any Designs that Way in any Persons whatsoever, he would engage his utmost Power against them.* These Words were carried to the Protector presently, who received the Account with much Regret, because he had a great Love for the Lord *Hastings*, who had done him many Kindnesses in his Brother's Days, and therefore engag'd *Catesby* to win him if possible; but *Catesby* hoping, by the Death of *Hastings* and the Protector's Favour,

Ed. V.

Two distinct Councils.

Catesby's Treachery to the Lord Hastings.

1483.

W Favour, to obtain the great Rule and Trust that the Lord *Hastings* had in the Counties of *Leicester* and *Northampton*, represented *Hastings* so irreconcilable to the Protector's Proceedings, that he chang'd his Love into Hatred to him; and he seeing that his Life would be a great Impediment to him in his Designs, resolv'd to take it away; which was agreed upon in the following Manner.

The Protec-
tor causes
the Lord
Hastings to
be beheaded.

The Protector ordered a great Council to meet at the Tower on the 13th of *June*, on Pretence of concluding all Things for the Coronation, which drew on apace, the Pageants being a making Day and Night, and the Victuals kill'd ready for it. The Lords of this Council met very early in the Morning, and sat close to their Business; the Protector came to them about nine of the Clock, and having very courteously saluted all the Lords, and excus'd his coming so late, sat down and discoursed with them a while about the Business in Hand, and was very pleasant and jocular in his Talk. Then diverting his Discourse, he said to the Bishop of *Ely*, *My Lord, you have very good Strawberries in your Garden at Holbourn, I desire you to let us have a Dish to Dinner.* The Bishop taking it for a Favour, immediately sent a Servant for them. A little after this, the Protector obliging them to proceed in their Councils, requested them to dispense with his Absence a while, and so departed. About an Hour after he returned again, but with such an angry Countenance, knitting his Brows, frowning and biting his Lips, that they were all amazed at so sudden and great an Alteration. He sat silent for some Time: But at Length demanded of them, *What Punishment they deserved who had plotted his Death, who was so near in Blood to the King, and by Office the Protector of the King's Person and Realm?* The Lords of the Council were much startled at this Question, and sat silent. The Lord Chamberlain *Hastings*, who was always very familiar with the Protector, reply'd, *That they ought, without Exception, to be punish'd as Traitors.* To which the rest assenting, the Protector said, *And that hath that Sorceress my Brother's Wife, with others her Accomplices, endeavoured to do:* At which those who favoured the Queen, were much concerned. But the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* was well enough content that the Crime was not laid upon any that he lov'd better, but he was displeased that the Protector had not communicated it to him,

him, as he had done his Designs to put the Queen's Kindred to Death (which was by his Advice and Approbation to be done that Day at Pontfract-Castle) little thinking his own Execution should be the same Day at London. The Protector still went on in his Complaints, saying, *See in what a miserable Manner that Sorcerers and Shore's Wife, with others their Associates, have by their Sorcery and Witchcraft miserably destroy'd my Body; and unbuttoning his Sleeve, shew'd them his Arm fleshless, dry and withered, saying, Thus would they by Degrees have destroy'd my whole Body, in a short Time, if they had not been discovered.* The Lords, several of them, knowing his Arm had never been otherwise, immediately conceiv'd he had some base Design; especially since it was so improbable that the Queen should so intimately associate with Shore's Wife, whom she mortally hated; she having been the Concubine on whom her Husband most doated. However the Mention of Shore's Wife sensibly touch'd the Lord Hastings, because he had long lov'd her in the King's Life, and after kept her for his Mistress; therefore he answer'd with some Extenuation, *If they have been thus guilty, they deserve beinous Punishment.* The Protector laying hold of this Answer, cry'd, *What, dost thou answer me with Ifs and Ands, I tell thee they are thus guilty, that I'll make good on thy Body, Traitor.* Having said this, he gave a great Blow, as an appointed Signal, upon which a Cry of Treason was heard from without, and the Door being suddenly forc'd open, the Room was immediately fill'd with arm'd Men, and one of them striking at the Lord Stanley, had certainly cleft his Head in two had he not nimbly shrunk beneath the Table, yet not so timely, but that he receiv'd a very great Wound. The Protector immediately arrested the Lord Hastings for a Traytor, securing all the rest of the Council there present, and swore by St. Paul, *That he would not dine before he saw Hastings's Head taken off.* He petitioned for a fair Trial, but neither that, nor for a longer Preparation for Death did any Thing avail him; but being obliged to take the next Priest he could get, he made a short Confession, Time not being allow'd him to make a longer; and being led to the Green before the Tower-Chapel, he had his Head struck off upon a Log of Timber.

The Death of this great Lord, as it was sudden and unexpected, so there seemed to have been several ominous Omens of the Lord Hastings's Death.

1483.

nous Prefages of it. For besides a remarkable Dream of the Lord Stanley's, which occasioned his advising him to fly from Danger, a Passage worthy of Note hapned that Morning before he went to Council. For when he came to *Tower-Wharf*, within a Stone's Cast of the Place where his Head was cut off a few Hours after, he met with a Pursevant of his own Name, call'd *Hastings*, who having met him in the same Place when he lay under King *Edward's* Displeasure, thro' the Accusation of the Lord *Rivers*, and was in great Danget of his Life, put him in Mind of his former Danger, and thereupon he fell into a Discourse with him about it, and said, *Ab Hastings! dost thou remember when I once met thee in this Place before with an heavy Heart? Yes, my Lord* (said he) *very well, and Thanks be to God, your Enemies got no Good, and you no Harm by it. You would say so indeed* (said the Lord *Hastings*) *if you knew as much as I do now, or as you will shortly. I was never so afraid of my Life as I was then; but now Matters are well mended with me: Mine Enemies are now in as great Danger as I was then;* (this he, said, knowing that by his and others Advice, the Protector had given Orders for the Execution of the Lord *Rivers*, Lord *Gray*, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan* at *Ponfract*,) *and I never was merrier nor more secure in all my Life.* In this Lord's so sudden and extraordinary Execution the Vengeance of Heaven appears very perspicuous, not only because of the taking off the Heads of *Rivers*, *Gray*, and others, that Day by his Advice, but because he had formerly imbrued his Hands in the innocent Blood of Prince *Edward*, King *Henry's* Son.

The Protec-
tor vindic-
ates him-
self.

The Protector having thus far proceeded to open himself a Way to the Crown, by removing all that stood in Opposition to it; yet knowing that the Lord *Hastings* was in great Esteem among the People, he cast about him what Method to take to justify the Severity of his Proceedings, and appease the Murmurs of the People, and at last fixt upon this Contrivance. Immediately after Dinner he sent for the Mayor and chief Citizens of *London* to the Tower, and having put on old rusty Armour, which lay neglected in the Tower, and commanded the Duke of *Buckingham* to do the same, as if the Greatness of their Surprise and Danger had afforded them no Time to procure better, and thus harnassed, he and the Duke stood to receive them.

As soon as they came, having observed to them the Mercy of Heaven in their having escaped the Treason of *Hastings* and others, he sent a Herald of Arms into the City with a Proclamation in the King's Name, setting forth that the Lord *Hastings* and some others had conspired the same Day to have slain the Lord Protector and Duke of *Buckingham*, and to have taken the Government of the King and Kingdom into their own Hands; alledging many Crimes against the Lord *Hastings*, and among the rest, those of *Shore's* Wife. This Proclamation, which was published within two Hours after the Lord *Hastings's* Execution, was so finely indited, so long and so fairly engross'd on Parchment, that it was easy to be perceiv'd it was prepar'd beforehand, which occasion'd various Discourses, some not doubting to say, *It was wrote by the Spirit of Prophecy.*

The Protector having done this to excuse his Cruelty to the Lord *Hastings*, thought himself oblig'd to proceed against *Jane Shore*, whom he had accus'd of the same Treason. He therefore sent Sir *Thomas Howard* to her House, and seiz'd on all her Goods to the Value of above three thousand Marks, and committed her Prisoner to the Tower; and soon after she being brought to her Examination before the Lords of the Council, the Protector laid to her Charge, *That she had endeavoured his Ruin and Destruction several Ways, and particularly by Witchcraft had decayed his Body, and with the Lord Hastings had contrived to assassinate him.* But she having defended her self very well against these Accusations, he fell upon her for Incontinency, which she could not deny; and for that the Protector delivered her over to the Bishop of *London*, who enjoined her to do Penance after the most publick Manner, in *St. Paul's Church*, which she accordingly did the next *Sunday Morning*, after this Manner. Mrs. *Shore* being deprived of all her Ornaments, and clothed with a white Sheet, was brought by Way of Procession, with a Cross carried before her, and a Wax Taper in her Hand from the Bishop's Palace to *St. Paul's Church*, thro' great Crouds of Spectators; and there standing before the Preacher, acknowledged, in a set Form, her open Wickedness, and declared her Repentance for it. She behaved her self with so much Modesty and Decency, that she never appeared more beautiful than now; for she being a handsome Woman, and wanting nothing

1483. but a little Blush in her Face; the Shame of this Act supplied that so well, that the Spectators were charmed with her comely Aspect, and blamed the Protector's Severity, knowing that he did it more out of Hatred to her Person than Sin, and Malice than Love to Virtue.

Jane Shore's Character.

This remarkable Woman was well born and educated, and married to a substantial Citizen; but being drawn to this Match rather by Interest than Affection, by her Parents Choice, than her own Inclination, King *Edward* had the easier Task to win her, and to cause her to break through all the Obligations of her Duty. She lived many Years in King *Edward's* Court, and tho' he had many Concubines, and some of them of greater Quality, yet he loved her best for her ingenious and witty Behaviour. She demeaned her self with admirable Prudence, was not exalted by the King's Favour, but always used it more to the Benefit of others, than her self. Where the King took Displeasure against any Man, she would mitigate his Anger: For many Offenders she obtained Remissions of Fines and Pardons, and caused many confiscated Estates to be returned for none, or very small Reward. She was more desirous to serve others than enrich her self; rather to do good Turns than receive them. She was affable and obliging, generous and charitable; and in a Word, her Adultery was her only Fault; and tho' indeed she was afterwards, in her old Age, reduc'd to Poverty; yet it was a Reproach to hundreds that she was so, whom she kept from Beggary; who, if they had been grateful to requite her for those Kindnesses in her Want, that she scorn'd to sell in her Prosperity, she might have lived till her Death in a Condition equal to her Birth and Degree.

The Earl Rivers, &c. executed at Pontefract.

The Protector had given Orders, that on the same Day that the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* was beheaded at *London*, the Earl of *Rivers*, and Lord *Gray*, the one Brother, the other Son to the Queen, should be beheaded at *Pontefract*, and also *Richard Hauke*, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan*. Their Execution was committed to the Care of Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, a great Favourite of the Protector's. The Manner of their Execution was as barbarous as unjust; great and heavy Accusations were laid against them, but none prov'd. They had not so much as the Formality of a Tryal, but being brought on

on the Scaffold, on the Day appointed, and branded in general with the Name of Traitors, were beheaded. The Lord Rivers would fain have declared his Innocency, but Ratcliff would not suffer him, and so he died in Silence. Sir Thomas Vaughan would not suffer his Mouth to be stopped, but as he was going to the Block he said aloud, *A Mischief take them that expounded the Prophecy, which foretold that G. should destroy King Edward's Children, of George, Duke of Clarence, who for that Suspicion is now dead; for there still remained Richard G. i. e. Duke of Gloucester, who now I see is he that shall and will destroy King Edward's Children, and all his Allies and Friends, as appeareth by us this Day; against whom I appeal to the High Tribunal of God for this wrongful Murther, and our real Innocency.* To which Sir Richard Ratcliff replied, *You have made a goodly Appeal, lay down your Head. Yea, said Sir Thomas, but I die in the Right, take you heed, that you die not in the Wrong;* and having said this he was beheaded.

1 Ed. V.

The Protector having remov'd those he thought would most strenuously oppose his Designs, his next Step was to engage the City of London in his Interest, and to that End he gained the Lord Mayor's Brother, Dr. John Shaw, a Priest, and Friar Pinker, Provincial of the Augustin Friars, to his Interest. The Lord Mayor was to draw the City to the Protector's Will, and to suppress Tumults. The other two being Doctors of Divinity, and accounted famous Preachers, their Business was to prove the Bastardy of the two Princes, Sons to Edward the Fourth, and by those specious Pretexes to exclude them from the Crown. Pinker was appointed to preach at the Spittle, and Shaw at St. Paul's Cross; their Instructions were to insist especially on two Things; the first was, "That King Edward and the Duke of Clarence were both the Issue of Adultery: That they were not Sons to the Duke of York, whose only legitimate Heir the Protector was." The second was, "That Edward's Children were not only spurious upon that Account, but born in an illegitimate Marriage, he having been first engaged to the Lady Lucy before he married their Mother; for both which Reasons the Protector must be the only Heir to the Crown:" But because the first of these was highly scandalous and reflecting upon the

The Protector's last Projects.

1483.

Shaw's Sermon.

His Device to move the Assembly.

The Duke of Buckingham's Management in Favour of the Protector.

whole House of York, and the Protector's Mother in particular, they were not to treat of that in direct Terms, but by oblique Insinuations: But as to the second Point, they were to be bare-fac'd without Reserve. *Pinker*, having gotten to about the Middle of his Discourse, lost his Voice, and so was forced to leave off. *Shaw* preaching at *Paul's Cross*, took for his Text this Sentence out of the *Wisdom of Solomon*, *Bastard Plants shall take no deep Root*; and after having alledg'd many Things to prove his Position, and said many odious Things against the Legitimacy of King *Edward's* Family, he began a long Panegyrick upon the Protector, telling the People, *That he was the only Image of his Father for Valour, and all other good Qualifications*. The Project was, that when *Shaw* was just entring upon this Encomium, the Protector should appear, as if it had been by Chance, so that the People taking the Doctor's Words as coming from the immediate Inspiration of the Holy Ghost, might cry out, *God save King Richard*: But the Protector coming a little too late, the Doctor in a disorderly Manner reassumed his Subject, and carried it on after such a fulsom Way before his Face, that the People were seized with Indignation at his Flattery and Treason; so that the Protector being out of Countenance, returned confus'd to his Palace; and the Preacher having ended his Sermon, went home, hid himself for Shame, and understanding, by his Friends, how much he was condemn'd, died a few Days after for Grief.

This notable Sermon was design'd as a Preparatory to the Duke of *Buckingham's* Oration on the *Tuesday* following, to the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and Common Council of *London*, who were summon'd by the Protector, to meet for that End at the *Guild-Hall* of the City; where the Duke mounting the *Hustings*, and Silence being commanded in the Protector's Name, he made a long and plausible Speech to the Assembly, "highly aggravating all the Mismanagements, Calamities, and Cruelties of King *Edward's* Reign, with Design to bring an Odium upon his Posterity, insisting upon *Shaw's* Sermon as a clear Proof of the Illegitimacy of King *Edward's* Children, and that the Protector was the only undoubted Heir to the Crown; telling them, that the Lords of the Realm were so well satisfied in that Particular, that they had come

" to

" to
" he
" the
expe
Rich
tory
posaf
Lord
Peop
swere
on th
riatio
no be
Then
been a
Mout
from
to m
again
to be
his ov
Duke
their
Dear
we ne
we be
mined
you jo
tho' y
theref
ther y
cellen
not?
last fo
of the
ed int
chard,
the C
The I
made
neral,
Cry, t
no Bo
are all
be you

The Reign of King EDWARD V.

365.

“ to a Resolution to have him for their King ; and that
“ he was come to acquaint them with it, and to desire
“ their Concurrence.” Having ended his Oration, he
expected the People would have cried, *God save King*
Richard ; but all were hush and silent, as if the Audi-
tory were confounded at the Extravagance of the Pro-
posal ; at which the Duke being surpris’d, took the
Lord Mayor aside, and asked him, *How comes it the*
People are so still? who not knowing what to say, an-
swered, *That he thought he was not well understood.* Up-
on this the Duke repeated his Speech with a little Va-
riation, but with much Grace and Eloquence, but to
no better Effect ; for the Citizens still continued silent.
Then the Mayor told the Duke, *The Citizens had not*
been accustomed to hear any but the Recorder, who was the
Mouth of the City ; and perhaps they would take it better
from him. Thereupon the Recorder was commanded
to move the same Matter to them, which he did much
against his Will, and managed his Speech so well, as
to be understood to speak the Duke’s Sense, and not
his own. The People keeping Silence as before, the
Duke told the Mayor, *they are wonderfully obstinate in*
their Silence ; then standing up a third Time, he said,
Dear Friends, we came here to acquaint you with a Thing
we needed not to have done, had it not been for the Affection
we bear you. The Lords and Commons could have deter-
mined the Matter without you, but would gladly have
you join with us, which is for your Honour and Profit,
tho’ you do not see it, nor consider it : We require you
therefore, to give your Answer one Way or another, Whe-
ther you are willing, as the Lords are, to have the most ex-
cellent Prince, the Lord Protector, to be your King, or
not ? The Assembly then began to murmur, and at
last some of the Protector’s and Duke’s Servants, some
of the *London* Apprentices, and the Rabble that croud-
ed into the Hall, cried out, *King Richard, King Ri-*
chard, and threw up their Hats in Token of Joy, tho’
the Citizens turning about kept their former Silence.
The Duke perceiv’d easily enough who they were that
made those Acclamations, but as tho’ it had been ge-
neral, took hold of it, saying, *’Tis a goodly and joyful*
Cry, to hear every Man with one Voice agree to it, and
no Body say no ; Since therefore, dear Friends, we see you
are all as one Man, inclined to have this noble Prince to
be your King, we shall report the Matter so effectually

1483.

to him, that we doubt not but 'twill be much to your Advantage. We therefore require you to attend us to Morrow with your joint Petition to his Grace, as hath been already agreed on between us. Upon this the Assembly broke up, and most departed with a melancholy Countenance, and a more melancholy Heart.

He with the
Citizens petition the
Protector to
accept of the
Crown.

The next Morning the Mayor and Aldermen, and the Chief of the Common Council went to *Baynard's Castle* in *Thames-Street*, where the Protector then resided; and the Duke of *Buckingham*, attended with several Lords and Gentlemen, came thither also. The Duke sent a Message to the Protector, *That an Assembly of honourable Persons was come to wait upon his Grace, about a Matter of great Importance.* The Protector made some Difficulty of coming forth to them, as if he was jealous, whether their Errand was good or not. The Duke of *Buckingham* took this Occasion to intimate to the Lord Mayor, how little the Protector knew of their Design; and therefore sent another Message, in a very submissive Manner, to tell him, that the Business was not to be imparted to any Body but himself. At length his Grace came forth, yet with so much affected Diffidence, that he seem'd unwilling to draw near them, till he knew their Business, appearing in a Gallery above, with a Bishop on each Side of him, as if he was still apprehensive of some evil Design. Then the Duke of *Buckingham* making a very low Reverence, begged two Things of his Grace; the one was, That he would permit him to make a humble Supplication to him; the other, That he would pardon him if it should prove unacceptable to him; for tho' he aim'd at nothing but his Honour, and the good of the Kingdom, yet he feared his Modesty might take it contrary to their Intentions. To this the Protector answered, He was so assured of their Integrity, that he hoped they would propose nothing that would be displeasing to him. Then *Buckingham*, after he had in a long and pathetical Speech, enumerated the Grievances of the Kingdom, told him, That they were come to petition him, that considering the illegitimate Birth of King *Edward's* Children, he would in Commiseration to the Publick, together with the Government, accept of the Crown, *for the Honour of God and Good of the Realm.* The Protector seemed mightily surpris'd, and answered, that tho' he knew the Things he alledged to be true, yet he loved King

Edward

*Edw
ver
ever
their
unde
who
the b
T
mur
ed th
turni
gran
were
to re
back
Crow
but i
loath
wort
The
seem
foll
on it,
of wh
belong
lawfu
Rich
joine
Real
able;
Petit
regal
noble
Day f
fende
to be s
the R
than v
of this
Rich
his H
the M
or Hu
tect
in Co*

The Reign of King EDWARD V.

567

Edward and his Children above any Crown whatsoever, and therefore could not grant their Request; however he pardoned their Petition, and thanked them for their Love, but desired them to be obedient to the Prince under whom himself and they lived at that Time, and whom he would serve with his Person and Advice, to the best of his Capacity.

Ed. V.

He accepts
the Crown.

This Answer being given, the Duke of Buckingham murmured a little, then step'd aside as if he had consulted the Noblemen and the Lord Mayor, and then returning again, asked a second Pardon, which being granted, he declared aloud to the Protector, That they were all agreed not to have any of King Edward's Race to reign over them; that they had gone too far to go back; so that if his Grace would be pleased to take the Crown upon him, they humbly beseeched him to do it; but if he did absolutely refuse it, which they should be loath to hear, they must, and would look out for some worthy Person that would accept of their Proposal. The Protector seeming to be affrighted at these Threats, seem'd to comply a little, and after spoke to them as follows. *Since we perceive the whole Realm is bent upon it, not to have King Edward's Children to govern them, of which we are sorry; and knowing that the Crown can belong to no Man so justly as to our self, the right Heir, lawfully begotten of the Body of our most dear Father, Richard, late Duke of York, to which Title is now joined your Election, the Nobles and Commons of this Realm, which we of all Titles take to be the most valuable; we are content, and agree favourably to receive your Petition and Request, and accordingly take upon us the regal Estate, Prebeminence, and Kingdoms of the two noble Realms of England and France; the one from this Day forward, to be by us and our Heirs governed and defended; the other by God's Assistance and your Valour, to be subdued, and for ever established in due Obedience to the Realm of England; and we ask God to live no longer than we intend to procure its Advancement.* At the Close of this Speech there was a great Shout of *God save King Richard.* Then the Lords went up to him and kissed his Hand, and the People departed talking diversely of the Matter, every one as he was guided by his Interest, or Humour. It was easy to perceive, that tho the Protector made so strange of the Matter, yet it was acted in Concert with him, and that these Stage-like Actions

1483.

were only to amuse the People. Here ended the imaginary Reign of King *Edward* the Fifth, upon the eighteenth Day of *June*, 1483, after a Continuance of only two Months and twelve Days; he being at that Time about twelve Years and seven Months old.



The Reign of King RICHARD III.

Richard proclaimed King.

RICHARD Duke of Gloucester was the eighth and youngest Son of *Richard*, Duke of York, and was something less than thirty Years of Age when he assumed the Crown. The next Day after he had been proclaimed King, he went to *Westminster*, sat himself down in the Court of *King's Bench*, made a very gracious Speech to the Assembly, promising them halcyon Days; and to begin with a Shew of Clemency, he pronounced Pardon of all Offences committed against him, and ordered one *Fogge*, whom he hated, and who had fled to Sanctuary for Fear of him, to be brought before him, and taking him by the Hand in the Sight of all the People, gave him Assurances of his Love and Affection; which Act, tho' the common People took it for a Token of his forgiving Temper, yet the better advised took it for Artifice and Dissimulation. In his Return to the Palace he saluted all he met, but especially those whom he knew had no Affection for him, thinking by this servile Flattery to insinuate himself into their Minds, and so to establish his Government. From this mock Election that was in *June*, he commenced his Reign, and was crowned in *July* with the same Provision that had been made for the Coronation of his Nephew Prince *Edward*. But to be sure of his Enemies he sent for five thousand Men out of the North, where he was most favoured, to assist at the Assembly. These came up to Town ill cloathed, and worse harnessed; their Horses poor, and their Arms rusty, who being mustered in *Finsbury Fields*, became the Subject of the Spectators Derision. The Appearance of these rude Fellows in Arms, gave

gave the People Cause to suspect, that as he was conscious of his Guilt, so he was apprehensive of his Punishment. i Ri. III.

On the fourth of *July* he went by Water to the Tower with his Wife *Ann* and his young Son. There he created Lord *Thomas Howard*, Duke of *Norfolk*, and his Son *Thomas Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*, *William*, Lord *Berkley*, Earl of *Nottingham*, and *Francis*, Lord *Lovel*, Viscount *Lovel*, and Lord Chamberlain of his Household, and likewise made seventeen Knights of the *Bath*. The Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Ely*, and Lord *Stanley*, had been Prisoners in the Tower ever since the beheading of the Lord *Hastings*. The Lord *Stanley* was set at Liberty, and made Lord Steward of the Household: But this was more out of Fear than Love, because his Son, the Lord *Strange*, was raising Men in *Lincolnshire*. The Archbishop he set at Liberty, thinking himself out of any Danger from him, being peaceably possess'd of the Kingdom: But Dr. *Morton*, the Bishop of *Ely*, was not set at Liberty, because he having been so faithful a Servant to King *Edward* the Fourth, he was sure he would never consent to his Childrens Deprivation and his Usurpation; but was removed from the Tower, and committed to the Charge of the Duke of *Buckingham*, who undertook to keep him in safe Custody at his Manor of *Brecknock*. He makes new Tides.

This Bishop *Morton* was a Man of no high Birth, but being of great Repute in the University of *Oxford*, *Henry* the Sixth sent for him and made him a Privy Counsellor; and after him King *Edward* retained him in the same Post of Honour, and knowing his Integrity, at his Death made choice of him for one of his Executors. King *Richard* knowing his Loyalty to King *Edward's* Family, having made Trial of it while he was in the Tower, was afraid of him, and would still have kept him Prisoner; but the University of *Oxford* interceeding for his Enlargement, and he being unwilling to disoblige that Body, consented to his being removed from thence to the Duke of *Buckingham's* Castle in *Brecknockshire* in *Wales*, where they afterwards conspired King *Richard's* Fall. The Cause of the Bishop of Ely's Removal.

From the Tower the next Day, being the fifth of *July*, King *Richard* rode through the City of *London*, in mighty Pomp, with a splendid Train of Noblemen, consisting King Richard's Coronation.

1483.

consisting of three Dukes, nine Earls, two Viscounts, twenty Barons, and seventy eight Knights, all very richly dressed: But amongst them all the Duke of *Buckingham* made the most splendid Appearance, having the Caparisons of his Horse so charg'd with golden Embroidery, that it was born up by Footmen. The Day following, King *Richard*, with *Ann* his Wife, (who was Daughter to the great Earl of *Warwick*, who had made and unmade two preceding Kings, and Widow to Prince *Edward*, Son to *Henry* the Sixth) was crowned at *Westminster*, with more than usual Solemnity: which being ended, he dismissed all the Lords that they might go to their own Houses, giving them a strict Charge to see that their several Counties were well governed, and Justice duly administered: But he kept the Lord *Stanley* with him, till he heard his Son the Lord *Strange* had disbanded the Forces he had raised. He liberally rewarded and dismissed his five thousand Northern Men, who valued themselves so much upon the King's Favour, that they became so insolent and tumultuous, that he was forced to take a Journey into the North to reclaim them.

King *Richard* contrives to make away with his two Nephews.

King *Richard* not accounting himself firm enough settled in the Throne, while his two Nephews were alive, contrived their Destruction in a Progress he made to *Glocester*, and to that End sent *John Green*, a trusty Servant, with Letters to Sir *Robert Brackenbury*, Constable of the Tower, commanding him to put them to Death; but he returned him Answer, *He would sooner die himself than obey that Command*; at which King *Richard* was highly displeased, and said to a Page of his the same Night, *Alas! who is there that a Man can trust? Those that I have brought up myself, those that I thought would be most ready to serve me, even those fail me and will not do what I command them.* The Page replied, *Sir, there lies a Man on a Pallat in the outer Chamber, who I am sure will think nothing too hard you shall require him to do,* meaning one *James Tyrrel*. The King knowing him to be an aspiring Man, thought the Page had hit upon the Man, and immediately went to the Chamber, where he found him and his Brother on a Pallat Bed, to whom he said merrily, *What! are you a-Bed so soon, Gentlemen?* And calling *Tyrrel* to him, told him

The Reign of King RICHARD III.

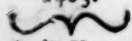
571

him his Mind, and what he would have him to do. 1 Ri. III.
He readily undertook that execrable Design, and the next Day the King sent him with a Letter to Sir Robert Brackenbury, requiring him to deliver Tyrrel the Keys of the Tower, for one Night, that he might accomplish the King's Pleasure in certain Things he had commanded him about; and Sir Robert obeyed the Orders.

The two innocent young Princes were more strictly kept, after their Uncle had quitted the Title of Protector, and took upon him that of King, than they had been before; for they had all their Servants taken from them, and others whom they knew not, appointed to attend them, and were debarred Visits. Edward, the eldest, when the News was brought to him, that his Uncle was crowned, sighed and said, *Ab! would my Uncle let me have my Life, he might take my Kingdom.* The Person, who told him so, comforted him as well as he could; but soon after this they were shut up close, and one Servant only allowed to attend them. Then the young King was sensible what would be his Fate, and gave himself over to melancholy Apprehensions, and never put off his Cloaths after this Time, till the Arrival of this fatal Night. Tyrrel contrived to have them murdered in the Night, and appointed one Miles Forest, a noted Russian, and John Dighton, his Groom, a lusty Fellow, to see the Execution done. These Persons entred the young Princes Chamber at Midnight, and finding them fast asleep, wraped them up in the Bed-Cloaths, stop'd their Mouths with the Bolster and Pillows, and so stifled them; and when they perceived they were dead, they laid their Bodies out naked upon the Bed, and fetched Tyrrel to see them; who having buried them under a Heap of Stones, near the Bottom of the Stairs, he took Horse and rode immediately to King Richard to acquaint him that the Business was dispatched; at which he was so highly pleased, that it is said he conferred the Honour of Knighthood on him, tho' he seemed not to approve of their being buried in so mean a Manner: Upon which Sir Robert Brackenbury's Chaplain took up their Bodies, and buried them privately in a Place, that by his dying soon after, was never known till Anno 1674, in the Reign of King Charles the Second.

They are
murdered in
the Tower.

It

1483.

 God's Ven-
 geance upon
 the Mur-
 derers.

It was not long, before both the Contriver and Actors of this horrible Villainy met with Rewards suitable to their Deserts; for King *Richard* himself could never be at Rest, his Guilt haunting him like a Spectre; his Countenance was wild, his Eyes distracted and gasty; he was afraid of his own Shadow; he wore a Coat of Mail under his Cloaths; his Limbs trembled, and his Hand was always upon his Dagger ready to strike; his Sleep was ever disturbed with frightful Dreams, which often caused him to jump out of his Bed and run about his Chamber; and at last he was slain in the Battle at *Bosworth*, and his Body ignominiously treated. Sir *James Tyrrel* was beheaded for Treason on *Tower hill*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh, having first confessed this Murther. *Miles Forest* dyed miserably, having almost all his Members rotted away by Piece Meal, and *Dighton* having liv'd sometime at *Calais* in a wretched Condition, died in great Ignominy, being hated by all Men.

1484.
 King *Richard* crown-
 ed a second
 Time at
York.

The Duke of
Buckingham
 discontent-
 ed.

King *Richard* having procured the young Princes to be dispatched out of the Way, that he might render his Crown more secure, caused himself to be crowned a second Time at *York*, and invested his Son *Edward* in the Principality of *Wales*, and procured a Parliament who adjudg'd the Marriage of his Brother *Edward* the Fourth with the Lady *Gray* to be unlawful, by Reason of a Prior Contract, and declared their Children to be illegitimate and incapable of the Crown. But he did not long enjoy the Fruits of this bloody Policy; for he soon found himself disappointed, first by the untimely Death of his Son, and then by the Revolt of the chief Instrument of his Advancement, and principal Supporter the Duke of *Buckingham*. The Reason of his Discontent is said to be an Agreement between the King and Duke, that the latter should have all the Lands belonging to the Duke of *Hereford*, to which he pretended to have a Title by his Descent from the House of *Lancaster*: But these Lands having fallen from the House of *Lancaster*, and being annexed to the Crown, King *Richard* was afraid that if he were possessed of them, they would make him too great, and therefore when he demanded them, he rejected his Demands with Indignation and Threats; which the Duke so highly resented, that he feign'd himself sick, that he might

might not attend at the Coronation; upon which King ^{2 Ri. III.} Richard sent him Word, that if he would not come, he would cause him to be brought thither. Upon which he did attend the Coronation, and in that magnificent Manner before recited; but with such Discontent, that he could not behold the Crown on Richard's Head, but turn'd his Face away.

This Breach soon grew wider; for having retir'd himself to his Castle at *Brecknock* in *Wales*, he convers'd much with Dr. *Morton* the Bishop of *Ely*, whom he had there in keeping, and there compleated his Resolutions of advancing the Earl of *Richmond* to the Throne. The Bishop having several Conferences with the Duke, found his Affections much alienated from King *Richard*, and therefore took the Freedom "to inveigh against his numerous Crimes and Enormities; and at last press'd the Duke, as being of the House of *Lancaster*, to take upon him the Title of King, and assume the Crown of *England*." The Duke on the other Hand, told him, "he had indeed an Intention so to have done, but upon Re-consideration, he found that the Earl of *Richmond* was the nearest Heir of the House of *Lancaster*, who if he married the Lady *Elizabeth*, eldest Daughter to King *Edward IV.* and the nearest Heir of the House of *York*, he might both set aside King *Richard*, and put a final Period to all the Troubles and Calamities of the Nation." This was extremely pleasing to the Bishop of *Ely*, who immediately fell into Consultation with the Duke how to bring this Matter about. And it was resolved between them immediately to treat with the Countess of *Richmond* the Earl's Mother, for he himself was at that Time in *Bretagne*. And accordingly one *Reginald Bray*, a Man well vers'd in negotiating great Affairs, was sent for to *Brecknock*, and dispatched with Instructions to the Countess his Mistress, which were to the Purpose following, "That considering the Quiet of the Kingdom could not be effected, but by advancing the Earl of *Richmond* to the Crown, and uniting the two Houses of *Lancaster* and *York* by Marriage; the Countess of *Richmond* should treat of that Matter with Queen *Elizabeth*, and having obtain'd that her eldest Daughter should marry the Earl of *Richmond*, she should send to her Son into *Bretagne*, who, if he would promise

His Designs
against King
Richard.

"to

1484. " to marry her whenever he should be crown'd, they
 " would engage to make him King.

Bray being dispatched with this Message, the Bishop desired to depart beyond Sea to manage the Affair. The Duke was very unwilling to part with so wise a Counsellor, but the Bishop being eagerly bent upon it, had not Patience to wait while the Duke raised Forces, as he had promised, to send along with him to guard him in his Journey, but stole away in Disguise, and got over into *Flanders*, where he was more serviceable in the Affair, than he could have been in *England*. However his Departure was of fatal Consequence to the Duke; for wanting his Advice, and meeting with unexpected Accidents, it proved his Ruin.

The Plot
 carried on
 between the
 Countess of
Richmond,
 and Queen
Elizabeth.

In the mean Time, *Reginald Bray* returned to his Mistress the Countess of *Richmond*, and informed her of what had been concerted betwixt the Duke and the Bishop, who immediately approv'd of the Designs; but the Queen being still in Sanctuary, she thought it not proper to go to her in Person, lest it should give Umbrage to King *Richard*, and therefore sent her Physician, one *Lewis*, a learned *Welschman*, who went to her under the specious Pretence of visiting her, upon Account of her Health. He having gained Access, and opened the Matter, the Queen readily embraced the Offer, and promised to use her utmost Endeavours to bring about that Design. *Lewis* having acquainted the Countess his Mistress with the Queen's Resolutions, she immediately proceeded in the Affair with all the Dispatch imaginable; and Doctor *Lewis* went frequently to and fro, as a Messenger between the Queen and the Countess, till Matters were fully concluded between them. While these Things were transacting, *Bray* was appointed to engage as many Persons of Quality as he could in the Earl's Interest, and the Queen on her side made the Earl many Friends; and *Thomas Ramney* was sent to the Earl to give him notice to prepare for his Return to *England*, and *Hugh Conway* soon after him; the one being to take his Way through *Cornwall* by *Plymouth*, and the other through *Kent*; that if one should unfortunately miscarry, the other should effect the Business; but they were both so successful that they arrived in *Bretagne*, not many Hours the one after the other.

other. Their Message to the Earl was, "That he was ^{2 Ri. III.}
 "sent for as King nominated by the great Men, and
 "desired by all; that the Queen and Duke of *Bucking-*
 "*ham* had agreed to his Marriage with the Lady *Eli-*
 "*zabeth*, and that he should come over with the ut-
 "most Expedition, and land in *Wales*, where he should
 "find Friends and Assistance according to his De-
 "fire."

These Messengers communicating their Message to the Earl of *Richmond*, he received it very joyfully, and imparted the Secret to the Duke of *Bretagne*; who, notwithstanding King *Richard's* Threats and Promises, had given him his Liberty, and now promised to assist him with Money and Troops for his intended Expedition. The Earl having received such Encouragement, sent the Messengers back to *England*, to satisfy the Queen and Countess of his Readiness to comply with the Terms proposed, and of the Duke of *Bretagne's* promising to lend him both Men and Money. The Earl's Adherents being informed of this, took Courage, and began their Preparations for his Reception: While others privately solicited the People to prepare them for an Insurrection; and the Bishop of *Ely* wrote from *Flanders*, to such as he knew hated King *Richard*, and by his Authority very much promoted the Business.

Tho' this Design was carried on with great Secrecy, yet it could not be long conceal'd from the Jealousies of the King, who having placed his Spies in all Parts, had such Accounts from them, that he did not doubt but that there was a Plot carrying on to dethrone him, and to set up the Earl of *Richmond*, and therefore immediately betook himself to Arms. And concluding the Duke of *Buckingham* to be the prime Mover, he first sent a Messenger to him with Letters full of Courtesy and large Promises, inviting him to come to *London*; but the Duke pretending Indisposition, excused himself. The King enraged to find his Artifices unsuccessful, sent him a Letter commanding him on his Allegiance to come to him. The Duke answered as roughly, *That he would not expose himself to his mortal Enemy, whom he neither lov'd, nor would serve.* Thus without any farther Dissimulation, both the King and Duke prepare for War; at the Rumour of which, the Marquis of *Dorset*, Son to the Queen Dowager, who

The Earl of Richmond accepts the Invitation.

King Richard's Preparations against them.

was

1484.

was then in *Yorkshire*, quitted his Sanctuary, and immediately set about raising Forces in that Country. Sir *Edward Courtney*, and his Brother the Bishop of *Exeter*, did the same in *Devonshire* and *Cornwal*; and Sir *Richard Guilford*, and many others, did the same in *Kent*. The King hearing of these Insurrections, mustering all his Forces, marched against the Duke of *Buckingham* toward *Salisbury*, while the latter with an Army of *Welshmen* advanced towards *Glocester*, intending to pass the *Severn* there, and thence to proceed into the West to join the *Courtneys*, which if he could have effected, King *Richard's* Reign, would not in Probability, have been so long by a Year. But it happened that the River *Severn* was so swoln by great and continual Rains for ten Days together, that it overflowed all the neighbouring Country, carrying away Men, Women, and Children in their Beds. These Floods, as they hindred the Duke's passing the *Severn* to his Friends, so it hindred their coming to him. This Flood continuing, the Duke's Soldiers almost drowned with Rain, and half famished for Want of Provisions, deserted by Degrees, till at last he had none left about him, but his domestick Servants. Nor could Entreaties, or Threats, keep them together; so he was forced to fly with the rest, and retired near *Shrewsbury*, to the House of a Servant of his, *Humphry Banister*, who being exceedingly obliged to him upon all Accounts, he depended upon remaining there in Safety, till he could either gather new Forces, or retire into *Bretagne* to the Earl of *Richmond*.

The Duke of
Buckingham
taken and
beheaded.

Upon the News of the disbanding of the Duke's Army, those in *Kent*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwal*, laid down their Arms, and fled into Sanctuaries, some beyond Seas, and most of the chief of them to the Earl of *Richmond* in *Bretagne*. King *Richard* sent to all the Ports, and ordered all Passengers to be stop'd, putting out a Proclamation, offering the Reward of a Thousand Pounds for the apprehending the Duke of *Buckingham*: And besides this he made extraordinary Preparations at Sea; being assured that the Earl of *Richmond* was to be assisted both with Men and Money from the Duke of *Bretagne*, he sent many Ships to the Coast, either to fight him, or hinder him from landing in *England*. *Banister* having heard of the Proclamation, gave notice to the Sheriff of *Shropshire*, who coming to *Ban-*

ster's

ster's House, found the Duke in the Habit of a Day-Labourer digging in the Garden, and apprehending him sent him to King *Richard*, who was at that Time at *Shrewsbury*. He denied not the Conspiracy, and earnestly desired to be admitted into the King's Presence, as some say with an Intention to beg Mercy, but as others, to have killed the King with a Dagger he wore under his Cloaths. But *Richard* would not admit him, but ordered him to be beheaded in the Market Place, as were also many others with him. *Banister* demanded the thousand Pounds promised in the Proclamation, but *Richard* refused to pay him, saying, *He that would betray so good a Master, would be false to any other*. And he and his whole Family were destroyed by Judgments from Heaven, as *Sir Thomas More* observed.

During these Transactions at Home, the Earl of *Richmond* not hearing of the Duke of *Buckingham's* Misfortune, being assisted by the Duke of *Bretagne*, set sail with a Fleet of forty Ships, and five thousand Men for *England*. They had not been long at Sea before they met with a Storm that scattered their Fleet; and the Ship which carried the Earl was driven on the *English* Coast, to the Mouth of the Haven of *Pool* in *Dorsetshire*. Here he cast Anchor, expecting the Arrival of his other Ships, and finding the Shoar all covered over with Men, he sent a Boat on Shoar, to discover whether they were his Friends or not. Being come within Call, those on Shoar said, they were sent to conduct them to the Duke of *Buckingham*, who lay with a great Army, not far distant, expecting the landing of the Earl of *Richmond*, who might easily ruin King *Richard*, he being deserted by most of his Men. The Earl suspecting the Deceit, and perceiving he was alone, the rest of his Fleet not appearing, he weighed Anchor and returned to *France*, and landed in *Normandy*, where he refreshed his Men two or three Days; and then sent a Gentleman to *Charles VIII.* the French King, desiring Passports through his Territories into *Bretagne*, which he readily granted him, and also gave him a considerable Sum of Money. Being arrived in *Bretagne*, he heard of the ill Success of his Affairs in *England*, and of the Duke of *Buckingham's* Death, and found the Marquess of *Dorset*, and many others of his Companions, which very much

2 Ri. III.
~~~~~

The Earl of  
*Richmond's*  
Fleet disperst

1484.

dejected him; yet was very glad at their safe Arrival, promising himself some Advantage by their Advice and Assistance. This Disappointment did not so discourage them, but that they resolved to proceed in their Design, and to make the Earl King, upon Condition that he married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Edward IV.* Which he having sworn in the Cathedral Church of *Rennes* to perform, the Marquess of *Dorset*, and all the rest, did Homage to the Earl, as their actual King. The Earl acquainted the Duke of *Bretagne* with these Proceedings, desiring another Fleet, with the Assistance of Men and Money, which the Duke generously granted him.

In the mean Time King *Richard* proceeded with great Severity against the Friends of the Earl of *Richmond*. He caused the High Sheriff of *Wiltshire* to be put to Death for writing this Rhime,

*The Cat, the Rat, and Lovel the Dog,  
Do govern England under a Hog.*

The Earl of  
*Richmond*  
and his Ad-  
herents de-  
clared pub-  
lick Enemies  
in Parlia-  
ment.

Alluding to *Catesby*, *Ratcliff*, and the Lord *Lovel*, who gave the Dog for his Arms, as *Richard* did the Boar for his: And many Persons he caused to be put to Death on bare Suspicion. He called a Parliament, in which he procured the Earl of *Richmond* to be attainted, and those that fled to him were declared Enemies to the Kingdom, and their Estates to be confiscated. And tho' these Confiscations amounted to a very great Sum, yet they were not sufficient to satisfy the voracious Avarice and Extravagancies of him, and his Creatures, but to supply the Deficiency, he laid insufferable Taxes on the People. Then to keep himself from Foreign Disturbances, he made a Truce with the King of *Scotland* for three Years, and that he might have a double Tie upon the *Scots*, he concluded a Marriage between the Earl of *Rothsay*, Heir to the Crown of *Scotland*, and his Niece *Anna* Daughter to the Earl of *Suffolk*. But all these Precautions could not free his distracted Mind from those Furies that Guilt had possessed his Conscience with; his heinous Crimes, the People's Hatred, and the Earl of *Richmond*, would not suffer him to enjoy an Hour's Rest. Therefore he made another Attempt to get the Earl into his Possession, sending his Embassadors with large Sums of Money and Presents to the Duke of *Bretagne*, and offering him *Richmondshire*,  
and

and all the Earl's Revenues, and all the Estates of them that fled to him, upon condition he would deliver them up to him. But his Embassadors coming, when he was under a delirious Fit, could not have Access to him; therefore they addressed themselves to *Peter Landois*, to whom the Management of all the Duke's Affairs were committed. *Landois* gave Ear to their Proposals, but would have *Richmondshire* for himself; upon which Messengers were several Times dispatched into *England*, which Delays proved the Earl of *Richmond's* Security. For the Bishop of *Ely*, who had Intelligence in King *Richard's* and the Duke of *Bretagne's* Courts, understood what Designs were forming against Earl *Henry*, and sent him Notice of it, advising him to fly with all Speed, or he would fall into the Enemy's Hands.

The Earl was at *Viennes*, the Duke of *Bretagne's* Court, when he received this Advice, upon which having obtained a safe Conduct from the *French King*, he fled with a few Followers out of *Bretagne* into *Anjou*, in the *French King's* Dominions. *Landois* missing him, sent Couriers into all Parts of the Dutchy in Search after him, and he was scarce got into the *French Territories*, when one of the Parties sent out after him came within an Hour's riding of him. The *English Refugees* who remained in *Bretagne*, when they heard of the Earl's Escape, and the Causes of it, expected all to be delivered up to the Fury of King *Richard*; and had not the Duke of *Bretagne* recovered, and took on him the Administration of Affairs, *Landois* would have seized them, and delivered them up to King *Richard's* Embassadors. The Duke enquiring into the Causes of the Earl of *Richmond's* Flight into *France*, was highly displeased with *Landois*, and sent for Sir *Richard Woodville*, and Captain *Poynings*, to whom he excused the Treachery of his Minister, disowning the Knowledge of it, and gave them a considerable Sum of Money, to conduct them and all the *Englishmen* who were at *Viennes*, through *Bretagne* into *France*, to their Master the Earl of *Richmond*. For which generous Act, the Earl sent him Thanks by a Messenger on Purpose, declaring, *That he could never be at rest, until Fortune had afforded him Means in some Sort, to requite his infinite Obligations, by whose Favour only he now lived.* The King of *France* was then at *Langres*, where the Earl being arrived, informed him of the Reason of his Flight

i. III.  
m

The Earl of  
*Richmond*  
in great  
Danger.

1484.

Flight from *Bretagne*, and begged his Assistance. King *Charles* promised him Assistance, and brought him on his Way to *Montargis*, treating the Earl and Lords that attended him, with an Hospitality becoming a King. While the Earl was in the *French Court*, a Man forgotten, and in Effect thought dead, *John de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford* repaired to him: This Man had been imprisoned in *Hamme* Castle, by King *Edward* the Fourth, presently after the Battle at *Barnet*. He had not only obtained his own Liberty, but had prevailed upon Sir *James Blunt*, Captain of that Castle, and Sir *John Fortescue*, Porter of *Calais*, to leave their Commands, and go along with him, under the Conduct of the Earl of *Richmond*. But Sir *James Blunt* having left his Lady and all his Effects in the Castle of *Hamme*, had so completely fortified it, and reinforced the Garrison, that in Case of a Siege they might defend themselves, until Fortune should turn against King *Richard*. In the mean Time, the Earl of *Richmond's* Party grew every Day more numerous; for all who fled from *England*, as well as the *English* in those Parts, either returning from their Travels, or that were Scholars in the Universities Abroad, flocked to him, and did Homage to him; among whom was Master *Richard Fox*, a secular Priest, a Man of excellent Parts, who was afterwards made Bishop of *Winchester*; and as the Earl's Numbers grew greater Abroad, so his Interest in *England* was enlarged.

King *Richard's* Proceedings.

King *Richard*, who, by his Spies, had a full Account of all these Proceedings, was not wanting to himself, and understanding the Earl's Flight out of *Bretagne*, it very much perplexed him. And tho' he saw Heaven and Earth conspiring against him, yet he thought by his own Subtlety to make his Party good against both: He knew that the Hopes of his Enemies were founded on the Earl's Promise to marry the Princess *Elizabeth*, which he resolved by some Means or other to prevent; and to that End, he did his utmost to ingratiate himself with her Mother Queen *Elizabeth*. And resolving now upon three Things, Deceit, Murther, and Incest, he chose Persons fit for his Purpose, who in the most obliging Manner made plausible Excuses to Queen *Elizabeth*, for all the Villanies he had acted towards her and hers, pretending, "That his Majesty  
" was sensibly afflicted for his dear Nieces, that they  
" should

## The Reign of King RICHARD III.

581

“ should make themselves voluntary Prisoners, and <sup>2 Ri. III.</sup>  
 “ mistrust the Affection of an Uncle, who like a Fa-  
 “ ther thought of nothing but their Happiness: That  
 “ his ardent Desire was to treat them according to their  
 “ Birth, to have them to Court, and provide for them  
 “ worthy Husbands; and whenever the Death of his  
 “ Wife should happen, ( which must of Necessity be  
 “ in a short Time ) his Resolution was to make the  
 “ Princess *Elizabeth* his Queen, and would likewise  
 “ prefer her Son the Marquess of *Dorset* to the most  
 “ honourable and profitable Places in the Nation, if  
 “ he would quit the Earl of *Richmond*’s Interest, and  
 “ return into *England*.” These and many other fair  
 Promises so won upon the Queen, that forgetting the  
 many Affronts that he had cast upon her Husband, on  
 her own Honour, and the Legitimacy of her Children,  
 and even the Murther of her two Sons, and Oath  
 that she had made to the Countess of *Richmond*, con-  
 cerning the Marriage of her Daughter to the Earl, she  
 complied with him, and promised to bring over her Son  
 the Marquess of *Dorset*, and all the late King’s Friends,  
 from the Party of the Earl of *Richmond*. And being  
 thus reconciled to the King, she and her Daughters re-  
 moved out of the Sanctuary, and she delivered up the  
 five young Princesses, her Daughters, into his Hands,  
 who were conveyed to Court with extraordinary So-  
 lemnity: Whom as soon as King *Richard* had gotten  
 into his Custody, he resolved to order the Matter so,  
 that he might take the eldest of them to be his Wife;  
 which was a sure Way of defeating the Earl of *Rich-*  
*mond*’s Designs. Queen *Elizabeth* was so charm’d by  
 his false Promises, that she wrote to the Marquess of  
*Dorset*, to leave the Earl of *Richmond*, and hasten in-  
 to *England*: Informing him, that all past Injuries were  
 forgotten, and were to be made up by Honours and  
 Preferments; and that King *Richard* desired nothing  
 more than to give full Satisfaction.

He prevails  
upon the  
Queen Dow-  
ager.

King *Richard* having succeeded in his first Design, King *Ri-*  
 which was Deceit, proceeded to the second, which <sup>chard’s</sup>  
 was the Murther of his Queen, which if it were not <sup>Queen dies.</sup>  
 effected, his Incest with his Niece could not be com-  
 pleted. In order to effect this, he began to shew an  
 Aversion to his Wife’s Company and Embraces. He  
 complained to several Lords of the Council of her  
 Barenness; especially to the Archbishop of *York*, whom

1484. he had lately released out of Prison; he pretended to discover to him some private Defects in the Queen, which rendred her Person disagreeable to him, hoping the Bishop would tell her of it, and she being a Woman of a meek Temper, he thought would take it so much to Heart, that she would not live long after it. This Method he hit upon, unknown to lesser Sinners, considering that to put her to a violent Death, would too much alienate the People's Affections; and that Grief, and Melancholy, and Fear, might jointly produce that Effect with the Appearances of Nature, which neither Sword nor Poison could do without Scandal. The Bishop of York perceived plain enough by the King's Words, that he was weary of his Wife, and wanted another; and he knew him so well, that he could not imagine he would scruple to add one Murder more, to the many bloody Cruelties he had been guilty of, to satisfy his Lust and Ambition. Which made him say to some of his Friends, *The Queen's Days are but few.* To prepare a Way for her Death, he caused a Report to be spread among the People that she was dead; which he did, that whenever her Death should happen, it might appear less surprizing, and that the Rumour coming to her Ears, might alarm her with Fear of her sudden Fate, and those Fears throw her into a Disease that might carry her off. The Queen no sooner heard the Report, but she believed it came originally from her Husband; and being of a soft and tender Disposition, was extreemly dispirited; and running to him full of Sorrow, demanded of him, *What she had done to deserve Death?* He answered her with fair Words and false Smiles, bidding her *be of good Cheer, for to his Knowledge she had no other Cause.* Upon this she repaired to her Lodgings, but whether her Grief, as he designed it should, struck so to her Heart, that it broke with the mortal Wound, or whether her End, as it was generally suspected, was hastened with Poison, she died in a few Days afterwards. He affected to shew an extraordinary Sorrow at her Death, and was at the Charge of a pompous Funeral for her.

His Per-  
plexities  
increase.

But notwithstanding all his pretended Mourning, before she was well cold in her Grave, he made his Addresses to the Princess *Elizabeth*, who had his Love in Abhorrence; and not only she, but the whole Kingdom appeared averſe to ſo unnatural a Marriage; and he

## The Reign of King RICHARD III.

583

he was so interrupted and confounded with the publick Affairs, that though he had succeeded in his two first Attempts of Hypocrisy and Murther, he could never accomplish what he aimed at by them which was the incestuous Marriage with his Niece *Elizabeth*. He found many of the Nobility pass'd daily over to *France*, and that the common People every where shewed an Affection to the Earl of *Richmond*, while himself was so nauseous to them, that they were ready to spue him out. He grew most jealous of *Thomas Lord Stanley*, so that when he desired Leave to retire to his Country Seat, under Pretence of ordering some of his domestick Affairs, he would not give him Leave without he left his eldest Son *George* with him, as an Hostage for his Father's Loyalty. Being informed of Sir *James Blunt*'s Revolt, and of the Earl of *Oxford*'s Escape from *Hammes* Castle, he ordered the Garison of *Calais* to besiege it. The Earl of *Oxford* and Sir *James Blunt* immediately hastened to the Relief of it; but before they could arrive the Garison being reduced to Extremity, was obliged to surrender, but upon good Conditions, to march out with Bag and Baggage, which they did, and joined the Earl, who led them to *Paris*, where they were entertained by the Earl of *Richmond*. The Reduction of *Hammes*, and the small Hopes of Assistance which the Earl of *Richmond* had from the *French* Court, made King *Richard* so secure, that he recalled the Squadron of Men of War, that he had ordered to cruise in the Chanel, to prevent the Earl's making a Descent on *England*; judging that the Nobility inhabiting the maritime Parts, especially those of *Wales*, were sufficient to oppose any Descent that the Enemy could make.

In the mean Time, the Earl of *Richmond* continued his Negotiations in the Court of *France* for Assistance, but had met with Delays and Impediments; so that King *Richard* flattered himself, he would not be able to compass his Designs at all, and began to think himself secure. The Marquiss of *Dorset*, fearing the Earl would not succeed in his Enterprize, gave Way to his Mother's Persuasions, and *Richard*'s flattering Promises, and left the Earl, stealing away from *Paris* by Night; but as soon as the Earl had notice of his Flight, he applied to the *French* Court for Leave to apprehend him, being afraid if he got to *England*, he would discover all

3 Ri. III.

The Marquiss of Dorset leaves the Earl.

1485.

The Earl  
lands in  
Wales.

The Earl's  
Progress.

his Designs. Having obtained Leave, the Marquiss was overtaken in *Champaign*, and by Arguments and fair Promises prevailed with to return. By this the Earl began to be apprehensive, that if he delayed his Expedition into *England* any longer, more of his Friends might grow cool in their Zeal for him, and judged it necessary to attempt that with a few, which he could not with many. So he earnestly solicited the *French* Court for Aid, desiring so small a Supply of Men and Money, that the King could not in Honour refuse him; for which he left the Marquess of *Dorset*, and Sir *John Bourchier* as Hostages, and leaving *Paris* went to *Roan*, where his Forces rendezvous'd, waiting for the Ships from *Harfleur*, that were to carry them to *England*. When he arrived there, he was informed of the Death of King *Richard's* Queen, and of his Design to marry the Princess *Elizabeth*, who had been promised to him. This was mortifying News to him, judging that if his Alliance to the House of *York* was by that Means broken, their Friends would all fall off from him. His Followers likewise were extreamly discouraged; thinking it a great Rashness to undertake so dangerous an Enterprize with a handful of Men; but having received Advice, that Sir *Rice ap Thomas*, and Captain *Savage*, two Men of great Account in *Wales*, would declare for him, and that *Reginald Bray* had gotten large Sums of Money to pay his Soldiers, he took shipping the 15<sup>th</sup> of *August* with a few Vessels, and two thousand Soldiers, and after a Passage of seven Days, landed at *Milford Haven* in *Wales*; from whence he marched the next Day to *Haverford West*, where he was received with much Joy by the Inhabitants.

Here the Earl met with another Discouragement, being inform'd that *Thomas* and *Savage* had declared for King *Richard*, but this News proved false; but on the other hand, was as much encouraged, hearing that the People of *Pembrokeshire* had joined with his Uncle the Earl of *Pembroke*, and therefore marched on to *Cardigan*, his Army increasing every Hour. Here again he was alarm'd with a Report that Sir *Walter Herbert* was at *Caermarthen* with a Design to oppose him; but his Scouts informing him that the Country was open, and free for his March, and no Enemy near, he proceeded, and was joined by the Way by *Richard Griffith*

*Griffith and John Morgan*, with a good Body of *Welsh*. <sup>3 Ri. III.</sup>

The Earl being sensible that now he must either meet Victory or Ruin, and that he could not long subsist without farther Assistance, wrote to his Mother the Countess, and to the Lord *Stanley*, and others; telling them, "That as he was arrived in *England* by their Advice, so he must be supported by their Assistance; for having but few Forces, one Defeat would be his Ruin: That temporising now would be very fatal to their Designs, and a seeming Unresolvedness would discourage all his real Friends." Having sent trusty Servants with this Message, he held on his March towards *Shrewsbury*, and met with Sir *Rice ap Thomas*, with a considerable Body of *Welsh*, who all swore Fealty to him, the Earl having first promised, that as soon as he should be King, he would make him President of *Wales*. Being arrived at *Shrewsbury*, he received an Answer from his Mother, and others, according to his Desire; from thence he marched to *Newport*, where Sir *Gilbert Talbot* joined him with two thousand Men, the Earl of *Shrewsbury's* Tenants. In the mean Time, the Lord *Stanley*, and his Brother Sir *William*, were raising Men, but had not declared who they would side with; and Sir *William* advanced with his Army into *Staffordshire*, and waited on the Earl of *Richmond* at *Stafford*, attended only by twenty or thirty Persons, and having had a short Conference, returned to his Forces. The Lord *Stanley* lay at *Litchfield* with five thousand Men, and when the Earl approached near *Litchfield*, the Lord *Stanley* retired to *Atherstone*, to make way for the Earl, and to prevent King *Richard's* having any Suspicion of him, being extremely cautious, by Reason of his Son, the Lord *Strange*, being an Hostage with King *Richard*, and so hourly in Danger of his Life.

King *Richard* being at *Nottingham*, where he then kept his Court, heard of the Earl's Arrival, but with such a Relation of the Inconsiderableness of his Forces, that he despised his Attempt; not doubting but Sir *Walter Herbert*, whom he had ordered to raise the Militia of *Wales*, would easily suppress him. But hearing that Sir *Walter* had suffered him to pass the *Severn*, and that so many Gentlemen had joined him with their Friends and Dependents, that the Earl's Army would be as numerous as his own, if the *Lancashire* Men under

King *Richard* gets together his Army.

1485.

*W*der the *Stanleys* should declare for him; he then resolved to oppose him in Person. He therefore sent Orders for Sir *Thomas Brakenbury*, Lieutenant of the Tower, and others, to bring their whole Strength with them, to enable him to give the Earl Battle, before he received farther Reinforcements, and to bring with him Sir *Thomas Bourchier*, and Sir *Walter Hungerford*, and other Gentlemen, whose Loyalty he suspected, to attend him in Arms, to prevent their conspiring against him. The same Command he sent to the Earl of *Northumberland*. When all his Troops were arrived at *Nottingham*, he put himself at their Head, and led them to *Leicester*, in order to give the Earl Battle. Sir *Thomas Bourchier*, Sir *Walter Hungerford*, and others, found Means privately to desert from *Brackenbury's* Party, and to go over to the Earl; and diverse Men of Quality repaired to him from all Parts. King *Richard* having Intelligence of this, was very much perplex'd, but resolving to put the Issue upon the Hazard of a Battle, he encamped not far from *Leicester*, near a Village called *Bosworth*, where having refreshed his Men, he prepared to fight.

King Richard encamps at *Bosworth*.  
The Earl has a Conference with the Lord *Stanley*.

The Earl of *Richmond* march'd his Forces to *Tamworth*, and leaving his Men there, went from thence to *Atherstone*, to the Lord *Stanley* his Father-in law; where he held a Conference with him and Sir *William Stanley* privately in a little Field, where they consulted how they should give King *Richard* Battle to the best Advantage. Then the Earl leaving the Lord *Stanley*, return'd to his Army, and in the Evening Sir *John Savage*, Sir *Bryan Sandford*, and Sir *Simon Digby*, having deserted King *Richard*, came over to the Earl with all their Friends and Followers. The Earl then marched his Army out of *Tamworth* towards the Enemy, resolving to fight King *Richard*.

The fatal Day being come that was to decide the Fortunes of the Kingdom, King *Richard* drew out his Troops upon the Plain, in such a Manner that they might make the greatest Appearance. He committed the Van, consisting of Archers, to the Command of the Duke of *Norfolk* and Earl of *Surrey* his Son, himself commanded the second Line, where were the choicest and best armed Men, being guarded on the Flanks by Horse, and on the Front by Archers. The Earl of *Richmond* drew up his Men, placing the Archers in the Front,

Front, under the Command of the Earl of *Oxford*, and the right Wing under the Command of Sir *Gilbert Talbot*: Sir *John Savage* commanded the left, and he kept for himself and his Uncle, the Earl of *Pembroke*, a Body of Horse and Foot as a Reserve, to join the Troops as Occasion should require. His whole Strength did not amount to six thousand Men, (the *Stanleys* Forces, which were seven or eight thousand strong, excepted) and King *Richard* had twice that Number. In the Order mentioned, the two Armies advanc'd towards each other, the Lord *Stanley* moving aside off as the Earl of *Richmond* mov'd, posted his Army at a Distance, almost between the two Armies, affording Hopes and Fears to both Parties; and tho' King *Richard* sent to him, commanding him to come and join him, swearing By God and Death, if he did not come to him, he would cut off his Son's Head before Dinner; he answer'd, Let him use his Pleasure, for I have more Sons than he: Upon which he commanded his Head to be taken off, but suspended the Order, for Fear it should provoke the Lord *Stanley* to pour all his Fury upon him. And when the Earl of *Richmond* sent to the Lord *Stanley*, desiring he would come and take Care of the ordering and commanding his Men, he bad him draw up his Soldiers, and he would do the same by his, and join him at Supper-Time.

Both Armies being drawn up in Order of Battle, the King on the one Side, and the Earl on the other, made long Speeches to encourage their Soldiers, which Sir *Thomas Moore* has recited at large. The Earl's Men were mightily animated by his Speech, and demanded immediately to be led on to meet the Enemy: There being a Morass between the two Armies, the Earl left it on his right Hand, by which he not only prevented King *Richard*'s attacking him on that Side, but had the Sun on his Back, which shone full in the Faces of the King's Army. King *Richard* perceiving the Earl's Army advancing, commanded his Trumpets to sound, and the Archers to let fly their Arrows: The Earl's Bowmen return'd the Shot, and the Foot join'd and came to close Fight, and then the Lord *Stanley* came in to the Earl's Assistance. The Earl of *Oxford* fearing his Men might be surrounded by the Enemy's Numbers, commanded none should stir above ten Foot from the Standard; the Soldiers presently clos'd their Ranks, and

The thirteenth and last Battle at *Bosworth*.

1485  


and stood still, expecting farther Orders. King *Richard's* Troops stood still to observe them, being suspicious of some Stratagem, and indeed they fought at best but very faintly, many also deserting him: Upon which *Richard* was advised to save himself by Flight, concluding he was betray'd, but he refus'd; and even when the Victory appeared eminently on the Side of his Adversaries, and a fleet Horse was presented to him to further his Escape, he declar'd, *That Day should either determine the War or his Life.* The Earl of *Oxford* led his Men again to the Charge, upon which the Duke of *Norfolk* changed the Order of his Battle, widen'd the first Line, but clos'd and enlarg'd his second; and then renew'd the Fight. The King being inform'd that the Earl of *Richmond* was not far off, attended with but a few of his Guards, set Spurs to his Horse, and rode furiously towards him; the Earl perceiv'd him, and prepar'd to receive him. *Richard* made furiously at him with his Lance, but the Earl could not meet him, being hindered by some of his own Men. The King perceiving his Disappointment, push'd against the great Standard, and slew Sir *William Brandon* the Standard-Bearer, and advancing forward, was oppos'd by Sir *Richard Cheney*; and tho' he was a Man of great Strength and Valour, bore him to the Ground, and forc'd his Way up to the Earl, who kept him off at Sword's Point, till Assistance came in to his Relief. At that very Instant Sir *William Stanley* came in with three thousand choice Men, and investing the King's Squadrons, afforded Occasion for as many to run away as thought fit. King *Richard* perceiving this, left the Earl, and push'd forward into the hottest of the Battle, either to encourage his Men, or to meet Death the sooner; and accordingly fell with his Sword in Hand all cover'd with Blood. In the mean Time, the Earl of *Oxford* made a terrible Slaughter in the Van of the King's Army. The Duke of *Norfolk*, the Lord *Ferrers*, Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, and Sir *John Brackenbury* were kill'd on the Spot with about a thousand of their Men. While the Van of the King's Army was hotly engag'd with the Earl's, the greatest Part of those in the Main, watching their Opportunity, left the Field and departed every Man to his own home. Sir *William Catesby* a Judge, and several others, were taken and beheaded two Days after at *Leicester*. The Lord *Lovel*, and others, made their Escapes.

King *Richard* is slain.

Escapes. Many Gentlemen and private Soldiers threw <sup>3 Ri. III.</sup> down their Arms, submitted to the Earl, and were graciously receiv'd. Among those was *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*, who did not engage in the Battle, but stood neuter, for which he was taken into the Earl's Favour, and immediately made a Privy Counsellor. *Thomas* Earl of *Surrey* was sent to the Tower, but was soon releas'd, and prefer'd to Places of the greatest Trust and Honour.

This Battle hapned on the 22<sup>d</sup> Day of *August*, and continued about two Hours; and tho' in it there were not slain much above two thousand Men, and scarce an hundred on Earl *Henry's* Part, yet it was decisive of the Controversy, being the thirteenth that was fought, between the two Houses of *Lancaster* and *York*, which had broken out about thirty Years before, fill'd the Nation with Blood and Desolation, and cost the Lives of near an hundred thousand Men, and eighty Princes of the Blood. And King *Richard* there finish'd his evil Course of Life, after he had reign'd two Years, two Months, and one Day. Had he lived with as much Glory as he died, his Character would have shone bright in our *English* Annals. His Body was carried to *Leicester* after a most ignominious Manner, being stript naked and laid cross a Horse, like a Calf, his Head hanging down on one Side, and Legs on the other, besmear'd with Blood and Mire; and having lain two Days in this Manner on bare Earth, expos'd a filthy Spectacle to the View of the People, who us'd it ignominiously, it was afterwards buried in the Abbey-Church, where King *Henry*, in Respect to his Family, ordered a Tomb to be erected over his Grave.

After the Battle was over, and the Victory was entirely gain'd, the Earl of *Richmond* fell down on his Knees in the open Field, and gave God Thanks for his Blessing upon his Arms, pray'd for the Church and his Subjects, then rode to an Eminence, and thence gave his Soldiers Thanks for behaving themselves so well in the Battle; promising them all Rewards answerable to their Merits. Upon which the Army with mighty Shouts cry'd out, King *Henry*, King *Henry*; and the Lord *Stanley* taking *Richard's* Crown, which was found among the Spoils in the Field of Battle, put it on the Earl's Head, who from that Time assum'd the Title and Power of King of *England*.

The End of the First Volume.